THE ART AND SCIENCE OF BIRDWATCHING

Theories, Tourism and Ecological Issues, Techniques, Technologies and Ethics

Ismar Borges de Lima

RECINATUR
Red Iberoamericana de Ciencia, Naturaleza y Turismo

THE ART AND SCIENCE OF BIRDWATCHING

Theories, Tourism and Ecological Issues, Techniques, Technologies and Ethics

Ismar Borges de Lima

RECINATUR
Red Iberoamericana de Ciencia, Naturaleza y Turismo

First Edition, 2025

Electronically produced in Brazil and Chile.

To cite this whole book as an authored monograph (APA 7th Edition):

de Lima, I. B. (2025). *The art and science of birdwatching: Theories, tourism issues, techniques, tools and ethics. The journey of birdwatching* (1st ed.). Fundación Red Iberoamericana de Ciencia, Naturaleza y Turismo - RECINATUR (Ello Editorial). Chile/Brazil.

Six chapters were co-authored with other scholars; when citing these chapters, list all contributors — author and co-author(s) — in the reference.

ISBN: 978-65-01-43669-2

9 786501 436692

Cataloging-in-Publication (CIP) Data
Editor/Author:
de Lima, Ismar Borges

Title:
The Art and Science of Birdwatching: Theories, Tourism Issues, Techniques, Tools and Ethics. The Journey of Birdwatching / Ismar Borges de Lima; with some chapters coauthored by Tomas Cotrina Trigoso, Paulo Alberto da Costa Gois, Aggrey Thuo, Wilson de Moraes Sousa, Armin Marcelo de la Rosa Patiño, Johanna Paulina Flores Ruano, Carmen Amelia Trujillo, Kennedy Rolando Lomas Tapia, Irma Brígida Suárez Rodríguez, Carmen del Pilar Suárez Rodríguez

Edition:
First edition, 2025

Place of Publication:
Brazil and Chile (eBook)

Publisher:
Fundación Red Iberoamericana de Ciencia, Naturaleza y Turismo – RECINATUR (Ello Editorial) - Calle Blanco esq. O'Higgins s/n, Corral, Región de los Ríos, Valdivia, Chile

ISBN:
978-65-01-43669-2

Description:
Electronic resource (PDF), 808 pages: illustrations, maps, graphs.

Subjects:
1. Birdwatching – History
2. Birdwatching – Tourism – Sustainable development
3. Avitourism – Case studies
4. Wildlife tourism – Ethics
5. Ornithology – Popular science
6. Environmental education – Tools and techniques

Classification: CDD: 598.07234 / CDU: 338.48:598

Citation and referencing remarks for this book:

This ebook is catalogued as an **authored monograph** by **Ismar Borges de Lima**. Most chapters are single-authored by him; however, **six chapters are formally co-authored** with the scholars listed below. When citing material from one of these co-authored chapters, list **all authors in the exact order shown** on the chapter's by-line and treat Ismar as **editor** of the volume (see examples). For content that spans several chapters or the entire book, cite the whole work as a single-author monograph (de Lima, 2025).

Ch.	Pages	Chapter title (short)	Authors to place in reference list
5	171–210	*Birdwatching: Ethical Landscapes…*	de Lima, I. B., **& de la Rosa Patiño, A. M.**
9	351–384	*South Africa and its Strategic Role…*	de Lima, I. B., **& Thuo, A.**
10	385–436	*Ecuador's Blueprint…*	de Lima, I. B., **Flores Ruano, J. P., Trujillo, C. A., Lomas Tapia, K. R., & Suárez Rodríguez, C. P.**
11	437–514	*Peru: Birdwatching, Conservation…*	de Lima, I. B., **& Cotrina Trigoso, T.**
12	515–610	*Brazil: The Continent of Birds*	de Lima, I. B., **& Suárez Rodríguez, I. B.**
13	611–708	*Roraima's Avian Frontier…*	de Lima, I. B., **Gois, P. A. da C., & Sousa, W. de M.**

Whole-book reference
de Lima, I. B. (2025). *The art and science of birdwatching: Theories, tourism issues, techniques, tools and ethics. The journey of birdwatching* (1st ed.)[ebook]. Fundación Red Iberoamericana de Ciencia, Naturaleza y Turismo - RECINATUR (Ello Editorial). Chile/Brazil.

Two-author chapter example
de Lima, I. B., & Cotrina Trigoso, T. (2025). Title of chapter. In I. B. de Lima (Ed.), *The art and science of birdwatching…* (1st ed., pp. 437–514). Fundación RECINATUR.

Multi-author chapter example
de Lima, I. B., Flores Ruano, J. P., Trujillo, C. A., Lomas Tapia, K. R., & Suárez Rodríguez, C. P. (2025). Title of chapter. In I. B. de Lima (Ed.), *The art and science of birdwatching…* (1st ed., pp. 385–436). Fundación RECINATUR.

Editorial and Scientific Board

The Art and Science of Birdwatching: Theories, Tourism Issues, Techniques, Tools, and Ethics

This book brings together contributions from a diverse and multidisciplinary team of researchers, educators, and field experts from Latin America and Africa. The **Editorial and Scientific Board** was formed to guide the development of the work with academic rigor, interdisciplinary perspective, and ethical integrity. Each member has played a key role in reviewing, supporting, and advising on the structure, content, and thematic coherence of the volume. Their combined expertise in environmental education, spatial planning, avitourism, ethnodevelopment, sustainability, and cultural heritage ensures a high standard of scientific quality and international relevance.

We are grateful for the insights and experience of the following professionals who compose the Editorial and Scientific Board of this publication:

Johanna Paulina Flores Ruano

Professor, Universidad Técnica del Norte (UTN), Ecuador
jpflores@utn.edu.ec

Armin Marcelo de la Rosa Patiño

Executive President, RECINATUR Foundation – Latin America
marcelodelarosa@recinatur.org
www.recinatur.org

Tomas Cotrina Trigoso

Professor, Universidad César Vallejo & Universidad Nacional de San Martín, Peru
tcotrina@unsm.edu.pe

Irma Brígida Suárez Rodríguez

Professor, PhD Scholar, M.A.
Universidad Autónoma de San Luís Potosí (UASLP), Mexico.
RECINATUR Foundation - General Director
UNESCO Global Geopark Project Leader
Email: irma.suarez@uaslp.mx
www.recinatur.org

Dr. Carmen del Pilar Suárez Rodríguez

Professor; PhD., M.A. South Huasteca Regional Academic Coordination (CARHS-UASLP), Mexico.
Email: pilar.suarez@uaslp.mx
https://profesionalizacionstem.com

Preface

Birdwatching, at its essence, is a celebration of attention. It is the act of pausing, of attuning oneself to sound and motion, of standing still long enough for wonder to find its way into our gaze. It is a practice as old as humanity's first awareness of the skies—of wings cutting across the horizon, of songs echoing through forest and desert, of mysterious migrations tracing unseen patterns above civilizations. And in our age—where the world spins ever faster with digital noise and ecological urgency—the birds still come. And we, increasingly, are beginning to notice them.

This book was born out of such noticing. It seeks not merely to catalogue or define birdwatching but to explore it as a deeply human impulse—one that transcends language, culture, age, and geography. The book *The Art and Science of Birdwatching* embraces a distinctly interdisciplinary character, weaving together diverse themes and approaches comprehensively presented in **16 chapters**. The author purposefully integrates theoretical frameworks, tourism dynamics, and ecological perspectives into a unified narrative. Attention is also given to the practical dimensions of birdwatching, from field techniques to emerging digital technologies. Ethical considerations are carefully interlaced, recognizing their growing importance in both research and recreational birding. By bridging these varied domains, the work offers a holistic vision that reflects the evolving landscape of contemporary birdwatching.

In compiling these chapters, I have drawn upon decades of global experience, research, and fieldwork, but perhaps more importantly, upon the humble moments of personal encounter: the silhouette of a hawk at dusk in the *Cerrado*, the first call of a trogon echoing through a Costa Rican valley, the stillness broken by a rustle in the mangroves as a heron takes flight.

Birdwatching today is far more than a solitary pastime. It is a global movement, an economic sector, a conservation force, and a technological frontier. It connects schoolchildren with binoculars in suburban parks to Indigenous communities safeguarding sacred birds of prey; it mobilizes apps, algorithms, and satellites to track warblers in flight and penguins on ice; it forms the basis of billion-dollar tourism industries and grassroots citizen science efforts alike. It is, in every sense, a lens through which we might view not only birds, but ourselves—and the systems, values, and futures we build.

This book is written for a global audience. It is for the casual observer and the expert birder, for tourism professionals and field biologists, for policymakers seeking to balance economic development and conservation, and for communities welcoming birdwatchers into their lands and lives. While birdwatching may begin with simple curiosity, it leads us toward deeper questions: What does it mean to share space with other species? How do we travel without eroding the very places we seek to admire? In what ways can we transform passion into protection?

Each chapter is guided by the conviction that birdwatching is never merely about birds. It is about place. About practice. About ethics and economies. About the joys of discovery and the responsibilities of presence. By situating birdwatching within broader frameworks—scientific, touristic, ecological, and philosophical—this book aims to provide a panoramic view of a field that is as dynamic as the very creatures it follows.

This book, *The Art and Science of Birdwatching: Theories, Tourism Issues, Techniques, Tools and Ethics*, was authored by **Prof. Dr. Ismar Borges de Lima**, and significantly enriched through the scholarly contributions and coauthorship of a distinguished group of internationally recognized academics and professionals. Representing leading institutions from across the globe, these contributors brought invaluable expertise and regional insights to the interdisciplinary topics explored throughout the book. Among them are **Dr. Aggrey Thuo**, Associate Professor at Kenyatta University and Deputy Vice-Chancellor at JOOUST, Kenya; **Dr. Kennedy Rolando Lomas**, Emeritus Professor at Universidad Técnica del Norte (UTN), Ecuador; **Dr. Carmen Amelia Trujillo** and **Johanna Paulina Flores Ruano**, both professors at UTN, Ecuador; and **Armin Marcelo de la Rosa Patiño**, Executive President of the RECINATUR Foundation, Latin America. Additional contributions were made by **Tomas Cotrina Trigoso**, from Universidad César Vallejo and Universidad Nacional de San Martín, Peru; **Irma Brígida Suárez Rodríguez**, professor and geopark project leader at UASLP, Mexico; and **Dr. Carmen del Pilar Suárez Rodríguez**, a prominent STEM educator and researcher at CARHS-UASLP, Mexico. Valuable national perspectives were also provided by **Wilson de Moraes Sousa**, researcher at the State University of Roraima (UERR), Brazil, and **Paulo Gois**, a dedicated bird guide and environmental advocate from Caracaraí City Hall, Brazil. Their collective expertise and commitment to sustainability, conservation, and education significantly deepened the academic and practical relevance of this work.

I also recognize the paradoxes inherent in our pursuit. Birdwatching can be a tool for awareness, but also an engine of impact. It can protect habitats through economic value, yet also threaten them through unchecked visitation. As such, this book does not romanticize; it examines. It offers frameworks for ethical engagement, strategies for sustainable avitourism, and visions for an inclusive, tech-enhanced, conservation-aligned birdwatching future.

Ultimately, my hope is that this book will serve not just as a reference, but as an invitation—to step outside, to listen more deeply, and to see more clearly. The birds are already there. They always have been. This time, perhaps, we might choose to meet them with attention, respect, and care. Let me – thus - start the 'journey...the flight of birdwatching'.

Author's Note on Book Structure and Chapters Authorship

The book has been divided into three Major Sections: **Section I** – Foundations of Birdwatching and Avitourism, **Section II** - Birdwatching Case Studies – Global and Regional Perspectives, and **Section III** - Practice, Tools, Events, Technologies and the Future of Birdwatching. Each chapter in this book has been carefully written and edited **as an autonomous unit**, designed to be self-contained and independently cited, and the chapters are also internally divided into parts aiming at tidily organizing the content. While the chapters are interconnected thematically and structurally as part of the broader work, they can also stand alone as individual contributions to the academic fields of birdwatching tourism, conservation, and environmental studies. Readers and researchers are encouraged to reference individual chapters separately, and a suggested citation format is provided at the beginning or end of each chapter for this purpose. Please note that all chapters share the same ISBN as part of this unified publication.

This book is a non-profit academic, intellectual, and scientific contribution, made freely accessible to readers. It is intended to support open access to knowledge and learning, and

One of the main challenges in compiling and writing this book has been the inconsistency of data, figures, and classifications found across various sources—even when referring to the same species, location, or issue. These variations, which are common in biodiversity studies and rapidly evolving fields like ornithology and ecotourism, have made it difficult to ensure complete accuracy in certain sections. Readers are therefore **strongly encouraged to consult official institutional databases and globally recognized platforms**, particularly **citizen science initiatives**, for the most up-to-date and verified information on bird species and conservation status, etc. This book is conceived as a living document and will undergo ongoing revision. Any inconsistencies or limitations identified will be addressed in future editions, which are also planned to be published in **Spanish and Portuguese**. It is important to note that **Dr. Ismar Borges de Lima**, as the main author and editor, bears **full legal responsibility** for the contents herein and any related claims.

The main author is institutionally affiliated with the State University of Roraima (Universidade Estadual de Roraima – UERR) and RECINATUR Foundation for Research in Nature, Science, and Tourism, in addition to other institutions represented by contributors and co-authors of this work. These institutions have provided technical and editorial support, including layout, publication, and dissemination, in alignment with their missions to advance education, research, and environmental awareness.

— Ismar Borges de Lima
Universidade Estadual de Roraima – UERR
RECINATUR Foundation
Email: **ismar@uerr.edu.br**
Boa Vista, Roraima, Brazil
2025

Table of Content

Section I – Foundations of Birdwatching and Avitourism *(Concepts, Biology, Theory, and Ethics)*

Ismar Borges de Lima -*Universidade Estadual de Roraima-UERR, Brazil* & *RECINATUR Foundation.* Email: ismar@uerr.edu.br

This introductory chapter provides a multidimensional overview of the avian world and the emergence of birdwatching as a cultural, scientific, and tourism phenomenon. It situates birdwatching historically—from early scientific expeditions (e.g., Darwin, Audubon) to its contemporary manifestations through avitourism and citizen science. The chapter unpacks the terminology and typologies within bird-focused travel (e.g., birding vs. twitching, casual vs. specialist observers), establishing a nuanced vocabulary. It highlights birdwatching's psychological and therapeutic benefits, educational roles in conservation awareness, and contributions to biodiversity knowledge. Integrating examples from the U.S., UK, and Brazil, the chapter provides a global lens on how avitourism supports local economies, fosters community engagement, and bridges gaps between scientific and lay knowledge.

Ismar Borges de Lima – Universidade Estadual de Roraima-UERR, Brazil & RECINATUR Foundation. Email: ismar@uerr.edu.br

This chapter delivers an academically rigorous yet accessible review of avian biology tailored for both tourism professionals and bird enthusiasts. It covers the functional morphology of birds—highlighting skeletal adaptations for flight, feather evolution, and efficient respiratory systems. It connects biological principles with field behaviors relevant to tourists (e.g., lekking, migratory patterns, and vocalization). Taxonomic overviews are provided for major orders encountered in tourism hotspots (e.g., Passeriformes, Psittaciformes, Accipitriformes), supported by biome-specific examples. The chapter uses field case studies from the Pantanal (Brazil), Maungatautari (New Zealand), and the Manu Biosphere (Peru) to show how bird biology directly informs avitourism route design, interpretation content, and conservation messaging.

Ismar Borges de Lima – Universidade Estadual de Roraima-UERR, Brazil & RECINATUR Foundation. Email: ismar@uerr.edu.br

This chapter outlines the foundational concepts and global academic literature framing birdwatching and avitourism. It maps the terminological spectrum from "recreational birders" to "ornithological tourists," offering user segmentation based on commitment levels, motivations, and travel preferences. Drawing on works by Steven R. Martin, Cloke & Perkins, and Crouch & Desforges, it explores motivational theories (e.g., escape-seeking dichotomies), place attachment, and embodiment. It also analyzes market size data from the U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, BirdLife International, and national tourism boards, revealing avitourism's economic footprint. Comparative case studies include the United States' Great Texas Birding Trail and Japan's Wild Bird Society to show cross-cultural differences in institutionalization and growth trajectories.

Ismar Borges de Lima – Universidade Estadual de Roraima-UERR, Brazil & RECINATUR Foundation. Email: ismar@uerr.edu.br

This chapter presents an interdisciplinary theoretical arsenal for interpreting birdwatching tourism. It begins with Bryan's Recreation Specialization Theory to frame birder profiles along novice-expert continua, and applies Duffus & Dearden's Wildlife Tourism Model to situate birders within broader human–wildlife relations. Motivational theories—including Self-Determination Theory and Push–Pull Motivations—illuminate internal and external travel drives. Political Ecology is invoked to expose the power dynamics and environmental justice issues in biodiversity-rich contexts (e.g., Roraima, Costa Rica, Peru). Finally, Actor–Network Theory (ANT) is used to trace the relational entanglements among species, optics, mobile apps (e.g., eBird), and infrastructure, with real-world application to Viruá National Park (Brazil) and Sani Lodge (Ecuador).

- *Ismar Borges de Lima* – Universidade Estadual de Roraima-UERR, Brazil & RECINATUR Foundation. Email: ismar@uerr.edu.br
- *Armin Marcelo de la Rosa Patiño* – RECINATUR Foundation – Executive President. Email: marcelodelarosa@recinatur.org

Focusing on the ethical terrain of birdwatching, this chapter examines the consequences of unregulated tourism on sensitive species, particularly during breeding seasons or in habitat-fragmented zones. Drawing from environmental ethics (e.g., Leopold's Land Ethic, Regan's Animal Rights), it discusses commodification, voyeurism, and unintended disturbance. It also analyzes codes of conduct from Audubon Society, Nature Kenya, and the International Ecotourism Society. Specific cases include disputes over owl-baiting in North America, nest photography bans in Scandinavia, and local guide protocols in Manu, Peru. Ethical avitourism is framed as both a managerial and moral imperative, with guidelines for tour operators, policymakers, and citizen birders.

Section II – Birdwatching Case Studies – Global and Regional Perspectives *(Empirical Studies: Countries, Biomes, Cultures)*

Ismar Borges de Lima – Universidade Estadual de Roraima-UERR, Brazil & RECINATUR Foundation. Email: ismar@uerr.edu.br

This comprehensive case study addresses the tensions and synergies between avitourism and conservation in New Zealand, a country with the highest proportion of threatened birds among OECD nations. Divided into four analytical segments, it examines predator-free reserves (e.g., Tiritiri Matangi, Zealandia), the integration of Māori kaitiakitanga (guardianship) into sanctuary governance, and fiscal instruments like the International Visitor Conservation and Tourism Levy. It also explores "ecological islands" such as Maungatautari (see Chapter 7), as living laboratories for eco-restoration. The chapter proposes a model for balancing visitor growth with species recovery, using longitudinal monitoring and community–government–NGO partnerships.

Ismar Borges de Lima – Universidade Estadual de Roraima-UERR, Brazil & RECINATUR Foundation. Email: ismar@uerr.edu.br

This focused case study delves into Maungatautari's transformation into an avitourism and conservation powerhouse. Using primary data (annual visitor reports, species translocation records), the chapter documents ecological outcomes (e.g., recovery of the kākāpō, establishment of kōkako), financial structures (e.g., entry revenue, volunteer hours), and educational programming. The sanctuary's design and community governance are analyzed as a replicable model of "ornithological capital"—a socio-natural asset capable of generating conservation dividends, fostering scientific literacy, and sustaining local economies.

Chapter 8 – Costa Rica: Ecological Foundations and Landscapes of Birdwatching Tourism………… Page 311

- *Ismar Borges de Lima* – Universidade Estadual de Roraima-UERR, Brazil & RECINATUR Foundation. Email: ismar@uerr.edu.br

This chapter traces Costa Rica's journey as a birding destination through a biogeographic, policy, and tourism lens. It maps avian diversity across Pacific, Atlantic, and mountain ecoregions, with focal species like the Resplendent Quetzal and Great Green Macaw. Policy innovations such as the PES scheme and the SINAC-protected area network are analyzed. Field examples include the Savegre Valley circuit, Carara National Park, and community-led routes in the Río Navarro–Río Sombrero zone (based on Arias & Torres, 2024). The chapter offers a blueprint for avitourism as a convergence of conservation science, rural development, and green marketing.

Chapter 9 – South Africa and its Strategic Role within the Global Birdwatching Tourism Landscape: Diversity, Endemism, and Conservation………… Page 351

- *Ismar Borges de Lima* – Universidade Estadual de Roraima-UERR, Brazil & RECINATUR Foundation. Email: ismar@uerr.edu.br
- *Aggrey Thuo* – Kenyatta University, Kenya & Jaramogi Oginga Odinga University of Science and Technology. Email: aggreythuo@jooust.ac.ke / thuo.aggrey@ku.ac.ke

This chapter explores South Africa's strategic position in the global avitourism sector, underpinned by an extraordinary range of biomes—from the fynbos of the Cape Floristic Region (a biodiversity hotspot) to the savannas of Kruger National Park. It maps Important Bird Areas (IBAs) and high-profile species such as the Blue Crane, Cape Sugarbird, and Southern Ground Hornbill. Drawing from government data, BirdLife South Africa records, and community-tourism collaborations, the chapter outlines how birdwatching is embedded in conservation marketing and national biodiversity strategy. It also critically examines socio-ecological inequalities, arguing for a more inclusive avitourism that benefits historically marginalized communities.

Chapter 10 – Ecuador's Blueprint for Sustainable Birdwatching Tourism: From Cloud Forests to Coastlines………….. Page 385

- *Ismar Borges de Lima* – Universidade Estadual de Roraima-UERR, Brazil. Email: ismar@uerr.edu.br
- *Johanna Paulina Flores Ruano* – Universidad Técnica del Norte, Ecuador. Email: jpflores@utn.edu.ec
- *Carmen Amelia Trujillo* – Universidad Técnica del Norte, Ecuador. Email: car.tru@hotmail.com

- *Kennedy Rolando Lomas Tapia* – FUNEDES. Email: mail: funedesjournal@gmail.com
- *Carmen del Pilar Suárez Rodríguez* - South Huasteca Regional Academic Coordination (CARHS-UASLP), Mexico. Email: pilar.suarez@uaslp.mx

This chapter offers an integrative and empirically rich account of Ecuador's rise as a global birdwatching destination. It traces the country's species richness across major biogeographic regions, using case studies from Mindo, Yasuni, and the Galápagos Islands. The authors analyze national conservation tools such as the Socio Bosque program and payment-for-ecosystem-services (PES) models, while also discussing the role of Indigenous and local communities in avian ecotourism. It critically examines issues of access, benefit-sharing, and climate vulnerability. The chapter draws on international birding market data, highlighting how Ecuador's compact yet diverse geography supports high-yield, low-footprint tourism.

- *Ismar Borges de Lima* – Universidade Estadual de Roraima-UERR, Brazil. Email: ismar@uerr.edu.br
- *Tomas Cotrina Trigoso* – Universidad César Vallejo and Universidad San Martín, Peru. Email: tcotrina@unsm.edu.pe

This chapter unpacks Peru's complex avian geography—home to nearly 1,900 bird species—through the lens of tourism segmentation and conservation governance. It examines three nationally promoted birding circuits (North, Central, South), with illustrative case studies from Tambopata, Manu Road, etc. It explores the intersection of avitourism with the protected area network (SERNANP), IBAs, and Indigenous issues. Market data reveal different traveler types, including "hardcore" global listers and "softcore" ecotourists. The chapter also addresses structural challenges—like remote-area infrastructure and potential overtourism—and proposes capacity building, decentralized planning, and climate-sensitive strategies to ensure long-term sustainability.

- *Ismar Borges de Lima* – Universidade Estadual de Roraima-UERR, Brazil. Email: ismar@uerr.edu.br
- *Irma Brígida Suárez Rodríguez* - Universidad Autónoma de San Luís Potosí (UASLP), Mexico. RECINATUR Foundation - General Director UNESCO Global Geopark Project Leader. Email: irma.suarez@uaslp.mx

Framing Brazil as a continental-scale avitourism leader, this chapter navigates six major biomes—Amazon, Atlantic Forest, Cerrado, Caatinga, Pantanal, and Pampa—home to over 1,900 bird species. It examines flagship species (e.g., Hyacinth Macaw, Harpy Eagle, Lear's Macaw) and endemic-rich hotspots like Chapada Diamantina, and others. The analysis integrates tourism development with conservation initiatives from ICMBio, NGOs, and grassroots networks. Emphasis is placed on community-led experiences in the Northeast, and Indigenous birding routes. The chapter also outlines how Brazil's vast geographic, ecological, and cultural diversity offers segmented tourism products aligned with sustainability, education, and regional development.

- *Ismar Borges de Lima* – Universidade Estadual de Roraima-UERR, Brazil. Email: ismar@uerr.edu.br
- *Paulo Alberto da Costa Gois* – Bird guide, Caracaraí City Hall, Brazil. Email: goispaulinho@hotmail.com
- *Wilson de Moraes Sousa* – Researcher and public servant at Roraima State University – UERR, Brazil. Email: wsousa@uerr.edu.br

This chapter focuses on Roraima's underexplored yet ecologically rich birding landscapes, including the lavrado savannas, white-sand campinaranas, and the Guiana Shield uplands. With over 760 documented bird species, including threatened endemics like the Rio Branco Antbird, the chapter analyzes habitat diversity, biogeographic convergence, and conservation challenges. Case studies include fieldwork from Viruá National Park, BR-174 circuits, and Baixo Rio Branco floodplain hotspots. It integrates theoretical tools such as recreation specialization, motivational frameworks, political ecology, and Actor–Network Theory to map out the growing avitourism scene. It concludes with policy-oriented recommendations for inclusive governance, fire-smart management, and knowledge exchange among scientists, guides, and communities.

Section III – Practice, Tools, Events, Technologies, and the Future of Birdwatching *(Field Practice, Public Engagement, Tech, and Emerging Trends)*

Ismar Borges de Lima – Universidade Estadual de Roraima-UERR, Brazil. Email: ismar@uerr.edu.br

This practical chapter bridges theory and fieldcraft, outlining the essential tools and techniques of modern birdwatching—from binoculars and field guides to mobile apps like Merlin, BirdNET, and eBird. It introduces skill-building pathways for beginners and specialists, including sound ID, photography ethics, field note protocols, and habitat reading. The chapter also explores learning-by-doing approaches and Traditional Ecological Knowledge (TEK) among Amazonian and African guides. Illustrated by field examples from Costa Rica, Roraima, and New Zealand, it reveals how technology can enhance, but not replace, deep attentiveness, slow travel, and respectful engagement with birds and landscapes.

Ismar Borges de Lima – Universidade Estadual de Roraima-UERR, Brazil. Email: ismar@uerr.edu.br

This chapter explores birding festivals and scientific events as powerful catalysts for conservation, education, and economic activation. Drawing from examples like the Global BirdFair (UK), America's Biggest Week in Birding (USA), and Brazil's Avistar Brasil and Viruá Birding Fest, it maps their role in creating networks between birders, researchers, communities, and policymakers. It discusses how events contribute to citizen science data collection, destination branding, and regional development. Special focus is given to Brazil's emerging birding event ecosystem and its potential to decentralize ecotourism and stimulate local economies while promoting avian appreciation and environmental stewardship.

Ismar Borges de Lima – Universidade Estadual de Roraima-UERR, Brazil. Email: ismar@uerr.edu.br

The closing chapter envisions the transformative role of technology and citizen science in shaping the future of birdwatching. It examines trends like AI-powered identification, geospatial mapping, autonomous acoustic monitoring, and immersive virtual reality tours. The chapter evaluates how platforms like eBird, iNaturalist, and Xeno-canto are reconfiguring data flows and global participation. Ethical questions—such as digital surveillance of wildlife, AI bias in species recognition, and access inequality—are critically addressed. Case projections illustrate future scenarios for smart reserves, personalized eco-itineraries, and remote guided tourism. Ultimately, the chapter argues that the next two decades will redefine not just the tools but the very ethics and ecologies of birdwatching, demanding new modes of responsibility, reciprocity, and planetary stewardship.

Ismar Borges de Lima — Universidade Estadual de Roraima (UERR), Brazil · Fundación Red Iberoamericana de Ciencia, Naturaleza y Turismo (RECINATUR)

Armin Marcelo de la Rosa Patiño — Executive President, Fundación RECINATUR

Aggrey Thuo — Kenyatta University, Kenya · Jaramogi Oginga Odinga University of Science and Technology, Kenya

Johanna Paulina Flores Ruano — Universidad Técnica del Norte, Ecuador

Carmen Amelia Trujillo — Universidad Técnica del Norte, Ecuador

Kennedy Rolando Lomas Tapia — Fundación Ecuatoriana para el Desarrollo de la Ciencia, Educación y Salud (FUNEDES)

Carmen del Pilar Suárez Rodríguez — South Huasteca Regional Academic Coordination (CARHS-UASLP), Universidad Autónoma de San Luis Potosí, Mexico

Tomas Cotrina Trigoso — Universidad César Vallejo, Peru · Universidad Nacional de San Martín, Peru

Irma Brígida Suárez Rodríguez — Universidad Autónoma de San Luis Potosí (UASLP), Mexico · General Director, Fundación RECINATUR · UNESCO Global Geopark Project Leader

Paulo Alberto da Costa Gois — Bird Guide, Caracaraí City Hall, Brazil

Wilson de Moraes Sousa — Researcher and public servant, Universidade Estadual de Roraima (UERR), Brazil

Section I – Foundations of Birdwatching and Avitourism

(Concepts, Biology, Theory, and Ethics)

Chapter 1

Introduction: An Invitation to the Avian World and Birdwatching Tourism Context

Ismar Borges de Lima
Universidade Estadual de Roraima-UERR, Brazil &
RECINATUR Foundation. Email: ismar@uerr.edu.br

Summary

This opening chapter introduces readers to the captivating world of birds and the diverse human experiences that surround them. It traces the historical development of birdwatching—from early naturalist pursuits to its emergence as modern birding, avitourism, and ornithological tourism—highlighting how this activity has grown into both a recreational passion and a global conservation movement. The chapter defines key terms, situates birdwatching within cultural and scientific contexts, and reflects on its psychological and educational benefits. It also underscores the growing relevance of bird-focused travel in promoting environmental awareness and supporting biodiversity conservation across regions and communities.

---

1. The Universal Call: Why Birds Captivate Us

It often begins simply. A flash of impossible blue against the green canopy, a snatch of melody piercing the dawn quiet, the improbable architecture of a nest revealed in winter branches. Birds possess an uncanny ability to command our attention, drawing us momentarily out of ourselves and into the vibrant pulse of the natural world. This connection, felt by people across cultures and continents, is the heart of birdwatching – an activity that blends observation, curiosity, and a deep appreciation for the feathered beings that share our planet.

The appeal is multifaceted, touching upon fundamental aspects of human experience. For many, birdwatching offers a pathway to mindfulness and tranquility. The act of patiently observing, listening intently, and focusing on the intricate details of a bird's plumage or behavior can be profoundly calming, reducing stress and fostering a sense of presence. Studies suggest that time spent in nature, particularly engaging with elements like birdsong, can lower levels of stress hormones, decrease symptoms of anxiety and depression, and improve overall mood. The simple act of noticing birds, even in urban environments, has been linked experimentally to increased positive emotion and reduced distress. This mindful engagement restores attentional capacity, often depleted by the demands of modern life, allowing for a mental reset. Birdwatching becomes, in essence, a form of accessible meditation, grounding observers in the sensory details of the present moment.

Beyond the therapeutic, birdwatching satisfies a deep-seated human curiosity about the natural world. It is an entry point into the vast realm of science, prompting questions about adaptation, migration, ecology, and evolution. Identifying a species, learning its calls, understanding its behavior – these acts engage the mind, enhancing focus, memory, and cognitive flexibility. Each observation can be a small discovery, contributing to a larger understanding of life's interconnectedness. This intellectual stimulation is complemented by the sheer aesthetic pleasure birds provide. Their diverse forms, stunning colors, complex songs, and breathtaking aerial maneuvers offer endless fascination and inspiration, connecting us to beauty in its most dynamic forms. As environmental psychologists Stephen and Rachel Kaplan argue in their Attention Restoration Theory, natural environments foster "involuntary attention"—a form of effortless focus that gently captures the mind without requiring cognitive effort (Kaplan & Kaplan, 1989). This type of attention, often triggered by stimuli such as birdsong or the movement of wildlife, enables psychological restoration by allowing directed attention mechanisms to recover. Birdwatching, as a nature-based activity, exemplifies this process by immersing individuals in softly fascinating stimuli, contributing to reduced stress and improved mental clarity. This effortless noticing can evoke powerful feelings of awe, a sense of wonder that diminishes the self in a positive way and fosters a feeling of connection to something larger.

This profound connection between humans and birds is far from a modern phenomenon; it spans millennia and is deeply embedded in the cultural, symbolic, and subsistence practices of societies across the globe. Since the Paleolithic era, birds have played practical roles as sources of food, later becoming domesticated for meat and eggs, and even acting as collaborators in foraging practices, such as cormorant fishing in East Asia or the mutualistic guidance of honeyguides in parts of Africa. Yet their significance extends far beyond the utilitarian. Birds have long populated mythologies, religious narratives, and artistic traditions—from the dove associated with ancient goddesses in Mesopotamia and Greece, to Athena's owl symbolizing wisdom, to the crow as a trickster or sacred being in many Indigenous cosmologies. The recurrence of bird-human hybrids, such as angels or spirit beings, underscores a symbolic merging wherein birds embody attributes—freedom, transcendence, vigilance—that humans revere or aspire toward. In many Indigenous knowledge systems, birds are recognized as sentient beings with agency, occupying integral roles in ecological and spiritual networks.

This layered relationship is increasingly acknowledged in fields such as ethno-ornithology, which explores how birds are perceived, classified, and integrated into human cultural systems. As Tidemann and Gosler (2010) note, Indigenous communities often maintain nuanced taxonomies and interspecies knowledge that reflect long-term cohabitation and ethical stewardship of avian life. These knowledge systems challenge Western dichotomies between nature and culture, foregrounding a relational ontology in which birds are not objects of observation, but kin, teachers, and communicative partners in a shared world. Such perspectives are crucial to contemporary environmental humanities and conservation dialogues, which increasingly seek to integrate local cosmologies and epistemologies into global sustainability frameworks.

In this book, the terms **birdwatching tourism**, **avitourism**, and **ornithological tourism**—though recognized in existing literature as having distinct definitions and emphases—are used interchangeably for the sake of clarity and coherence. While some sources may differentiate these terms based on motivations (recreational vs. scientific), levels of specialization, or market segmentation, **this volume treats all three terms as referring broadly to travel and activities centered around the observation, appreciation, and study of birds in natural or semi-natural environments**. This inclusive usage reflects the fluid boundaries between leisure, education, and conservation that characterize the contemporary birdwatching experience. In this book, the author defines 'avitourism', 'birdwatching tourism', and 'ornithological tourism' as belonging to a type of 'specie focus tourism' within the spectrum of the wildlife tourism practices, and an encompassing definition is presented:

> **Avitourism** — commonly referred to in the literature as birdwatching tourism or ornithological tourism — is a specialized form of wildlife tourism that entails purposeful travel beyond one's usual environment (typically involving at least one overnight stay) with the primary motive of observing, identifying, and appreciating free-living birds in their natural habitats. Situated within the wider domain of wildlife tourism, it embraces the recreational, educational, scientific, and conservation-oriented dimensions of human–bird encounters, while recognizing the ethical responsibility to minimize disturbance to avifauna and the socio-economic opportunities such travel can generate for destination communities.

1.2 The Rise of Birdwatching as a Global Phenomenon: Intersections of Knowledge, Culture, and Technology

The journey of birdwatching from a niche interest to a global phenomenon mirrors broader shifts in scientific understanding, cultural values, and technological advancement. Its roots can be traced to 18th-century European naturalists like Gilbert White, whose detailed observations in *The Natural History of Selborne* (1789) marked a shift towards non-invasive study, and Thomas Bewick, whose illustrated *History of British Birds* (1797–1804) served as an early field guide [Chapter 3, 3.1]. The 19th century saw the rise of amateur ornithology and the formation of key institutions like the British Ornithologists' Union (1858) and the Royal Society for the Protection of Birds (RSPB) (1889), the latter crucially driven by activists campaigning against the plume trade and establishing an ethical foundation for bird conservation [Chapter 3, 3.1].

In the United States, John James Audubon's monumental *Birds of America* (1827–1838) ignited public fascination [Chapter 3, 3.2]. The founding of the National Audubon Society (1905) and the landmark Migratory Bird Treaty Act (1918) further cemented conservation ethics [Chapter 3, 3.2]. However, it was arguably Roger Tory Peterson's *Field Guide to the Birds* (1934), with its revolutionary identification system focusing on key field marks, that democratized birdwatching, empowering millions to participate regardless of formal training [Chapter 3, 3.2]. The 21st century ushered in a digital revolution. Platforms developed by institutions like the Cornell Lab of Ornithology, notably eBird (launched 2002) and the Merlin Bird ID app, have harnessed the power of citizen science and artificial intelligence [Chapter 3, 3.3]. eBird now stands as the world's largest biodiversity-related citizen science project, receiving over 100 million submissions annually and accumulating data from over 18.7 million checklists in 2023 alone. Merlin Bird ID boasts over 10 million active users globally. These tools, alongside digital photography, online databases, and social media communities (#BirdTwitter, #BirdTok), have connected enthusiasts worldwide, facilitated rapid information sharing (like rare bird alerts), and dramatically lowered the barrier to entry. Technology continues to evolve, with innovations like smart binoculars integrating image recognition [Chapter 3, 3.3] and virtual reality offering immersive experiences [Chapter 3, 3.3].

This surge in interest and accessibility is reflected in the significant economic scale of birdwatching and related tourism. The global birdwatching tourism market was estimated at approximately USD 62.7 billion in 2023 and is projected to experience robust growth, with forecasts suggesting it could reach between USD 95 billion and USD 117 billion by 2030-2033, expanding at a compound annual growth rate (CAGR) of around 6.1% to 6.4%. This specialized market is part of the larger wildlife tourism sector, which itself is a major economic force. In the United States alone, an estimated 96 million people aged 16 and over engaged in wildlife watching (predominantly bird-related activities like observing, feeding, or photographing birds) in 2022. This participation translates into substantial economic impact, with wildlife watchers contributing an estimated $250 billion to the US economy in 2022 through expenditures on equipment, travel, licenses, and fees. The market is also broadening demographically. While "enthusiastic birders" constitute a major segment , participation from "casual birders" is growing rapidly. Significant engagement comes from the 35-54 age group, often possessing disposable income for specialized travel, but the 65+ age group is also showing strong growth, seeking meaningful connections with nature. Travel styles are diversifying too, with growth noted among couples seeking shared experiences and solo travelers seeking immersive personal connections.

The trajectory of birdwatching reveals more than just linear growth; it highlights a convergence of forces. An evolving conservation ethic shifted the focus from exploitation to appreciation and protection. Simultaneously, technological innovations, from Peterson's field guides to today's AI-powered apps, made identification and participation dramatically more accessible to a wider audience. This increased participation, fueled by passion and facilitated by technology, has created a substantial and growing economic market. In turn, the recognition of this economic value provides powerful arguments for habitat conservation and sustainable tourism development, particularly in biodiversity-rich regions. Birdwatching thus sits at a fascinating and complex juncture – driven by personal passion, empowered by technology, recognized as an economic driver, and imbued with environmental responsibility. This amplification of reach and impact presents unprecedented opportunities for funding conservation and raising awareness, but it also brings significant challenges related to managing growth sustainably, a central theme explored throughout this book.

1.3. Global Birdwatching Tourism: A Growing and Valuable Market

Birdwatching tourism — also known as avitourism — is no longer just a pastime for a small group of nature lovers. Today, it is recognized as a major and fast-growing segment of global nature-based tourism. According to recent market studies, this sector generated between USD 60 billion and USD 66 billion in 2023–2024. Projections for the coming years are very optimistic: by 2030 to 2033, the market is expected to reach between USD 95 billion and USD 108 billion. This steady expansion reflects a compound annual growth rate (CAGR) of around 6.0% to 6.2%, depending on the report and forecast model used.

While specific numbers may vary slightly across market analyses, the general direction is clear: more people around the world are choosing to travel, both domestically and internationally, to observe birds in their natural habitats.

1.3.1. What's Driving This Global Growth?

Several key factors help explain the rising interest in birdwatching tourism:

Greater environmental awareness: As people learn more about biodiversity loss and the importance of conservation, there's growing interest in observing birds — widely seen as indicators of a healthy environment.

A shift toward meaningful travel: Many travelers now seek experiences that connect them with nature, offer personal fulfillment, and involve authentic cultural interactions. Birdwatching fits this demand perfectly, offering unique, peaceful moments in beautiful landscapes.

Wider participation: Birdwatching is becoming more popular among various groups. Although it was once mostly associated with older men, today more women, younger adults, and especially seniors aged 65 and older are joining in. This age group often has both the time and financial resources to travel.

Easy access to information: Apps, websites, social media, and online communities have made it much easier for beginners to learn about birdwatching and organize trips.

Improved travel infrastructure: Better roads, flights, and accommodations make once-remote birding destinations more accessible than ever.

1.3.2. Who Are the Birdwatchers?

Market research shows that the largest group of birdwatchers, in terms of spending, continues to be "enthusiastic birders" — people highly dedicated to the activity. They made up around 56% to 60% of the market in 2023.

However, there is a notable rise in a group known as "casual birders" — people who enjoy birdwatching during travel but aren't fully devoted to it. This segment is growing fast, with a CAGR of about 7%.

When looking at age groups, those between 35 and 54 years old contribute the most to market revenue (about 42%), likely because they are in their peak earning years and have the ability to spend on travel. Still, the 65+ age group is the fastest-growing segment, with an estimated growth rate of 7.5% per year, as more retirees look for active and nature-based experiences.

In terms of travel groups, couples made up the largest share by revenue in 2023 (about 37%), but solo travelers are increasing rapidly — with an estimated 7.2% annual growth rate — as more people seek personal discovery and peaceful interaction with nature. For a global avitourism market prospect (2023-2033), refer to Table 1.0.

These emerging patterns suggest important opportunities for destinations like Brazil to diversify their tourism offerings, expanding beyond the traditional image of older birding couples to attract younger travelers, solo explorers, and newcomers to birdwatching.

Table 1.0. Global Avitourism Market Snapshot (2023–2033)

Metric	Estimate / Trend
Market Size (2023/2024)	~ USD 60–66 Billion

Metric	Estimate / Trend
Projected Size (2030/2033)	~ USD 95–108 Billion
Growth Rate (CAGR)	~ 6.0–6.2% (2024–2030/33)
Main Growth Drivers	Rising conservation awareness, experiential travel trends, tech access, wide appeal
Top Traveler Segment	Enthusiastic Birders (~56–60% market share in 2023)
Fastest-Growing Traveler Segment	Casual Birders (projected ~7% CAGR)
Main Age Group (Revenue)	35–54 years (~42% share in 2023)
Fastest-Growing Age Group	65+ years (projected ~7.5% CAGR)
Main Group Type (Revenue)	Couples (~37% share in 2023)
Fastest-Growing Group Type	Solo Travelers (projected ~7.2% CAGR)
Geographic Scope	Global: Significant markets in North America, Europe, Asia-Pacific, Latin America, Middle East & Africa

1.3.3. The United States as a Case Study

To better understand the economic potential of birdwatching, the United States serves as a leading example, with detailed national data and well-established participation. According to the most recent edition of the *National Survey of Fishing, Hunting, and Wildlife-Associated Recreation* (2022), conducted by the U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, approximately 96 million Americans aged 16 and older — around 37% of the adult population — engaged in birdwatching during that year (U.S. Fish & Wildlife Service, 2022; SOS Save Our Songbirds, 2023).

This impressive level of participation translated into substantial economic impact. In 2022, U.S. birdwatchers spent a combined total of approximately USD 107.6 billion on their activities. Of this total:

- USD 14 billion went to travel-related costs, including accommodation, transportation, and food.
- Approximately USD 93 billion was spent on equipment and durable goods, such as binoculars, cameras, birding guides, feeders, nest boxes, and in some cases, the purchase of land for conservation purposes (Birdwatching Daily, 2023).

The broader economic ripple effects were even more impressive. Birdwatching in the U.S. generated a total economic output of USD 279 billion in 2022. It also:

- Supported about 1.4 million jobs
- Generated USD 90.2 billion in labor income
- Contributed more than USD 38 billion in tax revenue, including:
    - USD 7 billion to counties
    - USD 9 billion to states
    - USD 22 billion to the federal government (Audubon, 2023; All About Birds, 2023)

These figures confirm that birdwatching is not merely a leisure activity, but a significant economic sector. It is also worth noting that the 2022 survey included some methodological updates, such as online data collection and shorter questionnaires. While these adjustments may limit comparability with previous editions, they likely improved the survey's capacity to capture modern patterns of participation in wildlife-related recreation (U.S. Fish & Wildlife Service, 2022).

1.4. Feathered Sentinels in a Changing World: Conservation, Ethics, and the Future

Birds are more than just objects of beauty and fascination; they are vital components of ecosystems and sensitive indicators of environmental health. Their presence, absence, or changing behaviors can signal subtle or dramatic shifts in habitats, climate patterns, and overall ecological balance. The old adage of the "canary in the coal mine" holds true on a planetary scale, with birds acting as feathered sentinels whose fates are often intertwined with our own. Observing birds, therefore, connects us not just to individual creatures, but to the health and resilience of the landscapes they inhabit.

Recognizing this connection, the global birdwatching community has become a powerful force for conservation, primarily through the rise of citizen science. Platforms like eBird, managed by the Cornell Lab of Ornithology, have revolutionized ecological monitoring by crowdsourcing observations from millions of birders worldwide. With participants submitting millions of checklists annually (18.7 million in 2023) detailing species, location, time, and effort, eBird aggregates an unprecedented volume of data. This information allows scientists and conservation agencies to track bird populations, map migration routes, understand habitat use, and assess the impacts of climate change and land use alterations on a continental and even global scale – tasks previously impossible due to logistical and financial constraints.

In Brazil, platforms like WikiAves serve a similar function, harnessing the passion of local birdwatchers to fill knowledge gaps about the country's immense avifauna. This collective observation empowers individuals, transforming a personal hobby into a meaningful contribution to scientific understanding and conservation planning, fostering a deeper sense of stewardship among participants.

The leading discussion in here is about the '**Citizen Science**' as a technological democratization of bird data worldwide. The 'Citizen Science' is the common thread that links bird-data platforms (this topic is fully presented in Chapter 15). In simple terms, it means everyday people—bird-watchers, students, park rangers, or anyone with a smartphone—collect and share bird sightings. Big global portals such as **eBird, iNaturalist, WikiAves, Observation.org,** and **BirdTrack** make this easy: users enter what they saw, where, and when, often adding a photo or sound. These entries are instantly mapped, creating living atlases that scientists and planners could never build alone.

Different platforms use different rules to keep those sightings trustworthy. For example, **eBird** asks observers to list *every* species they notice on a walk and sends unusual records to regional experts for checking. **WikiAves** and **Xeno-canto** rely on friendly discussion among users—one person uploads a photo or song, others confirm or correct the identification. **CityBird**, which tracks birds hitting windows, requires a photo of each casualty so campaigners can prove where the danger spots are. No matter the approach, the goal is the same: turn enthusiastic volunteers into reliable data collectors.

Once the data are in, specialist hubs add extra value. Avibase keeps the names and check-lists consistent worldwide, while the **BirdLife Data Zone** reviews threats and sets conservation priorities. **GBIF** then gathers information from almost all the other platforms into one open database that anyone can download. Thanks to this flow—from a volunteer's single sighting to global maps and conservation plans—citizen science now drives faster research, smarter tourism planning, and better protection for birds everywhere, in language and tools that beginners and experts alike can use.

1.5 Economic Significance of Birdwatching Tourism: a 2024 Perspective and Beyond

Birdwatching tourism, also referred to as avitourism, has evolved into a major global economic sector within the broader nature-based tourism and ecotourism industries. In recent years, the sector has experienced exponential growth, driven by post-pandemic preferences for outdoor recreation, digital innovation, expanding avitourist demographics, and the rising visibility of emerging birding destinations in the Global South. Once considered a niche interest among hobbyists and scientists, birdwatching now constitutes a formidable driver of rural development, conservation finance, and local livelihoods. This section critically assesses the scale, distribution, dynamics, and sustainability of birdwatching tourism in 2024, with a particular focus on Brazil's emergent leadership in this field.

1.5.1. Global Market Valuation and Growth Dynamics

According to the **United Nations World Tourism Organization (UNWTO, 2023)**, birdwatching tourism generated **US$85 billion globally in 2024**, more than doubling from **US$41 billion in 2016** (USFWS). This reflects a compound annual growth rate (CAGR) of over 9%, positioning birdwatching as one of the fastest-growing segments of wildlife tourism. Key growth drivers include:

- A **post-pandemic boom in nature-based tourism**, as travelers increasingly prioritize health, open spaces, and meaningful connections with biodiversity (UNEP & WTO, 2023).
- Widespread use of **digital platforms and citizen science tools**, such as eBird, Merlin Bird ID, and iNaturalist, which lower the entry barriers for amateur birders and provide high-quality data for researchers and conservationists (Cornell Lab of Ornithology, 2024).
- Rapid expansion in **emerging birding markets** like Colombia, Brazil, India, and South Africa, which boast both high avian biodiversity and growing ecotourism infrastructure (BirdLife International, 2024).

A regional breakdown of the 2024 global market reveals:

- **North America**: US$32 billion (38% of the global total), dominated by the United States and Canada, with well-established domestic birding circuits.
- **Europe**: US$22 billion (26%), with the UK, Spain, and Scandinavia leading.
- **Asia-Pacific**: US$15 billion (18%), as countries like India, China, and Indonesia diversify their wildlife tourism offerings.
- **Latin America**: US$12 billion (14%), driven by biodiversity hotspots in Costa Rica, Peru, and increasingly, Brazil.

These figures confirm the centrality of birdwatching to both domestic tourism and international travel, positioning it as a reliable revenue source for many protected and rural areas.

1.5.2. Brazil's Avitourism Boom

Brazil has emerged as one of the fastest-growing birdwatching destinations in the world. With over 1,800 documented bird species—many of them endemic or endangered—it holds some of the richest avian biodiversity on the planet. Since 2020, the country has witnessed a **200% increase in international birdwatchers**, according to data from **ICMBio (2024)**.

In 2024, more than **300,000 international birdwatchers** visited Brazil, with an average trip expenditure of **US$1,200** per person, contributing an estimated **US$360 million annually** to the national economy (Brazilian Tourism Board, 2024). Key regions include:

- **Pantanal**: Globally renowned for its visibility of the **Hyacinth Macaw**, the Pantanal alone generates **US$25 million annually** through avitourism, contributing significantly to conservation and local employment.
- **Atlantic Forest**: The "Birding Routes of the Atlantic Forest" program has not only increased international visitation but also improved local incomes by **up to 40%** (SAVE Brasil, 2023).
- **Amazonia and Roraima**: While less developed, these areas show growing promise, particularly through **Indigenous-led tours** that combine ethno-ornithological knowledge with conservation-based tourism.

1.6. Economic Multipliers of Avitourism: Scope, Methodologies, and Global Insights

Birdwatching tourism, or *avitourism*, is increasingly recognized not only as a niche travel segment but also as a potent driver of local economic development—especially in rural and biodiverse regions. As birding grows in popularity globally, so too does its capacity to stimulate employment, support local entrepreneurship, and contribute to conservation-linked livelihoods.

In Brazil, for example, recent data from ICMBio (2024) indicates that **for every eight birdwatchers visiting rural destinations, one job is generated**. This includes employment for local birding guides, community tourism hosts, transportation providers, and staff working in eco-lodges and nature reserves. Remarkably, avitourism now contributes an estimated **12% of all ecotourism revenue in Brazil**, underscoring its rising prominence within the broader sustainable tourism economy.

At a global level, the financial impact of avitourism is both substantial and diverse, varying according to regional biodiversity, birding infrastructure, and data-reporting standards. The table below provides a snapshot of estimated annual revenues and employment generation based on 2024 data from the World Tourism Organization (UNWTO), BirdLife International, and national tourism boards (refer to Table 1.2):

Table 1.2 - Estimated Global Economic Impact and Employment from Avitourism (2024)

Country	Annual Revenue (USD)	Key Species	Jobs Generated
United States	$41 billion	Bald Eagle, Warblers	600,000+
Brazil	$450 million	Hyacinth Macaw, Toucans	50,000+
Costa Rica	$1.5 billion	Resplendent Quetzal	65,000
South Africa	$400 million	African Penguin, Sunbirds	18,000
India	$950 million	Bengal Florican, Great Hornbill	30,000

Sources: UNWTO (2024); BirdLife International (2024); National Tourism Reports

1.6.1. Interpreting the Figures: Estimations, Not Absolutes

While these statistics highlight avitourism's economic promise, it's important to clarify that they represent **estimates, not precise counts**. Economic impact assessments in tourism—and especially in nature-based tourism—rely on various **multiplier models** that capture direct, indirect, and induced effects.

How Are Avitourism Multipliers Calculated?

a. Direct Effects
These involve immediate and observable spending by tourists.
Example: A birder pays $100 for a half-day guided tour.
Measured via: Entrance fees, accommodation records, guide service bookings, and visitor surveys.

b. Indirect Effects
These include secondary expenditures within the local supply chain.
Example: A lodge sources food from nearby farmers; a guide buys optics from a local shop.
Measured via: Regional economic input-output models and business expenditure tracking.

c. Induced Effects
These refer to broader economic ripples—how locals spend their tourism earnings.
Example: A guide pays for household goods or dines at a restaurant, supporting other sectors.
Measured via: Employment statistics, income multipliers, and household consumption models.

1.6.2. Case in Point: Brazil's Multipliers

The estimate that **one job is created for every 8–10 birdwatchers** in Brazil is based on:

- **Average visitor spending** of around USD $500 per birdwatcher (covering guides, transport, lodging, food, fees).
- **Average annual rural wage benchmarks** of around USD $4,000 for nature-based tourism workers.

- **Cross-sector input-output analysis**, drawn from ICMBio's employment and visitor tracking surveys (2024).

Thus, **50,000+ jobs** linked to avitourism represent a **conservative estimate**, likely excluding a substantial informal workforce (e.g., unregistered guides, cooks, transport providers).

1.6.3. Methodological Considerations and Limitations

Economic models rely on **key assumptions**, and their outputs are influenced by:

- **Tourism density and duration of stay**
- **Regional purchasing power and cost of living**
- **Exchange rates, inflation, and political stability**
- **Accuracy of national and local data collection**

In international comparisons, these figures are **adjusted for purchasing power parity (PPP)** to better reflect real-world values (e.g., India's $950 million is not directly comparable to the U.S.'s $41 billion in terms of tourism volume or household impact).

1.6.4. Why These Estimates Are Useful—But Not Exact

Despite limitations, economic multipliers serve as **powerful tools** for:

- Advocating for investment in avitourism infrastructure and conservation.
- Designing policies that integrate biodiversity with sustainable rural development.
- Measuring progress toward nature-positive, low-carbon economies.

However, it is crucial to **avoid overpromising**. Whenever possible, it is best to:

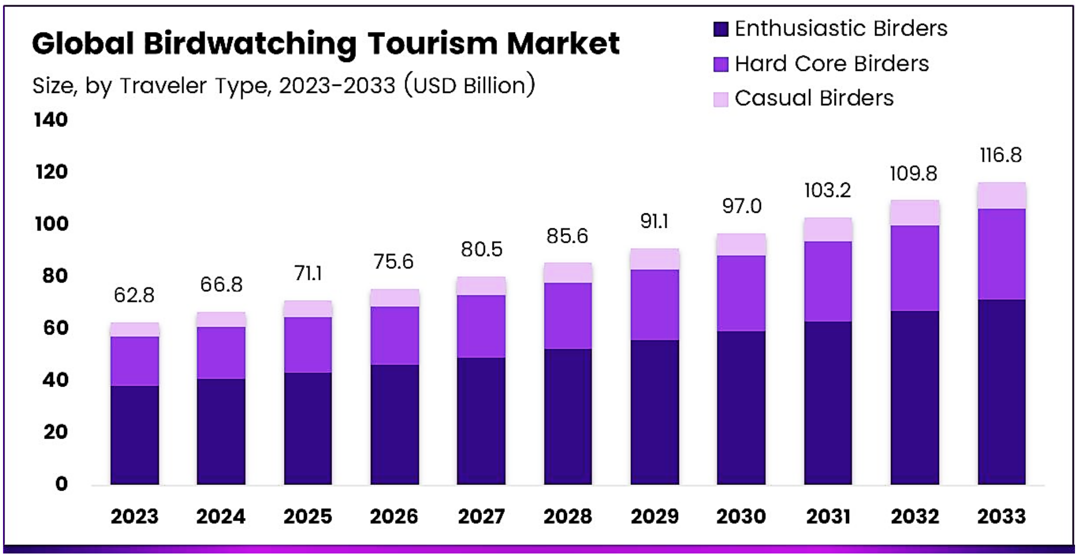
- Use **ranges** instead of fixed figures (e.g., *"45,000–50,000 jobs"*)
- Clearly **cite methodologies** (e.g., "based on input-output modeling, ICMBio 2024")
- **Acknowledge exclusions**, such as informal earnings or unquantified conservation value

1.6.5. Birdwatching Tourism as a Model for Eco-Inclusive Growth and a Booming Global Market

Birdwatching tourism is rapidly evolving into one of the most eco-inclusive and economically promising sectors within global travel. By intertwining biodiversity conservation with sustainable livelihoods, especially in rural and Indigenous regions, avitourism exemplifies a forward-looking, green economy model. As data reveal robust market growth and rising global demand, this nature-based niche positions itself at the intersection of environmental stewardship and inclusive economic opportunity. Avitourism is more than a leisure activity—it is a **model for inclusive, place-based economic development**. It taps into the power of biodiversity as an asset, channels revenue into rural and often underserved regions, and encourages both **conservation action** and **community resilience**.

As more countries recognize the value of birds not just as species to be saved, but as catalysts for sustainable livelihoods, the economic case for avitourism will only strengthen. These figures underscore the **employment intensity** and **distributive equity** of avitourism. Unlike mass tourism, which often concentrates benefits in urban hubs, birdwatching channels revenue into **rural, remote, and Indigenous areas**—offering an important pathway toward sustainable livelihoods and habitat protection.

The chart below, prepared by Market.us, illustrates the projected growth of the global birdwatching tourism market from 2023 to 2033, segmented by traveler type: Enthusiastic Birders, Hard Core Birders, and Casual Birders. Starting at $62.8 billion in 2023, the market is expected to almost double to $116.8 billion by 2033, representing a compound annual growth rate (CAGR) of 6.4%. The most substantial share throughout the forecast period belongs to enthusiastic birders, followed by hard core birders, with casual birders comprising the smallest segment but still showing steady growth. The data reflects increasing global interest in birdwatching across all levels of specialization. Notably, by 2030 the market crosses the $100 billion mark, signaling strong demand not only among expert birders but also in the growing casual and hobbyist segments. This trend underscores birdwatching's rising appeal as a form of sustainable, educational, and recreational travel. As such, destinations, policymakers, and businesses have an opportunity to develop targeted infrastructure and inclusive marketing strategies that cater to this expanding and diverse avitourism demographic.



Source: Market.us. Birdwatching Tourism Market. Published date: Jan 2025. Available at: https://market.us/report/birdwatching-tourism-market/

1.6.6. Conservation Financing and Community Benefits

Birdwatching tourism plays a pivotal role in **conservation finance**, offering stable, recurring revenue streams for protected area management and community-based conservation. Mechanisms include:

- **Park Fees**: In countries like Rwanda, birding-related visitation to areas such as Nyungwe National Park covers **up to 30% of annual conservation budgets**.

- **Community Levies**: In Peru's Manu Biosphere Reserve, a mandatory **US$5–20/night "conservation surcharge"** supports trail maintenance, species monitoring, and local ranger salaries.
- **Corporate-NGO Partnerships**: Companies like Nikon sponsor citizen science platforms via donations (e.g., **"$1 per photo"** uploaded to eBird under the *Birds for Conservation* campaign), combining marketing with biodiversity finance.

Such models align with the **triple bottom line**—providing economic, environmental, and social benefits—and highlight birdwatching tourism's potential as a vehicle for **biodiversity mainstreaming and climate adaptation**.

1.7. Birdwatching tourism: a global ecotourism niche combining recreation, education, and conservation

As already mentioned, birdwatching tourism, or *avitourism*, has evolved into a globally significant niche within the broader ecotourism market, combining recreation, environmental education, and conservation impact. Internationally, birdwatchers travel thousands of kilometers to catch a glimpse of rare, endemic, or migratory species in landscapes of striking ecological value. Some of the world's most iconic birding destinations include the **Pantanal wetlands** and **Atlantic Forest** of Brazil; the **Danube Delta** in Romania; the **Kruger National Park**, **Okavango Delta** in Botswana, and **Bwindi Impenetrable Forest** in Uganda, all of which attract international birders in search of Africa's unique avifauna. In the Americas, countries like **Guyana**, **Colombia**, **Ecuador**, **Peru**, and **Chile** are increasingly recognized for their rich birdlife and growing avitourism infrastructure. In **New Zealand**, endemic species such as the **kiwi**, **tūī**, and **kākā** draw birders to remote islands and conservation reserves, while **Australia** boasts world-class birding in regions like **Kakadu National Park**, the **Atherton Tablelands**, and **Tasmania**, with species ranging from bowerbirds to parrots and the endangered **Gouldian finch**. Sites such as **Doñana National Park** in Spain, **Yellowstone** and the **Rio Grande Valley** in the United States, and the **cloud forests of Monteverde** in Costa Rica are also internationally celebrated. In **Sichuan and Yunnan**, China, endemic pheasants and laughingthrushes attract ornithologists and amateur birders alike, while **Rift Valley lakes** in Kenya and Ethiopia are famous for their massive flamingo congregations. These hotspots, often located in or near protected areas, generate millions in tourism revenue while supporting conservation education, habitat restoration, and local livelihoods. Birding, birdwatching tourism, biodiversity, landscapes, and other ecological, ethical, geographical themes, including public policies, in some of these countries are widely discussed as case studies in specific chapters in this book.

In **Brazil**, a megadiverse country with over 1,900 recorded bird species, avitourism plays an increasingly important role in the sustainability and diversification of the ecotourism sector. While destinations like **Itatiaia National Park**, **Serra da Canastra**, **Chapada dos Veadeiros**, and the **Pantanal** are well-established on the international birding circuit, **Amazonian birdwatching routes** remain relatively underdeveloped but exceptionally rich in potential. In this context, the northern state of **Roraima** stands out as a critical area for future avitourism development. The **Viruá National Park**, located in the municipality of **Caracaraí**, offers a remarkable diversity of avian species—many of them endemic, near-threatened, or rarely observed in other parts of the continent. The park's mosaic of *campinarana* (white-sand forests), terra firme, and floodplain ecosystems supports over **500 recorded bird species**, including iconic Amazonian species such as the **Guianan cock-of-the-rock (Rupicola rupicola)**, **capuchinbird (Perissocephalus tricolor)**, and elusive antbirds and woodcreepers found only in restricted biomes. Despite its outstanding biodiversity, Caracaraí remains largely absent from mainstream tourism itineraries, underscoring both the **untapped potential** and the **strategic need** for investments in low-impact infrastructure, community engagement, and integrated conservation-tourism models. When effectively planned and managed, such initiatives can position Roraima—and Viruá in particular—as a **global reference point** for sustainable avitourism in the Amazon biome.

1.8. Destinations Discovering the World's Premier Birdwatching Destinations: A Global Survey of Avian Richness and Ecotourism Potential

Birdwatching tourism, commonly referred to as **avitourism**, signifies travel undertaken primarily to observe birds within their natural habitats. This activity has transcended its origins as a specialized hobby to become a significant and rapidly expanding component of global nature-based tourism, effectively merging recreational pursuits with scientific observation and conservation engagement. Its increasing prominence is propelled by converging factors: heightened global environmental awareness, dedicated biodiversity conservation initiatives, the proliferation of accessible digital technologies facilitating species identification and data sharing (such as Merlin Bird ID and the eBird platform), and a growing demand for authentic, low-impact ecological travel. Consequently, avitourism engages a diverse spectrum of participants worldwide—from casual enthusiasts to dedicated ornithologists—often contributing substantially to local economies and conservation financing within key biodiversity areas.

Given the immense global diversity of avifauna, estimated to exceed 11,000 species (Cornell Lab of Ornithology, 2023), this text does not attempt an exhaustive **survey**. Instead, it presents a curated **selection** of fourteen premier global **destinations** and key **sites** recognized for exceptional avian richness and established potential for sustainable avitourism. This selection was carefully informed by a synthesis of information drawn from diverse authoritative and specialized **online sources and literature**. Foundational data were gathered from international conservation assessments (notably BirdLife International's Important Bird and Biodiversity Area inventories), official documentation from national park services and protected area agencies across relevant nations (including Parques Nacionales de Colombia, SERNANP Peru, KWS Kenya, SANParks South Africa, CONANP Mexico, Parks Australia, among others), UNESCO World Heritage and Biosphere Reserve listings, and established ornithological repositories like the Cornell Lab of Ornithology and eBird. Insights were also cross-referenced with specialized online wildlife travel resources (such as WildlifeNomads.com), community platforms (like Birda.org), and relevant publications. Destinations were ultimately chosen based on criteria encompassing high species diversity, significant levels of endemism, accessibility via existing ecotourism infrastructure, and demonstrable relevance to contemporary avian conservation efforts.

The following discussion **elucidates** the unique ecological attributes and **avitourism** contexts of these **fourteen selected locations**. The scope spans the globe, featuring detailed accounts of Neotropical powerhouses **Colombia**, **Peru**, **Brazil**, **Ecuador**, **Costa Rica**, and **Mexico**; the endemic-rich archipelagos and landmasses of **Indonesia**, **Papua New Guinea**, and **Australia**; the celebrated birdlife of **Kenya** and **South Africa**; and the diverse subcontinent of **India**. Completing this selection are focused explorations of two internationally significant **sites** known for concentrated avian activity: the vital wetland habitats of **Estero Llano Grande State Park** in Texas, USA, and the critical migratory monitoring post at **Ottenby Bird Observatory** in Sweden.

1.8.1. Colombia: The World's Birding Capital

Overview: Colombia remains one of the world's most bird-rich nation, boasting approximately **1,966 recorded species** (BirdLife International, 2024), representing nearly **20% of global avifauna**. Its unique geography—spanning the Andes, Amazon, Pacific and Caribbean coasts, and inter-Andean valleys—drives this exceptional diversity, with **over 80 endemic species**. Its ecotourism infrastructure continues to improve, granting access to key hotspots. Colombia has made **birdwatching a national identity strategy**, promoting itself as *The Birdwatching Capital of the World*. It has invested heavily in bird tourism, monitoring, and international events like the Global Big Day. Organizations such as *ProColombia*, *Colombia Birdfair*, and local NGOs have built global perception based on solid birding infrastructure and branding—whereas Brazil, despite its avian wealth, has not centralized this effort to the same degree. Platforms like **eBird** consistently show Colombia topping annual species records, thanks to a very active domestic and international birding community. During events like the **Global Big Day**, Colombia frequently leads the world in both **species observed** and **checklists submitted**, reinforcing its image as #1. See key data for Colombia:

Key Birding Sites:

- *Otún Quimbaya Fauna and Flora Sanctuary*: Cloud forests with tanagers and antpittas.
- *Los Nevados National Natural Park*: High-altitude páramo with Andean Condors.
- *Tayrona National Natural Park*: Caribbean lowland and dry forest specialists.
- *Serranía de San Lucas*: Post-conflict biodiversity hotspot.

Notable Species:

- *Andean Cock-of-the-rock* (*Rupicola peruvianus*)
- *Santa Marta Parakeet* (*Pyrrhura viridicata*) – **Critically Endangered**
- *Multicolored Tanager* (*Chlorochrysa nitidissima*) – **Endemic**
- *Yellow-eared Parrot* (*Ognorhynchus icterotis*) – **Endangered**, recovering
- *Blue-billed Curassow* (*Crax alberti*) – **Critically Endangered**

1.8.2. Peru: Amazonian Majesty and Andean Treasures

Overview: Peru is among the top five most bird-diverse countries globally, with about **1,870 species**. From the Amazonian lowlands to the Andes and coastal deserts, Peru's altitudinal and habitat gradients support remarkable endemism and biodiversity. To learn more about it, read Chapter eleven that explores Peruvian Birding across biogeographies by presenting circuits, communities, and the architecture of sustainable tourism.

- **Key Birding Sites**:
  - *Manu National Park* – UNESCO site, biodiversity hotspot
  - *Tambopata National Reserve* – Known for macaw clay licks
  - *Machu Picchu Sanctuary* – Birding amidst Incan ruins
  - *Colca Canyon* – Reliable *Andean Condor* sightings

- **Notable Species**:
  - *Marvelous Spatuletail* (*Loddigesia mirabilis*) – **Endemic**
  - *Andean Cock-of-the-rock* (*Rupicola peruvianus*)
  - *Inca Tern* (*Larosterna inca*)
  - *Harpy Eagle* (*Harpia harpyja*) – **Rare in Peru**, but present
  - *Rufous-crested Coquette* (*Lophornis delattrei*)

1.8.3. Brazil: Continental Giant of Birdlife

Overview: With an estimated **1,971 bird species**, Brazil rivals Colombia in diversity and harbors **over 250 endemics**. Major biomes include the Amazon, Pantanal, Cerrado, Caatinga, and Atlantic Forest—each rich in distinct avifaunas. Chapter 11 of this volume explores Brazil's avifauna across six biomes. The chapter connects biodiversity with growing avitourism markets, conservation policies, and socio-ecological narratives. And Roraima province, situated in the northern Amazonia of Brazil, is given special attention in Chapter 12.

Key Birding Sites:

- *Pantanal*: Waterbirds and *Hyacinth Macaws*; Cuiabá–Porto Jofre route
- *Amazon Basin*: Includes reserves like Cristalino and Mamirauá
- *Itatiaia National Park*: Atlantic Forest endemics
- *Serra dos Tucanos*: Lodge-based forest birding

Notable Species:

- *Hyacinth Macaw* (*Anodorhynchus hyacinthinus*)
- *Toco Toucan* (*Ramphastos toco*)
- *Harpy Eagle* (*Harpia harpyja*)
- *Brazilian Merganser* (*Mergus octosetaceus*) – **Critically Endangered**
- *São Paulo Antwren* (*Formicivora paludicola*) – **Micro-endemic, CR**

1.8.4. Indonesia: Archipelago of Endemism

Overview: Indonesia comprises over **17,500 islands** and harbors about **1,822 species**, with **540+ endemics**, especially in Wallacea and Papua.

Key Birding Sites:

- *Lorentz National Park*: Papua's vast altitudinal range
- *Gunung Gede Pangrango*: Javan montane endemics
- *Kerinci Seblat*: Sumatran highlands
- *Wallacea Islands*: Sulawesi, Halmahera, etc.

Notable Species:

- *Bali Myna* (*Leucopsar rothschildi*) – **Critically Endangered**
- *Red Bird-of-paradise* (*Paradisaea rubra*)
- *Wallace's Standardwing* (*Semioptera wallacii*)
- *Sulawesi Hornbill* (*Rhabdotorrhinus exarhatus*) – **Confirm taxonomy: may appear as *Rhyticeros***

- *Javan Hawk-Eagle* (*Nisaetus bartelsi*) – **Endangered**

To note: Illegal bird trade, especially of parrots and songbirds, remains a serious conservation threat.

1.8.5. Ecuador: Compact and Biodiverse

Overview: Ecuador hosts **1,750+ bird species**, with ecosystems from the Amazon to the Andes and the Galápagos, all within short travel distances. Refer to chapter ten as it is entirely about birdwatching in Ecuador, as well as its protected areas, and tourism advances in terms of sustainability, particularly in the avitourism niche.

Key Birding Sites:

- *Yasuní Biosphere Reserve*
- *Mindo Cloud Forest*
- *Podocarpus National Park*
- *Galápagos Islands*

Notable Species:

- *Sword-billed Hummingbird* (*Ensifera ensifera*)
- *Andean Condor* (*Vultur gryphus*)
- *Toucan Barbet* (*Semnornis ramphastinus*)
- *Booted Racket-tail* (*Ocreatus underwoodii*)
- *Hoatzin* (*Opisthocomus hoazin*)

To note: Community-based lodges (e.g., Kapawi, Sacha) are leaders in conservation-tourism integration.

1.8.6. Costa Rica: A Sustainability Model

Overview: With **930+ species**, Costa Rica offers accessible birding supported by a world-leading conservation framework—**over 25% of land is protected**. Chapter eight is dedicated to presenting the overall aspects regarding Costa Rica's birdwatching infrastructure, biodiversity, and national ecotourism strategies. It highlights the role of birding in conservation, rural development, and ecosystem service valuation across protected and private lands.

Key Birding Sites:

- *Monteverde Cloud Forest*
- *Carara National Park*
- *Corcovado National Park*
- *La Selva Biological Station*

Notable Species:

- *Resplendent Quetzal* (*Pharomachrus mocinno*)
- *Scarlet Macaw* (*Ara macao*)
- *Keel-billed Toucan* (*Ramphastos sulfuratus*)

- *Three-wattled Bellbird* (*Procnias tricarunculatus*)
- *Mangrove Hummingbird* (*Amazilia boucardi*) – **Endemic, Endangered**

1.8.7. Kenya: Rift Valley's Avian Drama

Overview: Hosting over **1,150 species**, Kenya blends classic safaris with superb birding across lakes, savannahs, forests, and mountains.

Key Birding Sites:

- *Lake Nakuru National Park*
- *Maasai Mara*
- *Amboseli National Park*
- *Kakamega Forest*

Notable Species:

- *Lilac-breasted Roller* (*Coracias caudatus*)
- *Grey Crowned Crane* (*Balearica regulorum*) – **Endangered**
- *Superb Starling* (*Lamprotornis superbus*)
- *Secretarybird* (*Sagittarius serpentarius*)
- *Vulturine Guineafowl* (*Acryllium vulturinum*)

1.8.8. Mexico: Crossroads of the Americas

Overview: With **1,130+ species** and **130+ endemics**, Mexico bridges bioregions with an exceptional mix of habitats.

Key Birding Sites:

- *El Triunfo Biosphere Reserve*
- *Sian Ka'an and Celestún* (Yucatán)
- *San Blas* (Pacific coast)

Notable Species:

- *Resplendent Quetzal* (*Pharomachrus mocinno*)
- *Yucatán Jay* (*Cyanocorax yucatanicus*)
- *Elegant Trogon* (*Trogon elegans*)
- *Bumblebee Hummingbird* (*Atthis heloisa*) – **Tiny, limited-range species**
- *Horned Guan* (*Oreophasis derbianus*) – **Critically Endangered**

1.8.9. Australia: Land of Avian Marvels

Overview: Australia's **935 bird species** include **over 400 endemics**, with whole families found nowhere else. As a note, the Chapter six of this book covers the main aspects of birding-based tourism, birdlife and biodiversity, and conservation aspects of New Zealand. It is also rewardable to get informed about this country situated in Oceania.

Key Birding Sites:

- *Kakadu National Park*
- *Daintree Rainforest*
- *Lamington National Park*
- *Broome Bird Observatory*

Notable Birds:

- *Superb Lyrebird* (*Menura novaehollandiae*)
- *Laughing Kookaburra* (*Dacelo novaeguineae*)
- *Southern Cassowary* (*Casuarius casuarius*) – **Restricted to NE Queensland**
- *Gouldian Finch* (*Chloebia gouldiae*) – **Endangered**
- *Emu* (*Dromaius novaehollandiae*)

1.8.10. India: Subcontinental Birding Odyssey

Overview: India supports **over 1,360 bird species**, with remarkable ecological and cultural diversity. Its fauna includes Palearctic migrants and Oriental endemics across landscapes ranging from the Himalayas and Western Ghats to the Thar Desert and Sundarbans.

Key Birding Sites:

- *Keoladeo National Park (Bharatpur)* – Ramsar-listed wetland sanctuary, historically known for Siberian Cranes (now extirpated)
- *Jim Corbett National Park* – Himalayan foothills, raptors and riverine birds
- *Eaglenest Wildlife Sanctuary (Arunachal Pradesh)* – Eastern Himalayan hotspot, home of the **Critically Endangered** *Bugun Liocichla*
- *Thattekad Bird Sanctuary (Kerala)* – Western Ghats endemics

Key Species:

- *Indian Peafowl* (*Pavo cristatus*) – National bird of India
- *Himalayan Monal* (*Lophophorus impejanus*) – Spectacular pheasant
- *Great Hornbill* (*Buceros bicornis*) – Forest canopy specialist
- *Sarus Crane* (*Antigone antigone*) – The **tallest flying bird**, **Vulnerable**
- *Indian Pitta* (*Pitta brachyura*) – Brilliantly colored migrant

1.8.11. Papua New Guinea: Theater of Birds of Paradise

Overview: The eastern half of New Guinea, **Papua New Guinea (PNG)**, is home to about **840 bird species**, including **over 90 land bird endemics**. Known for its cultural complexity and remote rainforests, PNG is a pilgrimage site for birders seeking Birds-of-Paradise.

Key Birding Sites:

- *Varirata National Park*: Near Port Moresby, rich in accessible lowland/montane species
- *Tari Valley (Southern Highlands)*: Legendary for *Birds-of-Paradise*
- *Kiunga*: Lowland specialists and river-based access to forest reserves

Spectacular Species:

- *Raggiana Bird-of-paradise* (*Paradisaea raggiana*) – **National bird of PNG**
- *Blue Bird-of-paradise* (*Paradisaea rudolphi*) – Known for its upside-down displays
- *King of Saxony Bird-of-paradise* (*Pteridophora alberti*) – With unique head wires
- *Palm Cockatoo* (*Probosciger aterrimus*) – Striking, drumming cockatoo
- *Southern Cassowary* (*Casuarius casuarius*) – Shared with Australia; rainforest giant

To note: Travel logistics can be challenging due to limited infrastructure; most birding is lodge-based or guided.

1.8.12. South Africa: Avitourism Meets Big Game Safaris

Overview: With **around 860 bird species**, **South Africa** offers a unique avitourism product combining rich endemism and charismatic megafauna. The Fynbos and Karoo biomes support many localized species, while coastal, forest, and savannah zones broaden the birding spectrum. Chapter nine of this volume is entirely about the birdwatching issues and resources in South Africa.

Key Birding Sites:

- *Kruger National Park* – Big Five and over 500 bird species
- *Cape Peninsula* – Fynbos endemics and seabirds
- *West Coast National Park* – Waders, wetlands, spring wildflowers
- *Wakkerstroom* – High-altitude grassland endemics

Signature Species:

- *Cape Sugarbird* (*Promerops cafer*) – Fynbos endemic, Protea specialist
- *Blue Crane* (*Anthropoides paradiseus*) – **Vulnerable**, **national bird**
- *African Penguin* (*Spheniscus demersus*) – Coastal colonies like Boulders Beach
- *Lilac-breasted Roller* (*Coracias caudatus*) – Shared with East Africa
- *Malachite Kingfisher* (*Corythornis cristatus*) – Widespread near wetlands

1.8.13. Estero Llano Grande State Park, Texas, USA: Wetland Gem of North America

Overview: This standout site in the Lower Rio Grande Valley, Texas, is one of the top hotspots for birders in the U.S. Its wetlands, thorn scrub, and woodland edge habitats host **hundreds of species**, especially at the **Neotropical–Nearctic interface**. It's a cornerstone of the World Birding Center network.

Key Species:

- *Roseate Spoonbill* (*Platalea ajaja*)
- *Altamira Oriole* (*Icterus gularis*) – Limited U.S. range
- *Green Jay* (*Cyanocorax yncas*) – **Taxonomic note**: Subspecies complex; IOC review pending
- *Plain Chachalaca* (*Ortalis vetula*) – Vocal and conspicuous

- *Least Grebe* (*Tachybaptus dominicus*) – **At northern range limit**

To note: Occasionally, Mexican vagrants (e.g., *Social Flycatcher*, *Masked Tityra*) appear and generate great interest.

1.8.14. Ottenby Bird Observatory, Sweden: Nordic Migration Hotspot

Overview: Located at the southern tip of Öland Island in the Baltic Sea, Ottenby is one of Europe's most important migration stations. It operates a long-term banding and monitoring program and is especially active during **spring and autumn** migration peaks.

Key Species (especially during migration):

- *White-tailed Eagle* (*Haliaeetus albicilla*)
- *Eurasian Curlew* (*Numenius arquata*) – **Near Threatened**
- *Red-backed Shrike* (*Lanius collurio*)
- *Common Rosefinch* (*Carpodacus erythrinus*)
- *Barnacle Goose* (*Branta leucopsis*)

To note: The observatory provides excellent educational outreach and citizen-science participation opportunities, with observation towers and migration exhibitions.

Some Remarks

This global survey represents a diverse spectrum of birdwatching opportunities—ranging from high-endemism islands and biodiversity hotspots to specialized sites of migratory importance. In each case, avitourism is deeply interwoven with conservation, community engagement, and national policy. The data for the Section 3.2 and the Table on the fourteen countries were obtained by consulting and verifying across a range of reliable sources, as follows, but it is highly recommended to crosscheck figures, numbers, and information for updated and accurate statistics. The sources consulted are:

- BirdLife International – through their *Data Zone* platform, which provides up-to-date country-level bird species statistics and endemism figures.
- Avibase – The World Bird Database, managed by Bird Studies Canada, which offers comprehensive national and regional checklists based on major taxonomic authorities.
- Burung Indonesia, a leading ornithological organization, particularly for bird species and endemic data in Indonesia.
- ProColombia (2024), the national tourism promotion agency, which published official figures for Colombia's bird species richness following global birdwatching events.
- Texas Parks and Wildlife Department, which publishes bird lists and biodiversity information for Estero Llano Grande State Park and other key locations in the state.
- Ottenby Bird Observatory (Sweden), which maintains public records and summaries of migratory bird monitoring on the Baltic coast.
- Down To Earth (2024), an Indian environmental and science publication that reported national bird count data during the Great Backyard Bird Count initiative.

- Wikipedia species lists, particularly when cross-referenced with scientific checklists, were also used for countries such as Kenya where consolidated lists are not always available in a single official source.

Each of these sources was used to ensure that the bird species counts and endemic figures are accurate, current (as of 2024), and geographically relevant to the respective countries or birding sites. The Table 3.0 provides a good visual overview for the data as presented from subsection 3.2 to 3.2.14:

Table 3.0 – Global Birdwatching Destinations Overview for the 14 Countries in Section 3.2.

Global Birdwatching Destination Overview – Data of 14 Countries

Country/Site	Estimated Bird Species (2024)	Approx. Endemics	Key Biomes/Habitats	Notable Endangered Species
Colombia	1966	80	Andes, Amazon, coasts	Blue-billed Curassow
Peru	1870	120	Amazon, Andes, coast	Marvelous Spatuletail
Brazil	1971	250	Amazon, Cerrado, Pantanal, Atlantic Forest	Brazilian Merganser
Ecuador	1750	50	Amazon, Andes, Galápagos	Bali Myna
Costa Rica	930	10	Cloud forests, rainforests	Mangrove Hummingbird
Mexico	1130	130	Deserts, mountains, forests	Horned Guan
Indonesia	1822	540	Rainforests, islands, Wallacea	Javan Hawk-Eagle
Australia	935	400	Rainforests, savannahs, desert	Gouldian Finch
India	1360	75	Himalayas, Ghats, wetlands	Bugun Liocichla
Papua New Guinea	840	90	Rainforests, highlands	King of Saxony Bird-of-paradise
Kenya	1150	11	Rift Valley, savannah	Grey Crowned Crane
South Africa	860	35	Fynbos, savannah, Karoo	Blue Crane
Estero Llano Grande (USA)	500	10 (regional)	Wetlands, thorn scrub	Green Jay (subspecies)
Ottenby Observatory (Sweden)	400	5 (migrants)	Baltic coast, forested island	Eurasian Curlew

1.9. Mapping the Future of Global Birdwatching

These fourteen destinations, encompassing both globally significant countries and exemplary localized sites, showcase the breathtaking diversity of the avian world and the rich experiences birdwatching offers. From the high Andes to tropical rainforests, remote islands to crucial migratory stopovers, each location provides unique opportunities to connect with nature, appreciate ecological wonders, and support conservation. Avitourism, when practiced responsibly, serves as a vital tool for funding protected areas (e.g., park fees directly supporting conservation), engaging local communities (e.g., training guides, supporting lodges), and raising awareness about environmental threats. As challenges like climate change and habitat loss intensify, these birding hotspots not only offer refuge for birds but also serve as models for sustainable tourism, demonstrating how a passion for birds can contribute to a more biodiverse and ecologically conscious future. Supporting certified eco-lodges and participating in citizen science platforms like eBird can further amplify the positive impact of birdwatching worldwide. Read **Chapter 15** for getting known about the major aspects related to a 'smart technological birdwatching' and the future of avitourism towards 2045.

Ethical birding in a changing world! As birdwatching grows in popularity and significance, it plays a critical role in fostering environmental awareness, contributing to conservation efforts, and supporting sustainable tourism. Each of these global hotspots offers not only remarkable biodiversity but also examples of how human enjoyment of nature can coexist with habitat protection. Whether you're observing flamingos in Africa, condors in the Andes, or hummingbirds in Costa Rica, birdwatching offers a window into the world's natural heritage—and a call to protect it. The following Images show birders and visitors in practical activities: spotting, photographing, cataloguing, checking species, enjoying birds, biodiversity and landscapes.

Image Caption: An enthusiastic birdwatcher enjoys a day in the forest, binoculars and field guide in hand, ready to spot and identify avian wonders amidst the greenery


Image Caption: Two birdwatchers collaborate in the field, capturing avian wonders through the lens while sharing observations and enjoying the open landscape


Image Caption: A group of birdwatchers and nature enthusiasts follows a winding trail through the golden savannah, immersed in the beauty of the landscape and the quiet thrill of spotting birds in their natural habitat.

1.5. Your Guide to this Avian World and Avitourism Issues

This book aims to be a comprehensive companion for anyone captivated by birds, whether a curious novice just beginning to notice the sparrows outside the window or a seasoned birder planning the next expedition. It seeks to weave together the diverse threads of birdwatching – the scientific foundations, the practical techniques, the rich cultural resonance, the economic dimensions of tourism, and the urgent call of conservation. The goal is to provide a holistic perspective, accessible to a broad international audience, that deepens appreciation for birds and inspires responsible engagement with the natural world.

The journey through this book unfolds across three major sections, followed by fifteen interconnected chapters, each offering a unique lens on the multifaceted world of birds, birdwatching, and avitourism:

This structured journey offers readers a multi-dimensional view of birds and birdwatching—from biology and behavior to culture, tourism, ethics, and innovation. Whether read as a whole or explored by theme, it invites deep engagement with one of humanity's oldest yet continually evolving relationships with nature.

1.6. The Adventure Begins Now

The beauty of birdwatching lies in its accessibility. It requires no specialized equipment to start, only a willingness to look and listen. Birds are everywhere, from the most remote wildernesses to the heart of our busiest cities. Surprisingly, urban environments can host a significant portion of the world's avian diversity – studies suggest that globally, cities may harbor as much as 20% of all known bird species, finding niches in parks, greenways, gardens, and even adapted infrastructure. Whether it's a robin nesting in a backyard tree , pigeons navigating city squares, or migratory warblers passing through a local park, opportunities for observation abound. This book invites readers, regardless of location or prior experience, to begin this adventure of discovery.

The following chapters delve deeper into the science, practice, and significance of birds and birdwatching. But the true journey begins the moment one steps outside, looks up, and truly notices the avian life sharing our world. It is an invitation to slow down, to observe closely, to listen intently, and to connect with the vibrant pulse of nature that surrounds us. Engaging with the world of birds is more than a hobby; it is a way of enriching our own lives, deepening our understanding of the planet, and contributing, even in small ways, to the preservation of its incredible biodiversity. The adventure awaits – just outside the door. As Jennifer Ackerman eloquently puts it, reflecting on the innate intelligence and wonder of birds, "What kind of intelligence allows a bird to... find its way to a place it has never been before...?". Let us embark on exploring that intelligence, and in doing so, perhaps discover more about our own place within the intricate web of life.

References

Biggs, D., Turpie, J., Fabricius, C., & Spenceley, A. (2011). The value of avitourism for conservation and job creation—An assessment from South Africa. *Conservation and Society, 9*(1), 80–90. https://doi.org/10.4103/0972-4923.79198

Cambridge University Press. (n.d.). *Birdwatching*. In *Cambridge Dictionary*. Retrieved April 23, 2025, from https://dictionary.cambridge.org/us/dictionary/english/birdwatching

Cocker, M., & Mabey, R. (2005). *Birds Britannica*. Chatto & Windus.

Heimbuch, J. (2025, March 19). *Bird Watching vs Birding vs Twitching*. Better With Birds. https://betterwithbirds.com/blogs/birding-culture/what-is-birdwatching-called

Kaplan, R., & Kaplan, S. (1989). *The experience of nature: A psychological perspective*. Cambridge University Press.

Randler, C., & Marx, N. (2022). Initial involvement into birding: Triggers, gender, and decade effects—a mixed-methods study. *Humanities and Social Sciences Communications, 9*(1), 47. https://doi.org/10.1057/s41599-022-01062-2

Rusch, D. H., Oetting, R. B., & Anderson, W. L. (1997). The socio-economic impact of ornithological tourism in rural landscapes. In J. C. Lewis & J. W. Ziewitz (Eds.), *Birding and Rural Development: A Global Perspective* (pp. 45–62). University of Oklahoma Press.

Scott, D., & Shafer, C. S. (2001). Recreational specialization: A critical look at the construct. *Journal of Leisure Research, 33*(3), 319–343. https://doi.org/10.1080/00222216.2001.11949944

Sekercioglu, C. H. (2002). Impacts of birdwatching on human and avian communities. *Environmental Conservation, 29*(3), 282–289. https://doi.org/10.1017/S0376892902000206

Steven, R., Morrison, C., & Castley, J. G. (2015). Bird watching and avitourism: A global review of research into its participant markets, distribution, and impacts, highlighting future research needs. *Journal of Sustainable Tourism, 23*(8–9), 1257–1276. https://doi.org/10.1080/09669582.2014.924955

Tidemann, S., & Gosler, A. (Eds.). (2010). *Ethno-ornithology: Birds, Indigenous peoples, culture and society*. Earthscan.

U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service. (2018). *Birding in the United States: A demographic and economic analysis*. Retrieved April 23, 2025, from https://www.fws.gov/sites/default/files/documents/Birding_Report_2018.pdf

Chapter 2

The Biology of Birds: Anatomical Insights and Ecological Relevance for Avitourism

Ismar Borges de Lima
Universidade Estadual de Roraima-UERR, Brazil &
RECINATUR Foundation. Email: ismar@uerr.edu.br

Summary

This chapter is a foundational and academically robust contribution to a volume on birdwatching and avitourism. It offers a detailed and multi-layered exploration of avian biology, firmly rooted in evolutionary theory and enriched by applications in tourism, education, conservation, and interpretation. Structurally, the chapter balances accessible prose for non-expert readers with scientific accuracy and rigor, making it suitable for interdisciplinary audiences. Its ability to bridge ornithological science with tourism studies is a key strength and significantly enhances the intellectual credibility of the book. It presents the biological basics of bird life, offering a clear and accessible overview of avian anatomy, physiology, and functional adaptations. It examines the unique structural features that enable flight—such as lightweight skeletons, specialized respiratory systems, and feather morphology—while also exploring sensory capabilities, reproductive strategies, and metabolic efficiency. The chapter introduces basic principles of avian taxonomy and evolutionary relationships, helping readers understand the diversity of bird families and their ecological roles. By connecting biological traits to behavior and habitat use, it lays the groundwork for a deeper appreciation of birds in both natural and tourism contexts.

Part I – Introductory Section

2.0 Introduction: Defining the Avian World

Birds are at the heart of an expansive and multidimensional global phenomenon—**birdwatching**—which has evolved from a recreational pastime into a dynamic field encompassing tourism, education, conservation, and citizen science. Yet, despite the extraordinary growth of **avitourism** and its increasing recognition as a form of sustainable nature-based tourism, many scholarly and applied works still overlook a fundamental component of this activity: the **birds themselves as biological organisms**.

This chapter addresses that critical omission. It offers a necessary scientific prelude to a volume otherwise centered on the human practices, economic frameworks, and ethical considerations surrounding birdwatching and bird-based tourism. By foregrounding the biological essence of birds—**Class Aves**—this chapter provides a deeper understanding of the central actors in avitourism: their anatomy, physiology, behavior, evolution, and classification.

In doing so, it fills an important gap in the literature by bridging ornithology with tourism studies. While countless resources exist to guide the practice of bird identification or the planning of birding itineraries, far fewer provide readers with an integrated understanding of **what birds are**, how their bodies function, and why their evolutionary adaptations make them uniquely visible, vocal, and mobile members of global ecosystems. Without such understanding, our interpretations of bird behavior in the field risk being superficial, and our efforts to protect them may lack ecological grounding.

2.1. A Foundational Lens for Birdwatching and Tourism

Birds are not only aesthetic symbols of wilderness or checklist items on a birding app. They are the product of millions of years of evolutionary refinement, shaped by ecological pressures and adaptive strategies. Their defining features—feathers, hollow bones, beaks, flight capability, vocal communication, and acute sensory systems—are not incidental curiosities, but central to understanding their distribution, migratory behavior, habitat use, and visibility, all of which directly affect tourism planning, species detectability, and site management. As Gill (2007) noted, "understanding the basic biology of birds is fundamental to appreciating their diversity and ecological roles" (p. 3).

A sound grasp of avian biology enhances our ability to interpret birdwatching encounters more meaningfully. For example, understanding why a bird's skeletal system is pneumatized (hollow and air-filled) informs not only why it can fly, but also why it may be vulnerable to wind farms or urban collisions. As Riseth (2002) highlighted in the context of nature-based tourism, "knowledge about animal behaviour and ecology can significantly enrich the tourist experience and foster a deeper appreciation for wildlife" (p. 65). Similarly, recognizing differences in song structure and vocal learning provides insight into breeding behaviors, territoriality, and the acoustic richness that draws tourists to soundscapes in forests, wetlands, and grasslands. Catchpole and Slater (1995) emphasized that "bird song is a complex and diverse form of communication that plays a crucial role in the lives of birds" (p. 1).

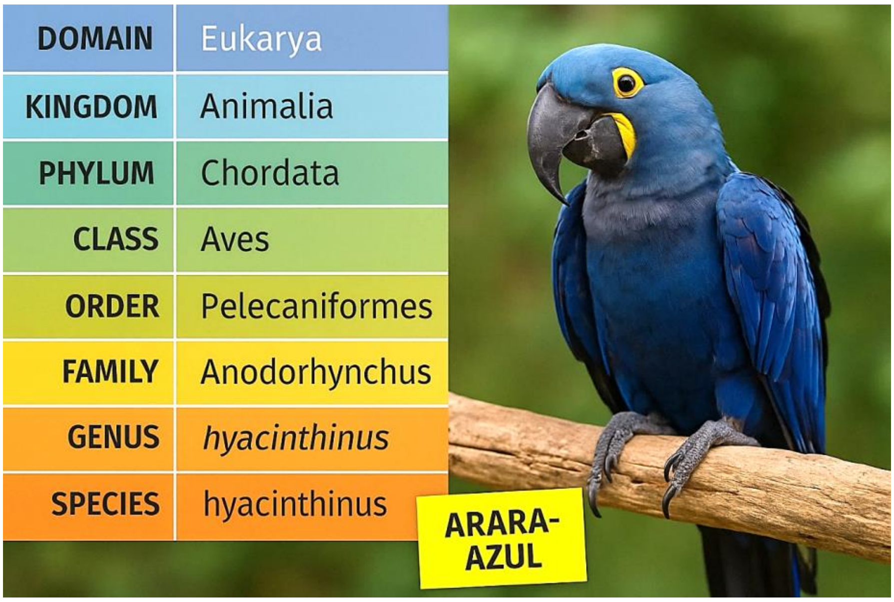
Moreover, flight mechanics, physiological metabolism, and migration ecology are integral to designing birding tours, establishing protected areas, and mitigating human impacts. These topics are not merely scientific add-ons but form the functional backdrop of avitourism practice and policy.

2.1.1. Relevance for Interdisciplinary Audiences

This section is written with a broad and international audience in mind—including birders, students, tour operators, nature guides, ornithologists, conservationists, and tourism professionals. Whether readers are new to avian science or experienced in field identification, a basic understanding of avian biology strengthens their capacity to act as informed and responsible participants in birdwatching culture and the tourism systems that support it. As Sekercioglu et al. (2011) emphasized, "ornithology has strong links with many other disciplines, including ecology, conservation biology, evolutionary biology, physiology, behavior, and even sociology and economics through birdwatching and ecotourism" (p. 2).

As the birdwatching community becomes more interconnected through digital tools, conservation networks, and transnational tourism flows, there is an urgent need for more biological literacy among its participants. A more biologically informed birder is better equipped to identify species, interpret behavior, detect ecological threats, support ethical practices, and contribute to long-term biodiversity monitoring through platforms like eBird or Merlin. As Dickinson et al. (2010) highlighted the power of citizen science, stating that "large-scale citizen science projects can provide data at spatial and temporal scales that are logistically and financially prohibitive for traditional scientific research" (p. 30). This is especially relevant in the context of citizen science and conservation-oriented tourism, where accurate data collection and site stewardship depend on an understanding of avian life cycles, habitat needs, and interspecies interactions. By emphasizing the anatomy, physiology, and evolutionary relationships of birds, this section equips readers with the scientific tools to engage with birding as more than a recreational activity—it becomes a practice of informed appreciation, ecological responsibility, and intellectual enrichment. As Jones (2007) argued for the integration of ecological knowledge in tourism, "a greater understanding of the natural environment by tourists can lead to more responsible behaviour and a greater appreciation of conservation efforts" (p. 79).

In sum, this section offers more than an introduction to the biology of birds. It establishes a conceptual and thematic foundation for the entire chapter by emphasizing the importance of understanding birds in their own right—before addressing how humans engage with them through tourism, education, technology, or conservation. By beginning the journey into birdwatching with a closer look at its most vital subjects—the birds themselves — we reaffirm the scientific, ethical, and ecological depth of this increasingly significant global movement.



The Blue Macaw, *Arara-Azul* in Portuguese.
Credit: Ismar Borges de Lima, 2025.

Part II - Defining Avian Identity: Characteristics of Class Aves

2.2. Core Characteristics of Class Aves: A Previous Summary

Birds, classified under the biological group Class Aves, represent one of the most evolutionarily specialized and ecologically successful vertebrate lineages on Earth. Their global distribution, ecological diversity, and unique physical adaptations distinguish them from all other classes of animals. While popular definitions of birds often emphasize feathers and flight, their defining features encompass a broader set of anatomical, physiological, and behavioral traits—many of which are tightly interrelated and essential for survival in diverse environments. Brush (1996) highlighted the novelty of feathers, stating they are "unique to birds and represent a major evolutionary innovation" (p. 131).

This section outlines the core diagnostic characteristics that define Class Aves from a biological and functional standpoint, emphasizing their relevance to birdwatching, ecological observation, and avitourism.

Part III - Key Anatomical and Physiological Features

2.3. Feathers: Evolutionary Innovation and Multifunctionality

Feathers are the most distinctive and defining feature of all birds. Present in no other living animal group, feathers are derived from modified reptilian scales and are composed primarily of the protein keratin. While feathers are widely associated with flight, their functions extend far beyond aerial locomotion. They serve as critical tools for thermoregulation, camouflage, social signaling, species recognition, and courtship display. As Proctor and Lynch (1993) detailed, "feathers are multifunctional structures that have played a crucial role in the evolutionary success of birds" (p. 1).

Feather structure varies across body regions and bird species, with key types including:

- Contour feathers for body coverage and aerodynamic shaping,
- Flight feathers (remiges and rectrices) on wings and tail, critical for powered flight,
- Down feathers for insulation,
- Semiplumes and filoplumes for sensory and structural support.

For birdwatchers and photographers, feather coloration and patterning are often the most immediate clues in field identification, while molt patterns and plumage stages provide information on age, breeding status, and seasonal variation.

2.3.1. Lightweight Skeletal System: The Architecture of Flight

The avian skeleton is a marvel of biomechanical engineering. Designed to maximize strength while minimizing weight, it features a high degree of fusion and pneumatization (air-filled cavities within bones). Key flight-adaptive modifications include:

- Hollow (pneumatic) bones, reducing overall body mass,
- A fused collarbone (furcula or wishbone) that acts as a spring during wing beats,
- A keeled sternum, providing a large surface area for the attachment of powerful flight muscles,
- Fused vertebrae in the thoracic and pelvic regions, contributing to rigidity during flight.

Biewener (2011) explained that "the evolution of lightweight, yet strong, skeletal structures have been essential for the development of powered flight in birds" (p. 67). These adaptations, combined with muscular and respiratory enhancements, enable many bird species to sustain long-distance migrations, dynamic maneuvers, and high-altitude flight—phenomena central to both ecotourism and migratory conservation programs.

2.3.2. High Metabolic Rate and Endothermy

Birds possess one of the highest metabolic rates in the animal kingdom, a trait necessary for the energy-intensive demands of flight. As endothermic (warm-blooded) organisms, birds can regulate their internal body temperature independently of environmental conditions. This is maintained through efficient respiratory and circulatory systems, including:

- A four-chambered heart for complete separation of oxygenated and deoxygenated blood,
- A unidirectional airflow system through the lungs and air sacs, ensuring continuous oxygen exchange even during exhalation.

As Schmidt-Nielsen (1997) pointed out, "the high metabolic rate and endothermy of birds are crucial for their active lifestyle and ability to colonize diverse environments" (p. 165). These traits allow birds to thrive in environments ranging from arctic tundras to tropical rainforests, and they are essential to understanding their behavioral rhythms, migratory timing, and habitat selection.

Part IV - The Beak as a Window into Avian Life

2.4. The Beak as a Window into Avian Life: Function, Evolution, Taxonomy, and Bird Tourism

All modern birds lack teeth, having evolved keratinous beaks (or bills) adapted to a wide array of feeding strategies. Beak shape and size are closely correlated with diet, foraging behavior, and ecological niche, making them vital features for field identification and ecological interpretation.

Bird beaks—or bills—are among the most remarkable adaptations in the animal kingdom. Far from being simple feeding tools, they are highly specialized structures that provide essential insight into a bird's diet, behavior, ecological niche, and evolutionary history. Composed of keratin, the same protein found in human nails and hair, beaks come in a multitude of shapes and sizes, each shaped by millions of years of natural selection to optimize survival in diverse habitats.

2.4.1 Functional and Evolutionary Significance of Beaks

The structure of a bird's beak is intricately tied to its feeding strategy and habitat use. Birds have no teeth, so their beaks have evolved to fulfill a wide variety of tasks: cracking seeds, tearing flesh, filtering water, probing flowers for nectar, chiseling wood, and even scooping fish. These roles are so central to avian ecology that ornithologists often begin classification and field identification by observing beak shape and size. As Grant and Grant (2011) demonstrated through their extensive work on Darwin's finches, "beak morphology is a primary determinant of feeding niche and has played a crucial role in adaptive radiation" (p. 283).

For example:

- Hooked beaks in raptors like eagles are ideal for tearing meat.
- Chisel-shaped beaks in woodpeckers allow them to hammer into bark in search of insects.
- Probing beaks in hummingbirds enable them to access nectar deep within flowers.
- Spear-shaped beaks in herons are optimized for quickly catching fish in shallow waters.

From an evolutionary standpoint, the diversity in beak form among birds is a classic case of adaptive radiation—most famously illustrated by Darwin's finches in the Galápagos Islands. These species evolved from a common ancestor into a variety of forms, each with a beak specialized for a distinct feeding strategy. This demonstrates how environmental pressures and available food sources drive morphological diversity. As Schluter (2000) explained, "adaptive radiation is the evolutionary divergence of members of a single phylogenetic lineage into a variety of different adaptive [1] forms" (p. 11).

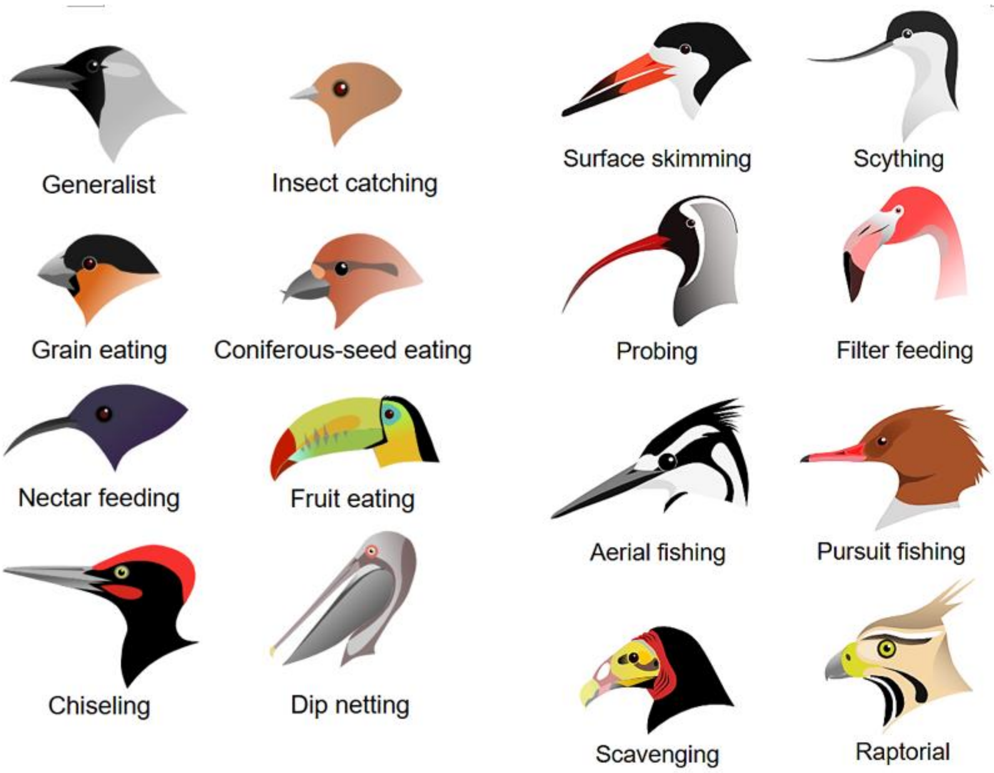
2.4.2. Taxonomic Implications

Beak morphology plays a key role in avian taxonomy. Alongside DNA analysis, vocalization, and behavior, beak type helps taxonomists classify birds into families and orders, especially in field settings or paleontological research where soft tissue is rarely preserved. As Mayr (2004) noted, "morphological characters, especially those of the beak and feet, have historically been and continue to be important in avian classification" (p. 15). For instance:

- The Psittacidae family (parrots) is universally recognized by their strong, curved beaks used for cracking seeds and manipulating objects.
- The Trochilidae family (hummingbirds) is characterized by long, slender beaks suited for flower feeding.
- Members of Anhingidae and Ardeidae (like anhingas and herons) are grouped partly through their sharp, spear-like beaks used for fish-eating.

Examples include:

- Long, slender beaks for probing (e.g., sandpipers),
- Hooked beaks for tearing flesh (e.g., raptors),
- Cone-shaped beaks for seed-cracking (e.g., finches),
- Specialized bills for filter-feeding (e.g., flamingos).



Credit Caption: Illustration of bird beak adaptations. © L. Shyamal, June 2007. Licensed under Creative Commons Attribution-Share Alike 2.5 Generic (CC BY-SA 2.5). Source: Own work.

Understanding beak anatomy offers a practical tool for species identification and ecological classification. This is foundational in biodiversity studies, conservation planning, and ornithological research.

2.4.3. Beaks, Habits, and Habitats

A bird's beak offers a direct clue to its ecological role and preferred habitat. Seed-cracking finches often inhabit grasslands or forests rich in seed-bearing plants. Nectar-feeding birds thrive in ecosystems with abundant flowering plants, such as tropical rainforests. Fish-eating birds favor wetland environments, rivers, and coastlines. As Wheelwright (1988) noted, "the close match between beak morphology and diet is one of the most striking examples of adaptation in birds" (p. 270).

Therefore, by examining the beak, one can often infer the bird's behavior, migration pattern, and vulnerability to environmental changes. For conservationists, these connections are crucial. Species with highly specialized beaks may be more susceptible to habitat degradation and climate change, making them conservation priorities. As Sekercioglu et al. (2004) argued, "understanding the ecological requirements and functional traits, such as beak morphology related to diet, is essential for effective conservation planning" (p. 18072).

2.4.4. Beaks in Birdwatching and Scientific Tourism

The diversity of bird beaks is not only a scientific marvel but also a powerful educational and interpretive tool in nature-based tourism and environmental education.

Birdwatching—or avitourism—is a growing sector within ecotourism, and beak types are one of the first distinguishing features used by enthusiasts and guides alike. As Bibby et al. (2000) pointed out, "identification is a key element of birdwatching, and morphological features like beak shape are often the starting point" (p. 27). When birders learn to identify birds by their beaks, they are engaging with evolutionary biology in action. The process fosters deeper appreciation and curiosity, enhancing the visitor's connection to nature. For example:

Observing a toucan's massive, colorful beak invites questions about its diet, role in the forest canopy, and its place in Indigenous mythology. Watching a woodpecker drill into a tree opens discussion on forest health and insect ecology. Spotting a wader probing mud with a long, curved bill sparks interest in wetland preservation. These observations create ideal moments for environmental interpretation, making birdwatching a platform for experiential learning, conservation awareness, and even citizen science, when connected to platforms like eBird or Merlin ID. As Powell and Ham (2008) highlighted, "effective interpretation in nature-based tourism can significantly enhance visitor learning and promote conservation attitudes" (p. 77).

2.4.5 From Interpretation to Education and Research

Bird beaks serve as entry points into a wide range of interdisciplinary topics—from evolution and biomechanics to climate resilience, ecosystem services, and ethno-ornithology. They are used in school programs, guided nature trails, museum exhibits, and scientific tourism, making birds—and their beaks—effective ambassadors for biodiversity education. In academic tourism and scientific fieldwork, bird beak studies also provide opportunities for students and tourists to engage in hands-on learning:

Field sketching and measuring beaks helps develop observational skills. Analyzing foraging behavior introduces ecological field methods. Linking beak types to specific habitats supports conservation mapping.

In sum, the bird beak is a multifunctional marvel that transcends feeding—it is a tool for life, a record of evolution, a marker of identity, and a gateway to deeper knowledge. For scientists, it is a key to taxonomy and adaptation. For birders and eco-tourists, it is a guide to understanding the natural world. And for conservationists and educators, it is an irreplaceable tool for promoting environmental awareness and stewardship. Whether in the classroom, the field, or the tourist trail, the study of bird beaks exemplifies how a single anatomical feature can illuminate the interconnectedness of life. Beak morphology is an important subject in evolutionary biology, famously exemplified by Darwin's finches of the Galápagos Islands. As Grant and Grant (2008) detailed in their work on Darwin's finches, "beak morphology is a primary determinant of feeding niche and has played a crucial role in adaptive radiation" (p. 283).

Part V - Reproduction and Communication

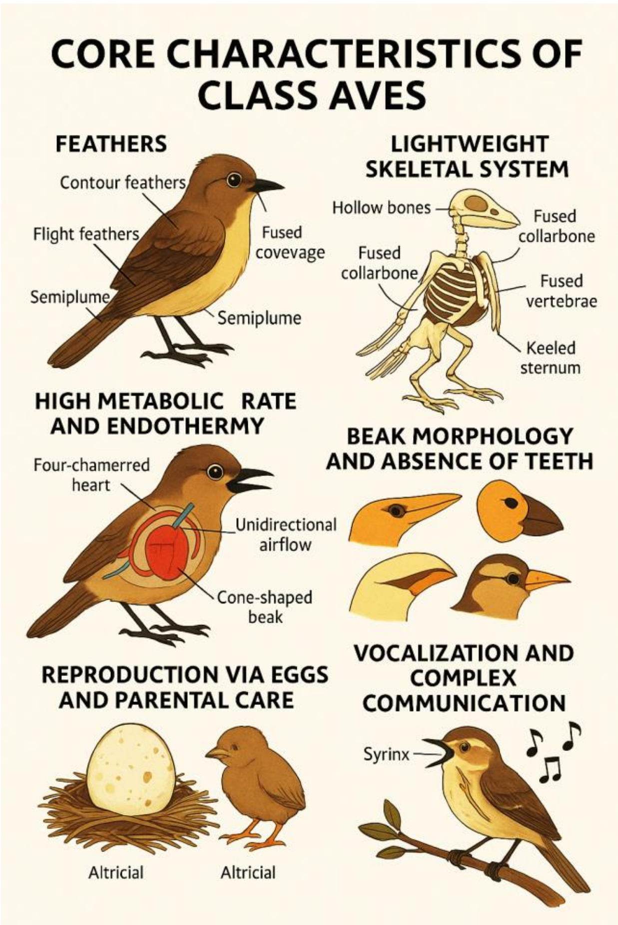
2.5. Reproduction via Eggs and Parental Care

Birds are oviparous, laying hard-shelled, calcium-rich eggs. Most species construct nests and exhibit varying degrees of parental care, with behaviors such as incubation, feeding, and protection shaping breeding success. Nesting strategies and parental roles vary considerably: Precocial species (e.g., ducks, shorebirds) hatch relatively mature and mobile young, Altricial species (e.g., songbirds) produce helpless chicks requiring prolonged care. These reproductive behaviors influence seasonality in bird tourism (e.g., spring breeding seasons) and are central to ethical considerations when designing wildlife tours or accessing nesting areas.

2.5.1. Vocalization and Complex Communication

Birds are among the most acoustically expressive vertebrates. Their vocal abilities—ranging from complex songs to simple calls—serve functions in mate attraction, territorial defense, flock cohesion, and species recognition. The structure responsible for sound production, the syrinx, is located at the junction of the trachea and bronchi, allowing some species to produce two simultaneous notes. Avian vocalizations are key components of birdwatching experiences and monitoring efforts, especially in dense habitats where visual observation is limited. Moreover, sound plays a major role in the digitization of birding (e.g., through apps like Merlin and BirdNET), transforming passive listening into active engagement.

In summary, the core characteristics of Class Aves form the biological foundation upon which birdwatching and avitourism are built. Understanding these features equips birders with deeper interpretive skills and fosters a greater appreciation for the physiological, behavioral, and ecological diversity of the birds they observe. This knowledge also reinforces ethical and conservation-oriented practices in tourism, ensuring that the act of birdwatching is both informed and responsible.



This image is merely illustrative and may contain inconsistencies.
Do not reproduce it.

Part VI - Core Biological Traits and Their Relevance to Tourism

2.6. Core Characteristics of Class Aves: A Detailed Explanation

Birds, belonging to the biological Class Aves, represent a remarkably diverse and successful group of vertebrates inhabiting virtually every ecosystem on Earth. They are fundamentally defined as warm-blooded (endothermic) vertebrates characterized by a unique combination of features. Central to their biology is their mode of reproduction: they lay hard-shelled amniotic eggs, typically incubated by one or both parents. These eggs possess calcareous shells, primarily composed of calcium carbonate, protecting the developing embryo. "All birds lay eggs, a trait inherited from their reptilian ancestors" (Gill, 2007, p. 55). Fertilization is internal.

Physiologically, birds operate at a high metabolic rate, fueling their active lifestyles. This high metabolism is supported by an efficient circulatory system featuring a four-chambered heart, which completely separates oxygenated and deoxygenated blood, maximizing oxygen delivery to tissues. Their skeletal system is another hallmark, being both strong to withstand physical stresses and remarkably lightweight, an adaptation closely tied, in most species, to the demands of flight. Instead of teeth and heavy jaws, birds possess a beak, a horny sheath covering the jaws, which varies immensely in shape and size according to diet and lifestyle. Locomotion on the ground is typically bipedal, freeing the forelimbs for other functions, most notably flight. "Bipedalism is common in birds, reflecting the specialization of the forelimbs for flight" (Proctor & Lynch, 1993, p. 115). Birds exhibit an incredible range in size, from the diminutive 5.5 cm Bee Hummingbird to the towering 2.8 m Common Ostrich. Their evolutionary history places them firmly within the dinosaur lineage; they are feathered theropod dinosaurs, the only surviving members of this vast group following the Cretaceous–Paleogene extinction event. "Birds are now recognized as the direct descendants of theropod dinosaurs, a group that also included Tyrannosaurus rex and Velociraptor" (Brusatte, 2018, p. 1). As such, they are classified within the Archosauria, with crocodilians being their closest living relatives. This deep evolutionary heritage underpins many of their unique biological traits.

The integration of endothermy, efficient circulation, and specialized respiration (discussed later) forms a physiological foundation enabling high energy output. Maintaining a constant, elevated body temperature (homeothermy) allows birds to be active across diverse climates and times of day, but it requires significant energy. "Birds are endothermic, maintaining high body temperatures through metabolic heat production" (Schmidt-Nielsen, 1997, p. 165). This energy demand is met through their high metabolism, fueled by efficient oxygen uptake and delivery facilitated by the four-chambered heart and advanced respiratory system. This suite of interconnected physiological traits appears crucial for supporting energetically expensive activities, particularly the powered flight characteristic of most avian species.

2.6.1. The Unifying Feature: The Structure and Significance of Feathers

While birds share several characteristics with other vertebrates, the single, definitive feature unique to all living birds is the presence of feathers. These complex epidermal structures, homologous to reptilian scales, are composed primarily of β-keratin, the same protein found in beaks, claws, and scales. "Feathers are unique to birds and are complex integumentary structures made of keratin" (Brush, 1996, p. 131). A typical vaned feather, essential for flight and body contouring, consists of a central shaft, the rachis, which supports a flat vane on either side. Each vane is composed of numerous parallel branches called barbs. Projecting from these barbs are smaller barbules, equipped with microscopic hooks (barbicels) that interlock with the barbules of adjacent barbs. This intricate interlocking mechanism creates a surface that is remarkably lightweight, strong, flexible, and relatively airtight – ideal properties for generating aerodynamic forces. The collective arrangement of feathers on a bird's body is referred to as its plumage.

Feathers serve a multitude of functions critical to avian survival. Their most conspicuous role is enabling flight in the vast majority of bird species, providing the necessary surfaces for lift and thrust. Beyond locomotion, feathers are paramount for thermoregulation, providing essential insulation that allows birds to maintain their high body temperature (endothermy) even in cold environments. The colors and patterns of plumage, produced by pigments or the feather's microstructure, play vital roles in communication, including species and sex recognition, courtship displays, and establishing social status. Plumage can also provide camouflage, helping birds blend into their surroundings to avoid predators or ambush prey. Furthermore, feathers contribute to waterproofing, often aided by oils secreted from the uropygial gland near the base of the tail, which birds spread through preening. In some specialized cases, feathers are even modified for sound production during displays.

The evolutionary history of feathers provides compelling evidence for exaptation – the process where a trait evolved for one purpose is later co-opted for a different function. Fossil evidence reveals that feathers originated within non-avian theropod dinosaurs long before the evolution of flight. These early feathers likely served functions such as insulation, crucial for the development of endothermy within the dinosaur lineage, or for display. Only later, as anatomical changes occurred in the forelimbs and associated musculature, were these pre-existing feathered surfaces adapted for aerodynamic purposes, eventually leading to the sophisticated flight capabilities seen in modern birds.

Part VII - Flight: The Pinnacle Adaptation

2.7.0 Masters of the Sky: The Marvel of Bird Flight

Flight, the primary mode of locomotion for most bird species, allows them access to resources, escape from predators, and undertake long-distance migrations.[7] This remarkable ability is underpinned by a suite of highly specialized anatomical and physiological adaptations, representing a pinnacle of evolutionary engineering for aerial life.[15]

2.7.1. Anatomical Adaptations for Aerial Life

2.7.1.1. Skeletal System: Engineered for Lightness and Strength

The avian skeleton masterfully balances the conflicting demands of strength and lightness.[15] It must be robust enough to withstand the significant stresses of takeoff, maneuvering, and landing, yet light enough to minimize the energy required to become and stay airborne.[15]

A key adaptation is **pneumatization**, where many bones are hollow rather than filled with marrow.[1] These hollow cavities often contain extensions of the respiratory system's air sacs, integrating the skeleton with breathing.[10] Internal bony struts or trusses reinforce these hollow bones, providing structural integrity without excessive weight.[10] The extent of pneumatization varies; large soaring birds tend to have the most hollow bones, while it is reduced in smaller birds and absent in some diving species like loons and penguins, where increased density aids submersion.[10] Interestingly, even some flightless ratites retain pneumatic femurs.[10]

Fusion of bones is another critical strategy, increasing skeletal rigidity and reducing the overall number of bones compared to other terrestrial vertebrates.[15] Skull bones in adults are fused, creating a light but strong structure.[1] In the wing, several wrist and hand bones fuse to form the carpometacarpus, providing a solid base for primary flight feathers.[8] The pelvic bones fuse with lumbar and sacral vertebrae to form the synsacrum, creating a rigid structure to support the legs and absorb landing impact.[15] Posteriorly, the tail vertebrae are fused into a compact structure called the pygostyle, supporting the tail feathers.[15] The paired clavicles (collarbones) fuse ventrally to form the furcula, or wishbone.[8] The furcula acts as a flexible strut, bracing the shoulder girdle during wingbeats and potentially acting like a spring, storing and releasing energy during the flight cycle.[16]

The **sternum**, or breastbone, is dramatically modified in flying birds. It possesses a large, blade-like ventral projection called the **keel** (carina).[1] This keel provides an extensive surface area for the attachment of the powerful pectoralis and supracoracoideus muscles that drive the wing strokes.[16] The size of the keel generally correlates with flight strength; it is greatly reduced or absent in flightless ratites like ostriches.[16]

Other skeletal modifications contribute to flight efficiency. The rib cage is strengthened by **uncinate processes**, overlapping projections from the ribs that brace them against each other, preventing collapse during forceful wingbeats.[16] Birds possess a relatively long and highly flexible neck, composed of numerous cervical vertebrae (8 to 25, depending on the species).[15] This allows for a wide range of head movement for feeding, preening, and visual scanning, compensating for often less mobile eyes. The neck's flexibility also acts as a shock absorber during landing.[19]

2.7.1.2. Wing Design: Aerodynamics and Feather Roles

The bird wing is a sophisticated airfoil, shaped to generate lift.[7] Its characteristic cross-section – curved on the upper surface and flatter or concave on the lower surface – forces air flowing over the top to travel faster than air flowing underneath. According to Bernoulli's principle, this faster-moving air exerts lower pressure, resulting in a net upward force (lift).[8] The angle at which the wing meets the airflow (angle of attack) also influences lift; a steeper angle generally increases lift but can lead to turbulence and stalling if too extreme.[8] Birds can subtly control lift and prevent stalling at low speeds or high angles of attack using the **alula**, a small group of feathers attached to the first digit (thumb) that can be independently raised to form a leading-edge slot, smoothing airflow over the wing.[8]

Different types of feathers play specific roles in flight. The large **primary feathers**, attached to the fused hand bones (carpometacarpus) and digits at the wingtip, are primarily responsible for generating thrust during the downstroke.[9] The **secondary feathers**, attached along the trailing edge of the ulna (forearm bone), provide the majority of the wing's lift-generating surface area.[9] Both primary and secondary feathers are typically asymmetrical, with a narrower leading vane and a wider trailing vane, which enhances their aerodynamic performance.[9] **Contour feathers**, which cover the body and the base of the wings, streamline the bird's shape, reducing parasitic drag caused by air resistance.[9]

The wing itself is highly variable among bird species, reflecting adaptations to different flight styles and ecological requirements.[8] Common wing types include:

- **Elliptical Wings:** Relatively short and broad with rounded tips, often highly cambered (curved). These wings allow for rapid flapping, sharp turns, and maneuvering in cluttered environments like forests. Found in many passerines and birds like pheasants.[8]
- **High-Speed Wings:** Flat, narrow, pointed, and swept back, resembling those of fighter jets. They minimize drag at high speeds but provide less lift at low speeds. Characteristic of birds that feed on the wing or undertake long migrations, such as falcons, swifts, terns, and shorebirds.[8]
- **Long, Narrow (High Aspect Ratio) Wings:** Very long and slender, maximizing lift while minimizing drag, ideal for soaring over open areas, especially oceans. Aspect ratio (wingspan squared divided by wing area) is high.[13] Found in albatrosses, gannets, and other seabirds.[8]
- **High-Lift Wings:** Broad wings with deep camber and often slotted tips (gaps between primary feathers) that reduce stalling at low speeds and enhance lift. Adapted for carrying heavy loads or soaring in thermals. Seen in eagles, hawks, vultures, and cranes.[8]

This diversity in wing morphology underscores that "flight" encompasses a wide spectrum of aerodynamic solutions, each finely tuned by natural selection to meet the specific demands of a bird's lifestyle and environment. It is not a monolithic capability but rather a range of specialized adaptations built upon fundamental aerodynamic principles.

2.7.2 Physiological Powerhouse for Flight

Sustaining flight requires immense physiological power, supported by highly developed muscular, respiratory, and circulatory systems capable of high metabolic output.[15]

2.7.2.1. Flight Musculature: Generating Thrust and Lift

The primary engines of bird flight are the massive pectoral muscles located in the chest.[9] The largest of these is the **Pectoralis** muscle, which attaches to the sternal keel and the humerus (upper arm bone). Its contraction pulls the wing downward and forward in the powerful downstroke, generating most of the lift and thrust.[9] The **Supracoracoideus** muscle, located beneath the pectoralis, is responsible for the upstroke (recovery stroke). It also originates on the keel but connects to the humerus via a tendon that loops through a canal near the shoulder joint (the triosseal canal, formed by the junction of the coracoid, scapula, and furcula). This arrangement acts like a pulley system, allowing the supracoracoideus to lift the wing from below.[9]

In strong fliers, these two muscles can account for a substantial portion of the bird's total body mass (up to 35% or more).[6] Their attachment to the large sternal keel provides a solid anchor point for generating the necessary force.[6] The concentration of this large muscle mass ventrally (on the underside) contributes to a stable center of gravity, important for balance during flight.[16]

2.7.2.2. The Avian Respiratory System: Unidirectional Flow and Air Sacs

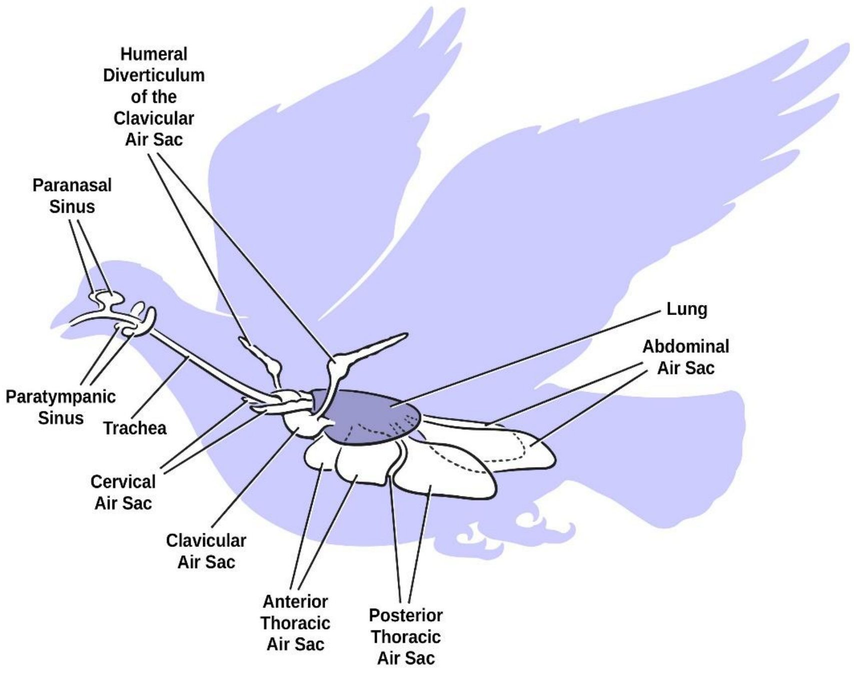
The avian respiratory system is arguably the most efficient among air-breathing vertebrates, a necessity for meeting the extreme oxygen demands of flight, especially at high altitudes.[26] It consists of relatively small, rigid lungs that do not significantly change volume during breathing, connected to a network of thin-walled **air sacs** (typically nine) distributed throughout the body cavity and extending into the hollow spaces of pneumatic bones.[1]

The key functional feature is **unidirectional airflow** through the lungs.[9] Unlike the tidal, bidirectional flow in mammalian lungs where fresh inhaled air mixes with residual stale air, air passes through the bird's gas-exchanging structures (parabronchi) in a single direction during both inhalation and exhalation.[28]

This continuous flow is achieved by the coordinated action of the air sacs, which function like bellows to move air through the system.[30] Gas exchange itself occurs primarily in the lungs, not the air sacs.[30] The process requires two full respiratory cycles (inhalation-exhalation-inhalation-exhalation) for a single "packet" of air to pass completely through the system [29]:

1. **First Inhalation:** Air flows down the trachea, bypassing the lungs for the most part, and enters the posterior air sacs (abdominal and posterior thoracic).
2. **First Exhalation:** Air moves from the posterior air sacs into the lungs (parabronchi), where gas exchange occurs.
3. **Second Inhalation:** Oxygen-depleted air moves from the lungs into the anterior air sacs (anterior thoracic, cervical, interclavicular), while a new breath of fresh air enters the posterior sacs.
4. **Second Exhalation:** Air moves from the anterior air sacs up the trachea and out of the body, while the air from the posterior sacs moves into the lungs.

This system ensures a continuous, one-way flow of highly oxygenated air across the gas exchange surfaces.[28] The gas exchange itself occurs in a network of tiny air capillaries branching off the parabronchi, creating an enormous surface area.[28] Furthermore, blood flows through capillaries in a direction perpendicular (cross-current) or sometimes opposite (counter-current) to the airflow, maximizing the diffusion gradient and oxygen uptake efficiency.[9] This remarkable efficiency allows birds to extract a greater percentage of oxygen from the air than mammals and sustain the high metabolic rates needed for flight, even in the thin air of high altitudes.[26] The presence of pneumatic bones connected to air sacs in some non-avian dinosaurs suggests that features of this highly efficient respiratory system may have evolved before flight itself, potentially enabling the high activity levels characteristic of the lineage leading to birds.[10]



Source: Ornithology – The Science of Bird, available at, https://ornithology.com/ornithology-lectures/respiration-circulation/

2.7.3. Metabolic Engine: High Metabolism and Efficient Circulation

Flight is metabolically demanding, requiring a constant and rapid supply of energy and oxygen.[1] Birds possess a high basal metabolic rate compared to mammals of similar size, reflecting their energetic lifestyle.[1] This metabolic furnace is supported by their highly efficient circulatory system. The **four-chambered heart** completely separates the pulmonary (lung) and systemic (body) circuits, ensuring that tissues receive fully oxygenated blood and that deoxygenated blood is efficiently returned to the lungs.[1] Bird hearts are also relatively large and beat rapidly, particularly in smaller species and strong fliers like hummingbirds or long-distance migrants, facilitating rapid circulation of oxygen, nutrients, and removal of waste products.[13] Migratory birds, especially those flying at high altitudes, show further circulatory adaptations, including higher concentrations of hemoglobin (the oxygen-carrying molecule in red blood cells) and increased capillary density in flight muscles to enhance oxygen delivery under demanding conditions.[26]

2.7.4. Strategies for Weight Reduction

Minimizing body weight is paramount for efficient flight, as every extra gram increases the energy cost of becoming and staying airborne.[1] Birds have evolved numerous weight-saving adaptations across multiple organ systems, complementing the lightweight skeleton.

One major modification is the **lack of teeth and heavy jawbones**, replaced by a lightweight, keratinous **beak**.[1] The mechanical breakdown of food is shifted posteriorly to the **gizzard** (or ventriculus), a specialized, muscular part of the stomach.[1] The gizzard has thick, powerful muscular walls lined with a tough, protective layer of koilin (a carbohydrate-protein complex).[41] Many birds, especially those eating hard seeds or insects, intentionally swallow small stones or grit (gastroliths) which accumulate in the gizzard.[39] The muscular contractions of the gizzard, aided by the grinding action of the grit, effectively pulverize food, compensating for the absence of teeth.[39] This shifts significant weight away from the head, improving balance and reducing the inertial forces the neck must manage (see Table 2.0).

The **excretory system** is also adapted for weight saving. Birds lack a urinary bladder, meaning they do not store large volumes of heavy liquid urine.[1] Nitrogenous wastes are excreted primarily as **uric acid**, a semi-solid paste that requires relatively little water for elimination.[1] Waste products from the kidneys and intestines are voided together through a common opening, the cloaca, which also allows for efficient reabsorption of water back into the body.[1]

The **reproductive system** shows weight-reducing adaptations as well. In the vast majority of female birds, only the left ovary and oviduct develop and become functional; the right side remains vestigial, halving the potential weight of these organs.[9] Furthermore, the gonads (ovaries and testes) typically regress significantly in size outside the breeding season, minimizing the mass carried during non-reproductive periods.[13]

These diverse adaptations demonstrate that achieving the low body mass necessary for flight was not solely a matter of skeletal modification. Rather, it involved a concerted evolutionary process acting across the digestive, excretory, and reproductive systems, all contributing to the overall goal of minimizing weight while maintaining essential physiological functions.

Table 2.0 - Major Weight-Reducing Adaptations in Birds

Adaptation	Description/Significance	Supporting Snippets
Pneumatic Bones	Hollow bones, often connected to air sacs and reinforced with internal struts, significantly reduce skeletal mass while maintaining strength.	1
Skeletal Fusion	Fusion of bones (e.g., skull, carpometacarpus, synsacrum, pygostyle, furcula) increases rigidity and reduces the total number of separate skeletal elements.	1
Lack of Teeth / Beak	Replacement of heavy teeth and jawbones with a lightweight, keratinous beak reduces anterior body weight.	1
Gizzard for Grinding	Shifts the function of mechanical food processing from the head to a centralized, muscular gizzard, often aided by ingested grit.	1
Lack of Urinary Bladder	Eliminates the need to store and carry heavy liquid urine.	1
Uric Acid Excretion	Nitrogenous waste is excreted as a semi-solid paste (uric acid), conserving water and reducing waste weight.	1
Single Functional Ovary	Most female birds possess only one functional ovary (usually the left), reducing the mass of reproductive organs.	9

Seasonal Gonad Atrophy	Reproductive organs (testes and ovaries) shrink significantly outside the breeding season, minimizing non-essential weight.	13

2.7.6. Core Characteristics of Class Aves: Biological Features and Relevance to Birdwatching and Tourism

Birds possess a suite of distinctive anatomical, physiological, and behavioral adaptations that not only define their evolutionary success but also underpin their visibility and appeal within birdwatching and avitourism contexts. Table 2.2 presents a synthesis of key biological traits—such as feathers, skeletal adaptations, metabolic characteristics, beak morphology, reproductive strategies, and vocal communication—and links each to practical and interpretive aspects of birdwatching tourism. These traits influence bird detectability, identification, seasonal behaviors, and habitat use, shaping both the ecological knowledge required by birders and the experiential dimensions of guided tours. Understanding these biological foundations enhances the quality of avitourism planning, ethical wildlife observation, and educational interpretation in the field. Table 2.1 presents a summary of the functional adaptations of birds and their relevance to birdwatching Tourism

Table 2.1 - Key Avian Characteristics: Biological Functions and Interpretive Relevance in Birdwatching Tourism

Biological Trait	Core Function / Description	Tourism & Field Interpretation Relevance
Feathers	Enable flight; regulate temperature; support display and camouflage	Key to field identification; indicator of breeding stages; enhance photography and interpretation
Beak Morphology	Specialized feeding tool; reflects ecological niche and evolutionary history	Immediate field cue for ID; reveals diet and habitat; used in educational signage and tour scripts
Lightweight Skeleton	Hollow, fused bones reduce weight and support strong flight musculature	Explains migratory capability and visible behaviors like soaring, hovering, or diving
Endothermy & High Metabolism	Maintains body temperature in diverse environments; supports high activity	Predicts seasonal activity (e.g., migration, breeding); explains bird presence across latitudes
Unidirectional Respiratory System	Efficient oxygen extraction for sustained flight	Interprets altitudinal migration, endurance, and behavior at high elevations or during long flights
Vocalization via Syrinx	Complex acoustic communication (songs, calls, alarms)	Enables detection in dense habitats; integral to sound-based apps (Merlin, BirdNET); acoustic tourism
Reproductive Strategy (Egg-laying, Parental Care)	Influences behavior, seasonality, and vulnerability during nesting	Guides ethical viewing; aligns with breeding seasons; supports planning of reproductive-season tours
Wing and Flight Types	Variations adapted to flight style: soaring, gliding, maneuvering, etc.	Used for behavior interpretation; distinguishes between habitats; enhances guided explanations

Biological Trait	Core Function / Description	Tourism & Field Interpretation Relevance
Body Size Range	From hummingbirds to ostriches; reflects energy needs, flight, habitat	Adds drama and contrast in tourism; relates to accessibility in different ecosystems
Taxonomic Identity & Classification	Organizes diversity; reflects evolutionary relationships	Enables checklist design, signage structuring, and contextual comparisons in guided narratives

Part VIII - Systematics and Diversity

2.8. Organizing Avian Diversity: Classification and Taxonomy

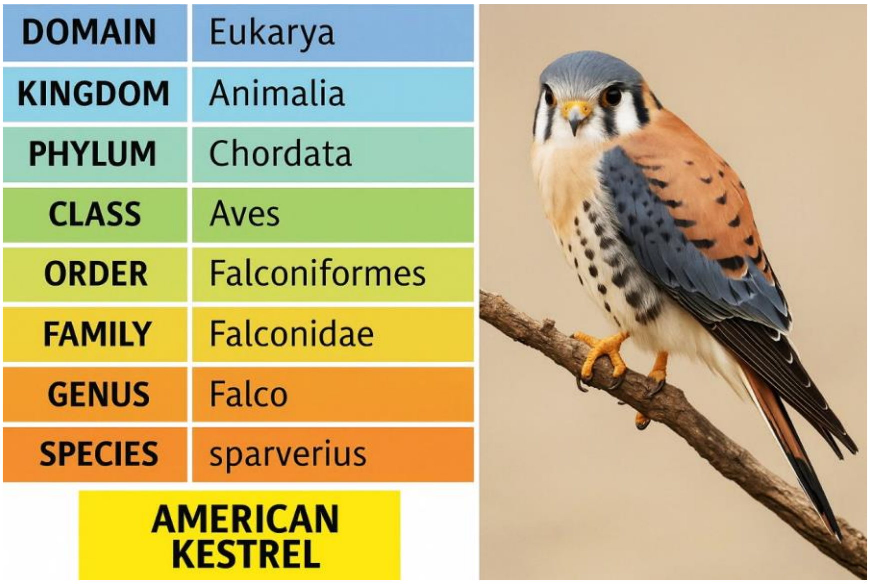
With over 11,000 living species exhibiting immense variation in form, function, and behavior, organizing this diversity requires a systematic approach.[1] **Taxonomy** is the science dedicated to naming, describing, and classifying organisms based on their characteristics and evolutionary relationships.[48]

A. The Linnaean Hierarchy: A System for Order

The foundation of modern biological classification is the hierarchical system developed by the Swedish botanist Carolus Linnaeus in the 18th century.[1] This system arranges organisms into a series of nested ranks or categories, known as taxa (singular: taxon). The primary ranks, from broadest to most specific, are:

- **Kingdom:** The highest level, grouping organisms based on fundamental characteristics (e.g., Animalia for animals).
- **Phylum:** A major division within a Kingdom (e.g., Chordata, animals with a notochord or backbone).
- **Class:** A division within a Phylum (e.g., Aves for birds).
- **Order:** A division within a Class. Order names typically end in "-iformes" (e.g., Passeriformes for perching birds, Falconiformes for falcons).
- **Family:** A division within an Order, grouping closely related genera. Family names typically end in "-idae" (e.g., Turdidae for thrushes, Paridae for chickadees).
- **Genus:** A group of closely related species.
- **Species:** The fundamental unit of classification, typically defined as a group of organisms capable of interbreeding and producing fertile offspring, and reproductively isolated from other such groups.[1]

This hierarchical structure means that as one moves down the ranks, the groups become smaller and more exclusive, and the organisms within each group share increasingly specific characteristics and a more recent common ancestor.[48] Taxonomists often use intermediate ranks (such as Superorder, Suborder, Superfamily, Subfamily, Tribe) to further refine relationships within this basic framework.[48] For birds (Class Aves), the first major subdivision separates them into two superorders: the Palaeognathae (including flightless ratites like ostriches and emus, plus the flying tinamous) and the Neognathae (encompassing all other modern birds).[1]



Source/Credit: Ismar Borges de Lima, 2025.

B. Naming Conventions: Binomial Nomenclature

A cornerstone of the Linnaean system is **binomial nomenclature**, the method of assigning each species a unique, two-part scientific name.[48] This name consists of the **Genus** name (always capitalized) followed by the **specific epithet** (never capitalized). Both parts are conventionally written in italics or underlined if handwritten.[48] For example, the scientific name for the American Robin is *Turdus migratorius*. This system provides a standardized, universally recognized name for each species, overcoming the ambiguity and regional variation inherent in common names.[51] When distinct populations within a species are formally recognized, a third name (subspecific epithet) is added, forming a trinomial (e.g., *Branta canadensis leucopareia* for the Aleutian subspecies of Canada Goose).[48]

C. The Importance of Taxonomic Order

Scientific checklists and field guides typically arrange bird species not alphabetically, but according to a standardized **taxonomic sequence**.[58] This sequence reflects the current understanding of the evolutionary relationships (phylogeny) among different bird groups. Orders, families, and genera are listed in an order that generally proceeds from groups considered to have diverged earlier in evolutionary history to those that diverged more recently.

This systematic arrangement serves several practical purposes. It groups related species together, facilitating comparison and identification, especially for beginners learning to distinguish between similar birds.[58] For researchers and experienced birders, it provides a framework for understanding the evolutionary context of different species and groups.[51] It also standardizes communication, ensuring that scientists and conservationists worldwide are referring to the same organizational structure when discussing avian diversity.[59] Familiarity with the taxonomic order, often gained through frequent use of field guides, helps users navigate these resources efficiently and implicitly reinforces knowledge about avian phylogeny.[58]

D. Taxonomy in Flux: AOS Checklist and Evolutionary Insights

It is crucial to understand that avian taxonomy is not static; it is a dynamic field that reflects our evolving understanding of bird evolution.[48] Classifications are scientific hypotheses about evolutionary history, subject to revision as new evidence emerges.[48] In recent decades, advances in molecular techniques, particularly DNA sequencing, have revolutionized systematics, providing powerful new data for reconstructing the avian tree of life.[48] This molecular evidence often leads to changes in how species are grouped and ordered, sometimes confirming traditional classifications based on morphology and behavior, but other times revealing unexpected relationships that necessitate taxonomic revisions.[62]

For North and Middle America, the primary authority on bird taxonomy and nomenclature is the Check-list of North American Birds, maintained by the American Ornithological Society (AOS) (formerly the American Ornithologists' Union, AOU) through its North American Classification Committee (NACC).[51] This committee rigorously evaluates published scientific research and formal proposals for changes to the checklist.[65] Accepted changes, based on compelling evidence, are published annually in official supplements to the main checklist.[61]

These updates frequently involve:

- **Changes in sequence:** Reflecting new understanding of the relationships between orders or families (e.g., waterfowl and landfowl moving to the beginning of the list, falcons moving closer to parrots and passerines).[62]
- **Species splits:** Elevating previously recognized subspecies to full species status based on evidence of reproductive isolation (e.g., splits of Western Scrub-Jay, Leach's Storm-Petrel, White-winged Scoter).[68]
- **Species lumps:** Combining two or more previously recognized species into a single species when evidence suggests they interbreed freely or are not sufficiently distinct (e.g., lumping of Thayer's Gull with Iceland Gull, lumping of Common and Hoary Redpolls).[61]
- **Generic reallocation:** Moving species between genera when evidence indicates they are more closely related to species in a different genus (e.g., many wood warblers moved to *Setophaga*, waterthrushes moved to *Parkesia*).[62]
- **Nomenclatural changes:** Correcting scientific names based on the rules of the International Code of Zoological Nomenclature, often involving principles of priority (using the oldest valid name) or conservation (preserving widely used names).[60] Changes to English names also occur, often to improve clarity or consistency.[68]

The ongoing refinement of the AOS checklist illustrates that taxonomy is an active scientific endeavor. The changes, while sometimes challenging for users to track, represent progress in accurately mapping the evolutionary history of birds. This process involves balancing the need for taxonomic stability, essential for clear communication [59], with the imperative to reflect the most accurate scientific understanding of avian phylogeny based on the latest evidence.[48] The NACC's careful deliberation process highlights this balance between scientific accuracy and practical usability.[68]

E. Taxonomic Example: The American Robin (*Turdus migratorius*)

To illustrate the Linnaean system, consider the classification of the familiar American Robin, see Table 2.2:

Table 2.2 - Linnaean Classification Hierarchy for the American Robin (*Turdus migratorius*)

Taxonomic Rank	Classification	Notes	Supporting Snippets
Kingdom	Animalia	Multicellular, eukaryotic organisms	51
Phylum	Chordata	Animals with a notochord/backbone	51
Class	Aves	Birds (feathers, endothermy, etc.)	51
Order	Passeriformes	Perching birds (largest avian order)	51
Family	Turdidae	Thrushes and allies	52
Genus	*Turdus*	A large genus of true thrushes	52
Species	*Turdus migratorius*	The specific species, American Robin	52

The American Robin (*Turdus migratorius*) is a widespread migratory songbird found across North America.[75] It is characterized by its gray-brown back, reddish-orange breast, and white eye crescents.[75] First described by Linnaeus in 1766 [79], the species includes several recognized subspecies that differ subtly in coloration and size across its extensive range.[76] Its placement within the large family Turdidae reflects its close evolutionary relationship to other thrushes like the Eastern Bluebird and Wood Thrush.[78]

Part IX - Special Cases: Flightless Birds

2.9. Variations on a Theme: Flightless Birds

While flight is a defining characteristic of the Class Aves, a fascinating array of bird species have secondarily lost this ability, adapting instead to terrestrial or aquatic life.[22] These flightless birds provide unique insights into evolutionary processes and the constraints and opportunities associated with losing aerial locomotion.

A. Evolutionary Pathways to Flightlessness

Flightlessness is not an ancestral state for birds; all known flightless species evolved from ancestors that could fly. This evolutionary transition has occurred independently numerous times – estimated at least 40 times – across a wide phylogenetic spectrum of bird orders, demonstrating convergent evolution (Gill, 2007, p. 138). A primary ecological driver for the evolution of flightlessness appears to be the colonization of environments with reduced predation pressure, particularly oceanic islands lacking native terrestrial mammals. In such "safe" environments, the high energetic cost of maintaining flight muscles and undertaking flight may outweigh its benefits, especially if resources can be obtained efficiently on the ground or in the water. Natural selection may then favor individuals that allocate resources away from the flight apparatus towards other traits, such as larger body size or enhanced terrestrial locomotion.

The loss of flight is typically accompanied by predictable morphological changes. These include the reduction or even complete loss of wing bones, a significant reduction or absence of the sternal keel (reducing attachment sites for flight muscles), and often an increase in overall body size or robustness (gigantism). Feather structure can also be modified, with the interlocking barbules sometimes lost, resulting in a shaggier, less aerodynamic plumage, as seen in kiwis. Intriguingly, studies have shown that even flying birds living on islands with low predation risk tend to evolve smaller flight muscles and relatively longer legs compared to their mainland relatives, suggesting a general evolutionary trajectory towards flightlessness driven by relaxed selection for flight capability.

Tragically, the very adaptations that allowed flightless birds to thrive in predator-poor environments made them exceptionally vulnerable to human arrival and the associated introduction of non-native predators (like rats, cats, and dogs) and habitat alteration. "Island birds, in particular, are highly susceptible to extinction following the introduction of mammalian predators" (Jones & Diamond, 2001, p. 63). Countless flightless species, including iconic birds like the Dodo of Mauritius (*Raphus cucullatus*) the Elephant Birds of Madagascar (*Aepyornithidae*), and the Moas of New Zealand - flightless birds native to New Zealand, belonging to the order Dinornithiformes - have been driven to extinction by human activities. This disproportionate loss has significantly skewed our perception of avian diversity, hiding the fact that flightlessness was a much more common evolutionary outcome than the relatively few extant species would suggest. Before these extinctions, flightless species existed in over half of all bird orders, compared to only about nine orders today.

B. Ratites: Grounded Giants and Their Kin

The most prominent group traditionally associated with flightlessness are the ratites, members of the superorder Palaeognathae. This group includes the largest living birds – the Ostrich of Africa, the Emu of Australia, the Cassowaries of Australia and New Guinea, and the Rheas of South America – as well as the smaller Kiwis endemic to New Zealand. Extinct members include the giant Moas of New Zealand and Elephant Birds of Madagascar. "Ratites are a group of flightless birds characterized by a reduced or absent keel on the sternum" (Proctor & Lynch, 1993, p. 287).

Ratites share several characteristics linked to their flightlessness: greatly reduced wings, powerful legs adapted for running, and the near or complete absence of a keel on the sternum. The term "ratite" itself derives from the Latin *ratis*, meaning "raft," referring to this flat, keel-less breastbone. Many, though not all (e.g., kiwis), exhibit gigantism.

For many years, the prevailing hypothesis was that ratites formed a monophyletic group (descended from a single common flightless ancestor) whose distribution across the southern continents resulted from the breakup of the supercontinent Gondwana (vicariance). However, molecular evidence (DNA analysis) has overturned this view. "Molecular phylogenetic studies have revolutionized our understanding of ratite evolution, revealing that flightlessness evolved multiple times independently within this group" (Harshman et al., 2008, p. 4835). DNA studies reveal that the flying Tinamous of Central and South America (Order Tinamiformes) are phylogenetically nested within the ratite lineages. This means that some flightless ratites (like kiwis, emus, and cassowaries) are more closely related to the flying tinamous than they are to other ratites like ostriches or rheas.

This phylogenetic arrangement strongly implies that the common ancestor of palaeognaths was likely a flying bird, and that flightlessness evolved independently multiple times within different ratite lineages after their ancestors had dispersed by flight to their current geographic locations. The striking similarities in morphology among different ratite groups (large size, reduced wings, no keel) are therefore examples of convergent evolution, driven by similar selective pressures favoring terrestrial locomotion and energy conservation in predator-poor environments. Genetic studies suggest that evolution may have repeatedly targeted similar regulatory genes or developmental pathways in these independent transitions to flightlessness.

C. Penguins: Adapted for Aquatic Prowess

Penguins (Order Sphenisciformes) represent another major lineage of flightless birds, but their adaptations have taken them in a dramatically different direction: mastery of the aquatic realm. Found predominantly in the Southern Hemisphere, especially in Antarctic and subantarctic waters, penguins are highly specialized marine predators. "Penguins are flightless birds that have evolved a unique suite of adaptations for an aquatic lifestyle" (Williams, 1995, p. 1).

Their flightlessness is linked to profound modifications for swimming and diving. Their wings have evolved into stiff, flattened, powerful flippers, used to "fly" through the water with remarkable speed and agility. "The forelimbs of penguins are modified into flippers adapted for underwater propulsion" (Proctor & Lynch, 1993, p. 291). Unlike flying birds, penguins generate propulsion during both the downstroke and the upstroke of their flippers. To facilitate diving and maneuvering underwater, penguin bones are dense and solid, lacking the extensive pneumatization found in flying birds; this reduces buoyancy and increases resistance to pressure at depth. "Penguin bones are denser than those of flying birds, reducing buoyancy" (Schmidt-Nielsen, 1997, p. 147), their bodies are highly streamlined to minimize drag. Unlike ratites, penguins retain a prominent sternal keel and possess powerful pectoral muscles, homologous to flight muscles but adapted for underwater propulsion. Their feathers are also highly modified; they are short, stiff, and densely packed over the entire body, forming an exceptionally effective insulating layer against cold water and contributing to waterproofing. "Penguin feathers are short, stiff, and densely packed, providing insulation and waterproofing" (Gill, 2007, p. 71). Penguins meticulously maintain their plumage using oil from their uropygial gland. The trapped layer of air within the plumage can also be released as microbubbles during dives, potentially reducing drag. Many penguin species exhibit countershading – a dark back and light belly – providing camouflage from predators and prey in the marine environment.

Penguins possess further physiological adaptations for their marine existence, including specialized salt glands above the eyes to excrete excess salt ingested with seawater, adaptations in eye structure (flattened cornea, modified lens) for clear vision underwater, and physiological mechanisms for enduring deep dives and low oxygen levels (e.g., high myoglobin concentrations for oxygen storage in muscles, ability to reduce heart rate and restrict blood flow to non-essential organs).[11]

The distinct evolutionary paths of ratites and penguins highlight how the loss of flight can open doors to radically different ecological niches and suites of adaptations, one leading to terrestrial gigantism and cursoriality, the other to unparalleled aquatic proficiency (see

Table 2.3 for the key adaptations, ratites and penguins). Both groups, however, exemplify how specialization, while successful under specific conditions, can increase vulnerability when those conditions change, as evidenced by the high extinction rates among flightless birds following human contact. The convergent evolution seen within ratites, and the unique adaptations of penguins, also suggest that the loss of flight might be channeled by underlying developmental or genetic constraints, leading to repeated patterns in how birds adapt to a ground-based or water-based existence.[85]

Table 2.3 - Key Adaptations: Flying versus Select Flightless Birds (Ratites & Penguins)

Feature	Typical Flying Bird	Typical Ratite (e.g., Ostrich)	Penguin	Supporting Snippets
Sternum/Keel	Large keel present for flight muscle attachment	Keel absent or greatly reduced	Keel present, large (for swimming muscle attachment)	1
Wing Bones	Well-developed, often pneumatic (hollow), fused elements	Reduced, solid bones, vestigial in some	Modified into stiff, flattened flippers; solid bones	8
Pectoral Muscles	Very large, power flight	Reduced	Very large, power swimming	9
Bone Density	Lightweight (pneumatic)	Generally heavier/more solid than flying bird counterparts	Dense, solid (not pneumatic)	10
Feathers	Asymmetrical flight feathers, interlocking barbules	Often symmetrical, lack interlocking barbules (downy)	Short, stiff, dense, overlapping, waterproof	9
Primary Locomotion	Flight (in air)	Running (terrestrial)	Swimming/Diving (aquatic)	7

Part X – Concluding Section

2.10. Conclusion: The Enduring Fascination of Birds

Birds, the feathered descendants of dinosaurs, represent a triumph of evolution, showcasing an extraordinary array of adaptations that have allowed them to conquer skies, lands, and waters across the globe. Their defining characteristics – feathers, endothermy, hard-shelled eggs, beaks, and a suite of physiological specializations – set them apart within the animal kingdom.[1] The intricate modifications of their skeletal, respiratory, circulatory, and metabolic systems, particularly those enabling the energetically demanding feat of flight, stand as testaments to the power of natural selection in shaping form and function.[9]

The scientific endeavor to classify this vast diversity, using the Linnaean system and modern phylogenetic tools, provides a framework for understanding their evolutionary history.[48] While taxonomy offers structure, it remains a dynamic field, constantly refined by new discoveries, particularly from genetic research, which continually reshape our understanding of the avian tree of life.[51] The standardized taxonomic order employed in resources like field guides is not merely organizational but serves as a valuable tool for learning and communication among researchers and enthusiasts alike.[58]

Furthermore, the existence of flightless birds like ratites and penguins demonstrates that evolution does not always follow a single trajectory.[22] The loss of flight, driven by specific ecological circumstances, has led to remarkable alternative adaptations for terrestrial or aquatic life, highlighting the versatility of the avian bauplan.[14] However, the heightened vulnerability of these specialized forms to human-induced environmental changes underscores the fragility of such evolutionary pathways.[86]

The study of birds continues to offer profound insights into evolutionary biology, physiology, ecology, and behavior. Understanding the fundamental aspects of avian biology – their anatomy, physiology, classification, and evolutionary adaptations – significantly enhances our ability to identify species in the field, interpret their behaviors, and appreciate their intricate relationship with their environment.[58] Continued observation, whether through formal scientific research or the rapidly growing contributions of participatory science initiatives like eBird and Project FeederWatch, is essential.[58] Such efforts not only deepen our knowledge but also provide crucial data for monitoring populations and informing conservation strategies needed to protect this diverse and fascinating group of animals for future generations.[12]

References

Bibby, C. J., Burgess, N. D., & Hill, D. A. (2000). *Bird census techniques* (2nd ed.). Academic Press.

Biewener, A. A. (2003). *Animal locomotion*. Oxford University Press.

Brusatte, S. (2018). *The rise and fall of the dinosaurs: A new history of a lost world*. William Morrow.

Brush, A. H. (1996). On the origin of feathers. *Journal of Evolutionary Biology, 9*(2), 131–142.

Catchpole, C. K., & Slater, P. J. B. (1995). *Bird song: Biological themes and variations*. Cambridge University Press.

Dickinson, J. L., Shirk, J., Bonney, R., Crain, R. L., Doctor, M., Phillips, T., Purdy, K., Silberglied, R., & Soukup, J. (2010). The current state of citizen science as a tool for ecological research and public engagement. *Frontiers in Ecology and the Environment, 8*(1), 29–36.

Gill, F. B. (2007). *Ornithology* (3rd ed.). W. H. Freeman and Company.

Grant, P. R., & Grant, B. R. (2008). *How and why species multiply: The radiation of Darwin's finches*. Princeton University Press.

Harshman, J., Braun, E. L., Braun, M. J., Bowie, R. C. K., Chojnowski, J. L., Kimball, R. T., ... & Hackett, S. J. (2008). Phylogenomic evidence for multiple losses of flight in ratite birds. *Science, 321*(5894), 1346-1348.

Jones, K. E., & Diamond, J. (2001). Population dynamics of birds on islands: implications for vulnerability to extinction. *Ecology, 82*(1), 63-78.

Kaplan, R., & Kaplan, S. (1989). *The experience of nature: A psychological perspective*. Cambridge University Press.

Mayr, E. (2004). *What makes biology unique?: Considerations on the autonomy of a scientific discipline*. Cambridge University Press.

Powell, G. E., & Ham, S. H. (2008). Can ecotourism interpretation really lead to pro-environmental knowledge, attitudes and behaviour? Evidence from the field, and implications for managers. *Journal of Sustainable Tourism, 16*(1), 77–89.

Proctor, N. S., & Lynch, P. J. (1993). *Manual of ornithology: Avian structure and function*. Yale University Press.

Schluter, D. (2000). *The ecology of adaptive radiation*. Oxford University Press.

Schmidt-Nielsen, K. (1997). *Animal physiology: Adaptation and environment* (5th ed.). Prentice Hall.

Sekercioglu, Ç. H., Daily, G. C., & Ehrlich, P. R. (2004). Ecosystem consequences of bird declines. *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences, 101*(52), 18072–18077.

Sekercioglu, Ç. H., Wenny, D. G., & Whelan, C. J. (2011). Why birds matter: Avian ecological functions and ecosystem services. *Journal of Ornithology, 152*(Suppl 1), S1–S5.

Tidemann, S., & Gosler, A. (Eds.). (2010). *Ethno-ornithology: Birds, Indigenous peoples, culture and society*. Earthscan.

Weiner, J. (1994). *The beak of the finch: A story of evolution in our time*. Alfred A. Knopf.

Wheelwright, N. T. (1988). Fruit-eating birds and bird-dispersed plants in the tropics. *Trends in Ecology & Evolution, 3*(10), 270–274.

Williams, T. D. (1995). *The penguins*. Oxford University Press.

Other Sources Consulted

1. Bird - Wikipedia. (n.d.). *Wikipedia*. Retrieved April 17, 2025, from https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Bird
2. Zoology Unit 11: 11.2 - Class Aves - YouTube. (n.d.). Retrieved April 17, 2025, from https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=KQE6B8OBx4Q

3. John James Audubon Center at Mill Grove. (n.d.). *What makes a bird a bird?* Retrieved April 17, 2025, from https://johnjames.audubon.org/sites/default/files/static_pages/attachments/feathered_friends_activities_book.pdf
4. The Cornell Lab. (n.d.). *What is unique to birds?* Bird Academy. Retrieved April 17, 2025, from https://academy.allaboutbirds.org/what-is-unique-to-birds/
5. What Makes a Bird…a Bird? (n.d.). Retrieved April 17, 2025, from https://cicobb.typepad.com/files/what-makes-a-bird-a-bird---lab-teacher-guide.pdf
6. BYJU'S. (n.d.). *Flight adaptations in birds – Morphological and anatomical adaptations.* Retrieved April 17, 2025, from https://byjus.com/biology/flight-adaptations/
7. Magadh Mahila College. (n.d.). *Flight adaptations in birds.* Retrieved April 17, 2025, from http://magadhmahilacollege.org/wp-content/uploads/2020/04/Flight-adaptations-in-birds.pdf
8. Birds and the Evolution of Flight. (n.d.). Retrieved April 17, 2025, from https://www2.gwu.edu/~darwin/BiSc151/Birds/Birds.HTML
9. Biology LibreTexts. (n.d.). *29.5: Birds.* Retrieved April 17, 2025, from https://bio.libretexts.org/Bookshelves/Introductory_and_General_Biology/General_Biology_1e_(OpenStax)/5%3A_Biological_Diversity/29%3A_Vertebrates/29.5%3A_Birds
10. Montana Natural History Center. (n.d.). *Avian adaptations.* Retrieved April 17, 2025, from https://www.montananaturalist.org/blog-post/avian-adaptations/
11. Emperor penguin - Wikipedia. (n.d.). *Wikipedia.* Retrieved April 17, 2025, from https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Emperor_penguin
12. The Cornell Lab. (n.d.). *Ornithology: Comprehensive bird biology.* Bird Academy. Retrieved April 17, 2025, from https://academy.allaboutbirds.org/product/ornithology-comprehensive-bird-biology/
13. University of California, Berkeley. (n.d.). *Classification of the major taxa of birds.* Retrieved April 17, 2025, from https://mcb.berkeley.edu/courses/bio1a/lab/downloads/Bio1AL_Diveristy_Birds.pdf
14. Smithsonian Ocean. (n.d.). *Penguins.* Retrieved April 17, 2025, from https://ocean.si.edu/ocean-life/seabirds/penguins
15. Bird anatomy - Wikipedia. (n.d.). *Wikipedia.* Retrieved April 17, 2025, from https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Bird_anatomy
16. Wilderness Awareness School. (n.d.). *Bird skeletons and avian physiology.* Retrieved April 17, 2025, from https://wildernessawareness.org/articles/bird-skeletons-and-avian-physiology/
17. Stanford University. (n.d.). *Adaptations for flight.* Retrieved April 17, 2025, from https://web.stanford.edu/group/stanfordbirds/text/uessays/uAdaptations.html
18. Proceedings of the Royal Society B. (n.d.). *Bone density and the lightweight skeletons of birds.* Retrieved April 17, 2025, from https://royalsocietypublishing.org/doi/10.1098/rspb.2010.0117
19. University of Kentucky. (n.d.). Retrieved April 17, 2025, from https://publications.ca.uky.edu/files/ASC202.pdf
20. Britannica. (n.d.). *Bird – Skeleton, flight, feathers.* Retrieved April 17, 2025, from https://www.britannica.com/animal/bird-animal/Skeleton
21. Edubirdie. (n.d.). *Flight adaptation in birds.* Retrieved April 17, 2025, from https://edubirdie.com/docs/university-of-phoenix/bio-101t-principles-of-biology-3/50365-flight-adaptation-in-birds
22. Flightless bird - Wikipedia. (n.d.). *Wikipedia.* Retrieved April 17, 2025, from https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Flightless_bird
23. Britannica Kids. (n.d.). *Flightless bird - Students.* Retrieved April 17, 2025, from https://kids.britannica.com/students/article/flightless-bird/273224
24. Biology LibreTexts. (n.d.). *29.5: Birds.* Retrieved April 17, 2025, from https://bio.libretexts.org/Bookshelves/Introductory_and_General_Biology/General_Biology_1e_(OpenStax)/5%3A_Vertebrates/29.5%3A_Birds

25. University of Nebraska–Lincoln. (n.d.). *Physiological aeroecology: Anatomical and physiological adaptations for flight*. Retrieved April 17, 2025, from https://digitalcommons.unl.edu/cgi/viewcontent.cgi?article=3325&context=usdaarsfacpub
26. PubMed Central. (n.d.). *The physiological basis of bird flight*. Retrieved April 17, 2025, from https://pmc.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/articles/PMC4992708/
27. Oxford Academic. (n.d.). *The physiology and biomechanics of avian flight at high altitude*. Retrieved April 17, 2025, from https://academic.oup.com/icb/article/46/1/62/662356
28. Britannica. (n.d.). *Respiratory system – Avian, lungs, airways*. Retrieved April 17, 2025, from https://www.britannica.com/science/respiratory-system/Birds
29. Carnegie Museum of Natural History. (n.d.). *How birds breathe with their butts*. Retrieved April 17, 2025, from https://carnegiemnh.org/how-birds-breathe-with-their-butts/
30. Fernbank Science Center. (n.d.). *Respiration*. Retrieved April 17, 2025, from http://www.fernbank.edu/birding/respiration.htm
31. Air sac - Wikipedia. (n.d.). *Wikipedia*. Retrieved April 17, 2025, from https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Air_sac
32. Aves Biology. (n.d.). *Bird respiratory system*. Retrieved April 17, 2025, from https://avesbiology.com/birdrespiration.html
33. AskNature. (n.d.). *How air sacs power lungs in birds' respiratory system*. Retrieved April 17, 2025, from https://asknature.org/strategy/respiratory-system-facilitates-efficient-gas-exchange/
34. Philosophical Transactions of the Royal Society B. (n.d.). *Unidirectional airflow, air sacs or the horizontal septum: What does it take to make a bird lung?* Retrieved April 17, 2025, from https://royalsocietypublishing.org/doi/10.1098/rstb.2023.0418
35. Fernbank Science Center. (n.d.). *Respiration*. Retrieved April 17, 2025, from http://www.fernbank.edu/birding/respiration.htm#:~:text=The%20air%20sacs%20permit%20a,to%20diffuse%20into%20the%20blood.
36. PubMed Central. (n.d.). *Robust unidirectional airflow through avian lungs: New insights from a piecewise linear mathematical model*. Retrieved April 17, 2025, from https://pmc.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/articles/PMC4749316/
37. Frontiers for Young Minds. (n.d.). *Breathing in birds and crocodiles: What's different, what's the same, and why does it matter?* Retrieved April 17, 2025, from https://kids.frontiersin.org/articles/10.3389/frym.2021.578360
38. American Journal of Physiology. (n.d.). *The evolution of unidirectional pulmonary airflow*. Retrieved April 17, 2025, from https://journals.physiology.org/doi/full/10.1152/physiol.00056.2014
39. Cornell Lab of Ornithology. (n.d.). *Do all birds have gizzards?* Retrieved April 17, 2025, from https://www.allaboutbirds.org/news/do-all-birds-have-gizzards/
40. Britannica. (n.d.). *Gizzard – Anatomy, muscles, digestion*. Retrieved April 17, 2025, from https://www.britannica.com/science/gizzard
41. Gizzard - Wikipedia. (n.d.). *Wikipedia*. Retrieved April 17, 2025, from https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Gizzard
42. Wild About Utah. (n.d.). *Bird gizzards and the old grind by Jim Cane*. Retrieved April 17, 2025, from https://wildaboututah.org/podcast/bird-gizzards-and-the-old-grind/
43. Montana Natural History Center. (n.d.). *Investigating gizzard grit*. Retrieved April 17, 2025, from https://www.montananaturalist.org/blog-post/investigating-gizzard-grit/
44. Cluck It All Farms. (n.d.). *Pecking into the gritty details: Understanding your chicken's gizzard*. Retrieved April 17, 2025, from https://cluckitallfarms.com/blogs/cluckin-chronicles-with-millie/understanding-chicken-gizzards
45. Reddit. (n.d.). *ELI5 How do birds know they have to swallow stones?* Retrieved April 17, 2025, from https://www.reddit.com/r/explainlikeimfive/comments/byuybu/eli5_how_do_birds_know_they_have_to_swallow_stones/
46. YouTube. (n.d.). *Virtual chicken: The gizzard*. Retrieved April 17, 2025, from https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=wSutYGurh1I&pp=0gcJCfcAhR29_xXO

47. PubMed Central. (n.d.). *Effects of diet and gizzard muscularity on grit use in domestic chickens.* Retrieved April 17, 2025, from https://pmc.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/articles/PMC7666813/
48. Rubega Lab. (n.d.). *Lecture notes: Avian classification and taxonomy.* Retrieved April 17, 2025, from https://rubegalab.uconn.edu/2016/01/26/lecture-notes-avian-classification-and-taxonomy/
49. Stanford University. (n.d.). *Taxonomy and nomenclature.* Retrieved April 17, 2025, from https://web.stanford.edu/group/stanfordbirds/text/uessays/earlier%20versions/Taxonomy.html
50. eBON. (2018, September 1). *Introduction to taxonomy.* Retrieved April 17, 2025, from https://ebonph.wordpress.com/2018/09/01/introduction-to-taxonomy/
51. U.S. Geological Survey. (n.d.). *Taxonomy – Bird population studies.* Retrieved April 17, 2025, from https://www.mbr-pwrc.usgs.gov/bbs/taxon.html
52. Birds.com. (n.d.). *Bird classifications.* Retrieved April 17, 2025, from https://www.birds.com/species/classifications/
53. Linnaean taxonomy - Wikipedia. (n.d.). *Wikipedia.* Retrieved April 17, 2025, from https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Linnaean_taxonomy
54. CK-12 Foundation. (n.d.). *The Linnaean system – Advanced.* Retrieved April 17, 2025, from https://flexbooks.ck12.org/cbook/ck-12-advanced-biology/section/10.42/primary/lesson/the-linnaean-system-advanced-bio-adv/
55. Britannica. (n.d.). *Taxonomy – Linnaean system, classification, naming.* Retrieved April 17, 2025, from https://www.britannica.com/science/taxonomy/The-Linnaean-system
56. Boyd, J. H. III. (n.d.). *Aves—A taxonomy in flux: Scientific nomenclature.* Retrieved April 17, 2025, from http://jboyd.net/Taxo/nomenclature.html
57. IOC World Bird List. (n.d.). *Orders of birds.* Retrieved April 17, 2025, from https://www.worldbirdnames.org/new/classification/orders-of-birds-draft/
58. Cornell Lab of Ornithology. (n.d.). *Teaching bird ID – K-12 education.* Retrieved April 17, 2025, from https://www.birds.cornell.edu/k12/teaching-bird-id/
59. U.S. Geological Survey. (n.d.). *Type specimens and basic principles of avian taxonomy.* Retrieved April 17, 2025, from https://www.usgs.gov/publications/type-specimens-and-basic-principles-avian-taxonomy
60. International Ornithologists' Union. (n.d.). *Avian nomenclature.* Retrieved April 17, 2025, from https://www.internationalornithology.org/avian-nomenclature
61. American Birding Association. (2024). *Checklist redux 2024.* Retrieved April 17, 2025, from https://www.aba.org/aos-supplement-2024/
62. Carolina Bird Club. (n.d.). *Taxonomic change history.* Retrieved April 17, 2025, from https://www.carolinabirdclub.org/brc/aouchanges.html
63. American Ornithological Society. (n.d.). *North American checklist.* Retrieved April 17, 2025, from https://americanornithology.org/publications/north-and-middle-american-checklist/
64. AOS Checklist of North American Birds - Wikipedia. (n.d.). *Wikipedia.* Retrieved April 17, 2025, from https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/AOS_Checklist_of_North_American_Birds
65. American Ornithological Society. (n.d.). *AOU checklist of North and Middle American birds.* Retrieved April 17, 2025, from https://checklist.americanornithology.org/
66. American Birding Association. (2023). *AOS checklist supplement redux, v. 2023.* Retrieved April 17, 2025, from https://www.aba.org/aos-checklist-supplement-redux-v-2023/
67. American Ornithological Society. (n.d.). *Current & prior AOS checklist proposals.* Retrieved April 17, 2025, from https://americanornithology.org/about/committees/nacc/current-prior-proposals/
68. American Ornithological Society. (2024). *AOU checklist supplement.* Retrieved April 17, 2025, from https://americanornithology.org/wp-content/uploads/2024/01/NACC_Supplements_2000_2023.pdf
69. Audubon. (n.d.). *Here are the biggest changes to the AOU checklist of North American birds.* Retrieved April 17, 2025, from https://www.audubon.org/news/here-are-biggest-changes-aou-checklist-north-american-birds

70. Sibley Guides. (2010). *New bird names in the 51st AOU checklist supplement.* Retrieved April 17, 2025, from https://www.sibleyguides.com/2010/07/bird-name-changes-in-the-51st-aou-checklist-supplement/
71. Colby College. (2019). *Changes to the AOU checklist of North American birds.* Retrieved April 17, 2025, from https://web.colby.edu/mainebirds/2019/09/04/changes-to-the-aou-check-list-of-north-american-birds/
72. American Ornithological Society. (n.d.). *Guidelines for English bird names.* Retrieved April 17, 2025, from https://americanornithology.org/about/committees/nacc/guidelines-for-english-bird-names/
73. Idaho Fish and Game. (n.d.). *Turdus migratorius (American robin).* Retrieved April 17, 2025, from https://idfg.idaho.gov/species/taxa/16895
74. IPM Images. (n.d.). *American robin (Turdus migratorius Linnaeus, 1766).* Retrieved April 17, 2025, from https://www.ipmimages.org/browse/subinfo.cfm?sub=12623&org=20758
75. Animal Diversity Web. (n.d.). *Turdus migratorius (American robin).* Retrieved April 17, 2025, from https://animaldiversity.org/accounts/Turdus_migratorius/
76. Animal Diversity Web. (n.d.). *Classification – ADW: Turdus migratorius.* Retrieved April 17, 2025, from https://animaldiversity.org/accounts/Turdus_migratorius/classification/
77. New Hampshire PBS. (n.d.). *American robin – Turdus migratorius.* Retrieved April 17, 2025, from https://nhpbs.org/natureworks/robin.htm
78. Cornell Lab of Ornithology. (n.d.). *American robin overview.* Retrieved April 17, 2025, from https://www.allaboutbirds.org/guide/American_Robin/overview
79. American robin - Wikipedia. (n.d.). *Wikipedia.* Retrieved April 17, 2025, from https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/American_robin
80. Simple English Wikipedia. (n.d.). *American robin.* Retrieved April 17, 2025, from https://simple.wikipedia.org/wiki/American_robin
81. Avibase. (n.d.). *Turdus migratorius (American robin).* Retrieved April 17, 2025, from https://avibase.bsc-eoc.org/species.jsp?avibaseid=D77E4B418D581FB2
82. ResearchGate. (n.d.). *A comparative test of the correlated evolution of flightlessness and relative brain size in birds.* Retrieved April 17, 2025, from https://www.researchgate.net/publication/230734045
83. Field Museum. (n.d.). *When birds lose the ability to fly, their bodies change faster than their feathers.* Retrieved April 17, 2025, from https://www.fieldmuseum.org/about/press/when-birds-lose-the-ability-to-fly-their-bodies-change-faster-than-their-feathers
84. Research Outreach. (n.d.). *Unearthing avian evolution: What can we learn from the skeletons of flightless birds?* Retrieved April 17, 2025, from https://researchoutreach.org/articles/unearthing-avian-evolution-learn-skeletons-flightless-birds/
85. ZooCreation. (n.d.). *Ratites: Ostriches, emus, elephant birds, and more.* Retrieved April 17, 2025, from https://www.zoocreation.com/ratites
86. PubMed Central. (n.d.). *Anthropogenic extinctions conceal widespread evolution of flightlessness in birds.* Retrieved April 17, 2025, from https://pmc.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/articles/PMC7710364/
87. University College London. (2020). *Study: Flightless birds were more common before human-driven extinctions.* Retrieved April 17, 2025, from https://www.ucl.ac.uk/news/2020/dec/study-flightless-birds-were-more-common-human-driven-extinctions
88. BBC Wildlife Magazine. (n.d.). *Flightless birds: How did some birds lose their ability to fly?* Retrieved April 17, 2025, from https://www.discoverwildlife.com/animal-facts/birds/flightless-birds
89. UNM Newsroom. (n.d.). *New rule: Birds on islands evolve toward flightlessness.* Retrieved April 17, 2025, from https://news.unm.edu/news/new-rule:-birds-on-islands-evolve-toward-flightlessness
90. Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences. (n.d.). *Predictable evolution toward flightlessness in volant island birds.* Retrieved April 17, 2025, from https://www.pnas.org/doi/10.1073/pnas.1522931113

91. Live Science. (n.d.). *Theory of flightless birds shot down.* Retrieved April 17, 2025, from https://www.livescience.com/2846-theory-flightless-birds-shot.html
92. Harvard Gazette. (2019). *Harvard study explores genetics behind evolution of flightless birds.* Retrieved April 17, 2025, from https://news.harvard.edu/gazette/story/2019/05/harvard-study-explores-genetics-behind-evolution-of-flightless-birds/
93. National Academic Digital Library of Ethiopia. (n.d.). *Flightless birds.* Retrieved April 17, 2025, from http://ndl.ethernet.edu.et/bitstream/123456789/46567/1/Clive%20Roots.pdf
94. Smithsonian Insider. (2009). *DNA evidence is rearranging the branches of the avian family tree.* Retrieved April 17, 2025, from https://insider.si.edu/2009/07/dna-evidence-is-rearranging-the-branches-of-the-avian-family-tree/
95. Data Group. (n.d.). *Name a flightless bird: Text or die.* Retrieved April 17, 2025, from https://www.datagroup.in/dcoqdn/name-a-flightless-bird%3A-text-or-die
96. BirdBot. (n.d.). *Bird ID guide: Species & unique traits uncovered.* Retrieved April 17, 2025, from https://www.bird.bot/post/identifying-birds-a-comprehensive-guide-to-bird-species-and-their-unique-characteristics
97. Cornell Lab of Ornithology. (n.d.). *Biodiversity detectives resources – K-12 education.* Retrieved April 17, 2025, from https://www.birds.cornell.edu/k12/biodiversity-detectives/
98. Cornell University. (2022). *Spring 2022 - BIOEE 4750 - Class roster.* Retrieved April 17, 2025, from https://classes.cornell.edu/browse/roster/SP22/class/BIOEE/4750
99. Cornell University. (2020). *Spring 2020 - BIOEE 4751 - Class roster.* Retrieved April 17, 2025, from https://classes.cornell.edu/browse/roster/SP20/class/BIOEE/4751
100. Cornell Lab of Ornithology. (n.d.). *Home | Birds.* Retrieved April 17, 2025, from https://www.birds.cornell.edu/home/
101. Android Central. (n.d.). *Audubon birds – A field guide.* Retrieved April 17, 2025, from https://forums.androidcentral.com/threads/audubon-birds-a-field-guide.23947/
102. Audubon - Wikipedia. (n.d.). *Wikipedia.* Retrieved April 17, 2025, from https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Audubon
103. University of South Florida. (n.d.). *Type specimens and basic principles of avian taxonomy.* Retrieved April 17, 2025, from https://digitalcommons.usf.edu/cgi/viewcontent.cgi?article=22549&context=auk

Chapter 3

Birdwatching Conceptual Framework: Definitions, Literature Body, and Key Aspects

Ismar Borges de Lima
Universidade Estadual de Roraima-UERR, Brazil &
RECINATUR Foundation. Email: ismar@uerr.edu.br

Summary

This chapter provides a foundational review of the core concepts, terminologies, and scholarly literature that define the field of birdwatching and avitourism. It examines the evolution and diversification of birdwatching practices worldwide, highlighting distinctions between recreational birders, listers, eco-tourists, and ornithological travelers. Drawing on key studies, it explores user profiles, motivational frameworks, and typologies of birdwatchers, as well as market segmentation and behavioral patterns across different regions and cultures. The chapter also presents global data on birdwatching participation and economic impact, offering insight into how this activity has expanded from a niche interest to a structured tourism segment with social, educational, and conservation dimensions.

3.0 Introduction

Birdwatching, also known as **birding**, is the recreational practice of observing birds in their natural habitats, using the naked eye, binoculars, telescopes, or digital tools such as cameras and mobile apps. While often perceived as a leisurely activity, birdwatching encompasses a broad spectrum of engagement—from casual, backyard observation to highly specialized travel to remote biodiversity hotspots. It appeals to individuals for its aesthetic, educational, meditative, and scientific qualities, and has become an essential component of wildlife-based tourism, nature interpretation, and citizen science. Birdwatching is deeply embedded in many cultures and is now supported by a global infrastructure of field guides, online databases (e.g., eBird), conservation NGOs, and ecotourism operators.

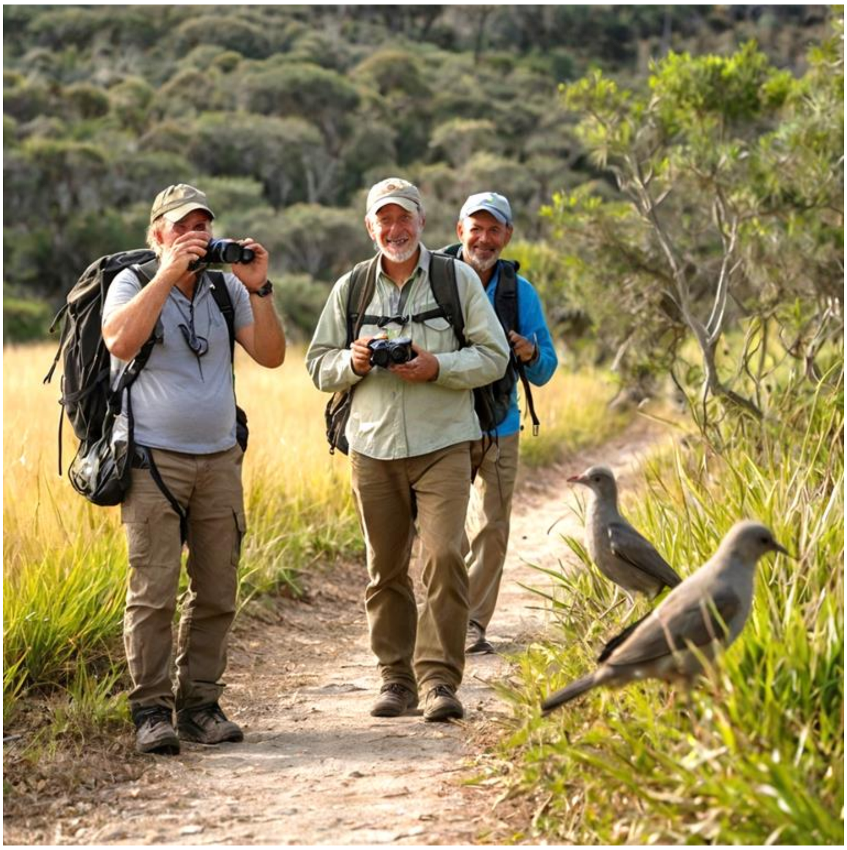
The practice offers numerous ecological and socio-economic benefits. Environmentally, birdwatching fosters a deeper connection between people and nature, enhancing awareness of biodiversity and promoting conservation values. Economically, it generates significant revenues for rural and protected areas—supporting local livelihoods, guiding services, accommodation, and community-based enterprises. However, the growth of birdwatching tourism also presents challenges. Poorly managed access, excessive use of playback calls, habitat trampling, and disturbance to nesting species can disrupt avian behavior and ecosystems (Nella and Stergiou, 2025). The carbon footprint of long-distance birding travel is another growing concern, calling for strategies such as carbon offsets, “slow birding,” and integration of sustainability certification in tourism services as explained in the paragraphs.

From a sustainability perspective, birdwatching holds considerable potential when carefully planned and responsibly managed. It supports low-impact tourism models, encourages biodiversity conservation through public engagement, and reinforces the economic rationale for protecting habitats, especially in developing countries and Indigenous territories. Birdwatching also plays a vital role in ecological monitoring and global conservation strategies, as citizen observations contribute to population tracking and migration studies. Ultimately, birdwatching embodies a harmonious intersection of leisure, learning, science, and sustainability—offering not only personal enrichment but also measurable contributions to conservation and sustainable development goals.

The interrelationship between avitourism, birdwatching, ecotourism, nature tourism, and wildlife tourism reflects a complex and overlapping set of tourism niches rooted in the human desire to engage with the natural world (Borges de Lima and Green, 2017). Avitourism, by definition, refers specifically to tourism in which the primary motivation is the observation of birds in their natural environments, often involving targeted travel to destinations known for avian diversity or endemism (Steven, Morrison & Castley, 2015). It is a subset of both wildlife tourism, which encompasses tourism centered around the observation and appreciation of wild animals in their habitats, and nature tourism, a broader term that includes a range of experiences involving natural landscapes, ecosystems, and geological features. Birdwatching, while often used interchangeably with avitourism in common discourse, refers more broadly to the activity itself, which can be practiced casually (e.g., backyard birding) or professionally (e.g., guided birding expeditions), regardless of whether travel is involved.

Ecotourism, as defined by The International Ecotourism Society (TIES), is "responsible travel to natural areas that conserves the environment and improves the well-being of local people." In this framework, avitourism is not only compatible with ecotourism but often serves as one of its most sustainable and conservation-oriented expressions, particularly when managed in alignment with ethical guidelines, community engagement, and biodiversity protection goals. Many avitourism operations take place in protected areas, Indigenous territories, or private reserves, where birders contribute to local economies and support conservation through park fees, local guides, and philanthropic contributions. The activity is generally low-impact compared to other wildlife tourism segments such as big game safaris, and birders tend to be more ecologically literate and conservation-minded, making them ideal participants in ecotourism initiatives (Hvenegaard, 2010; Şekercioğlu, 2002; Borges de Lima and Green, 2017).

Recent trends in avitourism and birdwatching tourism highlight a growing alignment with broader sustainability paradigms. These include the increasing adoption of **carbon offset mechanisms**, the **integration of sustainability certification in tourism services** (such as ecolabels for lodges and operators), and the emergence of what is commonly referred to as **"slow birding"** (Fang et al. 2015; Kolada 2023). This latter concept, inspired by the broader *slow movement*, emphasizes **mindful, immersive, and locally grounded birdwatching experiences**. Rather than prioritizing rapid species accumulation or long-distance travel in pursuit of rare sightings, slow birding encourages deeper connections with local ecosystems, environmental learning, and ethical behavior toward wildlife (Pfeiffer 2021; Fang et al., 2015).



Caption: Three birdwatchers walk along a forest trail, binoculars and cameras in hand, observing a pair of birds foraging at the edge of the path. Surrounded by tall grasses and native trees, the group enjoys a peaceful moment of wildlife observation in a natural setting—an ideal scene of avitourism in action. Illustrative image. Credit: Ismar Borges de Lima.

3.1. The Unexpected Aviary: Urban Birdwatching as an Emerging Tourism and Recreation Frontier

Traditionally, ornithological tourism and birdwatching have been strongly associated with pristine natural landscapes and protected areas, often overlooking the potential residing within urban environments. Academic focus historically mirrored this, concentrating on ecological tourism in remote settings or exploring wildlife tourism as an economic driver for rural or economically challenged areas (Stoddart & Nezhadhossein, 2016; Scott & Lee, 2010). Cities, particularly large metropolises, were rarely viewed as prime destinations for observing avian life.

However, a paradigm shift is underway. Recent research increasingly acknowledges and investigates the significant, albeit often underestimated, phenomenon of birdwatching within city limits (Alfano, 2014; Cherry, Davidson-Onsgard & Moore, 2018; Silber, 2015; Wachsmuth, 2012). This growing interest is bolstered by compelling ecological data; studies associated with institutions like the Cornell Lab of Ornithology suggest that urban areas globally may host as much as 20% of the world's bird species (cited in Alfano, 2014). This surprising diversity stems from the mosaic of habitats cities can offer – parks, waterways, green corridors, gardens, and even adapted infrastructure – which provide resources and refuge for numerous bird species, including adaptable generalists and surprising specialists. The rising popularity of urban birding demonstrates that enthusiasts increasingly recognize the city itself as a viable, accessible space to connect with wildlife (Cherry, Davidson-Onsgard & Moore, 2018).

Prominent advocates have championed this urban perspective. David Lindo, the self-styled "Urban Birder" in the UK, has been influential in promoting the idea that cities are rich grounds for bird observation. His philosophy, "Show me a city, and I can show you a bird" (Lindo, 2012), and practical guides like *The Urban Birder's City Guide* (Lindo, 2013) have inspired amateurs and influenced urban planning approaches. This recognition extends beyond hobbyists; urban planners, civil engineers, landscape architects, and economic developers are increasingly seeing the value in urban green spaces not just for aesthetics and recreation, but specifically for their potential to support biodiversity and attract nature-focused tourism.

Cities worldwide are capitalizing on this, integrating bird conservation and avitourism into their development strategies. In the United States, the U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service's Urban Bird Treaty Program signifies a major commitment, fostering cooperation between the federal agency and municipalities to conserve migratory birds and their habitats within urban landscapes. As of recent years, over 30 U.S. cities have joined this initiative, actively developing programs that often blend conservation with public engagement and tourism (US FWS, updated data post-2012). Notable examples of successful urban birding initiatives include the programming around the Smithsonian Urban Bird Habitat gardens in Washington D.C. (Smithsonian Gardens, 2022) and Wisconsin's statewide "Bird City" program, which recognizes the efforts of over 100 communities, including Milwaukee, in creating bird-friendly environments (BCW, updated data post-2017). While precise economic figures can be difficult to isolate solely for birdwatching, cities like New York demonstrate significant activity, with thriving guided bird walks in Central Park and rapid mobilization of enthusiasts via notification networks when rare species, like the notable Snowy Owl sighting in 2021, appear (acknowledging earlier estimates like Carver, 2013).

This trend is global. Vancouver hosts popular bird-related festivals. Singapore strategically incorporates rich biodiversity and birdwatching opportunities within its "City in a Garden" vision, blurring the lines between urban development and nature (Isaev et al., 2017). Cities are developing dedicated urban birding trails connecting multiple hotspots, like the trail network in Tucson, Arizona (TAS, 2017). In Australia, while specific projects like "Big City Birds" (BCB, 2020) were initiated, the focus increasingly integrates urban sightings into national citizen science platforms like BirdLife Australia's *Birdata* app, enabling broad public participation in monitoring how birds adapt to and utilize city environments.

Moscow showcases a long history and recent innovation in urban bird appreciation. Gorky Park, involved in early Soviet-era bird celebrations, launched the "Winged Neighbors" project in 2021. This long-term initiative integrates education, habitat creation (including smart birdhouses with cameras for monitoring), and public engagement, developed with experts from leading universities and ornithologists (Gorky Park, 2020). Furthermore, the Russian Bird Conservation Union's annual "Nightingale Evenings" action, originating in 1999, uses citizen counts of nightingales across dozens of cities as both an environmental indicator and a public awareness tool (RBPU, 2020). St. Petersburg also sees growth in specialized ornithological excursions within the city.

Despite these advancements, urban birdwatching often remains a localized recreational activity for residents or small groups, rather than a fully structured component of mainstream tourism packages in many cities. However, its potential is undeniable. Urban avitourism offers accessible nature experiences, promotes environmental awareness, leverages citizen science for valuable ecological data, contributes to local economies, and enhances the overall livability and sustainability of cities. As urban areas continue to grow, recognizing and nurturing their avian inhabitants offers a unique pathway to connect people with nature right on their doorstep.

3.2. Wildlife Tourism and Birdwatching: A Conceptual Framework

As already mentioned in this section, **wildlife tourism** refers to travel experiences centered on interactions with non-domesticated animals—commonly referred to as "wildlife"—occurring either in natural settings or in controlled environments such as zoos, wildlife parks, and aquaria. As defined by Higginbottom (2004), wildlife tourism can be either consumptive (e.g., hunting or fishing) or non-consumptive (e.g., observing or photographing animals). It has become a growing sector within global tourism, promoted for its potential to combine environmental conservation, community development, and recreational value. At its core, wildlife tourism is part of a broader category of **nature-based tourism**, where visitors are drawn to natural environments for leisure and learning. However, due to the specific appeal of animal encounters — especially with charismatic, rare, or endangered species — wildlife tourism has emerged as a distinctive field of study and practice, with specialized management needs, ethical considerations, and sustainability benchmarks (Borges de Lima and Green, 2017).

Wildlife tourism has emerged as **a robust and dynamic sector within global travel markets**, showing sustained and accelerated growth trends. According to *Polaris Market Research* (2023), the **global wildlife tourism market was valued at USD 155.6 billion in 2022**, with projections estimating an increase to USD 176.6 billion by 2024, and further soaring to USD 315 billion by 2032. This growth trajectory reflects a compound annual growth rate (CAGR) of 6.9% to 7.5%, depending on market segmentation and regional performance.

The expansion is notably driven by the increasing demand for premium, small-group, and tailor-made wildlife experiences, particularly those that emphasize sustainability, ethical engagement, and educational value. Specialized operators—such as Birding Ecotours and similar niche agencies—play a pivotal role in this market evolution by offering curated itineraries that cater to ecologically conscious travelers, including birdwatchers, conservation tourists, and biodiversity enthusiasts.

This upward trend reflects broader societal shifts toward experiential and nature-based travel, amplified by post-pandemic preferences for open-air environments, digital tools facilitating wildlife tracking and species identification (e.g., Merlin, iNaturalist), and a growing emphasis on conservation-linked tourism spending. The combination of economic opportunity and ecological engagement positions wildlife tourism as a key pillar of sustainable development strategies in both Global North and Global South contexts (Polaris Market Research and Consulting LLP, 2023).

3.2.1 Main Categories of Wildlife Tourism

Building on the widely accepted classification by Higginbottom (2004), and incorporating current trends and subfields such as birdwatching, wildlife tourism can be organized into the following primary categories (also see Table 3.1):

1. **Wildlife-Watching Tourism**: This involves the non-intrusive observation of free-ranging animals in their natural habitats. Activities include **safaris**, **whale watching**, **bat caves exploration**, and most notably, **birdwatching**. Increasingly popular among global travelers, birdwatching has evolved into a major wildlife tourism niche, with over 100 million global participants annually (UNWTO, 2023). Birdwatching (or birding) typically involves the use of optics, field guides, mobile apps like eBird and Merlin, and often supports citizen science and conservation.
2. **Captive-Wildlife Tourism**: Interactions occur within managed enclosures—zoos, wildlife rehabilitation centers, aquariums, and wildlife parks. While these sites can promote education and conservation, ethical and welfare standards vary widely. Attractions such as open-range zoos attempt to simulate natural environments, blurring distinctions with natural habitat experiences.
3. **Hunting Tourism**: Includes trophy and subsistence hunting, often regulated through licenses and quotas. Although controversial, certain models of regulated hunting have been shown to contribute financially to wildlife conservation and protected area management (Lindsey et al., 2007). This form is often associated with community benefit-sharing in rural areas, particularly in Southern Africa.
4. **Fishing Tourism**: This covers recreational and sport fishing in both freshwater and marine environments. The shift toward **catch-and-release** practices has made this form more conservation-aligned, especially in ecologically sensitive areas like fly-fishing rivers or coral reef zones.
5. **Birdwatching Tourism (Avitourism)**: Now recognized as a distinct and rapidly growing segment, birdwatching tourism—or **avitourism**—is defined by travel whose primary purpose is the observation of wild birds in natural or semi-natural settings (Steven, Morrison & Castley, 2015). Birdwatching may occur in biodiverse rainforests, urban wetlands, or remote mountains, offering not only recreational enjoyment but also economic and conservation benefits. With expenditures averaging $3,500 per international birding trip in 2024 (UNWTO, 2023; ICMBio, 2024), birdwatching contributes significantly to local economies, especially in biodiversity-rich countries like Brazil, Colombia, and South Africa.

Table 3.1 - Key Variables Used to Classify Wildlife Tourism (Adapted from Higginbottom, 2004)

Variable	Description
1. Degree of Confinement	From free-ranging wild species (e.g., birdwatching, safaris) to full captivity (e.g., zoos, aquaria).
2. Environment of Interaction	Land, freshwater, marine, aerial—e.g., rainforest for birdwatching, ocean for whale watching.
3. Primary Type of Encounter	Viewing, photographing, feeding, handling, harvesting (hunting/fishing), or immersive conservation work.
4. Wildlife Motivation	Primary (e.g., traveling specifically to see birds or whales) vs. secondary (wildlife encountered by chance).
5. Type of Supplier/Operator	Ranges from independent travel to commercial tour operators, NGOs, or conservation agencies.
6. Degree of Educational and Interpretive Content	The extent to which wildlife tourism includes learning, interpretation, and conservation messaging.

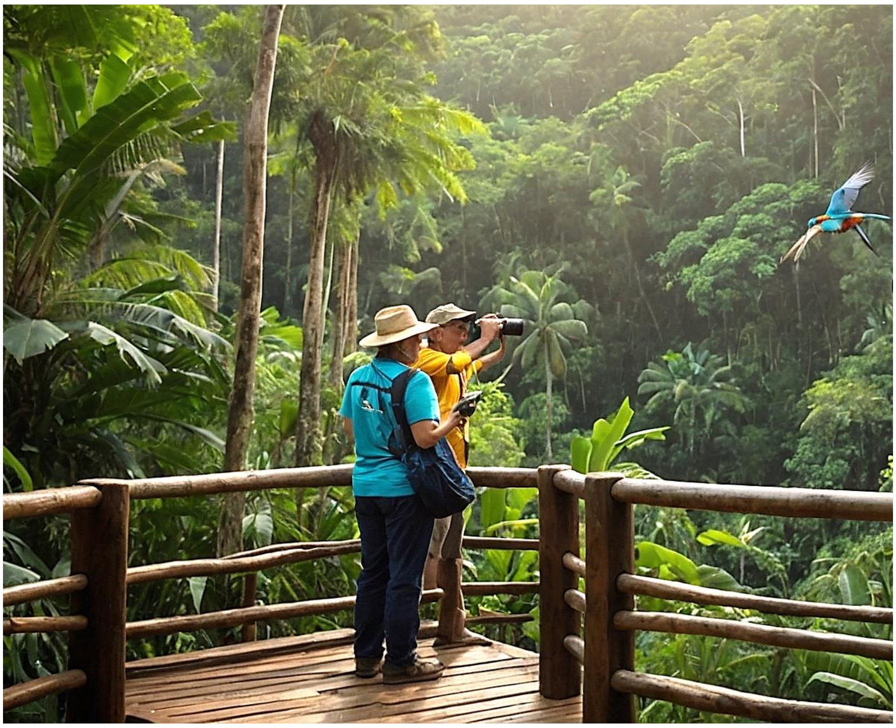
3.2.2. Birdwatching's Unique Role within Wildlife Tourism

Birdwatching is arguably the most **accessible and conservation-friendly** form of wildlife tourism. Unlike large-mammal safaris or aquatic experiences that often require high-impact infrastructure, birdwatching can be conducted with minimal disturbance and cost, even in urban parks or suburban areas. Nonetheless, it has significant economic weight—particularly in biodiversity hotspots — through expenditures on guides, accommodations, optics, transportation, and park fees.

Moreover, birdwatching contributes to **ecosystem services** by promoting environmental stewardship and citizen science participation. However, as Kronenberg (2014) warns in his study on ecosystem services and birdwatching, even non-consumptive activities like birding can generate **indirect environmental impacts** (e.g., carbon emissions from travel, habitat degradation from over-visitation, commercialization of fragile habitats), necessitating careful planning and impact mitigation as discussed by Gössling and Peeters (2015) and Nella and Stergiou (2025).

As wildlife tourism continues to expand, its definition, classification, and management become essential to ensuring positive outcomes for conservation, communities, and tourists alike. Whether in the form of immersive birdwatching tours in Brazil's Atlantic Forest, eco-lodges supporting pangolin conservation in Africa, or whale-watching off the coasts of New Zealand, wildlife tourism must be approached as a dynamic and ethically grounded sector, intersecting with education, sustainability, and responsible travel.

Nevertheless, these categories are not without their tensions and gray zones. For instance, while birdwatching is often framed as a "green" activity, the carbon emissions associated with long-haul flights to tropical birding hotspots raise questions about its environmental sustainability. Similarly, while nature tourism can encompass avitourism, it does not always prioritize conservation or community benefits, especially in mass tourism models. Wildlife tourism, although often associated with charismatic megafauna, increasingly recognizes birding as a high-value segment due to its year-round potential, minimal infrastructure needs, and alignment with protected area management goals (Nella and Stergiou, 2025). Academically, these intersections call for a nuanced understanding of motivations, impacts, governance models, and stakeholder relations—highlighting the need for integrated, interdisciplinary approaches to planning and managing bird-focused tourism within the broader ecotourism paradigm. In sum, avitourism is both a distinctive niche and a bridge activity, linking the ethics and principles of ecotourism to the growing global interest in immersive, meaningful, and conservation-oriented nature experiences.



Images' Caption: Explorers of the wild: A seasoned birder with a spotting scope navigates the lush rainforest trails, while a duo of birdwatchers marvel at the flight of a vibrant macaw from a scenic observation deck, immersed in the breathtaking biodiversity of the tropical forest

3.3. Birdwatching and the Environmental Paradox of Ecosystem Service Use

Birdwatching is often promoted as a sustainable and non-extractive form of nature-based recreation, commonly associated with positive conservation outcomes, including increased environmental awareness and funding for biodiversity protection. From the lens of ecosystem services, birdwatching represents a cultural service that connects people with biodiversity in ways that can deepen appreciation and political support for conservation efforts (MEA, 2005; Kronenberg, 2014). However, recent conceptual developments challenge the assumption that the use of ecosystem services such as birdwatching is inherently environmentally benign. Kronenberg (2014) advances a framework that identifies five categories of environmental impacts associated with ecosystem service use, encompassing not only direct effects on targeted species but also indirect impacts on broader ecological systems. These include disturbances related to habitat access, increased infrastructure needs, transportation emissions, and consumption patterns required to support birdwatching activities.

While birdwatching typically does not involve the physical extraction of natural resources, its widespread practice can lead to rebound effects, where the cumulative environmental cost of seemingly "green" tourism becomes substantial. For example, the global rise in birdwatching-related travel—fueled by digital platforms such as eBird, affordable air travel, and optics equipment—requires extensive material consumption, generates significant carbon emissions, and often necessitates habitat-altering infrastructure (e.g., observation towers, lodges, trails). As Kronenberg (2014) points out, the "ecosystem service supply chain" behind birdwatching includes not only the birds and their habitats but also the production, transport, and maintenance of the goods and services needed to access and enjoy the activity. Thus, birdwatching tourism—particularly when undertaken in sensitive or remote ecosystems—can unintentionally undermine the very conservation goals it seeks to promote, unless carefully managed and embedded within broader sustainable development strategies.

This dual nature of birdwatching tourism highlights the importance of **life-cycle thinking** and **social-ecological system frameworks** in assessing the sustainability of avitourism. Birdwatching, like other recreational uses of ecosystem services, is a co-produced phenomenon, relying on a complex web of material inputs, institutional arrangements, and behavioral patterns (Ernstson, 2013; Spangenberg et al., 2014). As such, conservation-focused tourism must go beyond promoting "low-impact" activities to critically evaluating the full spectrum of direct and indirect environmental consequences. Sustainable birdwatching, therefore, requires a nuanced balance: encouraging ecological awareness and financial support for conservation while minimizing infrastructure expansion, carbon-intensive travel, and the commodification of natural experiences. Policies such as mandatory conservation levies, the promotion of slow or local birding, investment in low-carbon transport, and regulation of infrastructure development in protected areas are all key levers in aligning birdwatching tourism with its original conservation intent.

In Jakub Kronenberg's (2014) article *"Environmental Impacts of the Use of Ecosystem Services: Case Study of Birdwatching"* the author identifies **five categories of environmental impacts** associated with the use of ecosystem services—a framework that is particularly relevant when evaluating the sustainability of birdwatching tourism. The five identified categories are:

1. **Direct Impacts**:
   These are the immediate effects of using an ecosystem service that can directly limit the future availability of that service.
   → *Example in birdwatching*: Repeated human presence may disturb birds, leading to changes in behavior, nest abandonment, or migration away from frequented sites.
2. **Impacts from Ecosystem Management for Service Maximization**:
   These occur when ecosystems are managed or altered to enhance the delivery of selected services, which can inadvertently reduce the system's ability to provide other services.
   → *Example*: Constructing viewing platforms or trails may degrade habitats important for other species or ecosystem functions.
3. **Impacts from Ecosystem Access**:
   These arise from the physical access to ecosystems required for service use, potentially harming other ecosystem components.
   → *Example*: Trampling of vegetation, soil compaction, or disruption of non-target species as birdwatchers move through sensitive areas.
4. **Associated Consumption Impacts**:
   These include the life-cycle environmental impacts of additional products, infrastructure, and services required to enjoy the ecosystem service.
   → *Example*: Carbon emissions from long-haul travel, production of optics and gear, and construction of accommodations.
5. **Broader Societal Impacts**:
   These are indirect effects on society, particularly changes in environmental awareness and behavior among ecosystem service users and stakeholders.
   → *Example*: While birdwatching may raise conservation consciousness, it can also inadvertently promote increased visitation and consumerism if not managed sustainably.

3.3.1. The concept of low-carbon birding

The concept of low-carbon birding has gained increasing attention in recent years as birdwatchers and researchers grapple with the carbon-intensive nature of long-distance avitourism. In an interview with Pelagic Publishing, Javier Caletrío (2022) emphasizes the importance of rethinking how birdwatchers interact with biodiversity and landscapes, advocating for localized, low-impact practices that reduce reliance on air travel and vehicle use. This movement aligns with the broader ethos of sustainability and climate responsibility within nature-based tourism, positioning birding as not only a recreational or scientific activity but also a moral and environmental stance. Low-carbon birding encourages practitioners to reconnect with their immediate surroundings, find beauty and ecological value in common or overlooked species, and resist the pressure to pursue rare sightings across continents. Caletrío argues that this approach can enhance the emotional and aesthetic experience of birding, fostering a slower, more deliberate relationship with nature that supports long-term conservation ethics. This shift echoes other emerging frameworks like "slow birding" (Kolada 2023) and community-based ecotourism, all of which emphasize place-based engagement, ethical wildlife observation, and reduced ecological footprints. It also reflects a growing recognition that sustainable tourism must balance conservation, climate, and equity across multiple scales—from local birding trails to international travel choices. Issues of carbon emission, visitors' mobility and ecological footprints are comprehensively discussed in the literature by Eijgelaar and Peeters (2024).

This shift reflects a broader recognition of the ecological footprint associated with high-mobility birding practices, including international flights, resource-intensive guided tours, and the use of disturbance-prone techniques such as playback and baiting. Consequently, many birders and operators are now adopting low-impact strategies such as reducing travel frequency, choosing birding sites closer to home, utilizing public or shared transport, and patronizing eco-certified accommodations (UNWTO, 2012). These evolving practices align birdwatching more closely with the principles of sustainable tourism, contributing to biodiversity conservation, community benefits, and climate mitigation efforts.

3.4. Birdwatching tourism: conceptual approaches

3.4.1 Terminological Challenges and Conceptual Overlaps in Birdwatching Tourism

One of the central methodological challenges in the academic and professional study of birdwatching-related tourism is the **fragmentation, overlap, and ambiguity of terminology** used to describe its practices. This issue not only hampers **conceptual clarity** but also complicates research design, policy formulation, and destination marketing.

Over the past two decades, the term **"birdwatching"** has gained increasing prominence in both scientific literature and popular discourse. Commonly defined as the observation of birds in their natural habitats, birdwatching is often associated with the search for rare, endemic, or migratory species, typically conducted in ecologically sensitive regions such as wetlands, forests, coastal zones, and tropical mountain ecosystems (Carver, 2013; UNWTO, 2023). In such contexts, the presence of diverse and charismatic birdlife acts as the primary pull factor for domestic and international visitors, many of whom are motivated by personal checklists, "life lists," or photographic pursuits.

However, the scope of **birdwatching** is much broader than its tourism application. It spans a continuum of activities, from casual backyard observation, urban park birding, and family outings to guided excursions, expeditions in protected areas, and dedicated birding travel. Increasingly, birdwatching also includes **recreational photography**, **citizen science participation**, **nature-based education**, and **therapeutic immersion in nature**. The latter has evolved into a prominent trend known as **"slow birding"**, which emphasizes mindfulness, patience, and connection with place (LePage, 2022; Kress, 2024).

The international policy and conservation community—including the United Nations World Tourism Organization (UNWTO), BirdLife International, and Audubon Society—tends to adopt **birdwatching** as the **umbrella term** for this set of practices. It is commonly framed within the broader domain of **wildlife watching tourism**, and frequently associated with **nature-based tourism**, **ecotourism**, **special interest tourism**, and even **hobby tourism**, depending on the participant's intent and the scale of engagement (Cordell & Herbert, 2002; Newsome, Dowling & Moore, 2021; Nella and Stergiou, 2025).

3.5. Defining the Flock: Understanding Birdwatching, Birding and Twitching

While the fundamental act of observing birds is universal, the terminology used to describe dedicated engagement with this activity can vary, reflecting different nuances in motivation, intensity, and context. Understanding these terms is crucial for navigating the world of bird appreciation and the tourism it inspires.

3.5.1 Birdwatching: This is perhaps the most widely understood term globally, often used in policy documents, mainstream media, and by conservation organizations like the UN World Tourism Organization (UNWTO) and BirdLife International [Chapter 3, 2.1]. It generally refers to the act of observing birds in their natural habitats, encompassing a broad spectrum from casual observation in a backyard or local park to more focused efforts involving travel to specific sites known for avian diversity [Chapter 3, Introduction]. It often implies a recreational or amateur focus but can include activities like photography and participation in citizen science [Chapter 3, 2.1].

Birdwatching refers to the observation of birds in their natural environments, primarily for recreation, enjoyment, and often for the purpose of species identification. According to the *Cambridge Dictionary* (n.d.), birdwatching is defined as "the hobby of studying wild birds in their natural environment."

3.5.2 Birding: Particularly prevalent in English-speaking countries like the US, UK, Canada, and Australia, "birding" often signifies a more active, committed, and skill-driven pursuit, "Birding is an age-old Anglo-Saxon hobby that consists in locating, identifying, and counting birds in their natural habitats, then recording these observations in lists" (Vallejo-Novoa, 2023, p.3). Those who identify as "birders" typically invest more time and effort in identification, learning calls, maintaining lists (like "life lists" of species seen), and sometimes traveling specifically to find particular birds [Chapter 3, 2.2]. The term carries connotations of deeper immersion, fieldcraft, and often a strong sense of community fostered through clubs, online forums (#BirdTwitter, etc.), and festivals [Chapter 3, 2.2]. Early distinctions within the community even suggested "birder" was the preferred term for serious enthusiasts, while "bird-watcher" was broader [Chapter 3, 2.2].

Birding is a more active and sometimes competitive form of birdwatching that may include listing species, traveling to see rare birds, participating in bird counts, and contributing to scientific knowledge. Birding is often considered a more serious and systematic version of birdwatching, involving travel, equipment, and citizen science contributions (U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, 2018).

Birding denotes a more active and systematic engagement with bird observation. Birders often travel to specific habitats to observe rare or diverse species, use specialized equipment (e.g., field scopes, apps, audio recorders), maintain life lists, and participate in bird counts or festivals. Birding involves a higher level of skill, planning, and community involvement, frequently intersecting with ecotourism and citizen science. It is often framed as a lifestyle or form of recreation specialization, where the activity evolves into a structured and goal-oriented pursuit. As Heimbuch (2025) explains: "Birding and bird watching, while often used interchangeably, actually represent two different levels of engagement. Birdwatching... is the gateway to all things avian. Birding, for them, is considered a sport that requires skill development." This distinction aligns with the *recreation specialization theory*, which conceptualizes birding as a more advanced phase of engagement marked by deeper knowledge, equipment investment, and social identity (Scott & Shafer, 2001).

3.5.3 Birdwatching: *Birdwatching* is typically understood as a more casual, passive, and recreational form of bird observation. It often involves individuals observing birds in local environments such as parks, gardens, or rural areas, with minimal equipment and limited planning. The primary motivations are relaxation, aesthetic enjoyment, and a sense of connection with nature. As noted in the *Cambridge Dictionary*, birdwatching is "the hobby of studying wild birds in their natural environment" (Cambridge University Press, n.d.). In recent years, studies have also highlighted its therapeutic value, associating birdwatching with mindfulness, attentional restoration, and psychological well-being (Kaplan & Kaplan, 1989; Randler & Marx, 2022).

"Birdwatching is an increasing nature-related activity, with an important influence on data collection of citizen science programs." — Randler & Marx (2022, p. 2)

3.5.4. Twitching: *Twitching* represents an even more specialized subculture within birding. The term, primarily used in the United Kingdom, refers to the pursuit of a previously located rare bird, often involving significant travel and urgent, spontaneous trips. In North America, this activity is referred to as "chasing." Twitchers are known for their dedication to "ticking" rare birds off their life lists, and the practice is sometimes competitive. As defined by Heimbuch (2025):

"Twitching is the act of actively seeking out specific bird species — often rare — in order to see them and check them off of a list. It requires more commitment than birding and is marked by a sense of urgency."

This intense form of birding reflects not only enthusiasm but also a quasi-sporting culture that contributes to both avian tourism economies and data collection, while raising questions about ethical considerations in wildlife disturbance.

Understanding the spectrum of engagement with birds in recreational and scientific contexts requires clarifying the nuances between *birdwatching*, *birding*, and *twitching*. While these terms are often used interchangeably in everyday language, they reflect distinct approaches and intensities of interaction with avian life.

3.5.5. Avitourism: This term, combining "avi" (bird) and "tourism," has gained traction in academic and tourism industry contexts [Chapter 3, 2.3]. It specifically refers to tourism where the *primary motivation* for travel is observing birds [Chapter 3, 1.0, 2.3]. Avitourism typically involves overnight stays, often utilizes local guides and specialized tour operators, and generates significant economic activity through spending on accommodation, transport, and related services [Chapter 3, 2.3]. It is analyzed as a distinct niche within nature-based and wildlife tourism, particularly relevant for economic planning, destination marketing, and sustainability assessments in biodiversity hotspots [Chapter 3, 1.0, 2.3].

Avitourism, also known as birdwatching tourism, is a specialized form of nature-based tourism centered on the observation and appreciation of wild birds in their natural habitats. It encompasses a wide range of recreational, educational, and conservation-oriented activities that contribute to local economies and biodiversity awareness. Avitourism is often associated with ecotourism, given its typically low-impact and conservation-conscious profile, and involves both domestic and international travel for the purpose of bird observation. Avitourism has emerged as one of the fastest-growing forms of wildlife tourism, attracting millions of participants worldwide and contributing significantly to both local livelihoods and conservation financing (Steven, Morrison, & Castley, 2015). As Cocker and Mabey (2005) observe, birdwatching tourism reflects not only a leisure activity but also a form of cultural expression and ecological concern.

Academic Framing and Characteristics:

- It involves a spectrum of participants, from casual birdwatchers to "twitchers" who travel extensively to see rare or endemic species.
- Avitourism is frequently recognized for its potential role in **biodiversity conservation**, **community development**, and **environmental education**.
- The activity is supported by infrastructure such as birding lodges, guides, festivals, trails, and national parks.
- It often intersects with **citizen science** through species recording platforms like eBird and national bird counts.

3.5.6. Ornithological Tourism: Used less frequently, this term usually implies a more formal, scientific, or educational focus [Chapter 3, 2.4]. It might involve travel for research purposes, university field trips, specialized educational tours led by experts, or professional documentary filmmaking and photography centered on birds [Chapter 3, 2.4]. The emphasis is often on structured learning, scientific inquiry, and detailed species study [Chapter 3, 2.4].

While these terms overlap, recognizing their nuances is helpful.

Ornithological tourism is a specialized segment of wildlife tourism that focuses on the observation, study, and appreciation of wild birds in their natural habitats. It is typically pursued by tourists with a scientific, educational, or conservation interest in ornithology—the branch of zoology concerned with birds. While often overlapping with birdwatching tourism (avitourism), ornithological tourism is distinguished by a stronger emphasis on scientific inquiry, ecological education, species documentation, and structured birding expeditions, frequently in biodiversity-rich regions. Ornithological tourism is regarded as a subset of nature-based tourism that merges recreational enjoyment with scientific and educational interest in bird species and avian habitats (Sekercioglu, 2002).

Key Features

- **Motivation and Audience**: Participants often include amateur and professional ornithologists, bird photographers, university students, conservationists, and serious birders engaged in species listing or rare sightings.
- **Destinations**: Frequently targets biodiversity hotspots, Important Bird and Biodiversity Areas (IBAs), Ramsar wetlands, and protected areas such as national parks and nature reserves.
- **Conservation Synergy**: Ornithological tourism plays a vital role in biodiversity monitoring and environmental education, and it may directly support conservation funding through tourism revenue and citizen science.
- **Distinction**: While birdwatching tourism includes broader audiences with varied motivations (recreational, aesthetic, wellness), ornithological tourism is typically more specialized, with scientifically grounded objectives.

3.5.7. Definitions as they appear in the literature:

A preliminary review of academic literature reveals a diverse range of definitions for *Avitourism*, *Birdwatching Tourism*, *Ornithological Tourism*, and *Wildlife Tourism*. For contextual and temporal framing, a selection of representative definitions has been compiled and is presented below as an initial reference point.

Avitourism: *"Travel beyond one's usual environment undertaken overnight, to view birds in their natural habitat*" (Nicolaides, 2014, p. 1).

Birdwatching Tourism: *"Birdwatching tourism typically involves travelling away from home to a bird-watching destination."* (Jones & Buckley, 2001, p. 4).

Ornithological Tourism: "*Ornithological tourism can be defined as recreational activity consisting of the observation and identification of birds in their natural habitat*" (Sánchez-Rivero & Sánchez-Martín, 2020, p. 4).

Wildlife Tourism: *"Wildlife tourism has been broadly defined … as tourism based on encounters with non-domesticated animals. These encounters may occur in either the animals' natural environment or in captivity*" (Newsome, Dowling & Moore, 2005, p. 3)

In this book, the author defines 'avitourism', 'birdwatching tourism', and 'ornithological tourism' as belonging to a type of 'specie focus tourism' within the spectrum of the wildlife tourism practices, and an encompassing definition is presented:

> **Avitourism** — commonly referred to in the literature as birdwatching tourism or ornithological tourism — is a specialized form of wildlife tourism that entails purposeful travel beyond one's usual environment (typically involving at least one overnight stay) with the primary motive of observing, identifying, and appreciating free-living birds in their natural habitats. Situated within the wider domain of wildlife tourism, it embraces the recreational, educational, scientific, and conservation-oriented dimensions of human–bird encounters, while recognizing the ethical responsibility to minimize disturbance to avifauna and the socio-economic opportunities such travel can generate for destination communities.

The following Table 1 summarizes the primary contexts and connotations:

Table 1 - Comparative Overview of Terminological Usage in Birdwatching-related Tourism

Term	Primary Usage Context	Target Audience	Connotation & Scope	Key Sources
Birdwatching	Policy reports (e.g., UNWTO), NGO campaigns, citizen science platforms, media	General public, amateur naturalists, families	Broad and accessible; emphasizes visual observation, usually casual or recreational. May be passive or moderately active. Common in outreach.	UNWTO (2022); Randler & Marx (2022); eBird
Birding	Enthusiast literature, social media (e.g., #BirdTwitter), eco-festivals	Committed hobbyists, checklisters, conservationists	Implies deeper knowledge, skill, and engagement. Often includes travel, identification, audio recognition, citizen science participation.	Heimbuch (2025); Scott & Shafer (2001); eBird

Term	Primary Usage Context	Target Audience	Connotation & Scope	Key Sources
Birder	Field guides, bird tour operators, conservation NGOs	Practitioners, field volunteers, expert amateurs	Reflects a cultural identity tied to avian expertise and experience. Denotes sustained practice, observation, and community science.	Sekercioglu (2002); Better With Birds (2025)
Avitourism	Academic literature, environmental economics, sustainability documents	Researchers, planners, market analysts	Technically defined as tourism motivated by bird observation. Highlights economic value, destination marketing, conservation potential.	Steven et al. (2015); Biggs et al. (2011)
Ornithological Tourism	Scientific discourse, education programs, biodiversity conferences	Academics, eco-educators, biology students	Used in formal contexts; focuses on structured research, bird ecology, and educational travel. Related to ornithological research and pedagogy.	Tidemann & Gosler (2010); Rusch et al. (1997)

3.6. Birding and Birders: Cultural and Linguistic Embodiments

In many English-speaking contexts, particularly in North America, Australia, and the UK, the term "birding" is preferred among practitioners and enthusiasts. Though largely synonymous with birdwatching, birding often connotes a more active and immersive engagement with birds, combining field skills, identification challenges, travel motivations, and a strong sense of community.

The individuals who engage in this practice—commonly referred to as **"birders"**—vary from casual hobbyists to highly skilled enthusiasts known as "twitchers", who travel extensively to observe rare or vagrant species. Birders often utilize a mix of binoculars, spotting scopes, field guides, apps like Merlin ID, and data platforms like eBird, and they play a critical role in the collection of data for citizen science and conservation planning.

In 1969, *Birding* magazine published a glossary clarifying the distinctions between commonly used terms within the birdwatching community. According to this early taxonomy:

- **"Birder"** was the preferred label for someone who actively and seriously engages in birding, regardless of whether they are a professional or an enthusiast.
- **"Birding"** was defined as a pastime that involves the enjoyment of identifying, studying, and listing birds, often requiring skill and dedication.
- In contrast, **"birdwatcher"** was considered a broader and less precise term, generally used for anyone who observes birds, but not necessarily with the commitment or expertise of a birder.

Birding culture includes conventions, jargon, ethical codes, and a significant online and social media presence, including hashtags like #Birding, #Birders, and #BirdTwitter, as well as specialized travel offerings, festivals, and even bird-themed pilgrimage routes (e.g., the Great Texas Coastal Birding Trail).

3.7. Avitourism: A Precise Conceptual and Economic Framework

The term **avitourism**—a hybrid of "avi" (Latin for bird) and "tourism"—has emerged in the academic literature as a more precise descriptor for tourism in which birdwatching is the central motivation for travel. Its conceptual clarity is especially valuable in tourism economics, planning, and policy development, where avitourism is analyzed as a niche within nature-based tourism (Nella and Stergiou, 2025; Steven, Morrison & Castley, 2015; Lee & Scott, 2004). Avitourism typically involves:

- Travel with overnight stays,
- Use of local guides or tour operators,
- Significant financial expenditure on accommodation, food, equipment, transport, and park access,
- A structured interest in species richness, endemism, or bird migration events.

The term is particularly prevalent in academic and professional circles in North America, South Africa, Australia, and increasingly South America, where the economic and conservation value of bird-focused tourism is well-documented.

Although **birdwatching** and **avitourism** are sometimes used interchangeably, avitourism is best reserved for travel experiences where birds are the primary draw and economic investment, and planning are involved. For this reason, avitourism is often linked to destination marketing strategies, investment in infrastructure, and sustainability initiatives within the tourism sector.

3.8. Ornithological Tourism: Scientific and Didactic Dimensions

A third term, **"ornithological tourism"**, is also used—albeit less frequently—in English-language academic literature. It tends to imply a more formal, scientific, or educational orientation, often involving:

- **Field-based ornithological research**,
- Travel by **university groups**, NGOs, or scientific societies,
- **Documentary production**, bird photography, and nature education tours.

While ornithological tourism overlaps with avitourism and birding in practice, its semantic weight lies in science-based content and interpretation, often aligned with the missions of natural history museums, biodiversity observatories, and environmental NGOs. A comparative analysis using Google Scholar, academic databases, and major citizen science platforms such as eBird, iNaturalist, and Merlin Bird ID, reveals the following dominant patterns in terminological use (Table 3.2):

Table 3.2 - Comparative Overview of Terminological Usage in Birdwatching-related Tourism

Term	Primary Usage Context	Target Audience	Connotation & Scope
Birdwatching	Policy reports (e.g., UNWTO), mainstream media, NGO publications, citizen science platforms	General public, recreational users	Broadly inclusive term; emphasizes visual observation, often recreational or amateur in nature; can be passive or active. Common in global policy and outreach materials.
Birding	Enthusiast circles, social media communities (e.g., #BirdTwitter), NGO campaigns	Hobbyists, practitioners, nature lovers	More active and skill-driven than "birdwatching"; connotes identification expertise, check listing, and immersive nature engagement. Frequently used in Anglo-American contexts.
Birder	Field users, birding tour operators, conservation organizations	Amateur to professional observers	Represents a culturally embedded identity; implies a strong personal investment in avian life, knowledge, and field experience. Associated with both recreational and scientific birding.
Avitourism	Academic literature, tourism economics, sustainability planning documents	Researchers, planners, tourism developers	Technical and precise; refers specifically to travel where birdwatching is the principal motivation. Emphasizes travel behavior, economic impact, and market segmentation.
Ornithological Tourism	Scientific institutions, educational programs, conference literature	Students, academics, eco-educators	Often used in pedagogical and formal scientific contexts. Highlights structured learning, research, and species-based ecotourism, with an emphasis on scientific inquiry.

While terminological overlap persists, it is evident that each term holds particular analytical and cultural value. Birdwatching serves as a global catch-all, birding defines an active community of practice, avitourism offers a precise policy category, and ornithological tourism captures the academic and interpretive potential of bird-focused travel.

Understanding and aligning these terminologies with research questions, stakeholder interests, and destination branding is essential for the strategic development of birdwatching tourism as a sustainable, inclusive, and high-value sector within the broader tourism economy.

3.9. Historical Evolution of Birdwatching

The historical trajectory of birdwatching—intertwining scientific inquiry, recreational pursuit, and ethical engagement—reflects profound transformations in how humans relate to birds and to nature at large. Originally rooted in utilitarian studies of fauna, birdwatching has evolved into a global activity with implications for environmental education, ecotourism, and conservation. This evolution underscores both technological innovations and a maturing ethical consciousness surrounding wildlife interaction. From

Enlightenment-era natural history to AI-powered apps and climate advocacy, the progression of birdwatching maps the changing human relationship with the avian world.

3.9.1. Origins in 18th-Century Europe: From Naturalists to Structured Observation

Modern birdwatching finds its earliest formal expressions in Enlightenment-era Europe, where naturalists began shifting from hunting and taxidermy toward observational study. Gilbert White's *The Natural History of Selborne* (1789) was a pioneering work in this vein, featuring longitudinal studies of bird behavior and emphasizing localized, non-invasive observation (Oxford University Press, 2019). Thomas Bewick's *History of British Birds* (1797–1804) combined scientific precision with detailed woodcut illustrations, essentially laying the foundation for modern field guides.

During the 19th century, amateur ornithology flourished in Victorian Britain, where natural history societies encouraged educated middle-class citizens to engage with the outdoors through a lens of empirical curiosity. The British Ornithologists' Union (founded in 1858) formalized ornithology as a discipline, while the Royal Society for the Protection of Birds (RSPB), established in 1889 by women activists, signaled a moral shift: birds were no longer merely specimens but sentient beings worthy of protection (Birkhead, 2022). These institutional developments set the stage for birdwatching as a scientific, ethical, and recreational endeavor.

3.9.2 Rise of Modern Birdwatching in the United States: From Elitism to Mass Participation

In the United States, birdwatching transitioned from elite hobby to popular movement in the late 19th and early 20th centuries. John James Audubon's *Birds of America* (1827–1838) was foundational, capturing public imagination with its life-sized illustrations and igniting interest in North American bird species.

The formation of the National Audubon Society in 1905 further shifted the cultural perception of birds—from objects of fashion (notably, their feathers) to subjects of conservation. This ethical reorientation was symbolized by the launch of the *Christmas Bird Count* in 1900, now the longest-running citizen science survey in the world. The passage of the Migratory Bird Treaty Act in 1918 marked a legislative milestone, making it illegal to hunt or trade migratory birds across national borders.

Perhaps the most transformative figure of American birdwatching was Roger Tory Peterson, whose *Field Guide to the Birds* (1934) introduced the modern field identification system, using silhouette drawings and key field marks. His democratizing vision enabled birdwatchers without formal training to participate meaningfully in avian observation, thereby catalyzing a mass movement (Yale Environment 360, 2023).

3.9.3 Digital Revolution (21st Century): Globalization, Technology, and Citizen Science

The 21st century has witnessed a digital renaissance in birdwatching, driven by citizen science, artificial intelligence, and digital media. eBird, developed by the Cornell Lab of Ornithology in 2002, has become the world's largest biodiversity-related citizen science project, amassing over 100 million submissions annually from more than 190 countries (Cornell Lab, 2023). Other platforms like iNaturalist and Merlin Bird ID have further expanded global participation, with AI-enhanced species identification and real-time geolocation features (National Geographic, 2024; The Verge, 2023).

Technological devices are also evolving: smart binoculars such as the Swarovski Optik AX Visio (2024) now integrate image recognition and GPS mapping, effectively transforming each user into a mobile ecological observer. Social media platforms like #BirdTwitter and #BirdTok foster global communities, enable instantaneous rare bird alerts, and mobilize conservation campaigns in real-time.

Meanwhile, platforms like BirdingVR offer immersive virtual experiences of remote birding hotspots, increasing accessibility for individuals unable to travel. This represents a critical democratization of birdwatching in the face of mobility limitations and ecological concerns. For extensively understanding the technological transformations in this sector, refer to **Chapter 15** which comprehensively examines the way birdwatching has been impacted by AI, smart optics, and global data networks, reshaping how people observe, travel, and engage with nature. While immersive technologies open new frontiers for citizen science and conservation, they also raise urgent ethical concerns. By 2045, balancing innovation with ecological integrity will be central to the future of avitourism.

3.9.4 Current Trends and Ethical Shifts in the 2020s

The 2020s have introduced new paradigms in birdwatching, deeply influenced by climate change, social equity, and sustainability. The emergence of "slow birding"—a practice that emphasizes deep immersion in local environments, contemplative engagement, and minimal ecological footprint—illustrates a growing resistance to the competitive and carbon-intensive aspects of global birding (Kolada, 2023; Caletrío, 2022).

Low-carbon birding has become a guiding ethic, with birders increasingly prioritizing train travel, carbon-offsetting, and localized observation to reduce environmental impact (Pfeiffer, 2021). Movements like *Black Birders Week* (launched in 2020) have foregrounded the intersection of racial justice and nature access, expanding the inclusivity of birding spaces.

According to the Audubon Society's *Survival by Degrees* report (2023), climate change now threatens 64% of North American bird species. In this context, birdwatchers are playing vital roles as data collectors, early warning sentinels, and advocates for conservation. Citizen science platforms have enabled birders to track phenological changes, migration disruptions, and habitat degradation with unprecedented precision.

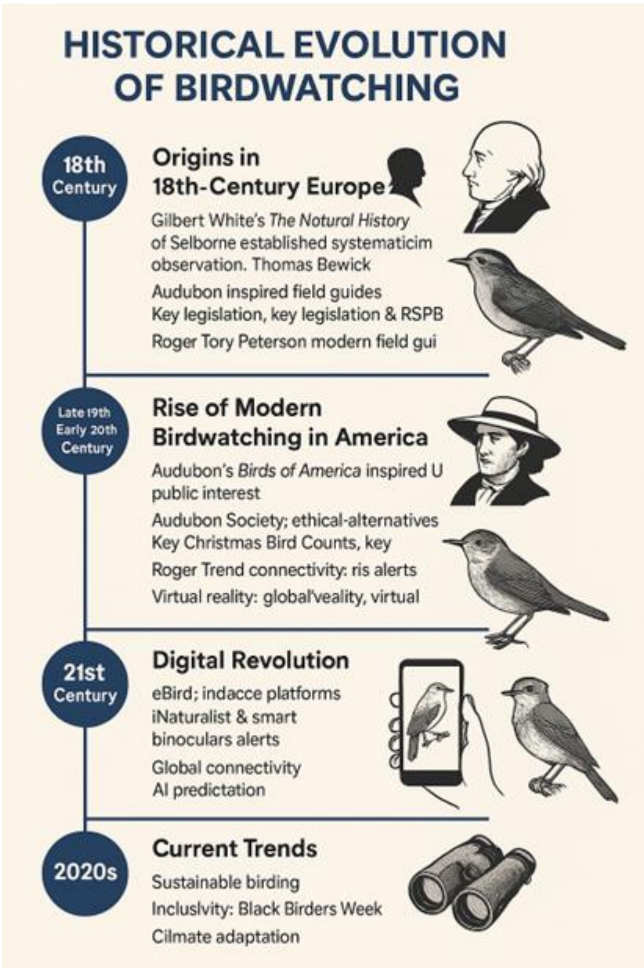
3.9.5 Famous Birdwatchers: Lifelong Quests, Milestones, and Cultural Icons

Birdwatching is more than a hobby for many—it is a lifelong pursuit, often involving global travel, physical endurance, and personal sacrifice. While the average birder may limit their excursions to regional habitats, a subset of highly dedicated individuals has attempted to see the majority of the world's approximately 10,000 bird species. These elite birders, sometimes called "big listers," not only document their sightings with precision but often influence the global birding community through books, blogs, and conservation advocacy.

One of the earliest individuals known to undertake the ambitious goal of seeing all the world's bird species was Stuart Keith, a British ornithologist and author, who laid the groundwork for what would become an informal but prestigious competition among birders. His example helped inspire what is now known as the "World Big Year," an intense, globe-trotting race to record as many bird species as possible in a single calendar year or over a lifetime.

Perhaps one of the most iconic birders in history is Phoebe Snetsinger, an American housewife turned globe-trotter whose passion for birding intensified following a cancer diagnosis in the 1980s. Despite facing life-threatening illness and surviving a violent assault during a trip to Papua New Guinea, Snetsinger documented over 8,400 species—at the time, the highest known lifetime total—before tragically dying in a road accident in Madagascar in 1999. Her memoir, *Birding on Borrowed Time*, remains an emblematic testament to perseverance and dedication in the birding world.

Other birders have made headlines through both triumph and tragedy. In 1985, David Hunt, a British ornithologist and tour leader, was killed by a tiger while guiding a group in India's Corbett National Park—highlighting the potential risks associated with wildlife tourism and remote birding expeditions. In 1971, Ted Parker, later celebrated as one of the greatest field ornithologists in the Americas, set a North American record by observing 626 species in a single year; he later died in an aviation accident in Ecuador in 1993. Parker's blend of scientific expertise and birding skill continues to influence tropical ornithology to this day.



Kenn Kaufman, inspired by Parker's efforts, famously embarked on a 1973 cross-country Big Year, hitchhiking over 69,000 miles and logging 671 species—all on a budget of under

$1,000. His journey was later chronicled in his book *Kingbird Highway*, now a cult classic among North American birders. In 2012, English birder Tom Gullick became the first individual to surpass 9,000 species observed, a feat made even more impressive by his prior military background and relatively low media profile.

The pursuit of record-breaking feats continues to evolve. In 2015, American birder Noah Strycker documented 6,042 bird species in 41 countries in a single year, setting a then-record that reinvigorated the global birding community. His efforts were later surpassed in 2016 by Dutch birder Arjan Dwarshuis, who traveled to 40 countries and documented an astounding 6,852 species during a meticulously planned and carbon-offset Big Year. These contemporary birders have brought renewed attention to issues such as sustainability, ethics, and accessibility in global avitourism.

Most recently, in February 2024, Peter Kaestner—a retired American diplomat and lifelong birder—became the first person in history to observe over 10,000 bird species. His achievement was briefly contested by fellow birder Jason Mann, but the latter eventually conceded, confirming Kaestner's pioneering status. Kaestner's career, which combined diplomatic service with extensive global travel, reflects the intersection of birding with professions that enable international mobility.

Beyond the record-holders, popular culture has helped elevate birding's visibility. Figures like Bill Oddie in the United Kingdom and Pete Dunne in the United States have produced accessible literature, television programs, and public education initiatives that demystify birdwatching and attract new participants. Their contributions have helped reposition birdwatching not just as a personal hobby, but as a cultural phenomenon and educational tool.

The exploits of these famous birdwatchers illuminate the emotional intensity, logistical complexity, and ethical considerations that characterize modern birding. As the field continues to globalize and diversify, their stories offer inspiration—and cautionary lessons—on how personal passion can both drive scientific discovery and deepen environmental commitment.

3.10. Analysis of Birdwatching and Avitourism Literature: Timeline, Trends, and Thematic Categorization

The comprehensive table presented in this section is a curated, categorized synthesis of over three decades of scholarly and applied literature on birdwatching, birdwatching tourism, and avitourism. Spanning the years 1990 to 2024, this dataset captures the intellectual evolution and expanding interdisciplinarity of a field that has matured from marginal hobbyist studies into a robust domain of sustainable tourism research, conservation planning, and socio-ecological analysis.

3.10.1. Thematic Overview of Selected Literature on Birdwatching and Avitourism

As part of a broader analysis of the pertinent body of literature on birdwatching and avitourism, the author has identified **twelve key thematic categories** (refer to Table 3.2) that capture the most recurrent, emergent, and interdisciplinary areas of scholarly and applied interest in this field. This reference list encompasses approximately 100 published works and is organized according to a robust thematic structure that reflects the multifaceted nature of birdwatching and birdwatching tourism as documented over the years, including foundational studies dating back to the 1990s as both a tourism niche and a socio-environmental phenomenon.

The categories include: (1) Academic Conceptual Frameworks, which explore theoretical models, typologies, and the conceptual evolution of avitourism; (2) Economic Valuation and Market Research, highlighting expenditures, market segmentation, and economic modeling; (3) Policy, Ethics, and Guidelines, encompassing codes of conduct, regulatory tools, and responsible birding practices; (4) Behavior, Motivation, and Specialization, focusing on birder profiles, lifestyle dynamics, and the specialization continuum; (5) Ecological and Conservation Impact, assessing tourism's effects on species, habitats, and conservation funding; (6) Birding Festivals and Events, analyzing their structure, community roles, and ecotourism potential; (7) Technology, Interpretation, and Education, which address tour guiding, digital tools, and pedagogical frameworks; (8) Destination Studies and Case Analyses, covering local, regional, and international examples of birdwatching destinations; (9) Marketing, Promotion, and Branding, examining destination imaging, niche marketing, and promotional strategies; (10) Climate Change and Sustainability Trends, focusing on avitourism's carbon footprint and low-impact practices; (11) Social Inclusion and Community Impacts, exploring empowerment, stakeholder participation, and equitable tourism benefits; and (12) Blogs, Narratives, and Cultural Representation, which include literary, media, and personal accounts that shape cultural meanings of birding.

These thematic anchors reflect both the historical depth and contemporary breadth of the scholarly and applied literature. The references are drawn from a rich corpus of peer-reviewed journals—such as *Journal of Sustainable Tourism*, *Tourism Management*, *Environmental Conservation*, *Human Dimensions of Wildlife*, among others—as well as reports, institutional guidelines, symposia proceedings, and grey literature that have significantly shaped the field.

It is important to emphasize that this is not an exhaustive bibliography, but rather a curated and illustrative selection of key contributions. While the table categorizes specific authors and sources, many other seminal and current works—spanning disciplines such as conservation biology, ecotourism studies, environmental education, cultural geography, and sustainability science—continue to influence and enrich our understanding of birdwatching tourism. This reference list thus serves as a foundational guide for researchers, practitioners, educators, and policymakers who seek to engage critically and constructively with the diverse dimensions of birdwatching and avitourism in both theory and practice. This table is not only to map the academic and applied evolution of birdwatching tourism but also to guide researchers, practitioners, and policy-makers in identifying key clusters, research gaps, and conceptual trajectories. It is designed to inform meta-analyses, graduate theses, strategic conservation plans, and curriculum development in tourism studies, conservation biology, human geography, and recreation management.

Through this longitudinal and thematic categorization, we observe a clear trajectory: from observational recreation to strategic conservation, from niche leisure to global market system, and from individual birders to socially networked, ethically-conscious communities of practice. The birdwatching literature, in all its diversity, reflects both our fascination with birds and our evolving responsibility in their stewardship. Table 3.3 presents the key aspects, approaches, authors, and a summary related to the birdwatching literature, but publications and research are certainly not exhaustive limited to those in the Table.

Table 3.3 - Categorized Literature on Birdwatching Tourism and Related Themes

Category	Key Authors/Sources	Focus Summary
Academic Conceptual Frameworks	Şekercioğlu (2002); Steven et al. (2011, 2015); Hvenegaard (2002); Cole & Scott (1999); McFarlane (1994); Newsome et al. (2005); Cordell & Herbert (2002); Moss (2004); Pickering et al. (2010); Buckley (2004)	Foundational theoretical insights into birdwatching motivations, typologies, ecological impacts, and the role of avitourism in conservation and sustainability.
Economic Valuation & Market Research	Biggs et al. (2011); Kim et al. (1998, 2010); Wiedner & Kerlinger (1990); La Rouche (2001); Kerlinger (1993); Eubanks et al. (2004); Czajkowski et al. (2014); Callaghan et al. (2018, 2020); Brock et al. (2021); Scott & Thigpen (2003)	Valuation of birdwatching and avitourism, including market segmentation, spending patterns, economic modeling, and consumer preferences.
Policy, Ethics, and Guidelines	ABA (2003, 2024); BirdLife Australia (2012); BirdLife International (2013); Bernardon & Nassar (2012); Birds of India (2009); Topelko & Dearden (2005)	Standards for ethical birding, conservation priorities, and frameworks promoting responsible tourism behavior.
Behavior, Motivation & Specialization	McFarlane & Boxall (1996); Randler (2023); Janeczko et al. (2021); Lee & Scott (2004); Lee et al. (2015); Bireline (2005); Lyons et al. (2009)	Studies on birder identity, specialization spectrum, behavioral profiles, gender dynamics, and lifestyle motivations.
Ecological & Conservation Impact	Şekercioğlu (2002, 2003); Burger et al. (1995); Kronenberg (2014); Steven & Castley (2013); Pegas & Castley (2014); Gallo et al. (2009); Trainor et al. (2008); Puhakka et al. (2011); Guitart et al. (2012); Nella & Stergiou (2025); Borges de Lima & Green (2017); Şekercioğlu (2002).	Assessments of avitourism's effects on species and habitats, conservation returns, and policy interventions.
Birding Festivals & Events	Lawton (2008, 2009); Kim et al. (1998); Measells & Grado (2007); Isaacs & Chi (2005); Jones et al. (2008); Burr & Scott (2004)	Exploration of birding festivals as eco-events, their structure, impact, and community participation models.
Technology, Interpretation & Education	Gregory et al. (2004); Hale (2006); MacKinnon (2004); Che (2003); Wong (2009); Rothman (2008); Borges de Lima & Green (2017). Higginbottom (2004).	Birding pedagogy, tour guide training, interpretive services, and integration of new technologies in avitourism.
Destination Studies & Case Analyses	Connell (2009); Connell et al. (2013); Conradie & van Zyl (2016, 2020); Vas (2012); Simango (2011); Gurung (2012); Orenstein et al. (2010); Li et al. (2013); Sari et al. (2011); Steven (2015)	Focused analysis on specific birdwatching regions and geographies, tourism flows, and development strategies.
Marketing, Promotion & Branding	CBI (2021); Clynes (2017); Grihault (2023); ABA (2024); Riley (2014); Future Market Insights (2024); MarkWide Research (2024)	Industry reports, media coverage, and destination promotion through branding and wildlife niche positioning.

Category	Key Authors/Sources	Focus Summary
Climate Change & Sustainability Trends	Butler (2021); Li et al. (2022); Underhill & Barnard (2009); Hill et al. (2010); Steven et al. (2013); Spenceley (2008); Whitelaw et al. (2014); Fang et. al., (2015); Kolada (2023); Kronenberg (2014).	Climate-related vulnerabilities in avitourism, low-carbon practices, and sustainable financing for conservation-linked travel.
Social Inclusion & Community Impacts	Bovarnick et al. (2010); Bernardon & Nassar (2012); Son et al. (2011); Harwood (2008); Hughes (2005)	Birdwatching as a tool for community development, stakeholder engagement, and inclusive ecotourism.
Blogs, Narratives & Cultural Representation	Dooley (2007); Moss (2004); Vas (2017); Bonta (2010); Tapper (2022)	Cultural interpretations of birding, literary contributions, and personal accounts reflecting identity and ethics.

Source: the author, 2025.

3.11. Timeline Highlights

Earliest Publication - 1990: The foundational work by Wiedner and Kerlinger (1990) on the economics of birding stands as the oldest recorded entry. It marked the beginning of a formal academic interest in the economic dimensions of birdwatching, situating the activity within broader environmental valuation frameworks. **Most Recent Publications - 2024**: The latest entries underscore a convergence of climate adaptation strategies, digital transformation, and equity-oriented tourism policy. These are represented in studies on market forecasts, climate risk to avifauna, AI-enabled identification tools, and inclusion initiatives targeting underrepresented birder communities.

3.11.1. Trends and Scholarly Patterns by Decade:

1990s: Foundations in Economic and Behavioral Inquiry: this period established the conceptual and empirical groundwork of birdwatching tourism, particularly through economic valuation, recreation specialization, and early conservation advocacy. Key works, such as McFarlane (1994) and Burger et al. (1995), provided pioneering models for understanding birder motivations, behaviors, and impact perceptions. Notably, the period favored North American case studies and demographic profiling.

2000s: Rise of Ecotourism Integration and Ethical Discourse: building upon earlier models, this decade saw a boom in site-specific case studies, ethical debates (e.g., playback use), and a clearer articulation of birdwatching's role within ecotourism systems. Literature began exploring private land conservation, community-based initiatives, and the socio-economic contributions of bird festivals. Research diversified geographically, incorporating Latin America, Africa, and Asia, and thematically, incorporating urban ecology, festival economies, and gender-based perspectives.

2010s: Methodological Expansion and Global Reach: this decade marked a methodological maturing and thematic diversification. Quantitative econometric models, choice experiments, network analysis, and participatory GIS entered the field, offering fine-grained insights into birder preferences, destination loyalty, and conservation effectiveness. Key topics included avian disturbance thresholds, bird tourism in postconflict regions, and the intersection of tourism, education, and biodiversity policy (e.g., Steven et al., 2011; Kronenberg, 2014; Janeczko et al., 2021). There was a notable increase in research from developing countries, reflecting birdwatching's growing international footprint.

2020s: Urgency, Inclusivity, and Digital Futures: the most recent phase reflects a field in acceleration, responding to urgent planetary challenges and cultural shifts. Studies increasingly focus on climate change vulnerability, carbon-conscious travel, digitally mediated birding (e.g., eBird, Merlin, virtual guides), and inclusive avitourism planning. Emerging literature also explores the integration of AI and remote sensing, the role of social media in birding identities, and low-carbon travel ethics, alongside renewed interest in birding as a tool for environmental education and activism. Notable examples include CBI (2021) on European market potential and Randler et al. (2023) on birder preferences for rare, cryptic species.

3.12. Future Projections: Growth, Technology, and Climate Realities

Looking forward, **Grand View Research (2024)** projects a **CAGR of 7.2%** for birdwatching tourism through 2030, driven by continued growth in emerging economies, innovations in travel tech, and new market entrants (e.g., virtual tourism platforms).

At the same time, climate-related challenges are reshaping the industry. According to Audubon's *Survival by Degrees* (2023), **64% of North American bird species are projected to experience range shifts** due to warming, with profound implications for migratory patterns, seasonal tourism, and destination resilience.

In response, new market behaviors are emerging:

- **59% of birders now prioritize low-carbon destinations**, including domestic and regional circuits (Audubon, 2024).
- **Virtual birding experiences** and **immersive AR/VR tours** (e.g., BirdingVR) are expected to capture **15% of market share** by 2030 (McKinsey, 2023).
- Carbon-offset and climate-smart itineraries are becoming baseline requirements for premium tour operators (ABTA, 2023).

3.13. Policy Implications and Data Gaps

Despite this promising landscape, significant policy and data challenges remain. According to UNEP (2023), only 28% of countries systematically track birdwatching-specific tourism data, making it difficult to assess impacts, design incentives, or integrate bird tourism into national strategies.

Promoting standardized data collection, as well as pro-poor tourism models, is essential. Case studies from Brazil demonstrate that Indigenous-led avitourism programs retain up to 3x more local value than conventional commercial operators, suggesting a path forward for more equitable and effective tourism governance.

In brief

The economic significance of birdwatching tourism in 2024 reflects a powerful convergence of ecological interest, cultural enthusiasm, and sustainable development potential. With billions in global revenue, tens of thousands of jobs, and proven links to biodiversity protection, avitourism is far more than a niche—it is a strategic asset for conservation and inclusive growth. Brazil's trajectory, in particular, offers a living laboratory for testing how bird-focused travel can align economic prosperity with environmental stewardship. Going forward, the challenge lies not in stimulating demand, but in designing systems that balance growth, resilience, and justice. Refer to the Table 3.5 below to have an overview of birdwatching tourism in the key countries discussed in some of the Chapters in this book.

Table 1.5: Global and Regional Birdwatching Tourism Hotspots – Key Destinations and Indicators

Region/Country	Notable Birding Destinations	Iconic Species	Estimated Annual Revenue (USD)	Estimated Jobs Supported	Highlights
United States	Rio Grande Valley, Yellowstone, Hawk Mountain	Bald Eagle, Warblers, Sandhill Crane	$41 billion	600,000+	Extensive infrastructure, major domestic and international market
Costa Rica	Monteverde, Osa Peninsula, Tortuguero	Resplendent Quetzal, Toucans	$1.5 billion	65,000	Global ecotourism model, strong birding lodges, endemic species
South Africa	Kruger NP, Western Cape, KwaZulu-Natal	African Penguin, Sunbirds	$400 million	18,000	Birding safaris, strong conservation-tourism linkages
India	Western Ghats, Himalayas, Kaziranga	Great Hornbill, Bengal Florican	$950 million	30,000	Rich avifauna, bird sanctuaries, growing domestic birder market
Ecuador & Peru	Manu NP, Mindo, Yasuni Biosphere	Hummingbirds, Macaws, Cock-of-the-Rock	Not specified	Not specified	Mega-diverse Andes-Amazon gradient, birding circuits well established
Brazil – Pantanal	Pantanal wetlands (MS, MT)	Hyacinth Macaw, Jabiru Stork	Included in national figure	Included in national	Flagship avitourism region, combo jaguar + bird tours
Brazil – Atlantic Forest	Itatiaia, Intervales, Serra do Mar	Brazilian Merganser, Manakins	Included in national figure	Included in national	High endemism, birding with biodiversity corridors
Brazil – Cerrado	Chapada dos Veadeiros, Serra da Canastra	Blue-eyed Ground-Dove, Cock-tailed Tyrant	Included in national figure	Included in national	Threatened biome, rare sightings
Brazil – Amazon	Manaus, Mamirauá, Rio Negro, Tefé	Hoatzin, Umbrellabird, Crimson Topaz	Included in national figure	Included in national	Riverboat birding, remote lodges, immense diversity
Brazil – Roraima	Viruá National Park, Caracaraí, Monte Roraima	Guianan Cock-of-the-rock, Roraiman Barbtail	Emerging market	Emerging market	Unique ecosystems, high potential for community-led birding tourism
Australia	Kakadu NP, Atherton Tablelands, Tasmania	Bowerbirds, Parrots, Gouldian Finch	Not specified	Not specified	Strong birding circuits, endemic-rich habitats
New Zealand	Stewart Island, Tiritiri Matangi, Fiordland	Kiwi, Tūī, Kākā	Not specified	Not specified	Island endemism, integrated conservation tourism
Guyana	Iwokrama Forest, Rupununi, Kaieteur NP	Harpy Eagle, Crimson Fruitcrow	Not specified	Not specified	Pristine forests, low-volume, high-experience tourism

References

ABA. (2003). *Principles of birding ethics*. American Birding Association. http://www.aba.org/about/ethics.html

ABA. (2024). *American birding association homepage*. https://www.aba.org/american-birding-association/

Alfano, A. (2014). Not just sparrows and pigeons: Cities harbor 20 percent of world's bird species. *All About Birds*. Cornell Lab of Ornithology.

BCB. (2020). *The Big City Birds project*. https://www.spotteron.com/bigcitybirds/info

BCW. (2017). *Bird City Wisconsin*. https://birdcitywisconsin.org/

Bernardon, B., & Nassar, P. M. (2012). Birdwatching in the Mamiraua Lake as an appeal to ecotourists/birdwatchers. *UAKARI, 8*(2), 49-64.

Biggs, D., Turpie, J., Fabricius, C., & Spenceley, A. (2011). The value of avitourism for conservation and job creation - an analysis from South Africa. *Conservation and Society, 9*(1), 80-90.

BirdLife Australia. (2012). *Ethical birding guidelines*. http://www.birdlife.org.au/documents/POL-Ethical-Birding-Guidelines.pdf

BirdLife International. (2013). *Datazone species search*. http://www.birdlife.org/datazone/species/search

Birds of India. (2009). *The ethic and science of bird call playback*. http://www.kolkatabirds.com/callplayback.htm

Bireline, H. R. (2005). *Recreation specialization and reports of potential impact behaviors among birders attending birding festivals* [Unpublished master's thesis]. University of Florida.

Bonta, M. (2010). Ornithophilia: Thoughts on geography in birding. *The Geographical Review, 100*(2), 139-151.

Booth, J. E., Gaston, K. J., Evans, K. L., & Arnsworth, P. R. (2011). The value of species rarity in biodiversity recreation: A birdwatching example. *Biological Conservation, 144*, 2728-2732.

Bovarnick, A., Fernandez-Baca, J., Galindo, J., & Negret, H. (2010). *Financial sustainability of protected areas in Latin America and the Caribbean: Investment policy guideline*. United Nations Development Program.

Brock, M., Fraser, I., Law, C., Mitchell, S., & Roberts, D. L. (2021). An economic analysis of twitching behavior and species rarity. *Journal of Environmental Economics and Policy, 10*(1), 54-73.

Buckley, R. C. (2004). *Environmental impacts of ecotourism*. CAB International.

Burger, J., Gochfeld, M., & Niles, L. J. (1995). Ecotourism and birds in coastal New Jersey: Contrasting responses of birds, tourists, and managers. *Environmental Conservation, 22*(1), 56-65.

Burr, S. W., & Scott, D. (2004). Application of the recreational specialization framework to understanding visitors to the Great Salt Lake bird festival. *Event Management, 9*(1-2), 27-37.

Butler, R. W. (2021). The potential impacts of climate change on avitourism to islands: The example of Fair Isle, Scotland. *International Journal of Islands Research, 2*(1), 4.

Çakici, A. C., & Harman, S. (2007). Importance of destination attributes affecting destination choice of Turkish birdwatchers. *Journal of Commerce & Tourism Faculty, 1*, 131-145.

Callaghan, C. T., Benson, I., Major, R. E., Martin, J. M., Longden, T., et al. (2020). Birds are valuable: The case of vagrants. *Journal of Ecotourism, 19*(1), 82-92.

Callaghan, C. T., Slater, M., Major, R. E., Morrison, M., Martin, J. M., et al. (2018). Travelling birds generate eco-travellers: The economic potential of vagrant birdwatching. *Human Dimensions of Wildlife, 23*(1), 71-82.

Carver, E. (2013). *Birding in the United States: A demographic and economic analysis*. U.S. Fish & Wildlife Service.

CBI. (2021). *The European market potential for birdwatching tourism*. https://www.cbi.eu/market-information/tourism/birdwatching-tourism/market-potential

Che, D. (2003). Guided birding tours: An examination of the market, important tour parameters, and participant demographics. In J. J. Murdy (Ed.), *Proceedings of the 2003 Northeastern Recreation Research Symposium* (pp. 194-202). USDA Forest Service.

Cherry, E., Davidson-Onsgard, A., & Moore, L. J. (2018). Birdwatching in the city: A case for multispecies tourism. *Metropolitics*. https://metropolitics.org/Birdwatching-in-the-City-ACase-for-Multispecies-Tourism.html

Clynes, T. (2017). How birding tourism can support communities and foster conservation. *National Audubon Society*. https://www.audubon.org/news/how-birding-tourism-can-support-communities-and-foster-conservation

Cole, J. S., & Scott, D. (1999). Segmenting participation in wildlife watching: A comparison of casual wildlife watchers and serious birders. *Human Dimensions of Wildlife, 4*(4), 44-61.

Collins-Kreiner, N., Malkinson, D., Labinger, Z., & Shtainvarz, R. (2013). Are birders good for birds? Bird conservation through tourism management in the Hula Valley, Israel. *Tourism Management, 38*, 31-42.

Connell, J. (2009). Birdwatching, twitching and tourism: Towards an Australian perspective. *Australian Geographer, 40*(2), 203-217.

Conradie, N., & van Zyl, C. (2013). Agreement of the international avitourist market to ecotourism principles: A South African development perspective. *African Journal of Business Management, 7*(30), 3013-3021.

Conradie, N., & van Zyl, C. (2016). Behavioral involvement in avitourism: An international case study. *African Journal of Hospitality, Tourism, and Leisure, 5*(2), 1-23.

Conradie, N., & van Zyl, C. (2020). A conceptual literacy framework for sustainable avitourism to ensure quality birding experiences. In I. M. A. Gunadi, D. R. Kausar, R. Firmansyah, & J. Kennell (Eds.), *Culture, people and technology - The driving forces for tourism cities* (p. 586). International Tourism Studies Association.

Conradie, N., van Zyl, C., & Strasheim, A. (2013). What inspires birders to migrate South towards Africa? A quantitative measure of international avitourist motivation. *Southern African Business Review, 17*(1), 128-167.

Cordell, H. K., & Herbert, N. G. (2002). The popularity of birding is still growing. *Birding, 34*(1), 54-61.

Czajkowski, M., Giergiczny, M., Kronenberg, J., & Tryjanowski, P. (2014). The economic recreational value of a white stork nesting colony: A case of 'stork village' in Poland. *Tourism Management, 40*, 352-360.

Dickie, I., Hughes, J., & Esteban, A. (2006). *Watched like never before...the local economic benefits of spectacular bird species*. RSPB.

Dickinson, R., & Edmondson, B. (1996). Golden wings. *American Demographics, 18*(12), 47-49.

Dooley, S. (2007). *Anoraks to zitting cisticola - a whole lot of stuff about birdwatching*. Allen & Unwin.

DTI. (2010). *Avitourism in South Africa*. Department of Trade and Industry.

Eagles, P. J. F. (2014). Research priorities in park tourism. *Journal of Sustainable Tourism, 22*(4), 528-549.

Emerton, L., Bishop, J., & Thomas, L. (2006). *Sustainable financing of protected areas: A global review of challenges and options*. IUCN.

Eubanks, T., Kerlinger, P., & Payne, R. H. (1993). High Island, Texas. Case study in avitourism. *Birding, 25*(6), 415-420.

Eubanks Jr, T. L., Stoll, J. R., & Ditton, R. B. (2004). Understanding the diversity of eight birder sub-populations: Socio-demographic characteristics, motivations, expenditures and net benefits. *Journal of Ecotourism, 3*(3), 151-172.

Figgis, P., Humann, D., & Looker, M. (2005). Conservation on private land in Australia. *Parks, 15*(2), 19-29.

Future Market Insights. (2024). *Ornithology tourism market outlook from 2024 to 2034*. https://www.futuremarketinsights.com/reports/ornithology-tourism-sector-perspective-and-outlook

Gallagher, A. J., & Hammerschlag, N. (2011). Global shark currency: The distribution, frequency, and economic value of shark ecotourism. *Current Issues in Tourism, 14*, 797-812.

Gallo, J. A., Pasquini, L., Reyers, B., & Cowling, R. M. (2009). The role of private conservation areas in biodiversity representation and target achievement within the Little Karoo region, South Africa. *Biological Conservation, 142*, 446-454.

Gorky Park. (2020). *Gorky Park launches the WingedNeighbors project!* https://www.parkgorkogo.com/events/1487

Gosálvez Rey, R. U., Navas Berbel, A., & Aleja, D. (2022). Birdwatching as a new tourist activity in El Hierro Geopark. In J. Dóniz-Páez & N. M. Pérez (Eds.), *El Hierro Island Global Geopark: Diversity of volcanic heritage for geotourism* (pp. 95-104). Springer.

Green, R., & Jones, D. N. (2010). *Practices, needs and attitudes of bird-watching tourists in Australia*. CRC for Sustainable Tourism.

Gregory, R. D., Gibbons, D. W., & Donald, P. F. (2004). Bird census and survey techniques. In W. J. Sutherland, I. Newton, & R. E. Green (Eds.), *Bird ecology and conservation: A handbook of techniques* (pp. 17-55). Cambridge University Press.

Grihault, N. (2023). *8 of the best birdwatching destinations around the world.* https://restless.co.uk/travel/the-best-birdwatching-destinations-around-the-world/

Guitart, D., Pickering, C., & Byrne, J. (2012). Past results and future directions in urban community gardens research. *Urban Forestry & Urban Greening, 11*(4), 364-373.

Guimarães, M. H., Nunes, L. C., Madureira, L., Santos, J. L., Boski, T., et al. (2015). Measuring birdwatchers preferences: A case for using online networks and mixed-mode surveys. *Tourism Management, 46*, 102-113.

Gurung, H. (2012). Nepal: A paradise for birdwatching. *Himalayas, 19*, 20-23.

Hale, A. M. (2006). Group living in the Black-breasted Wood-quail and the use of playbacks as a survey technique. *The Condor, 108*(1), 107-119.

Harwood, S. (2008). Planning and development of community based tourism: Bird watching destinations. In S. Richardson, L. Fredline, A. Patiar, & M. Ternel (Eds.), *Proceedings of the 18th Annual CAUTHE Conference* [CD-ROM]. Griffith University.

Hill, S. G., Cable, T. T., & Scott, D. (2010). Wildlife-based recreation as economic windfall: A rhetorical analysis of public discourse on birding. *Applied Environmental Education and Communication, 9*(4), 224-232.

Hodur, N. M., Leistritz, F. L., & Wolfe, K. (2004). *Characteristics and expenditures of participants in the Potholes and Prairie birding festival.* North Dakota State University.

Hottola, P. (2009). Coastal bird tourism in Namibia: Postcolonial resources and restraints. In P. Hottola (Ed.), *Tourism strategies and local responses in Southern Africa* (pp. 105-126). CAB International.

Hughes, R. (2005). *IBA local conservation groups and caretakers: Learning from early experience and future directions.* BirdLife International. https://www.yumpu.com/en/document/view/9612175/iba-local-conservation-groups-and-caretakers-birdlife-international

Hvenegaard, G. T. (2002). Birder specialization differences in conservation involvement, demographics, and motivations. *Human Dimensions of Wildlife, 7*(1), 21-36.

Hvenegaard, G. T., Butler, J. R., & Krystofiak, D. K. (1989). Economic values of bird watching at Point Pelee National Park, Canada. *Wildlife Society Bulletin, 17*(4), 526-531.

Hvenegaard, G. T., & Dearden, P. (1998a). Ecotourism versus tourism in a Thai national park. *Annals of Tourism Research, 25*, 700-720.

Hvenegaard, G. T., & Dearden, P. (1998b). Linking ecotourism and biodiversity conservation: A case study of Doi Inthanon National Park, Thailand. *Singapore Journal of Tropical Geography, 19*(2), 193-211.

Isaev, A. P., Solomonov, N. G., Nogovitsyn, V. P., Germogenov, N. I., Solomonov, K. S., Shemyakin, E. V., Kirillin, R. A., Vladimirtseva, M. V., & Gabyshev, V. Yu. (2017). Prospects for the development of ornithological tourism in the Middle Lena. *Izvestia of the Samara Scientific Center of the Russian Academy of Sciences, 2-3*, 453-457.

Isaacs, J. C., & Chi, Y. N. (2005). *A travel-cost analysis of a birdwatching festival: The Grand Isle migratory bird celebration*. Louisiana Department of Wildlife and Fisheries.

Jackson, S. (2007). Attitudes towards the environment and ecotourism of stakeholders in the UK tourism industry with particular reference to ornithological tour operators. *Journal of Ecotourism, 6*(1), 34-66.

Janeczko, E., Łukowski, A., Bielinis, E., Woźnicka, M., Janeczko, K., et al. (2021). "Not just a hobby, but a lifestyle": Characteristics, preferences and self-perception of individuals with different levels of involvement in birdwatching. *PLoS One, 16*(7), e0255359.

Jones, D. N., & Buckley, R. C. (2001). *Birdwatching Tourism in Australia* (CRC for Sustainable Tourism Report, 38 pp.). Gold Coast, Australia: CRC for Sustainable Tourism.

Jones, C. A., Plante, S., & Shackelford, C. E. (2008). The Great Texas Birding Classic: A birdwatching tournament that protects and promotes critical Texas Gulf coast habitat. In *Proceedings of the Fourth International Partners in Flight Conference: Tundra to Tropics* (pp. 479-482).

Jones, D. N. (2011). An appetite for connection: Why we need to understand the effect and value of feeding wild birds. *Emu, 111*(2), i-vii.

Jones, D. N., & Buckley, R. (2001). *Birdwatching tourism in Australia*. CRC for Sustainable Tourism.

Jones, D. N., & Nealson, T. (2005). *Impacts of bird watching on communities and species: Long-term and short-term responses in rainforest and eucalypt habitats*. CRC for Sustainable Tourism.

Jones, D. N., & Reynolds, S. J. (2008). Feeding birds in our towns and cities: A global research opportunity. *Journal of Avian Biology, 39*(3), 265-271.

Kerlinger, P. (1993). Birding economics and birder demographics studies as conservation tools. In D. M. Finch & P. W. Stangel (Eds.), *Status and management of neotropical migratory birds* (pp. 32-38). USDA Forest Service.

Kerlinger, P., & Brett, J. (1995). Hawk Mountain Sanctuary: A case study of birder visitation and birding economics. In R. Knight & K. Gutzwiller (Eds.), *Wildlife and recreationists: Coexistence through management and research* (pp. 169-181). Island Press.

Kim, A. K., Keuning, J., Robertson, J., & Kleindorfer, S. (2010). Understanding the birdwatching tourism market in Queensland, Australia. *Anatolia, 21*(2), 227-247.

Kim, C., Scott, D., Thigpen, J. F., & Kim, S.-S. (1998). Economic impact of a birding festival. *Festival Management & Event Tourism, 5*(1-2), 51-58.

Kronenberg, J. (2014). Environmental impacts of the use of ecosystem services: Case study of birdwatching. *Environmental Management, 54*(3), 617-630.

Kyoratungye-Karemente, A. (2007). *A web-based tour guide information system for selection of bird habitat location in avi-tourism* [Unpublished master's thesis]. Makerere University.

La Rouche, G. P. (2001). *Birding in the United States: A demographic and economic analysis*. U.S. Fish & Wildlife Service.

Lawton, L. J. (2008). Are US-based birding festivals a form of ecotourism? In S. Richardson, L. Fredline, A. Patiar, & M. Ternel (Eds.), *Proceedings of the 18th Annual CAUTHE Conference* [CD-ROM]. Griffith University.

Lawton, L. J. (2009). Birding festivals, sustainability and ecotourism: An ambiguous relationship. *Journal of Travel Research, 48*(2), 259-267.

Lawton, L. J., & Weaver, D. B. (2010). Normative and innovative sustainable resource management at birding festivals. *Tourism Management, 31*, 527-536.

Lee, C.-K., Lee, J.-H., Kim, T.-K., & Mjelde, J. W. (2010). Preferences and willingness to pay for bird-watching tour and interpretive services using a choice experiment. *Journal of Sustainable Tourism, 18*(5), 695-708.

Lee, C.-K., Lee, J.-H., Mjelde, J. W., Scott, D., & Kim, T.-K. (2009). Assessing the economic value of a public birdwatching interpretive service using a contingent valuation method. *International Journal of Tourism Research, 11*, 583-593.

Lee, J., & Scott, D. (2004). Measuring birding specialization: A confirmatory factor analysis. *Leisure Sciences, 26*(3), 229-243.

Lee, S., McMahan, K., & Scott, D. (2015). The gendered nature of serious birdwatching. *Human Dimensions of Wildlife, 20*(1), 47-64.

Lindo, D. (2012). An introduction to birding in the city. *The Guardian*. https://theguardian.com/environment/2012/may/19/introduction-urbanbirding-david-lindo

Lindo, D. (2013). *The urban birder's city guide*. Bloomsbury Publishing.

Li, F., Zhu, Q., & Yang, Z. (2013). Birding tourism development in Sichuan, China. *Tourism Economics, 19*(2), 257-273.

Li, L. (2018). Environmentally responsible behavior intentions of wildlife tourists based on recreational involvement: A case study of bird-watching tourists in Guangzhou. *Chinese Studies, 7*(1), 95-113.

Li, N., Yang, C., Qin, X., Sun, J., & Liu, J. (2022). The impact of climate change on birder destination loyalty: Examining changes in bird resources. *Current Issues in Tourism, 25*(11), 1798-1816.

Lindsay, K., Craig, J., & Low, M. (2008). Tourism and conservation: The effects of track proximity on avian reproductive success and nest selection in an open sanctuary. *Tourism Management, 29*(4), 730-739.

Lindsay, M. (1998). The Great Texas Coastal Birding Trail: A tool for avitourism. *USDA Forest Service Proceedings RMRS*, 261-262.

Liu, T., Ma, L., Cheng, L., Hou, Y., & Wen, Y. (2021). Is ecological birdwatching tourism a more effective way to transform the value of ecosystem services? A case study of birdwatching destinations in Mingxi county, China. *International Journal of Environmental Research and Public Health, 18*(23), 12424.

Lyons, K., Markwell, K., & Johnson, P. (2009). *Recreation specialisation and destination image: A case study of birding tourists values and their perceptions of Papua New Guinea*. Paper presented at BEST EN Think Tank IX. http://ertr.tamu.edu/files/2012/09/566_LyonsMarkwellJohnson.pdf

MacKinnon, B. H. (2004). *Manual for training bird guides in rural communities*. Amigos de Sian Ka'an.

Maple, L. C., Eagles, P. F. J., & Rolfe, H. (2010). Birdwatchers' specialisation characteristics and national park tourism planning. *Journal of Ecotourism, 9*(3), 219-238.

MarkWide Research. (2024). *Ornithology tourism market analysis - Industry size, share, research report, shares, Covid-19 impact, statistics, trends, growth and forecast 2024-2032*. https://markwideresearch.com/ornithology-tourism-market/

McFadden, T. N., Herrera, A. G., & Navedo, J. G. (2017). Waterbird responses to regular passage of a birdwatching tour boat: Implications for wetland management. *Journal for Nature Conservation, 40*, 42-48.

McFarlane, B. L. (1994). Specialization and motivations of birdwatchers. *Wildlife Society Bulletin, 22*(3), 361-370. https://www.jstor.org/stable/3783377

McFarlane, B. L., & Boxall, P. C. (1996). Participation in wildlife conservation by birdwatchers. *Human Dimensions of Wildlife, 1*(3), 1-14.

Measells, M., & Grado, S. (2007). *Economic impacts of two birding festivals in Mississippi* (Publication No. F0341). Mississippi State University.

Morris, J. (2008). Sustainability of avian ecotourism. In G. N. Editor & I. H. Editor (Eds.), *An international forum on sustainability* (pp. 43-50). Arisztotelész Publishing.

Moss, S. (2004). *A bird in the bush: A social history of birdwatching*. Aurum Press.

Newsome, D. (2005). Enhancing the avitourism potential of the Boondall Wetlands, Queensland. In *Western Australian Section, Sustainable Tourism Cooperative Research Centre Industry Forum*.

Newsome, D., Dowling, R. K., & Dowling, S. A. (2005). *Wildlife tourism*. Channel View Publications.

Nicolaides, A. (2013). Promoting Avitourism as a special niche area of Ecotourism in South Africa. *African Journal of Hospitality, Tourism and Leisure, 2*(2), 1-14. http://www.ajhtl.com/uploads/7/1/6/3/7163688/nicolaides_a___promoting_avitourism.pdf

Ocampo-Peñuela, N., & Winton, R. S. (2017). Economic and conservation potential of bird-watching tourism in postconflict Colombia. *Tropical Conservation Science, 10*, 1940082917733862.

O'Connor, S., Campbell, R., Cortez, H., & Knowles, T. (2009). *Whale watching worldwide: Tourism numbers, expenditures and expanding economic benefits*. International Fund for Animal Welfare.

Orenstein, R., Wong, A., Abghani, N., Bakewell, D., Eaton, J., Teck, Y. S., & Li, Y. D. (2010). Sarawak - A neglected birding destination in Malaysia. *BirdingASIA, 13*, 30-41.

Pegas, F. de V., & Castley, J. G. (2014). Ecotourism as a conservation tool and its adoption by private protected areas in Brazil. *Journal of Sustainable Tourism, 22*(4), 604-625.

Petticrew, M., & Roberts, H. (2006). *Systematic reviews in the social sciences: A practical guide*. Blackwell.

Pickering, C. M., & Ballantyne, M. (2013). Orchids: An example of charismatic megaflora tourism? In A. Holden & D. Fennell (Eds.), *The Routledge handbook of tourism and the environment* (pp. 192-199). Routledge.

Pickering, C. M., Hill, W., Newsome, D., & Leung, Y.-F. (2010). Comparing hiking, mountain biking and horse riding impacts on vegetation and soils in Australia and the United States of America. *Journal of Environmental Management, 91*(3), 551-562.

PRB. (2011). *Population Reference Bureau. Density (people per sq. km.).* http://www.prb.org/DataFinder/Topic/Rankings.aspx?ind=30

Puhakka, L., Salo, M., & Sääksjärvi, I. E. (2011). Bird diversity, birdwatching tourism and conservation in Peru: A geographic analysis. *PLoS One, 6*, e26786.

Qiao, H., Orr, M., Yang, Q., Zhan, X., Lei, F., et al. (2023). Global birdwatching data reveal uneven consequences of the COVID-19 pandemic. *Biological Conservation, 288*, 110351.

Ramos, K., Pérez, L. R., & Bassols, N. (2023). Bird watching tourism in sustainable and accessible destinations: The case of the entrepreneurial venture Explora Caloccita in the Mexican Pacific Coast. In T. Allis & S. Carnicelli (Eds.), *Tourism in Latin America: Current practices and future developments* (Tourism Cases Special Issue). CAB International.

Randler, C. (2023). Motivations for birdwatching: Support for a three-dimensional model. *Human Dimensions of Wildlife, 28*(1), 84-92.

Randler, C., Staller, N., Kalb, N., & Tryjanowski, P. (2023). Charismatic species and birdwatching: Advanced birders prefer small, shy, dull, and rare species. *Anthrozoös, 36*(3), 427-445.

RBPU. (2020). *Russian Bird Protection Union. Nightingale Evenings Project*. https://luscinia-luscinia.ru/

Ren, J., Su, K., Zhou, Y., Hou, Y., & Wen, Y. (2022). Why return? Birdwatching tourists' revisit intentions based on structural equation modelling. *Sustainability, 14*(21), 14632.

Riley, A. (2014). South Africa: The best of the 'birding continent'. *Birder's Guide, 26*. https://www.aba.org/south-africa-best-birding-continent/

Rothman, A. (2008). A case study of bird trail development in Central America. In *Proceedings of the Fourth International Partners in Flight Conference: Tundra to Tropics* (pp. 508-511).

Roy, S., Byrne, J., & Pickering, C. (2012). A systematic quantitative review of urban tree benefits, costs, and assessment methods across cities in different climatic zones. *Urban Forestry & Urban Greening, 11*(4), 351-363.

Saarinen, J., Becker, F., Manwa, H., & Wilson, D. (2009). *Sustainable tourism in Southern Africa: Local communities and natural resources in transition*. Channel View Publications.

Sali, M. J. G., & Kuehn, D. M. (2007). Gender-based motivations of non-residential birdwatchers in New York State: A qualitative study. In R. Burns & K. Robinson (Eds.), *Proceedings of the 2006 Northeastern Recreation Research Symposium* (pp. 318-325). USDA Forest Service.

Sánchez-Rivero, M., Sánchez-Martín, J. M., & Rodríguez Rangel, M. C. (2020). Characterization of birdwatching demand using a logit approach: Comparative analysis of source markets (national vs foreign). *Animals, 10*(6), Article 965. https://doi.org/10.3390/ani10060965

Sari, C., Oban, R., & Erdogan, A. (2011). Ornitho-Tourism and Antalya. *Procedia Social and Behavioral Sciences, 19*, 165-172.

Schwoerer, T., & Dawson, N. G. (2022). Small sight-big might: Economic impact of bird tourism shows opportunities for rural communities and biodiversity conservation. *PLoS One, 17*(7), e0268594.

Scott, D., & Lee, J. H. (2010). Progression, stability, or decline? Sociological mechanisms underlying change in specialization among birdwatchers. *Leisure Sciences, 32*(2), 180-194.

Scott, D., & Thigpen, J. (2003). Understanding the birder as a tourist: Segmenting visitors to the Texas Hummer/Bird Celebration. *Human Dimensions of Wildlife, 8*, 199-218.

Scott, D., Ditton, R. B., Stoll, J. R., & Eubanks Jr, T. L. (2005). Measuring specialization among birders: Utility of a self-classification measure. *Human Dimensions of Wildlife, 10*, 53-75.

Şekercioğlu, Ç. H. (2002). Impacts of birdwatching on human and avian communities. *Environmental Conservation, 29*(3), 282-289.

Şekercioğlu, Ç. H. (2003). Conservation through commodification. *Birding, 35*, 394-402.

Singh, A., & Kanga, U. (2021). Ornithological Tourism: Sustainable Tourism Development Opportunities for Poverty Reduction in Pong Dam Wetland of Himachal Pradesh. *Journal of Tourism and Sports Management, 4*(1), 46-59.

Silber, E. (2015). Why a painted bunting landed in Brooklyn. *Audubon*.

Simango, S. S. (2011). *The evolution, structure and market for birding tourism in South Africa* [Unpublished master's thesis]. University of the Witwatersrand.

Smithsonian Gardens. (2022). *Engage. Inform. Inspire.* https://gardens.si.edu/gardens/urban-bird-habitat/

Son, N. L. H., Dung, L. T., & Van, N. T. (2011). Developing bird watching ecotourism combined with education and natural conservation. *VNU Journal of Science, Earth Sciences, 27*, 89-97.

Spenceley, A. (2008). *Responsible tourism: Critical issues for conservation and development*. Earthscan.

Stemmer (formerly Jathe), K., Aas, Ø., Veisten, K., & Lindberg, K. (2022). Assessing recreation specialization to guide nature-based tourism development: A hybrid choice model of birder destination preferences. *Journal of Outdoor Recreation and Tourism, 39*, 100516.

Steven, R., & Castley, J. G. (2013). Tourism as a threat to critically endangered and endangered birds: Global patterns and trends in conservation hotspots. *Biodiversity and Conservation, 22*(4), 1063-1082.

Steven, R., Castley, J. G., & Buckley, R. (2013). Tourism revenue as a conservation tool for threatened birds in protected areas. *PLoS One, 8*, e62598.

Steven, R., Morrison, C., & Castley, J. G. (2015). Birdwatching and avitourism: A global review of research into its participant markets, distribution and impacts, highlighting future research priorities to inform sustainable avitourism management. *Journal of Sustainable Tourism, 23*(8-9), 1257-1276.

Steven, R., Pickering, C., & Castley, J. G. (2011). A review of the impacts of nature based recreation on birds. *Journal of Environmental Management, 92*(10), 2287-2294.

Steven, R., Rakotopare, N., & Newsome, D. (2021). Avitourism tribes: As diverse as the birds they watch. In C. Pforr, R. Dowling, & M. Volgger (Eds.), *Consumer tribes in tourism* (pp. 101-118). Springer.

Stoddart, M. C. J., & Nezhadhossein, E. (2016). Is nature-oriented tourism a pro-environmental practice? Examining tourism-environmentalism alignments through discourse networks and intersectoral relationships. *Sociological Quarterly, 57*(3), 544-568.

Stoll, J. R., Ditton, R. B., & Eubanks Jr, T. L. (2006). Platte River birding and the spring migration: Humans, value, and unique ecological resources. *Human Dimensions of Wildlife, 11*, 241-254.

Tapper, J. (2022). You don't need to travel long distances to spot birds, Britain's twitchers urged. *The Guardian*. https://www.theguardian.com/environment/2022/jan/01/travel-distances-britain-twitchers-birds-birdwatchers-species-foot-cycle

TAS. (2017). *Tucson Audubon Society*. https://tucsonaudubon.org/

Topelko, K. N., & Dearden, P. (2005). The shark watching industry and its potential contribution to shark conservation. *Journal of Ecotourism, 4*(2), 108-128.

Trainor, C. R., Santana, F., Pinto, P., Xavier, A. F., Safford, R., & Grimmett, R. (2008). Birds, birding and conservation in Timor Leste. *BirdingASIA, 9*, 16-45.

Underhill, L., & Barnard, P. (2009). SABAP2 and climate change. *Africa - Birds & Birding, 14*(6), 79. https://science.uct.ac.za/sites/default/files/content_migration/science_uct_ac_za/925/files/ABB14%25286%252978-79.pdf

US FWS. (2012). *U.S. Fish & Wildlife Service*. https://www.fws.gov/

Vallejo-Novoa, L. A. (2023). Critical mass: The creation of Pajarero*/Birder communities in Mexico for citizen science. *Tapuya: Latin American Science, Technology and Society, 6*(1), Article 2254620. https://doi.org/10.1080/25729861.2023.2254620

Vas, K. (2012). *Birding trail development from a tourism planning perspective* [Unpublished master's thesis]. University of Waterloo.

Vas, K. (2017). Birding blogs as indicators of birdwatcher characteristics and trip preferences: Implications for birding destination planning and development. *Journal of Destination Marketing & Management, 6*(1), 33-45.

Wachsmuth, D. (2012). Three ecologies: Urban metabolism and the society-nature opposition. *Sociological Quarterly, 53*(4), 506-523.

Welford, M., & Barilla, A. (2013). Is neotropical conservation sold-short: Diminishing returns for birding suggest ecolodges could encourage longer stays. *Journal for Nature Conservation, 21*(6), 401-405.

Werdler, K. (2017). Birdwatching tourism sector in Rwanda: The need of self-learning and self-improving for the future of wildlife tourism development. In R. J. Green (Ed.), *Wildlife tourism, environmental learning and ethical encounters* (pp. 43-56). Springer.

Whitelaw, P. A., King, B. E. M., & Tolkach, D. (2014). Protected areas, conservation and tourism - financing the sustainable dream. *Journal of Sustainable Tourism, 22*(4), 584-603.

Wiedner, D., & Kerlinger, P. (1990). Economics of birding: A national survey of active birders. *International Council for Bird Preservation, 44*(2), 209-213.

Wight, P. (2007). Ecotourism, CSR, and the fourth dimension of sustainability. In J. Higham (Ed.), *Critical issues in ecotourism: Understanding a complex tourism phenomenon* (pp. 214-239). Elsevier.

Wong, H. C. S. (2009). *Birdwatching tourism and the possibility of developing cross-border birdwatching in Hong Kong and China* [Unpublished master's thesis]. University of Hong Kong.

Xu, J., Yan, P., Liu, Z., Qin, H., & Jiang, A. (2023). Avitourism as an aspect of sustainable mountain development: A case study from Southern China. *Eco.Mont (Journal on Protected Mountain Areas Research), 15*(1), 38-45.

Chapter 4

Theoretical Frameworks Applied to Birdwatching Tourism

Ismar Borges de Lima
Universidade Estadual de Roraima-UERR, Brazil &
RECINATUR Foundation. Email: ismar@uerr.edu.br

Summary

This chapter explores birdwatching tourism through a range of interdisciplinary theoretical perspectives, providing analytical depth to the study and interpretation of avitourism as both a social practice and a form of nature-based tourism. It begins with an examination of **Recreation Specialization Theory**, which helps differentiate birdwatchers by skill level, commitment, and behavioral patterns. It then applies **Duffus and Dearden's Wildlife Tourism Theory**, contextualizing birdwatching within broader human–wildlife interactions. The chapter also engages with **motivational theories**, including push–pull dynamics and psychological drivers that influence birding behavior. Critical frameworks such as **Political Ecology** are used to assess power relations, conservation narratives, and socio-environmental conflicts, particularly in biodiverse regions. Finally, the chapter introduces **Actor–Network Theory (ANT)** to analyze the relational assemblages between birdwatchers, technologies, species, and landscapes. Together, these frameworks offer a robust analytical toolkit for understanding the complexities, transformations, and impacts of birdwatching tourism in both local and global contexts.

4.0 Introduction

Understanding birdwatching tourism—also referred to as avitourism—requires a multidisciplinary theoretical lens that captures the complexity of motivations, behaviors, environmental dynamics, and socio-political structures that shape this growing form of nature-based travel. This section explores five key theoretical frameworks that provide critical insight into the nuances of avitourism. The Chapter is split into two major parts. **Part I** will deal with the descriptions and approaches regarding these theories and will provide a series of insights into the birdwatching tourism spectrum. **Part II** seeks to focus on the interconnectedness of these theories and the way they are related to specific contexts and cases in birdwatching tourism, avitourism. A selection of literature body provides evidences of empirical applications of the theories. Tables have been created to concisely show each theoretical framework, its core concepts, application area (avitourism/birdwatching tourism), theoretical interrelation and key authors and works, methodological frameworks and key insights, in this knowledge field.

Demonstrated and applied cases are presented seeking to enrich the framework and the analysis, therefore contributing further to the literature. First, the **Recreation Specialization Theory** (RST) offers a continuum-based model to understand the varying levels of commitment, skill, and knowledge among birdwatchers. Next, **Motivational Theories** (TCL, Push-Pull and SDT frameworks) delve into the psychological and emotional drivers that inspire individuals to engage in birdwatching and wildlife travel more broadly. The section then turns to **Duffus and Dearden's Wildlife Tourism Theory**, applying and critically extending their foundational work to the specific context of avitourism, with attention to human-wildlife interaction and the spectrum of user groups. Finally, the analysis culminates with a discussion of the **Political Ecology of Birdwatching Tourism**, examining how power, access, conservation politics, and environmental justice intersect in the avitourism landscape. Together, these frameworks offer a robust foundation for understanding birdwatching tourism not only as a recreational activity but also as a socio-ecological and cultural phenomenon. The last approach in this Section examines how **Actor–Network Theory** (ANT) can be theoretically and empirically applied to the domains of avitourism and wildlife tourism—areas that have received limited attention within ANT-oriented scholarship. ANT provides both a conceptual lens and a methodological approach grounded in the principles of relational materiality and general symmetry. It shifts the analytical focus away from human-centered perspectives, emphasizing instead the interconnected networks of human and non-human actors, including technologies, infrastructures, environments, and species, that collectively shape tourism practices and experiences. Though, some scholars (e.g., Murdoch, 1997; Ingold, 2000) caution against "flattening" differences between types of agency.

Part I – Recreation Specialization Theory (RST)

4.1 Recreation Specialization Theory (RST) in Birdwatching Tourism

4.1.1 Core Principles and Concepts

Recreation Specialization Theory, pioneered by Hobson Bryan (1977, 1979), remains one of the most widely applied theoretical frameworks for understanding the psychological, behavioral, and motivational dimensions of outdoor recreation participants. Defined as a "*specialization is a continuum of behavior from the general to the particular, reflected by the equipment and skills used in the sport and the preferences of setting activities*" (Bryan, 1977, p. 175), RST has served as a valuable lens for identifying patterns of user engagement and environmental ethics in outdoor leisure activities (Bireline, 2005). Its application to avitourism/birdwatching tourism, a growing subdomain within ecotourism, has opened new avenues for understanding birder typologies, conservation commitment, and potential behavioral impacts on wildlife and ecosystems.

The core premise of RST suggests that as individuals progress along the specialization continuum—from casual participants to committed experts—their motivations, behaviors, and preferences shift in measurable ways. This continuum is often operationalized through dimensions such as past experience, skill level, centrality to lifestyle, and economic investment (McIntyre, 1989; Scott & Godbey, 1994). Thus, Recreation-specialization entails a *focusing of behavior*, the acquisition of activity-specific skills and knowledge, and a growing psychological commitment expressed in specialized equipment use (Scott & Shafer, 2001, p. 327). Within the birdwatching context, research has consistently revealed that novice or casual birders typically prioritize affiliative or aesthetic experiences (e.g., relaxing in nature or observing birds casually), whereas specialized birders tend to be driven by achievement motivations (e.g., life-listing, pursuing rare species, and international travel for target species) (McFarlane, 1994; Eubanks et al., 2004), "*highly-specialized birders indicated that achievement-oriented experiences, such as adding a new species to a life list, were important reasons for birdwatching … Less-specialized birders were more likely to value general nature experiences*" (McFarlane, 1994, p. 366).

Thus, the **core operational definition** of specialization is behavioral, focusing on the length and degree of involvement in the activity. This **behavioral dimension** includes aspects like frequency of participation, types of trips undertaken, and equipment preferences. Accompanying this behavior are **cognitive dimensions**, such as the development of specific skills (e.g., bird identification by sight and sound) and knowledge, and **affective dimensions**, encompassing commitment, centrality of the activity to one's life and identity, emotional attachment, social bonding within the activity's "leisure social world," and investment of time and money. Commitment itself can be viewed as having behavioral aspects (costs/consequences of participation) and personal aspects (affective attachment, identity).

However, a deeper interrogation of these findings reveals complex and sometimes counterintuitive outcomes. Notably, in a robust field study involving 184 participants at three birding festivals across Florida (83% response rate), researchers discovered that as birders became more specialized, their self-reported impact behaviors also increased. Contrary to the widely held hypothesis that advanced birders would engage in more environmentally responsible conduct, the results showed statistically significant positive correlations between higher specialization indices and behaviors (Bireline, 2005) such as going off-trail, approaching birds too closely, and using playback devices to attract birds. This paradox—where greater knowledge and commitment coexist with higher disturbance potential—calls into question the assumption that specialization inherently fosters pro-conservation behavior (Scott & Schafer, 2001).

These findings suggest that specialization in birdwatching may, under certain motivational structures, reinforce utilitarian or goal-oriented behaviors that prioritize individual experiences (e.g., securing rare sightings to the observation or recorded instance of something uncommon, especially an animal or bird) over ecological sensitivity. As McFarlane (1994) argued, advanced birders may exhibit a form of "achievement-driven consumption," akin to trophy hunting in consumptive recreation, where the satisfaction of "bagging" a rare species outweighs perceived ecological risks. This is not to equate birding with extractive practices, but rather to acknowledge that behavioral intensity can mirror consumptive patterns even in nonconsumptive forms of recreation.

Moreover, RST's applicability in avitourism underscores the importance of managing birder specialization in the field through targeted interpretation, site design, and educational interventions. It is increasingly evident that knowledge or experience alone does not guarantee lower ecological impact. Indeed, it may require a values-based approach to behavioral transformation, where affective and normative commitments are nurtured alongside skill development. This aligns with Lee and Scott's (2004) three-dimensional model of recreation specialization—skill, behavior, and commitment—which offers a more nuanced typology than linear models by accounting for conflicting behaviors within individual participants.

From a management perspective, understanding specialization gradients can help stakeholders design tiered engagement strategies. For instance, casual birders may benefit most from passive interpretation (e.g., signage, guided tours), while specialized birders may respond better to peer-informed ethics, certification systems (e.g., ethical birder badges), or participatory monitoring programs that reinforce a conservation ethic. Sites with sensitive habitats—such as nesting grounds for migratory or threatened species—may require zoned access or stricter regulation, especially during high-visitation festivals or peak migration seasons.

Additionally, the social worlds perspective (Ditton et al., 1992) enhances RST by viewing specialization as nested within distinct cultural subgroups, where norms, shared values, and identity formation shape behavior. In birdwatching, communities such as life-listers, twitchers, photographers, and conservationist birders may exhibit overlapping but distinct behaviors and motivations. This pluralism supports Eubanks et al.'s (2004) caution against homogenizing birders as a single market segment and highlights the risk of overgeneralization in both research and policy.

Critically, avitourism's expansion into new geographies—such as Indigenous territories, protected areas, and community-conserved landscapes—demands ethical sensitivity. The impact of specialized birders entering these spaces without adequate cultural orientation or ecological guidelines can undermine both conservation and local governance. Thus, RST should be applied in tandem with frameworks such as political ecology, environmental justice, and biocultural conservation to address the layered complexities of birdwatching tourism in the Anthropocene.

In conclusion, while Recreation Specialization Theory remains a valuable construct for explaining variability among avitourism participants, its assumptions must be carefully interrogated. Specialization does not always correlate with ethical or low-impact behavior. Rather, birders' actions are shaped by complex interplays of identity, experience, norms, motivations, and external pressures. To maximize the potential of avitourism as a tool for sustainable development and conservation, managers and researchers must engage with this complexity, design more inclusive and reflexive educational strategies, and ground their interventions in both ecological science and human behavior theory.

4.1.2 Elaborations and Implications (Recreation Specialization)

The observation that specialization progression is often non-linear and multi-dimensional carries significant weight. While Bryan initially framed specialization as a developmental process, subsequent research, including studies on birders, has shown that advancement in behavior, skills, and commitment does not always occur in a synchronized, "lock-step" fashion. For instance, an individual might develop high levels of skill and knowledge but participate infrequently or travel less (perhaps due to constraints), while another might travel extensively and exhibit high behavioral commitment without necessarily achieving expert-level identification skills. The finding in the Italian birder study that behavior and skills/knowledge/commitment (SKC) were equally related to the overall specialization construct, contrary to earlier suggestions of SKC's dominance, further underscores this variability. This suggests that individual specialization trajectories are diverse and influenced by a range of factors beyond mere time spent in the activity, potentially including personal motivations, available opportunities, social influences, and life circumstances. Consequently, management and marketing strategies for avitourism that rely solely on simple proxies like years of experience or frequency of participation risk mischaracterizing birders. A more nuanced approach is required, recognizing different *profiles* of specialization (e.g., the highly skilled local expert vs. the widely traveled enthusiast) to effectively tailor offerings, such as advanced identification workshops versus accessible guided tours for broader audiences.

Furthermore, while a correlation exists between higher specialization and increased travel expenditure and distance, this does not automatically translate into a preference for all aspects of a tourism package, particularly ancillary services. Research examining tour package preferences among nature-based tourists, including birders in Norway, indicates that more specialized individuals tend to prioritize attributes directly related to the core activity, such as high birding quality, species diversity, access to specific infrastructure like hides, and the expertise of guides. Some studies even report that highly specialized birders may place *less* importance on non-birding aspects, such as general sightseeing, cultural attractions, or high-end accommodation and food services, compared to less specialized participants. This implies that the increased spending associated with specialists is often directed towards enhancing the quality and success of the primary birding experience itself, rather than general travel comforts. Therefore, avitourism providers aiming to attract and satisfy the specialist segment should prioritize investments in ensuring access to prime birding locations, providing highly knowledgeable guides, offering accurate and up-to-date species information, and facilitating high-quality observation opportunities. Assuming that specialists universally desire luxury amenities or bundled non-birding activities may be misguided; niche packages intensely focused on the ornithological experience might hold greater appeal for this dedicated segment.

4.1.2.1 Key Points of Recreation Specialization Theory (RST)

- ✓ **Continuum of Participation**
  - RST conceptualizes recreationists as existing along a **continuum** from **generalist (casual)** to **specialist (committed)** users.
  - This progression involves increasing **experience, skill level, knowledge, and psychological investment** in the activity.
- ✓ **Multidimensional Construct**
  - Specialization is not a one-dimensional scale; it includes several interconnected dimensions such as:
    - **Behavioral** (frequency and types of participation)
    - **Cognitive/Skill-based** (level of knowledge and technical proficiency)
    - **Affective** (emotional attachment and centrality to lifestyle)
    - **Economic** (financial investment in gear, travel, etc.)
- ✓ **Shifting Motivations**
  - As individuals specialize, their **motivations** shift:
    - Casual birders: often motivated by socializing, general nature appreciation, or relaxation.
    - Specialized birders: more driven by **achievement goals** (e.g., life-lists, rare species), mastery, and **deep conservation interest**.
- ✓ **Site and Equipment Preferences**
  - More specialized recreationists prefer **remote, ecologically rich**, and **technically demanding** sites.
  - Specialists also tend to use **more sophisticated gear** (e.g., high-end optics, GPS, field apps).
- ✓ **Conservation Attitudes – Complex and Contradictory**

- Specialization is **often associated with higher concern for conservation**, but not always with **lower impact behavior**.
- Some studies suggest **advanced birders engage in more potentially disruptive behaviors** (e.g., playback use, off-trail walking), often justified by perceived observation value.

✓ **Social World & Identity**
- Specialization often corresponds with **social identity and subcultural affiliation** (e.g., life-listers, twitchers, ethical birders).
- These communities develop their own **codes of ethics, norms, and expectations**.

✓ **Management Implications**
- RST helps managers:
  - **Segment birders** by specialization level.
  - Tailor **education, infrastructure, and regulation** accordingly.
  - Predict behavior and **design interventions** that reduce environmental impacts.

✓ **Evolving Framework**
- Originally linear, RST has been **reconceptualized as multidimensional and dynamic**, better capturing the complexity of motivations and behaviors in modern recreation.
- Newer models (e.g., Lee & Scott, 2004) use **three-dimensional frameworks**: behavior, skill, and commitment.

✓ **Utility in Avitourism Research**
- RST is widely applied in birdwatching studies to analyze:
  - Tourist motivations
  - Economic expenditures
  - Conservation engagement
  - Behavioral impacts on ecosystems

✓ **Cautions and Critiques**
- Not all specialized users behave ethically.
- Personal ethics, situational variables, and social norms can **override specialization-based predictions**.
- Should be used **alongside other theories** (e.g., environmental ethics, social worlds, conservation psychology) for a more holistic analysis.

Part II – Motivational Theories

4.2. Motivational Theories in Birdwatching Tourism and Wildlife Travel

Understanding the motivations behind tourism behavior remains one of the foundational pillars in tourism studies. In the specific context of avitourism — commonly referred to as birdwatching tourism — grasping why individuals choose to engage with birds in natural settings reveals a great deal not only about psychological and behavioral mechanisms but also about larger socio-cultural and ecological processes. Avitourism straddles multiple motivational domains, ranging from nature-based escapism to identity-seeking, from sensory pleasure to conservation ethics. This section critically examines the major theoretical constructions that have shaped our understanding of tourist motivations, including need-based models, behavioral inversions, reward-based frameworks, and postmodern identity-driven approaches. These theories are analyzed with direct application to birdwatching and broader wildlife tourism phenomena.

4.2.1. Classic Motivation Models and their Application in Avitourism: Travel Career Ladder (TCL), 'Push-Pull' Theory, and 'Self-Determination Theory'.

One of the earliest and most influential frameworks in understanding human behavior in general, and tourism behavior in particular, is Maslow's (1954) hierarchy of needs. This theory posits that individuals are driven by a series of hierarchically structured needs—from basic physiological demands (e.g., food, rest) to higher-level aspirations for self-actualization and self-esteem. Pearce (1993) adopted Maslow's framework into what is known as the *Travel Career Ladder (TCL)*, which proposes that tourists progress through stages of motivation as their experience in travel deepens. Applied to avitourism, this model allows us to categorize birdwatchers from casual observers seeking relaxation and social contact (lower rungs) to deeply committed conservationists and life-listers engaged in self-fulfilling, goal-oriented, or even spiritual pursuits (higher rungs). Thus, at the base are fundamental physiological needs such as rest and relaxation (e.g., short nature trips and spa retreats), which then ascend through stages of safety, social bonding, and self-esteem, culminating in self-actualization. Birdwatching tourists may enter this ladder at different stages depending on their travel experience, psychological orientation, and life circumstances. For example:

- A beginner might seek **relaxation** in a birding walk at a local park.
- An intermediate traveler could seek **social bonding** at bird festivals or ecotours.
- A highly experienced birder may pursue a **personal quest** through hard-adventure birding in remote biomes.

For instance, a beginner birder may be motivated by stress relief, familial bonding, or light outdoor recreation—needs situated in the lower tiers of the TCL model. Conversely, specialized birders (sometimes referred to as "hard-core birders" or "twitchers") may travel internationally to remote locations, often in challenging environments, to locate rare or endemic species. Their motivations are layered: achievement (e.g., "ticking off" life-list species), environmental engagement, self-expression, and participation in a global subculture of birdwatchers.

Compton (1979) and Beard and Ragheb (1983) advanced early tourist motivation research by emphasizing multidimensional motives: intellectual enrichment, social bonding, skill acquisition, and stress avoidance. In the case of birdwatchers, these motivations manifest in knowledge-seeking (e.g., learning avian ecology), joining birding clubs or festivals (social), developing fieldcraft and photography skills (competency), and nature immersion for psychological well-being (stimulus avoidance). These motives often co-exist and interact, leading to hybrid motivational profiles.

4.2.2 Push-Pull Dynamics and the Role of Intrinsic Rewards

Tourist motivation is often interpreted through the lens of "push-pull" theory, first conceptualized by Dann (1981) and further refined by Iso-Ahola (1982). It refers to the underlying psychological forces or drivers that influence an individual's decision to travel and engage in specific leisure activities. Understanding these drivers is crucial for the tourism industry. In this framework, push factors are internal psychological drivers—such as boredom, stress, or curiosity—that propel individuals to seek an escape from their everyday environments. Pull factors, by contrast, refer to the external attributes of a destination or activity that attract the individual, such as the promise of rare bird species, pristine landscapes, or ecologically rich areas. Iso-Ahola's model also introduced the idea of "intrinsic rewards," proposing that tourists are motivated both by a desire to escape and to attain psychological or social rewards. For avitourists, intrinsic rewards often involve aesthetic appreciation, intellectual stimulation, emotional connection with nature, and a sense of accomplishment in observing elusive species. These internalized outcomes play a critical role in shaping repeated birdwatching behaviors and destination loyalty.

The **Push-Pull Theory**, originally developed in migration studies and widely adopted in tourism research, proposes that the decision to travel arises from two interacting sets of factors. Push factors are internal, psychological needs and desires that compel an individual to travel away from their usual environment. That is, socio-psychological "push" motives typically include escape, rest-and-relaxation, prestige, health and fitness, adventure, and social interaction (Crompton, 1979, p. 416). Common examples include the need to escape routine or stress, the desire for relaxation and rest, seeking adventure or novelty, pursuing self-discovery or personal growth, enhancing social connections (visiting friends/family or meeting new people), or seeking prestige. Pull factors, conversely, are external attributes and characteristics of a destination that attract or pull a traveler towards it. These include factors like unique cultural or historical attractions, appealing natural environments (scenery, climate, wildlife), specific recreational opportunities, quality of facilities and infrastructure, accessibility, perceived safety, destination image, and special events or festivals. The theory suggests an interplay where push factors create the general desire to travel, while pull factors influence the specific choice of destination and activities.

In birdwatching tourism, push motivations may include a desire to disconnect from urban life, seek serenity, or fulfill long-standing nature-oriented aspirations, "*push factors explain the desire to go on vacation, whereas pull factors explain the choice of destination … Pull factors emerge from the perceived attractiveness of the destination*" (Prayag & Ryan, 2012, p. 343). Pull factors could be the presence of flagship avian species (e.g., Harpy Eagle in Brazil, Resplendent Quetzal in Costa Rica), globally significant birding sites (e.g., the Pantanal, Danube Delta, or Great Rann of Kutch), or the reputational allure of birding hotspots promoted through social media and birding networks,

4.2.3 Inversions in Tourist Behavior and the Birdwatching Experience

Graburn's (1983) theory of "inversions" in tourist behavior is particularly pertinent to birdwatching. This theory suggests that tourism offers a space where individuals temporarily suspend or reverse their normal routines and behavioral norms—engaging in contrasting modes of consumption, dress, activity, and social interaction. Birdwatchers often invert their lifestyles by waking at dawn (or earlier), traversing wetlands and forests, wearing specialized outdoor gear, and spending long hours in patient observation—behaviors that starkly contrast with their daily routines.

These behavioral inversions extend to travel patterns as well. Urban dwellers seek remote biospheres; high-speed modern life is exchanged for slow, contemplative immersion in nature. In extreme cases, birders organize life around seasonal migrations of birds, mirroring ecological rhythms. Such inversions are not merely symbolic—they reflect a deeper alignment with nature-based values and conservation ideals, though they can sometimes also contribute to unintended ecological pressures, as discussed later in connection with the ethics of avitourism.

4.2.4. Contemporary Perspectives: Identity, Social Positioning, and Tourism as Lifestyle

While traditional motivation theories have offered foundational insights, scholars such as Franklin and Crang (2001), and Crouch (1999), have challenged these paradigms by shifting the lens toward the cultural embeddedness of tourism in everyday life. According to these perspectives, tourism — including birdwatching — is no longer merely a break from normalcy, but a form of self-actualization, identity construction, and social distinction. In this sense, birdwatching becomes both leisure practice and lifestyle signifier. Birders often curate their experiences through digital storytelling, checklist apps, and social media platforms such as eBird and Instagram, making their practices visible, networked, and symbolically charged.

This lens reveals that birdwatching is as much about individual and collective identity as it is about wildlife engagement. In this way, avitourism aligns with the broader trend of experiential, personalized, and transformative tourism, wherein motivations are layered, fluid, and dynamic. Visitors engage with birds not only to "see nature," but to enact environmental citizenship, build community, express expertise, or perform personal narratives of discovery.

4.2.5 Implications for Birdwatching Tourism Planning and Management

The multidimensional nature of tourist motivations has clear implications for the planning and management of birdwatching and wildlife tourism. Recognizing the variability of motivations—from casual interest to obsessive pursuit—suggests that different types of facilities, interpretive services, and conservation messaging are needed to meet visitor expectations without overburdening ecosystems. For example, casual birders may benefit most from accessible, interpretive, and low-impact environments such as boardwalks in urban parks or guided excursions near eco-lodges. In contrast, specialized birders may seek longer, more physically demanding trips to remote biomes where rare species reside—requiring more stringent environmental safeguards and ethical guidelines.

Moreover, understanding motivation profiles helps tailor educational campaigns to reduce harmful behaviors such as off-trail excursions, excessive use of playback, or over-crowding of sensitive habitats. As noted by studies in recreation specialization and behavioral psychology, conservation awareness does not always correlate with conservation behavior. Therefore, motivational insight can serve as a foundation for targeted communication strategies that align ecological goals with individual values and rewards.

4.2.5.1. Push and Pull Factors in Birdwatching Tourism: A Dual-Axis Framework

As discussed in the former sections, this dual-axis model illustrates the internal motivations (push factors) and external attractions (pull factors) that guide tourists' decisions. Push factors include the desire to escape routine, relieve stress, or connect with nature. Pull factors are features of the destination or activity itself, such as the chance to see rare species, attend birding events, or participate in community-led ecotourism experiences. Birdwatching tourism is driven by a dynamic interplay between travelers' internal motivations (*push factors*) and destination-specific attractions (*pull factors*). This model highlights how psychological, social, and environmental forces shape decisions, from the initial desire to travel to the selection of birding as a preferred activity.

Birdwatching tourism—also known as avitourism—is driven by a complex web of psychological motivations and environmental attractions. At the core of this dynamic is the interaction between **push factors**, which stem from the internal motivations of tourists, and **pull factors**, which refer to the external characteristics of birdwatching destinations that appeal to those motivations. Understanding this duality is critical for tourism planners, conservationists, and stakeholders involved in the design and promotion of avitourism experiences.

Push factors represent the personal desires, needs, or aspirations that lead an individual to seek out birdwatching travel experiences. These motivations often originate from a desire for **escapism**, such as a break from urban environments, work obligations, or technological overload. In this sense, birdwatching offers a portal into restorative, tranquil landscapes. Additionally, birdwatching contributes to **well-being**, offering not only mental rejuvenation and stress relief but also physical benefits through hiking, exploration, and time spent outdoors. For some, avitourism is a path to **self-fulfillment**, whether through achieving personal goals like adding species to a life list, seeking rare sightings, or engaging in a spiritual or emotional connection with avian wildlife. Others are drawn to birdwatching as a form of **social bonding**, enjoying shared experiences within a community of like-minded individuals, often participating in birding clubs, festivals, or organized tours.

On the other side of this equation, **pull factors** are the tangible and symbolic features of birdwatching destinations that align with the aforementioned motivations. These include the presence of **unique biodiversity**, such as rare, migratory, or endemic bird species—iconic examples include the resplendent quetzal in Costa Rica or the shoebill in Uganda. The availability of supporting **infrastructure**, such as observation towers, bird hides, professional guides, or large-scale birding festivals (e.g., the British Birdfair or Global Bird Fair), also enhances the destination's attractiveness. **Cultural linkages** further enrich the avitourism experience, particularly where community-based ecotourism offers immersive opportunities led by local or Indigenous guides, such as in the Amazon or African rainforests. Increasingly, destinations are also selected for their **conservation appeal**, with eco-conscious travelers prioritizing ecolodges, protected areas, or reserves that explicitly promote habitat preservation and sustainability.

The theoretical foundation underpinning this push-pull framework is grounded in several key concepts from tourism and recreation studies. One of the most relevant is the **Recreation Specialization Theory**, which posits that birdwatchers evolve along a continuum from casual participants to highly specialized "twitchers" or ornithological experts. This progression is marked by increasing skill, commitment, and selectivity—casual observers may enjoy general birding tours, whereas specialists may pursue rare sightings through remote expeditions. Such distinctions have important **management implications**, suggesting that destinations should provide tiered experiences based on the degree of specialization, for example, interpretive trails for novices versus rigorous excursions for expert birders.

Several **key takeaways** emerge from applying this framework to birdwatching tourism. First, avitourism markets are **not monolithic**. Segmenting birdwatchers by motivation—such as leisure seekers, wildlife photographers, scientific contributors, or competitive listers—can inform product development and marketing strategies. Second, the model underscores the **critical synergy between conservation and tourism**. Many pull factors—especially the presence of rare species — are inherently dependent on intact ecosystems and effective habitat protection. Thus, conservation narratives and messaging must be woven into the tourism experience to foster environmental stewardship. Third, the model offers valuable guidance for **strategic design**. For destinations, this includes emphasizing distinctive pull factors—akin to safari tourism's "Big Five," birding destinations might promote flagship species or biodiversity hotspots. For tour operators, invoking push factors in storytelling—such as "reconnect with nature," "rediscover peace," or "find purpose through wildlife"—can effectively resonate with tourists' internal motivations, particularly those from high-stress urban environments.

Ultimately, integrating a nuanced understanding of push and pull factors into the development and governance of birdwatching tourism can enhance visitor satisfaction, promote environmental sustainability, and deepen the social-ecological value of avitourism as a form of low-impact, high-engagement travel.

4.3. Self-Determination Theory (SDT)

The Self-Determination Theory (SDT) offers an alternative lens on human motivation, emphasizing not the specific *content* of what motivates people, but rather the *quality* of that motivation—particularly how self-directed (autonomous) or externally driven (controlled) it is. SDT describes motivation along a continuum that ranges from amotivation—a state of lacking any intention to act—to extrinsic motivation, where actions are performed to achieve outcomes separate from the activity, and ultimately to intrinsic motivation, where behavior is driven by the inherent enjoyment and satisfaction found in the activity itself. As highlighted by Ryan and Deci (2000), "*SDT differentiates types of motivation according to the reasons or goals that give rise to an action. The most basic distinction is between intrinsic motivation … and extrinsic motivation, which refers to doing something because it leads to a separable outcome*" (p.69). Within the domain of extrinsic motivation, SDT further distinguishes types based on how much the motivation has been internalized:

- External regulation refers to actions taken solely in response to external demands or incentives, such as rewards or punishments.
- Introjected regulation involves internal pressures, such as guilt, shame, or the desire to boost self-esteem.
- Identified regulation occurs when a person consciously values the behavior and its outcomes, even if the activity itself is not enjoyable.
- Integrated regulation is the most self-determined form of extrinsic motivation, where the behavior is fully aligned with one's personal values and sense of self.

At the heart of SDT is the belief that all humans possess three fundamental psychological needs: autonomy (a sense of volition and agency), competence (a feeling of effectiveness and mastery), and relatedness (a sense of connection and belonging with others). According to SDT, "*the needs for competence, autonomy, and relatedness are essential for facilitating optimal functioning of the natural propensities for growth and integration …*" (Ryan and Deci, 2000, p.68), when social and physical environments nurture these needs, individuals are more likely to experience autonomous forms of motivation (intrinsic, integrated, or identified), resulting in greater well-being, creativity, sustained engagement, and performance. In contrast, environments that obstruct these needs tend to produce controlled motivation or even amotivation, often leading to diminished outcomes and psychological strain.

4.3.1. General Recapitulation on Motivational Theories

4.3.1.1 Push Factors: Internal Motivations

These arise from the traveler's personal needs or aspirations, including:

- **Escapism**: Breaking from routine or urban environments.
- **Well-being**: Stress relief, mental rejuvenation, or physical activity in nature.
- **Self-fulfillment**: Mastery (e.g., life-list goals) or spiritual connection to wildlife.
- **Social bonding**: Shared experiences with like-minded communities (e.g., birding clubs).

4.3.1.2. Pull Factors: Destination Attractions

External features that make birdwatching destinations appealing:

- **Unique biodiversity**: Rare/endemic species (e.g., resplendent quetzal in Costa Rica).
- **Infrastructure**: Guided tours, hides, or birding festivals (e.g., British Birdfair).
- **Cultural linkages**: Community-based ecotourism (e.g., local guides in the Amazon).
- **Conservation appeal**: Destinations promoting sustainability (e.g., ecolodges in Rwanda).

4.3.1.3. Theoretical Underpinnings

1. **Recreation Specialization Theory**:
   - Explains how birdwatchers progress from casual observers to specialized "twitchers" (e.g., prioritizing rare species).
   - *Management implication*: Tiered experiences (e.g., beginner trails vs. expert-led expeditions).
2. **Travel Career Ladder (TCL)**:
   - Motivations evolve with experience (e.g., novices seek novelty; experts pursue achievement or contribution to science).
   - *Example*: eBird users may transition from recreational listing to citizen science.

4.3.1.4. Key Takeaways

1. **Non-Monolithic Market**:
   - Segment birdwatchers by motivation (e.g., leisure, photography, scientific interest) to tailor offerings.
2. **Conservation Synergy**:
   - Pull factors (e.g., rare species) depend on habitat protection—align tourism with conservation messaging.
3. **Strategic Design**:
   - **For destinations**: Highlight unique pull factors (e.g., "Big Five" birds analogous to safari tourism).
   - **For operators**: Use push factors to craft narratives (e.g., "Reconnect with nature" for stressed urbanites).

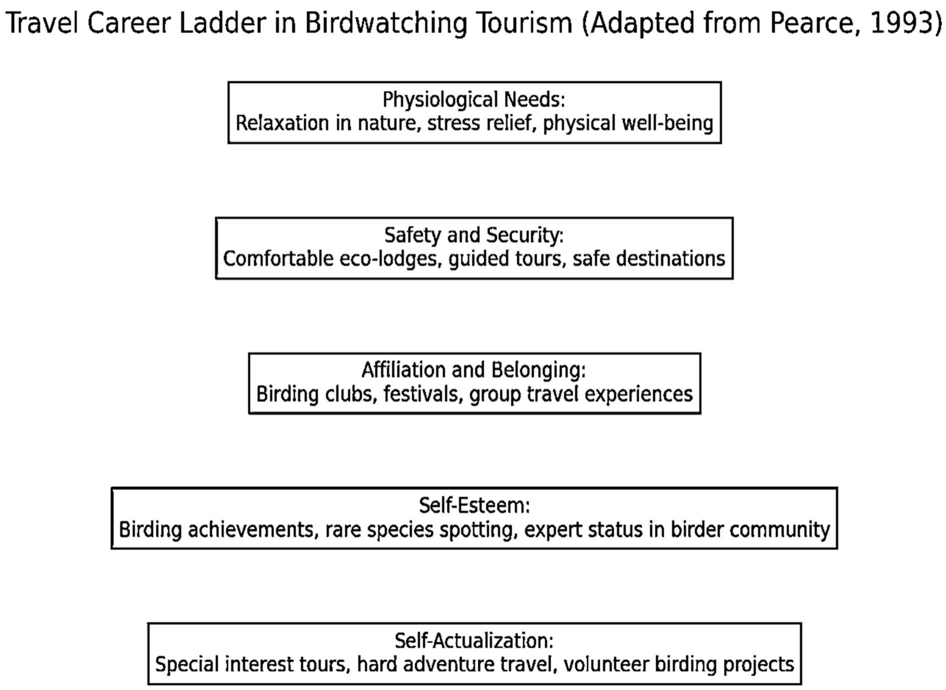
4.4. Management Implications

The following Table outlines key management implications derived from the push-pull framework in birdwatching tourism. By aligning strategic actions with visitor motivations and destination attributes, stakeholders can enhance both the quality of the avitourism experience and the sustainability of the ecosystems involved. These strategies serve as practical tools for educators, community leaders, conservation planners, and tourism operators seeking to balance growth with ethical, place-based management.

Table. 4.0 - key management implications derived from the push-pull framework in birdwatching tourism

Aspect	Actionable Strategy
Education	Workshops linking bird ID skills to conservation (leveraging achievement motivations).
Community	Train locals as guides to enhance authenticity (social pull factor).
Sustainability	Limit group sizes in sensitive areas (balance access with preservation).
Marketing	Target ads by segment: e.g., "relaxation" for casual birders vs. "rarities" for experts.

A visual conceptual model illustrating the **Travel Career Ladder** in the context of **Birdwatching Tourism**, adapted from Pearce's (1993) model and inspired by Maslow's hierarchy of needs is presented in order to help understanding pertinent key conceptual aspects. Each ascending step reflects increasingly complex motivations, from basic physiological relaxation to self-actualization through specialized and meaningful avitourism experiences.



4.5. Key Points for Motivational Theories in Avitourism:

1. **Push and Pull Factors**:
    - **Push**: Internal drivers like escape, rest, curiosity, or social bonding.
    - **Pull**: External attractions such as rare bird species, biodiversity hotspots, eco-lodges, and festivals.
2. **Maslow's Influence**:
    - Motivations range from basic (relaxation) to complex (self-fulfillment).
    - Birdwatching aligns across multiple levels—physical well-being, achievement, identity, and conservation values.
3. **Iso-Ahola's Model**:
    - Combines the need to escape routine with the search for personal or social rewards in nature-based experiences.
4. **Graburn's Inversion Concept**:
    - Tourism as a form of "behavioral inversion" from everyday norms—birders seek novelty, flexibility, and immersion in natural environments.
5. **Contemporary Views**:
    - Motivation is also tied to identity, social positioning, and lifestyle choices—particularly relevant to hard-core and highly engaged birders.
6. **Avitourism Implications**:
    - Destinations must cater to multiple motivation layers—casual birders need accessibility, while expert birders demand rarity, challenge, and immersive conservation roles.

4.6. Duffus and Dearden's Wildlife Tourism Theory: Critical Applications to Birdwatching and Avitourism

Duffus and Dearden's (1990) framework for wildlife tourism remains a cornerstone in understanding human-wildlife interactions within the broader context of recreational activities. Their foundational concept of **Non-Consumptive Wildlife-Oriented Recreation (NCWOR)** delineated a pivotal conceptual boundary between consumptive and non-consumptive forms of wildlife use, "*non-consumptive wildlife-oriented recreation is human engagement with wildlife in which the focal organism is not purposefully removed or permanently affected by the activity*" (Duffus & Dearden, 1990, p. 215). While the former includes hunting and fishing, the latter—where birdwatching is prominently situated—comprises activities centered on observing and experiencing wildlife without directly extracting or harming it.

The authors defined NCWOR as "a human recreational engagement with wildlife that does not involve deliberately removing or significantly altering the animal." In this framing, birdwatching, cetacean tourism, and wildlife photography are paradigmatic examples. Duffus and Dearden further emphasized the **continuum of interaction** between humans and wildlife, ranging from indirect and passive observation (e.g., distant birdwatching using binoculars) to more intrusive encounters (e.g., playback calls or approaching nesting sites). This continuum is critical when applying the framework to avitourism, as it allows us to assess the **ethical implications, disturbance thresholds, and management needs** of different birdwatching practices.

4.6.1. A Systems Approach to Wildlife Tourism

Duffus and Dearden also advanced a **systems-oriented model**, recognizing that wildlife tourism is embedded within a complex web of ecological, socio-economic, and political factors. Their framework acknowledges three key interrelated elements:

- ✓ **The Resource Base** – wildlife populations, habitat integrity, biodiversity.
- ✓ **The Users** – tourists, birders, photographers, and other recreationists.
- ✓ **The Management Context** – policies, institutions, regulations, conservation agencies.

This tripartite model remains extremely relevant in avitourism today, particularly in biodiverse but sensitive areas like the Amazon, Pantanal, or Roraima's Viruá National Park. It also aligns well with **political ecology approaches**, which frame tourism within power relations and land use dynamics (Neves & Igoe, 2021).

4.6.2. Critiques and Contributions in the Context of Birdwatching

Although Duffus and Dearden (1990) were among the first to theorize non-consumptive wildlife tourism systematically, later research has complicated some of their assumptions, especially regarding the **minimal impact** of non-consumptive activities. Numerous empirical studies (Boyle & Samson, 1985; Steven, Pickering, & Castley, 2011; Newsome, Dowling & Moore, 2005) demonstrate that even passive birdwatching can generate substantial ecological disturbance — especially through habitat trampling, noise, proximity to nests, and the use of playback recordings. Even benign activities such as wildlife viewing can alter avian behaviour and physiology; the cumulative effect of many visitors can therefore be significant (Steven et al., 2011, pp. 2287-2290).

The **"non-consumptive" label has thus been increasingly critiqued** for oversimplifying visitor impact. As Wilkes (1977) and more recently Randler et al. (2023) observed, visual, auditory, and spatial forms of human presence can produce stress responses in birds that are comparable in effect to direct extraction. This insight is particularly relevant in avitourism where **rare or elusive species** (e.g., Harpy Eagle, Crimson Topaz, or Guianan Cock-of-the-rock) may be disproportionately targeted, potentially shifting passive tourism into ethically gray zones.

4.6.3. Avitourism in the Duffus & Dearden Framework: A Contemporary Application

In today's context, birdwatching tourism sits at a unique intersection between recreation and conservation. Applying Duffus and Dearden's framework, we can view avitourism as a **non-consumptive yet high-stakes engagement** with wildlife. While it does not deplete species numerically, its **spatial intensity and behavioral consequences** can still exert pressure on avian populations. For instance:

- **Push-Pull Dynamics** (as per Iso-Ahola, 1982) influence birder travel behavior, but Duffus and Dearden's model reminds us that every pull factor (e.g., rare birds, pristine habitat) corresponds to an ecological cost if not managed properly.
- Their theory supports the development of **visitor management strategies**, such as buffer zones, controlled access points, limits on group sizes, and education campaigns that emphasize ethical birding (see ABA, 2024).

- In destinations like Roraima's Viruá National Park, the model can guide policy decisions about **infrastructure investment, Indigenous guide training, and biodiversity monitoring**, recognizing that growing interest in avitourism must be balanced with the fragile ecosystems that sustain it.

4.6.4. Integrating Duffus and Dearden with Contemporary Perspectives

Recent refinements to Duffus and Dearden's framework include:

- **Cultural Ecosystem Services** theory, which highlights how people derive non-material benefits from ecosystems through recreation, identity, and aesthetic appreciation (MEA, 2005).
- **Political ecology of tourism**, which critiques the commodification of wildlife and reveals the power dynamics behind avitourism development in Indigenous or rural areas.
- **Behavioral ecology** studies on human disturbance and species sensitivity thresholds (Klein et al., 1995; Randler et al., 2023), which provide evidence-based guidelines for responsible tourism design.

Together, these complementary frameworks affirm that avitourism must be situated in a **multi-scalar and interdisciplinary model** that bridges ecological science, tourism management, behavioral psychology, and conservation ethics.

4.6.5. Key Points for Recapitulation

- **Duffus and Dearden's model** remains foundational in conceptualizing non-consumptive wildlife tourism, especially in delineating impacts and management responsibilities.
- Birdwatching tourism fits within the **non-consumptive free-ranging quadrant** but still produces measurable impacts requiring mitigation.
- The theory's **systems model**—resource, user, and manager—remains a useful tool for designing inclusive, ecologically responsible avitourism strategies.
- New critiques highlight that **non-consumptive does not mean non-impactful**, especially in regions with fragile avifauna.
- Application to birdwatching should focus on **ethics, disturbance thresholds, and equitable governance**, especially in biodiverse and marginalized regions.

Part III – Political Ecology

4.7. Political Ecology of Birdwatching Tourism

4.7.1. A Critical and Interdisciplinary Framework for Tourism and Environmental Analysis

Political ecology is increasingly recognized as one of the most dynamic and theoretically generative frameworks for analyzing the intersections between environmental change, social justice, and the political economy. Emerging from critiques of both apolitical cultural ecology and the perceived ecological determinism of early environmental anthropology, political ecology has developed into an interdisciplinary approach that interrogates the entanglements between ecological processes and the uneven distribution of power, resources, and knowledge in society (Zimmerer, 2006; Peet & Watts, 2004; Robbins, 2012). In the context of tourism studies—especially within ecotourism, nature-based tourism, and community-based tourism—political ecology provides a valuable framework for critically analyzing how tourism is interwoven with larger socio-political and ecological structures marked by inequality, contestation, and change, as "*political-ecology framework insists that environmental conditions and change cannot be understood in isolation from the political and economic institutions in which they are embedded*" (Bryant & Bailey, 1997, pp. 27-28).

Rather than constituting a single theory or methodology, political ecology is better understood as a constellation of critical inquiries and conceptual commitments that foreground the power-laden and historically situated nature of human–environment relationships. It offers a flexible and evolving analytical lens through which scholars can scrutinize the dialectical interactions between people, places, policies, and ecologies across multiple scales (Blaikie & Brookfield, 1987; Bryant & Bailey, 1997),"*Political ecology combines the concerns of ecology and a broadly defined political economy, encompassing the constantly shifting dialectic between society and land-based resources* …" (Blaikie & Brookfield, 1987, p. 17). Importantly, as Robbins (2012) emphasizes, "one need not be a political ecologist to mobilize the resources, or learn from the insights, of political ecology" (p. viii). In this sense, political ecology operates both as a community of practice and a mode of critique.

The work *Political Ecology of Tourism: Community, Power and the Environment*, edited by Mary Mostafanezhad, Roger Norum, Eric J. Shelton, and Anna Thompson-Carr (2016), has provided valuable conceptual and analytical contributions that directly informed the development of Chapter 2 on the theoretical framework. Its interdisciplinary orientation and critical engagement with tourism through the lens of political ecology offered a rich foundation for understanding tourism as a site of contested power relations, socio-environmental transformations, and community negotiations. By problematizing the taken-for-granted assumptions of tourism development—particularly those rooted in neoliberal sustainability discourses—the volume introduced a nuanced perspective that emphasizes structural inequalities, material conditions, and local agency. These insights were instrumental in shaping the critical positioning of the chapter, especially in articulating tourism not as an isolated economic sector, but as a relational and politicized process embedded within broader networks of governance, identity formation, and environmental change. The empirical case studies and theoretical reflections throughout the book helped ground the theoretical framework in both contemporary scholarly debates and situated realities, thereby enhancing the robustness, critical depth, and applicability of the conceptual foundation laid out in Chapter 2.

4.7.2. Political Ecology in Practice: A Community of Critical Engagement

What distinguishes political ecology is its insistence on praxis: that knowledge must be tied to action. This aligns with Robbins' assertion that political ecology is "something people do." In tourism research, this ethos calls for engaged scholarship, participatory methods, and a commitment to co-producing knowledge with affected communities. Whether examining the gendered implications of wildlife tourism, the politics of access in bird sanctuaries, or the neoliberal commodification of biodiversity, political ecology demands that researchers trace the roots of inequality and imagine new futures.

Political ecology is thus not merely a framework for critique but a call to reimagine the socio-natures of tourism through lenses of justice, equity, and plurality. As tourism continues to expand into remote ecosystems and marginalized territories—often under the banner of sustainability—political ecology provides a powerful analytical compass to navigate and reshape its trajectories.

4.7.3. The Political Ecology of Avitourism: Power, Place, and Conservation in Birdwatching Tourism

Birdwatching tourism, or avitourism, is a fast-growing subset of nature-based tourism that engages travelers in the observation, study, and enjoyment of birds in their natural habitats. While often framed as a low-impact and non-consumptive recreational activity, birdwatching is far from ecologically or politically neutral. Applying a political ecology lens to avitourism reveals the intricate entanglements between conservation, access, identity, political economy, and environmental justice, especially in biodiversity-rich but economically marginalized regions.

Political ecology's central premise—examining ecological change through the lens of political-economic structures and social inequalities—provides a powerful analytical framework for understanding avitourism. It interrogates who benefits from bird tourism, who bears its burdens, and how power is exercised over avian landscapes, species, and human communities.

As Robbins (2012) suggests, political ecology tracks "winners and losers" and attends to the "non-incidental, persistent and repetitive" structures that create these dynamics. In avitourism, winners might include national parks, conservation NGOs, and elite tour operators, while the losers may be Indigenous or rural communities displaced by conservation zones or excluded from decision-making processes around land use. These dynamics are especially visible in transboundary avian flyways and Important Bird and Biodiversity Areas (IBAs), where conservation and tourism initiatives often intersect with histories of land dispossession, colonial ecologies, and inequitable governance regimes.

4.7.4. Historically Situated Birdscapes

Birdwatching tourism, like many forms of nature-based tourism, is deeply embedded in histories of colonial exploration, scientific collection, and the Western aesthetic of pristine wilderness. Avitourism often privileges landscapes curated to fit birders' expectations of "naturalness," marginalizing alternative land uses such as shifting agriculture, hunting, or cultural practices involving birds (Carrington, 2014). This is evident in places like the Amazon, African Rift Valley, and Southeast Asia, where avian hotspots are simultaneously zones of ecological richness and social contestation.

Historical legacies of imperial conservation (e.g., fortress conservation models in Africa and Asia) continue to shape how bird habitats are protected and accessed. Such legacies influence tourism zoning, access rights, and local narratives of stewardship. In the context of avitourism, the emphasis on protecting "undisturbed" areas for birding may perpetuate exclusionary practices that ignore the socio-ecological history of place and the rights of resident populations.

4.7.5. Place-Based Perspectives and Community Ecologies

Political ecology's emphasis on place-based analysis aligns with the ethnographic and participatory turn in sustainable avitourism research. Avitourism is often celebrated for its potential to generate local income and conservation awareness, especially in community-based tourism (CBT) models. However, power asymmetries between tour operators, global NGOs, birders, and host communities often complicate these narratives.

Local knowledge systems—particularly Indigenous ornithologies—are frequently undervalued or co-opted without adequate recognition or compensation. Indigenous Ornithologies and Political Ecology of Avitourism can be outlined as Indigenous knowledge systems, including detailed ornithological classifications, offer critical but often undervalued contributions to avitourism and biodiversity conservation. For instance, among the Kaxinawá (Huni Kuin) people of the Brazilian Amazon, birds are classified not merely by morphological features but by complex behavioral, ecological, and spiritual relationships (Kaxinawá narratives distinguish between "guardian birds" of specific forest types and birds linked to ancestral mythologies) (Cunha, 1994; Viegas, 2016). Their emic classifications recognize ecological roles, such as seed dispersers and forest sentinels, long before such ecosystem services were scientifically categorized. Similarly, the Wapichana people in Roraima, Brazil, maintain an intricate taxonomy of local avifauna, integrating not only physical characteristics but also behavioral patterns, seasonal cycles, and cosmological meanings (ISA, 2022). Birds such as the *Aturá* (Great Tinamou, *Tinamus major*) are understood within Wapichana cosmology as mediators between terrestrial and spiritual realms, influencing hunting practices, ritual calendars, and land-use decisions. These Indigenous ornithologies, however, are rarely incorporated into mainstream birdwatching tourism narratives, which tend to prioritize Western scientific taxonomies and overlook relational, place-based epistemologies. A political ecology of avitourism thus calls for recognizing, valuing, and co-producing tourism experiences that honor Indigenous knowledge frameworks, promoting epistemic justice alongside biodiversity conservation.

Feminist political ecology has further illuminated how gender shapes not only access to avitourism benefits but also the recognition of ecological knowledge and authority. In many rural and Indigenous regions, guiding, bird identification, and other visible tourism-related roles in avitourism are disproportionately held by men, while women's contributions—often centered on conservation activities, environmental education, local hospitality, artisanal production, and food provisioning—are systematically undervalued or rendered invisible within formal tourism economies (Rocheleau, Thomas-Slayter, & Wangari, 1996; Cole & Ferguson, 2015). This invisibility reinforces existing gender hierarchies and economic disparities, with women frequently relegated to peripheral or informal positions in ecotourism ventures, despite their critical roles in sustaining cultural landscapes and conservation initiatives. Moreover, avian knowledge itself becomes commodified through tourism practices that prioritize the ability to name, locate, or photograph elusive or endangered species—forms of symbolic capital that tend to privilege internationally credentialed guides, scientific expertise, or elite birdwatchers (Büscher & Fletcher, 2020).

In many cases, local and Indigenous women's relational and place-based knowledge of bird behaviors, seasonal patterns, or habitat stewardship practices is marginalized because it does not easily conform to Western scientific or market-driven tourism standards (Nightingale, 2006; Elmhirst, 2011). This dynamic perpetuates epistemic injustice, as certain knowledges and ways of relating to birds and environments are elevated while others are devalued or erased. A feminist political ecology approach thus demands a more inclusive rethinking of avitourism development: one that not only recognizes but actively supports gender-equitable participation, visibility, and benefit-sharing across the full spectrum of conservation and tourism activities. It also calls for questioning how tourism economies commodify both biodiversity and cultural labor, and how alternative models—

such as women-led birding cooperatives or community-based ornithological education programs—could redistribute power more equitably within avitourism networks.

4.7.6. Multi-Scalar Entanglements: From Birders to Biodiversity Governance

Birdwatching tourism is inherently multi-scalar. Migratory birds traverse continents, linking protected areas, eco-lodges, and Indigenous territories into transnational ecological and political networks. The governance of bird habitats is influenced by local decisions (e.g., how landowners manage wetlands or forests), national policies (e.g., land tenure reform, tourism incentives), and global institutions (e.g., BirdLife International, Ramsar Convention, eBird databases).

A political ecology of avitourism must therefore analyze how global conservation frameworks intersect with local ecologies and social systems. Who defines what constitutes a "high-value" birding site? Who benefits from avitourism branding, such as "top 10 birding hotspots"? How are Indigenous territories incorporated—or excluded—from avian tourism maps? These questions echo Duffy's (2002) critique of ecotourism as a political economy of visibility and invisibility, where capitalist logics shape which landscapes and species are made available to tourists.

Additionally, climate change adds another scalar layer: shifts in avian migration due to habitat loss or warming temperatures may reconfigure the global geography of birdwatching, concentrating tourism pressure in certain climate refugia while rendering others obsolete.

4.7.7. The Five Narratives of Political Ecology in Avitourism

Robbins (2012) identifies five key narratives of political ecology that are directly applicable to birdwatching tourism:

1. **Degradation and Marginalization**: Bird habitats are often protected through strategies that restrict traditional land uses, potentially marginalizing local livelihoods (e.g., bans on swidden farming or controlled burns that maintain certain avian habitats).
2. **Conservation and Control**: Protected areas created for birds may double as mechanisms of social control—surveilling, regulating, or excluding local populations under the guise of ecological preservation.
3. **Environmental Conflict and Exclusion**: Access to lucrative birding trails, guideships, or tourism revenue can generate conflicts over land tenure, job distribution, or knowledge ownership.
4. **Environmental Subjects and Identity**: Avitourism may reshape how local people view themselves—as stewards, hosts, or "outsiders" to conservation narratives imposed by external actors.
5. **Political Actors and Governance**: NGOs, certification schemes, state agencies, and birding associations (e.g., ABA, RSPB) shape who has the authority to manage avian tourism landscapes and how policies are enforced.

4.7.8. From Critique to Possibility: Political Ecology as Praxis

Political ecology, while often critical, is also generative. It opens the possibility for rethinking avitourism as a more just, democratic, and community-centered activity. It encourages researchers and practitioners to go beyond impact assessments and ask: How can bird tourism be restructured to prioritize equity, biodiversity, and cultural survival? How can alternative models—such as Indigenous-led birding networks, locally-owned eBird platforms, or feminist ornithological collaborations—create new pathways of engagement?

In this sense, political ecology offers not only a "hatchet" to expose contradictions and injustices in avitourism, but also a "seed" to plant more inclusive, pluralistic, and ecologically grounded futures.

4.7.9. Recapitulation: Key Political Ecology Dimensions in Avitourism

The practice of avitourism is deeply embedded within complex political, social, and ecological processes that are illuminated through a political ecology lens. Understanding birdwatching tourism not simply as a recreational or economic activity, but as a field of power relations, cultural constructions, and environmental governance reveals critical underlying dynamics.

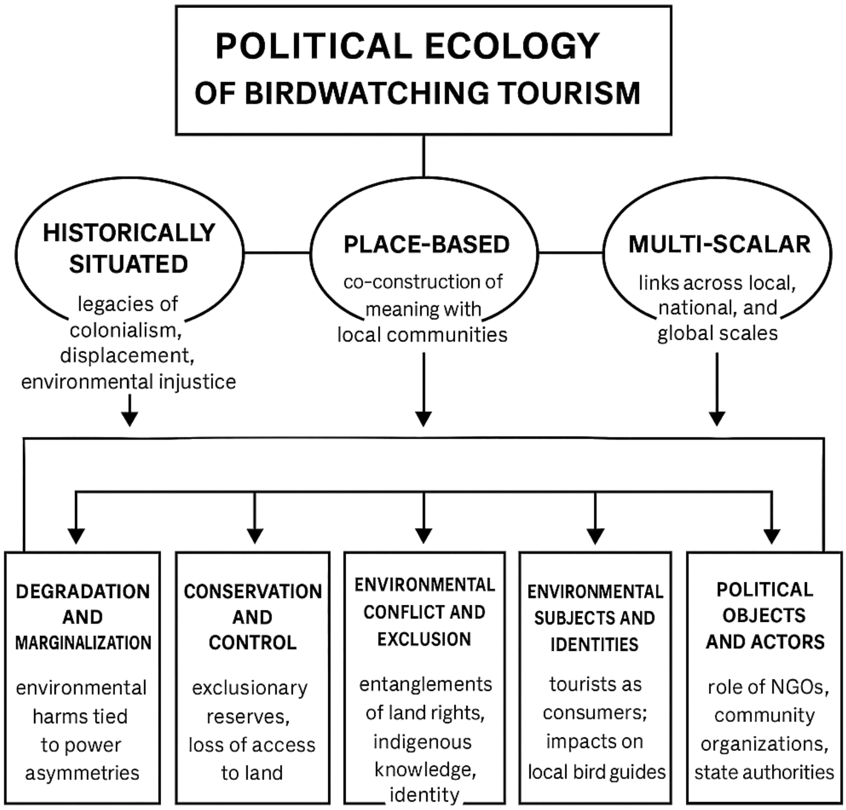
Historically, the colonial legacies that shaped the creation of protected areas and framed tourism imaginaries continue to influence contemporary avitourism landscapes. Place-based knowledges, particularly those of Indigenous and local communities, alongside gendered and culturally diverse experiences, form essential—yet often marginalized—components of avitourism's knowledge systems. A multi-scalar perspective highlights the interconnectedness between local bird guides and global conservation governance networks, while questions of power and access emerge starkly in examining who controls birding routes, revenue streams, and symbolic capital. Moreover, discourses of "pristine nature" often deployed in environmental governance serve to invisibilize alternative land uses and stakeholders, reshaping the socio-ecological fabric of destinations.

Avitourism also becomes a site for identity and subjectivity negotiations, affecting both visiting birders and host communities. Finally, issues of equity and justice surface prominently, as inclusive practices, fair benefit-sharing, and the pursuit of transformative, socially conscious tourism models remain ongoing challenges—and opportunities—within the field. This recapitulation synthesizes these critical dimensions, offering a deeper, more nuanced understanding of avitourism through the frameworks of political ecology (refer to Table 4.1 and diagram below for the key aspects on Political Ecology in the Avitourism context).

Table 4.1 – Key aspects of Political Ecology: Dimension and Avitourism

Dimension	Political Ecology Perspective in Avitourism
Historical Context	Colonial legacies in protected areas and tourism imaginaries
Place-Based Knowledge	Role of Indigenous/local knowledges, gendered experiences, and socio-cultural identities
Multi-Scalar Analysis	From local bird guides to global conservation governance networks
Power and Access	Who controls birding routes, revenue, and symbolic capital
Environmental Governance	How discourses of "pristine nature" exclude certain land uses or stakeholders

Dimension	Political Ecology Perspective in Avitourism
Identity and Subjectivity	Avian tourism as a site of identity negotiation for both birders and hosts
Equity and Justice	Inclusion, benefit-sharing, and the potential for transformative tourism



4.8 Key Scholarly Works related to Political Ecology Theoretical Spectrum

Table 4.2 below presents an integrative and thematically organized synthesis of key scholarly works that contribute directly or indirectly to the development of political ecology as applied to tourism, particularly nature-based forms such as birdwatching tourism (avitourism). Drawing from foundational texts in political ecology, environmental governance, ecological Marxism, neoliberal critiques, feminist political ecology, and tourism studies, the table categorizes each reference by its core thematic contribution and provides a brief yet substantive explanation of its relevance. This synthesis is critical for contextualizing avitourism within broader socio-political and ecological debates, as it reveals how power asymmetries, conservation politics, commodification of biodiversity, and issues of equity and access are embedded in tourism practices. From pioneering works like Blaikie and Brookfield's Land Degradation and Society to more recent critiques of neoliberal conservation by Fletcher, Duffy, and Goldman, the selected literature provides the conceptual tools necessary to interrogate the political-economic and ecological entanglements that shape birdwatching tourism. The descriptive entries not only trace epistemological and empirical connections but also illuminate how discourses of nature, sustainability, and identity are co-constructed and contested within the multi-scalar governance frameworks of ecotourism. As such, this reference matrix is indispensable for scholars, practitioners, and policymakers seeking a nuanced and critically engaged understanding of avitourism through the lens of political ecology.

Table 4.2 – Key Scholarly Works related to Political Ecology Theoretical Spectrum

Full Reference	Thematic Category	Descriptive Contribution to Political Ecology and Tourism
Adams, W. M. (2003)	Colonialism, Conservation, Political Ecology	Explores colonial constructions of nature and how they persist in modern ecotourism, crucial for decolonizing environmental narratives.
Albrecht, J. N. (2010)	Peripheral Tourism Development	Discusses strategic challenges in remote tourism destinations; highlights governance and planning asymmetries in resource-dependent areas.
Bäckstrand & Lövbrand (2006)	Ecological Modernization, Environmental Governance	Examines climate policy discourses and critiques green governmentality; relevant for understanding governance in sustainable tourism.
Benton, T. (1996)	Green Marxism	Provides ideological critique linking ecological degradation to capitalist systems; a foundational theoretical bridge to political ecology.
Blaikie & Brookfield (1987)	Foundational Political Ecology	Defines political ecology; influential in linking land degradation to political-economic structures; essential for tourism impacts on land.
Boykoff, M. T. (2008)	Media, Climate Politics	Analyzes how media frames climate change; informs how tourism industries shape public narratives around sustainability.
Boykoff & Goodman (2009)	Everyday Environmental Politics	Explores how climate change discourses operate in daily life; contextualizes tourists as actors within cultural-environmental systems.
Brenner & Theodore (2002)	Neoliberalism, Urban Political Ecology	Reveals how neoliberal urban planning influences social geography; applicable to city-based tourism dynamics and inequalities.
Brockington & Duffy (2010)	Conservation Capitalism	Dissects capitalism's role in shaping conservation regimes; vital for understanding privatized ecotourism models.
Brockington & Duffy (2011)	Neoliberal Conservation	Expands on previous work; connects biodiversity protection with political economy; useful in tourism conservation conflicts.
Brockington et al. (2008)	Protected Areas, Global Capital	Explores power relations in conservation, especially in tourism-intensive regions; core for political ecology of national parks.
Bruner, E. M. (2001)	Globalization, Authenticity	Explores cultural commodification in African tourism; useful for understanding identity politics and authenticity in ecotourism.
Bryant & Goodman (2006)	Political Ecology History	Reflects on Blaikie's contributions and methodology; foundational for scholars using political ecology in tourism contexts.
Bryant & Bailey (1997)	Third World Political Ecology	Framework for analyzing environmental inequality in developing nations; foundational in tourism-dependency critiques.

Full Reference	Thematic Category	Descriptive Contribution to Political Ecology and Tourism
Campbell, L. M. (2007)	Conservation Practice, Global Discourse	Examines how global discourses affect local conservation; relevant for ecotourism sites managed by NGOs.
Cabirol-Lascuráin, H. (1996)	Ecotourism Guidelines	Early guidelines on ecotourism in protected areas; informative for policy and sustainability studies in birdwatching tourism.
Clarke et al. (2008)	Organic Food Ethics	Explores consumption ethics; applicable to understanding ethical consumption in nature-based tourism.
Cole, S. (2007)	Water Equity, Tourism	Examines environmental justice in tourism destinations; foundational case for ecojustice concerns in tourism.
Cole & Browne (2015)	Social-Ecological Systems	Explores water inequity from systems theory; important for analyzing natural resource pressures from tourism.
Cole & Ferguson (2015)	Gendered Tourism Economies	Highlights gender disparities in water and tourism; aligns with feminist political ecology in avitourism.
Cole & Morgan (2010)	Tourism and Inequality	Broader discussion of inequality in tourism; bridges political ecology and development studies.
Foster, J. B. (1990)	Ecological Marxism	Connects planetary degradation with capitalism; highly influential for theoretical underpinnings of political ecology.
Douglas, J. A. (2014)	Political Ecology in Tourism	Advocates the explicit use of political ecology in tourism studies; establishes analytical bridge for birdwatching tourism.
Dressler, W. (2014)	Green Governmentality	Explores how state-based conservation impacts swidden farmers; applicable in forest ecotourism and Indigenous lands.
Duffy, R. (2002)	Ecotourism and Exploitation	Critiques ecotourism's failure to deliver justice; directly aligns with political ecology critiques in avitourism.
Duffy, R. (2003)	Global Networks, Conservation	Demonstrates how tourism is embedded in neoliberal conservation; essential for international bird tourism policy.
Duffy & Smith (2003)	Ethics in Tourism	Ethical analysis of tourism development; key for understanding avitourism impacts on Indigenous and rural communities.
Fletcher, R. (2010)	Neoliberal Environmentality	Conceptualizes conservation as governance; shows how tourists become instruments of control and surveillance.
Goldman, M. (2005)	Global Conservation Politics	Studies the World Bank's role in shaping environmental justice; relevant for large-scale bird tourism infrastructure.
Gössling, S. (2002)	Human–Environment in Tourism	Explores tourist–nature interactions; important foundation for impact studies in avitourism.

Full Reference	Thematic Category	Descriptive Contribution to Political Ecology and Tourism
Gössling, S. (2003)	Political Ecology of Islands	Full political ecology analysis of tourism on small islands; highly relevant for bird-rich coastal ecosystems.
Gössling et al. (2008)	Climate Change & Tourism	Links global climate policy to tourism behavior; useful for forecasting shifts in birdwatching destinations.
Hall & Higham (2005)	Climate & Recreation	Analyses recreation vulnerability under climate change; pertinent to migratory bird tourism.
Hall, Saarinen & Gössling (2012)	Climate Adaptation	Offers mitigation strategies for tourism and climate; useful for adaptive birding trail planning.
Haraway, D. (1991)	Feminist Theory & Nature	Critiques nature/culture binaries; informs post-structural views of nature in birding as performance.
Harvey, D. (2005)	Neoliberalism Critique	Macro-scale analysis of neoliberal expansion; theoretical base for avitourism's privatization of nature.
Igoe, J. (2013)	Commodification & Nature	Critiques commodification of biodiversity; useful for assessing how bird species are marketed.
Tsing, A. (2005)	Friction, Global Connections	Ethnography of environmental governance; essential for analyzing cross-scale avitourism interactions.
Watts & Peet (2004)	Liberation Ecologies	Canonical work defining political ecology's praxis; foundational for any tourism-environment justice analysis.
Zimmerer, K. S. (2006)	Environmental Governance	Tracks shifts in governance and global ecological narratives; directly supports analysis of birding tourism policies.

Source: the author, 2025, based on data available on several digital platforms.

Part IV – Actor-Network Theory (ANT)

4.9. Actor–Network Theory (ANT): Reimagining Avitourism and Wildlife Tourism Through Toward Relational and Material Understandings

This section explores the theoretical and empirical application of **Actor–Network Theory (ANT)** to avitourism and wildlife tourism, fields that remain underexplored in ANT-informed research. ANT offers a conceptual and methodological framework rooted in the principles of relational materiality and general symmetry, decentering the human and foregrounding the assemblages of human and non-human actors, technologies, infrastructures, and ecologies. Travel Career Ladder (TCL) is an approach that suggests tourist motivations evolve over time in relation to experience. Novice birders may initially seek novelty and general nature immersion, while more seasoned avitourists pursue deeper personal meaning, mastery, or even contributions to science—such as active participation in platforms like **eBird**, where data collection supports conservation science. This motivational evolution can also influence how tourists perceive and engage with destinations, as their expectations and behavioral patterns shift over time.

Drawing on ANT's key concepts of translation and spatial orderings, we argue that birdwatching tourism should be understood as a dynamic, heterogeneous network in which species, habitats, tourists, equipment, and digital platforms are all enrolled. A detailed case study of a birdwatching trail development in Brazil's Pantanal region is offered to illustrate how avitourism emerges through multiple translations and spatialities. The analysis concludes by outlining implications for sustainability, conservation, and future research trajectories in tourism studies.

Tourism has long been analyzed through frameworks that prioritize economic geography, consumer behavior, and visual consumption. Within this tradition, avitourism—tourism centered around birdwatching—and wildlife tourism more broadly have often been portrayed as niche, passive, or ecologically benign forms of tourism. However, these assumptions obscure the complex socio-material relations that underpin these activities. This chapter aims to reframe avitourism through Actor–Network Theory (ANT), a theoretical and methodological approach developed within science and technology studies (STS) in the 1980s (Latour, 1987; Callon, 1986; Law, 1992), plainly, *"ANT studies the way networks are built or assembled and what they do; it describes the enactment of materially and semiotically heterogeneous relations that are contingently stabilized or fail to stabilize"* (Law, 1999, p. 4).

ANT is particularly well-suited to the study of avitourism because it allows for the tracing of heterogeneous networks—composed of birds, habitats, optics, digital apps, tourists, guides, conservationists, and funding mechanisms—through processes of translation. Its principles of relational materiality and general symmetry challenge anthropocentric and dualistic views of tourism, urging us to attend to the active roles of non-human entities and the materiality of practices. In this chapter, we apply ANT to rethink the actors, practices, and spatialities of avitourism, and in doing so, contribute a novel and critical perspective to wildlife tourism studies.

4.9.1. Theoretical Framework: ANT, Translation, and Spatialities

Actor–Network Theory emerged from the work of scholars such as Bruno Latour, Michel Callon, and John Law, who sought to explain how scientific knowledge is produced through complex assemblages of humans and non-humans. Rather than viewing the world as composed of discrete categories—society vs. nature, human vs. non-human—ANT focuses on how these categories emerge through relational practices. One of its defining features is the principle of general symmetry: researchers must analyze human and non-human actors in the same terms, without privileging one over the other (Law, 1992; Murdoch, 1997).

Translation is a central concept within ANT. It refers to the processes through which actors are enrolled into networks and made to align with specific goals, often through negotiation, modification, and material inscription (Callon, 1986; 1991), "*'translation' involves all the negotiations, intrigues, calculations, acts of persuasion and violence through which an actor or force secures authority to act on behalf of another …*" (Callon, 1986, pp. 203-204). These translations are not neutral: they transform both the actors and the networks, often betraying initial intentions in the process (Law, 1992; 1994; 1997).

ANT also reconfigures how we understand space. Law and Mol (2001) propose four spatial metaphors: regions (bounded territories), networks (relational proximities), fluids (mutable and overlapping configurations), and fires (spaces constituted through discontinuities). These metaphors allow us to grasp the spatial dynamics of tourism practices more effectively than traditional Euclidean conceptions of space. The next section the concept of Interessement in ANT will be comprehensively presented as it is one of the key aspects of this theoretical approach.

4.9.2. Explanation about the 'Interessement Concept' of Actor-Network Theory (ANT):

Interessement is a core concept in Actor–Network Theory (ANT), a framework developed by thinkers such as Michel Callon, Bruno Latour, and John Law (Law, 1992; 1994). The term originates from Callon's 1986 paper, *Some elements of a sociology of translation: Domestication of the scallops and the fishermen of St Brieuc Bay*, where it is identified as the second moment in the four-step process of translation. Definition, "*Interessement covers the set of actions by which an entity attempts to impose and stabilise the identity of the other actors it defines through its problematization …*" — *Callon, 1986, pp. 207-208*. In simpler terms:

How Does Interessement Work?

In simple terms, *interessement* is about getting others on board—it's the phase where a key actor (often a government agency, an NGO, or a project leader) tries to convince others to play certain roles in a broader plan or solution. But this isn't just about asking nicely. It involves using different kinds of tools and strategies to shape people's decisions and direct their participation.

Tools of the Trade: How Interessement Is Put into Action

To "interest" or engage others, actors can use several types of mechanisms:

- **Physical or material tools**, like technology, infrastructure, or even geographical access. Think of barriers that guide behavior or physical spaces designed to support a certain kind of interaction.
- **Communication strategies**, such as how a problem is framed in public policies, or using shared cultural values to build trust or support.
- **Legal and institutional arrangements**, like offering financial incentives, signing contracts, or providing formal recognition through policies or programs.

These tools serve a purpose: they help stabilize a shared understanding of the problem, discourage other competing views or actions, and make it attractive—or even necessary—for people to follow the path that's being proposed.

A Real-Life Example: Socio Bosque in Ecuador

A clear example of interessement in action is Ecuador's **Socio Bosque Program**, which offers payments to rural and Indigenous communities who agree to protect native forests.

Here's how it unfolds:

1. **Problematization** – The government identifies **deforestation** as a major environmental and climate problem.
2. **Interessement** – To address it, they **offer financial payments** to communities that commit to conserving forested land.
3. **Enrollment** – Communities agree and **sign 20-year conservation contracts**, formally taking on the role of environmental stewards.
4. **Mobilization** – These communities now become **key contributors** to Ecuador's broader climate strategy, especially its efforts to reduce deforestation under the international **REDD+** framework.

In this case, the **payment itself** is a powerful interessement mechanism. It **aligns the community's economic needs with the government's environmental goals**—a win-win that strengthens participation and stabilizes the conservation network.

Why Does This Matter?

Understanding how interessement works gives us insight into how **partnerships are built in the real world**, especially when dealing with complex issues like conservation, sustainability, or public health. It shows that power isn't just about forcing people to do things—it's often about **creating networks of trust, incentives, and mutual benefit**.

This concept also helps explain why some programs succeed and others don't. When people feel their interests are genuinely considered—and when they're supported with the right tools and structures—they're more likely to commit and stay involved.

4.9.3. Key Concepts of Actor-Network Theory (ANT):

Table 4.3 below summarizes the foundational concepts of Actor-Network Theory (ANT), a framework developed to understand how networks of human and nonhuman actors form, stabilize, and produce social order. Each concept captures a stage or mechanism through which relationships are negotiated, roles are defined, and agency is distributed across a heterogeneous system. This overview provides a concise reference for analyzing how sociotechnical assemblages take shape in real-world contexts.

Table 4.3 - Key Concepts in Actor-Network Theory (ANT)

Concept	Improved Definition
Actor	Entities—both human and nonhuman (such as technologies, organizations, texts)—that participate in the formation of networks by aligning interests and capacities.
Actor-network	A dynamic and heterogeneous configuration of aligned actors (people, institutions, technologies, etc.) whose interactions stabilize a socio-technical order.
Translation	The overall process through which actors are identified, roles are negotiated, and alliances are formed to construct and maintain a network.
Inscription	The process by which interests are embedded in material or symbolic artifacts (e.g., documents, devices) to ensure continuity and enforcement of roles.
Problematization	The initial phase in translation where the focal actor defines the problem, identifies potential allies, and positions itself as essential to resolving the issue.

Concept	Improved Definition
Interessement	The phase where the focal actor engages other actors, aligning or negotiating interests to ensure they adopt the proposed identities and roles.
Enrollment	The stage at which actors formally accept their roles and responsibilities, as defined during interessement, and are incorporated into the network.
Mobilization	The moment when aligned actors speak or act on behalf of those they represent, reinforcing the legitimacy and scale of the network.
Obligatory Passage Point	A critical node or condition through which all actors must pass to achieve their goals, reinforcing the centrality of the focal actor.
Irreversibility	The degree to which a network's configuration becomes locked-in, making it difficult or impossible to revert to previous states or explore alternatives.

Source: Adapted from Rivera, Cox and Flores Zambada (2012).

4.9.4. Case Study: Avitourism and Networked Translations in the Pantanal, Brazil

The Pantanal, the world's largest tropical wetland, located primarily in Brazil, is a globally significant site for avian biodiversity and a prominent destination for birdwatchers. The region hosts hundreds of resident and migratory bird species, including iconic birds like the hyacinth macaw (*Anodorhynchus hyacinthinus*), jabiru stork (*Jabiru mycteria*), and toco toucan (*Ramphastos toco*). It is also home to local communities, Indigenous groups, private landowners, conservation NGOs, and tourism operators.

This section examines the emergence of a birdwatching trail project in the southern Pantanal through the lens of ANT. The project, led by a conservation NGO in collaboration with local farmers and a government agency, illustrates the complex translations necessary to materialize avitourism.

- **Initial Vision**: A conservation biologist proposes a birdwatching trail as a means to align biodiversity conservation with local economic development. This vision translates ecological richness into socio-economic potential.
- **Enrolling Actors**: Farmers are persuaded to allow trail access through promises of income diversification. Birding experts conduct ornithological surveys, translating scientific data into spatial decisions. Tourism agencies contribute marketing expertise. The birds themselves — particularly charismatic or endangered species — translate the value of the habitat into global desirability.
- **Material Translations**: Trails are cleared, observation platforms are constructed using sustainable materials, and interpretive signage is developed. These material elements stabilize the network and enable its extension.
- **Technological Intermediaries**: eBird checklists and bird photography uploaded to platforms like Instagram serve as digital translations of the experience, attracting more visitors and validating the site within international birding circuits.
- **Economic Translations**: Tourists' expenditures are translated into economic benefits for local stakeholders, including guides, accommodation providers, and handicraft cooperatives. However, the uneven distribution of these benefits also threatens the network's stability.

This networked achievement is not linear. Seasonal flooding, bird migration patterns, and policy shifts constantly reconfigure the assemblage, requiring continuous translation work to maintain the network.

4.9.5. Spatial Orderings in Avitourism

- **Regions**: The Pantanal is designated as a biosphere reserve, and many birding hotspots are mapped as bounded regions. Yet these spatial containers are performatively enacted through governance, surveillance, and promotion.
- **Networks**: Bird migration routes connect the Pantanal to Canada, the U.S., and Argentina. Birding tour operators create interlinked itineraries that draw together distant places and actors. Data flows through citizen science platforms bind local sightings to global conservation.
- **Fluids**: Birdwatching in the Pantanal is fluid. Bird presence fluctuates daily. Water levels reshape access. Heat, rain, and visibility affect what can be seen. Guides constantly adapt routes in response.
- **Fires**: The absence of a species—due to habitat loss, climate change, or misfortune—often intensifies its allure. Memories of prior sightings, anticipation of rare encounters, and stories of species disappearance infuse avitourism with affective fire spatialities.

4.9.6. Visual and Data Representation

- **Figure 1**: Actor-Network Map of a Pantanal Birdwatching Trail, including actors (e.g., birds, tourists, guides, platforms), intermediaries (binoculars, trails), and flows (data, revenue, discourse).
- **Data Point**: According to the U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, birdwatchers in the United States spent over $40 billion in 2016 on travel and equipment (USFWS, 2018), illustrating the economic translation of biodiversity.
- **Insight**: Social media analysis of hashtags like #PantanalBirding and eBird hotspots reveals high concentrations of sightings and tourist engagement during migratory peaks, translating ephemeral bird presence into sustained economic and informational value.

4.9.7. Avitourism in the Anthropocene: Actor–Network Reconfigurations and Earthly Attachments

The contemporary condition of the Anthropocene — characterized by the entanglement of human actions and planetary systems — poses both a challenge and an opportunity for tourism studies. Avitourism, as a form of wildlife tourism, is situated within these entanglements, deeply reliant on fragile ecosystems, migratory corridors, and atmospheric patterns that are being reshaped by anthropogenic change. Actor–Network Theory, with its emphasis on relational materiality, is particularly well positioned to make sense of these complexities, not only by tracing connections but by attending to their transformations and vulnerabilities.

In this context, birds are not passive objects of the tourist gaze but active co-constructors of experience and indicators of ecological integrity. Their appearance — or disappearance — within a birdwatching network signals the vitality or collapse of wider environmental assemblages. For instance, the declining sightings of migratory species in the Pantanal may be symptomatic of broader climatic disruptions across continents. Through ANT, these absences can be read not as empty data points but as ruptures in translation—where the continuity of a network fails under ecological strain.

The Anthropocene is thus not only a geophysical epoch but also a shift in the ontological grammar of tourism. Avitourism in this frame becomes a practice of *earthly attachment* (Latour, 2017), where tourists, guides, birds, habitats, digital platforms, and conservation frameworks enact multispecies connections across precarious landscapes. These are not merely networks of consumption, but infrastructures of care, knowledge, and affect.

Translation, in the Anthropocene, becomes an act of both making and unmaking. The development of a birdwatching trail may translate ecological value into economic gain, but it may also betray the ecological balance it seeks to celebrate. Habitat disturbances from increased foot traffic, noise, or infrastructure development can drive away the very species that the network aims to spotlight. These betrayals underscore ANT's cautionary claim: that translation always involves transformation, and sometimes, loss.

Furthermore, ANT helps illuminate the spatialities of avitourism under Anthropocenic pressure. Wildfires, droughts, and rising temperatures reconfigure Euclidean territories into volatile fire spaces, where absence becomes a central mode of presence. The 'ghost birds' of tourists' recollections or field guides—those no longer seen—haunt the present as reminders of ecological change. Here, fire spatiality (Law & Mol, 2001) is not just metaphorical but materially inscribed in scorched forests and emptied wetlands.

In light of these transformations, ANT invites us to consider what kinds of futures avitourism enacts. Can it become a platform for more-than-human solidarity and environmental stewardship? Can it resist its own commodification? Can tourists act not as consumers of wilderness but as partial custodians within complex actor-networks? These questions cannot be answered definitively, but they point to the ethical and epistemological stakes of avitourism in the Anthropocene.

In sum, the ANT-informed analysis of avitourism reframes it as an environmental, epistemic, and affective practice—a networked response to planetary crisis. As such, it calls for grounded empirical inquiry, political reflexivity, and conceptual experimentation to map the uncertain terrain of wildlife tourism futures.

4.9.8. Conclusion: ANT, Avitourism, and Future Pathways

This chapter has illustrated how Actor–Network Theory enriches our understanding of avitourism and wildlife tourism by treating these practices as materially grounded, relationally assembled, and spatially complex. By foregrounding non-human agency, material artifacts, and digital mediators, ANT offers a powerful toolkit for decoding the heterogeneous practices that make avitourism possible.

In doing so, it moves us beyond reductive narratives of nature-based tourism as passive or benign. It exposes the work involved in producing, stabilizing, and transforming tourist experiences — work that includes translation, contestation, and the alignment of diverse interests.

Future research should use ANT to explore:

- The role of avitourism in shaping conservation policy and land use.

- The epistemological politics of biodiversity data and citizen science.
- The ethical and distributive dimensions of avitourism economies.
- The impact of digital technologies and automation (e.g., AI species identification) on birdwatching practices.

ANT provides not just a lens for understanding tourism, but a method for tracing the complex ecologies of relation through which new forms of travel, observation, and environmental engagement are being assembled in the Anthropocene.

The following reference list (Analytical Reference Table 4.4 below) presents a curated selection of scholarly works that form the theoretical and methodological foundation for engaging with Actor–Network Theory (ANT) in the context of tourism, cultural geography, science and technology studies (STS), and related interdisciplinary fields. These sources encompass both direct contributions to ANT theory—particularly the writings of foundational figures such as Bruno Latour, Michel Callon, and John Law—and broader academic discourses that intersect with ANT's core principles, including relational materiality, general symmetry, and spatial orderings. Additionally, the references include seminal studies from tourism mobilities, ethnographic methods, performativity in space, and critical engagements with non-human agency and hybrid geographies. Together, this literature corpus provides a comprehensive and diverse intellectual framework for advancing ANT-informed research, especially as applied to the dynamic and networked realities of tourism, avitourism, and wildlife ecologies.

Table 4.4 - Key References on Actor–Network Theory in Tourism and Related Fields

Author(s)	Year	Title / Source	Publication Type	ANT Relevance	Contribution / Notes
Arellano, A.	2004	Bodies, Spirits, and Incas: Performing Machu Picchu	Book Chapter	Indirect	Engages performance theory; useful for contextualizing ANT within embodied tourism practices.
Bærenholdt & Aarsaether	1998	Coping Strategies in the North	Edited Volume Chapter	Indirect	Focuses on regional restructuring; introduces spatial practices compatible with ANT thinking.
Bærenholdt & Aarsaether	2001	The Reflexive North	Edited Volume	Indirect	Highlights peripheral regions and reflexive modernization; provides context for ANT applications.
Bærenholdt & Haldrup	2004	On the Tracks of the Vikings	Book Chapter	Indirect	Examines Viking heritage tourism; contributes to networked notions of place and identity.
Bærenholdt et al.	2004	Performing Tourist Places	Monograph	Indirect	Major influence in the 'performance turn'; foundation for spatial practices that align with ANT.
Benediktsson & Skaptadóttir	2002	Coping Strategies and Regional Policies	Report	Indirect	Emphasizes socio-economic restructuring in peripheries; ANT-relevant in context of policy networks.
Brown, S.D.	2002	Michel Serres: Science, Translation	Journal Article	Theoretical	High

Author(s)	Year	Title / Source	Publication Type	ANT Relevance	Contribution / Notes
		and the Logic of the Parasite			
Byggðastofnun	1999	Byggðir á Íslandi: Aðgerðir í byggðamálum	Government Report	Indirect	Discusses Icelandic rural development; contextual grounding for tourism and policy networks.
Callon, M.	1991	Techno-economic Networks and Irreversibility	Book Chapter	Core	Explains irreversibility and translation processes; central text in ANT corpus.
Callon & Latour	1981	Unscrewing the Big Leviathan	Book Chapter	Core	Defines macro-actors and micro/macro dynamics; foundational ANT text.
Cloke & Jones	2004	Turning in the Graveyard	Journal Article	High	Applies hybrid geography; aligns with ANT's material-relational analysis.
Coleman & Crang (Eds.)	2002	Tourism: Between Place and Performance	Edited Volume	Indirect	Key text for performance turn; background context for ANT-tourism integration.
Crick, M.	1989	Representations of International Tourism in the Social Sciences	Journal Article	Indirect	Critical tourism studies; context for ANT's epistemological stance.
Crouch, D.	2002	Surrounded by Place	Book Chapter	High	Discusses embodied encounters with space; supports ANT's non-dualistic spatialities.
Crouch, D.	2004	Tourist Practices and Performances	Book Chapter	Indirect	Further builds on embodied performance of tourism.
Edensor, T.	2000	Staging Tourism	Journal Article	High	Performance tourism; foundation for later ANT application in tourism.
Edensor, T.	2001	Performing Tourism, Staging Tourism	Journal Article	High	Applies performance lens to tourist space; bridges toward ANT.
Emerson et al.	1995	Writing Ethnographic Fieldnotes	Book	Methodological	Supports ANT with ethnographic methods; essential for studying translation empirically.
Foucault, M.	1995	Discipline and Punish	Book	Theoretical	Foundational for relational power analysis; indirect but major influence on ANT.
Foucault, M.	2003	The Birth of the Clinic	Book	Theoretical	Early formulation of space-power-knowledge ties; influences ANT's relational ontology.
Grabher, G.	2004	Learning in Projects, Remembering in Networks?	Journal Article	Medium	Engages with project ecologies; provides critique of network metaphors.
Granovetter, M.	1973	The Strength of Weak Ties	Journal Article	Indirect	Introduces social network theory; ANT differentiates itself from this model.

Author(s)	Year	Title / Source	Publication Type	ANT Relevance	Contribution / Notes
Halewood & Hannam	2001	Viking Heritage Tourism	Journal Article	Medium	Discusses authenticity and performativity; indirectly relevant to ANT.
Haraway, D.	1991	Simians, Cyborgs and Women	Book	Theoretical	Feminist technoscience; deeply informs ANT's material-semiotic approaches.
Hetherington, K.	1997	In Place of Geometry	Book Chapter	High	Discusses topologies of space; direct influence on ANT spatial thinking.
Hjalager, A.-M.	2000	Tourism Destination and the Concept of Industrial Districts	Journal Article	Indirect	Economic geography; contrast to ANT's fluid networks.
Ingold, T.	2000	Making Culture and Weaving the World	Book Chapter	Theoretical	Emphasizes relational materiality; resonance with ANT but not ANT itself.
Jóhannesson et al.	2003	Coping with Social Capital?	Journal Article	Indirect	Northern tourism economies; useful empirical base for ANT tourism work.
Latour, B.	1991	Technology is Society Made Durable	Book Chapter	Core	Key text in ANT on material durability and social construction.
Latour, B.	1999	On Recalling ANT	Book Chapter	Core	Reflection on ANT's development; foundational.
Latour, B.	2002	Aramis or the Love of Technology	Book	Core	Case study using ANT; methodological exemplar.
Latour, B.	2004	A Dialog on ANT	Book Chapter	Core	Dialogical explanation of ANT; good teaching reference.
Law, J.	1992	Notes on the Theory of the Actor Network	Online Paper	Core	Canonical definition of ANT's key concepts: ordering, heterogeneity.
Law, J.	1994	Organizing Modernity	Book	Core	Application of ANT to organization; methodological guidance.
Law, J.	1997	Traduction/Trahision	Online Paper	Core	Discusses betrayal in translation; conceptually important.
Law, J.	1999	After ANT	Book Chapter	Core	Extends ANT beyond networks into complexity and topology.
Law, J.	2002	Objects and Spaces	Journal Article	Core	Builds on spatialities beyond Euclidean space; major ANT text.
Law & Mol	2001	Situating Technoscience	Journal Article	Core	Introduces spatial metaphors (fluid, fire); essential for tourism ANT applications.
Lévi-Strauss, C.	1977	Structural Anthropology	Book	Background	Structuralist reference point; semiotic contrast to ANT's post-structuralism.
Lynch, M.	1993	Scientific Practice and Ordinary Action	Book	Methodological	Ethnomethodology; precursor to ANT's empirical orientation.

Author(s)	Year	Title / Source	Publication Type	ANT Relevance	Contribution / Notes
Mol, A.	1999	Ontological Politics	Book Chapter	Core	Introduces multiplicity and ontological politics; crucial for later ANT developments.
Moreira, T.	2004	Surgical Monads	Journal Article	Core	Social topology case study; strong example of ANT methodology.
Murdoch, J.	1997	Inhuman/Nonhuman/Human	Journal Article	Core	Reconciliation of ANT with environmental sociology; pushes ANT toward nature.
O'Neill & Whatmore	2000	The Business of Place	Journal Article	Medium	Networked geographies of property and place; parallel to ANT.
Sharrock & Anderson	1986	The Ethnomethodologists	Book	Background	Context for ANT's methodology; basis for symmetry in empirical observation.
Shaw & Williams	2004	Tourism and Tourism Spaces	Book	Indirect	Economic geography and regionalism; contrasts with ANT but provides conceptual tension.
Sheller & Urry	2004	Tourism Mobilities	Edited Volume	High	Introduces mobility paradigms; foundational for ANT's tourism applications.
Skaptadóttir, U.D.	2000	Women Coping with Change in an Icelandic Fishing Community	Journal Article	Indirect	Grounded ethnography; potential application of ANT.
Skaptadóttir & Jóhannesson	2004	Role of Municipalities in Innovation	Book Chapter	Indirect	Innovation policy context; useful for ANT tourism case studies.
Thrift, N.	1999	Steps to an Ecology of Place	Book Chapter	Theoretical	Non-representational theory; aligns conceptually with ANT's spatialities.
Tinsley & Lynch	2001	Small Tourism Business Networks	Journal Article	Indirect	Traditional network analysis in tourism; contrasts with ANT's conceptualization.
Urry, J.	2000	Sociology Beyond Societies	Book	Indirect	Mobility theory; complements ANT.
Urry, J.	2002	The Tourist Gaze	Book	Indirect	Seminal text in tourism studies; contrasts visual consumption with ANT's material networks.

Part V -

4.10. Comparative Analysis of Theoretical Frameworks

Introduction to Comparison

At a fundamental level, the four theoretical frameworks diverge not only in their units of analysis but also in their deeper epistemological assumptions regarding how avitourism should be conceptualized and interpreted. Recreation Specialization Theory adopts a progressive, quasi-developmental perspective, positing that individuals evolve from novices to experts across cognitive, behavioral, and affective dimensions. Specialization is understood as an internalized journey, propelled by the accumulation of knowledge, the reinforcement of commitment, and the gradual refinement of preferences. Yet this linear developmental logic contrasts with the more fluid approach offered by Motivational Theories, which emphasize the dynamic nature of internal states and situational desires rather than a structured personal evolution. In Push-Pull models, for example, a birder's motivation may oscillate—"pushed" by an internal drive for knowledge or exploration, while simultaneously "pulled" by the allure of a specific bird species, festival, or cultural setting. Self-Determination Theory (SDT) builds on this framework, proposing that intrinsic motivations—those rooted in the needs for autonomy, competence, and relatedness—foster deeper and more enduring engagement. In doing so, SDT injects a psychological richness often absent in the more linear trajectories suggested by specialization models.

Political Ecology, by contrast, fundamentally questions the assumption that individual preferences and experiences unfold in isolation from broader structural forces. It highlights how issues of environmental access, the construction of conservation narratives, and the commodification of landscapes are deeply entangled with colonial histories, neoliberal economic reforms, and global patterns of environmental governance. From this vantage point, both specialization and motivation theories risk falling into methodological individualism, treating birdwatchers as autonomous agents rather than socially situated actors operating within uneven fields of power. Political Ecology brings to the fore critical questions about who has access to birdwatching spaces, whose priorities shape conservation agendas, and how notions of "pristine nature" are often constructed to exclude local communities. However, the very strength of Political Ecology—its attention to structural dynamics—can sometimes overshadow the micropolitics of agency and the material-semiotic interactions that Actor-Network Theory (ANT) is particularly adept at illuminating.

ANT departs sharply from both psychological and structuralist paradigms by refusing to grant automatic explanatory primacy to human intentionality or overarching social structures. Instead, it approaches birdwatching tourism as a relational accomplishment, produced through the interactions of heterogeneous actors—birders, birds, binoculars, apps, field guides, trails, and even policy frameworks. In this view, a birder's specialization is not merely an internal achievement but is enacted through material practices; likewise, motivations are shaped not only by psychological needs but by how environments, technologies, and non-human entities configure the possibilities for action. ANT's concept of *translation*—the process by which actors become enrolled and networks stabilized—provides a nuanced lens for understanding how avitourism projects succeed, transform, or unravel. Nevertheless, ANT's radical relationality sometimes risks diluting critical attention to historical injustices or entrenched power asymmetries that Political Ecology so rigorously interrogates, such as Indigenous land dispossession or the inequities embedded in ecotourism models.

When examined comparatively, these frameworks illuminate distinct but complementary dimensions of avitourism. Recreation Specialization Theory captures the temporal evolution of birders' skills and preferences; Motivational Theories unpack the psychological energies propelling participation; Political Ecology exposes the political-economic terrains in which avitourism unfolds; and Actor-Network Theory maps the intricate webs of relations—both human and non-human—that coalesce to make birdwatching tourism possible. A critical synthesis of these perspectives reveals that no single framework is sufficient on its own: specialization analysis that neglects structural constraints risks elitism; motivational models that ignore material assemblages miss crucial determinants of experience; political critiques detached from lived, relational practices can appear abstract; and relational mappings that sidestep ethical interrogation may inadvertently naturalize inequities.

Ultimately, advancing a robust understanding of avitourism demands an interdisciplinary approach that draws from the longitudinal sensitivity of Specialization Theory, the psychological depth of Motivational Theories, the systemic critique of Political Ecology, and the relational dynamism of Actor-Network Theory. Only by weaving these insights together can researchers and practitioners fully apprehend the complexities, contradictions, and transformative potentials inherent in the global phenomenon of birdwatching tourism.

Table 4.5. Key Aspects of Theories (General and Applied to Avitourism)

Feature	Recreation Specialization Theory	Motivational Theories (Push-Pull, SDT)	Political Ecology	Actor-Network Theory (ANT)
Core Concepts/ Principles	Continuum of involvement (generalist to specialist); Multidimensional (behavior, skill/knowledge, commitment); Progression over time.	Push (internal drives) / Pull (external attractors) factors; SDT: Intrinsic/Extrinsic motivation, Basic Psychological Needs (Autonomy, Competence, Relatedness).	Power dynamics; Environmental justice; Access/control over resources; Socio-environmental conflicts; Scale; Historical context; Politicization of environment.	Heterogeneous networks; Actors/Actants (human & non-human); Generalized Symmetry; Translation (Problematization, OPP, **Interessement***, Enrolment, Mobilization); Material-semiotics.
Primary Focus/ Unit of Analysis	Individual participant's development, behavior, attitudes, preferences within a specific activity.	Individual's underlying psychological drivers, needs, and goals for travel/participation.	Power relations, social structures, political-economic forces shaping human-environment interactions and resource distribution.	Relational networks of interacting human and non-human entities; How networks are assembled and maintained.
Key Assumptions	Participants progress along a continuum; Specialization influences behavior/preferences; Development driven by challenge/ reinforcement.	Behavior is driven by needs/desires (Push/Pull); Motivation quality (SDT) affects outcomes; Needs for autonomy, competence, relatedness are universal (SDT).	Power is unequally distributed; Environmental issues are inherently political; Social & ecological systems are linked; Scale matters.	Humans and non-humans can be actors; Agency emerges from relations (Symmetry); Reality is constructed through networks; Translation is key to network formation.

Typical Scale of Analysis	Individual; Group (segments of specialists).	Individual; Group.	Community, Regional, National, Global; Links across scales.	Micro (interactions) to Macro (stabilized networks); Follows the actors across scales.
Strengths in Avitourism Context	Explains heterogeneity among birders; Links experience to preferences, behavior, spending, travel intent; Useful for market segmentation.	Explains *why* people travel for birding; Identifies key drivers/attractors; SDT explains link between experience quality, motivation, & well-being.	Reveals power imbalances, conflicts, and justice issues; Critiques simplistic 'win-win' narratives; Links local avitourism to broader political economy.	Maps complex interactions involving diverse actors (incl. non-humans); Explains how avitourism systems/projects emerge & stabilize/fail; Highlights role of materiality/technology.
Limitations in Avitourism Context	Less focus on social/political context; Progression model critiqued as potentially simplistic/not universal; Can overlook structural constraints.	Can be overly individualistic; Push/Pull can be descriptive list; May neglect power structures influencing choices/ opportunities; SDT less focused on context.	Can sometimes overemphasize conflict/critique; May require deep contextual knowledge; Less focus on individual psychology or micro-interactions.	Can be descriptively dense; Concept of non-human agency debated ; Can sometimes downplay structural power compared to PE; Requires detailed empirical tracing.

Source: Table prepared by the author, 2025.

Part VI

4.11. Interconnectedness of Theories in Avitourism

4.11.1. Introduction

While the four theoretical frameworks offer distinct perspectives on birdwatching tourism, they are not isolated paradigms. Examining their points of intersection, complementarity, and potential tension reveals opportunities for a more integrated and comprehensive understanding. Avitourism phenomena often involve individual behaviors, underlying motivations, socio-political contexts, and complex networks simultaneously, suggesting that combining insights from these theories can yield richer analytical purchase than relying on any single framework alone.

4.11.2. Overlaps and Complementarities Several areas of overlap and complementarity exist between the theories:

- **Specialization and Motivation:** These two frameworks are closely linked. The motivations described by Push-Pull theory and SDT often act as the driving forces behind progression along the Recreation Specialization continuum. For instance, the push factor of seeking knowledge or the SDT need for competence can fuel the development of skills and knowledge characteristic of specialization. Conversely, an individual's level of specialization frequently influences their specific motivations; more advanced birders, for example, are often found to be more strongly motivated by achievement-related goals like seeing new or rare species, compared to novices whose motivations might be broader (e.g., general nature appreciation, relaxation). In essence, Specialization theory describes the 'what' (level of involvement, skills, commitment) and 'how' (behavior, preferences) of engagement, while Motivational theories explain the 'why' (underlying drivers and needs).

- **Specialization and Political Ecology:** The preferences and behaviors of different specialization segments, particularly highly specialized birders who may travel further and spend more , can have significant political-ecological implications. The demands of this often economically influential group can shape conservation priorities, land management decisions, and tourism development strategies. Political Ecology can analyze the power dynamics inherent in these processes, questioning whose interests (e.g., elite specialist birders, tourism operators catering to them) are prioritized, potentially at the expense of local communities or other environmental values. PE provides the tools to critique the potential social and environmental consequences of catering primarily to specialized market segments.
- **Motivation and Political Ecology:** Motivations are not formed in a vacuum; they are shaped by, and interact with, the political-ecological context. PE can analyze how structural conditions like poverty, lack of economic alternatives, or land dispossession might influence the motivations of local communities to participate in avitourism, even if it involves environmental trade-offs or inequitable arrangements. Conversely, the motivations of powerful actors (e.g., conservation NGOs driven by biodiversity metrics, tour operators driven by profit, tourists driven by escape or status) shape the development trajectories and conflicts that PE investigates. Power structures, a central focus of PE, determine which motivations are ultimately translated into policy and practice.
- **Political Ecology and Actor-Network Theory:** These two frameworks offer complementary perspectives on power and networks. To note, while ANT conceptualizes power as the outcome of successful network stabilization rather than as a structural property, the frameworks can complement each other by providing empirical mapping (ANT) and critical analysis (PE) perspectives. ANT provides a methodology for empirically mapping the heterogeneous networks of actors (human and non-human) and tracing the processes of translation through which these networks are assembled and stabilized. PE offers a critical lens to analyze the *underlying* power asymmetries, political-economic forces, historical contexts, and social inequalities that shape these networks and influence the outcomes of translation processes. ANT can show *how* power operates through specific network configurations, actor enrollments, and the mobilization of resources (including non-humans), while PE helps explain *why* power is distributed unequally in the first place and critiques the implications of justice.
- **ANT and Specialization/Motivation:** ANT maps the relational assemblages—including human, non-human, and technological actors—that enable, constrain, or transform an individual's trajectory along the specialization continuum or their motivational fulfillment. This network includes not just people (mentors, peers) but also crucial non-human elements like access to specific sites, availability of high-quality equipment (optics, guides), information resources (apps, books), and

even the birds themselves. An individual's level of specialization or their specific motivations might, in turn, influence their position, connections, and influence within the broader avitourism network.

4.11.3. Potential Tensions and Contradictions

Despite complementarities, tensions can arise when attempting to integrate these frameworks:

- **Individual vs. Structure/Network:** A primary tension exists between the predominantly individual-level focus of Recreation Specialization and Motivational Theories (particularly push-pull) and the broader structural or relational focus of Political Ecology and ANT. Bridging the gap between individual psychology/behavior and systemic power dynamics or emergent network effects requires careful conceptual work. How do individual choices and progressions aggregate to shape larger patterns, and how do structures and networks enable or constrain individual agency?
- **Conceptions of Agency:** The theories hold different views on agency. Much work in specialization and motivation implicitly or explicitly centers human agency. PE often focuses on human agency as constrained by social structures and political-economic forces. ANT radically departs by positing a symmetrical view, distributing agency across both human and non-human actors within the network. Reconciling these different conceptions when combining frameworks can be challenging.
- **Normative Stance:** Political Ecology carries an explicit normative commitment to exposing injustice and advocating for more equitable and sustainable human-environment relations. Recreation Specialization and Motivational Theories tend to be more descriptive or explanatory, focused on understanding patterns of behavior and drivers without an inherent critical stance. While ANT *can* be used for critical analysis (e.g., revealing hidden actors or failed translations), its core methodology is often presented as descriptive ('following the actors'). This difference in normative orientation can create friction when integrating insights.

4.11.4. Synthesis of Interconnectedness

A multi-theoretical approach arguably provides the most robust and comprehensive understanding of birdwatching tourism. No single theory captures the full picture. For example, analyzing a conflict over access to a prime birding location (a PE concern) necessitates understanding the motivations of the competing stakeholders (Motivation Theory), the differing preferences and behaviors of various user groups based on their specialization levels (Rec Specialization), and the complex network of human actors (communities, government agencies, tour operators), non-human actors (the specific site, bird populations, access roads, regulations), and mediating technologies that shape the conflict and potential resolutions (ANT). By drawing on the strengths of each framework, researchers and practitioners can develop more nuanced analyses and interventions.

4.11.5. Elaborations and Implications (Interconnectedness)

The synergy between ANT and PE proves particularly potent for dissecting the 'politics of representation' in avitourism. ANT offers the tools to meticulously map how specific actors – tour operators, marketing agencies, government tourism boards, even influential bloggers or photographers – construct networks and translate particular meanings or narratives about a destination or experience. This involves mobilizing specific actors (e.g., charismatic guides, 'authentic' locals) and non-human elements (e.g., stunning photographs of wildlife, carefully crafted itineraries, luxury lodge amenities) to create a persuasive and marketable image. Political Ecology then provides the critical framework to analyze how these carefully constructed representations serve specific power interests, potentially obscuring inconvenient ecological realities (like habitat degradation outside the tourist bubble), reinforcing harmful stereotypes (as seen with the 'myths' of the Pantaneiros), or marginalizing alternative narratives and local voices. ANT reveals the *mechanisms* by which representations are built and stabilized within networks, while PE interrogates the *political consequences* and justice implications of those representations. This combined approach suggests that critical analysis of avitourism marketing materials, interpretive signage, media portrayals, and even scientific reports should examine both the network of actors involved in their production (ANT) and the underlying power dynamics and potential biases they reflect or perpetuate (PE).

Furthermore, integrating these perspectives reveals that the developmental trajectory described by Recreation Specialization Theory is not merely an internal, psychological journey unfolding in isolation. Instead, an individual's ability to progress in skill, knowledge, behavior, and commitment is profoundly embedded within, and shaped by, the specific social networks they inhabit (ANT) and the broader political-economic context (PE). Access to mentors, specialized information sources, high-quality equipment, opportunities for travel to diverse birding locations, and peer recognition – all factors facilitating specialization – are mediated through networks. The availability and accessibility of these network elements, however, are often unevenly distributed due to structural factors like income inequality, geographic location, social capital, and discriminatory practices, which are the focus of PE. A highly motivated individual living in a remote, under-resourced community (PE context) might face significant barriers to specialization, lacking access to the necessary network components (ANT) such as reliable internet for information, funds for travel and equipment, or connections with experienced birders. This implies that initiatives aiming to foster deeper engagement in birdwatching, perhaps for citizen science or conservation purposes, must look beyond individual motivation or skill deficits. They need to consider the enabling or constraining role of the participant's social network and address potential structural barriers related to access, resources, and opportunity within the broader political-ecological landscape.

Part VII

4.12. Practical Applications and Case Studies

4.12.1. Introduction

The theoretical frameworks discussed gain practical relevance when applied to specific, real-world birdwatching tourism contexts. Examining empirical studies and case applications illustrates how these theories help researchers and practitioners understand concrete issues, segment markets, analyze conflicts, evaluate project outcomes, and inform management decisions. This section presents a compilation of such applications, drawing from the available research (Refer to Table 4.6).

Table 4.6 - Practical Applications/Reviews of Theories in Birdwatching Tourism Cases

Case/Context Description	Theory Applied	Methodology Briefly	Key Insights/Conclusions Drawn
Italian Birders' Travel Intention (EBN Italia members)	Recreation Specialization	Online survey, PLS-SEM, SURE model	Positive relationship between specialization (measured via SKC & Behavior dimensions) and travel intention. Intensity varies by birder profile (age/gender) & motivations (biodiversity focus). SKC & Behavior equally relevant LOCs for HOC specialization.
Birders' Soundscape Preferences (South Carolina & online listservs)	Recreation Specialization	In-person & online surveys	Soundscape preference exists as biophony, geophony, anthrophony. Preference for geophony differs among specialization segments.
Australian Birders' Specialization (Online survey, bird organizations & Facebook)	Recreation Specialization	Online survey, CFA, Cluster Analysis	Segmented birders into casual/novice, intermediate, advanced. Higher specialization linked to higher satisfaction, skill/knowledge, commitment. Paid birders reported higher skill/knowledge. Explored "Big Year" participation. Different engagement clusters varied in specialization dimensions & motivations.
Nature-Based Tourism Package Choice (Birdwatching, Mtn Biking, Hiking in Norway)	Recreation Specialization	Hybrid Choice Model survey	Specialization relates to tour package preferences. More specialized birders/bikers more likely to choose skill-customized guiding. Specialized birders prioritized birding quality/diversity, skilled guides, hides.
Potential Impact Behaviors at Birding Festivals (US)	Recreation Specialization	Survey	Aimed to identify birder categories (casual to advanced) and correlate with self-reported potential impact behaviors. (Results/specific findings not detailed in snippet).
Birdwatcher Motivation & Regulation (German-speaking countries)	Self-Determination Theory (SDT)	Online survey, Factor analysis, SEM	Identified four motivational regulations (intrinsic, identified, introjected, external). Autonomy need satisfaction predicted self-determined regulation; frustration predicted external. Different regulations linked to different behaviors.
Birdwatching Motivation Dimensions (German-speaking countries)	Motivational Dimensions Model	Online survey, Factor analysis (EFA, CFA)	Identified six motivation factors: Enjoyment (highest), achievement, conservation, detachment, social, reputation. Higher specialization linked to higher conservation, social, reputation motivation. Conservation motivation linked to citizen science participation.
Avitourism Visit Intention (Context not	Theory of Planned Behavior (TPB)	Survey, SEM likely	TPB components (attitude, subjective norm, perceived control) positively related to visit intention.

specified, likely general tourism)	& Environmental Factors		Environmental awareness, concern, and knowledge also positively related to visit intention for avitourism.
Bird Photography Tourism in Hanlong, China (Yunnan Province)	Political Ecology (implicitly)	Case study, Interviews, Household surveys	Tourism provided significant income, employment, reduced forest resource extraction, fostered local knowledge & governance (cooperative). Showed potential for sustainable livelihoods & conservation via community-based model. Potential issues: ecological impact, sustainability, equity.
Nature-Based Tourism & Pantaneiros (Brazilian Pantanal)	Political Ecology	Case study, Interviews, Online/Offline representation analysis	Tourism representations focused on biodiversity, perpetuating myths (Uncivilised, Unrestrained, Unchanged) that marginalize Pantaneiro culture. Perpetuates skewed power structures & social inequalities, benefiting affluent/external actors most. Limited/superficial community benefits.
Volunteer Tourism & Community Perceptions (Sarteneja, Belize)	Political Ecology	Case study, Surveys, Interviews, Focus groups	Community identified positive economic/social impacts but perceived unfair benefit distribution. PE lens used to examine how political/economic/social processes influence benefit distribution & perceptions.
Tourism Conflict & Competing Values (Benoa Bay, Bali, Indonesia)	Political Ecology	Case study, Ethnography	Analyzed conflict over tourism development. Showed how opposing actors mobilized the same cultural philosophy (THK) to advance different political goals and development visions, highlighting conflict over values/narratives, not just resources.
Wildlife Tourism Science Network (Antarctica)	Actor-Network Theory (ANT)	Case study, Document analysis, Interviews likely	Used ANT (incl. translation steps: problematization, OPP, interessement*, enrolment, mobilization, dissidence/black-box) to map the development & decline of scientific research network on tourism impacts. Showed ANT's utility but need to consider power/norms.
Place-Making & Social Creativity (Vardø, Norway - Biotope birdwatching project)	Actor-Network Theory (ANT) & Meshwork Analysis	Case study, Participatory observation, Interviews	Mapped network of human (architects, locals, tourists) & non-human (birds, infrastructure, festivals, social media) actors. Showed how Biotope project translated ideas, enrolled actors & fostered social creativity/positive change through network interactions.
Bird Identification Activities (Birdwatching,	Actor-Network Theory (ANT)	Conceptual analysis, Literature review	Framed activities as laminated assemblages/networks shaped by motives & mediating artifacts (optics, guides). ANT helps understand links between activity forms & role of non-

Birding, Twitching - General context)			humans, moving beyond institutional focus.
Indigenous Knowledge & Birdwatching Tourism (Bulang people, Yunnan, China)	Actor-Network Theory (implicitly) & Indigenous Knowledge	Case study, Ethnography	Analyzed indigenous forest/wildlife protection system. Found conflict between indigenous practice (artificial feeding for bird tourism - involving human/non-human actors) and scientific ecological knowledge. Highlights interaction between knowledge systems in tourism network.

Source: Table prepared by the author, 2025, based on critical views and insights presented in the theoretical approaches.

4.13. Synthesis and Conclusion

4.13.1. Recapitulation of Findings

This Section (Part II) has analyzed birdwatching tourism through the distinct yet interconnected lenses of Recreation Specialization Theory, Motivational Theories (Push-Pull and SDT), Political Ecology, and Actor-Network Theory.

- **Recreation Specialization Theory** effectively illuminates the heterogeneity among birdwatchers, demonstrating how progression in behavior, skills, and commitment influences preferences, travel patterns, spending, and engagement with the activity. It provides a valuable tool for market segmentation but requires nuance, recognizing that progression is not always linear and dimensions may develop unevenly.
- **Motivational Theories** explain the underlying drivers ('why') of avitourism participation. Push-Pull factors identify internal needs and external destination attractors, while Self-Determination Theory offers a deeper understanding of the *quality* of motivation, emphasizing the importance of autonomy, competence, and relatedness for sustained engagement and well-being.
- **Political Ecology** provides a critical perspective, revealing the power dynamics, social justice implications, and potential conflicts embedded within avitourism development and conservation efforts. It challenges simplistic win-win narratives and connects local phenomena to broader political-economic structures.
- **Actor-Network Theory** offers a methodology for mapping the complex, dynamic networks of interacting human and non-human actors that constitute avitourism systems. It highlights the active role of non-humans (birds, technology, landscapes) and the crucial process of translation in assembling and maintaining these networks.

4.13.2. Value of Multi-Theoretical Approach

The analysis underscores that no single theory provides a complete picture of birdwatching tourism. A comprehensive understanding necessitates integrating insights from multiple perspectives. The individual focus of specialization and motivation theories is enriched by the contextual awareness of Political Ecology and the relational, socio-technical mapping offered by ANT. For instance, understanding a conflict over a birding site (PE) requires knowing the motivations and specialization levels of different user groups (Motivation/Rec Spec) and mapping how these actors, along with non-human elements like the site itself, regulations, and technologies, are entangled in a network (ANT). Combining PE and ANT is particularly powerful for analyzing how representations are constructed and contested, while integrating specialization/motivation with PE/ANT reveals how individual journeys are shaped by broader structures and networks.

4.13.3. Broader Implications The theoretical understandings explored carry significant implications:

- **For Management:** Avitourism managers can use specialization theory for targeted product development and marketing but must recognize diverse specialization profiles. Applying SDT principles can help design experiences that foster autonomous motivation, leading to greater satisfaction and potentially pro-environmental behavior. A PE lens encourages managers to critically assess benefit distribution, engage meaningfully with local communities, and anticipate potential conflicts. ANT provides tools for mapping stakeholder networks and understanding the influence of non-human factors (e.g., habitat quality, technology) in management planning and intervention design. Developing ethical guidelines requires considering both motivational drivers (e.g., achievement vs. appreciation) and power dynamics.

- **For Policy:** Policymakers must move beyond purely economic justifications for avitourism, employing PE to ensure social equity, protect local rights, and address power imbalances in decision-making processes. Policies should support genuinely community-based or co-management models where appropriate. ANT encourages policies that acknowledge the agency of non-human actors, for instance, in regulating technologies that impact wildlife or designing infrastructure compatible with ecological processes. Recognizing the diverse motivations and specialization levels of birders can inform access policies and resource allocation.

- **For Research:** Future research would benefit from explicitly integrating multiple theoretical frameworks. Longitudinal studies tracking specialization development within specific political-ecological contexts and actor-networks could yield valuable insights. Comparative PE analyses of different avitourism governance models across diverse settings are needed. More ANT studies mapping the role of digital technologies (apps, social media, AI) in shaping contemporary avitourism networks would be timely. Research exploring the potential tensions and synergies between different motivations (e.g., achievement vs. conservation) and their behavioral outcomes in various contexts remains crucial.

4.13.4. Concluding Statement

Birdwatching tourism is a multifaceted phenomenon with significant economic, social, and ecological dimensions. Effectively navigating its complexities to achieve outcomes that are both sustainable and equitable requires moving beyond superficial descriptions or single-cause explanations. The application of diverse theoretical frameworks, as explored in this report, provides the necessary analytical depth. By critically examining individual progression, underlying motivations, encompassing power structures, and the intricate networks of human and non-human actors, stakeholders can foster a more informed, reflective, and responsible approach to the future of avitourism. Table 4.7 concisely presents each theoretical framework, its core concepts, application area (avitourism/birdwatching tourism), theoretical interrelation and key authors and works in this knowlege field. This Table complements the former one (see Table 4.5), in which authors have been reviewed and discussed in theory application, methodological frameworks, and key insights.

Table 4.7 – Theoretical Frameworks in Birdwatching Tourism: Core Concepts, Applications, Interrelations, and Key References

Theoretical Framework	Core Concepts	Application to Avitourism	Theoretical Interrelation	Key Authors / Texts
Recreation Specialization Theory (RST)	Continuum of specialization; multidimensional (behavior, skill, commitment); lifestyle centrality; shifting motivations	Used to identify birder types; helps segment visitors by skill and motivation; explains behavioral diversity	Links with Motivational Theory (e.g., career ladder); challenges assumptions of pro-environmental behavior; aligns with Social Worlds Theory in identity formation	Bryan (1977); Scott & Godbey (1994); McFarlane (1994); Lee & Scott (2004)
Motivational Theories (Push-Pull, TCL, Identity)	Maslow's hierarchy, Travel Career Ladder (TCL), push-pull dynamics, identity formation, intrinsic rewards, behavioral inversions	Explains birder motivations: escapism, relaxation, challenge, conservation; segmentation by psychological needs; design for layered motivation	Complements RST (behavioral trajectory); intersects with Political Ecology (motivational inequality); bridges with identity-based approaches and lifestyle tourism	Maslow (1954); Pearce (1993); Iso-Ahola (1982); Franklin & Crang (2001)
Duffus & Dearden's Wildlife Tourism Theory	Non-consumptive wildlife tourism (NCWOR); impact continuum; systems model (resource, user, management); ethical spectrum	Positions birdwatching as impactful despite being non-consumptive; informs ethical and spatial management; supports policy frameworks	Overlaps with ANT (systems/networked models); strengthened by behavioral ecology and CES theory; bridges ecological and socio-economic concerns	Duffus & Dearden (1990); Boyle & Samson (1985); Steven et al. (2011)
Political Ecology	Power relations in environment; conservation and control; degradation and marginalization; environmental justice; multi-scalar governance	Explores who benefits/bears costs; critiques commodification; emphasizes justice, Indigenous inclusion, governance asymmetries	Connects with Duffus & Dearden (systems); complements ANT (power in networks); integrates feminist and postcolonial critique	Blaikie & Brookfield (1987); Robbins (2012); Duffy (2002); Rocheleau et al. (1996)
Actor–Network Theory (ANT)	Relational materiality; general symmetry; translation; spatial metaphors (region,	Maps networks (birds, humans, tech, space); highlights multispecies agency;	Bridges RST and Political Ecology via relational analysis; challenges motivational essentialism; aligns	Latour (1999, 2004); Callon (1991); Law

Theoretical Framework	Core Concepts	Application to Avitourism	Theoretical Interrelation	Key Authors / Texts
	network, fluid, fire); assemblages	reframes impacts and infrastructure as co-productions	with posthuman and STS theory	(1992, 1994); Murdoch (1997); Law & Mol (2001)

Source: Table prepared by the author, 2025, by selectively choosing the pertinent data available in digital platforms and in this Chapter.

4.14. Final Remarks on theoretical approaches

The theoretical investigation presented in this chapter has emphasized that birdwatching tourism (avitourism) is a complex, layered, and evolving field of study—one that transcends simplistic definitions of recreation or leisure. As shown, frameworks such as **Recreation Specialization Theory (RST)** and **Motivational Theories** illuminate the behavioral, psychological, and experiential dimensions of avitourists, helping us understand why people watch birds, how they develop expertise, and how their behaviors may shift over time. These theories not only aid in identifying typologies and segmentation strategies for visitors, but also provide actionable insights for the planning of tiered interpretive programs, ethical messaging, and infrastructure design. Meanwhile, **Duffus and Dearden's Wildlife Tourism Theory** brings an essential ecological perspective, drawing attention to the very real—and often underappreciated—impacts of non-consumptive tourism activities, such as off-trail disturbance, playback use, or crowding near nesting sites.

However, birdwatching tourism cannot be fully understood without situating it within broader socio-political and ecological contexts. The application of **Political Ecology** enables a critical and systemic perspective, unveiling how issues of governance, inequality, and power are embedded in tourism practices—particularly in biodiversity-rich but economically marginalized or politically contested territories. Whether through exclusionary conservation regimes, inequitable benefit-sharing, or the marginalization of Indigenous and local voices, political ecology reminds us that avitourism is not politically neutral. Similarly, **Environmental Justice frameworks** and **Feminist Political Ecology** foreground questions of representation, labor, and access, revealing how avitourism can replicate or challenge existing structures of inequality. These approaches are indispensable for examining tourism in regions marked by historical dispossession, gendered labor divides, or cultural appropriation of traditional knowledge.

To address the full complexity of avitourism, it is crucial to incorporate additional interdisciplinary frameworks that offer both conceptual depth and operational flexibility. **Social Worlds Theory** helps map birdwatchers' internal codes, norms, and shared identities, enriching our understanding of peer dynamics, ethical subcultures, and social recognition in birding communities. **Actor-Network Theory (ANT)** and **Multispecies/Posthumanist Approaches** open new pathways for viewing birdwatching tourism not just as a human endeavor, but as a networked and relational process that includes birds as agents, technologies as mediators, and landscapes as co-producers of experience. In tandem, **Cultural Ecosystem Services (CES)** theory offers a vocabulary to articulate the intangible values derived from birds and habitats—values such as inspiration, identity, beauty, and belonging—that may not be captured in traditional economic or ecological metrics but are central to avitourism's cultural meaning.

In conclusion, the theoretical architecture outlined in this chapter offers a **robust, multi-scalar, and integrative framework** for analyzing avitourism case studies—be they site-specific (e.g., national parks, Indigenous territories) or thematic (e.g., conservation conflict, community empowerment, climate adaptation). Different configurations of these frameworks can be strategically employed depending on the context and objectives of each case. For instance, a case study on community-based avitourism in Indigenous territories may benefit from a combination of Political Ecology, Environmental Justice, RST, CES, and Commons Theory, while a study on visitor management in birding festivals might integrate Motivational Theory, Social Worlds, RST, and Wildlife Tourism Theory. This strategic layering of theories not only enhances analytical precision but also contributes to the design of more ethical, inclusive, and ecologically grounded avitourism practices that are responsive to the socio-environmental challenges of the 21st century.

The following comparative table synthesizes the principal theoretical frameworks applied to birdwatching tourism (avitourism), providing a structured overview of their core concepts, practical applications, interrelations, and key academic sources. These frameworks—Recreation Specialization Theory (RST), Motivational Theories, Duffus and Dearden's Wildlife Tourism Theory, Political Ecology, and Actor–Network Theory (ANT)—each offer distinctive yet complementary lenses through which the complexity of avitourism can be analyzed. While RST and motivational theories focus on the psychological, behavioral, and identity dimensions of birdwatchers, Wildlife Tourism Theory foregrounds ecological impact and user-resource dynamics. Political Ecology, in turn, situates avitourism within broader structures of power, governance, and environmental justice, and ANT reconceptualizes tourism practices as emergent from relational networks of humans, non-humans, and technologies. Together, these frameworks provide a comprehensive, multi-scalar foundation for understanding avitourism not merely as recreational travel, but as a deeply socio-ecological and politically embedded phenomenon that intersects with conservation, identity, materiality, and governance across local and global scales.

References

Adams, W. M. (2003). Nature and the colonial mind. In W. M. Adams & M. Mulligan (Eds.), *Decolonizing nature: Strategies for conservation in a post-colonial era* (pp. 16–50). Earthscan Publications.

Albrecht, J. N. (2010). Challenges in tourism strategy implementation in peripheral destinations: The case of Stewart Island, New Zealand. *Tourism and Hospitality Planning & Development, 7*(1), 51–110.

Arellano, A. (2004). Bodies, spirits, and Incas: Performing Machu Picchu. In M. Sheller & J. Urry (Eds.), *Tourism mobilities: Places to play, places in play* (pp. 67–77). Routledge.

Bærenholdt, J. O., & Aarsæther, N. (1998). Coping strategies in the North. In J. O. Bærenholdt & N. Aarsæther (Eds.), *Coping strategies in the North: Local practices in the context of global restructuring.* Nordic Council of Ministers.

Bærenholdt, J. O., & Aarsæther, N. (Eds.). (2001). *The reflexive North*. Nordic Council of Ministers.

Bærenholdt, J. O., & Haldrup, M. (2004). On the tracks of the Vikings. In M. Sheller & J. Urry (Eds.), *Tourism mobilities: Places to play, places in play* (pp. 78–89). Routledge.

Bærenholdt, J. O., Haldrup, M., Larsen, J., & Urry, J. (2004). *Performing tourist places*. Ashgate.

Bäckstrand, K., & Lövbrand, E. (2006). Planting trees to mitigate climate change: Contested discourses of ecological modernization, green governmentality and civic environmentalism. *Global Environmental Politics, 6*(1), 50–75.

Benediktsson, K., & Skaptadóttir, U. D. (2002). *Coping strategies and regional policies: Social capital in the Nordic peripheries—Iceland*. Nordregio.

Benton, T. (1996). *The greening of Marxism*. Guilford Press.

Bireline, H. R. (2005). *Recreation specialization and reports of potential impact behaviors among birders attending birding festivals* (Master's thesis, University of Florida). University of Florida Digital Collections. https://original-ufdc.uflib.ufl.edu/UFE0010560/00001

Blaikie, P., & Brookfield, H. (1987). *Land degradation and society*. Methuen.

Boykoff, M. T. (2008). The cultural politics of climate change discourse in UK tabloids. *Political Geography, 27*(5), 549–569.

Boykoff, M. T., & Goodman, M. (2009). Cultural politics of climate change: Interactions in everyday spaces. In M. T. Boykoff (Ed.), *The politics of climate change: A survey* (pp. 349–379). Routledge.

Brenner, N., & Theodore, N. (2002). Cities and the geographies of 'actually existing neoliberalism'. *Antipode, 34*(3), 349–379.

Brockington, D., & Duffy, R. (2010). Capitalism and conservation: The production and reproduction of biodiversity conservation. *Antipode, 42*(3), 469–484.

Brockington, D., & Duffy, R. (2011). *Capitalism and conservation*. Wiley.

Brockington, D., Duffy, R., & Igoe, J. (2008). *Nature unbound: Conservation, capitalism and the future of protected areas*. Earthscan Publications.

Brown, S. D. (2002). Michel Serres: Science, translation and the logic of the parasite. *Theory, Culture & Society, 19*(3), 1–27.

Bruner, E. M. (2001). The Maasai and the Lion King: Authenticity, nationalism, and globalization in African tourism. *American Ethnologist, 28*(4), 881–908.

Bryan, H. (1977). *Leisure Value Systems and Recreational Specialization* (Doctoral dissertation). University of Illinois.

Bryant, R., & Goodman, M. (2006). A pioneering reputation: Assessing Jim Blaikie's contributions to political ecology. *Geoforum, 39*(1), 344–356.

Bryant, R. L., & Bailey, S. (1997). *Third World Political Ecology*. Routledge.

Byggðastofnun. (1999). *Byggðir á Íslandi: Aðgerðir í byggðamálum*. Byggðastofnun.

Büscher, B., & Fletcher, R. (2020). *The Conservation Revolution: Radical Ideas for Saving Nature Beyond the Anthropocene*. London: Verso.

Cabirol-Lascuráin, H. (1996). *Tourism, ecotourism, and protected areas: The state of nature-based tourism around the world and guidelines for its development*. CABI Publishing.

Callon, M. (1991). Techno-economic networks and irreversibility. In J. Law (Ed.), *A sociology of monsters: Essays on power, technology and domination* (pp. 132–164). Routledge.

Callon, M., & Latour, B. (1981). Unscrewing the big Leviathan: How actors macro-structure reality and how sociologists help them to do so. In K. Knorr-Cetina & A. V. Cicourel (Eds.), *Advances in social theory and methodology: Toward an integration of micro- and macrosociologies* (pp. 277–303). Routledge & Kegan Paul.

Callon, M. (1986). Some elements of a sociology of translation: Domestication of the scallops and the fishermen of St Brieuc Bay. In Law, J. (Ed.), *Power, Action and Belief: A New Sociology of Knowledge?* (pp. 196–233). Routledge.

Campbell, L. M. (2007). Local conservation practice and global discourse: A political ecology of sea turtle conservation. *Annals of the Association of American Geographers, 97*(2), 313–334.

Clarke, N., Cloke, P., Barnett, C., & Malpass, A. (2008). The spaces and ethics of organic food. *Journal of Rural Studies, 24*(3), 219–230.

Cloke, P., & Jones, O. (2004). Turning in the graveyard: Trees and the hybrid geographies of dwelling, monitoring and resistance in a Bristol cemetery. *Cultural Geographies, 11*(3), 313–341.

Cole, S. (2007). A political ecology of water equity and tourism: A case study from Bali. *Annals of Tourism Research, 34*(4), 1221–1241.

Cole, S., & Browne, M. (2015). Tourism and water inequity in Bali: A social-ecological systems analysis. *Human Ecology, 43*, 439–450.

Cole, S., & Ferguson, L. (2015). Towards a gendered political economy of water and tourism. *Tourism Geographies, 17*(4), 511–528.

Cole, S., & Morgan, N. (2010). *Tourism and inequality: Problems and prospects*. CABI Publishing.

Cole, S., & Ferguson, L. (2015). Towards a gendered political economy of tourism. In C. M. Hall, S. Gössling, & D. Weaver (Eds.), *Sustainable Tourism Futures: Perspectives on Systems, Restructuring and Innovations* (pp. 86–97). London: Routledge.

Coleman, S., & Crang, M. (Eds.). (2002). *Tourism: Between place and performance*. Berghahn Books.

Crick, M. (1989). Representations of international tourism in the social sciences: Sun, sex, sights, savings, and servility. *Annual Review of Anthropology, 18*, 307–344.

Crompton, J. L. (1979). Motivations for pleasure vacation. *Annals of Tourism Research, 6*(4), 408-424.

Crouch, D. (2002). Surrounded by place: Embodied encounters. In S. Coleman & M. Crang (Eds.), *Tourism: Between place and performance* (pp. 207–218). Berghahn Books.

Crouch, D. (2004). Tourist practices and performances. In A. A. Lew, C. M. Hall, & A. M. Williams (Eds.), *A companion to tourism* (pp. 85–95). Blackwell.

Cunha, M. C. da. (1994). *História dos Índios no Brasil.* São Paulo: Companhia das Letras.

Douglas, J. A. (2014). What's political ecology got to do with tourism? *Tourism Geographies, 16*(1), 18–22.

Dressler, W. (2014). Green governmentality and swidden decline in Palawan Island. *Transactions of the Institute of British Geographers, 39*(2), 250–264.

Duffus, D. A., & Dearden, P. (1990). Non-consumptive wildlife-oriented recreation… *Biological Conservation, 53*(3), 213-231.

Duffy, R. (2002). *A trip too far: Ecotourism, politics and exploitation*. Earthscan Publications.

Duffy, R. (2003). Neoliberalising nature: Global networks and conservation development in Madagascar. *Journal of Sustainable Tourism, 16*(3), 327–344.

Duffy, R., & Smith, M. (2003). *The ethics of tourism development.* Routledge.

Edensor, T. (2000). Staging tourism: Tourists as performers. *Annals of Tourism Research, 27*(2), 322–344.

Edensor, T. (2001). Performing tourism, staging tourism: (Re)producing tourist space and practice. *Tourist Studies, 1*(1), 59–81.

Elmhirst, R. (2011). Introducing new feminist political ecologies. *Geoforum, 42*(2), 129–132. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.geoforum.2011.01.006

Emerson, R. M., Fretz, R. I., & Shaw, L. L. (1995). *Writing ethnographic fieldnotes*. University of Chicago Press.

Fletcher, R. (2010). Neoliberal environmentality: Towards a poststructuralist political ecology of conservation. *Conservation and Society, 8*(3), 171–181.

Foster, J. B. (1990). *Making peace with the planet*. Pantheon Books.

Foucault, M. (1995). *Discipline and punish: The birth of the prison* (A. Sheridan, Trans.). Vintage. (Original work published 1975)

Foucault, M. (2003). *The birth of the clinic: An archaeology of medical perception* (A. M. Sheridan Smith, Trans.). Routledge. (Original work published 1963)

Goldman, M. (2005). *Imperial nature: The World Bank and struggles for social justice in the age of globalization*. Yale University Press.

Gössling, S. (2002). Human–environmental relations with tourism. *Annals of Tourism Research, 29*(2), 539–556.

Gössling, S. (2003). *Tourism and development in tropical islands: Political ecology perspectives*. CABI Publishing.

Gössling, S., Peters, P., & Scott, D. (2008). Consequences of climate policy for international tourist arrivals in developing countries. *Third World Quarterly, 29*(5), 873–901.

Grabher, G. (2004). Learning in projects, remembering in networks? Communality, sociality, and connectivity in project ecologies. *European Urban and Regional Studies, 11*(2), 103–123.

Granovetter, M. (1973). The strength of weak ties. *American Journal of Sociology, 78*(6), 1360–1380.

Halewood, C., & Hannam, K. (2001). Viking heritage tourism: Authenticity and commodification. *Annals of Tourism Research, 28*(3), 565–580.

Hall, C. M., & Higham, J. E. (2005). *Tourism, recreation, and climate change*. Channel View Publications.

Hall, C. M., Saarinen, J., & Gössling, S. (2012). *Tourism and climate change: Impacts, adaptation and mitigation*. Routledge.

Haraway, D. (1991). *Simians, cyborgs and women: The reinvention of nature*. Free Association Books.

Harvey, D. (2005). *A brief history of neoliberalism*. Oxford University Press.

Hetherington, K. (1997). In place of geometry: The materiality of place. In K. Hetherington & R. Munro (Eds.), *Ideas of difference: Social spaces and the labor of division* (pp. 183–199). Blackwell.

Hjalager, A.-M. (2000). Tourism destination and the concept of industrial districts. *Tourism and Hospitality Research, 2*(3), 199–213.

Igoe, J. (2013). Conservation, commodification and capitalism. In J. Igoe, D. Brockington, & R. Duffy (Eds.), *Nature unbound* (pp. 143–170). Earthscan.

Ingold, T. (2000). Making culture and weaving the world. In P. M. Graves-Brown (Ed.), *Matter, materiality and modern culture* (pp. 50–71). Routledge.

Instituto Socioambiental (ISA). (2022). *Territórios Wapichana e a Diversidade Biocultural em Roraima*. https://www.socioambiental.org

Jóhannesson, G. T., Skaptadóttir, U. D., & Benediktsson, K. (2003). Coping with social capital? The cultural economy of tourism in the North. *Sociologia Ruralis, 43*(1), 3–16.

Latour, B. (1991). Technology is society made durable. In J. Law (Ed.), *A sociology of monsters: Essays on power, technology and domination* (pp. 103–131). Routledge.

Latour, B. (1999). On recalling ANT. In J. Law & J. Hassard (Eds.), *Actor network theory and after* (pp. 15–25). Blackwell.

Latour, B. (2002). *Aramis, or the love of technology* (C. Porter, Trans.). Harvard University Press.

Latour, B. (2004). A dialog on actor–network theory with a (somewhat) Socratic professor. In C. Avgerou, C. Ciborra, & F. Land (Eds.), *The social study of ICT* (pp. 62–76). Oxford University Press.

Law, J. (1992). Notes on the theory of the actor network: Ordering, strategy and heterogeneity. Retrieved from http://www.lancaster.ac.uk/fass/resources/sociology-online-papers/papers/law-notes-on-ant.pdf

Law, J. (1992). Notes on the theory of the actor-network: Ordering, strategy, and heterogeneity. *Systems Practice, 5*(4), 379–393. https://doi.org/10.1007/BF01059830

Law, J. (1994), *Organising Modernity: Social Ordering and Social Theory*, Blackwell Publishers, Oxford.

Law, J. (1997). Traduction/trahison: Notes on ANT. Retrieved from http://www.lancaster.ac.uk/fass/resources/sociology-online-papers/papers/law-traduction-trahison.pdf

Law, J. (1999). After ANT: Complexity, naming and topology. In J. Law & J. Hassard (Eds.), *Actor network theory and after* (pp. 1–14). Blackwell.

Law, J. (2002). Objects and spaces. *Theory, Culture & Society, 19*(5–6), 91–105.

Law, J., & Mol, A. (2001). Situating technoscience: An inquiry into spatialities. *Environment and Planning D: Society and Space, 19*(5), 609–621.

Lévi-Strauss, C. (1977). *Structural anthropology* (C. Jacobson & B. G. Schoepf, Trans.). Penguin Books.

Lynch, M. (1993). *Scientific practice and ordinary action: Ethnomethodology and social studies of science*. Cambridge University Press.

McFarlane, B. L. (1994). Specialization and motivations of birdwatchers. *Wildlife Society Bulletin, 22*(3), 361-370.

Mostafanezhad, M., Norum, R., Shelton, E. J., & Thompson-Carr, A. (Eds.). (2016). *Political ecology of tourism: Community, power and the environment*. Routledge.

Mol, A. (1999). Ontological politics: A word and some questions. In J. Law & J. Hassard (Eds.), *Actor network theory and after* (pp. 74–89). Blackwell.

Moreira, T. (2004). Surgical monads: A social topology of the operating room. *Environment and Planning D: Society and Space, 22*(1), 53–69.

Murdoch, J. (1997). Inhuman/nonhuman/human: Actor-network theory and the prospects for a nondualistic and symmetrical perspective on nature and society. *Environment and Planning D: Society and Space, 15*(6), 731–756.

Nightingale, A. J. (2006). The nature of gender: Work, gender, and environment. *Environment and Planning D: Society and Space, 24*(2), 165–185. https://doi.org/10.1068/d01k

O'Neill, P., & Whatmore, S. (2000). The business of place: Networks of property, partnership and produce. *Geoforum, 31*, 121–136.

Prayag, G., & Ryan, C. (2012). Antecedents of tourists' loyalty to Mauritius… *Journal of Travel Research, 51*(3), 342-356.

Rivera González, Gibrán, Cox, Andrew M., & Flores Zambada, Ricardo. (2012). A human resources project implementation: An actor-network theory perspective. *Contaduría y administración, 57*(3), 9-39. Recuperado en 24 de abril de 2025, de http://www.scielo.org.mx/scielo.php?script=sci_arttext&pid=S0186-10422012000300002&lng=es&tlng=en.

Rocheleau, D., Thomas-Slayter, B., & Wangari, E. (1996). *Feminist Political Ecology: Global Issues and Local Experiences*. London: Routledge.

Ryan, R. M., & Deci, E. L. (2000). Self-determination theory and the facilitation of intrinsic motivation… *American Psychologist, 55*(1), 68-78.

Scott, D., & Shafer, C. S. (2001). Recreation specialization: A critical look at the construct. *Journal of Leisure Research, 33*, 319-343.

Sharrock, W., & Anderson, B. (1986). *The ethnomethodologists*. Ellis Horwood.

Shaw, G., & Williams, A. M. (2004). *Tourism and tourism spaces*. SAGE Publications.

Sheller, M., & Urry, J. (Eds.). (2004). *Tourism mobilities: Places to play, places in play*. Routledge.

Skaptadóttir, U. D. (2000). Women coping with change in an Icelandic fishing community: A case study. *Women's Studies International Forum, 23*(3), 311–321.

Skaptadóttir, U. D., & Jóhannesson, G. T. (2004). The role of municipalities in innovation. In N. Aarsæther (Ed.), *Innovations in the Nordic periphery* (pp. 63–88). Nordregio.

Steven, R., Pickering, C., & Castley, J. G. (2011). A review of the impacts of nature-based tourism on birds. *Journal of Environmental Management, 92*(10), 2287-2294.

Thrift, N. (1999). Steps to an ecology of place. In D. Massey, J. Allen, & P. Sarre (Eds.), *Human geography today* (pp. 295–322). Polity Press.

Tinsley, R., & Lynch, P. (2001). Small tourism business networks and destination development. *International Journal of Hospitality Management, 20*(4), 367–378.

Tsing, A. (2005). *Friction: An ethnography of global connection*. Princeton University Press.

Urry, J. (2000). *Sociology beyond societies: Mobilities for the twenty-first century*. Routledge.

Urry, J. (2002). *The tourist gaze* (2nd ed.). SAGE Publications.

Viegas, S. M. (2016). *O nativo já foi moderno: Os Kaiabi e o regime da diferença*. São Paulo: Edusp.

Watts, M. J., & Peet, R. (2004). *Liberation ecologies: Environment, development, social movements* (2nd ed.). Routledge.

Zimmerer, K. S. (2006). Cultural ecology: At the interface with political ecology – the new geographies of environmental governance and globalization. *Progress in Human Geography, 30*(1), 63–78.

Chapter 5

Birdwatching: Ethical Landscapes in Wildlife Tourism

Ismar Borges de Lima
Universidade Estadual de Roraima-UERR, Brazil & RECINATUR Foundation. Email: ismar@uerr.edu.br

Armin Marcelo de la Rosa Patiño – RECINATUR Foundation – Executive President. Email: marcelodelarosa@recinatur.org

Summary

This chapter examines the ethical dimensions of birdwatching within the wider context of wildlife tourism, highlighting the moral challenges that arise from human–animal interactions in both natural and managed settings. It explores how birdwatching, though often seen as a low-impact activity, can still lead to disturbance, commodification, and exploitation of avian life if not approached responsibly. Drawing from environmental ethics and ecotourism principles, the chapter emphasizes the dynamic relationship between ethical theory and practical application—showing how concepts like animal welfare, rights, and the precautionary principle shape, and are shaped by, real-world tourism practices. By analyzing ethical codes, management dilemmas, and emerging frameworks, the chapter calls for more reflexive, context-sensitive approaches to birdwatching that prioritize both ecological integrity and moral responsibility. It ultimately advocates for ethically grounded practices by birders, guides, and operators, fostering more just and sustainable relationships between people, birds, and nature.

5.0. Introduction

Wildlife tourism, a rapidly expanding sector of the global tourism industry [1], operates at the complex intersection of human leisure, economic activity, environmental conservation, and animal ethics. It encompasses a diverse range of experiences, from observing animals in their natural habitats (in situ) to encounters in captive settings (ex situ), and involves activities ranging from non-consumptive viewing and photography to more consumptive practices like hunting and fishing.[1] While offering potential benefits for conservation awareness, funding, and local livelihoods [3], wildlife tourism inherently raises profound ethical questions about human interactions with non-human animals and the natural world.

Historically, ethical considerations regarding animals in tourism were often secondary to economic or experiential goals.[5] However, growing societal awareness of animal sentience, welfare concerns, and the broader ecological crisis has spurred increased scrutiny of industry practices.[6] Tourists themselves, while often motivated by a desire to connect with wildlife, may lack the awareness to recognize negative impacts or unethical practices.[1] This report delves into the ethical dimensions of wildlife tourism, aiming to provide a comprehensive analysis that integrates established ethical theories, examines their application across diverse tourism contexts, explores inherent theoretical tensions, and considers emerging frameworks that may offer new pathways toward more responsible and just interactions. By bridging conceptual understanding with practical realities, this analysis seeks to illuminate the multifaceted ethical landscape of wildlife tourism and inform efforts towards greater sustainability and moral consideration for all involved – human, animal, and environment.

5.1. The Interplay of Concept and Approach in Wildlife Tourism Ethics

Understanding the ethical dimensions of wildlife tourism necessitates navigating the relationship between abstract ethical **concepts** (theories, principles, values) and concrete ethical **approaches** (practical applications, guidelines, management strategies). This relationship is not merely linear, where theory dictates practice, but rather dialectical and interactive. Theoretical reasoning shapes how we conceptualize animal value, welfare, rights, and environmental obligations, which in turn informs the development of specific approaches like codes of conduct or management plans. Conversely, the practical challenges and ethical dilemmas encountered in real-world tourism scenarios – such as managing human-wildlife conflict [9], addressing the impacts of tourist behavior [6], or balancing economic needs with conservation goals [4] – often reveal the limitations of existing theoretical frameworks and drive the need for conceptual refinement or the development of new ethical perspectives.

For instance, the emergence of ethical codes for specific activities like birdwatching [10] or whale watching [Garrod & Fennell 2004 referenced in list] represents an approach driven by the conceptual understanding that certain human behaviors can cause stress or harm to animals (a concept informed by welfare ethics). Similarly, the development of frameworks like the Precautionary Principle [12] offers an approach to decision-making under uncertainty, stemming from the conceptual recognition of potential irreversible harm and the limitations of scientific prediction. The ongoing debate surrounding captive wildlife attractions [13] reflects a clash between different conceptualizations of animal rights, welfare, and the justification for using animals for human purposes (e.g., entertainment, education, conservation).

Acknowledging this interactive relationship is crucial. Ethical approaches in wildlife tourism are not simply technical applications of pre-defined rules; they are embedded within, and shaped by, underlying conceptual frameworks and value systems. Simultaneously, the effectiveness and ethical adequacy of any approach must be continually evaluated against both its practical outcomes and its conceptual coherence, leading to a dynamic process of ethical reflection, adaptation, and evolution within the field.

5.2. Theoretical Foundations: Navigating Ethical Frameworks

A robust ethical analysis of wildlife tourism requires engaging with fundamental theories from both animal ethics and environmental ethics. These theories provide distinct lenses through which to evaluate the moral standing of animals and nature, and the obligations humans have towards them. While often overlapping, they also present contrasting viewpoints that significantly influence how ethical dilemmas in tourism are framed and addressed (Pagel & Lück, 2022).

5.2.1. Anthropocentrism and Its Limits

Historically, many human interactions with animals, including in tourism, have been implicitly or explicitly grounded in **anthropocentrism**, a worldview that places human interests and values at the center of moral consideration.[15] From this perspective, the non-human world holds primarily instrumental value – its worth is derived from its usefulness to humans.[18] While some anthropocentric approaches advocate for environmental protection based on human self-interest (e.g., maintaining resources for future generations or preserving aesthetic beauty for human enjoyment), they typically deny intrinsic value to non-human entities.[20] The traditional **conservation ethic**, associated with figures like Gifford Pinchot, exemplifies this, promoting the "wise use" and controlled management of natural resources for sustained human benefit.[22] While pragmatic, purely anthropocentric frameworks are increasingly criticized for failing to adequately address the moral claims of animals themselves or the inherent value of ecosystems, potentially justifying practices that exploit animals or degrade environments if perceived human benefits outweigh the costs.[19]

5.2.2. Animal-Centric Ethics: Welfare, Rights, and Utility

Moving beyond anthropocentrism, several ethical theories focus directly on the moral status of individual animals.

- **Animal Welfare:** This perspective asserts that sentient animals (those capable of experiencing pleasure and pain) deserve moral consideration, focusing on their quality of life and minimizing suffering.[26] The **Five Freedoms** framework, developed in the 1960s, provides a foundational benchmark, outlining freedom from hunger/thirst, discomfort, pain/injury/disease, fear/distress, and freedom to express normal behavior.[28] More recently, the **Five Domains** model has evolved from this, placing greater emphasis on the animal's subjective mental state ('how the animal feels') and aiming not just to minimize negative experiences but also to promote positive ones (e.g., opportunities for rewarding activities).[30] Animal welfare approaches often permit human use of animals provided their welfare needs are met, leading to debates about acceptable standards in various tourism contexts, such as sled dog operations [32] or elephant tourism.[33] Fennell (2022d) argues for the importance of "animal welfare literacy" within tourism studies.

- **Animal Rights:** This deontological approach, most notably articulated by Tom Regan, argues that certain animals possess inherent value and moral rights, similar to humans.[26] Regan's concept of a **"subject-of-a-life"** identifies individuals (typically mammals over one year old) who have beliefs, desires, memory, feelings, self-consciousness, and a life that matters to them, regardless of their utility to others.[35] Such beings, possessing **inherent value** equally [37], have a right to respectful treatment, which includes the right not to be harmed or used merely as a means to others' ends.[37] This perspective fundamentally challenges most forms of animal use in tourism, including captivity, performances, and even some forms of non-consumptive interaction if they compromise the animal's autonomy or well-being.[38] While Regan argues all subjects-of-a-life have equal inherent value, he allows that the *value of lives* can differ based on opportunities for satisfaction, leading to controversial principles (like the 'worse-off principle') for resolving conflicts between right-holders.[37]

- **Utilitarianism (Animal Liberation):** Associated primarily with Peter Singer, this approach applies utilitarian principles to animals.[39] The core idea is the **"equal consideration of interests"**.[40] This principle states that the interests of all sentient beings (those capable of suffering or experiencing enjoyment) should be given equal moral weight, regardless of species.[39] Actions are judged based on their consequences, aiming to maximize overall pleasure or interest satisfaction and minimize pain or frustration for all affected.[39] This challenges **speciesism** – the unjustified bias favouring human interests over the similar interests of non-humans.[39] While not necessarily granting animals 'rights' in the same sense as Regan, Singer's utilitarianism demands a radical shift in how we treat animals, condemning practices like factory farming or experimentation where animal suffering outweighs any human benefit.[43] In tourism, it would require weighing the pleasure or economic benefit derived by humans against the suffering or interest frustration experienced by the animals involved.

5.2.3. Nature-Centric Ethics: Biocentrism and Ecocentrism

Other non-anthropocentric theories broaden the scope of moral concern beyond individual animals to encompass all life or entire ecological systems.

- **Biocentrism:** This life-centered ethic extends moral standing or inherent value to **all living organisms**, simply by virtue of being alive.[15] Proponents like Paul Taylor argue that all living things have a "good of their own" – characteristic goals and purposes towards which they strive – making life itself the non-arbitrary criterion for moral considerability.[16] Biocentrism typically focuses on individual living creatures [44] and rejects human superiority.[15] While some versions advocate for "biospheric egalitarianism" (equal right to live and blossom) [44], others allow for differentiation in moral significance.[44] It contrasts with anthropocentrism by valuing life intrinsically, not just instrumentally [16], and differs from sentience-based views by including non-sentient life like plants.

- **Ecocentrism:** This holistic ethic shifts the primary focus of moral concern from individuals (human or non-human) to **ecological wholes**, such as ecosystems, biotic communities, species, and ecological processes.[46] Aldo Leopold's **"Land Ethic"** is a foundational example, famously stating: "A thing is right when it tends to preserve the integrity, stability, and beauty of the biotic community. It is wrong when it tends otherwise.".[47] Ecocentrism emphasizes interdependence [15] and views humans as "plain members and citizens" of the biotic community, not conquerors.[49] Value is located in the health and functioning of the system as a whole.[48] This perspective contrasts sharply with individualistic ethics (both animal and traditional human ethics) by potentially justifying actions that harm individuals (e.g., culling abundant species) if deemed necessary for the good of the ecosystem.[50]

5.2.4. Contrasting Perspectives

These theories offer fundamentally different grounds for moral status and value:

- **Anthropocentrism:** Human interests/rationality.
- **Animal Welfare:** Sentience, capacity to suffer/flourish.
- **Animal Rights:** Being a "subject-of-a-life," inherent value.
- **Utilitarianism:** Sentience, capacity for interest satisfaction/frustration.
- **Biocentrism:** Life itself, having a "good of its own."
- **Ecocentrism:** Contribution to ecosystem integrity, stability, beauty.

These differences lead to divergent conclusions about the ethical permissibility of various wildlife tourism practices. An animal rights perspective might condemn keeping dolphins in captivity outright [14], while a welfare perspective might permit it if stringent welfare standards (Five Domains) are met.[30] An ecocentric view might prioritize the conservation impact of a dolphin program over the welfare of individual captive animals, or conversely, might oppose wild dolphin feeding programs if they disrupt ecological balance, even if the individual dolphins seem unharmed.[27] Understanding these distinct theoretical underpinnings is crucial for navigating the complex ethical terrain of wildlife tourism.

5.3. Theoretical Tensions and Practical Dilemmas

The diversity of non-anthropocentric ethical frameworks inevitably leads to theoretical tensions and practical conflicts, particularly between approaches prioritizing the well-being or rights of individual animals and those focusing on the health of ecological wholes (ecosystems, species). These tensions are not merely academic; they manifest in real-world wildlife tourism management dilemmas, forcing difficult choices with significant ethical implications.

5.3.1. The Individual vs. The Whole: A Core Conflict

The most prominent tension lies between **individualistic ethics** (animal welfare, animal rights, utilitarianism focused on individual sentience) and **holistic ethics** (ecocentrism, and sometimes biocentrism when applied systemically).[50] Individualistic approaches ground moral status in properties possessed by individual organisms (sentience, consciousness, being a subject-of-a-life).[26] Consequently, the primary moral concern is the treatment and experiences of these individuals – minimizing their suffering, respecting their rights, considering their interests equally.[37]

Ecocentrism, conversely, locates primary value in the ecological system – the biotic community, ecosystem processes, species integrity.[47] The moral significance of an individual organism is often viewed instrumentally, based on its contribution (or threat) to the overall health, stability, and biodiversity of the system.[50] As environmental philosopher J. Baird Callicott noted, this creates a "triangular affair" where animal ethics, in its focus on individuals, sometimes appears closer to traditional anthropocentric ethics than to holistic environmental ethics.[51]

5.4. Manifestations in Wildlife Management and Tourism

These theoretical divergences translate directly into conflicts over management practices often intertwined with tourism:

- **Culling and Population Control:** Debates over culling animals – whether native species deemed overabundant (like deer in areas lacking predators [51], elephants potentially causing habitat damage [52], or Canada geese on golf courses [52]) or non-native invasive species – starkly illustrate the conflict.
    - o *Ecocentric Justification:* Culling may be supported from an ecocentric perspective if it is deemed necessary to protect ecosystem integrity, preserve biodiversity, prevent habitat degradation, or protect endangered native species from competition or predation by the culled species.[48] The focus is on the health of the 'biotic community'.[49]
    - o *Individualistic Opposition:* From animal rights or welfare perspectives, culling sentient individuals is highly problematic, regardless of ecological justifications.[37] It involves intentionally causing harm and death to beings considered to have moral standing.[52] Utilitarian analyses would weigh the suffering caused by culling against the suffering prevented (e.g., starvation due to overpopulation, harm to other species), leading to complex calculations.[57] Critics argue that human actions often created the imbalance in the first place (e.g., removing predators, introducing invasive species), making it morally questionable for animals to bear the cost of human mismanagement.[52]

- **Invasive Species Management:** The management of invasive species, which often cause significant ecological and economic harm [53], is a particularly contentious area.
    - *Arguments for Eradication/Control:* Ecocentric and species-centric arguments strongly favor controlling or eradicating invasives to protect native biodiversity and ecosystem function.[54] Utilitarian arguments might also support removal if the harm caused by the invasive species (to native wildlife, ecosystems, and potentially human interests) outweighs the harm caused by the control methods.[57] Anthropocentric concerns about economic damage or human health also play a role.[54]

    - *Ethical Concerns about Methods:* Animal welfare and rights advocates raise serious concerns about the methods used for control, which often involve killing and potential suffering.[53] There is a call for more humane methods and questioning the framing of invasives as 'pests' devoid of moral consideration.[56] Some argue that humans, as the agents of introduction, bear responsibility and should seek non-lethal solutions where possible, or at least ensure methods are as humane as possible.[52] The very concept of 'invasive' versus 'native' can also be debated, particularly over longer timescales.[58]

- **Habitat Conservation vs. Individual Welfare:** Conflicts can arise where protecting habitat for endangered species (an ecocentric goal) might negatively impact the welfare of individuals of another, more common species. Callicott's example of prioritizing an endangered plant species over common, sentient rabbits that threaten it exemplifies this.[50] Similarly, tourism development aimed at funding conservation (e.g., building lodges in a park) might displace common wildlife or restrict access for local communities, raising both animal welfare and social justice issues alongside ecocentric goals.

- **Predator-Prey Dynamics:** Environmental ethics generally accepts predation as a natural and necessary ecological process [51], while some animal ethics perspectives struggle with the suffering involved. This can lead to disagreements about interventions, such as rescuing prey animals or controlling predators, particularly where tourism provides close views of such events.

5.4.1. "Environmental Fascism" Concerns

A significant criticism leveled against strong forms of ecocentrism is that prioritizing the ecological whole over individuals could lead to "environmental fascism" – justifying sacrificing individual (human or non-human) interests or rights for the perceived good of the environment.[19] While proponents argue this is a caricature, the potential for holistic ethics to devalue individuals remains a critical point of tension and requires careful consideration of safeguards and proportionality.[19]

Navigating these tensions requires acknowledging the validity of different ethical concerns. Solutions often involve seeking compromises, employing the Precautionary Principle when consequences are uncertain [12], prioritizing non-lethal methods where feasible, and engaging in transparent decision-making processes that consider diverse values and stakeholder perspectives, including those of local communities.[54] The inherent conflicts underscore the complexity of ethical decision-making in wildlife tourism, where simple answers are rare, and trade-offs are often unavoidable.

The Table 5.1 below presents a conceptual and thematic overview of key categories within the growing body of literature on environmental and animal ethics as applied to wildlife tourism and birdwatching tourism (avitourism). These categories synthesize diverse ethical approaches and frameworks, ranging from foundational philosophical theories to applied considerations in tourism practices, education, conservation, and corporate responsibility. Each category is accompanied by a concise description and a selection of representative references, offering a structured entry point for scholars, practitioners, and students interested in exploring the moral dimensions of human–animal encounters in tourism contexts. Together, they reflect the interdisciplinary and evolving nature of this field, highlighting critical issues such as animal agency, welfare, representation, and multispecies relationships.

Table 5.1 - Categories in Environmental Animal Ethics and Wildlife Tourism

Category	Description	Key References
1. Foundational Ethical Frameworks	Explores fundamental theories of environmental and animal ethics (e.g., utilitarianism, rights-based ethics, care ethics, capabilities approach) applied to wildlife and birdwatching tourism.	Fennell (2012a, 2024), Regan (2004), Donovan (2006), Copp (2005)
2. Animal Agency and Subjectivity	Focuses on animals as sentient agents with subjective experiences, emphasizing their roles in multispecies encounters and tourism settings.	Notzke (2019), Franklin (2008), Mullin (1999), Urbanik (2012)
3. Multispecies and Relational Ethics	Examines the ethical dimensions of human-animal relationships through relational and posthumanist lenses, particularly in husky sledding and equine tourism.	Äijälä (2019, 2021), Dashper (2020a, 2020b), Haanpää et al. (2021)
4. Stakeholder and Rights Approaches	Extends the stakeholder model to include non-human animals, advocating for their inclusion in tourism decision-making and welfare policies.	Sheppard & Fennell (2019), Tallberg et al. (2022), Fennell (2014)
5. Ethics of Wildlife Tourism Practices	Critically analyzes ethical challenges in wildlife and birdwatching tourism including feeding, disturbance, and commodification of animals.	Curtin (2006), Burns (2015, 2017), Pagel & Lück (2022), Rizzolo (2021b)
6. Animal Welfare and Well-being	Covers tourism-related impacts on animal welfare, use of ethical codes, informed consent, and welfare literacy among guides and tourists.	Fennell (2022a, 2022d, 2023a), Garrod & Fennell (2004), WSPA (2011)
7. Education and Behavioral Change	Investigates how wildlife tourism can foster environmental learning and ethical awareness among visitors, using behavioral and pedagogical models.	Ballantyne et al. (2007, 2011), Orams (1996), Holland et al. (1998)
8. Ethics in Conservation and Sustainability	Connects animal ethics with broader conservation goals and debates on sustainability in tourism, especially in postcolonial and neocolonial contexts.	Bulbeck (2005), Mkono (2011, 2019), Chimuka (2019), Bradshaw & Bekoff (2001)
9. Corporate and Institutional Ethics	Explores the moral obligations of tourism firms, regulations, certifications, and CSR	De Grosbois & Fennell (2022), Kenehan (2019),

Category	Description	Key References
	regarding animal welfare in tourism operations.	Government of British Columbia (2023)
10. Tourism Performance and Representation	Analyzes how animals are represented, performed, and consumed in tourism narratives, media, and visitor interactions.	Baker (2001), Yudina & Grimwood (2016), Cohen (2009)

Source: Table prepared by the author, 2025, based on the literature review, 28th, April, 2025.

5.5 Applying Ethics in Practice: Case Studies Across Wildlife Tourism Sectors

Ethical theories find concrete expression – and face significant tests – in the diverse practices of the wildlife tourism industry. Examining specific sectors reveals recurring themes of disturbance, commodification, welfare challenges, and the complex impacts of tourist behavior and gaze.

5.5.1. The Tourist Gaze and Its Influence

The concept of the **"tourist gaze,"** as developed by John Urry, refers to the socially organized ways in which tourists visually consume places and experiences, seeking out the 'out-of-the-ordinary'.[61] This gaze is not neutral; it is shaped by cultural expectations, media representations, and the tourism industry itself.[61] In wildlife tourism, the gaze often manifests as a desire for specific types of encounters: close proximity, dramatic behaviors, 'perfect' photographic opportunities, and guaranteed sightings.[1] This demand, driven by the desire to capture and share the extraordinary, significantly influences the supply side of wildlife tourism. Operators may feel pressured to provide experiences that satisfy this gaze, potentially leading to practices that compromise animal welfare or ecological integrity, such as habituating animals to human presence, using food lures or baiting [64], managing habitats for visibility rather than ecological health, or staging encounters.[1] The tourist gaze, therefore, can be understood as a powerful force shaping the ethical landscape of the industry, often prioritizing the human visual experience over the needs and natural behaviors of the wildlife being viewed.[63] The power dynamics inherent in the gaze, where the tourist observes the 'other' (animal or local culture), further complicate the ethical dimensions.[63]

- **Wildlife Selfies:** The rise of social media has amplified the impact of the tourist gaze through the phenomenon of "wildlife selfies".[6] These images, where the tourist is the primary focus alongside an animal [68], represent a potent convergence of the tourist gaze, the desire for shareable online content (performativity), and the commodification of animals as props for human experience.[68] While seemingly harmless to the user, the demand for such selfies fuels a problematic industry where animals may be illegally captured, kept in poor conditions, handled excessively, drugged, or subjected to procedures like teeth/claw removal for safety.[6] The suffering involved is often hidden from the tourist.[3] Furthermore, posting these selfies normalizes close, hands-on interactions, potentially encouraging others to seek similar experiences and even increasing demand for exotic pets or wildlife products.[68] Platforms like Instagram have introduced warning pop-ups for certain hashtags (e.g., #slothselfie, #elephantselfie), but their effectiveness in changing user perceptions or behavior appears limited.[6] This highlights a disconnect between the visual representation on social media and the often harsh realities of the animal's experience, driven by the consumptive nature of the selfie trend.[68]

5.5.2. Marine Wildlife Tourism

The marine environment presents unique challenges for wildlife tourism, as tourists enter an alien environment where their impacts may be less obvious.[27] This sector, particularly focused on cetaceans (whales and dolphins) and large fish like whale sharks, faces significant ethical issues related to disturbance.

- **Disturbance Issues:** Vessel traffic and in-water activities (swimming, snorkeling) can significantly alter the behavior of marine wildlife.[9] Studies have documented short-term responses such as increased vigilance, avoidance behaviors (changes in direction, diving), increased energy expenditure (acceleration), and disruption of critical activities like foraging and resting.[71] For instance, boat presence has been shown to reduce foraging activity in bottlenose dolphins [71] and whale sharks.[71] Chronic disturbance can lead to longer-term consequences like displacement from important habitats.[72] The **Population Consequences of Disturbance (PCoD)** framework is used to assess how these short-term behavioral changes might translate into impacts on individual health (e.g., energy balance) and ultimately affect population dynamics (vital rates like survival and reproduction).[72] This framework highlights that the severity of impacts is context-dependent, influenced by factors like population size, whether the population is closed or open to migration, and resource availability.[72] This complexity makes regulation challenging, as simple observation of avoidance behavior does not automatically equate to a significant population-level threat.[72]
- **Regulation & Management:** Recognizing these impacts, various codes of conduct and regulations have been developed for marine wildlife viewing, particularly whale and dolphin watching [Garrod & Fennell 2004 referenced in list]. These often include guidelines on approach distances, speed limits, time limits near animals, prohibitions on feeding or touching, and the establishment of sanctuaries or time/area closures to protect critical habitats or sensitive periods (e.g., resting, breeding).[70] However, the effectiveness of these measures depends on compliance and enforcement, which can be challenging.[74] The PCoD framework suggests that regulations may need to be tailored to specific populations and contexts rather than applying a universal standard.[72]

5.5.3. Captivity for Tourism

Keeping wild animals in captivity for tourism purposes remains a contentious issue, involving facilities from traditional zoos to specialized attractions like dolphinariums.

- **Zoos and Aquariums:** These institutions often cite goals of conservation, education, and research alongside entertainment [Maple & Perdue 2023 referenced in list]. However, ethical debates persist regarding the welfare implications of confinement for wild animals, the educational effectiveness of exhibits, and the actual contribution to in situ conservation [Hall et al. 2004a referenced in list]. The quality of care and adherence to welfare standards can vary significantly.

- **Dolphinariums:** The practice of keeping cetaceans, particularly dolphins, in tanks for public display and performance faces strong ethical opposition.[14] Concerns center on the inherent limitations of captive environments for highly intelligent, social, and wide-ranging marine mammals. Issues include severely restricted space compared to natural ranges, artificial social groupings, potential for stress and associated health problems, and the ethics of training animals for entertainment purposes.[27] Hughes (2001) documented shifts in public values and industry practices in the UK, moving away from purely entertainment-focused dolphin shows towards models emphasizing conservation and education, though the fundamental ethical objections to captivity remain for many.[14] The justification often hinges on whether the educational or alleged conservation benefits outweigh the welfare compromises inherent in captivity.[27]

5.5.4. Animals as Labor in Tourism

Many tourism experiences rely on animals performing work, such as providing transport or participating in interactive activities. This raises specific ethical concerns related to training, working conditions, and overall welfare.

- **Elephant Tourism:** Predominantly found in Asia, activities like elephant riding, bathing, feeding, and shows are popular tourist attractions.[76] However, this industry is fraught with severe ethical problems. A key issue is the traditional training method known as 'phajaan' or 'the crush,' involving physical and psychological abuse to break the young elephant's spirit and establish dominance.[33] Even beyond initial training, captive elephants often suffer from poor living conditions, including prolonged chaining (often on concrete), inadequate nutrition and veterinary care, social deprivation from natural herd structures, and high levels of stress leading to stereotypic behaviors (e.g., swaying, head-bobbing).[76] Studies indicate high rates of PTSD in elephants formerly used for riding.[76] Furthermore, close contact poses significant public health risks due to potential transmission of zoonotic diseases like tuberculosis (TB) between elephants and humans.[76] While some operators claim adherence to welfare standards, enforcement is often weak, and NGOs raise concerns about the inherent cruelty of many practices.[33] There is a growing movement towards supporting genuine sanctuaries that prioritize rescue and rehabilitation over tourist interaction, contrasting sharply with exploitative commercial venues.[13] The politics surrounding regulation involve complex North-South dynamics and debates over universal versus local standards.[33]

- **Sled Dog Operations:** Often marketed as providing authentic wilderness experiences, particularly in Nordic regions [Amador Fanaro 2020 referenced in list], the sled dog industry also faces ethical scrutiny. High-profile cases of neglect and mass culling, such as the incident in British Columbia following the 2010 Olympics [77], highlighted potential welfare issues. Concerns include housing conditions, nutrition, veterinary care, the intense physical demands of pulling sleds, and the treatment of dogs at the end of their working lives (potential for culling due to economic pressures).[32] The view of dogs primarily as tools or commodities for tourism has been critiqued [Carr 2014 referenced in list]. However, there are also positive developments. In response to incidents and growing awareness, mandatory standards of care and codes of practice have been established in some jurisdictions (e.g., British Columbia [79], Finland [80]). Research increasingly focuses on the human-animal relationship in sledding, emphasizing care ethics, multispecies ethnography, and the dogs' own experiences and agency. Some operators actively promote ethical practices, including 'no-kill' policies and adoption programs for retired dogs, acting as advocates for industry change.[32]

These examples demonstrate that ethical considerations must be applied contextually across the diverse landscape of wildlife tourism, addressing issues ranging from the subtle influences of the tourist gaze to the overt welfare challenges faced by animals used for labor or display.

5.5.5. Avitourism Ethics: A Closer Look

Avitourism, or birdwatching tourism, represents a significant and rapidly growing niche within the broader categories of wildlife tourism and ecotourism [Hvenegaard et al. 1989 referenced in list]. While often perceived as a relatively benign activity, birdwatching can also pose ethical challenges related to disturbance, habitat impact, and responsible conduct. Recognizing these potential issues, key organizations within the birding community have developed detailed codes of ethics to guide behavior.

5.6. Ethical Codes of Conduct

Major birding organizations, notably the **American Birding Association (ABA)** (see the the complete ABA Code of Birding Ethics at section 5.6.1.), and **BirdLife International** (along with its national partners like BirdLife Australia and affiliates like the Oriental Bird Club), have established codes of conduct or ethical guidelines for birders. These codes share several core principles:

- **Primacy of Bird Welfare:** The well-being of the birds must always come first, superseding the birder's desire for a sighting, photograph, or list addition.[81]
- **Minimize Disturbance and Stress:** Birders should actively avoid actions that cause stress, disrupt natural behavior (feeding, nesting, roosting), or expose birds to danger.[10] This often involves maintaining appropriate distances.[11]
- **Habitat Protection:** Minimize impact on habitats by staying on trails, avoiding trampling vegetation, and respecting sensitive areas.[10]
- **Legal and Social Responsibility:** Obey all laws and regulations, respect private property rights, and interact courteously with landowners and other people encountered.[10]
- **Conservation Ethos:** Support bird conservation efforts and promote bird-friendly practices beyond active birding (e.g., preventing window strikes, native landscaping).[10]
- **Community Respect:** Act as ethical role models, share knowledge (especially with beginners), report sightings honestly, and approach perceived unethical behavior by others constructively.[10]

These general principles are translated into specific guidelines for common birding activities:

- **Nesting Birds:** Exercise extreme caution near nests and colonies. Maintain a significant distance to avoid causing parents to flush or abandon the nest. Never touch or alter the nest or surrounding vegetation.[10] Some codes, particularly for photography, explicitly prohibit publishing photos depicting nests with eggs or young chicks, reflecting the high potential for disturbance.[87]

- **Playback and Audio Lures:** The use of recorded bird calls or sounds ("playback" or "pishing") to attract birds is a particularly sensitive issue. Codes strongly advise limiting its use, especially in heavily birded areas, for rare or threatened species, or during the breeding season when birds are most vulnerable to stress and distraction.[10] Playback should never be used near active nests. If used, duration should be short and volume kept low.[11] BirdLife Australia generally discourages playback for recreational observation [11], and BirdLife Photography's code prohibits attracting birds with playback for photographic purposes.[87]

- **Photography and Recording:** Ethical photography emphasizes minimizing disturbance. This involves using telephoto lenses to maintain distance, avoiding flash photography (especially with nocturnal birds like owls), and refraining from deliberately flushing birds or pursuing them aggressively.[11] Removing GPS metadata from photos of sensitive or rare species is also recommended to prevent disturbance at specific locations.[84]

- **Sharing Information:** While sharing observations is generally encouraged for contributing to citizen science and community knowledge [10], caution is urged when reporting the locations of rare, threatened, or nesting birds. The potential for increased disturbance from numerous visitors must be weighed, and sensitive location information should sometimes be withheld or shared only with conservation authorities.[81]

5.6.1. ABA Code of Birding Ethics

Below the readers can access the complete ethics code practiced by ABA – American Birding Association as on the 27th of April, 2025.

Practice and promote respectful, enjoyable, and thoughtful birding as defined in this code

1. Respect and promote birds and their environment.

(a) Support the conservation of birds and their habitats. Engage in and promote bird-friendly practices whenever possible, such as keeping cats and other domestic animals indoors or controlled, acting to prevent window strikes, maintaining safe feeding stations, landscaping with native plants, drinking shade-grown coffee, and advocating for conservation policies. Be mindful of any negative environmental impacts of your activities, including contributing to climate change. Reduce or offset such impacts as much as you are able.

(b) Avoid stressing birds or exposing them to danger. Be particularly cautious around active nests and nesting colonies, roosts, display sites, and feeding sites. Limit the use of recordings and other audio methods of attracting birds, particularly in heavily birded areas, for species that are rare in the area, and for species that are threatened or endangered. Always exercise caution and restraint when photographing, recording, or otherwise approaching birds.

(c) Always minimize habitat disturbance. Consider the benefits of staying on trails, preserving snags, and similar practices.

2. Respect and promote the birding community and its individual members.

(a) Be an exemplary ethical role model by following this Code and leading by example. Always bird and report with honesty and integrity.

(b) Respect the interests, rights, and skill levels of fellow birders, as well as people participating in other outdoor activities. Freely share your knowledge and experience and be especially helpful to beginning birders.

(c) Share bird observations freely, provided such reporting would not violate other sections of this Code, as birders, ornithologists, and conservationists derive considerable benefit from publicly available bird sightings.

(d) Approach instances of perceived unethical birding behavior with sensitivity and respect; try to resolve the matter in a positive manner, keeping in mind that perspectives vary. Use the situation as an opportunity to teach by example and to introduce more people to this Code.

(e) In group birding situations, promote knowledge by everyone in the group of the practices in this Code and ensure that the group does not unduly interfere with others using the same area.

3. Respect and promote the law and the rights of others.

(a) Never enter private property without the landowner's permission. Respect the interests of and interact positively with people living in the area where you are birding.

(b) Familiarize yourself with and follow all laws, rules, and regulations governing activities at your birding location. In particular, be aware of regulations related to birds, such as disturbance of protected nesting areas or sensitive habitats, and the use of audio or food lures.

Birding should be fun and help build a better future for birds, for birders, and for all people. Birds and birding opportunities are shared resources that should be open and accessible to all

Source: American Birding Association, Code of Birding Ethics accessed 27 April 2025

5.6.2. Assessing Effectiveness and Challenges

Despite the detailed nature of these codes, their effectiveness in ensuring ethical behavior faces several challenges:

- **Compliance Issues:** Codes are typically voluntary guidelines rather than legally binding regulations.[85] Compliance relies on individual awareness, understanding, and ethical commitment. Some birders may be unaware of the codes, misunderstand the potential impacts of their actions, or deliberately disregard guidelines in pursuit of specific goals (e.g., getting a rare bird on their list, capturing a challenging photograph).[74] Influencing behavior remains a significant hurdle.

- **Enforcement Challenges:** Monitoring birders' behavior across vast natural areas is impractical, and there is usually no formal mechanism for enforcing voluntary codes.[74] While egregious violations might breach wildlife protection laws, much unethical behavior falls into a grey area. Consequently, enforcement often relies heavily on informal social mechanisms within the birding community itself – peer pressure, education by experienced birders, and the collective promotion of an ethical culture.[10] The willingness of birders to constructively address unethical behavior they witness is crucial but can be inconsistent.[10]

- **Code Design and Interpretation:** While codes aim for clarity, some guidelines may be open to interpretation (e.g., what constitutes an "appropriate distance"?). Balancing strict protection with ensuring accessibility and enjoyment for a diverse range of participants can be difficult.[89] Effective implementation requires not just the code itself, but also ongoing education and discussion within the community to foster understanding and buy-in.[10] Furthermore, considerations of accessibility for birders with disabilities are increasingly recognized as an ethical dimension that needs integration with traditional codes focused on bird welfare [89], broadening the scope of ethical responsibility.

The existence and detail of these codes signify a strong awareness within the organized birding community of the potential negative impacts of their activity. They represent a concerted effort at self-regulation, attempting to balance the passion of enthusiasts with the ethical imperative to protect birds and their habitats. However, the persistent challenges in compliance and enforcement suggest that codes alone may be insufficient without a strong, widely shared ethical culture and potentially more structured management interventions in sensitive locations.

5.7 Summary Table: Ethical Challenges, Principles, and Guidelines in Avitourism

The following Table 5.2 synthesizes key ethical challenges in avitourism, linking them to underlying principles, specific guidelines from major codes (ABA, BirdLife and affiliates), and common challenges to their effectiveness.

Table 5.2 - Key Ethical Challenges in Avitourism

Ethical Challenge	**Relevant Ethical Principle(s)**	**Guideline Example (Illustrative - Refer to specific codes for full detail)**	**Challenges to Effectiveness**
Disturbance at Nests/Roosts	Minimize Harm/Stress, Respect Bird Welfare, Promote Conservation	ABA 1(b): Keep well back from nests and nesting colonies, roosts, display areas. Avoid stressing birds. [10] BirdLife Photo Code: Do not publish photos of nests with eggs/young. [87] ECBA: Do not share nest locations of sensitive species. [84]	Lack of awareness of nest location/sensitivity, Desire for close views/photos, Difficulty defining "safe distance", Difficulty enforcing distance limits.
Harmful Use of Playback/ Audio	Minimize Harm/Stress, Respect Bird Welfare, Precautionary Principle	ABA 1(b): Limit use of recordings, especially in heavily birded areas, for rare/threatened species, or near nests. [10] BirdLife Aus 3.2: Discourages recreational playback; use requires skill, permits for sensitive species, brief duration, low volume. [11] BirdLife Photo Code: Do not use playback to attract birds for photos. [87]	Ease of access via apps, Perceived effectiveness in attracting birds, Lack of understanding of potential stress/impact, Difficulty monitoring/enforcing limits.
Habitat Damage	Protect Habitats, Promote Conservation	ABA 1(c)/1(d): Minimize habitat disturbance; stay on trails where they exist. [10] BirdLife Aus/OBC: Leave site as found; do not trample vegetation. [11] ECBA: Stay on designated trails. [84] Desire to get closer off-trail, Lack of awareness of sensitive vegetation/ground	

		nests, Cumulative impact of many visitors, Poor trail maintenance.
Harassment for Photos/Views	Minimize Harm/Stress, Respect Bird Welfare	ABA 1(b): Exercise caution and restraint when approaching birds. [10] Audubon Photo Ethics/BirdLife Aus 3.3: Avoid deliberately flushing birds. [11] BirdLife Photo Code: Welfare comes before the photo; avoid harassing/pursuing birds. [87] ECBA: If bird changes behavior, you are too close. [84] Photographer's focus on image over welfare, Competitive listing pressures, Normalization of intrusive behavior, Difficulty judging bird stress signals.
Sharing Sensitive Locations	Promote Conservation, Minimize Disturbance, Precautionary Principle	ABA 1(c): Evaluate potential disturbance before advertising rare birds; restrict access if needed; divulge rare nests only to authorities. [81] OBC 4: Think carefully before releasing news of rare/breeding birds. [82] ECBA/Audubon Photo Ethics: Consider impacts before sharing locations; remove GPS data for sensitive species. [84] eBird Guidelines: Do not report/post lek locations without permission. [84] Desire to share exciting finds, Citizen science platforms encouraging reporting, Difficulty controlling access once information is public, Social media amplification.

Trespassing/ Disrespecting Locals	Respect Laws & Rights of Others, Community Respect	ABA 3(a): Never enter private property without permission; interact positively with locals. [10] OBC 3: Respect privacy and landownership; use local services. [82] ECBA: Respect private property; be courteous. [84] eBird Guidelines: Avoid pointing binoculars at homes; be mindful of perception. [90]	Enthusiasm overriding awareness of boundaries, Unclear property lines, Assumption of access rights, Negative perception of birders by locals due to past incidents.
General Unethical Conduct	Promote Ethical Birding Community	ABA 2(a)(d)(e): Be an exemplary role model; approach unethical behavior sensitively; promote code in groups. [10] OBC 5: Demonstrate high standards; explain code sensitively to others. [82] AOS Code: Prohibits unethical/unlawful behavior, including willful endangerment of birds. [88] Varied personal ethics, Lack of confidence in intervening, Fear of confrontation, Difficulty achieving consensus on 'ethical' behavior, Lack of formal sanctions for code breaches.[88]	

Source: Table prepared by the author based on available data accessed 28 April 2025.

5.7. Expanding the Moral Landscape: Justice, Precaution, and Knowledge Systems

Ethical considerations in wildlife tourism extend beyond the direct interactions between tourists and animals or the application of established environmental and animal ethics theories. A more comprehensive ethical analysis must also incorporate principles of precaution, considerations of social and environmental justice for human communities, and the value of diverse knowledge systems, particularly Traditional Ecological Knowledge (TEK).

5.7.1. The Precautionary Principle

The Precautionary Principle (PP) provides a framework for decision-making in the face of scientific uncertainty regarding potential harm.[12] Its core tenet is that where an activity poses threats of serious or irreversible damage to the environment or human health, precautionary measures should be taken even if cause-and-effect relationships are not fully scientifically established.[91] This principle shifts the burden of proof, suggesting that proponents of a potentially harmful activity should demonstrate its safety, rather than requiring definitive proof of harm before taking action.[91] It embodies commonsense notions like "better safe than sorry" or "look before you leap" applied to complex environmental systems.[91]

In wildlife tourism, the PP is highly relevant due to the often-unpredictable and poorly understood long-term or cumulative impacts of human activities on wildlife and ecosystems.[12] Applying precaution could involve:

- Restricting or prohibiting new tourism developments or activities in ecologically sensitive areas until potential impacts are better assessed.
- Setting conservative limits on tourist numbers, frequency of visits, or proximity to wildlife, especially for vulnerable species or habitats.[70]
- Prohibiting practices like artificial feeding or baiting due to uncertainty about long-term behavioral changes, health impacts, or ecological disruptions.[64]
- Requiring thorough environmental impact assessments that explicitly address uncertainty and potential worst-case scenarios before approving tourism projects.
- Mandating adaptive management strategies that allow for adjustments if unforeseen negative impacts emerge.

The principle underpins many specific guidelines in wildlife tourism, such as cautious approaches to nest photography [87] or managing marine mammal interactions.[70] However, implementing the PP is not without challenges. Defining thresholds for "serious or irreversible harm" can be subjective.[59] Assessing the "cost-effectiveness" of precautionary measures, as stipulated in some formulations like the Rio Declaration's Principle 15 [91], involves complex socio-economic considerations. There are concerns that the principle could be applied overly rigidly, stifling beneficial development or sustainable use initiatives, or potentially misused to advance specific agendas (e.g., animal rights groups opposing any utilization, disguised as precaution).[59] A critical consideration is ensuring that the burdens associated with precautionary measures – whether financial costs or restrictions on resource use – do not fall disproportionately on marginalized local communities who may have contributed least to the potential harm.[59] This highlights a potential tension where environmental precaution, if implemented without social sensitivity, could inadvertently create social injustices.

5.7.2. Social and Environmental Justice

Ethical wildlife tourism cannot be divorced from considerations of social justice affecting human communities, particularly those living in or near tourism destinations. Conservation efforts, including those funded or driven by tourism, have historically sometimes resulted in injustices, such as the displacement of Indigenous and local peoples from traditional lands to create protected areas (the 'fortress conservation' or 'Yellowstone' model), loss of access to essential resources, cultural commodification, and inequitable distribution of tourism revenues.[4] Environmental degradation itself often disproportionately affects vulnerable populations, linking environmental and social justice concerns.[92]

- **Community-Based Conservation (CBC):** As a response to the shortcomings of top-down conservation, CBC approaches emerged, emphasizing the involvement of local communities as partners in conservation.[25] CBC aims to achieve dual goals: conserving biodiversity and improving local livelihoods and well-being.[25] It recognizes that local participation is often more ethical and potentially more effective for long-term sustainability.[25] Community-Based Tourism (CBT) is frequently integrated into CBC projects, enabling communities to gain direct economic benefits from wildlife tourism through ownership, management, employment (e.g., as guides), or revenue-sharing schemes.[3] This can create powerful incentives for local stewardship.[92]

- **Success Factors and Challenges:** The success of CBC and associated tourism initiatives hinges on several factors: genuine participation and empowerment of communities (not just token consultation), secure land tenure and resource rights, transparent and equitable mechanisms for benefit sharing, and support for local capacity building.[60] However, challenges persist, including the risk of benefits being captured by local elites, potential for increased social stratification, conflicts between conservation objectives and development aspirations, and the difficulty of shifting entrenched power dynamics where external agencies or tour operators retain ultimate control.[25] Achieving a true balance between human needs and wildlife conservation remains a complex negotiation.[92] Ultimately, a commitment to social justice requires moving beyond viewing local people merely as stakeholders and recognizing them as rights-holders whose well-being, cultural integrity, and self-determination are integral to ethical and sustainable tourism.[25]

5.7.3. Indigenous Perspectives and Traditional Ecological Knowledge (TEK)

Integrating Indigenous perspectives and Traditional Ecological Knowledge (TEK) is increasingly recognized as crucial for both effective conservation and ethically grounded wildlife tourism. TEK refers to the cumulative body of knowledge, practices, and beliefs acquired by Indigenous peoples over generations through intimate interaction with their environment.[93] It is typically place-based, holistic, and dynamic, encompassing deep understanding of ecological relationships, animal behavior, sustainable resource use, and often embodying ethical principles of respect, reciprocity, and responsibility towards the natural world.[94]

- **Value for Conservation and Management:** TEK can significantly complement Western scientific approaches by providing long-term observational data, insights into ecosystem dynamics, and proven strategies for sustainable living.[94] Collaboration and co-production of knowledge, integrating TEK and science, can lead to more robust and culturally appropriate conservation and management strategies.[95] For example, Indigenous hunters' knowledge can provide valuable information on animal health, distribution, and behavior.[94]
- **Relevance to Wildlife Tourism:** Incorporating TEK and involving Indigenous knowledge holders can enrich wildlife tourism experiences, offering deeper cultural context and promoting more respectful interactions with nature.[60] Indigenous-led or partnered tourism initiatives can provide authentic experiences while ensuring cultural integrity and economic benefits flow directly to communities. However, this integration must be approached ethically, respecting Indigenous rights (including intellectual property rights over knowledge), ensuring free, prior, and informed consent, establishing equitable partnerships, and actively avoiding cultural appropriation or commodification.[60] Given the historical context of marginalization and exclusion of Indigenous peoples from conservation and tourism [25], building trust and ensuring genuine power-sharing are paramount. Failure to do so can lead to reluctance to share invaluable knowledge.[95] Incorporating TEK is therefore not merely about adding data or cultural elements; it involves engaging with fundamentally different ways of knowing (epistemologies) and relating to the non-human world,

challenging dominant paradigms that often separate culture from nature and prioritize scientific expertise alone.[95]

Expanding the moral landscape of wildlife tourism requires moving beyond a narrow focus on animal welfare or species protection to embrace precaution, champion social justice for human communities, and respectfully integrate diverse knowledge systems like TEK. This holistic approach is essential for navigating the complexities and striving for truly sustainable and ethical outcomes.

5.8. Contemporary Frameworks and Future Directions

While traditional ethical frameworks provide essential grounding, the evolving complexities of human-animal interactions in the Anthropocene, coupled with persistent ethical dilemmas in wildlife tourism, have spurred the development of contemporary theoretical perspectives. These emerging frameworks often emphasize relationality, care, non-human subjectivity, and interconnectedness, offering potentially new ways to address the limitations of established approaches and navigate the future of ethical wildlife tourism.

5.8.1. Addressing Limitations of Traditional Frameworks

Traditional debates have often been characterized by the stark divide between individualistic ethics (welfare, rights) and holistic ethics (ecocentrism), making reconciliation difficult in practice.[50] Anthropocentric biases, even within conservation-oriented approaches, can persist, leading to the instrumentalization of animals.[19] Furthermore, applying universal principles across diverse cultural and ecological contexts proves challenging.[33] Emerging frameworks attempt to overcome some of these limitations by offering more nuanced, context-sensitive, and relational perspectives.

5.8.2. Emerging Perspectives

- **Compassionate Conservation:** This approach explicitly seeks to bridge the gap between conservation goals and individual animal welfare.[2] It advocates for prioritizing the well-being of individual animals in conservation decision-making and practice, challenging actions that cause significant harm or suffering to individuals, even if intended for broader conservation benefit (e.g., lethal control methods for invasive species or population management).[2] Arising from a recognition of increased human impact in the Anthropocene, it emphasizes human responsibility for compassionate engagement with wildlife.[2] In the context of tourism, Compassionate Conservation supports non-invasive, observational models, high-welfare sanctuaries, and rescue/rehabilitation efforts, while critiquing consumptive tourism (like hunting) and practices involving harm or exploitation.[2] It represents a significant ethical shift by re-centering the individual non-human within conservation discourse, but frames this concern within our shared ecological reality.

- **Multispecies Justice:** Moving beyond individual welfare or rights extension, Multispecies Justice (MSJ) seeks to apply concepts of justice across species boundaries, considering the interests and claims of non-human animals, and potentially ecosystems or natural entities, within political and ethical decision-making.[98] It emphasizes the interconnectedness and interdependence of all life, calling for accountability and responsibility in human-nonhuman relations.[99] MSJ challenges human exceptionalism and anthropocentric biases in traditional justice frameworks.[99] It may involve recognizing different types of claims or rights based on the nature of the relationship between humans and specific non-humans (e.g., Donaldson and

Kymlicka's distinction between domesticated 'denizens' and wild 'sovereigns').[99] Concepts like Wildlife Equity Theory build on this, advocating for wildlife to be considered "equal stakeholders" in sustainability planning.[100] For tourism, MSJ demands practices that respect the agency and interests of animals, ensure fairness in the distribution of impacts and benefits across species, and actively avoid exploitation or the treatment of animals merely as resources.[100] It provides a framework for integrating animal ethics, environmental ethics, and social justice concerns.

- **Animal Agency:** This perspective highlights that animals are not simply passive objects or victims of human actions, but active subjects with their own intentions, perspectives, choices, and capacities to act and influence their environments and interactions.[101] Recognizing animal agency involves paying close attention to animal behavior as a form of communication and acknowledging their role in co-creating experiences, particularly in contexts like equestrian or sled dog tourism.[101] It fundamentally challenges the objectification of animals common in tourism, where they are often viewed as attractions or props.[101] Ethically, acknowledging agency necessitates moving towards more reciprocal, observational, and less controlling forms of interaction that respect the animal's autonomy and choices (e.g., allowing animals to choose whether or not to interact). This perspective has implications for research methodologies, encouraging approaches like ethology and multispecies ethnography that seek to understand the animals' own perspectives and experiences.[102]

- **One Health:** The One Health approach emphasizes the fundamental interconnectedness of human health, animal health, and environmental (ecosystem) health.[104] It promotes integrated, transdisciplinary collaboration to address complex health challenges that span these domains, such as zoonotic diseases, antimicrobial resistance, food safety, and the health impacts of climate change and biodiversity loss.[104] In wildlife tourism, One Health provides a crucial lens for evaluating risks associated with close human-animal contact, particularly in captive or semi-captive settings. The potential for zoonotic disease transmission (e.g., TB from elephants to humans [76], or pathogens from tourists to great apes [97]) underscores the need for stringent biosecurity measures and potentially restricting certain types of interactions. By linking animal welfare and environmental integrity directly to human health outcomes, the One Health approach offers a powerful prudential argument for responsible tourism practices that complements ethical arguments based solely on animal rights or welfare.[104] It reinforces the idea that sustainable tourism must safeguard the health of the entire socio-ecological system.

5.8.3. Potential for Synthesis and Future Directions

These emerging frameworks offer valuable tools for enriching the ethical analysis of wildlife tourism. Compassionate Conservation and Multispecies Justice potentially offer pathways to reconcile the long-standing tension between individualistic and holistic concerns by re-valuing the individual within an ecological and relational context. Recognizing Animal Agency demands a fundamental shift away from viewing animals as mere objects of the tourist gaze towards respecting them as fellow subjects. The One Health approach provides a pragmatic framework linking ethical treatment and environmental health to human well-being. Future research should explore the synergies and potential conflicts between these frameworks and their practical applicability in diverse tourism settings. Developing integrated ethical guidelines and management strategies that draw upon these contemporary perspectives, alongside established theories and principles like precaution and social justice, will be crucial for navigating the future of wildlife tourism responsibly.

5.9. Conclusion

The ethical landscape of wildlife tourism is complex, dynamic, and fraught with tensions. Navigating this terrain requires moving beyond simplistic anthropocentric viewpoints that treat animals and nature merely as resources for human consumption or entertainment. Established ethical frameworks – including animal welfare, animal rights, utilitarianism, biocentrism, and ecocentrism – provide essential conceptual tools but also reveal fundamental conflicts, particularly between prioritizing the well-being of individual sentient beings and safeguarding the integrity of ecological wholes. These theoretical tensions manifest vividly in practical dilemmas surrounding wildlife management practices often linked to tourism, such as decisions about culling, managing invasive species, maintaining captive populations, and regulating tourist disturbance.

The relationship between ethical concepts and practical approaches is dialectical. Theoretical understanding shapes management strategies and codes of conduct, while the realities encountered on the ground – the impacts of the tourist gaze amplified by social media, the challenges of ensuring animal welfare in working conditions, the complexities of marine disturbance, and the socio-economic contexts of local communities – continually challenge existing theories and necessitate refinement. The inadequacy of applying universal principles rigidly across diverse cultural and ecological contexts is increasingly apparent, highlighting the need for sensitivity and adaptability.

A comprehensive ethical approach to wildlife tourism must expand beyond traditional environmental and animal ethics to incorporate the Precautionary Principle as a guide for decision-making under uncertainty, a strong commitment to social and environmental justice for affected human communities, and a genuine respect for and integration of diverse knowledge systems, particularly the Traditional Ecological Knowledge of Indigenous peoples. These elements are crucial for ensuring that tourism initiatives are not only ecologically sound and considerate of animal welfare but also equitable and culturally appropriate.

Emerging frameworks like Compassionate Conservation, Multispecies Justice, Animal Agency, and the One Health approach offer promising avenues for future development. By emphasizing relationality, care, non-human subjectivity within ecological contexts, and the interconnectedness of human, animal, and environmental health, these perspectives provide new lenses for addressing persistent ethical challenges and potentially reconciling long-standing theoretical divides. They signal a move towards more nuanced, holistic, and ethically robust understandings of human responsibilities in an increasingly interconnected world.

Moving forward, fostering genuinely sustainable and responsible wildlife tourism requires ongoing critical reflection, interdisciplinary research that bridges theory and practice, meaningful stakeholder dialogue that includes local and Indigenous voices, and the development of adaptive, context-sensitive regulatory frameworks. These frameworks must be informed by a pluralistic understanding of ethical principles, incorporating concerns for individual welfare, species conservation, ecosystem health, social justice, and precaution. Ultimately, the goal must be to cultivate forms of tourism that allow for respectful and enriching encounters with the non-human world, contributing positively to the well-being of animals (Fennell, 2013), the integrity of ecosystems, and the flourishing of human communities alike.

Aaltola, E. (2018). *Varieties of empathy: Moral psychology and animal ethics*. Rowman & Littlefield.

Äijälä, M. (2019). Relational ethics in husky dog sledding in Finnish Lapland. In J. García-Rosell, & J. Äijälä (Eds.), *Responsible kennel tourism* (pp. 63–77). University of Lapland.

Äijälä, M. (2021). Researching multispecies relations: Video ethnography of husky dog sledding in Finnish Lapland. *Tourism Geographies*, *23*(5-6), 992-1012. https://doi.org/10.1080/14616688.2020.1722797

Amador Fanaro, G. (2020). The dog musher tour guide: Identity, performance, and the wilderness experience in Finnish Lapland. *Tourism Geographies*, *22*(4-5), 872-890. https://doi.org/10.1080/14616688.2019.1678789

American Birding Association. (n.d.). *ABA code of birding ethics*. Retrieved April 28, 2025, from https://www.aba.org/aba-code-of-birding-ethics/

Audubon. (n.d.). *Audubon's guide to ethical bird photography and videography*. Retrieved April 28, 2025, from https://www.google.com/search?q=https://www.audubon.org/get-outside/audubons-guide-ethical-bird-photography

Baker, S. (2001). *Picturing the beast: Animals, identity and representation*. University of Illinois Press.

Ballantyne, R., Packer, J., & Falk, J. (2011). Visitors' learning for environmental sustainability: Testing short- and long-term impacts of wildlife tourism experiences using structural equation modelling. *Tourism Management*, *32*(6), 1243-1252. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.tourman.2010.11.004

Ballantyne, R., Packer, J., Hughes, K., & Dierking, L. (2007). Conservation learning in wildlife tourism settings: Lessons from research in zoos and aquariums. *Environmental Education Research*, *13*(3), 367-383. https://doi.org/10.1080/13504620701430603

Beardsworth, A., & Bryman, A. (2001). The wild heart of the city: The derelict dockland site as a venue for recreational wildlife encounters. *Leisure Studies*, *20*(2), 81-101. https://doi.org/10.1080/02614360122688

Bejder, L., Johnston, D. W., Smith, J., Friedlaender, A., & Bejder, M. (2022). Embracing conservation success of recovering humpback whale populations: Evaluating the case for downlisting their conservation status in Australia. *Marine Policy*, *138*, 105003. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.marpol.2022.105003

Bertella, G. (2014). Assessing the role of cognition and emotions for wildlife tourism experiences. *Scandinavian Journal of Hospitality and Tourism*, *14*(4), 411-425. https://doi.org/10.1080/15022250.2014.962310

Bertella, G., D'Alessandro, S., & Kenter, J. O. (2019). Appreciative versus consumptive wildlife tourism experiences: An empirical assessment using the capability approach. *Human Dimensions of Wildlife*, *24*(4), 311-328. https://doi.org/10.1080/10871209.2019.1598582

BirdLife Australia. (n.d.). *Ethical birding guidelines*. Retrieved April 28, 2025, from https://www.google.com/search?q=https://birdlife.org.au/support-us/volunteer/ethical-birding-guidelines/

Bradshaw, G. A., & Bekoff, M. (2001). Ecology and social responsibility: The re-embodiment of science. *Trends in Ecology & Evolution*, *16*(8), 460-465. https://doi.org/10.1016/S0169-5347(01)02202-9

British Columbia. (2011). *A Community of Care: Report of the Sled Dog Task Force*. [Government of British Columbia].

Bulbeck, C. (1999). Wild women, wild men: The politics of encounter sites. *Journal of Australian Studies*, *23*(63), 131-141. https://doi.org/10.1080/14443059909387528

Bulbeck, C. (2005). *Facing the wild: Ecotourism, conservation and animal encounters*. Earthscan.

Buller, H. (2014). Animal geographies I. *Progress in Human Geography*, *38*(2), 308-318. https://doi.org/10.1177/0309132513506116

Burns, G. L. (2015). Souvenirs and the lifeworlds of animals in tourism. *Tourism Geographies*, *17*(4), 511-526. https://doi.org/10.1080/14616688.2015.1064916

Burns, G. L. (2017). Ethics and responsibility in wildlife tourism: lessons from compassionate conservation in the Anthropocene. In I. B. de Lima & R. J. Green (Eds.), *Wildlife Tourism, Environmental Learning and Ethical Encounters* (pp. 213-220). Springer.

Burr, J. R., Reinhart, G. A., Swenson, R. A., Swaim, S. F., Vaughn, D. M., & Bradley, D. M. (1997). Serum biochemical values in sled dogs before and after competing in long-distance races. *Journal of the American Veterinary Medical Association*, *211*(2), 175-179.

Callicott, J. B. (1989). *In defense of the land ethic: Essays in environmental philosophy*. SUNY Press.

Carr, N. (2014). Creating tourism subjugation: The example of the sled dog in tourism. *Annals of Tourism Research*, *48*, 157-171. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.annals.2014.06.003

Chimuka, T. (2019). Conceptualising wildlife conservation and the human-animal relationship in the context of sustainable community development in postcolonial Zimbabwe. *African Identities*, *17*(3-4), 211-226. https://doi.org/10.1080/14725843.2019.1664288

Coghlan, A., & Coghlan, C. (2018). Towards a comparative framework for One Health: Results from a systematic literature review of interventions. *CAB Reviews: Perspectives in Agriculture, Veterinary Science, Nutrition and Natural Resources*, *13*(031), 1-12. https://doi.org/10.1079/PAVSNNR201813031

Cohen, E. (2009). Animals in tourism settings: Towards a conceptual framework. In M. Luck, T. L. Kirstges & C. P. Cooper (Eds.), *Wildlife Tourism Research* (pp. 20-40). Channel View Publications.

Connolly, C., & Cullen, J. G. (2018). Care-ethics and the political morality of the firm. *Organization*, *25*(3), 408-425. https://doi.org/10.1177/1350508417711028

Copp, D. (Ed.). (2005). *The Oxford handbook of ethical theory*. Oxford University Press.

Cornell Lab of Ornithology. (n.d.). *eBird rules and best practices*. Retrieved April 28, 2025, from https://www.google.com/search?q=https://support.ebird.org/en/support/solutions/articles/48000804860-ebird-rules-and-best-practices

Coulter, K. (2016a). *Animals, work, and the promise of interspecies solidarity*. Palgrave Macmillan.

Coulter, K. (2016b). What is equine labor?. *Society & Animals*, *24*(2), 119-137. https://doi.org/10.1163/15685306-12341400

Curtin, S. (2006). Wildlife tourism: The intangible, psychological benefits of human–animal encounters. *Current Issues in Tourism*, *9*(4-5), 450-453. https://doi.org/10.2167/cit289.0

Daly, N. (2019, June 13). The dark truth behind wildlife tourism. *National Geographic*. https://www.nationalgeographic.com/animals/article/wildlife-tourism

Danby, P., & Grajfoner, D. (2022). What can horses teach us about leadership?: An interpretative phenomenological analysis. *Human Arenas*, *5*(3), 534-552. https://doi.org/10.1007/s42087-020-00165-3

Dashper, K. (2020a). Challenging the anthropocentric tourism academy: Performing posthumanism with horses on holiday. *Tourism Geographies*, *22*(4-5), 785-803. https://doi.org/10.1080/14616688.2019.1612591

Dashper, K. (2020b). Working with horses: Exploring the multspecies entanglements of tourism labor. *Annals of Tourism Research*, *82*, 102902. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.annals.2020.102902

de Boo, M., & Knight, A. (2005). Educating veterinary students in animal welfare science. *Journal of Veterinary Medical Education*, *32*(4), 448-452.

De Grosbois, D., & Fennell, D. A. (2022). Integrating corporate social responsibility and ethics into sustainable tourism: A systematic literature review. *Tourism Review*, *77*(5), 1193-1213. https://doi.org/10.1108/TR-01-2021-0038

De Vos, A. (2013). Dog sledding in Finnish Lapland: An ethnographic study of the human-animal relationship in tourism. *Anthrozoös*, *26*(2), 277-291. https://doi.org/10.2752/175303713X13636846944404

Dobson, A. (2009). Big fish and the tourist gaze: The case of the Great Barrier Reef, Australia. In M. Luck, T. L. Kirstges & C. P. Cooper (Eds.), *Wildlife Tourism Research* (pp. 75-90). Channel View Publications.

Donaldson, S., & Kymlicka, W. (2011). *Zoopolis: A political theory of animal rights*. Oxford University Press.

Donovan, J. (2006). Feminism and the treatment of animals: From care to dialogue. *Signs: Journal of Women in Culture and Society*, *31*(2), 305-329. https://doi.org/10.1086/491750

Fennell, D. A. (2000a). Ecotourism and ethics: The case of billfishing. *Journal of Business Ethics*, *27*(4), 369-385. https://doi.org/10.1023/A:1006440106619

Fennell, D. A. (2000b). What's in a name? Ecotourism principles and ethics. *Ethics and the Environment*, *5*(1), 61-76. https://doi.org/10.2979/ETE.2000.5.1.61

Fennell, D. A. (2012a). *Tourism and animal ethics* (1st ed.). Routledge.

Fennell, D. A. (2013). Tourism and animal welfare. *Tourism Recreation Research, 38*(3), 325–340. https://doi.org/10.1080/02508281.2013.11081757

Fennell, D. A. (2014). Animals as tourism stakeholders. *Tourism Recreation Research*, *39*(3), 405-408. https://doi.org/10.1080/02508281.2014.11081780

Fennell, D. A. (2015a). Akrasia, animals, and tourism. *Annals of Tourism Research*, *54*, 257-260. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.annals.2015.07.004

Fennell, D. A. (2015b). Tourism and animal rights. *Tourism Recreation Research*, *37*(2), 157-166.

Fennell, D. A. (2020a). *Ecotourism* (5th ed.). Routledge.

Fennell, D. A. (2021). *Sustainable tourism: Principles, contexts and practices*. Routledge.

Fennell, D. A. (2022a). Animal-informed consent. *Annals of Tourism Research*, *93*, 103364. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.annals.2022.103364

Fennell, D. A. (2022d). Animal welfare literacy for tourism. *Annals of Tourism Research*, *94*, 103394. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.annals.2022.103394

Fennell, D. A. (2023a). Animal health warning labels. *Annals of Tourism Research*, *100*, 103576. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.annals.2023.103576

Fennell, D. A. (2024). *Tourism and animal ethics* (2nd ed.). Routledge. https://doi.org/10.4324/9781003366034

Fennell, D. A., & Coose, S. (2023). Animals used for entertainment. In A. Knight, C. Phillips, & P. Sparks (Eds.), *Routledge handbook of animal welfare* (pp. 281-296). Routledge.

Fennell, D. A., & Eagles, P. F. J. (1990). Ecotourism in Costa Rica: A conceptual framework. *Journal of Park and Recreation Administration*, *8*(1), 23-34.

Fennell, D. A., & Sheppard, V. A. (2011). Tourism, animals and utilitarianism: An application of the capabilities approach. *Current Issues in Tourism*, *14*(3), 197-216. https://doi.org/10.1080/13683501003754107

Fennell, D. A., Cooper, S., & de Grobois, D. (2022). An animal welfare syllabus for tourism studies. *Journal of Hospitality, Leisure, Sport & Tourism Education*, *31*, 100399. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jhlste.2022.100399

Fennell, D. A., Sheppard, V. A., & Riley, C. K. (in press). Animal sensibilities in tourism research. *Annals of Tourism Research*.

Fesenko, R., & García-Rosell, J. C. (2019). Knowing huskies at work and play: An autoethnographic inquiry into sled dog tourism. In J. García-Rosell, & J. Äijälä (Eds.), *Responsible kennel tourism* (pp. 79–92). University of Lapland.

Franklin, A. (2008). *Animal nation: The true story of animals and Australia*. UNSW Press.

García-Rosell, J. C. (2021). Activism in animal tourism: A case study of responsible husky tourism in Finnish Lapland. *Tourism Management Perspectives*, *39*, 100840. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.tmp.2021.100840

Garrod, B. (2007). Exploring the relationship between tourism and animal rights. In P. Burns & M. Novelli (Eds.), *Tourism and social identities: Global frameworks and local realities* (pp. 179-198). Elsevier.

Garrod, B., & Fennell, D. A. (2004). An analysis of whale watching codes of conduct. *Annals of Tourism Research*, *31*(2), 334-352. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.annals.2003.12.003

Government of British Columbia. (2023). *Sled Dog Standards of Care Regulation*. B.C. Reg. 23/2012. https://www.bclaws.gov.bc.ca/civix/document/id/complete/statreg/23_2012

Granås, B. (2018). Working in liminal spaces: Sled dogs in between wilderness and domestication. *Society & Animals*, *26*(5), 467-484. https://doi.org/10.1163/15685306-12341531

Haanpää, M., & García-Rosell, J. C. (2019). Sensing with huskies: Toward a multisensory understanding of sled dog tourism experiences. *Tourism Geographies*, *21*(5), 887-905. https://doi.org/10.1080/14616688.2019.1578531

Haanpää, M., Äijälä, M., & García-Rosell, J. C. (2021). Doing video ethnography with animals: Methodological reflections on researching husky sledding practices. *Current Issues in Tourism*, *24*(24), 3479-3491. https://doi.org/10.1080/13683500.2021.1882086

Hall, C. M., & Brown, F. (2006). *Tourism and welfare: Ethics, responsibility and sustainable well-being*. CABI.

Hall, D., Kirkpatrick, I., & Mitchell, M. (2004a). Animals, attractions and zoos. In D. Hall, I. Kirkpatrick & M. Mitchell (Eds.), *Rural tourism and sustainable business* (pp. 118–135). Channel View Publications.

Higginbottom, K., Green, R., & Northrope, C. (2006). Status assessment of wildlife tourism in Australia: An overview. In R. Green & K. Higginbottom (Eds.), *Wildlife Tourism* (pp. 1-25). CRC for Sustainable Tourism.

Hinchcliff, K. W. (1996). Exercise and athletic performance in sled dogs. *Seminars in Veterinary Medicine and Surgery (Small Animal)*, *11*(3), 172-179.

Hoarau-Heemstra, H., & Kline, C. (2022). Sensemaking animal interests in horse tourism. *Annals of Tourism Research*, *97*, 103494. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.annals.2022.103494

Hoarau-Heemstra, H., & Nazarova, V. (2021). Distributed leadership and reciprocity in dog sledding. *Animals*, *11*(5), 1426. https://doi.org/10.3390/ani11051426

Hobson-West, P. (2007). Beasts and boundaries: An introduction to animals in the social sciences. *Qualitative Sociology Review*, *3*(1), 1-13.

Holden, A. (2003). In need of new environmental ethics for tourism? *Annals of Tourism Research*, *30*(1), 94-108. https://doi.org/10.1016/S0160-7383(02)00030-0

Holden, A. (2005). *Tourism and the environment: Issues and policies*. Routledge.

Holland, S. M., Ditton, R. B., & Graefe, A. R. (1998). An ecotourism perspective on billfish fisheries. *Journal of Sustainable Tourism*, *6*(2), 97-116. https://doi.org/10.1080/09669589808667305

Hooper, G. (2022). Animal tourism: A review. *Animals*, *12*(20), 2817. https://doi.org/10.3390/ani12202817

Hovorka, A. J. (2017). Animal geographies II: Cohabitation. *Progress in Human Geography*, *41*(4), 527-537. https://doi.org/10.1177/0309132516648377

Hughes, P. (2001). Animals, values and tourism–structural shifts in UK dolphin tourism provision. *Tourism Management*, *22*(4), 321-329. https://doi.org/10.1016/S0160-7383(00)00058-X

Hvenegaard, G. T., Butler, J. R., & Krystofiak, D. K. (1989). Economic values of bird watching at Point Pelee National Park, Canada. *Wildlife Society Bulletin*, *17*(4), 526-531.

Kenehan, S. (2019). Do firms have duties to nonhuman animals? *Business Ethics Quarterly*, *29*(2), 161-185. https://doi.org/10.1017/beq.2018.37

Kline, C. S. (2018). Foodie, farmer, friend? Considering animal welfare in agri/culinary tourism. *Journal of Sustainable Tourism*, *26*(8), 1428-1443. https://doi.org/10.1080/09669582.2018.1483210

Knight, A. (2023). Animals used for scientific and educational purposes. In A. Knight, C. Phillips, & P. Sparks (Eds.), *Routledge handbook of animal welfare* (pp. 267-280). Routledge.

Knight, A., Phillips, C., & Sparks, P. (Eds.). (2023). *Routledge handbook of animal welfare*. Routledge.

Koikkalainen, S., Haanpää, M., & García-Rosell, J. C. (2016). 'They are my babies': constructing human–animal relationships in husky tourism. *Tourism Geographies*, *18*(5), 533-553. https://doi.org/10.1080/14616688.2016.1213301

Kopnina, H. (2017). Anthropology, anthropocentrism and the Anthropocene: Can we be radical enough? *Critique of Anthropology*, *37*(4), 462-481. https://doi.org/10.1177/0308275X17720653

Köseoglu, M. A., Uysal, M., & Sirakaya-Turk, E. (2016). Corporate social responsibility research in tourism and hospitality: A bibliometric analysis. *Tourism Recreation Research*, *41*(1), 77-92. https://doi.org/10.1080/02508281.2016.1127196

Leopold, A. (1949). *A Sand County almanac and sketches here and there*. Oxford University Press.

Levitt, F. (Director). (2016). *Sled dogs* [Documentary film]. White Pine Pictures.

Lovelock, B., & Lovelock, K. (2013). *The ethics of tourism: Critical and applied perspectives*. Routledge.

Luck, M., & Jiang, Y. (2007). *Wildlife Tourism*. Haworth Press.

Main, D. C. J. (2010). Animal welfare education: Development of an online postgraduate certificate course. *Journal of Veterinary Medical Education*, *37*(1), 80-84. https://doi.org/10.3138/jvme.37.1.80

Maple, T. L., & Perdue, B. M. (2023). Zoos and aquaria. In A. Knight, C. Phillips, & P. Sparks (Eds.), *Routledge handbook of animal welfare* (pp. 297-310). Routledge.

Mehmetoglu, M. (2007). Typologising nature-based tourists by activity – Theoretically and empirically. *Tourism Management*, *28*(3), 651-660. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.tourman.2006.02.010

Melé, D. (2012). *Management ethics: Placing ethics at the center of management education*. Palgrave Macmillan.

Mele, A. R. (1994). Akrasia, self-control, and second-order desires. *Noûs*, *28*(4), 424-436. https://doi.org/10.2307/2216040

Mkono, M. (2011). Ethical dimensions of eating animals for leisure: A study of safari hunting tourists. *Tourism Recreation Research*, *36*(3), 251-264. https://doi.org/10.1080/02508281.2011.11081675

Mkono, M. (2019). Neo-colonialism and the ethical complexities of wildlife conservation in Zimbabwe. *African Journal of Hospitality, Tourism and Leisure*, *8*(Special Edition).

Mkono, M., & Holder, A. (2019). Neocolonialism and the pitfalls of celebrity involvement in wildlife conservation causes on social media: The case of Cecil the Lion. *Journal of Sustainable Tourism*, *27*(1), 105-121. https://doi.org/10.1080/09669582.2018.1544357

Mullin, M. H. (1999). Mirrors and windows: Sociocultural studies of human-animal relationships. *Annual Review of Anthropology*, *28*, 201-224. https://doi.org/10.1146/annurev.anthro.28.1.201

Nibert, D. (2017). *Animal oppression and capitalism*. Praeger.

Noske, B. (2008). Anthropology and the cultural study of animal welfare. *Animal Welfare*, *17*(4), 333-338.

Notzke, C. (2019). Animal agency in tourism: A literature review. *Animals*, *9*(12), 1127. https://doi.org/10.3390/ani9121127

Nunny, L., & Simmonds, M. P. (2023). Hunting, fishing and whaling. In A. Knight, C. Phillips, & P. Sparks (Eds.), *Routledge handbook of animal welfare* (pp. 311-325). Routledge.

Nyman, J., & Schuurman, N. (2016). Animal geographies I: Anthropomorphism. *Progress in Human Geography*, *40*(5), 699-708. https://doi.org/10.1177/0309132515598914

Offor, I. (2020). Hot, crowded, and legal: A critical analysis of the legal protection of farmed animals in Nigeria. *Animal Law Review*, *26*, 177-207.

Orams, M. B. (1996). A conceptual model of tourist-wildlife interaction: The case for education as a management strategy. *Australian Geographer*, *27*(1), 39-51. https://doi.org/10.1080/00049189608703155

Pagel, S., & Lück, M. (2022). Why ethical theory matters for wildlife tourism research. *Tourism Geographies*, *24*(4-5), 783-801. https://doi.org/10.1080/14616688.2021.1998451

Philo, C. (1995). Animals, geography, and the city: Notes on inclusions and exclusions. *Environment and Planning D: Society and Space*, *13*(6), 655-681. https://doi.org/10.1068/d130655

Pinchot, G. (1910). *The fight for conservation*. Doubleday, Page & Company.

Pirotta, E., Merchant, N. D., Thompson, P. M., Barton, T. R., & Lusseau, D. (2015). Quantifying the effect of boat disturbance on bottlenose dolphin foraging activity. *Biological Conservation*, *181*, 82-89. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.biocon.2014.11.010

Regan, T. (2001). *Defending animal rights*. University of Illinois Press.

Regan, T. (2004). *The case for animal rights* (Updated ed.). University of California Press.

Reynolds, P. C., & Braithwaite, D. (2001). Towards a conceptual framework for wildlife tourism. *Tourism Management*, *22*(1), 31-42. https://doi.org/10.1016/S0160-7383(00)00019-0

Rizzolo, J. B. (2021b). Ethical mindfulness in wildlife tourism: A tool for managing the ambiguity of right and wrong. *Journal of Sustainable Tourism*, *29*(10), 1737-1754. https://doi.org/10.1080/09669582.2020.1867855

Senigaglia, V., Christiansen, F., Bejder, L., Gendron, D., Lundquist, D., Noren, D. P.,... & Lusseau, D. (2016). Meta-analyses of whale-watching impact studies: comparisons of cetacean responses to disturbance. *Marine Ecology Progress Series*, *542*, 251-263. https://doi.org/10.3354/meps11550

Shackley, M. (1996). *Wildlife tourism*. International Thomson Business Press.

Shani, A., & Pizam, A. (2008). Towards an ethical framework for animal-based attractions. *International Journal of Contemporary Hospitality Management*, *20*(6), 679-693. https://doi.org/10.1108/09596110810891131

Sheppard, V. A., & Fennell, D. A. (2019). Extending the stakeholder concept: Examining nonhuman animals as tourism stakeholders. *Tourism Analysis*, *24*(1), 101-113. https://doi.org/10.3727/108354219X15458295632122

Singer, P. (2009). *Animal liberation* (Updated ed.). Harper Perennial Modern Classics.

Tallberg, L., García-Rosell, J. C., & Äijälä, M. (2022). Conceptualizing animal stakeholders in tourism. *Annals of Tourism Research*, *97*, 103500. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.annals.2022.103500

Taylor, P. W. (1986). *Respect for nature: A theory of environmental ethics*. Princeton University Press.

Thomas, K. M. (2022). *Business ethics and animals: Expanding the corporate responsibility agenda*. Cambridge University Press.

University of Lapland. (2023, January 19). *First sled dog welfare certification scheme launched in Finland*. https://www.ulapland.fi/news/First-sled-dog-welfare-certification-scheme-launched-in-Finland/k1b9f4w3/4e8c7e74-8051-47f2-908f-3c2e61f6e97e

Urbanik, J. (2012). *Placing animals: An introduction to the geography of human-animal relations*. Rowman & Littlefield.

Urry, J. (1990). *The tourist gaze: Leisure and travel in contemporary societies*. Sage Publications.

Weaver, D. B., & Fennell, D. A. (1997). The vacation farm sector in Saskatchewan: A profile of operations. *Tourism Management*, *18*(6), 357-365. https://doi.org/10.1016/S0160-7383(97)00038-8

Wellington, A., Greenbaum, A., & Malleson, C. (1997). *Ethics, ecology and the environment*. Pearson Prentice Hall.

Wolch, J. (2002). Anima urbis. *Progress in Human Geography*, *26*(6), 721-742. https://doi.org/10.1191/0309132502ph398oa

Wolch, J. R., & Emel, J. (1995). Bringing the animals back in. *Environment and Planning D: Society and Space*, *13*(6), 632-636. https://doi.org/10.1068/d130632

World Society for the Protection of Animals (WSPA). (2011). *Compassionate travel: A guide to animal-friendly tourism*. WSPA.

World Travel & Tourism Council (WTTC). (2019). *Travel & Tourism: Generating jobs & driving inclusive growth – The 2019 annual research update*. https://wttc.org/

Yudina, O., & Grimwood, B. S. R. (2016). Performing the "wild" north: Observing wildlife tourism guiding performances in Churchill, Manitoba. *Scandinavian Journal of Hospitality and Tourism*, *16*(sup1), 67-85. https://doi.org/10.1080/15022250.2016.1237304

Zhang, H. Q., & Lee, T. H. (2007). Sustainable development of wildlife tourism: A case study of giant pandas in China. *Journal of Sustainable Tourism*, *15*(5), 532-551.

Other sources consulted

1. Tourism and wildlife photography codes of ethics: Developing a clearer picture. (n.d.). *Annals of Tourism Research*. Retrieved April 19, 2025, from https://nscpolteksby.ac.id/ebook/files/Ebook/Journal%20International/Jurnal%20Tourism/Annals%20Of%20Tourism%20Research/Volume%2085%2C%20November%202020%2C%20103023.pdf

2. Schilhab, T. S. (n.d.). Multispecies livelihoods: A posthumanist approach to wildlife ecotourism that promotes animal ethics. *ScholarWorks - Boise State University*. Retrieved April 19, 2025, from https://scholarworks.boisestate.edu/cgi/viewcontent.cgi?article=1126&context=manage_facpubs

3. Zhang, Y., & Xu, H. (2023). A user-generated content analysis of tourists at wildlife tourism attractions. *Frontiers in Sustainable Tourism*. Retrieved April 19, 2025, from https://www.frontiersin.org/journals/sustainable-tourism/articles/10.3389/frsut.2023.1090749/full

4. Sustainability Directory. (n.d.). Sustainable wildlife tourism. Retrieved April 19, 2025, from https://sustainability-directory.com/term/sustainable-wildlife-tourism/

5. Fennell, D. A. (2023). *Tourism and animal ethics* (2nd ed.). Retrieved April 19, 2025, from https://api.pageplace.de/preview/DT0400.9781003858300_A47807107/preview-9781003858300_A47807107.pdf

6. Moorhouse, T. P., D'Cruze, N. C., & Macdonald, D. W. (2023). Elephant 'selfies': Evaluating the effectiveness of Instagram's warning of the potential negative impacts of photo opportunities with wild animals. *PLOS ONE*. Retrieved April 19, 2025, from https://pmc.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/articles/PMC10079110/

7. Fakfare, P., & Lee, J. S. (2023). Animal ethics and tourism: Deepening a stimulus–organism–response (SOR) framework. *The Hong Kong Polytechnic University Institutional Repository*. Retrieved April 19, 2025, from https://ira.lib.polyu.edu.hk/bitstream/10397/99320/1/Fakfare_Animal_Ethics_Tourism.pdf

8. Lawson, J., & Keane, M. (2024). Tourist crossing: Examining the intersection of wildlife tourism attractions & animal welfare in Costa Rica. *Journal of Ecotourism, 23*(2), 141–159. https://www.tandfonline.com/doi/full/10.1080/14724049.2024.2413475?af=R

9. Yang, H., & He, J. (2023). Effects of wildlife tourism on human-wildlife conflict: A bibliometric analysis and scientific review. *Journal of Wildlife and Biodiversity, 7*(3), 45–60. https://www.wildlife-biodiversity.com/index.php/jwb/article/view/700

10. American Birding Association. (n.d.). American Birding Association Code of Birding Ethics. *Land Trust Bird Conservation Initiative*. Retrieved April 19, 2025, from https://www.birds.cornell.edu/landtrust/aba-code-of-birding-ethics/

11. BirdLife Australia. (2020). *Ethical birding guidelines for general BirdLife projects and activities, individuals, and tourism operators*. Retrieved April 19, 2025, from https://s3-ap-southeast-

2.amazonaws.com/connectingcountry/press/wp-content/uploads/2020/07/14105713/BLA-Ethical-Birding-Guidelines-Draft-July-2020.pdf

12. Wearing, S., & Neil, J. (2009). *Tourism and the precautionary principle*. Retrieved April 19, 2025, from https://www.researchgate.net/publication/249023908_Tourism_and_the_Precautionary_Principle

13. Rattan, N., & Minnaert, L. (2023). The 'sanctuary gap': Reviewing the research on captive wildlife sanctuary tourism. *PubMed Central (PMC)*. https://pmc.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/articles/PMC11851909/

14. Garrod, B. (2009). Animals, values and tourism: Structural shifts in UK dolphin tourism provision. Retrieved April 19, 2025, from https://www.researchgate.net/publication/240186269_Animals_values_and_tourism_-_structural_shifts_in_UK_dolphin_tourism_provision

15. Wikipedia. (n.d.). Biocentrism (ethics). Retrieved April 19, 2025, from https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Biocentrism_(ethics)

16. Fiveable. (n.d.). Biocentrism | Literary theory and criticism class notes. Retrieved April 19, 2025, from https://library.fiveable.me/literary-theory-criticism/unit-10/biocentrism/study-guide/JcVvU2iPDOVYqOEn

17. JHI Blog. (2016, February 24). Aldo Leopold and the history of environmental ideas. Retrieved April 19, 2025, from https://www.jhiblog.org/2016/02/24/aldo-leopold-and-the-history-of-environmental-ideas/

18. Chan, K. M. A. (2023). Beyond intrinsic and instrumental: Third-category value in environmental ethics and environmental policy. *Environmental Politics*. https://www.tandfonline.com/doi/full/10.1080/21550085.2023.2166341

19. Orams, M. B. (2015). Ecotourism, animals and ecocentrism: A re-examination of the billfish debate. Retrieved April 19, 2025, from https://www.researchgate.net/publication/271725515_Ecotourism_Animals_and_Ecocentrism_A_Re-examination_of_the_Billfish_Debate

20. Washington, H., & Maloney, M. (2018). The value of nature: Economic, intrinsic, or both? *PMC*. Retrieved April 19, 2025, from https://pmc.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/articles/PMC5790155/

21. Glasp. (n.d.). Environmental ethics (Stanford Encyclopedia of Philosophy). Retrieved April 19, 2025, from https://glasp.co/discover?url=plato.stanford.edu%2Fentries%2Fethics-environmental%2F

22. Saylor Academy. (n.d.). ENVS203: Environmental ethics, justice, and world views. Retrieved April 19, 2025, from https://learn.saylor.org/mod/book/view.php?id=32946&chapterid=12741

23. Aldo Leopold Foundation. (n.d.). Camp Long Run: Aldo Leopold and the Yale Forest School Camp of 1907. Retrieved April 19, 2025, from https://www.aldoleopold.org/blogs/camp-long-run-aldo-leopold-and-the-yale-forest-school-camp-of-1907

24. Quizlet. (n.d.). Conservation movements and founders part 3 flashcards. Retrieved April 19, 2025, from https://quizlet.com/526337551/conservation-movementsand-founders-part-3-flash-cards/

25. Future Generations University. (2018). Community-based conservation. Retrieved April 19, 2025, from https://www.future.edu/wp-content/uploads/2018/09/Community-Based-Conservation.pdf

26. Internet Encyclopedia of Philosophy. (n.d.). Animals and ethics. Retrieved April 19, 2025, from https://iep.utm.edu/animals-and-ethics/

27. Markwell, K., & Fennell, D. A. (2008). Marine wildlife tourism and ethics. In Higham, J. E. S., & Lück, M. (Eds.), *Marine wildlife and tourism management* (pp. 139–157). CABI. Retrieved April 19, 2025, from https://www.cabidigitallibrary.org/doi/pdf/10.5555/20083128982

28. RSPCA Knowledgebase. (n.d.). What are the five freedoms of animal welfare? Retrieved April 19, 2025, from https://kb.rspca.org.au/knowledge-base/what-are-the-five-freedoms-of-animal-welfare/

29. ASPCA. (n.d.). The Five Freedoms. Retrieved April 19, 2025, from https://www.aspca.org/sites/default/files/upload/images/aspca_asv_five_freedoms_final1.ashx_.pdf

30. SPCA Certified. (n.d.). Animal welfare – The Five Freedoms and the Five Domains explained. Retrieved April 19, 2025, from https://www.spcacertified.nz/learn-more/article/animal-welfare-the-five-freedoms-and-the-five-domains-explained

31. Wildlife and Countryside Link. (n.d.). Moving to the 'Five Domains' model for assessing animal welfare. Retrieved April 19, 2025, from https://www.wcl.org.uk/duplicate-of-moving-to-the-five-domains-model-for-assessing-animal-welfare.asp

32. Garcia-Rosell, J. C., & Äijälä, M. (2023). Political corporate social responsibility in small tourism business: The case of a Finnish sled dog kennel. *ResearchGate*. Retrieved April 19, 2025, from https://www.researchgate.net/publication/370136904_Political_Corporate_Social_Responsibility_in_Small_Tourism_Business_The_Case_of_a_Finnish_Sled_Dog_Kennel

33. Duffy, R., & Moore, L. (2012). Global regulations and local practices: The politics and governance of animal welfare in elephant tourism. *ResearchGate*. Retrieved April 19, 2025, from https://www.researchgate.net/publication/233294967_Global_regulations_and_local_practices_The_politics_and_governance_of_animal_welfare_in_elephant_tourism

34. Wikipedia. (n.d.). Tom Regan. Retrieved April 19, 2025, from https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Tom_Regan

35. Regan, T. (n.d.). Regan on inherent value. *Digital Commons @ Cal Poly*. Retrieved April 19, 2025, from https://digitalcommons.calpoly.edu/cgi/viewcontent.cgi?referer=&httpsredir=1&article=1679&context=bts

36. Responsible Eating and Living. (n.d.). Tom Regan, subject-of-a-life. Retrieved April 19, 2025, from https://responsibleeatingandliving.com/tom-regan-subject-of-a-life/

37. Abbate, C. E. (n.d.). Comparing lives and epistemic limitations: A critique of Regan's lifeboat from an unprivileged position. *PhilPapers*. Retrieved April 19, 2025, from https://philpapers.org/archive/ABBCLA-2.pdf

38. Carr, N. (2024). A state-of-the-art review of animals in tourism: Key debates and future directions. *Tourism Geographies*. https://www.tandfonline.com/doi/full/10.1080/14616688.2024.2342462

39. Singer, P. (n.d.). Equality for animals. Retrieved April 19, 2025, from https://hettingern.people.charleston.edu/Environmental_Ethics/Singer%27s_Equality_For_Animals.htm

40. Hettinger, N. (n.d.). Singer's Principle of the Equal Consideration of Interests. Retrieved April 19, 2025, from https://hettingern.people.charleston.edu/Environmental_Ethics/Singer%27s_Equality_For_Animals.htm#:~:text=Singer's%20Principle%20of%20the%20Equal,follows%20from%20utilitarian%20moral%20theory

41. Wikipedia. (n.d.). Equal consideration of interests. Retrieved April 19, 2025, from https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Equal_consideration_of_interests

42. Fiveable. (n.d.). Equal consideration of interests – Ethics. Retrieved April 19, 2025, from https://fiveable.me/key-terms/ethics/equal-consideration-of-interests

43. Stanford Encyclopedia of Philosophy. (n.d.). Moral vegetarianism. Retrieved April 19, 2025, from https://plato.stanford.edu/entries/vegetarianism/

44. University of San Diego. (n.d.). Biocentrism – Environmental ethics. Retrieved April 19, 2025, from https://home.sandiego.edu/~kaufmann/hnrs379/Biocentrism_EEEP.pdf

45. Britannica. (n.d.). Biocentrism | Environmental ethics, animal rights & conservation. Retrieved April 19, 2025, from https://www.britannica.com/topic/biocentrism

46. University of Chicago Department of Philosophy. (n.d.). Ecocentrism and environmental racism. Retrieved April 19, 2025, from https://philosophy.uchicago.edu/node/9821

47. Wikipedia. (n.d.). Ecocentrism. Retrieved April 19, 2025, from https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Ecocentrism

48. University of San Diego. (n.d.). Ecocentrism – Deep ecological ethics. Retrieved April 19, 2025, from https://home.sandiego.edu/~kaufmann/hnrs379/Ecocentrism_SAGE.pdf

49. Wikipedia. (n.d.). Land ethic. Retrieved April 19, 2025, from https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Land_ethic

50. Lancaster University. (n.d.). Week 6: Environmental ethics, holism and animal ethics. Retrieved April 19, 2025, from https://www.lancaster.ac.uk/users/philosophy/awaymave/403new/wk6.htm

51. Egan Philosophy. (n.d.). Animal ethics and environmental ethics: What's the difference? Retrieved April 19, 2025, from https://eganphilosophy.com/animal-ethics-and-environmental-ethics/

52. PubMed Central. (2014). Ethical question of the month — October 2014. Retrieved April 19, 2025, from https://pmc.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/articles/PMC4187372/

53. University of Nebraska–Lincoln. (n.d.). An ethical analysis of lethal control practices for invasive species management. Retrieved April 19, 2025, from https://digitalcommons.unl.edu/cgi/viewcontent.cgi?article=1150&context=envstudtheses

54. Ecology and Society. (n.d.). A heuristic for innovative invasive species management actions and strategies. Retrieved April 19, 2025, from https://ecologyandsociety.org/vol27/iss4/art24/

55. Bekoff, M. (2016). Animal rights and environmental ethics. *ResearchGate*. Retrieved April 19, 2025, from https://www.researchgate.net/publication/302000161_Animal_Rights_and_Environmental_Ethics

56. Animal Legal & Historical Center. (n.d.). Detailed discussion of the ethical treatment of invasive species. Retrieved April 19, 2025, from https://www.animallaw.info/article/detailed-discussion-ethical-treatment-invasive-species

57. Nolt, J. (n.d.). The invasive species diet: The ethics of eating lionfish as a wildlife management strategy. *PhilArchive*. Retrieved April 19, 2025, from https://philarchive.org/archive/NOLTIS-2

58. Reddit. (n.d.). Culling invasive species is necessary. Eating them is ethical. Retrieved April 19, 2025, from https://www.reddit.com/r/DebateAVegan/comments/14vw1le/culling_invasive_species_is_necessary_eating_them/

59. IUCN. (n.d.). The precautionary principle in biodiversity conservation and natural resource management. Retrieved April 19, 2025, from https://portals.iucn.org/library/sites/library/files/documents/pgc-002.pdf

60. BirdLife International. (2023). Conservation & rights. Retrieved April 19, 2025, from https://www.birdlife.org/wp-content/uploads/2023/11/BirdLife-Rights-and-Social-Safeguards-Compiled_Draft.pdf

61. Urry, J. (2002). *The tourist gaze*. Sage Publications. Retrieved April 19, 2025, from https://books.google.com/books/about/The_Tourist_Gaze.html?id=8jRiz-yPEnMC

62. Urry, J. (n.d.). The tourist gaze. *Forum Vies Mobiles*. Retrieved April 19, 2025, from https://forumviesmobiles.org/en/node/12906/printable/print

63. Durham University. (n.d.). Gaze describes the experiential way that tourists perceive destinations. *Durham Research Online (DRO)*. Retrieved April 19, 2025, from https://durham-repository.worktribe.com/preview/1720385/1720113AAM.pdf

64. Manka, S. (n.d.). 5 guidelines for ethical wildlife tourism. *Fancy Scientist*. Retrieved April 19, 2025, from https://stephanieschuttler.com/5-guidelines-for-ethical-wildlife-ecotourism/

65. Newsome, D., & Hughes, M. (2013). Should dingoes die? Principles for engaging ecocentric ethics in wildlife tourism management. *ResearchGate*. Retrieved April 19, 2025, from https://www.researchgate.net/publication/233471873_Should_dingoes_die_Principles_for_engaging_ecocentric_ethics_in_wildlife_tourism_management

66. Markwell, K. (2023). The human gaze at animals and the missing animal gaze in tourism studies. *Tourism Geographies*. https://www.tandfonline.com/doi/full/10.1080/13683500.2023.2215920

67. World Animal Protection. (2023). Elephant 'selfies': Evaluating the effectiveness of Instagram's warnings. *PLOS ONE*. Retrieved April 19, 2025, from https://journals.plos.org/plosone/article?id=10.1371/journal.pone.0283858

68. Burnett, E. (2021). The rise of selfie safaris and the future(s) of wildlife tourism. *ResearchGate*. Retrieved April 19, 2025, from https://www.researchgate.net/publication/353692478_The_Rise_of_Selfie_Safaris_and_the_Futures_of_Wildlife_Tourism

69. Sloth Conservation Foundation. (n.d.). Tourism, selfies and animals: Are you travelling responsibly? Retrieved April 19, 2025, from https://slothconservation.org/ecotourism-selfies-animals-travelling-responsibly/

70. Convention on Migratory Species. (n.d.). Guidelines for recreational in-water interactions with marine wildlife. Retrieved April 19, 2025, from https://www.cms.int/lions/sites/default/files/document/cms_cop14_res.12.16_rev.cop14_annex_riwi-guidelines_e_0.pdf

71. Araujo, G. (2022). Ecotourism impacts on the behavior of whale sharks: An experimental approach. *Oryx*. Retrieved April 19, 2025, from https://www.cambridge.org/core/journals/oryx/article/ecotourism-impacts-on-the-behavior-of-whale-sharks-an-experimental-approach/FA9F7DA6190C09714ADF1D9700217C9E

72. Higham, J. E. S., & Bejder, L. (2020). Dolphins and boats: When is a disturbance, disturbing? *Frontiers in Marine Science, 7*, Article 353. https://www.frontiersin.org/journals/marine-science/articles/10.3389/fmars.2020.00353/full

73. Lusseau, D., & Higham, J. E. S. (2014). Activities, motivations and disturbance: An agent-based model of bottlenose dolphin behavioral dynamics. *ResearchGate*. https://www.researchgate.net/publication/261293463_Activities_motivations_and_disturbance_An_agent-based_model_of_bottlenose_dolphin_behavioral_dynamics_and_interactions_with_tourism_in_Doubtful_Sound_New_Zealand

74. Thoroughly Travel. (2025). Let's talk about ethical wildlife tourism in 2025. Retrieved April 19, 2025, from https://www.thoroughlytravel.com/ethical-wildlife-tourism/

75. Vaia. (n.d.). Wildlife tourism regulation: Impact & laws. Retrieved April 19, 2025, from https://www.vaia.com/en-us/explanations/hospitality-and-tourism/tourism-policy-and-regulation/wildlife-tourism-regulation/

76. Faunalytics. (2023). Elephant tourism threatens public health and animal welfare. Retrieved April 19, 2025, from https://faunalytics.org/elephant-tourism-threatens-public-health-and-animal-welfare/

77. BC SPCA. (n.d.). Update on sled dog investigation. Retrieved April 19, 2025, from https://spca.bc.ca/news/update-sled-dog-investigation/

78. Government of British Columbia. (2011). Premier announces Canada's toughest animal cruelty laws. Retrieved April 19, 2025, from https://news.gov.bc.ca/releases/2011PREM0030-000340

79. Government of British Columbia. (n.d.). Sled dog protection in British Columbia. Retrieved April 19, 2025, from https://www2.gov.bc.ca/gov/content/industry/agriculture-seafood/animals-and-crops/animal-welfare/14332

80. Garcia-Rosell, J. C. (n.d.). Advancing ethics and animal welfare in sled dog activities in Finland. Retrieved April 19, 2025, from https://www.jcgarciarosell.com/post/the-ethics-of-sled-dog-activities-are-being-studied-and-developed-in-finland

81. American Birding Association. (n.d.). ABA code of ethics. Retrieved April 19, 2025, from https://wfvz.org/wp-content/uploads/2014/08/bird_watching_etchics_ABA.pdf

82. Oriental Bird Club. (n.d.). Code of practice for birders. Retrieved April 19, 2025, from https://sawfish-kazoo-6w4a.squarespace.com/s/Oriental-Bird-Club-Code-of-Practice-version-2.pdf

83. Black Swamp Bird Observatory. (n.d.). ABA Code of Birding Ethics. Retrieved April 19, 2025, from https://www.bsbo.org/aba-code-of-birding-ethics.html

84. East Cascades Bird Alliance. (n.d.). Code of Birding Ethics. Retrieved April 19, 2025, from https://ecbirds.org/birder-resources-2/code-of-birding-ethics/

85. American Birding Association. (n.d.). ABA Code of Birding Ethics. Retrieved April 19, 2025, from https://www.aba.org/aba-code-of-birding-ethics/

86. Cornell Lab of Ornithology. (n.d.). ABA Code of Birding Ethics. Retrieved April 19, 2025, from https://www.birds.cornell.edu/landtrust/aba-code-of-birding-ethics/#:~:text=Always%20bird%20and%20report%20with

87. BirdLife NQ. (n.d.). BirdLife photography code of ethics. Retrieved April 19, 2025, from https://www.birdlifenq.org/post/birdlife-photography-code-of-ethics

88. American Ornithological Society. (n.d.). AOS Code of Conduct & Ethics Policy. Retrieved April 19, 2025, from https://americanornithology.org/about/governance/code-of-professional-conduct/aos-code-of-conduct-ethics-policy/

89. Birdability. (n.d.). Access considerations. Retrieved April 19, 2025, from https://www.birdability.org/access-considerations

90. eBird Oregon. (n.d.). Birding ethics: Guidelines for respecting birds, their habitat, and each other. Retrieved April 19, 2025, from https://ebird.org/pnw/news/birding-ethics-guidelines-for-respecting-birds-their-habitat-and-each-other

91. The Rewilding Institute. (n.d.). "The precautionary principle" in conservation. Retrieved April 19, 2025, from https://rewilding.org/the-precautionary-principle-in-conservation/

92. Conviva. (n.d.). Social justice in conservation: Balancing human and wildlife needs. Retrieved April 19, 2025, from https://conviva-research.com/Social-Justice-in-Conservation/

93. U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service. (n.d.). Traditional ecological knowledge fact sheet. Retrieved April 19, 2025, from https://www.fws.gov/media/traditional-ecological-knowledge-fact-sheet

94. Polar Bear Range States. (n.d.). Involvement of Indigenous peoples and incorporation of TEK. Retrieved April 19, 2025, from https://polarbearagreement.org/polar-bear-management/involvement-of-indigenous-peoples-and-incorporation-of-tek

95. MDPI. (2022). Advancing wildlife policy of eastern timber wolves and lake sturgeon through traditional ecological knowledge. *Sustainability, 14*(7), 3859. https://www.mdpi.com/2071-1050/14/7/3859

96. Google Scholar. (n.d.). Georgette Leah Burns. Retrieved April 19, 2025, from https://scholar.google.co.uk/citations?user=CsQEzDQAAAAJ&hl=en

97. Markwell, K. (2023). Virtual wildlife tourism: An ideal form of ecotourism? *Tourism Geographies*. https://www.tandfonline.com/doi/pdf/10.1080/14724049.2023.2175835

98. UNDP. (2024). Multi-species justice. *United Nations Development Programme*. https://www.undp.org/future-development/signals-spotlight-2024/multi-species-justice

99. Roe, E. (2024). Realizing multispecies justice: A (dog) walk in the park? *Tourism Geographies*. https://www.tandfonline.com/doi/full/10.1080/16078055.2024.2355138

100. Thompson, A. (2023). Wildlife equity theory for multispecies tourism justice. *ResearchGate*. https://www.researchgate.net/publication/365109171_Wildlife_Equity_Theory_for_Multispecies_Tourism_Justice

101. Curtin, S. (2017). Equestrian tourism: Animal agency observed. *ResearchGate*. https://www.researchgate.net/publication/318344195_Equestrian_tourism_animal_agency_observed

102. Matkailututkimus. (2020). Knowing through interspecies relationality in tourism? *Journal.fi*. https://journal.fi/matkailututkimus/article/view/88270/47444

103. Curtin, S. (2019). Equestrian tourism: Animal agency observed. *Current Issues in Tourism, 22*(8), 948–966. https://ideas.repec.org/a/taf/rcitxx/v22y2019i8p948-966.html

104. Cornell Wildlife Health Center. (n.d.). One Health: Interdependence of people, other species, and the planet. Retrieved April 19, 2025, from https://wildlife.cornell.edu/sites/default/files/2018-10/OneHealthCh_JekelEpi%26PublicHealth%20copy.pdf

105. PMC. (n.d.). One Health ethics and the ethics of zoonoses: A silent call for global action. Retrieved April 19, 2025, from https://pmc.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/articles/PMC11435914/

106. Frontiers in Public Health. (2022). Mainstreaming gender-responsive One Health: Now is the time. https://www.frontiersin.org/journals/public-health/articles/10.3389/fpubh.2022.845866/full

Section II – Birdwatching Case Studies – Global and Regional Perspectives

(Empirical Studies: Countries, Biomes, Cultures)

Chapter 6

Birdwatching Tourism and Avian Conservation in Aotearoa New Zealand

An Interdisciplinary Appraisal of Species, Sites, and Stewardship

Ismar Borges de Lima
Universidade Estadual de Roraima-UERR, Brazil &
RECINATUR Foundation. Email: ismar@uerr.edu.br

Summary

Aotearoa, as Maori call New Zealand, is a global hotspot for birds: tiny riflemen flick through mossy forests, giant albatrosses skim roaring seas, and the nocturnal kiwi shuffles in the ferns. Because most species evolved without land mammals, they have little defense against rats, stoats and possums introduced by humans. Half are now threatened, yet they have also become the stars of an avitourism industry that brings well-educated travelers—and their money—into communities across the islands. This chapter explains how conservationists, Māori guardians (kaitiaki), tourism operators and volunteers are trying to square that circle. Predator-free offshore islands and high-tech fenced "ecological islands" such as Sanctuary Mountain Maungatautari give endangered birds homes and offer visitors sightings. Tourism levies, entry fees and donations funnel cash back into pest control, research and habitat repair, creating a virtuous but fragile loop. The gains are real—kōkako, takahē and spotted kiwi are bouncing back—but challenges loom. Mice breach fences, climate change is reshaping habitats, and conservation funding swings with tourist numbers. This lengthy chapter was divided in four parts: first, it deals with the foundations of avitourism and avifauna conservation in Aotearoa; secondly, it presents the major aspects and insights related to bird species, sites, and strategies anchoring birdwatching experiences in the country; thirdly, conservation and ecological areas and key tourism avifauna of New Zealand, fourthly, it insightfully presents the future directions and challenges of avitourism in Aotearoa New Zealand.

Part I — Foundations of Avitourism and Avifauna Conservation in Aotearoa

(Setting the conceptual, cultural, and ecological stage)

6.0. General View

Aotearoa New Zealand, with its unique avifauna shaped by geographic isolation, presents a compelling destination for avitourism – tourism focused on birdwatching. *Aotearoa*, meaning "land of the long white cloud" in te reo Māori, is the Indigenous name for New Zealand, and its use alongside the English name reflects the nation's evolving commitment to honoring its bicultural identity. This chapter examines the multifaceted nature of avitourism in the country, exploring its definition, the key species and habitats that form its core appeal, and its complex interactions with ecosystems, the economy, and conservation efforts.

Avitourism is identified as a growing niche within nature-based tourism, drawing visitors attracted by Aotearoa's high levels of avian endemism, including iconic flightless birds like kiwi and kākāpō, unique parrots such as kea, and globally significant seabird populations, particularly albatrosses. Key habitats range from accessible pest-free island and mainland sanctuaries (e.g., Tiritiri Matangi, Ulva Island, Zealandia) to vast national parks and specialized sites like the Kaikoura pelagic zone and the Pūkorokoro / Miranda Shorebird Centre.

The relationship between avitourism and the environment is multifaceted. While potentially contributing positively through conservation funding (e.g., via the International Visitor Levy), enhanced visitor awareness, and local community engagement, avitourism also poses risks. Visitor disturbance can negatively impact bird behavior and breeding success, particularly for sensitive species like the Yellow-eyed penguin and shorebirds. Biosecurity remains a critical concern, with protocols like 'Check, Clean, Dry' and Kauri dieback hygiene measures essential to prevent the spread of invasive species and diseases facilitated by visitor movement.

Economically, avitourism contributes through direct visitor spending, supports regional development, and generates employment. Avitourists often exhibit higher-than-average expenditure and longer stays. Furthermore, native birdlife holds significant non-market value for New Zealanders, as evidenced by willingness-to-pay studies, suggesting potential underinvestment in conservation relative to public valuation. However, funding models reliant on tourism are vulnerable to external shocks, highlighting the need for financial resilience.

The New Zealand Threat Classification System now sets the compass for conservation policy, underscoring that many of the birds most sought by avitourists are either formally threatened or require perpetual management. Cornerstone responses—predator-proof sanctuaries and nation-wide schemes such as Predator Free 2050—offer vital safeguards for the country's avifaunal legacy, yet their effectiveness is constrained by the sheer spatial scale involved, persistent funding demands, and the need for sustained public endorsement. Integrating Māori perspectives, particularly the values of *manaakitanga* (hospitality) and *kaitiakitanga* (guardianship), offers a culturally grounded framework for sustainable and regenerative tourism, enriching the visitor experience while ensuring environmental and cultural integrity.

Future challenges include mitigating climate change impacts, which threaten birds and habitats, and effectively implementing sustainable tourism strategies amidst funding constraints and potential land-use conflicts. Recommendations focus on strengthening policy coherence, investing in targeted management and research, enhancing biosecurity measures, ensuring sustainable conservation funding, and genuinely embedding Māori values into tourism practice. Addressing these challenges is vital for ensuring that avitourism in Aotearoa New Zealand continues to enrich the nation while safeguarding its irreplaceable natural heritage.

6.0.1. Avitourism Market, Avifauna at Risk, Predators, and Conservation Management: Possums, Stoats, Rats

Introduced mammalian predators continue to represent the greatest constraint on New Zealand's avifauna, a bird community shaped over millions of years in the near-total absence of terrestrial mammals. As highlighted in the Department of Conservation's *Predator-Free 2050 Biennial Progress Report*, "we know our native wildlife is vulnerable to introduced predators, including possums, rats, stoats and other mustelids. It is estimated these introduced predators kill 25 million native birds each year. The bold goal to eradicate these predators by 2050 was described as New Zealand's moon shot" (Department of Conservation, 2023, p. 5).

Today, half of Aotearoa's surviving bird species are classified as *Threatened* or *At Risk*, and projections indicate that without large-scale predator suppression, future losses could be even more severe.

Efforts to counteract these threats employ a diverse array of tools that extend well beyond the iconic predator-proof fences. Across the country, the Department of Conservation's National Predator Control Programme administers cyclic aerial 1080 (sodium monofluoroacetate) treatments over approximately 1.8 million hectares, supplemented by ground-based bait stations, self-resetting traps such as Goodnature A24, and remote monitoring technologies. A before-after/control-impact study in the Remutaka and Aorangi Ranges found that aerial 1080 operations "effectively reduced possum, rat and stoat densities and produced no detectable forest-silencing," with native bird song either maintained or enhanced in treated sites (Bomans, Cook, & Hartley, 2021). Modern management also employs adaptive scheduling to respond to predator irruptions following beech mast events, and research is advancing the use of novel baits like double-encapsulated 1080 and PAPP to minimize non-target impacts.

An illustrative image. A.I. generation.

Caption: Illustration of invasive mammalian predators—possums (Trichosurus vulpecula) and stoats (Mustela erminea)—posing a predation threat to the endangered kiwi (Apteryx spp.) in New Zealand. The impact of introduced species remains a critical challenge for avian conservation, necessitating integrated biosecurity and predator control strategies under national frameworks such as Predator Free 2050.

Among the most visible successes are New Zealand's *mainland islands*—extensive tracts of native forest encircled by purpose-built, pest-proof fences. A leading example is Sanctuary Mountain Maungatautari (Waikato), where "in 2006 the ~3,400 ha forested mountain of Maungatautari was protected by a ~47 km pest fence, and most introduced mammals within the fence have since been eradicated. Since then, seven locally extinct indigenous bird species have been translocated to Maungatautari, one other has self-reintroduced, and many more avian translocations are planned" (Smuts-Kennedy & Parker, 2013, p. 93).

Similar successes are evident at fenced sanctuaries such as Zealandia/Karori (Wellington), Orokonui (Otago), Brook Waimārama (Nelson), and Tawharanui (Auckland), all of which have become pivotal nodes in regional avitourism circuits, offering visitors exceptional chances to experience rare birds like hihi, tīeke, and kākā.

Predator-free offshore islands, such as Whenua Hou and Tiritiri Matangi, add a second, equally crucial tier to New Zealand's conservation architecture. Furthermore, a growing network of community-led, unfenced projects is delivering measurable benefits. Landscape-scale trapping initiatives on the Miramar Peninsula, Port Hills, and Makarora Valley have reported increases of between 50–500 % in tūī, pīwakawaka, and kākā encounter rates within five years of their establishment. These gains are underpinned by an ecological understanding that "predictable spatial patterns of rodent population dynamics arise from stronger low-temperature limitations on rats than mice, biotic limitation of mice by rats, and spatiotemporal food-resource patterns affecting both species… suppression of ship rats alone will release house mouse populations, especially in warmer forests" (Walker et al., 2019, p. 1627).

Collectively, fenced sanctuaries, aerial baiting, island eradications, and expansive iwi- and community-led trapping networks represent a multi-layered defense system for New Zealand's avian biodiversity. By June 2023, these strategies had successfully reduced predator pressure across more than 1.77 million hectares of public land and rendered two-thirds of the country's 489 uninhabited islands predator-free (Department of Conservation, 2023). Strengthening connections between tourism levies, volunteer efforts, and Māori kaitiakitanga is now critical for ensuring both the growth of avitourism and the preservation of Aotearoa's globally unique birdlife.

Beyond their intrinsic ecological value, birds are foundational to the experiential economy that sustains avitourism, wildlife tourism, and broader nature-based recreation. As Sekercioğlu (2002) emphasized, "birdwatchers form the largest group of ecotourists, and are, on average, well-educated, wealthy and committed. This makes them ideal ecotourists for community-based conservation. Birdwatching tourism has a high potential to improve the financial and environmental well-being of local communities, educate locals about the value of biodiversity and create local and national incentives for successful protection and preservation of natural areas" (Sekercioğlu, 2002, p. 283).

This synergy between conservation and recreation explains why birds are increasingly positioned by organizations like BirdLife International as "indicator, flagship, and umbrella" species for ecosystem stewardship. Correspondingly, the global birdwatching tourism market size was estimated at $62.73 billion in 2023 according to Grand View Research, and it forecasts an annual growth rate of 6.2 % through 2030—growth underpinned by travelers seeking authentic encounters with flourishing bird populations (Grand View Research, 2024). Together, these findings illustrate that robust bird populations not only enrich ecosystems but also drive tangible economic returns (Kaval & Roskruge, 2009) — through visitor spending, local employment, and civic investment—reinforcing the strategic role of bird conservation in strengthening avitourism, ecotourism, and broader enjoyment of natural heritage.

The next sections will now explore specific aspects of birdwatching tourism and of avifauna in New Zealand.

6.1. Introduction: Avitourism in Aotearoa New Zealand

6.1.1. Defining Avitourism in the Aotearoa Context and Maori Cultural Dimensions

Avitourism represents a specialized segment within the broader field of nature-based tourism, characterized by travel motivations primarily focused on observing birds in their natural environments.[1] It is formally defined as "the motivated participation in birdwatching as either the sole purpose or a key element of travel".[2] This involves intentional travel beyond an individual's usual surroundings specifically for the purpose of viewing avian species.[3] While the activity itself is well-established, the specific term 'avitourism' is relatively recent in academic discourse compared to 'birdwatching tourism' or simply 'birding', historically yielding fewer results in literature searches.[2] The terminology surrounding bird-focused travel remains diverse, encompassing related concepts like 'twitching' (seeking specific rare birds) and 'ornithological tourism'.[4] This terminological evolution reflects a market that is still defining its boundaries and identity. While researchers increasingly adopt 'avitourism' for its specificity [2], the broader range of activities and participant motivations might not be fully captured by this single term, potentially influencing market analysis and promotion strategies.

In the context of Aotearoa New Zealand, avitourism gains particular significance due to the nation's globally renowned unique avifauna and its well-established identity as a prime destination for nature-based tourism.[4] The country's natural landscapes and distinctive wildlife form the bedrock of its international tourism appeal, making bird-focused travel a natural and important component of the overall visitor experience.

6.1.2 Cultural Dimensions: Integrating Māori Perspectives

Avitourism in Aotearoa New Zealand operates within a unique cultural landscape shaped by the enduring relationship between Māori, the indigenous people, and the natural world, including its birdlife (manu). Understanding and integrating Māori perspectives, values, and involvement is increasingly recognized as essential for authentic, respectful, and sustainable tourism development.

6.1.3. Manu (Birds) in Te Ao Māori: Significance and Connection

Within Te Ao Māori (the Māori worldview), birds (manu) are not merely wildlife; they hold profound cultural, spiritual, and ancestral significance. Manu feature prominently in creation stories, tribal whakapapa (genealogy), mythology (e.g., Māui's exploits often involve birds), proverbs (whakataukī), songs (waiata), and traditional art forms like carving and weaving [Implicit, requires broader cultural context]. Birds were seen as messengers, indicators of seasonal changes, and symbols of particular attributes. Specific species held special importance for different iwi (tribes) and hapū (sub-tribes).

Traditional Māori society involved practices of resource management guided by principles of kaitiakitanga (guardianship), which included the sustainable harvest of certain abundant bird species, such as the Kererū (New Zealand Pigeon) and Tītī (Sooty Shearwater), for food and feathers.[22] These practices were interwoven with cultural protocols and seasonal knowledge. However, the arrival of Europeans brought significant changes – widespread habitat destruction (forest clearance, wetland drainage) and the introduction of mammalian predators decimated many bird populations.[22] This ecological devastation meant that some traditional harvesting practices became unsustainable.[22] The decline and extinction of numerous manu represent not only an ecological tragedy but also a profound cultural loss, severing connections to ancestors, traditional knowledge, and resources. Consequently, modern conservation efforts aimed at restoring bird populations are often deeply intertwined with Māori aspirations for cultural revitalisation and the reaffirmation of kaitiakitanga.

6.1.4. Manaakitanga and Kaitiakitanga: Guiding Principles for Ecotourism

Māori tourism enterprises often operate under guiding principles derived from core cultural values, offering experiences that are distinct from conventional tourism and providing Aotearoa New Zealand with a unique point of difference on the global stage.[76] Two central concepts are manaakitanga and kaitiakitanga.

- **Manaakitanga:** This deeply ingrained value translates broadly as hospitality, kindness, generosity, and the nurturing of relationships.[76] It encompasses the process of welcoming, hosting, and caring for visitors (manuhiri) with respect and ensuring their physical, social, and spiritual well-being.[80] It is considered a fundamental aspect of Māori identity and social interaction, an expression of mutual respect between host and guest, and a way to uphold the mana (prestige, spiritual power) of both the hosts and the visitors.[81] From a Māori perspective, tourism can be seen as a modern expression of this ancient practice: "Manaakitanga is holistic and broad, encompassing hospitality, environmental protection, treating people with respect, nurturing relationships, caring for others and reciprocity of kindness, respect, and humanity"(Mead & Roberts 2019; Smith 2022).[78]
- **Kaitiakitanga:** This principle embodies the concept of guardianship, stewardship, care, and protection, particularly concerning the natural environment – the land (whenua), waters (moana, awa), forests (ngahere), and all living creatures (including manu).[76] It stems from the belief that humans have a responsibility to safeguard the mauri (life force or essence) of the natural world for future generations.[78] Kaitiakitanga dictates sustainable resource management and respectful interaction with the environment.[80] "Kaitiakitanga is a "Māori philosophy describing guardianship, care and protection, and providing a basis for our approach to sustainably managing our natural, cultural, and built environment for current and future generations"".[80]

Together, these values provide a powerful framework for Māori-led avitourism and ecotourism. They foster experiences grounded in authentic cultural exchange, mutual respect, storytelling, and a profound connection to place, while simultaneously emphasizing environmental responsibility and sustainability.[78] The relationship between Māori hosts, visitors, and the land "embodies the principles of manaakitanga (hospitality) and kaitiakitanga (guardianship), setting Aotearoa New Zealand apart from other tourist destinations".[76]

The application of Manaakitanga and Kaitiakitanga offers a culturally authentic foundation for the broader sustainable and regenerative tourism aspirations of Aotearoa New Zealand.[85] These are not new concepts adopted for tourism but are long-standing cultural imperatives. Manaakitanga addresses the social and experiential dimensions (caring for people), while Kaitiakitanga addresses the environmental dimension (caring for place). Together, they represent a holistic system of care that aligns closely with the goals of regenerative tourism – striving to ensure that tourism activities benefit hosts, guests, and the environment, leaving all better off through the interaction.[87] Embedding these principles genuinely within the wider tourism sector, beyond just Māori-specific enterprises, presents an opportunity to create a truly distinctive and responsible tourism identity for the nation.

6.1.5. The Role and Value of Māori Tourism Enterprises

Māori involvement in tourism is not new, dating back to the earliest days of European visitation, with Māori acting as guides to significant natural attractions like the Pink and White Terraces.[78] Today, Māori tourism represents a dynamic and increasingly significant sector within the national economy.[76] A 2025 report commissioned by NZ Māori Tourism estimated that Māori tourism businesses contributed "$1.2 billion (estimated) in 2023, up from $975 million in 2018" to the Māori economy's GDP.[76] In 2023, there were nearly 3,600 Māori tourism businesses employing over 15,000 people.[79]

These enterprises operate across the spectrum of tourism industries, from core activities like accommodation, tours, and cultural attractions to supporting services.[76] A key characteristic is the integration of unique cultural heritage and storytelling into the visitor offering, often emphasizing the connection between people and the land.[76] Māori collectives, including trusts, incorporations, and post-settlement governance entities established through Treaty of Waitangi settlements, play a crucial role in enabling iwi and hapū to develop and manage tourism ventures on their ancestral lands, contributing an estimated $151 million in GDP in 2023.[76]

Māori tourism businesses exhibit distinct operational characteristics. On average, they tend to employ more people than their non-Māori counterparts in core tourism industries (2.5 employees vs 1.5) and potentially offer higher average salaries.[76] While generating comparable or higher average revenues, their profitability proportion was slightly lower in 2023, possibly due to significantly higher average expenditure ($421,000 vs $274,000 for non-Māori businesses).[76] Historically, Māori tourism businesses have demonstrated strong labor productivity in certain sectors.[76]

For many Māori, tourism is viewed as more than just a commercial enterprise. It is seen as a means of achieving economic independence and self-determination, fostering cultural revitalisation and preservation, sharing authentic narratives, and exercising rangatiratanga (self-determination, autonomy) and kaitiakitanga over ancestral lands and resources.[78] As articulated by one perspective, "sustainable tourism can be consistent with indigenous values regarding the sanctity of the land and people's relationship to it".[78]

Part II — Bird Species, Sites, and Strategies: Anchoring Birdwatching Experiences

(Focus on species at risk, key conservation sites, management strategies)

6.2. The Unique Avian Appeal of Aotearoa: Endemism and Biodiversity

Aotearoa New Zealand's allure for avitourists is inextricably linked to its extraordinary avian biodiversity, characterized by high levels of endemism and the presence of species found nowhere else on Earth.[5] Geographic isolation over millions of years allowed a unique bird fauna to evolve, notably featuring a high proportion of flightless or semi-flightless species that developed in the absence of native terrestrial mammalian predators.[5] As noted by Pearce and Wilson, "The distinctiveness of the country's birdlife, a large proportion of which is flightless or semi-flightless, is in large part a function of its insularity and relative remoteness. Prior to settlement... New Zealand had neither mammalian predators nor herbivores".[5] This evolutionary history has resulted in iconic species such as the various kiwi (*Apteryx* spp.), the kākāpō (*Strigops habroptilus*), the takahē (*Porphyrio hochstetteri*), and the weka (*Gallirallus australis*), alongside unique forest parrots like the kea

(*Nestor notabilis*) and kākā (*Nestor meridionalis*), and a globally significant assemblage of seabirds, including numerous albatross and penguin species.[7]

The presence of these endemic species, many of which are rare or threatened, acts as a powerful magnet for dedicated avitourists from around the globe.[5] Research confirms that key factors making New Zealand a memorable birding destination include "the presence of multiple endemic species and seabirds".[6] Specific regions and sites have become synonymous with particular avian experiences: Kaikoura is renowned for its accessible pelagic birding opportunities, offering close views of albatrosses and petrels [9]; Stewart Island/Rakiura provides exceptional chances to see kiwi in the wild, alongside a rich diversity of forest birds within the Rakiura National Park and on the predator-free sanctuary of Ulva Island [15]; and dedicated sanctuaries like Tiritiri Matangi Island near Auckland and Zealandia Ecosanctuary in Wellington offer reliable viewing of translocated and recovering endemic species.[17]

However, the very evolutionary trajectory that created this unique avian appeal also renders many species exceptionally vulnerable. High endemism, particularly flightlessness or weak flight, evolved in the absence of mammalian predators.[5] The subsequent introduction of mammals (rats, stoats, possums, cats) by humans has had devastating consequences, driving extinctions and ongoing declines.[22] Furthermore, habitat modification and direct human disturbance add to the pressures faced by these specialized species.[22] This creates a fundamental tension for avitourism: the unique, endemic birds that are the primary attraction are often the most sensitive to the potential negative impacts associated with increased human presence and associated risks (such as biosecurity breaches or direct disturbance). Therefore, the management of avitourism in Aotearoa must constantly navigate the delicate balance between showcasing this extraordinary natural heritage and ensuring its rigorous protection.

6.2.1. Scope and Significance of Avitourism Research

Avitourism is recognized globally as a rapidly expanding segment within the broader nature-based tourism industry.[1] Despite this growth, dedicated research into avitourism is comparatively recent, described as "relatively embryonic compared with higher order markets such as nature-based or wildlife tourism".[2] Historically, research efforts exhibited a strong geographical bias towards the Northern Hemisphere, particularly North America and Europe.[2]

Key areas of investigation have included the economic impacts of avitourism, the motivations and characteristics of participants (avitourists or birders), and efforts to understand and segment the avitourism market.[2] Studies have also examined the specific types of birds or bird-related phenomena (like migrations) that attract avitourists.[2] However, critical aspects remain relatively underexplored, particularly the potential negative impacts of avitourism activities on bird populations and their habitats [1], and the detailed dynamics of avitourism within specific destinations.[1]

Understanding the nuances of avitourism is crucial for its sustainable development. As highlighted by Steven et al. (2015), "Enhanced understanding of avitourism opportunities and avitourist desires could guide industry growth, assist the economies of many communities, highlight birds and habitats vulnerable to the negative impacts of avitourism, and help finance conservation work".[2] Avitourism holds the potential not only for economic benefits but also for positive conservation outcomes.[1] It is seen as a form of tourism that "can potentially contribute to community development and avian conservation".[1] Achieving this potential requires a solid evidence base derived from focused research into the market, its participants, its impacts, and the ecological context within which it operates.

6.2.2. The Avifauna Tapestry: Key Species and Habitats

Aotearoa New Zealand's avitourism appeal is built upon a remarkable diversity of birdlife inhabiting a range of ecosystems, from dense native forests and alpine zones to braided rivers, extensive coastlines, and the open ocean. Understanding the key species and the habitats they depend upon is fundamental to appreciating the avitourism product and its associated conservation challenges.

Source and credits: Animal Spot.
https://www.animalspot.net/birds-around-the-world/birds-of-new-zealand

6.2.3. Icons of the Forest: Endemic Land Birds

The forests and shrublands of Aotearoa are home to a suite of endemic land birds that are primary targets for many avitourists. Their uniqueness is often coupled with significant conservation concerns, making encounters both sought-after and poignant.

- **Kiwi (*Apteryx* spp.):** The flightless, nocturnal kiwi is arguably New Zealand's most famous avian icon. Several distinct taxa exist, including North Island Brown Kiwi (*A. mantelli*), Okarito Brown Kiwi or Rowi (*A. rowi*), Tokoeka (Haast, Northern Fiordland, Southern Fiordland, Rakiura/Stewart Island subspecies/forms of *A. australis*), Great Spotted Kiwi or Roroa (*A. haastii*), and Little Spotted Kiwi (*A. owenii*).[7] Their conservation status varies significantly, from the widely managed North Island Brown Kiwi (Not Threatened, but Conservation Dependent)*[1] and the recovering Little Spotted Kiwi (Nationally Increasing, CD) to the highly threatened Rowi (Threatened – Nationally Endangered).[12] Viewing kiwi typically requires specialized night tours or visits to predator-free islands like Stewart Island/Rakiura, where the Rakiura Tokoeka is known to sometimes forage during daylight hours.[8]
- **Parrots (*Psittaciformes*):** New Zealand boasts several unique endemic parrots. The Kākāpō (*Strigops habroptilus*), a large, flightless, nocturnal parrot, is one of the world's rarest birds, classified as "Threatened – Nationally Critical, Conservation Dependent (CD)" [12] and subject to intensive recovery efforts on predator-free islands. The Kea (*Nestor notabilis*), an intelligent alpine parrot known for its inquisitive nature, is "Threatened – Nationally Endangered, Conservation Dependent (CD)" [12], facing threats in its mountain habitat.[8] The Kākā (*Nestor meridionalis*) exists as two subspecies: the South Island Kākā is "Threatened – Nationally Vulnerable, CD", while the North Island Kākā is faring better, classified as "At Risk – Recovering, CD".[12] Several species of Kākāriki (parakeets) are also endemic, including the critically endangered Orange-fronted Parakeet (*Cyanoramphus malherbi*) (Threatened – Nationally Critical, CD), the Red-crowned Parakeet (*C. novaezelandiae*) (At Risk – Relict), and the Yellow-crowned Parakeet (*C. auriceps*) (At Risk – Declining).[7]
- **Rails and Relatives (*Gruiformes*):** This group includes the iconic Takahē (*Porphyrio hochstetteri*), a large, flightless rail once thought extinct but rediscovered in Fiordland in 1948.[9] The South Island Takahē remains "Threatened – Nationally Vulnerable, CD" [12], with managed populations established in sanctuaries like Tiritiri Matangi and Zealandia.[8] The Weka (*Gallirallus australis*), another flightless rail, is classified as Nationally Vulnerable overall but can be common and easily observed in specific locations like Kapiti Island and Stewart Island/Ulva Island.[9] The Pūkeko (*Porphyrio melanotus*), while native, is widespread, classified as Not Threatened, and is even a game bird in some regions.[12] A highly specialized endemic is the Whio or Blue Duck (*Hymenolaimus malacorhynchos*), adapted to fast-flowing rivers and classified as "Threatened – Nationally Vulnerable, CD".[11]
- **Passerines (Songbirds):** Aotearoa's endemic passerines include several species central to the avitourism experience, often benefiting significantly from conservation management, particularly translocations to predator-free sanctuaries. The North Island Kōkako (*Callaeas wilsoni*) is a conservation success story, now classified as

---

[1] **Conservation Dependent (CD)**" is still a term used informally in New Zealand literature, but officially, NZTCS now prefers a three-level threat model: Threatened, At Risk, and Not Threatened, with qualifiers like "Conservation Dependent" sometimes used in explanation but not officially designated anymore. Therefore, "Conservation Dependent" is an *explanatory note*, not a formal category anymore in the latest NZTCS 2021–2023 revisions, and also refer to Robertson et al. (2021).

"Nationally Increasing, CD", while its South Island counterpart (*C. cinerea*) is tragically listed as Data Deficient and likely extinct.[12] The Hihi or Stitchbird (*Notiomystis cincta*) ("Threatened – Nationally Vulnerable, CD") and Tīeke or Saddleback (North Island *Philesturnus rufusater*, "At Risk – Relict, CD"; South Island *P. carunculatus*, "At Risk – Recovering, CD") have also been successfully established in sanctuaries.[12] More widespread and commonly encountered endemics include the Tūī (*Prosthemadera novaeseelandiae*) and Bellbird or Korimako (*Anthornis melanura*), both vital pollinators and classified as Not Threatened on the main islands.[8] Robins are represented by the North Island Robin (*Petroica longipes*, Not Threatened), South Island Robin (*P. australis*, At Risk – Declining), and Stewart Island Robin (*P. australis rakiura*, At Risk – Relict).[9] The tiny Rifleman or Tītīpounamu (*Acanthisitta chloris*) is New Zealand's smallest bird (Not Threatened), while the alpine Rock Wren or Pīwauwau (*Xenicus gilviventris*) faces greater threats (subspecies are Nationally Critical and Endangered).[7]

- **Other Key Endemics:** The endemic New Zealand Falcon or Kārearea (*Falco novaeseelandiae*) has distinct forms with varying conservation statuses, ranging from Nationally Increasing (Bush Falcon) to Nationally Endangered (Southern Falcon).[8] The Wrybill or Ngutuparore (*Anarhynchus frontalis*), notable for its unique laterally curved bill adapted for foraging under river stones, is classified as "Nationally Increasing, CD".[8] The large New Zealand Pigeon or Kererū (*Hemiphaga novaeseelandiae*) is currently classified as Not Threatened and is relatively widespread, playing a crucial role as a seed disperser.[9]

A significant pattern emerges when examining the conservation status of these key endemic land birds: a large proportion, including many species showing population increases or recovery, are designated as 'Conservation Dependent' (CD).[12] This qualifier underscores a critical reality of New Zealand conservation: the persistence and visibility of these iconic species are often directly reliant on continuous, intensive management interventions.[12] Actions such as rigorous predator control (trapping, baiting, aerial toxins), habitat restoration, supplementary feeding, captive breeding programs, and translocations to secure sites like pest-free islands or fenced mainland sanctuaries are frequently essential.[12] Consequently, the avitourism 'product' for these species is not merely the bird itself in a natural setting, but encompasses the entire conservation framework that enables its survival. This linkage has profound implications for understanding the true costs and requirements of maintaining these tourism assets, the importance of communicating conservation efforts to visitors, and the potential for tourism revenue to contribute back to these essential management programs.

6.2.4. Coastal and Pelagic Wonders: Seabirds and Shorebirds

Aotearoa New Zealand's vast coastline (over 15,000 km) and its location within the Southern Ocean make it a global hotspot for seabirds and a critical area for migratory shorebirds. These avian groups form another major pillar of the country's avitourism appeal.

- **Albatrosses and Mollymawks (*Diomedeidae*):** New Zealand is considered the "albatross capital of the world," hosting more breeding species than anywhere else. This includes giants like the Southern Royal Albatross (*Diomedea epomophora*) (Threatened – Nationally Vulnerable, CD) and Northern Royal Albatross (*D. sanfordi*) (Threatened – Nationally Vulnerable, CD), as well as the Antipodean and Gibson's Wandering Albatrosses (*D. antipodensis* subspecies), both classified as "Threatened – Nationally Critical, CD".[7] Numerous smaller albatrosses, known as mollymawks, also breed here, including Salvin's Mollymawk (*Thalassarche salvini*) (Threatened – Nationally Critical, CD), Buller's Mollymawk (*T. bulleri* subspecies, At Risk –

Declining/Naturally Uncommon, CD), White-capped Mollymawk (*T. cauta steadi*, At Risk – Declining, CD), and several others largely restricted to subantarctic islands.[12] The Kaikoura coastline, with its deep submarine canyon close offshore creating nutrient-rich upwellings, is an exceptional and accessible location for viewing many of these species on pelagic boat tours.[9] As noted by Albatross Encounter, "Within just a small area [Kaikoura], you'll meet one of the greatest varieties of seabirds you'd find anywhere along the New Zealand coastline".[13]

- **Petrels and Shearwaters (*Procellariidae*):** This diverse group includes numerous species breeding in New Zealand, many undertaking vast migrations. Notable endemics or key breeding species include the Westland Petrel (*Procellaria westlandica*, At Risk – Naturally Uncommon), Black Petrel (*P. parkinsoni*, Threatened – Nationally Vulnerable, CD), Chatham Petrel (*Pterodroma axillaris*, Threatened – Nationally Vulnerable, CD), Cook's Petrel (*P. cookii*, At Risk – Relict), and Pycroft's Petrel (*P. pycrofti*, At Risk – Recovering).[7] Shearwaters of interest include the endemic Hutton's Shearwater (*Puffinus huttoni*, Threatened – Nationally Vulnerable, CD), which breeds colonially in the mountains near Kaikoura, Buller's Shearwater (*Ardenna bulleri*, At Risk – Declining), and the abundant Sooty Shearwater or Tītī (*A. grisea*, At Risk – Declining), subject to customary harvest by Māori.[8] Viewing many petrels and shearwaters requires dedicated pelagic trips.[13]
- **Penguins (*Spheniscidae*):** Several penguin species breed in Aotearoa. The endemic Yellow-eyed Penguin or Hoiho (*Megadyptes antipodes*) is one of the world's rarest penguins, classified as "Threatened – Nationally Endangered, CD" [10], with key mainland populations on the Otago Peninsula and Stewart Island/Rakiura. Its presence is a significant driver for regional tourism, estimated to contribute substantially to the local economy.[30] Other endemic crested penguins include the Fiordland Crested Penguin or Tawaki (*Eudyptes pachyrhynchus*, At Risk – Declining), Snares Crested Penguin (*E. robustus*, At Risk – Naturally Uncommon), and Erect-crested Penguin (*Eudyptes sclateri*, and the latest NZTCS in 2023 categorizes it as *Threatened – Nationally Vulnerable*). The Little Blue Penguin or Kororā (*Eudyptula* spp.), the world's smallest penguin, is also present around the coastline, with distinct populations recognized.[12]
- **Shorebirds (Waders):** New Zealand's estuaries, harbors, and coastlines are vital habitats for both resident and migratory shorebirds. The country is a major non-breeding destination for Arctic migrants travelling along the East Asian-Australasian Flyway, most notably the Bar-tailed Godwit or Kuaka (*Limosa lapponica baueri*) and the Red Knot or Huahou (*Calidris canutus rogersi*), both classified as "At Risk – Declining" and Threatened Overseas.[12] Research using satellite tracking has revealed the godwits' incredible non-stop flights from Alaska to New Zealand.[31] Key endemic waders include the highly endangered Black Stilt or Kakī (*Himantopus novaezelandiae*, Threatened – Nationally Critical, CD), largely confined to the braided rivers of the Mackenzie Basin; the New Zealand Dotterel or Tūturiwhatu (*Charadrius obscurus*, with Northern subspecies Nationally Increasing, CD and Southern subspecies Nationally Critical); and the unique Wrybill or Ngutuparore (*Anarhynchus frontalis*, Nationally Increasing, CD), the only bird species with a bill bent sideways.[7] Resident oystercatchers include the South Island Pied Oystercatcher or Tōrea (*Haematopus finschi*, At Risk – Declining) and the Variable Oystercatcher or Tōrea pango (*H. unicolor*, At Risk – Recovering).[7] Sites like the Pūkorokoro / Miranda Shorebird Centre in the Firth of Thames are internationally important for observing large congregations of these waders.[31]

- **Other Coastal Birds:** The diverse coastal avifauna also includes numerous species of shags (cormorants), several of which are endemic and range-restricted (e.g., King Shag, Otago Shag, Pitt Island Shag, Stewart Island Shag, Bounty Island Shag), often with vulnerable conservation statuses.[10] Gulls include the endemic Black-billed Gull (*Chroicocephalus bulleri*, At Risk – Declining) and the widespread Red-billed Gull (*C. novaehollandiae scopulinus*, At Risk – Declining).[7] Terns are represented by species such as the endemic Black-fronted Tern (*Chlidonias albostriatus*, Threatened – Nationally Endangered) and the critically endangered New Zealand Fairy Tern (*Sternula nereis davisae*, Threatened – Nationally Critical).[7]

6.2.5. Kiwi bird

The following image captures a rare view of a young Kiwi, *Apteryx owenii*, one of New Zealand's endemic and nocturnal bird species, which is primarily found in predator-free sanctuaries such as Zealandia. As the smallest kiwi species, it plays a critical role in avitourism and conservation education efforts across Aotearoa. The little-spotted kiwi is classified as "At Risk – Recovering" under New Zealand's threat classification system. Once widespread, its population declined drastically due to introduced predators. Zealandia, an urban ecosanctuary in Wellington, is one of the few places where this elusive species can be observed in its natural behavior within a controlled conservation setting. This juvenile represents the success of translocation and species recovery programs.

Illustrative image.

Caption: A North Island brown kiwi (Apteryx mantelli) in its native temperate rainforest habitat. As a nocturnal, flightless bird endemic to New Zealand, the kiwi is a symbol of national identity and a focus of intensive conservation efforts to mitigate threats from habitat loss and introduced mammalian predators.

Caption: *Juvenile Little-Spotted Kiwi (Apteryx owenii) at Zealandia Ecosanctuary, New Zealand***.** **Source and credit:** Photo by **Kimberley Collins**, 6 December 2013, 19:45 (Own work). Retrieved from Wikimedia Commons. Licensed under Creative Commons Attribution-Share Alike 4.0 International (CC BY-SA 4.0).

Caption: *Typically nocturnal, this rare daytime behavior offers a unique glimpse into the secretive life of New Zealand's smallest kiwi. Zealandia provides a protected habitat where such endangered species can be safely observed and studied.* **Source and credit:** Photo by Judi Lapsley Miller, 3 July 2018, 13:19 (Own work).

Wikimedia Commons. Licensed under Creative Commons Attribution-Share Alike 4.0 International (CC BY-SA 4.0).

6.2.6. Rakiura (Stewart Island) Tokoeka: Unusual Daylight Dwellers and Cooperative Families

The Rakiura tokoeka (*Apteryx australis*), a subspecies of southern brown kiwi found on Stewart Island (Rakiura), stand out among kiwi for their uncharacteristic daytime activity — a notable deviation from the typically nocturnal behavior of their relatives. Beyond their unusual foraging patterns, their social and reproductive behaviors are equally distinctive. Unlike most kiwi, which are solitary and highly territorial, the Rakiura and Fiordland tokoeka live in cohesive family groups composed of a dominant (alpha) male and female pair, along with multiple offspring. Remarkably, the young do not immediately disperse. Instead, they remain in the parental territory for several years—sometimes up to seven—serving as 'helpers.' These helpers assist with incubation duties, occasionally taking short shifts on the egg. This shared parental investment allows breeding pairs to occasionally raise two clutches in a single season, an uncommon strategy among kiwi and a reflection of their cooperative breeding system.

Caption: Rakiura (Stewart Island) tokoeka looking for food in the sand. Tokoeka is a subspecies of southern brown Kiwi with daytime activities which stands it out among kiwi. **Source: Department of Conservation (DOC).** (n.d.). *Tokoeka*. New Zealand Government. Retrieved from https://www.doc.govt.nz/nature/native-animals/birds/birds-a-z/kiwi/tokoeka/ © Crown Copyright – New Zealand Department of Conservation. Licensed for reuse under the Creative Commons Attribution 4.0 International licence (CC BY 4.0).

6.2.6.1. Key differences – Kiwi versus Tokoeka

While the **Kiwi** and **Tokoeka** are closely related and often confused due to their similarities, they are not entirely synonymous. Here's a brief explanation highlighting their relationship and key differences (also see Table 6.0):

- **Kiwi** is the **common name** for a group of five flightless, nocturnal bird species endemic to New Zealand. They belong to the genus *Apteryx* and are iconic national symbols.
- **Tokoeka**, which means “weka with a walking stick” in Māori, is one of those five species — specifically, the *Apteryx australis* or **Southern Brown Kiwi**.

Table 6.0 – Kiwi versus Tokoeka: Key Differences

Feature	Kiwi (all five species in ***Apteryx***) **(see Note)*	Tokoeka – Southern Brown Kiwi (***Apteryx australis***)
Taxon rank	Genus level (5 extant species)	Single species, 3 subspecies – Fiordland, Rakiura, Haast
Overall distribution	Throughout Aotearoa, but fragmented by species	South-west & south-east South Island; Stewart Island/Rakiura; alpine Haast Range
Typical appearance	Size and colour vary (grey-brown to chestnut; smaller L. Spotted Kiwi)	Largest kiwi; uniform warm-brown plumage, long decurved bill
Activity pattern	Strictly nocturnal (except some Rakiura birds)	Rakiura & Fiordland birds often forage in daylight; family-group territories
Social system	Mostly solitary, long-term pairs	Cooperative: offspring may stay 2–7 yr as helpers, enabling two clutches/yr
Conservation status (NZTCS 2023)	Ranges from *Not Threatened* to *Nationally Critical* by species	Fiordland = At Risk – Declining Rakiura = At Risk – Recovering Haast = Nationally Critical

**Note — Scientific names of the five kiwi species:* • North Island Brown Kiwi *Apteryx mantelli* • Rowi *Apteryx rowi* • Little Spotted Kiwi *Apteryx owenii* • Great Spotted Kiwi *Apteryx haastii* • Southern Brown Kiwi (Tokoeka) *Apteryx australis*

In short, **all Tokoeka are Kiwi**, but not all Kiwi are Tokoeka. Understanding this helps in conservation efforts and in distinguishing between New Zealand’s five unique kiwi species: North Island Brown Kiwi, Rowi, Little Spotted Kiwi, Great Spotted Kiwi, and Tokoeka.

6.2.7. Avian Treasures of Aotearoa: Key Species and Habitats in Focus

Aotearoa New Zealand offers a uniquely captivating experience for birdwatchers, thanks to its extraordinary variety of bird species found across a wide range of natural environments. From ancient native forests and high alpine landscapes to braided river systems, rugged coastlines, and vast oceanic expanses, the country’s diverse habitats support a remarkable array of endemic and migratory birds. Gaining an understanding of these key species—and the specific ecosystems they rely on—is essential for fully appreciating New Zealand’s avitourism opportunities and the pressing conservation efforts that support them. The following images offer a visual introduction to some of the country’s most iconic and fascinating birdlife.

Hihi – Stitchbird

Source and credit: Hiki, Stitchbird (Notiomystis cincta). Higgins, P. J., L. Christidis, and E. de Juana (2020). Stitchbird (*Notiomystis cincta*), version 1.0. In Birds of the World (J. del Hoyo, A. Elliott, J. Sargatal, D. A. Christie, and E. de Juana, Editors). Cornell Lab of Ornithology, Ithaca, NY, USA. https://doi.org/10.2173/bow.stitch1.01

New Zealand stitchbird, or hihi (*Notiomystis cincta*)**:**
The New Zealand stitchbird, or hihi (*Notiomystis cincta*), is one of Aotearoa's most distinctive and endangered forest birds. Once widespread across the North Island, it is now confined to a few predator-free sanctuaries due to habitat loss and introduced species. Known for its striking plumage and unique sideways courtship display, the hihi is the sole member of its family (*Notiomystidae*) and holds significant ecological and evolutionary importance. Intensive conservation programs are helping to restore its fragile populations in select reintroduction sites.

Caption: Stitchbird, Hihi, *Notiomystis cincta*. **Source and credit:** Pseudopanax at English Wikipedia, Public domain, via Wikimedia Commons.

The kea (*Nestor notabilis*), also known as the New Zealand mountain parrot

Caption: The kea **(***Nestor notabilis***),** also known as the New Zealand mountain parrot**.** Source and credit: Bernard Spragg. NZ from Christchurch, New Zealand This file is made available under the Creative Commons CC0 1.0 Universal Public Domain Dedication,

The **kea** (*Nestor notabilis*) is a high-alpine parrot found only in Aotearoa. Adults measure just under half a metre long and weigh about 900 g. Their olive plumage, bright orange under-wings and powerful, hooked bill suit a diet ranging from leaf buds and nectar to invertebrates and carrion.

Characterized by its olive-green plumage and powerful beak, the kea is reputedly strong enough to tear through cast iron plates. Like other members of its family, it is primarily arboreal but is also a capable flyer. Its diet consists mostly of young shoots and tender leaves, and during the spring, it feeds on flower nectar. The kea also forages for insects and larvae on the ground and exhibits scavenging behavior, including feeding on the carcasses of animals such as sheep.

Social and highly intelligent, the kea lives in small flocks and typically inhabits mountainous regions during the summer. Remarkably, it is the only parrot in the world adapted to life in snowy alpine environments, often remaining in the mountains year-round if conditions are not too severe. Known for its playful and inquisitive nature, the kea has earned a reputation as one of the world’s most curious and behaviorally complex birds. Kea are classified as "Nationally Endangered" in New Zealand due to habitat loss, predation by introduced mammals, and conflict with humans. Conservation efforts include nest monitoring, predator control, and community education programs.

6.2.8. The North Island kōkako (Callaeas wilsoni)

The **North Island kōkako** (*Callaeas wilsoni*) is an endangered, forest-dwelling songbird endemic to New Zealand's North Island, renowned for its haunting, melodious calls that can echo through native forests for kilometers. Characterized by its slate-grey plumage, black facial mask, and distinctive **blue wattles**, the kōkako is a weak flier and moves predominantly by leaping and gliding through the canopy. Once widespread, its population drastically declined due to habitat destruction and predation by introduced mammals such as possums, rats, and stoats. Today, it survives in carefully managed, predator-free sanctuaries, with **Tiritiri Matangi Island**—located in the Rodney District, Auckland—being a key stronghold for reintroduced populations. Thanks to intensive conservation programs, including translocations, predator control, and monitoring, the number of kōkako territories on Tiritiri Matangi has grown steadily since their first successful release in the 1990s. As of the most recent surveys, the **total North Island kōkako population exceeds 2,000 breeding pairs**, a major conservation milestone. This bird is classified as **At Risk – Recovering** under New Zealand's Threat Classification System and remains a symbol of hope for native forest restoration across Aotearoa.

Building on Burns et. al.' (2018) ecosystem-level overview and on other area reports, Innes et al. (2024) confirm that kōkako recovery still hinges on relentless predator management. Work at 11 relict strongholds, 12 newer mainland release forests, and three offshore sanctuaries has lifted the national total from c. 458 breeding pairs in 2000 to c. 2,327 in 2023. Secure, pest-free islands such as Te Hauturu-o-Toi / Little Barrier and Kapiti now act as insurance populations, while Maungatautari's 3,300-ha fenced reserve shows the spectacular rebound possible when predators are excluded. Yet every open mainland forest depends on constant suppression of brushtail possums, ship rats and stoats, and seven monitored sites have slipped in recent counts (Innes et al., 2024, p. 130). As large-scale modelling of tracking-tunnel records has shown, "native species conservation in New Zealand forests requires spatially-differentiated predator management regimes; ship rats are likely to become increasingly prevalent at higher elevations as climate warms; and suppression of ship rats alone will release house mouse populations, especially in warmer forests" (Walker et al., 2019, pp. 1627–1628).

Control tactics therefore differ by predator and landscape. Ship-rat operations averaged 5.6 years in every seven, mostly via tree-mounted bait stations laced with pindone or diphacinone, while less-frequent aerial 1080 drops achieved the lowest post-treatment tracking indices (mean 3.5 % RTI) versus ground toxins (8.9 %) or trapping alone (17 %) (Innes et al., 2024, pp. 131–132). Stoats, though seldom recorded at nests, can decimate sub-adults and adults; managers therefore trapped or poisoned them in 4.4 of every seven years with Department of Conservaiton (DOC)-series kill-traps, Goodnature A24s or secondary 1080. These site-level results mirror broader ecological drivers: "Predictable spatial patterns of rodent population dynamics arise from stronger low-temperature limitations on rats than mice, biotic limitation of mice by rats, and spatiotemporal food-resource patterns affecting both species" (Walker et al., 2019, pp. 1627–1628).

Together, Innes et al.'s site-specific outcomes and Walker et al.'s landscape-scale insights underscore that kōkako recovery will advance only through predator-specific tactics applied persistently, coupled with new tools that can suppress rodents across large, unfenced mainland forests. The image below portrays the beauty and singularity of a kokako.

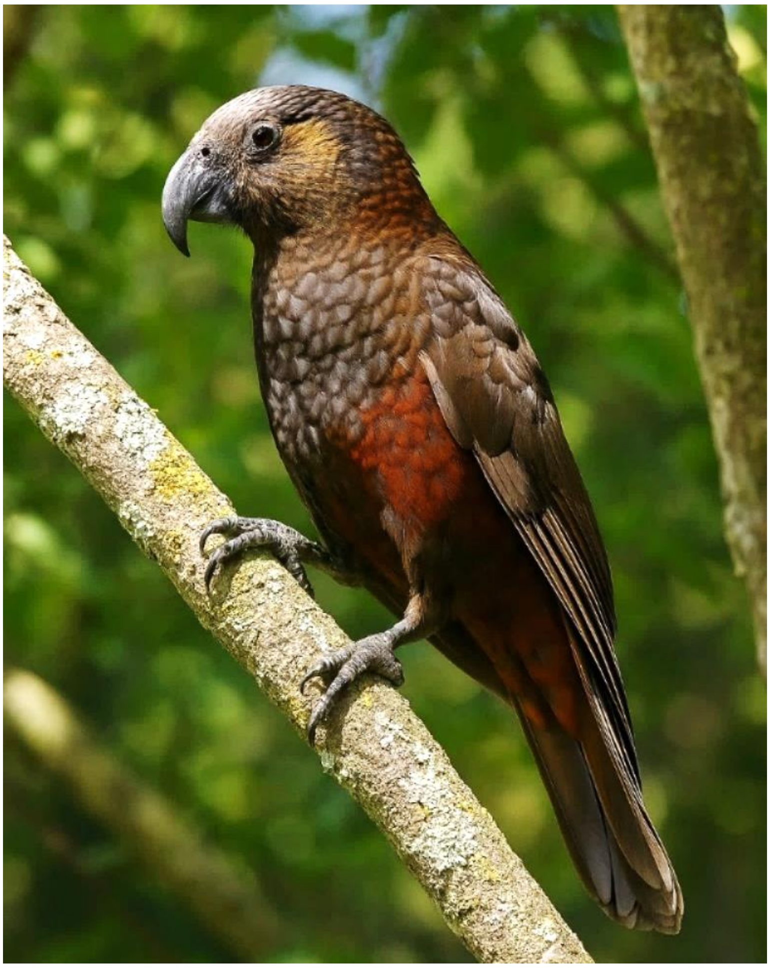
Photograph: North Island Kōkako sitting on a branch, holding a leaf *(Tiritiri Matangi)*. Author: Pseudopanax at English Wikipedia. Date: 18 February 2024
Source: Own work. Retrieved from Wikimedia Commons: Licensed under the Creative Commons Attribution-Share Alike 4.0 International (CC BY-SA 4.0) license.

The kākā (*Nestor meridionalis*)

The New Zealand **kākā** (*Nestor meridionalis*) is a sociable forest parrot, about 45 cm long, whose olive-green body is brightened by orange-red flashes across the breast and under-wings and a grey-flecked crown. Two geographic forms are recognised—one in Te Ika-a-Māui (North Island), the other in Te Waipounamu (South Island). Formerly common from lowland podocarp stands to upland beech forests, both subspecies now survive mainly within predator-free offshore islands and fenced mainland sanctuaries, their range having retreated under pressure from habitat clearance and mammalian predators such as stoats and possums.

Kākā forage broadly—tapping flowers for nectar and pollen, tearing bark to reach sap, and extracting fruits, seeds, insects, and larvae—thereby contributing both to pollen transfer and seed dispersal in native forests. Continuing declines have led the IUCN to list the species as Vulnerable. Targeted recovery work, including large-scale predator suppression and translocation programmes at sites such as Zealandia (Wellington) and Kāpiti Island, is beginning to reverse local losses: breeding pairs are increasing inside several sanctuaries and free-flying flocks are once again heard over nearby suburbs.

Photograph, *Kākā (Nestor meridionalis) on Stewart Island, New Zealand* Author: Arthur Chapman. Date: 26 November 2002, 04:12**. Source**: Originally posted to Flickr; retrieved via Wikimedia Commons Licensed under the Creative Commons Attribution 2.0 Generic (CC BY 2.0) license.



Kaka (Nestor meridionalis). Source: NZ Department of Conservation

6.2.9. The South Island takahē

South Island takahē (*Porphyrio hochstetteri*) is a flight-less, deep-blue-and-green rail found only in Aotearoa New Zealand and is the largest living member of the Rallidae. Early naturalists knew it chiefly from sub-fossil bones—first described in 1847—and sporadic 19th-century sightings. Intensive hunting by Māori and, later, European settlers, coupled with habitat loss, pushed the bird beyond recorded notice; its bones are common in archaeological middens across Te Wai Pounamu. After more than fifty years without a confirmed observation, physician-explorer Dr Geoffrey Orbell stunned the scientific community in 1948 by locating a small population in the remote Murchison Mountains. The species, historically labelled "notornis" (a name it once shared with its now-extinct North Island relative), has since become a flagship for New Zealand's conservation movement.

Since its dramatic rediscovery, the takahē has become a symbol of conservation success, with the New Zealand Department of Conservation (DOC), Ngāi Tahu, and other partners implementing the Takahē Recovery Program to safeguard its future. The population, once presumed lost, has steadily grown to approximately 500 individuals as of 2023, increasing at a rate of about 8% annually. The species' conservation status was reclassified from Nationally Critical to Nationally Vulnerable in 2016, reflecting encouraging progress in efforts to restore this emblematic bird across offshore sanctuaries and selected mainland sites.

Caption: South Island takahē (*Porphyrio hochstetteri*) photographed in natural habitat, highlighting its vibrant plumage and robust, flightless form. **Source and Credit:** Photograph - South Island Takahē *(Porphyrio hochstetteri)*. Author: Bernard Spragg. NZ, from Christchurch, New Zealand. Date: 12 April 2011, 15:12. Source: Retrieved from Wikimedia Commons This image is released into the public domain by the author (no known copyright restrictions).

Part III – Conservation and Ecological Areas and Key Tourism Avifauna of New Zealand

6.3. New Zealand's National Parks, Sanctuaries and Key Species of these Conservation Areas

The persistence of Aotearoa's unique avifauna, and thus the foundation of its avitourism, relies heavily on the protection and management of critical habitats. These range from intensively managed sanctuaries to vast national parks and specific coastal zones.

The following New Zealand maps presented in this section provide a comprehensive overview of New Zealand's protected areas and sanctuaries, highlighting the spatial distribution of **National Parks (blue)**, **Conservation Parks including Forest Parks (brown)**, and other **publicly accessible or Department of Conservation (DOC)-administered lands (green and light blue)**.

It visually illustrates the extensive network of conservation areas spanning both the North and South Islands, reflecting New Zealand's long-standing commitment to biodiversity protection, landscape preservation, and public access to natural heritage. Key protected regions—such as **Fiordland**, **Tongariro**, **Kahurangi**, and **Aoraki/Mt Cook**—are clearly labeled, showcasing their significance within the broader framework of environmental governance and ecotourism. This spatial layout is instrumental for understanding conservation planning, recreational opportunities, and avitourism routes across Aotearoa.

New Zealand's national parks form the foundation of the country's natural heritage and biodiversity protection system. As of 2019, there were **13 national parks** covering a combined area of approximately **29,473 km²** (refer to Table 6.1), or about **10% of the nation's total landmass**. These parks span a remarkable range of landscapes—from the volcanic peaks of **Tongariro**, the first park established in 1894, to the remote wilderness of **Rakiura**, added in 2002. The largest, **Fiordland National Park**, alone encompasses over **12,600 km²**, while others, such as **Abel Tasman**, protect coastal and marine ecosystems. Together, these parks are not only ecological strongholds but also vital spaces for recreation, cultural preservation, and nature-based tourism such as birdwatching.

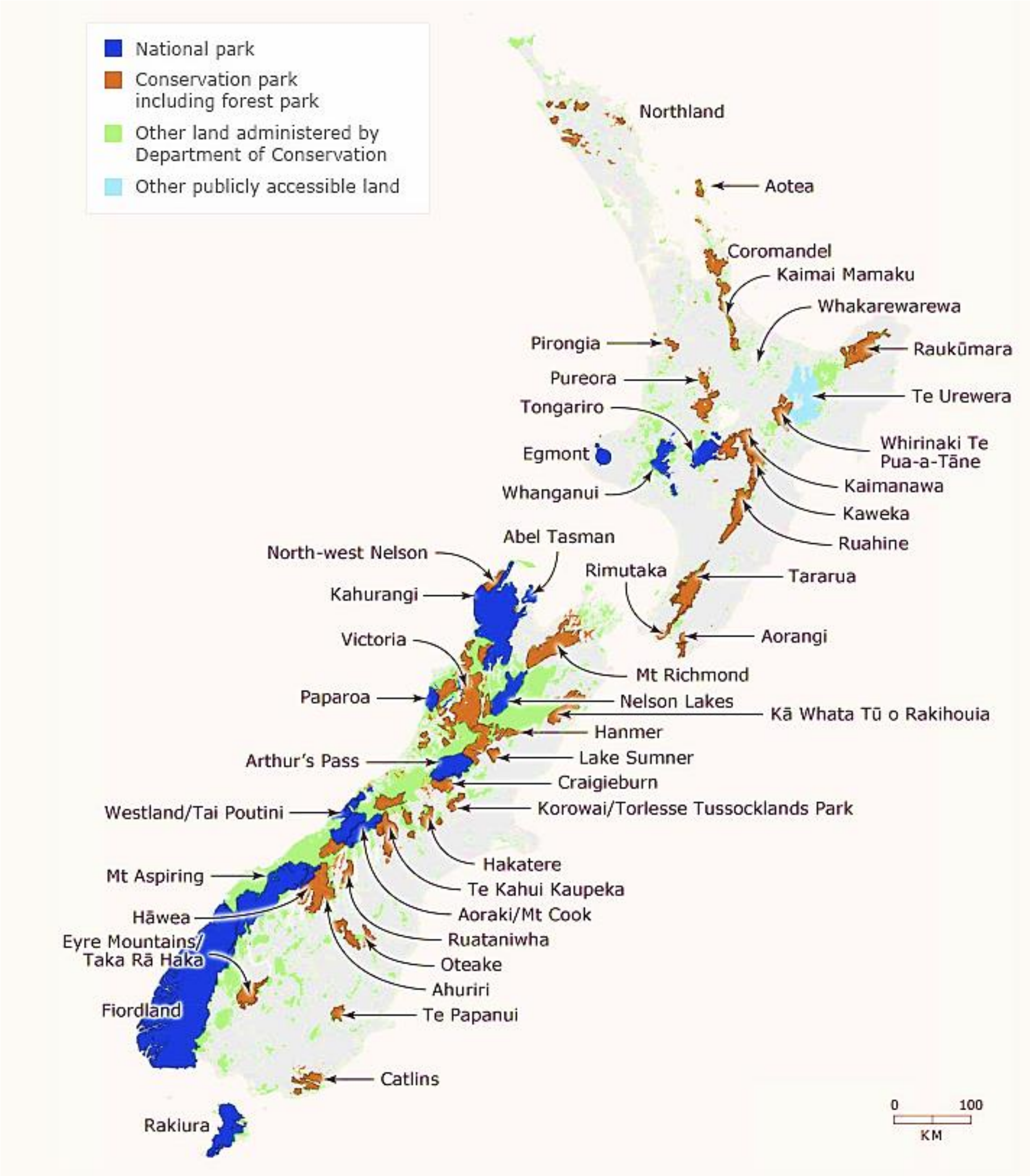
Table 6.1 - National Parks in New Zealand (Aotearoa)

National Park	Year Established	Area (hectares)	Area (km²)
Tongariro	1894	78,618	786.18
Egmont	1900	34,170	341.70
Fiordland	1952	1,260,288	12,602.88
Arthur's Pass	1929	118,472	1,184.72
Abel Tasman	1942	23,703	237.03
Aoraki/Mount Cook	1953	72,164	721.64
Nelson Lakes	1956	101,880	1,018.80

National Park	Year Established	Area (hectares)	Area (km²)
Westland Tai Poutini	1960	131,978	1,319.78
Mount Aspiring	1964	355,522	3,555.22
Whanganui	1986	74,191	741.91
Paparoa	1987	39,037	390.37
Kahurangi	1996	517,335	5,173.35
Rakiura	2002	139,960	1,399.60
Total Area		**2,947,318**	**29,473.18**

Source: The Encyclopedia of New Zealand, available at, https://teara.govt.nz/en/table/15241/national-parks-2019

New Zealand map with the National Parks and other Conservation Areas



Source: The Encyclopedia of New Zealand, available at, https://teara.govt.nz/en/table/15241/national-parks-2019

6.3.1. Wildlife Sanctuaries in New Zealand: Typologies, Geography and Avitourism Significance

New Zealand's unique ecological history, marked by millennia of avian evolution in the absence of mammalian predators, has resulted in a bird fauna extraordinarily vulnerable to invasive species. In response, the country has developed a globally renowned system of **wildlife sanctuaries**, which now form the backbone of its biodiversity conservation and a key infrastructure for birdwatching tourism. These sanctuaries are classified into four main types, as illustrated in the accompanying map, and are distributed strategically across both the North and South Islands to maximize ecological coverage and public accessibility.

Types of Sanctuaries in New Zealand: Definitions and Policy Context

New Zealand has pioneered diverse models of protected areas designed to conserve its exceptionally vulnerable native birdlife, much of which evolved in the absence of land predators. Given the nation's heavy focus on biodiversity protection, sanctuary types are distinguished by their structure, accessibility, management goals, and legal protection frameworks. The primary sanctuary types are as follows: Closed; Fenced; Mainland; and, Open.

A. Closed Sanctuaries

Definition:
Closed sanctuaries refer to **fully predator-fenced and intensely managed areas** that restrict both wildlife movement (keeping pests out) and public access (limiting human impacts). Entry is highly controlled, often requiring special permissions.

Key Characteristics:

- Predator-proof fences completely enclose the area.
- Strict biosecurity controls at all entry points.
- Typically no free public access; scientific research and conservation work prioritized.
- Often located within ecological restoration projects.

Examples: Some private reserves and highly sensitive research sites are classified as closed sanctuaries.

Policy Context: Governed by the Conservation Act 1987 and Wildlife Act 1953; Specific Conservation Management Strategies (CMS) developed by DOC set the use rules.

Sources: Department of Conservation (DOC), *Conservation Management Strategy Guidelines* (DOC, 2017). Predator Free New Zealand Trust, *Sanctuary Models Overview* (2023).

B. Fenced Sanctuaries

Definition:
Fenced sanctuaries are **publicly accessible, predator-fenced areas** where visitors can experience New Zealand's native wildlife in restored environments.

Key Characteristics:

- Surrounded by high biosecurity predator fences (often electrified).
- Intensive predator eradication inside the fence.
- Regular maintenance to prevent fence breaches.
- Public visitation encouraged but tightly managed to minimize impacts.

Examples: Sanctuary Mountain Maungatautari (Waikato); **Zealandia / Karori Sanctuary** (Wellington)

Policy Context: Operate under DOC permits and land management partnerships with trusts, iwi, and local councils; Biosecurity protocols guided by the *Pest Free 2050* objectives; Access managed under policies like the Reserves Act 1977 for public conservation land.

Sources: Department of Conservation (DOC), *Pest Control Guidelines* (2022); Smuts-Kennedy & Parker, *Reconstructing Avian Biodiversity on Maungatautari* (2013).

C. Mainland Islands

Definition:
Mainland islands are **large, unfenced areas** managed intensively to mimic the ecological security of offshore islands, relying heavily on sustained pest control rather than fences.

Key Characteristics:

- Located on New Zealand's main islands (North and South).
- No complete predator fencing; pest control relies on traps, toxins, and shooting.
- Emphasize creating ecological refuges over vast landscapes.
- Focus on ecosystem restoration, species translocation, and research.

Examples: Rotoiti Nature Recovery Project (Nelson Lakes National Park); **Trounson Kauri Park Mainland Island** (Northland)

Policy Context: Managed according to **Mainland Island Strategy** (DOC, 2001); Integrated into DOC's Biodiversity Action Plans and regional CMS frameworks; Indigenous engagement through co-management agreements often present.

Sources: Department of Conservation (DOC), *Mainland Islands Strategy* (2001); Predator Free New Zealand, *Predator Control and Mainland Islands Report* (2023).

D. Open Sanctuaries

Definition:
Open sanctuaries are **large conservation areas** with **no fencing**, generally featuring controlled but open public access, where conservation measures (such as trapping and habitat restoration) are balanced with recreation and tourism.

Key Characteristics: No physical barriers to predators; Heavy reliance on community trapping networks and ecological restoration; Visitors have relatively free access with voluntary biosecurity behaviors (e.g., shoe cleaning stations).

Examples: Tāwharanui Open Sanctuary (Auckland); **Shakespear Open Sanctuary** (Whangaparaoa Peninsula)

Policy Context: Usually classified under public reserves (Reserves Act 1977) or regional parks; Supported by partnerships among DOC, local councils, iwi, and community trusts; Guided by strategies like *Towards Predator Free New Zealand 2050* and the National Biodiversity Strategy.

Sources: Auckland Council, *Tāwharanui Open Sanctuary Management Plan* (2016); Predator Free New Zealand Trust, *Community-Led Open Sanctuaries Report* (2023).

The conservation landscape in Aotearoa New Zealand employs a variety of sanctuary models, each tailored to specific ecological, management, and public engagement goals. Table 6.2 summarizes the key characteristics, policy frameworks, and principal management agencies associated with the country's closed, fenced, mainland island, and open sanctuaries. These approaches collectively underpin national strategies for avian protection, ecological restoration, and sustainable avitourism development.

Table 6.2 - Key Aspects of Sanctuary Types in New Zealand

Type of Sanctuary	Key Characteristics	Relevant Policies and Legal Frameworks	Main Management Agencies
Closed Sanctuary	Strictly controlled; no public access; primarily for scientific research and conservation.	Wildlife Act 1953; Conservation Act 1987; specific reserve orders.	Department of Conservation (DOC); Universities; Research Institutes.
Fenced Sanctuary	Enclosed by pest-proof fences; aim to eradicate all introduced mammals within boundaries.	Resource Management Act 1991; Conservation Management Strategies (CMS); local council regulations.	Sanctuary trusts (e.g., Maungatautari Ecological Island Trust); DOC; Regional Councils.
Mainland Island	Intensive pest control zones within larger conservation areas without complete fencing; use traps, poisons, monitoring.	Predator Free 2050 Strategy; DOC's Mainland Island Programme; Resource Management Act 1991.	Department of Conservation (DOC); iwi groups; Community Conservation Projects.
Open Sanctuary	Accessible to public; partial pest control; biodiversity enhancement integrated with recreational use.	Reserves Act 1977; Biodiversity Strategy 2020; Local Government Act 2002.	DOC; Local Councils (e.g., Auckland Council for Tāwharanui); Volunteer and Community Trusts.

6.3.1.1. Closed Sanctuaries (Orange)

These highly sensitive, restricted-access reserves require **Department of Conservation (DOC)** permits to visit, ensuring minimal human disturbance and maximizing breeding success for critically endangered species. Examples include:

- **Kapiti Island Nature Reserve** (off the southwest coast of the North Island)
- **Mana Island Scientific Reserve**
- **Moturoa Island Sanctuary**
- **Farewell Spit Nature Reserve** (South Island)
- **Ulva Island/Te Wharawhara Open Sanctuary** (Rakiura/Stewart Island)

These locations serve as strongholds for species such as the **Little Spotted Kiwi**, **Kākāpō**, **Takahē**, and **Saddleback**, and play a crucial role in species recovery efforts.

6.3.1.2. Fenced Sanctuaries (Red)

Characterized by state-of-the-art predator-proof fencing, these sanctuaries create controlled environments for reintroducing and protecting native species within relatively large land areas. Birds remain free to fly in and out, but mammalian pests are excluded. Notable fenced sanctuaries include:

- **Zealandia** (Wellington): The world's first fully fenced urban ecosanctuary.
- **Sanctuary Mountain Maungatautari** (Waikato): One of the largest ecological restoration projects in the Southern Hemisphere.
- **Ōrokonui Ecosanctuary** (Dunedin): A biodiversity haven near Otago known for **Kākā**, **Takahē**, and **Tīeke**.
- **Bushy Park Sanctuary** (Whanganui region)

These sites serve as model locations for ecological restoration, citizen science, and bird-focused tourism.

6.3.1.3. Mainland Islands (Purple)

Mainland islands are large unfenced areas embedded within National Parks or conservation reserves where **intensive pest control** enables the survival and reproduction of native birds. They offer a more open conservation model and often encompass a wider ecological context. Key mainland islands include:

- **Boundary Stream Mainland Island** (Hawke's Bay)
- **Te Urewera Mainland Island**
- **Hurunui Mainland Island** (Canterbury)
- **Wainuiomata Mainland Island** (Wellington region)
- **Rotoiti Nature Recovery Project** (near Nelson Lakes)
- **Cape Sanctuary** (Hawke's Bay, in private-public partnership)
- **Brook Waimarama Sanctuary** (South Island)

These areas not only conserve birds but provide extensive hiking and interpretive infrastructure for eco-tourists and citizen scientists.

6.3.1.4. Open Sanctuaries (Blue)

These publicly accessible reserves host restored ecosystems with limited pest control or natural isolation but allow for broad community engagement and recreational use. Examples include:

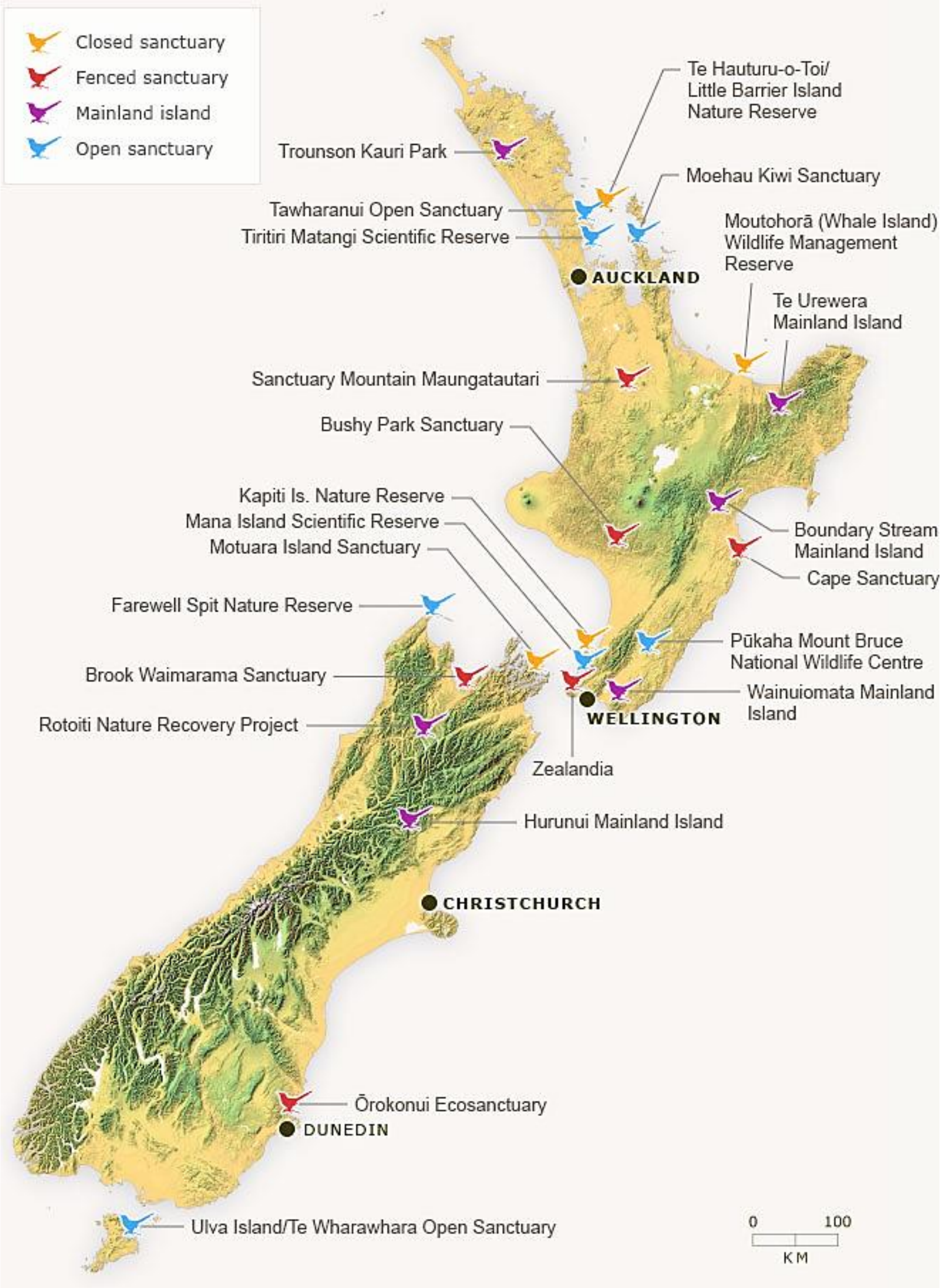
- **Tawharanui Open Sanctuary** (north of Auckland): Combines farming, recreation, and conservation in one integrated management model.
- **Tiritiri Matangi Scientific Reserve** (Hauraki Gulf): A leading example of community-driven forest restoration and bird reintroductions.
- **Ōrokonui** and **Ulva Island**, already noted under other categories, also function as open sanctuaries.
- **Pūkaha Mount Bruce National Wildlife Centre**: A key center for breeding programs and wildlife education.

The sanctuaries are well distributed across both islands, with clusters near major urban centers such as **Auckland**, **Wellington**, **Christchurch**, and **Dunedin**—enhancing access for both domestic and international birdwatchers. Their variety allows for year-round avitourism offerings, from casual walks in open reserves to immersive multi-day experiences in fenced or island-based sanctuaries.

Beyond their ecological value, these sanctuaries are deeply embedded in New Zealand's national identity and offer culturally significant sites for Māori co-management, storytelling, and biocultural revitalization. Many of these sanctuaries operate as partnerships between government agencies, NGOs, Indigenous iwi authorities, and local communities. Volunteers are essential to pest control, habitat restoration, and species monitoring. Visitors can often contribute through **citizen science platforms**, **guided conservation tours**, and **restoration activities**, making avitourism in New Zealand not only observational but participatory.

6.3.1.5. Map Overview: Wildlife Sanctuaries in New Zealand

This map presents a spatial overview of New Zealand's major **wildlife sanctuaries**, a foundational component of the country's biodiversity conservation strategy. The sanctuaries are categorized by management type and accessibility, each marked with a distinct icon and color:



Map Legend:

- 🟧 **Closed Sanctuaries (Orange)**: Restricted areas requiring permits from the Department of Conservation (DOC) due to ecological sensitivity or endangered species presence (e.g., **Te Hauturu-o-Toi / Little Barrier Island**, **Kapiti Island**).
- 🔴 **Fenced Sanctuaries (Red)**: Predator-free reserves enclosed by specialized fencing that supports intensive species recovery efforts (e.g., **Zealandia**, **Sanctuary Mountain Maungatautari**, **Ōrokonui Ecosanctuary**).

- 🟪 **Mainland Islands (Purple)**: Unfenced but intensively managed ecological zones within mainland conservation areas where pest control programs mimic island conditions (e.g., **Boundary Stream**, **Hurunui**, **Rotoiti**).
- 🔵 **Open Sanctuaries (Blue)**: Publicly accessible, often community-led conservation areas where native species are recovering due to habitat restoration and partial pest control (e.g., **Tiritiri Matangi**, **Ulva Island**, **Tawharanui**).

Geographic Distribution and Access

- **North Island** hosts a denser concentration of sanctuaries, reflecting both higher human population and the urgency of protecting remnant lowland forests and coastal ecosystems.
- **South Island** sanctuaries—though fewer in number—are often larger and embedded within expansive forest or alpine landscapes.
- **Stewart Island** is represented by **Ulva Island/Te Wharawhara**, one of the most successful open sanctuary projects globally.

Key urban centers such as **Auckland**, **Wellington**, **Christchurch**, and **Dunedin** are strategically linked to nearby sanctuaries, enabling easy public access and tourism integration.

Ecological and Conservation Significance

This sanctuary network supports the recovery of many of New Zealand's most endangered species, including the:

- **Kōkako** (Callaeas wilsoni)
- **Stitchbird/Hihi** (Notiomystis cincta)
- **Takahē** (Porphyrio hochstetteri)
- **Kākāriki** (parakeets)
- **Kiwi** species and **Tokoeka**
- **Tīeke/Saddleback** (Philesturnus spp.)

The sanctuaries are also important for:

- **Habitat restoration**
- **Community and iwi (Māori tribal) engagement**
- **Ecotourism and avitourism development**
- **Scientific monitoring and translocation programs**

This map exemplifies how New Zealand combines advanced conservation science with geographic planning to protect its endemic biodiversity. These sanctuaries represent living laboratories of ecological restoration and serve as global models for island biosecurity, rewilding, and participatory conservation.

6.3.1.6. Offshore Island Sanctuaries: Eradicating introduced mammalian predators from offshore islands has been a cornerstone of New Zealand conservation, creating safe havens where vulnerable species can thrive. These islands often function as 'arks', safeguarding populations that have declined or disappeared from the mainland, and serve as source populations for translocations. Several are accessible and popular avitourism destinations:

- **Tiritiri Matangi Island:** Located in the Hauraki Gulf near Auckland, this island underwent significant revegetation and predator eradication, becoming an "open sanctuary" accessible by public ferry.[18] It offers reliable sightings of species like Takahē, North Island Kōkako, Tīeke (Saddleback), Hihi (Stitchbird), Little Spotted Kiwi (translocated), Tūī, Bellbird, and Kākāriki.[18] The visitor experience emphasizes guided walks and education.[35] As stated on its website, "As one of New Zealand's oldest island sanctuaries, Tiritiri Matangi is brimming with wildlife rarely seen on the mainland...".[20]
- **Ulva Island / Te Wharawhara:** Situated within Paterson Inlet, Stewart Island/Rakiura, Ulva Island has been pest-free since 1997.[17] Accessible via a short water taxi ride, its well-maintained tracks wind through mature podocarp-hardwood forest.[15] It is renowned for close encounters with South Island Saddleback (Tīeke), Stewart Island Robin (Toutouwai), Yellowhead (Mohua), Kākā, Kākāriki, Weka, and offers a chance of daytime sightings of Stewart Island Brown Kiwi (Tokoeka).[16] Its significance is clear: "Iconic Ulva Island/Te Wharawhara is one of the few pest-free open sanctuaries in New Zealand. In this unspoiled rainforest you can see rare birds and plants at close quarters...".[17]
- **Kapiti Island:** Located off the coast near Wellington, Kapiti is another important predator-free sanctuary, accessible via permitted tour operators.[9] It supports populations of North Island Robin, NZ Pigeon, Weka, and a translocated population of Takahē.[9]

6.3.1.7.Mainland Sanctuaries ('Ecological Islands'): Recognizing the limitations of offshore islands, the concept of creating 'mainland islands' through intensive predator fencing has emerged.

- **ZEALANDIA Ecosanctuary:** Situated in a valley in Wellington, as of 2025 ZEALANDIA is celebrated as "the world's first fully-fenced urban ecosanctuary".[21] Its 8.6 km predator-exclusion fence protects 225 hectares, allowing for the restoration of forest and freshwater ecosystems and the reintroduction of species absent from the mainland for generations.[19] Key species thriving within the fence include Takahē, Kākā, Kākāriki, Hihi, Tūī, Bellbird, and Little Spotted Kiwi (viewable on night tours), alongside the endemic reptile, Tuatara.[19] ZEALANDIA strongly emphasizes its "extraordinary 500-year vision" [21], research, education, and visitor engagement through its visitor centre, café, and various guided tour options.[19]

6.3.1.8. National Parks and Conservation Land: Over 30% of New Zealand's land area is administered by the Department of Conservation (DOC), including 13 National Parks.[5] These vast areas encompass diverse habitats – forests, mountains, coastlines, wetlands, rivers – providing crucial landscapes for many bird species. Examples relevant to avitourism include Fiordland National Park (habitat for Fiordland Crested Penguin, Kea, Kākā, Whio), Arthur's Pass National Park (Kea, Rock Wren), Rakiura National Park (covering most of Stewart Island, home to Kiwi, Kākā, diverse forest birds), and Tongariro National Park (Whio, Kākā).[5] While protected, these areas generally face ongoing threats from introduced predators, requiring extensive management efforts.[23] Access for avitourists often involves utilizing the extensive network of walking tracks and huts managed by DOC.[40]

- **Coastal and Estuarine Habitats (Flyways):** Estuaries, harbors, and specific coastal areas serve as critical feeding and roosting sites, particularly for migratory waders travelling the East Asian-Australasian Flyway, and for resident shorebirds.
    - **Pūkorokoro / Miranda:** Located on the Firth of Thames, this site is internationally recognized for the sheer number of shorebirds it supports, especially Bar-tailed Godwits and Red Knots during their non-breeding season.[31] The Pūkorokoro Miranda Naturalists' Trust operates a Shorebird Centre with educational displays, viewing hides overlooking high-tide roosts, accommodation, and research programs (including bird banding).[31] Visitors are advised that "The best bird-watching is two hours either side of the high tide...".[34]
- **Pelagic Zones:** The marine environment surrounding Aotearoa is critical habitat for numerous seabirds. Specific areas of high productivity, often associated with underwater topography like the Kaikoura Canyon, concentrate feeding activity.[14] These zones are accessible primarily through specialized pelagic birding tours departing from locations like Kaikoura.[9]

This diversity of key habitats underpins the breadth of avitourism experiences available in Aotearoa. From easily accessible urban and island sanctuaries offering reliable sightings of rare endemics, to challenging hikes in remote national parks targeting specific species, and specialized boat trips for shorebirds or pelagic seabirds, the country caters to a wide spectrum of avitourist interests and commitment levels. This variety, however, also necessitates diverse management approaches, addressing challenges ranging from intensive biosecurity on islands and visitor flow management in sanctuaries, to track maintenance in parks and the regulation of commercial boat tours. Effectively managing this complex mosaic of habitats and experiences is essential for the long-term sustainability of both the avifauna and the tourism it supports. The Table 6.3 oultines the conservation status of key avitourism species in New Zealand.

Table 6.3 - Conservation Status of Key Avitourism Species in Aotearoa NZ (2021)[12]

Common Name	Māori Name	Scientific Name	2021 NZTCS Status	Key Qualifiers
North Island Brown Kiwi	Kiwi	*Apteryx mantelli*	Not Threatened ** Some regional populations are still declining.*	CD *
Okarito Brown Kiwi	Rowi	*Apteryx rowi*	Threatened – Nationally Endangered	CD
Great Spotted Kiwi	Roroa	*Apteryx haastii*	Threatened – Nationally Vulnerable	CD
Little Spotted Kiwi	Kiwi Pukupuku	*Apteryx owenii*	Nationally Increasing	CD
South Island Takahē	Takahē	*Porphyrio hochstetteri*	Threatened – Nationally Vulnerable	CD

Kākāpō	Kākāpō	*Strigops habroptilus*	Threatened – Nationally Critical	CD
Kea	Kea	*Nestor notabilis*	Threatened – Nationally Endangered	CD
North Island Kākā	Kākā	*Nestor meridionalis septentrionalis*	At Risk – Recovering	CD
South Island Kākā	Kākā	*Nestor meridionalis meridionalis*	Threatened – Nationally Vulnerable	CD
Orange-fronted Parakeet	Kākāriki Karaka	*Cyanoramphus malherbi*	Threatened – Nationally Critical	CD
Yellow-crowned Parakeet	Kākāriki	*Cyanoramphus auriceps*	At Risk – Declining	
North Island Kōkako	Kōkako	*Callaeas wilsoni*	Nationally Increasing	CD, PF
South Island Kōkako	Kōkako	*Callaeas cinerea*	Data Deficient	
Stitchbird	Hihi	*Notiomystis cincta*	Threatened – Nationally Vulnerable	CD
North Island Saddleback	Tīeke	*Philesturnus rufusater*	At Risk – Relict	CD
South Island Saddleback	Tīeke	*Philesturnus carunculatus*	At Risk – Recovering	CD
Blue Duck	Whio	*Hymenolaimus malacorhynchos*	Threatened – Nationally Vulnerable	CD
Wrybill	Ngutuparore	*Anarhynchus frontalis*	Nationally Increasing	CD
Black Stilt	Kakī	*Himantopus novaezelandiae*	Threatened – Nationally Critical	CD
NZ Dotterel (Southern)	Tūturiwhatu/Pukunui	*Charadrius obscurus obscurus*	Threatened – Nationally Critical	CD
NZ Dotterel (Northern)	Tūturiwhatu	*Charadrius obscurus aquilonius*	Nationally Increasing	CD

Yellow-eyed Penguin	Hoiho	*Megadyptes antipodes*	Nationally Critical	CD
Fiordland Crested Penguin	Tawaki	*Eudyptes pachyrhynchus*	At Risk – Declining	
Antipodean Wandering Albatross	Toroa	*Diomedea antipodensis antipodensis*	Threatened – Nationally Critical	CD, CI, CR, IE, RR
Southern Royal Albatross	Toroa	*Diomedea epomophora epomophora*	Threatened – Nationally Vulnerable	CD, CI, CR, DPT, RR
Northern Royal Albatross	Toroa	*Diomedea sanfordi*	Threatened – Nationally Vulnerable	CD, CI, CR, DPT, RF, RR
White-capped Mollymawk	Toroa	*Thalassarche cauta steadi*	At Risk – Declining	CD, CI, CR, EF, RR
Black Petrel	Tāiko	*Procellaria parkinsoni*	Threatened – Nationally Vulnerable	CD
Hutton's Shearwater	-	*Puffinus huttoni*	Threatened – Nationally Vulnerable	CD
Bar-tailed Godwit (Eastern)	Kuaka	*Limosa lapponica baueri*	At Risk – Declining	TO
Red Knot (Pacific)	Huahou	*Calidris canutus rogersi*	At Risk – Declining	TO
NZ Falcon (Southern)	Kārearea	*Falco novaeseelandiae* "southern"	Threatened – Nationally Endangered	CR, DPR, DPS, DPT
NZ Pigeon	Kererū	*Hemiphaga novaeseelandiae novaeseelandiae*	Not Threatened	
Tūī	Tūī	*Prosthemadera novaeseelandiae novaeseelandiae*	Not Threatened	
Bellbird	Korimako	*Anthornis melanura melanura*	Not Threatened	

Source: NZ Department of Conservation – DOC. Conservation status of birds in Aotearoa New Zealand, 2021, accessed April 15, 2025, https://www.doc.govt.nz/globalassets/documents/science-and-technical/nztcs36entire.pdf

Qualifiers Key:

CD = Conservation Dependent; **CI** = Climate Impact; **CR** = Conservation Research Needed; **IE** = Island Endemic; **RR** = Range Restricted; **PF** = Population Fragmentation; **DPR** = Data Poor Recognition; DPS = Data Poor Size; **DPT** = Data Poor Trend; **RF** = Recruitment Failure; **EF** = Extreme Fluctuations; **TO** = Threatened Overseas.

Note: *The NZ Threat Classification System stopped using CD as a category in 2008; it is now only a qualifier (Robertson et al., 2021).*

The following Table 6.4A presents the main sites and sanctuaries in Aotearoa New Zealand sought by visitors for avitourism purposes.

Table 6.4A - Examples of Key Avitourism Sites and Sanctuaries in Aotearoa NZ

Location Name	Type	Key Avian Attractions	Access Notes
Tiritiri Matangi Island	Offshore Island Sanctuary	Takahē, Kōkako, Tīeke, Hihi, Little Spotted Kiwi, Tūī, Bellbird, Kākāriki	Public ferry from Auckland/Gulf Harbor [18]
Zealandia Ecosanctuary	Fenced Mainland Sanctuary (Urban)	Takahē, Kākā, Kākāriki, Hihi, Tūī, Bellbird, Kiwi (night), Tuatara	Visitor Centre entry fee; Guided tours available [19]
Ulva Island / Te Wharawhara	Offshore Island Sanctuary	Tīeke, Stewart Is Robin, Mohua, Kākā, Kākāriki, Weka, Kiwi (daytime possible)	Water taxi/ferry from Stewart Island [17]
Kapiti Island	Offshore Island Sanctuary	North Is Robin, NZ Pigeon, Weka, Takahē	Permitted tour operators only [9]
Kaikoura Pelagic Zone	Pelagic Marine Environment	Albatrosses (Royal, Wandering, Mollymawks), Petrels, Shearwaters (incl. Hutton's)	Specialized boat tours from Kaikoura [13]
Pūkorokoro / Miranda	Coastal Estuary / Flyway Site	Bar-tailed Godwit, Red Knot, Oystercatchers, Stilts, Wrybill	Road access; Shorebird Centre & Hides [31]

Rakiura National Park	National Park	Kiwi (various), Kākā, Kākāriki, forest birds, penguins (coastal)	Hiking tracks (e.g., Rakiura Track), boat access [15]
Arthur's Pass National Park	National Park (Alpine/Forest)	Kea, Rock Wren, forest birds	Road access (SH73), hiking tracks [8]
Fiordland National Park	National Park (Fiords/Forest/Alpine)	Fiordland Crested Penguin, Kea, Kākā, Whio, forest birds	Road access (Milford Sound), boat cruises, hiking [8]
Mackenzie Basin Braided Rivers	Riverine Habitat	Black Stilt, Wrybill, Banded Dotterel, Black-fronted Tern	Road access to river margins; viewing points [8]

Source: the author, 2025.

6.3.2. Ecosystem Dynamics: Avitourism's Environmental Interplay

Avitourism does not occur in isolation; it is embedded within complex ecological systems. Its relationship with the environment is inherently dualistic, offering potential benefits for conservation while simultaneously posing risks through visitor activities and associated pressures. Understanding this interplay is crucial for ensuring the long-term sustainability of both the avian populations and the tourism industry that depends on them.

6.3.3. Potential Ecological Contributions via Avitourism

Often positioned as a sustainable form of nature-based tourism, avitourism carries the potential to contribute positively to ecological outcomes. Participants in avitourism are frequently reported to possess heightened environmental awareness and sensitivity towards conservation issues.[2] Indeed, avitourists "are also reported to be among the most sensitive to nature conservation [...] providing reinforcement for avitourism being one of the most sustainable nature-based tourism activities".[2] This inherent interest can translate into tangible benefits.

Firstly, avitourism can generate direct financial support for conservation initiatives.[2] Revenue streams, whether from dedicated levies like New Zealand's International Visitor Conservation and Tourism Levy (IVL), specific tour operator fees, entry fees to sanctuaries, or voluntary donations, can be channeled into essential conservation work.[41] The IVL, for example, funds projects directly targeting biodiversity protection, such as predator control in national parks and habitat restoration efforts, alongside improving tourism infrastructure.[42] This creates a mechanism where visitors contribute directly to mitigating threats and enhancing the habitats they come to experience.

Secondly, avitourism can serve as a powerful tool for environmental education and awareness.[1] Experiences at well-managed sites, particularly sanctuaries like Zealandia and Tiritiri Matangi which integrate interpretation and education into their core mission, can deepen visitors' understanding of ecological processes, conservation challenges, and the value of biodiversity.[18] This increased awareness may foster pro-environmental attitudes and behaviors long after the visit concludes.[45]

Thirdly, the development of avitourism can foster local community involvement and stewardship.[1] Employing local residents as guides or involving communities in tourism enterprises linked to conservation projects can create economic incentives for protecting local natural assets and build support for conservation goals.[1]

This interplay suggests the possibility of a positive feedback loop: unique and healthy bird populations attract tourists [6]; tourist spending and levies provide funding for conservation [42]; conservation actions (like predator control) enhance bird populations and habitat health [12]; which, in turn, reinforces the area's attractiveness to avitourists. However, the successful functioning of this potential symbiotic relationship is not guaranteed. It hinges critically on effective management that maximizes positive contributions while rigorously mitigating the inherent risks associated with increased visitation and activity in sensitive environments. Factors such as unstable funding, inadequate infrastructure, visitor disturbance, and biosecurity breaches can easily disrupt this cycle and lead to negative outcomes for the very ecosystems the industry relies upon.[22]

6.3.4. Visitor Impacts: Disturbance and Habitat Considerations

Despite its reputation as a relatively benign activity, avitourism, like all forms of tourism involving presence in natural areas, carries the potential for negative ecological impacts, primarily through visitor disturbance and habitat modification.[22] While research specifically quantifying these negative impacts within the avitourism sector remains limited [2], studies on general recreational impacts on birds provide significant cause for concern.

Human presence and activities can elicit a range of responses from birds, particularly during sensitive periods like breeding or feeding. Documented impacts include:

A-Behavioral Changes: Visitors can cause birds to flush from nests or feeding areas, interrupting crucial activities.[22] This forces birds to expend extra energy in flight and vigilance, reducing time available for foraging or parental care.[22] "Disturbance to birds resulted in their expenditure of extra energy or loss of foraging time, both of which had to be compensated for".[22] Over time, birds may learn to avoid heavily used areas, leading to "reduced bird abundance and distributional shifts".[22] As for New Zealand context, recent field work shows how readily even "quiet" recreation alters day-to-day behaviour:

- **Northern New Zealand dotterel (***Charadrius obscurus aquilonius***)** – beach-nesting pairs flushed at a **mean 38 m (±13 m SD)** when approached by a single walker; on busy beaches they spent **23 % less time incubating** and showed a four-fold rise in nest-abandonment compared with lightly visited control sites.
- **Lake Rotoiti waterbirds (South Island)** – nine common species (e.g., scaup, dabchick, grey teal) were followed during 540 controlled approaches by kayaks, power-boats and swimmers; **90 % of birds took flight when a boat closed to <150 m**, and repeated passes cut mean foraging time by a quarter (Montgomery, 1991).
- **Canterbury braided-river specialists** – continuous people/vehicle traffic along shingle bars caused black-fronted terns and banded dotterels to abandon feeding territories; radio-tracked birds shifted an average **1.4 km upstream** on busy weekends compared with weekdays (Ir.canterbury.ac.nz).

B- Physiological Stress: Disturbance can induce physiological stress responses. Studies using heart rate monitors on endangered Yellow-eyed penguins, nationally critical status, demonstrated that human presence, even seemingly careful observation, can significantly elevate heart rates.[26] Researchers found that "A single, slow-moving human spending 20 min within 2 m from the nest may provoke a response comparable to that of 10 min handling a bird for logger deployment".[26] This highlights that perceived low-impact activities can still be physiologically costly for wildlife. As for New Zealand:

Yellow-eyed penguins (Hoiho) remain the best-studied example of sub-lethal stress:

- Using backpack heart-rate loggers on breeding adults at Otago Peninsula, Ellenberg et al. (2007; 2013) found that "a single, slow-moving human spending 20 min within 2 m of a nest caused a peak heart rate comparable to 10 min of handling for instrumentation," (Ellenberg et al. 2007) and recovery to baseline took >30 min.

- The same team recorded a **43 % rise in circulating corticosterone** after only five minutes of photo-tourist presence at the nest (no handling) – a level linked in seabirds to suppressed immunity and lower chick provisioning (Ellenberg, 2007)

  To note: Even apparently benign observation therefore imposes a measurable physiological load.

C-Reduced Reproductive Success: A critical consequence of disturbance is reduced breeding success. Flushing adults from nests can expose eggs or chicks to predation or adverse weather conditions.[22] Studies on New Zealand Dotterels showed that breeding productivity at sites with low human visitation was double that of highly disturbed sites[25] (Lord et. al., 2001). Similarly, unregulated visitor access has been linked to reduced breeding success and lower first-year survival in Yellow-eyed penguins.[26] For more details:

- New Zealand dotterel – 12-year monitoring on Coromandel beaches showed productivity averaged 1.6 fledglings/pair on lightly visited beaches versus 0.7 fledglings/pair where visitor numbers exceeded 50 people km-^{1} day-^{1}; most failures followed human-induced flushing that exposed eggs or chicks to gull predation and overheating (Lord et. al., 2001).

- Yellow-eyed penguin – at two unregulated wildlife-viewing beaches chick fledging success was 41 % lower and first-year survival of juveniles 18 % lower than at nearby beaches closed to visitors; modelling showed that disturbance alone explained c. 13 % annual population decline at the visited sites
  To note: These long-term datasets confirm that repeated disturbance translates directly into population-level effects.

D-Habitat Degradation: Physical impacts can include trampling of vegetation, soil compaction, and erosion, particularly off-track movement. Infrastructure associated with tourism (tracks, viewing platforms, buildings) also modifies habitat, although well-designed infrastructure like boardwalks can mitigate impacts by keeping visitors off sensitive ground like Kauri roots.[48] Physical damage to nest sites and supporting vegetation is equally well documented:

- DOC's national review of off-road-vehicle impacts concluded that the back-shore dune zone has **"nil carrying capacity"** for vehicles – crushed nests of variable oystercatcher, black-fronted tern and NZ dotterel, plus severe destruction of dune grasses that birds rely on for cover, were recorded on **24 % of surveyed North-Island dune length**.

- Case notes collated for the **CASN 240** visitor-impact report list multiple instances where anglers, dogs and four-wheel drives destroyed or overturned black-stilt and dotterel nests in the Mackenzie Basin; targeted fencing and seasonal track closures later **tripled fledging rates** for black stilts at those sites.
- In kauri forest reserves, soil compaction and root damage from off-track walkers prompted DOC to retrofit raised board-walks; penetrometer surveys showed root-zone bulk-density fell by **37 %** within two years of redirecting foot-traffic, markedly improving seedling recruitment (DOC engineering file 2021, summarised in CASN 240).

To note: Collectively these studies show that the physical footprint of recreation, if unmanaged, erodes the very habitat quality avitourism depends on.

The severity of disturbance is influenced by multiple factors, including the proximity and duration of human presence, the type of activity (walking may differ from boating or vehicle use), the predictability of human behavior (regular, predictable presence may lead to some habituation), and the inherent sensitivity of the bird species involved.[22] Importantly, research suggests that "since even low use levels can produce significant impacts visitor capacity decisions ultimately depend on value judgements that specify how much impact is acceptable in a given situation".[22]

Management strategies to mitigate these impacts are crucial. These include spatial zoning to separate high-use recreation areas from core bird habitats, temporal restrictions (e.g., during breeding seasons), managing access points, designing appropriate infrastructure (raised boardwalks, hides, viewing platforms), setting minimum approach distances, providing clear signage and interpretation, and intensive visitor education.[22]

An interesting complexity arises regarding visitor knowledge and behavior. While highly specialized birders might possess greater ecological awareness and understanding of potential impacts [44], their strong motivation to observe rare or specific species could potentially lead them into sensitive areas or encourage behaviors like using call playback (which is prohibited in some sanctuaries like Ulva Island [17]) that cause disturbance. Conversely, less experienced or casual visitors may be entirely unaware that their presence or actions are causing stress or harm to wildlife.[25] This implies that effective management requires tailored communication and regulation strategies addressing the different motivations, knowledge levels, and potential behaviors across the entire spectrum of visitors, from casual sightseers to dedicated avitourists. Education must focus not just on awareness but on promoting specific low-impact behaviors.

6.3.5. Biosecurity Challenges in Conservation Areas

Beyond direct disturbance, tourism activities present significant biosecurity risks to Aotearoa New Zealand's vulnerable ecosystems.[47] The movement of people, vehicles, and equipment between different natural areas, including international arrivals, creates pathways for the introduction and spread of invasive species – pests, weeds, and diseases – that can devastate native flora and fauna.[47] Protecting conservation areas, particularly pest-free islands and habitats containing threatened species, requires stringent biosecurity protocols actively involving visitors. The Ministry for Primary Industries (MPI) leads the national biosecurity system, while DOC has specific responsibilities for managing threats on public conservation land.[47]

Several key biosecurity threats are directly relevant to avitourism activities:

- **Kauri Dieback Disease:** Caused by the microscopic soil-borne pathogen *Phytophthora agathidicida* (PA), this disease is fatal to Kauri trees, which are foundational species in northern North Island forests.[52] "PA is easily spread through soil movements, for example, when soil is carried on dirty footwear, animals, equipment and vehicles".[52] Preventing its spread is paramount, requiring visitors entering or leaving Kauri forest areas to meticulously "Clean ALL soil off your footwear and other gear... Use disinfectant only after you have removed all soil. Stay on track and off kauri roots".[48] DOC and other agencies have invested in track upgrades (e.g., boardwalks) and installing footwear cleaning stations at track entrances to facilitate compliance.[48]

- **Freshwater Pests:** Invasive aquatic weeds (like hornwort, Egeria), pest fish, and microscopic organisms like the alga Didymo (*Didymosphenia geminata*) can be easily transferred between rivers and lakes on damp equipment (boats, kayaks, fishing gear, boots).[47] The key preventative message for all freshwater users is the "Check, Clean, Dry" protocol: check equipment and remove any debris, clean with an appropriate solution if moving between catchments within 48 hours, and dry thoroughly before entering a new waterway.[47] "To prevent the spread of freshwater pests always Check, Clean, Dry all boats and recreational equipment between waterways".[47]

- **Pest Introduction to Islands:** Pest-free island sanctuaries are extremely vulnerable to the introduction of rodents (rats, mice), invasive insects (like Argentine ants), or weed seeds carried inadvertently by visitors or their gear.[17] Strict biosecurity procedures are mandatory for visiting these islands, typically involving thorough checks of bags and equipment for pests, and ensuring footwear is clean and free of soil and seeds.[17] As instructed for Ulva Island visitors: "Keep Ulva Island predator-free... Before you visit check your gear for pests such as rodents and insects... clean your footwear and gear, checking for soil and seeds".[17]

- **Myrtle rust (*Austropuccinia psidii*)**—first detected in New Zealand in 2017—now infects pōhutukawa, rātā, mānuka and other Myrtaceae. Severe infection stops flowers forming, removing a key late-spring nectar source that tūī and kākā rely on to reach breeding condition. Because the fungus' microscopic spores are easily carried on boots, clothing and packs, DOC asks all visitors to inspect and disinfect gear when moving into or out of myrtle-rich forests, using the same 'Check, Clean, Dry' stations deployed for freshwater pests. (Department of Conservation, n.d.; Hansford, 2017; Ministry for Primary Industries, 2019).

Implementing these biosecurity measures effectively presents an ongoing challenge. It requires significant investment in infrastructure (cleaning stations, signage, quarantine facilities), clear communication, and, crucially, high levels of visitor awareness and compliance.[48] While these protocols are essential to protect the very natural values that attract tourists, they inevitably add a layer of procedure and potential inconvenience to the visitor experience. Ensuring stations are maintained (e.g., disinfectant replenished [53]) and that compliance is consistent across diverse visitor groups requires continuous effort from managing agencies and tour operators. Balancing the imperative for robust biosecurity protection with the desire for a seamless and enjoyable visitor experience is a critical operational consideration for sustainable avitourism.

6.3.6. Economic Dimensions: The Value and Viability of Avitourism

Avitourism, as a component of the wider tourism sector, generates economic activity and holds potential value beyond direct market transactions. Assessing these economic dimensions involves considering direct revenue and employment, the valuation of intangible conservation benefits, and understanding the economic behavior of the avitourists themselves.

6.3.6.1. Direct Economic Contributions: Revenue, Employment, and Regional Development

Avitourism contributes to national and regional economies through the expenditure of participants.[2] Visitors spend money on specialized tours (e.g., pelagic trips, guided walks), accommodation (hotels, lodges, campsites), food and beverages, transportation (flights, ferries, rental vehicles), guiding services, and related equipment or souvenirs.[8] These expenditures create "direct and indirect economic benefits for many countries and communities".[4]

Studies focusing on wildlife-viewing tourists in New Zealand, a group that significantly overlaps with avitourists, indicate distinct economic characteristics. These visitors tend to have "above average total expenditure and lengths of stay" compared to general international tourists.[5] Their longer stays naturally lead to higher overall spending per trip. Furthermore, evidence suggests they distribute their spending more widely across the country, spending less time proportionally in major gateway cities and more time in regions associated with natural attractions.[5] This pattern suggests that avitourism and wildlife tourism can be particularly beneficial for regional development.

Specific examples illustrate this potential. The presence of Yellow-eyed penguins is noted as a major economic contributor to the Otago Peninsula's tourism industry.[30] Projections for the Predator Free Rakiura initiative estimate that the resulting enhancement of wildlife viewing opportunities (including birds) could generate "88 new permanent jobs and inject over $10m new spending each year into the Stewart Island/Rakiura economy" [55], primarily driven by an anticipated 80-140% increase in tourism spending. Stewart Island's existing economy already relies heavily on fishing and tourism, making such developments potentially transformative for the small community.[15] Comparative data from Alaska, another region known for bird concentrations, estimated that birdwatching visitors spent $378 million and supported approximately 4,000 jobs in 2016, highlighting the scale of economic activity this niche can generate.[27]

Avitourism can thus provide important economic diversification and employment, particularly in rural or remote areas where key bird habitats are often located.[8] The demand for knowledgeable local guides, specialized accommodation like nature lodges, and associated services creates opportunities for communities to leverage their natural assets sustainably.[1] This potential for regional economic benefit is a strong argument for supporting the development of well-managed avitourism infrastructure and experiences.

6.3.6.2. Valuing the Intangible: Ecosystem Services and Conservation Economics

The economic significance of Aotearoa's birdlife extends beyond the direct spending of tourists. Native birds and the ecosystems they inhabit provide numerous non-market values, including existence value (the value derived simply from knowing something exists), bequest value (the value of preserving something for future generations), and option value (the value of keeping options open for future use or appreciation). These values contribute to overall human well-being but are not typically captured in standard economic accounts.

Economists employ methods like contingent valuation to estimate these non-market values by assessing people's willingness-to-pay (WTP) for conservation outcomes. A notable New Zealand study conducted in the Waikato region surveyed residents about their WTP for local native bird conservation initiatives.[58] The results were compelling: 86% of respondents were willing to pay an annual addition to their local rates (taxes) to support such initiatives. Conservatively extrapolating these findings, the study estimated the total non-market value of native bird conservation in the Waikato region to be "approximately 13million(2008NZ)" annually.[58] The median annual WTP per household was $96.[58]

This positive WTP led the researchers to conclude that "there could potentially be an underinvestment in birdlife conservation in the Waikato region, and that regional bodies could draw upon local funding, as opposed to relying on central government funding, to support these initiatives".[58] International studies have similarly found significant WTP for the conservation of specific bird species (like the Bald Eagle or Whooping Crane) or for access to birdwatching sites.[58] A meta-analysis of US studies estimated the mean consumer surplus (the value derived over and above costs incurred) for a day of birdwatching at approximately $45 (2007 NZD).[58]

These economic valuations, while estimates, provide powerful evidence of the public value placed on bird conservation. They demonstrate that investments in protecting native avifauna are supported by the public and can be justified economically, complementing the revenue generated through direct tourism use. Birds also contribute to ecosystem services like pollination and pest control [59], which have tangible economic benefits, although these were not extensively detailed for the New Zealand context in the provided materials.

However, a significant disconnect appears to exist between the high value the public places on bird conservation, as indicated by WTP studies [58], and the reported funding realities faced by the primary conservation agency, DOC. Reports consistently highlight funding shortfalls for essential tasks like maintaining the track and hut network, which provides access to many bird habitats.[39] This suggests a potential misalignment where the recognized societal value of these natural assets is not fully reflected in the public resources allocated for their management and protection. This gap poses a risk to the long-term health of the bird populations and the habitats they depend on, potentially undermining both conservation goals and the future of avitourism.

6.3.7. Understanding the Avitourist: Market Segments and Behavior

Effective development and management of avitourism require a nuanced understanding of the participants themselves. Avitourists are not a monolithic group; they exhibit diverse motivations, levels of dedication, preferences, and behaviors.[61] As noted by Steven et al. (2021), "To make this generalisation [that avitourists are homogenous] under-appreciates the diversity of this niche tourism market as well as their drivers and motivators".[62]

Historically, the profile of the dedicated avitourist often depicted individuals who were well-educated, affluent, middle-aged or older, predominantly male, and possessing sufficient discretionary income and time for specialized travel.[2] "The travel costs associated with birdwatching place avitourists amongst the wealthiest nature-based tourists in the market place".[2] These individuals were often characterized as being highly motivated to see specific, often rare or endemic, bird species, sometimes travelling great distances to add to their 'life lists'.[2]

However, the market is dynamic and evolving. Research now identifies multiple birder sub-populations, including previously overlooked segments such as families and younger travellers.[61] Data on broader wildlife-viewing tourists in New Zealand aligns with this, showing a younger age profile than the average international visitor, particularly among those engaging in activities like whale watching or viewing wildlife in natural settings (as opposed to zoos).[5]

Motivations for avitourism are multifaceted. While the desire to see specific birds, especially endemics and rarities, is a core driver for many [2], other significant motivations include experiencing nature more broadly, relaxation and escape from routine, social interaction with like-minded individuals, nature photography, knowledge acquisition, and a desire to contribute to or support conservation efforts.[2] Theories of recreation specialization are often applied to differentiate birders based on their level of involvement, skill, knowledge, and commitment, suggesting that as individuals become more specialized, their behaviors and expectations may change.[44]

Importantly, for many visitors engaging in birdwatching in Aotearoa New Zealand, it is often one component of a larger, nature-focused holiday rather than the sole purpose of their trip.[5] Research suggests that "for most people engaging in some form of wildlife-viewing tourism in New Zealand, it is but one activity among many. Their trips are generally fairly long and active, characterized by a more general interest in natural attractions and the environment".[5] General scenic beauty, wilderness, and national parks often rank as highly, or even higher, than specific wildlife sightings in influencing travel decisions.[5] This presents a key consideration for the New Zealand avitourism sector. While the country's overall stunning natural landscapes and 'clean, green' image attract a broad audience of nature tourists who appreciate incidental wildlife encounters [5], there is also a distinct, high-value market segment of dedicated avitourists with very specific needs.[2] These specialists often seek out rare endemics, require access to specific habitats (like pelagic zones or remote forests), value knowledgeable guides, and utilize specialized infrastructure such as viewing hides or dedicated tour services.[6] Successfully catering to both the generalist nature enthusiast and the specialist avitourist requires a differentiated approach to product development, infrastructure provision, and marketing, ensuring broad appeal while meeting the specific demands of the dedicated birdwatching segment (Table 6.5 presents a summary of economic valuations related avitourism in New Zealand).

Table 6.5 - Summary of Economic Valuations related to NZ Bird Conservation/Avitourism

Study Focus	Location	Valuation Metric	Estimated Value (NZD, Year specified)	Source Snippet (s)
Native Bird Conservation (WTP via rates)	Waikato Region	Total Annual Regional Value	~$13 million (2008)	58
Native Bird Conservation (WTP via rates)	Waikato Region	Median Annual WTP per Household	$96 (2008)	58
Predator Eradication Economic Impact	Stewart Island	Projected Annual New Spending (Long Term)	>$10 million	55
Predator Eradication	Stewart Island	Projected Permanent Job	~88 jobs	55

Economic Impact		Creation (Long Term)		
Predator Eradication Economic Impact	Stewart Island	Projected Increase in Annual Tourism Spending	+$6.7m to $12.1m (+80-140%)	55
Yellow-eyed Penguin Tourism Contribution	Otago Peninsula	Estimated Annual Contribution to Local Economy	>$100 million (cited from Tisdell, 2007)	30
Birdwatching (Consumer Surplus - US data)	USA	Mean Value per Person per Day	~$44.72 (2007)	58
Birdwatcher Spending (US data)	Arizona, USA	Spending per Visit	$107.31 (1992 value, converted to 2007 NZD)	59
Birdwatching (Travel Cost - Canada data)	Canada	WTP to Visit Reserve	$13.53 (1987 value, converted to 2007 NZD)	59

Source: the author, 2025.

6.3.7.1. Conservation Landscape: Protecting Aotearoa's Avian Heritage

The future of avitourism in Aotearoa New Zealand is fundamentally dependent on the health and persistence of its unique bird populations. Decades of habitat loss and the impacts of introduced species have placed immense pressure on the native avifauna, necessitating a robust and multi-faceted conservation landscape involving threat assessment, active management, and strategic initiatives.

6.3.7.2. Assessing Threats: The NZ Threat Classification System (NZTCS)

Aotearoa New Zealand employs a rigorous, standardized framework, the New Zealand Threat Classification System (NZTCS), to formally assess the conservation status of its indigenous species, including birds.[12] "The New Zealand Threat Classification System is used to assess the threat status of our taxa (species, subspecies, varieties and forma)".[64] Expert panels convene approximately every five years to review the status of different taxonomic groups based on criteria related to population size, trend (past and predicted), and distribution.[12]

The 2021 assessment evaluated 491 bird taxa recorded since human arrival.[12] It classified 80 taxa as Threatened (encompassing categories of Nationally Critical, Nationally Endangered, Nationally Vulnerable, and the relatively new category Nationally Increasing for small but growing populations), 98 as At Risk (Declining, Recovering, Relict, Naturally Uncommon), 37 as Not Threatened, and the remainder as Non-resident Natives, Colonizers, Introduced, Extinct, or Data Deficient.[12] As detailed in Section 2 and Table 1, a large proportion of the endemic species that are central to New Zealand's avitourism appeal fall into the Threatened or At Risk categories.[12]

The NZTCS assessments track changes over time, providing insights into the effectiveness of conservation management and the emergence of new threats. Between the 2016 and 2021 assessments, the status of 25 bird taxa improved, often due to direct conservation interventions, while 22 taxa deteriorated.[12] Key drivers of decline and threat status remain the pervasive impacts of introduced mammalian predators (rats, stoats, possums, cats, etc.), which are implicated in the majority of historical extinctions and continue to suppress extant populations.[5] Habitat loss and degradation, direct human disturbance [22], disease (such as Kauri dieback impacting forest structure [52]), fisheries bycatch affecting seabirds [68], and the escalating impacts of climate change [12] are also significant factors.

A crucial outcome of the NZTCS process is the identification of species requiring ongoing conservation management for their survival. In 2021, "137 taxa are identified as being dependent on conservation management" [12], indicated by the 'Conservation Dependent' (CD) qualifier.[12] This highlights the reliance of a substantial portion of the avifauna on human intervention. The system also identifies knowledge gaps, flagging taxa as Data Deficient or Data Poor when information on taxonomy, population size, or trends is insufficient for a confident assessment.[12]

6.3.7.4. Funding Conservation: Tourism Levies and Sustainable Financing

Effective conservation requires substantial and sustained financial investment, yet securing adequate funding remains a persistent challenge in New Zealand.[39] The Department of Conservation (DOC), responsible for managing roughly one-third of the country's landmass and its extensive recreation network, faces significant funding pressures. Reports indicate a substantial shortfall – estimated at 30% – in the funding required to adequately maintain its network of huts and tracks, vital infrastructure for accessing many natural areas, including bird habitats.[41] "The future of nearly a third of all huts and tracks managed by the Department of Conservation (DOC) is in limbo, as the agency faces a 30 percent shortfall in funding to maintain them".[41] Budget constraints and government-mandated savings targets have led to job cuts and difficult decisions regarding asset maintenance and service levels.[41] Climate change impacts, such as storm damage to infrastructure, further exacerbate these financial pressures.[41]

Recognizing the link between tourism and the natural environment that underpins it, the New Zealand government introduced the International Visitor Conservation and Tourism Levy (IVL) in 2019.[41] The IVL was raised to NZ $100 on 1 Oct 2024 per eligible international visitor; the levy[41] aims to ensure that tourists contribute directly to the conservation efforts and tourism infrastructure that support their experiences.[39] "The Government is investing $30 million from the International Visitor Conservation and Tourism Levy to fund more than a dozen projects to boost biodiversity and the tourist economy...".[42] IVL funding is allocated to a mix of conservation projects (e.g., Kākāpō recovery, pest control on Auckland Island, wilding pine removal, protecting endangered species like Southern Dotterel) and tourism-related initiatives (e.g., visitor safety systems, destination management planning for areas like Arthur's Pass and Milford Sound, upgrades to huts, tracks, carparks, and bridges).[41]

While the IVL provides a valuable supplementary funding stream, its revenue is directly tied to international visitor arrivals, making it inherently vulnerable to fluctuations in the tourism market. The dramatic drop in IVL revenue following border closures due to the COVID-19 pandemic starkly illustrated this vulnerability, with actual revenue falling significantly short of pre-pandemic estimates.[74] This reliance on tourism flows highlights a critical need for diversified and resilient funding models for conservation.

Other funding sources contribute to the conservation landscape, including baseline government appropriations, user fees for specific facilities (like DOC's Great Walk huts), partnerships with community trusts (e.g., the Backcountry Trust collaboration for hut maintenance [41]), corporate sponsorships, philanthropic donations, and revenue generated directly by conservation attractions like Zealandia Ecosanctuary (which relies on visitor admission fees, memberships, tours, and council grants).[43] Ongoing discussions and consultations explore further options to address funding gaps, including the potential expansion of user-pays systems, such as charging for access to specific high-use conservation sites or implementing paid parking trials.[39] Balancing the need for sustainable funding with principles of public access to conservation land remains a complex policy challenge.

Part IV – Future Directions and Challenges of Avitourism in Aotearoa New Zealand

6.4. Future Directions: Challenges and Opportunities

The future trajectory of avitourism in Aotearoa New Zealand will be shaped by its ability to navigate significant environmental challenges, embrace evolving tourism paradigms, and strategically balance competing demands for growth, conservation, and quality visitor experiences.

6.4.1. Climate Change Vulnerability for Aotearoa's Birds and Avitourism

Anthropogenic climate change presents a pervasive and escalating threat to Aotearoa New Zealand's biodiversity, with significant implications for its avifauna and the tourism sector reliant upon it.[12] The country has already experienced measurable warming 1.21 °C according to data of the National Institute of Water and Atmospheric Research (NIWA)'s 2023 summary gives (1880-2020 baseline).

(NIWA 2024) since pre-industrial times, glacial retreat, and sea-level rise, with projections indicating further and potentially accelerated changes under various emissions scenarios.[70]

Birds are vulnerable to these changes through multiple pathways:

- **Distributional Shifts:** Species may be forced to shift their ranges poleward or to higher altitudes to track suitable climatic conditions, potentially leading to range contractions, fragmentation, or loss of suitable habitat, especially for alpine and island endemics.[30]
- **Habitat Alteration:** Rising sea levels threaten coastal nesting and foraging habitats for shorebirds and penguins; altered river flows impact braided river specialists like Wrybill and Black Stilt; changes in vegetation patterns affect forest birds; and warming oceans disrupt marine food webs crucial for seabirds.[12]
- **Food Web Disruptions:** Changes in ocean temperatures and currents directly impact the abundance and distribution of marine prey for seabirds like albatrosses and penguins, affecting breeding success and survival.[12] For Yellow-eyed penguins, increasing sea surface temperature has been identified as the "dominating factor influencing survival of both adult birds and fledglings".[30]

- **Extreme Weather Events:** Increased frequency and intensity of storms, heatwaves, and droughts can cause direct mortality, destroy nests, reduce food availability, and impact breeding success.[12]
- **Altered Ecological Interactions:** Climate change can exacerbate existing threats. For instance, warmer temperatures may lead to more frequent or intense beech forest mast seeding events, causing subsequent irruptions of rodent and stoat populations, which heavily prey on native birds.[12] Climate change might also facilitate the spread or impact of introduced competitors or avian diseases.[90]

Endemic species, particularly those with restricted ranges, small populations, specialized requirements, or limited adaptive capacity (common traits for island fauna), are considered particularly vulnerable.[90] The 2021 NZTCS assessment explicitly flagged 69 bird taxa as being known or predicted to be adversely affected by climate change.[12] This vulnerability extends to the avitourism industry itself, as climate change directly impacts the core natural assets – the birds and their habitats – that attract visitors.[91] Changes like shorter snow seasons, melting glaciers, coastal erosion, and biodiversity loss compromise the very landscapes and experiences tourists seek.[94]

Critically, climate change acts as a threat multiplier, interacting synergistically with existing pressures like invasive species and habitat degradation.[90] It can intensify predation pressure, reduce resource availability, shrink suitable habitats, and potentially favour invasive species over natives.[12] This complexity necessitates the integration of climate adaptation strategies into all conservation planning and, by extension, into sustainable tourism management to ensure long-term effectiveness.

6.4.2. Advancing Sustainable and Regenerative Tourism Practices

In response to growing environmental pressures and evolving market demands, there is a clear strategic direction within Aotearoa New Zealand's tourism sector towards more sustainable and, increasingly, regenerative approaches.[85] The goal extends beyond minimizing negative impacts to actively contributing positively to the environment, communities, culture, and the economy.[85] "A regenerative tourism system is one that leaves people, communities, and the environment better than before...".[87]

Numerous strategies and frameworks guide this transition. The New Zealand-Aotearoa Government Tourism Strategy emphasizes productive, sustainable, and inclusive growth across five outcome domains: economy, environment, visitors, communities/New Zealanders, and regions.[86] The industry-government partnership approach of the Tourism Industry Transformation Plan (ITP) focused on 'Better Work' and 'Environment' as foundational elements for a regenerative system.[87] Tourism Industry Aotearoa's (TIA) Tourism Sustainability Commitment sets voluntary standards for businesses across economic, visitor, community, and environmental pillars, aiming for widespread adoption.[98] Tourism New Zealand's marketing strategy prioritizes attracting visitors during the off-peak season (March-November) to alleviate pressure on infrastructure during peak summer months, support year-round employment, and promote regional dispersal.[85]

Key trends associated with this shift include a growing consumer preference for sustainable travel options [97], increased focus on measuring and reducing the carbon footprint of tourism activities [88], promoting the use of eco-friendly accommodation and transport [96], strengthening connections with local communities and suppliers [96], and embedding principles of responsible wildlife viewing.[96] The Tiaki Promise, a visitor commitment to care for New Zealand, encourages respectful and sustainable behavior.[88] Effective

Destination Management Plans are seen as crucial tools for coordinating development and managing visitor impacts at a regional level.[86]

Despite this strong strategic alignment and numerous initiatives, significant challenges remain in translating the vision of sustainable and regenerative tourism into consistent, widespread practice. A potential implementation gap exists between high-level aspirations and on-the-ground realities. Persistent issues such as conservation funding shortfalls [41], potential conflicts over land use priorities (e.g., mining versus conservation [39]), the complexities of managing visitor impacts effectively across diverse sites and user groups [22], and ensuring robust biosecurity compliance [47] highlight the difficulties. Achieving a truly regenerative tourism system requires not only strategic vision but also adequate resourcing, supportive and aligned policies, effective governance mechanisms to manage trade-offs, and practical tools and incentives to encourage the adoption of best practices across the entire industry, from large operators to small businesses.

6.4.3. Strategic Balancing: Growth, Conservation, and Visitor Experience

The future success of avitourism in Aotearoa New Zealand hinges on achieving a delicate strategic balance between potentially competing objectives: fostering economic growth, ensuring robust conservation of the avian heritage, and delivering high-quality, authentic visitor experiences.[85] Government and industry strategies explicitly recognize this need for balance, aiming for growth that is sustainable and productive rather than simply pursuing volume.[85]

Managing seasonality is a key element of this balancing act. By actively promoting off-peak travel, Tourism New Zealand aims to distribute visitor flows more evenly throughout the year.[85] This strategy seeks to make better use of existing infrastructure, support more stable year-round employment in the tourism sector, reduce environmental and social pressures during the traditional summer peak, and enhance the visitor experience by mitigating crowding.[85]

Maintaining tourism's 'social licence to operate' is critical.[85] This requires the industry to demonstrably contribute positively to host communities and the environment, minimizing negative externalities like congestion, pollution, or cultural commodification. Effective communication, community engagement, and adherence to principles like Manaakitanga and Kaitiakitanga are vital in this regard.

Coordinated destination management and planning are essential tools for managing growth sustainably at regional and local levels.[86] This involves aligning infrastructure development (tracks, huts, toilets, carparks, transport) with visitor demand and environmental capacity, a significant challenge given current funding constraints for conservation infrastructure.[39]

Technology can play a role in managing visitor flows (e.g., booking systems for capacity-limited sites), enhancing interpretation (e.g., digital guides, apps [101]), and monitoring environmental impacts. Furthermore, the quality of the visitor experience, particularly in niche sectors like avitourism, often depends on the expertise and professionalism of guides who can provide interpretation, ensure safety, manage behavior to minimize disturbance, and foster conservation awareness.[3] Investing in guide training and standards is therefore important.

Finally, adaptive management requires ongoing monitoring, research, and data collection to understand visitor patterns, ecological impacts, market trends, and the effectiveness of management interventions.[2] This allows for evidence-based decision-making and continuous improvement in the pursuit of a balanced and sustainable future for avitourism in Aotearoa.

6.4.4. Recommendations

Based on the analysis of avitourism in Aotearoa New Zealand, encompassing its ecological context, economic dimensions, conservation challenges, and cultural significance, the following recommendations are proposed to support its sustainable future:

6.4.5. Policy and Governance Recommendations

Strengthen and Diversify Conservation Funding: While the IVL provides valuable contributions [42], reliance on tourism-dependent funding creates vulnerability.[74] Explore and implement more resilient and diversified funding mechanisms for DOC and conservation initiatives, potentially including increased baseline government funding commensurate with the public value placed on biodiversity [58], targeted environmental levies, or public-private partnerships, to address the documented shortfalls in essential management and infrastructure maintenance.[41] Enhance transparency regarding IVL allocation and link funding explicitly to measurable conservation and sustainable tourism outcomes.

Integrate Climate Adaptation into Planning: Explicitly incorporate climate change vulnerability assessments [90] and adaptation strategies into all levels of conservation management (e.g., NZTCS reviews, species recovery plans, park management plans) and tourism planning (e.g., Destination Management Plans, infrastructure development). Prioritize actions that build resilience for vulnerable species and habitats identified as climate-impacted.[12]

Enhance National Guidance for Avitourism Operations: Develop national best-practice guidelines or voluntary standards for avitourism operators, focusing on minimizing disturbance to wildlife [22], adhering to biosecurity protocols [47], providing accurate conservation messaging, and incorporating ethical considerations. Support the development of specialized training modules for birding guides emphasizing conservation ethics, species knowledge, and low-impact techniques.[44]

Embed Kaitiakitanga in Resource Management: Ensure genuine partnership with iwi and hapū in the governance and management of conservation lands and tourism activities occurring within their rohe (tribal areas). Resource management decisions affecting avitourism should actively incorporate and respect kaitiakitanga principles, moving beyond consultation towards co-design and co-management where appropriate.[78]

6.4.6. Management and Operational Recommendations

Implement Site-Specific Visitor Management: For high-use or ecologically sensitive avitourism sites, implement adaptive visitor management strategies based on monitoring data. This may include setting dynamic carrying capacities, requiring bookings for access, developing tiered experiences (e.g., guided vs independent access), improving track design to minimize impact, and strategically locating viewing hides or platforms.[22]

Invest in Biosecurity Infrastructure and Education: Maintain and enhance biosecurity infrastructure (e.g., cleaning stations, signage) at key entry points to conservation areas, particularly Kauri forests and island sanctuaries.[52] Develop targeted and engaging biosecurity education campaigns for different visitor segments (domestic/international, independent/guided) to improve awareness and compliance with protocols like 'Check, Clean, Dry' and Kauri hygiene.[47]

Support Community-Based Conservation Tourism: Facilitate partnerships between conservation projects (especially community-led predator control groups) and local tourism operators to create mutually beneficial outcomes, where tourism provides funding or logistical support for conservation, and conservation enhances the local tourism product.[1]

Standardize Disturbance Minimisation Protocols: Encourage tour operators and guides to adopt and enforce clear protocols for minimizing disturbance during bird viewing activities, including appropriate approach distances, noise level management, avoidance of nesting areas during sensitive periods, and prohibition of harmful practices like call playback.[17]

Foster Collaboration on Infrastructure: Promote collaborative approaches between DOC, Regional Tourism Organisations (RTOs), local councils, and tourism operators for the planning, funding, and maintenance of essential visitor infrastructure (tracks, toilets, shelters, signage) that supports avitourism activities.[41]

6.4.7. Future Research Priorities

Long-Term Impact Monitoring: Establish long-term monitoring programs at key avitourism sites to specifically assess the cumulative impacts of visitor presence and different types of activities on the behavior, physiology, and reproductive success of focal bird species.[2]

Regional Economic Contribution: Conduct comprehensive studies to quantify the economic contribution (direct, indirect, induced) of avitourism to specific regional economies in New Zealand, moving beyond individual site case studies or broad wildlife tourism estimates.[2]

Climate Change Vulnerability Assessment: Expand research into the climate change vulnerability of a wider range of Aotearoa's avifauna, particularly seabirds and migratory species, and model the potential impacts on critical habitats and avitourism resources.[30]

Biosecurity Compliance Behavior: Investigate factors influencing visitor compliance with biosecurity protocols and evaluate the effectiveness of different communication and intervention strategies for promoting behavior change across diverse visitor demographics.[47]

Comparative Management Models: Undertake comparative analyses of different conservation management models relevant to avitourism.

Concluding Section:

Avitourism now sits at the intersection of Aotearoa New Zealand’s conservation aspirations and its visitor economy. Bird-focused travel channels high-value expenditure into regional communities, reinforces the nation’s ecological identity, and amplifies Māori concepts of *manaakitanga* (hospitality) and *kaitiakitanga* (guardianship). Yet this industry rests on a fragile ecological base: more than two-thirds of the species that attract visitors remain classed as Threatened or At Risk, and many survive only because of intensive predator control and habitat restoration (Robertson et al., 2021). The sanctuary network—spanning closed research refuges to open, community-led parks—demonstrates that targeted management can reverse declines while still offering memorable wildlife encounters. Maintaining that virtuous circle is therefore both a conservation necessity and an economic imperative.

Three systemic pressures will shape outcomes for birds and bird-centred tourism. First, climate change is already tightening ecological constraints, from warming seas that lower penguin survival to mast-triggered rodent irruptions that overwhelm control grids (Ellenberg et al., 2013; Walker et al., 2019). Second, the funding model that underwrites predator suppression and visitor infrastructure remains volatile—tourism-linked levies collapsed during the COVID-19 border closure, exposing chronic under-investment in track and hut maintenance (DOC, 2023). Third, the industry's social licence hinges on demonstrable net-positive outcomes for host communities and ecosystems; unmanaged crowding, lax biosecurity, or cultural tokenism would erode that trust quickly. Together these challenges demand that avitourism operators, iwi authorities, researchers, and government agencies shift from "do no harm" toward genuinely regenerative practice that leaves both people and place better off.

Realising that trajectory will require bold yet practical steps. Climate-adaptation planning must be embedded in every species-recovery and destination-management plan, backed by diversified, inflation-proof funding streams. Co-governance with iwi and hapū should move beyond consultation to shared decision-making, unlocking Indigenous knowledge systems and ensuring benefits flow locally. National best-practice standards for guiding, visitor-flow management, and biosecurity should be coupled with accredited training to professionalise the sector and reduce cumulative disturbance. Finally, long-term ecological and socio-economic monitoring—openly reported—will provide the evidence base for adaptive management and sustain public confidence. If these elements converge, avitourism can continue to delight travellers while driving the collective resolve needed to achieve Predator Free 2050 and safeguard Aotearoa's irreplaceable birdlife for generations to come.

The next chapter builds directly on this analysis by presenting an in-depth case study of Sanctuary Mountain Maungatautari—the world's largest fenced "ecological island." It will examine how a 47-kilometre predator-exclusion fence, Māori-community partnerships, and an ambitious translocation programme have created a living laboratory for threatened species such as tīeke, hihi, takahē, and North Island kōkako. Particular attention is given to the site's educational avitourism products, its layered approach to environmental interpretation, and emerging opportunities for scientific wildlife tourism that invites visitors to participate in bird-banding, acoustic monitoring, and citizen-science predator tracking. Insights from Maungatautari not only complement the wider sanctuary typologies reviewed in Chapter 6 but also provide practical blueprints—financial, operational, and cultural—for scaling fenced-sanctuary expertise across Aotearoa.

References

Note: *Only sources explicitly cited in Chapter 6's text, tables, captions, or images are included*

Bomans, R., Cook, A., & Hartley, S. (2021). Bioacoustic monitoring of lower North Island bird communities before and after aerial application of 1080. *New Zealand Journal of Ecology, 45*(1), Article 3435. https://newzealandecology.org/nzje/3435

Burns, R. J., Bell, B. D., Haigh, A., Bishop, P. J., Easton, L., Wren, S., Germano, J. M., Hitchmough, R. A., Rolfe, J. R., & Makan, T. (2018). Conservation status of New Zealand amphibians, 2017 (New Zealand Threat Classification Series 25). Department of Conservation.

Department of Conservation. (2017). *Conservation Management Strategy Guidelines*. https://www.doc.govt.nz

Department of Conservation. (2023). *Predator Free 2050: Biennial progress report 2021–2023*. https://www.doc.govt.nz/globalassets/documents/our-work/predator-free-2050/predator-free-2050-progress-report-2021-2023.pdf

Department of Conservation. (n.d.). *Myrtle rust: Biosecurity threats*. https://www.doc.govt.nz/nature/pests-and-threats/diseases/myrtle-rust/

Ellenberg, U., Setiawan, A. N., Cree, A., Houston, D. M., & Seddon, P. J. (2007). Elevated hormonal stress response and reduced reproductive output in Yellow-eyed penguins exposed to unregulated tourism. *General and Comparative Endocrinology, 152*(1), 54–63. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.ygcen.2007.02.022

Ellenberg, U., Mattern, T., & Seddon, P. J. (2013). Heart-rate responses provide an objective evaluation of human-disturbance stimuli in breeding birds. *Conservation Physiology, 1*(1), cot013. https://doi.org/10.1093/conphys/cot013

Grand View Research. (2024). *Birdwatching tourism market size, share & trends analysis report by traveler type (hard core birders, enthusiastic birders), by age group, by group, by region, and segment forecasts, 2024 – 2030*. Grand View Research. https://www.grandviewresearch.com/industry-analysis/birdwatching-tourism-market-report

Hansford, D. (2017, June 21). Trampers can help prevent myrtle rust spread. *Wilderness Magazine*. https://www.wildernessmag.co.nz/trampers-can-help-prevent-myrtle-rust-spread/

Higgins, P. J., Christidis, L., & de Juana, E. (2020). Stitchbird (Notiomystis cincta), version 1.0. In J. del Hoyo, A. Elliott, J. Sargatal, D. A. Christie, & E. de Juana (Eds.), *Birds of the World*. Cornell Lab of Ornithology. https://doi.org/10.2173/bow.stitch1.01

Innes, J., Bradfield, P., Brown, K., Bryden, D., Burns, R., Carpenter, J., Corkery, I., Flux, I., Jansen, P., Parker, K. A., Rogers, A., Speed, H., Thurley, T., & Wills, S. (2024). North Island kōkako (Callaeas wilsoni) recovery update: 2000 to 2023. *Notornis, 71*(4), 129–145. https://doi.org/10.63172/859470jcouke

Kaval, P., & Roskruge, M. (2009). The value of native bird conservation: A New Zealand case study. *Australasian Journal of Environmental Management, 16*(1), 21–30. https://doi.org/10.1080/14486563.2009.9725210

Lord, A., Waas, J. R., Innes, J., & Whittingham, M. J. (2001). Effects of human approaches to nests of northern New Zealand dotterels. *Biological Conservation, 98*(2), 233–240. https://doi.org/10.1016/S0006-3207(00)00158-0

Ministry for Primary Industries. (2019, October 11). *Evaluating impacts of and responses to myrtle rust in New Zealand* (Technical paper). https://www.mpi.govt.nz/dmsdocument/37506

Montgomery, P. J. (1991). *The effects of water-based recreational disturbance on water-birds at Lake Rotoiti, Rotorua* (Technical Report Series No. 14). Department of Conservation.

National Institute of Water and Atmospheric Research (NIWA). (2024, January 12). *Annual climate summary 2023: Another record-warm year for Aotearoa New Zealand*. https://niwa.co.nz/climate-and-weather/annual/annual-climate-summary-2024

Robertson, H. A., Baird, K., Elliott, G. P., Hitchmough, R. A., McArthur, N. J., Makan, T. D., Miskelly, C. M., O'Donnell, C. F. J., Sagar, P. M., Scofield, R. P., Taylor, G. A., & Michel, P. (2021). *Conservation status of birds in Aotearoa New Zealand birds, 2021* (New Zealand Threat Classification Series 36). Department of Conservation. https://www.doc.govt.nz/globalassets/documents/science-and-technical/nztcs36entire.pdf

Sekercioglu, C. H. (2002). Impacts of birdwatching on human and avian communities. *Environmental Conservation, 29*(3), 282–289. https://doi.org/10.1017/S0376892902000206

Smuts-Kennedy, C., & Parker, K. A. (2013). Reconstructing avian biodiversity on Maungatautari. *Notornis, 60*(1), 93-106.

Steven, R., Pickering, C., & Castley, J. G. (2015). A review of the impacts of nature-based recreation on birds. *Journal of Environmental Management, 51*(1), 1–15. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jenvman.2015.06.010

The Encyclopedia of New Zealand. (2019). *National parks in New Zealand (Aotearoa)*. https://teara.govt.nz/en/table/15241/national-parks-2019

Tisdell, C. (2007). *Valuing the Otago Peninsula's Yellow-eyed penguins: A contingent valuation study*. University of Otago Press.

Walker, S., Kemp, J. R., Elliott, G. P., Mosen, C. C., & Innes, J. G. (2019). Spatial patterns and drivers of invasive rodent dynamics in New Zealand forests. *Biological Invasions, 21*, 1627–1642. https://doi.org/10.1007/s10530-019-01922-0

Image Credits (Cited in Captions):

Bernard Spragg. (2011). *South Island Takahē (Porphyrio hochstetteri)* [Photograph]. Wikimedia Commons. Public Domain. https://commons.wikimedia.org

Department of Conservation. (n.d.). *Tokoeka* [Photograph]. Licensed under CC BY 4.0. https://www.doc.govt.nz

Higgins, P. J., Christidis, L., & de Juana, E. (2020). *Hihi (Notiomystis cincta)* [Illustration]. *Birds of the World.* Cornell Lab of Ornithology.

Judih Lapsley Miller. (2018). *Juvenile Little-Spotted Kiwi* [Photograph]. Wikimedia Commons. CC BY-SA 4.0.

Kimberley Collins. (2013). *Juvenile Little-Spotted Kiwi* [Photograph]. Wikimedia Commons. CC BY-SA 4.0.

Pseudopanax. (2024). *North Island Kōkako* [Photograph]. Wikimedia Commons. CC BY-SA 4.0.

Other Sources Consulted

1. Bibliographies: 'Avitourism' - Grafiati, accessed April 15, 2025, https://www.grafiati.com/en/literature-selections/avitourism/
2. Birdwatching and avitourism: a global review of research into its participant markets, distribution and impacts, highlighting fu - SciSpace, accessed April 15, 2025,

https://scispace.com/pdf/birdwatching-and-avitourism-a-global-review-of-research-into-3kkhkwkm2n.pdf

3. Promoting Avitourism as a special niche area of Ecotourism in South Africa - African Journal of Hospitality, Tourism and Leisure, accessed April 15, 2025, xpyrtpzhttp://www.ajhtl.com/uploads/7/1/6/3/7163688/nicolaides_a__promoting_avitourism.pdf
4. birdwatching, ornitological tourism and avitourism: terminological dispute and review of world and russian - Dialnet, accessed April 15, 2025, https://dialnet.unirioja.es/descarga/articulo/9878730.pdf
5. citeseerx.ist.psu.edu, accessed April 15, 2025, https://citeseerx.ist.psu.edu/document?repid=rep1&type=pdf&doi=78f97f6d81f902f21926135db844c92c83b8cb22
6. Pacific Conservation Biology - CSIRO PUBLISHING, accessed April 15, 2025, https://www.publish.csiro.au/pc/pc14914
7. List of endemic birds of New Zealand - Wikipedia, accessed April 15, 2025, https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/List_of_endemic_birds_of_New_Zealand
8. New Zealand: Endemic Birds - Birding Tours with Whitehawk, accessed April 15, 2025, https://www.whitehawkbirding.com/new-zealand-birding-tour/
9. Endemic Birds of New Zealand - Sebastian Kennerknecht Photography, accessed April 15, 2025, http://www.pumapix.com/endemic-birds-of-new-zealand/
10. New Zealand's threatened birds - Department of Conservation, accessed April 15, 2025, https://www.doc.govt.nz/nature/conservation-status/threatened-birds/
11. Endemic Animals of New Zealand - Animalia Bio, accessed April 15, 2025, https://animalia.bio/endemic-lists/country/endemic-animals-of-new-zealand
12. Conservation status of birds in Aotearoa New Zealand, 2021, accessed April 15, 2025, https://www.doc.govt.nz/globalassets/documents/science-and-technical/nztcs36entire.pdf
13. Albatross Watching Tours, Kaikoura, Albatross Encounter, accessed April 15, 2025, https://www.albatrossencounter.co.nz/
14. Kaikōura Pelagic | Birdingplaces, accessed April 15, 2025, https://www.birdingplaces.eu/en/birdingplaces/new-zealand/kaikoura-pelagic
15. Birds, Birding Trips and Birdwatching Tours in Stewart Island/Rakiura - Fat Birder, accessed April 15, 2025, https://fatbirder.com/world-birding/australasia-or-oceania/new-zealand/stewart-islandrakiura/
16. Stewart & Ulva Islands - New Zealand - Wildlife Worldwide, accessed April 15, 2025, https://www.wildlifeworldwide.com/locations/stewart-ulva-islands
17. Ulva Island/Te Wharawhara: Places to go in Southland, accessed April 15, 2025, https://www.doc.govt.nz/parks-and-recreation/places-to-go/southland/places/stewart-island-rakiura/ulva-island-te-wharawhara/
18. Surround yourself with birdsong on Tiritiri Matangi Island - AA, accessed April 15, 2025, https://www.aa.co.nz/travel/editorial/surround-yourself-with-birdsong-on-tiritiri-matangi-island/
19. Top things to do in and around Zealandia Ecosanctuary, Wellington 2025 - Pelago, accessed April 15, 2025, https://www.pelago.com/en/wellington/zealandia-ecosanctuary-c2843

20. Tiritiri Matangi, accessed April 15, 2025, https://www.tiritirimatangi.org.nz/
21. Wildlife Sanctuary | Wellington | ZEALANDIA, accessed April 15, 2025, https://www.visitzealandia.com/
22. www.doc.govt.nz, accessed April 15, 2025, https://www.doc.govt.nz/Documents/science-and-technical/casn240a.pdf
23. Trends in bird counts 1978–2020 in a New Zealand Nothofagus forest with variable control of mammalian predators - Avian Conservation and Ecology, accessed April 15, 2025, https://ace-eco.org/vol17/iss2/art4/
24. Responses of New Zealand forest birds to management of introduced mammals - PMC, accessed April 15, 2025, https://pmc.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/articles/PMC7984369/
25. www.doc.govt.nz, accessed April 15, 2025, https://www.doc.govt.nz/documents/science-and-technical/casn301.pdf
26. Heart rate responses provide an objective evaluation of human ..., accessed April 15, 2025, https://academic.oup.com/conphys/article/1/1/cot013/362727
27. Small sight—Big might: Economic impact of bird tourism shows opportunities for rural communities and biodiversity conservation | PLOS One, accessed April 15, 2025, https://journals.plos.org/plosone/article?id=10.1371/journal.pone.0268594
28. Library:Conservation status of birds in Aotearoa New Zealand 2021 (report) - WikiAnimal, accessed April 15, 2025, https://www.wikianimal.org/en/index.php/Library:Conservation_status_of_birds_in_Aotearoa_New_Zealand_2021_(report)
29. New Zealand Birding Tour | North, South & Stewart Islands - Eagle-Eye Tours, accessed April 15, 2025, https://www.eagle-eye.com/tour/new-zealand-birding-tour/
30. Quantifying climate change impacts emphasises the importance of managing regional threats in the endangered Yellow-eyed penguin - PMC, accessed April 15, 2025, https://pmc.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/articles/PMC5436559/
31. Pūkorokoro Miranda Naturalists' Trust - Wikipedia, accessed April 15, 2025, https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/P%C5%ABkorokoro_Miranda_Naturalists%27_Trust
32. Shorebird Research at Pūkorokoro, accessed April 15, 2025, https://shorebirds.org.nz/shorebird-research-at-pukorokoro
33. Pukorokoro Miranda Shorebird Centre - Mary Ann Steggles, accessed April 15, 2025, https://maryannsteggles.com/tag/pukorokoro-miranda-shorebird-centre/
34. Pūkorokoro Miranda Shorebird Centre: Welcome to the Shorebird ..., accessed April 15, 2025, https://shorebirds.org.nz/
35. Tiritiri Matangi Island Ferry Service | Island Wildlife Sanctuary | Hauraki Gulf - Explore Group, accessed April 15, 2025, https://www.exploregroup.co.nz/auckland/tiritiri-matangi-island/
36. Research Opportunities - Tiritiri Matangi, accessed April 15, 2025, https://www.tiritirimatangi.org.nz/research-opportunities/
37. ZEALANDIA Ecosanctuary | Certification Overview - Toitū Envirocare, accessed April 15, 2025, https://www.toitu.co.nz/members/zealandia-ecosanctuary/
38. Case Study Zealandia - Cawthron eDNA Services, accessed April 15, 2025, https://edna.cawthron.org.nz/case-study-zealandia/

39. The proposed changes to DOC land – and the reaction to them – explained | The Spinoff, accessed April 15, 2025, https://thespinoff.co.nz/politics/31-03-2025/the-proposed-changes-to-doc-land-and-the-reaction-to-them-explained

40. Funding DOC facilities as the government drives for more tourists - RNZ, accessed April 15, 2025, https://www.rnz.co.nz/national/programs/ninetonoon/audio/2018973609/funding-doc-facilities-as-the-government-drives-for-more-tourists

41. DOC faces 30% shortfall in funding huts and tracks | RNZ News, accessed April 15, 2025, https://www.rnz.co.nz/news/political/541585/doc-faces-30-percent-shortfall-in-funding-huts-and-tracks

42. $30 million to support conservation tourism: Media release 17 ..., accessed April 15, 2025, https://www.doc.govt.nz/news/media-releases/2025-media-releases/$30-million-to-support-conservation-tourism/

43. wellington.govt.nz, accessed April 15, 2025, https://wellington.govt.nz/-/media/your-council/about-the-council/council-controlled-organisations/files/karori-sanctuary-trust/zealandia-quarterly-report-2023-24-q2.pdf?la=en&hash=204C202FEDB8CCE0C5167AD975B6D06B583336A4

44. Perceptions of Bird Watching's Negative Ecological Impacts: Stakeholder and Recreational Specialization Comparisons - CORE, accessed April 15, 2025, https://core.ac.uk/download/pdf/9069480.pdf

45. Participant Experiences in Wildlife Watching Tourism - Brage NMBU, accessed April 15, 2025, https://nmbu.brage.unit.no/nmbu-xmlui/bitstream/handle/11250/3055000/110510_Hilde%20Dybsand_finished.pdf?sequence=1

46. BIRD GUIDE TRAINING CURRICULUM: - ResearchGate, accessed April 15, 2025, https://www.researchgate.net/profile/Floyd-Hayes/publication/301801651_Bird_Guide_Training_Curriculum_Advanced_Level/links/5776e5d308aeb9427e2793ca/Bird-Guide-Training-Curriculum-Advanced-Level.pdf

47. Biosecurity: Our work - Department of Conservation, accessed April 15, 2025, https://www.doc.govt.nz/our-work/biosecurity/

48. The People Factor: Sending The Right Message About Kauri Dieback | LEARNZ, accessed April 15, 2025, https://www.learnz.org.nz/kauri182/bg-easy-f/the-people-factor%3A-sending-the-right-message

49. Policy for MAF's Responses to Risk Organisms – information paper - Ministry for Primary Industries, accessed April 15, 2025, https://www.mpi.govt.nz/dmsdocument/20465-Policy-for-Biosecurity-Responses-to-Risk-Organisms-information-paper

50. Biosecurity and post-arrival pathways in New Zealand: relating alien organism detections to tourism indicators - Find an Expert - The University of Melbourne, accessed April 15, 2025, https://findanexpert.unimelb.edu.au/scholarlywork/1633415-biosecurity-and-post-arrival-pathways-in-new-zealand--relating-alien-organism-detections-to-tourism-indicators

51. Biosecurity | NZ Government - Ministry for Primary Industries, accessed April 15, 2025, https://www.mpi.govt.nz/biosecurity/

52. Kauri disease: Pests and threats - Department of Conservation, accessed April 15, 2025, https://www.doc.govt.nz/nature/pests-and-threats/diseases/kauri-disease/

53. Kauri dieback - Bush and Beach, accessed April 15, 2025, https://bushandbeach.co.nz/all-tours/kauri-dieback/

54. Birdwatching, Birding & Bird Travel, Trips & Tours Birding Tour Companies - Fat Birder, accessed April 15, 2025, https://fatbirder.com/birding-tour-companies/

55. www.predatorfreerakiura.org.nz, accessed April 15, 2025, https://www.predatorfreerakiura.org.nz/about-us/project-documents/economic-appraisal-of-predator-free-stewart-island/

56. Stewart Island - Wikipedia, accessed April 15, 2025, https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Stewart_Island

57. A Regional Survey by Continent - CABI Digital Library, accessed April 15, 2025, https://www.cabidigitallibrary.org/doi/pdf/10.5555/20013051162

58. (PDF) The Value of Native Bird Conservation: A New Zealand Case ..., accessed April 15, 2025, https://www.researchgate.net/publication/46459681_The_Value_of_Native_Bird_Conservation_A_New_Zealand_Case_Study

59. The Value of New Zealand's Native Birds: A Case Study of the Maungatautari Mainland Island, accessed April 15, 2025, ftp://dlib.info/opt/ReDIF/RePEc/wai/econwp/0911_Kaval_Roskruge.doc

60. Doc rebuked for poor state of Stewart Island tracks - Otago Daily Times, accessed April 15, 2025, https://www.odt.co.nz/regions/southland/doc-rebuked-poor-state-stewart-island-tracks

61. Birding blogs as indicators of birdwatcher characteristics and trip preferences: Implications for birding destination planning and development - ResearchGate, accessed April 15, 2025, https://www.researchgate.net/publication/297713113_Birding_blogs_as_indicators_of_birdwatcher_characteristics_and_trip_preferences_Implications_for_birding_destination_planning_and_development

62. Avitourism Tribes: As Diverse as the Birds They Watch | Request PDF - ResearchGate, accessed April 15, 2025, https://www.researchgate.net/publication/347049125_Avitourism_Tribes_As_Diverse_as_the_Birds_They_Watch

63. Can avian functional traits predict cultural ecosystem services?, accessed April 15, 2025, https://karp.ucdavis.edu/wp-content/uploads/sites/310/2020/07/Echeverri_etal_2019_PeopleNature_CESTraits.pdf

64. New Zealand Threat Classification System Lists: Conservation publications, accessed April 15, 2025, https://www.doc.govt.nz/about-us/science-publications/conservation-publications/nz-threat-classification-system/

65. Regional Conservation Status of Birds in Otago, accessed April 15, 2025, https://www.orc.govt.nz/media/zz5lxiki/regional-conservation-status-of-bird-species-in-otago-2024.pdf

66. Conservation status of New Zealand birds, 2016, accessed April 15, 2025, https://www.mpi.govt.nz/dmsdocument/18845-Conservation-status-of-New-Zealand-birds-2016-NZTCS-19-Report

67. Scale and complexity implications of making New Zealand predator ..., accessed April 15, 2025, https://www.tandfonline.com/doi/full/10.1080/03036758.2019.1653940

68. The State of New Zealand's Birds 2006, accessed April 15, 2025, https://www.birdsnz.org.nz/wp-content/uploads/2023/05/2006-State-of-NZ-Birds.pdf

69. Climate change impacts on Aotearoa New Zealand: a horizon scan approach, accessed April 15, 2025, https://www.researchgate.net/publication/374867081_Climate_change_impacts_on_Aotearoa_New_Zealand_a_horizon_scan_approach
70. Wellington Region climate change extremes and implications - NIWA, accessed April 15, 2025, https://niwa.co.nz/sites/default/files/GWRC%20NIWA%20climate%20extremes%20FINAL2.pdf
71. Unaudited Draft - Wellington City Council, accessed April 15, 2025, https://wellington.govt.nz/-/media/your-council/meetings/subcommittees/council-controlled-organisation-subcommittee/2013/09/i-karori-annual-report-draft-2013.pdf?la=en&hash=CF57EDFCFB4343B7A221D1327FAFE3B8E4880ED2
72. ANNUAL REPORT 2023 - Predator Free 2050 Limited, accessed April 15, 2025, https://pf2050.co.nz/app/uploads/2023/11/PF2050-Limited-Annual-Report-2023.pdf
73. Predator Free 2050 5-year progress report - Department of Conservation, accessed April 15, 2025, https://www.doc.govt.nz/globalassets/documents/our-work/predator-free-2050/pf2050-5-year-progress-report.pdf
74. Section 1: Financial performance | Ministry of Business, Innovation & Employment, accessed April 15, 2025, https://www.mbie.govt.nz/immigration-and-tourism/tourism/tourism-funding/international-visitor-conservation-and-tourism-levy/ivl-annual-performance-reports/annual-performance-report-201920/section-1-financial-performance
75. Zealandia | EV transition | EECA - Energy Efficiency and Conservation Authority, accessed April 15, 2025, https://www.eeca.govt.nz/insights/case-studies-and-articles/fully-electric-passenger-shuttle-vans-a-kiwi-first/
76. berl.co.nz, accessed April 15, 2025, https://berl.co.nz/sites/default/files/2025-02/Value%20of%20M%C4%81ori%20Tourism%20-%20Final%20%28web%29.pdf
77. The value of Māori tourism - BERL, accessed April 15, 2025, https://www.berl.co.nz/our-mahi/value-maori-tourism
78. www.unanz.org.nz, accessed April 15, 2025, https://www.unanz.org.nz/assets/Uploads/61a924dc08/UNA-NZ-Essay-w-Chicargo.pdf
79. Māori tourism driving economic growth - Beehive.govt.nz, accessed April 15, 2025, https://www.beehive.govt.nz/release/m%C4%81ori-tourism-driving-economic-growth
80. scholarworks.umass.edu, accessed April 15, 2025, https://scholarworks.umass.edu/bitstreams/4cd7407e-3bcb-4864-9c98-eeff59916e38/download
81. (PDF) Mana-ā-kī(tanga) and Tourism in Aotearoa - ResearchGate, accessed April 15, 2025, https://www.researchgate.net/publication/277047374_Mana-a-kitanga_and_Tourism_in_Aotearoa
82. View of Mana-ā-kī(tanga) and Tourism in Aotearoa, accessed April 15, 2025, https://ojs.aut.ac.nz/te-kaharoa/index.php/tekaharoa/article/view/120/110
83. Mana-ā-kī(tanga) and Tourism in Aotearoa - Te Kaharoa, accessed April 15, 2025, https://www.tekaharoa.com/index.php/tekaharoa/article/download/120/110/

84. The manaakitanga report for Tāmaki Makaurau 2019 - Knowledge Auckland, accessed April 15, 2025, https://knowledgeauckland.org.nz/publications/the-manaakitanga-report-for-tamaki-makaurau-2019/
85. Statement of Intent (SOI) 2024 – 2028 - Tourism New Zealand, accessed April 15, 2025, https://www.tourismnewzealand.com/assets/about/publications/intent/Tourism-New-Zealand-Statement-of-Intent-2024-2028.pdf
86. New Zealand-Aotearoa Government Tourism Strategy, accessed April 15, 2025, https://www.mbie.govt.nz/immigration-and-tourism/tourism/new-zealand-aotearoa-government-tourism-strategy
87. Tourism Industry Transformation Plan | Ministry of Business, Innovation & Employment, accessed April 15, 2025, https://www.mbie.govt.nz/immigration-and-tourism/tourism/tourism-recovery/tourism-industry-transformation-plan
88. TOURISM 2050 - TIA, accessed April 15, 2025, https://www.tia.org.nz/assets/Infograph/TIA-Tourism-2050-Blueprint-for-Impact-Report_v10_low-res.pdf
89. Full article: A cultural framework for Māori tourism: values and processes of a Whānau tourism business development - Taylor & Francis Online, accessed April 15, 2025, https://www.tandfonline.com/doi/full/10.1080/03036758.2019.1656260
90. Potential impacts of climate change on terrestrial Aotearoa New Zealand birds reveal high risk for endemic species - ResearchGate, accessed April 15, 2025, https://www.researchgate.net/publication/381326157_Potential_impacts_of_climate_change_on_terrestrial_Aotearoa_New_Zealand_birds_reveal_high_risk_for_endemic_species
91. Potential effects of climate change on New Zealand's terrestrial biodiversity and policy recommendations for mitigation, adaptation and research, accessed April 15, 2025, https://www.doc.govt.nz/documents/science-and-technical/sfc312entire.pdf
92. The impacts of climate change on Australian and New Zealand flora and fauna (Chapter 4), accessed April 15, 2025, https://www.cambridge.org/core/books/austral-ark/impacts-of-climate-change-on-australian-and-new-zealand-flora-and-fauna/129ED4D157693CB2FE26AA3B758DBAD2
93. National Climate Change Risk Assessment for New Zealand - Arotakenga Tūraru mō te Huringa Āhuarangi o Āotearoa, accessed April 15, 2025, https://climateandnature.org.nz/wp-content/uploads/2020/08/national-climate-change-risk-assessment-main-report.pdf
94. Future-proofing sustainable tourism in New Zealand - PwC, accessed April 15, 2025, https://www.pwc.com/gx/en/issues/esg/esg-asia-pacific/publications-and-case-studies/future-proofing-sustainable-tourism-in-new-zealand.html
95. Tourism New Zealand 2024-2028 Strategy and FY25 Focus, accessed April 15, 2025, https://www.tourismnewzealand.com/assets/about/publications/Strategy-overviews/Tourism-New-Zealand-2024-2028-Strategy-Overview.pdf
96. Explore Sustainable Tourism: New Zealand's Eco-Friendly Travel Guide - sustainableliving.org.nz, accessed April 15, 2025, https://sustainableliving.org.nz/explore-sustainable-tourism-new-zealands-eco-friendly-travel-guide/
97. The Rise of Sustainable Tourism in New Zealand - Rezdy, accessed April 15, 2025, https://rezdy.com/blog/sustainable-tourism-in-new-zealand/
98. Leading the World in Sustainable Tourism, accessed April 15, 2025, https://sustainabletourism.nz/

99. Tourism Data And Research | Sustainability And Resilience Institute New Zealand, accessed April 15, 2025, https://sustainabilityandresilience.co.nz/project/tourism-data-and-research/

100. Forest & Bird - Wikipedia, accessed April 15, 2025, https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Forest_%26_Bird

101. Ornithology Tourism market 2025-2034 | Size,Share, Growth - MarkWide Research,

Chapter 7

Ornithological Capital in Action: Avitourism and Environmental Education at Sanctuary Mountain Maungatautari, New Zealand

A regional case study: An Ecological Fenced Island in Aotearoa

Ismar Borges de Lima
Universidade Estadual de Roraima-UERR, Brazil &
RECINATUR Foundation. Email: ismar@uerr.edu.br

Summary

Sanctuary Mountain Maungatautari (SMM) stands as Aotearoa New Zealand's largest predator-fenced “mainland island,” encompassing 3,363 ha hectares protected by a 47-kilometre fence. Since the eradication of most pest mammals was completed in 2006-2007, it has transformed into a vital stronghold for threatened native forest birds, a critical source population ('kōhanga') for national translocation programmes, a significant hub for ecological research and environmental education, and an increasingly popular international avitourism destination. This report synthesizes data from recent annual reports (2022–24), peer-reviewed scientific literature, national conservation strategy documents, and credible news sources to quantify SMM’s ecological gains and associated socio-economic benefits. Within its protective fence, endemic bird densities now rival those found on predator-free offshore islands. The North Island brown kiwi population, re-established after a century's absence, has flourished to an estimated 2,500 individuals and now supplies over 200 juveniles annually for translocation to other recovery sites. Other reintroduced species, including North Island kōkako and hihi (stitchbird), have established populations, and SMM is pioneering mainland trials for the critically endangered kākāpō. Concurrently, SMM has become a significant educational resource, hosting thousands of students annually, and a major visitor attraction, welcoming over 20,000 visitors in 2023-24. This tourism growth contributes vital revenue towards the sanctuary's substantial operational costs. These multifaceted outcomes underscore the immense value of large, community-governed, predator-fenced reserves as crucial "ornithological capital"—generating dividends for biodiversity conservation, scientific knowledge, environmental education, and sustainable nature-based tourism within the broader context of New Zealand's ambitious conservation goals.

7.1. Introduction: Maungatautari in the Context of Aotearoa's Conservation Challenge

7.1.1. The Biodiversity Crisis and the Predator Free 2050 Vision

Aotearoa New Zealand, isolated for 85 million years, is home to a unique assemblage of flora and fauna, much of which evolved in the absence of terrestrial mammalian predators.1 The arrival of humans, first Māori and later Europeans, brought with it introduced mammals – rats, possums, mustelids (stoats, ferrets, weasels), cats, and others – which have had devastating consequences for native biodiversity.1 Predation, competition, and habitat destruction have led to one of the world's highest extinction rates, with an estimated 25 million native birds killed by predators annually and around 4,000 native species currently threatened or at risk of extinction.[1]

In response to this ongoing crisis, the New Zealand government launched the Predator Free 2050 (PF2050) strategy in 2016.[6] This ambitious national goal aims to eradicate the most damaging introduced predators – specifically, all species of rats, possums, and mustelids – from the entire country by the year 2050.[1] While other predators like feral cats and hedgehogs also cause harm, the initial focus is on these key groups due to their widespread impact and existing knowledge regarding their control.[1] The vision extends beyond mere pest removal; it seeks to restore the ecological integrity of New Zealand's unique ecosystems, protect precious native species like kiwi, tuatara, and endemic frogs and lizards, secure a natural heritage for future generations, enhance the country's 'clean green' reputation for tourism, and foster community engagement in conservation.[1]

Achieving this goal requires a multi-pronged approach involving three key strategic actions: mobilising communities, iwi, landowners, and agencies to participate; innovating new tools and technologies for large-scale eradication, including research into areas like artificial intelligence for monitoring and potentially genetic control tools; and accelerating the roll-out of effective eradication methods across the landscape.[6] Progress is guided by interim goals, such as those set for 2025, which included targets for predator suppression over large areas, demonstrating eradication *without* fences on the mainland, clearing offshore islands, achieving scientific breakthroughs, fostering iwi-led projects, and developing tools suitable for diverse landscapes like farmland and cities.[6] The inclusion of a specific goal to prove eradication is possible *without* fences underscores a crucial aspect of the national strategy: while fenced sanctuaries play a vital role, the ultimate vision requires scalable solutions applicable across New Zealand's vast and varied unfenced landscapes.[6] This necessitates a higher level of planning, resourcing, and innovation beyond simply replicating fenced models nationwide.[9]

7.2. The Role of Fenced Sanctuaries ("Islands")

Predator-proof fenced sanctuaries, often termed "mainland ecological islands," represent a significant conservation innovation in New Zealand.[11] Pioneered at sites like Zealandia Ecosanctuary in Wellington in the late 1990s[4], this approach involves constructing specialized fences designed to exclude the full suite of introduced mammalian pests – accounting for their abilities to climb, jump, and burrow.[11] Within the fenced perimeter, intensive eradication efforts can achieve near-zero densities of target pests, effectively mimicking the safe conditions found on predator-free offshore islands.[11]

These secure environments provide critical refuges for native species that are highly vulnerable to predation and cannot persist even with moderate levels of pest control.[11] Species like tīeke (saddleback) and hihi (stitchbird), which require near-total absence of predators for successful breeding, can thrive within these sanctuaries.[11] Consequently, research consistently demonstrates substantially higher population densities of endemic birds inside fenced areas compared to adjacent, unfenced forests where standard pest control may occur.[13] A comprehensive study comparing three North Island sanctuaries (including Maungatautari) with paired unfenced sites found that densities of nine endemic bird species were between 0.27 and 9.0 birds per hectare higher within theenced areas.[16]

7.2.1. Sanctuary Typologies in Aotearoa New Zealand

New Zealand's sanctuary movement grew out of an urgent need to shield island-evolved birds from introduced mammals. Since the 1990 s it has matured into a nationwide, policy-backed network that now underpins both the Predator Free 2050 agenda and the country's thriving birdwatching industry. Four main sanctuary models—closed, fenced, mainland "islands," and open sanctuaries—complement one another to deliver biosecurity, ecological restoration, and visitor experiences at different scales and levels of public access. A concise review of each typology refreshes the reader and sets the analytical stage for the fenced-sanctuary case of Sanctuary Mountain Maungatautari explored later in this chapter.

A-Closed Sanctuaries

Completely predator-proof enclosures where entry is by permit only. They protect highly sensitive species or experimental restoration plots and are usually sited inside research stations or private reserves governed under the *Wildlife Act 1953* and local Conservation Management Strategies (CMS). Their scientific value is high, but their direct tourism role is limited, serving mainly as genetic or source populations for translocations.

B-Mainland "Islands"

Instead of fences, these projects rely on landscape-scale trapping, toxins, and community volunteer networks to create predator-suppressed refuges on the main islands. Examples include Rotoiti Nature Recovery Project and Trounson Kauri Park. The model tests cost-effective predator control over tens of thousands of hectares and hosts long-term ecological research as well as low-impact birding trails (Department of Conservation, n.d.).

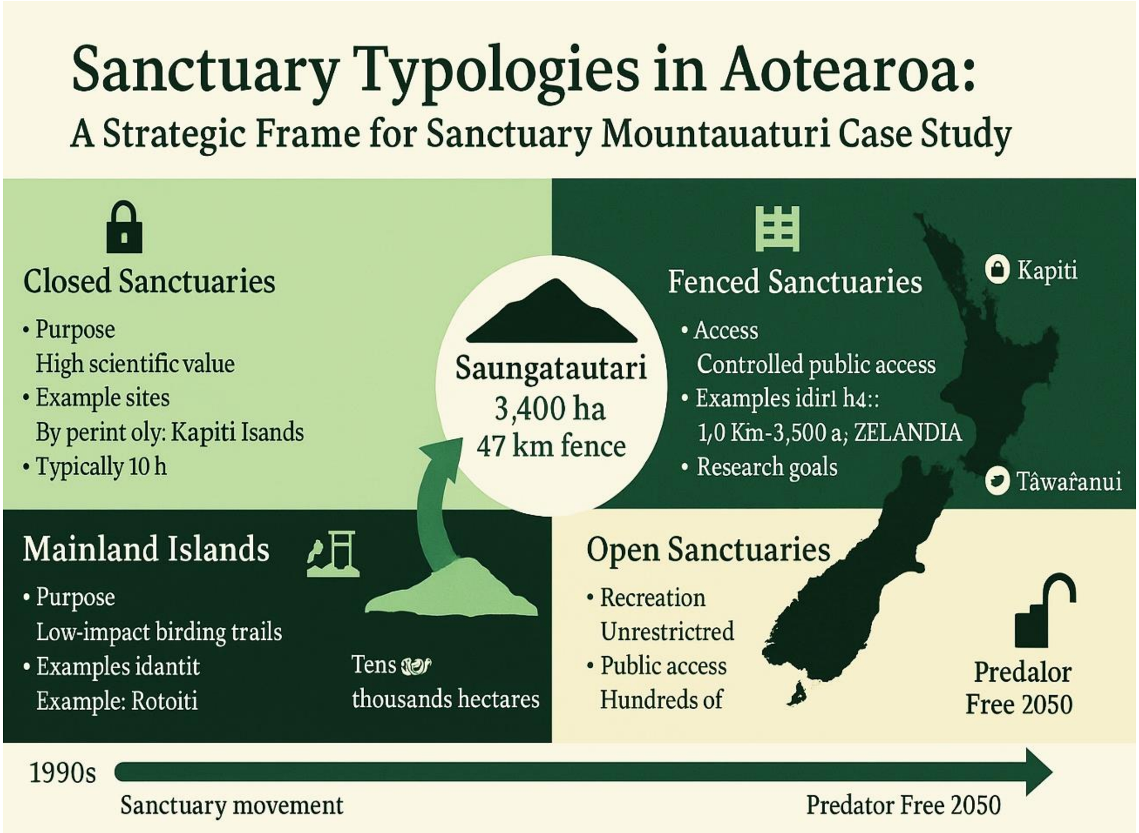
C-Open Sanctuaries

Located in regional parks such as Tāwharanui and Shakespear, these sites combine recreation, pastoral farming, and conservation. They use partial fencing (often to exclude larger pests) plus extensive community trapping to maintain near-pristine coastal forest and seabird colonies. Visitors enjoy unrestricted day walks, but "clean-boot" stations and signage promote voluntary biosecurity, weaving citizen stewardship into tourism practice (Auckland Council, n.d.).

D-Fenced Sanctuaries

Predator-proof fenced sanctuaries, often termed "mainland ecological islands," represent a significant conservation innovation in New Zealand.11 Pioneered at sites like Zealandia Ecosanctuary in Wellington in the late 1990s[4], and Sanctuary Mountain Maungatautari in Waikato demonstrate how conservation trusts, iwi, and DOC co-manage biosecurity, education, and tourism while contributing to Predator Free 2050 research goals (Maungatautari Ecological Island Trust, 2023). This approach involves constructing specialized fences designed to exclude the full suite of introduced mammalian pests – accounting for their abilities to climb, jump, and burrow.[11] Within the fenced perimeter, intensive eradication efforts can achieve near-zero densities of target pests, effectively mimicking the safe conditions found on predator-free offshore islands.[11]

These secure environments provide critical refuges for native species that are highly vulnerable to predation and cannot persist even with moderate levels of pest control.[11] Species like tīeke (saddleback) and hihi (stitchbird), which require near-total absence of predators for successful breeding, can thrive within these sanctuaries.[11] Consequently, research consistently demonstrates substantially higher population densities of endemic birds inside fenced areas compared to adjacent, unfenced forests where standard pest control may occur.[13] A comprehensive study comparing three North Island sanctuaries (including Maungatautari) with paired unfenced sites found that densities of nine endemic bird species were between 0.27 and 9.0 birds per hectare higher within the fenced areas.[16]



Before moving to the Maungatautari case, Table 7.1 consolidates the essential features of each sanctuary type—their defining characteristics, guiding policy instruments, principal management bodies, and indicative avitourism value.

Table 7.1 – Key Features of Each Sanctuary Type

Sanctuary Type	Core Biosecurity Management Features	Key Policies & Frameworks	Principal Managers/Partners	Typical Avitourism Value*
Closed	Fully fenced; access by permit; research priority	*Wildlife Act 1953*, *Conservation Act 1987*, site-specific CMS	DOC, universities, research trusts	♦ (indirect—source populations, limited visits)
Fenced	Predator-proof fence; intensive in-fence eradication; guided & self-guided trails	CMS, *Reserves Act 1977*, local iwi agreements, PF2050	Sanctuary trusts (e.g., MEIT), DOC, councils, iwi	★★★★★ (flagship visitor experiences, education)
Mainland Island	Large unfenced blocks; sustained trapping/toxins; ecosystem restoration	DOC Mainland Island Programme, PF2050, regional plans	DOC, iwi, community conservation groups	★★–★★★ (self-guided nature walks, research tourism)

Sanctuary Type	Core Biosecurity Management Features	Key Policies & Frameworks	Principal Managers/Partners	Typical Avitourism Value*
Open	Partial fencing or none; community trap lines; recreation integrated with farming/parks	*Reserves Act 1977*, regional park plans, PF2050	Local councils (e.g., Auckland Council), DOC, volunteer trusts	★★★★ (day-use birding, beach & forest recreation)

Note: *Indicative "star" scale reflects relative prominence in organized birdwatching itineraries.

7.2.2. Why this backdrop matters for Maungatautari

Maungatautari is a textbook fenced sanctuary: 3,363 ha enclosed by the world's largest predator-proof fence, jointly managed by a community trust, mana whenua, and DOC. Its success in restoring kōkako, kākā, and toutouwai populations—and in attracting ~20,000 visitors in FY 2023-24, surpassing pre-Covid levels — cannot be understood without appreciating how New Zealand's broader sanctuary typology, legislation, and Predator Free 2050 goals converge on the site (Gardner, 2024, Cambridge News). The next section delves into that convergence in detail, analyzing Maungatautari's governance, funding model, biosecurity protocols, and its role as a living laboratory for large-scale fenced restoration.

7.3. Sanctuary Mountain Maungatautari: Site Context, History, and Biosecurity

7.3.1. Geographical and Ecological Setting

Sanctuary Mountain Maungatautari encompasses the prominent 3,363 ha -hectare volcanic cone of Maungatautari, situated in the Waikato region of New Zealand's North Island, near the towns of Cambridge and Te Awamutu.26 Rising to 797 metres above sea level, the mountain is an extinct andesitic-dacitic stratovolcano, a remnant of Pleistocene volcanic activity approximately 1.8 million years ago.[4]

The sanctuary's boundary is precisely defined by the 47-kilometre pest-proof fence, a significant feat of engineering completed in 2006.[3] Constructed using Xcluder® stainless-steel mesh designed to exclude even small mammals like mice [11], the fence navigates challenging steep terrain and crosses 42 streams via specially designed water gates that permit passage for aquatic life but block pests.[28]

The predominant ecosystem within the fence is a mix of mature and regenerating native podocarp-broadleaf forest.[4] Towering emergent podocarps like rimu (*Dacrydium cupressinum*) share the canopy with broadleaf species such as tawa (*Beilschmiedia tawa*) and northern rātā (*Metrosideros robusta*).[44] Below this, the forest structure includes a diverse understorey featuring tree ferns (*Cyathea* species), shrubs like māhoe (*Melicytus ramiflorus*) and kanono (*Coprosma grandifolia*), and tangles of supplejack (*Ripogonum scandens*).[13] A notable botanical feature is a remnant stand of about 100 silver beech trees (*Lophozonia menziesii*), discovered in 2006 and believed to be a relic from the last ice age, surviving far north of the species' typical current range.[3] (Refer to Table 7.2 for detailed outline). The sanctuary also incorporates important wetland habitat within the fenced Tautari Wetland enclosure on the southern side.[31] As one of only two substantial blocks of native forest remaining in the largely agricultural landscape of the central Waikato basin [4], Maungatautari serves as an essential refuge for the region's forest-dependent biodiversity.[27]

Table 7.2 - Sanctuary Mountain Maungatautari - Key Attributes

Attribute	Detail	Key Source(s)
Area	3,363 ha forest	4
Fence Length	47 km	4
Fence Type	Xcluder® stainless-steel mesh, pest-proof barrier	3
Elevation Range	~160 – 797 m asl	4
Dominant Habitat	Mature & regenerating podocarp-broadleaf forest; wetland enclosure	4
Key Geological Feature	Extinct andesitic-dacitic stratovolcano	4
Year Trust Formed	2001	4
Year Fence Completed	2006 (August/September)	3
Year Major Pest Eradication	2006-2007	3
Current Mammal Pest Status	14 species eradicated; mice (*Mus musculus*) remain on main mountain, controlled but not eradicated	3
Governance Model Summary	Co-governance: MEIT (Mana Whenua, Landowners, Community Reps) manages operations; Land owned by Te Hapori o Maungatautari & private owners; Administered by Waipa District Council	4

7.3.2. Historical Significance: From Volcanic Origins to Restoration Vision

Maungatautari's history is layered, stretching from its volcanic genesis to its current role as a conservation icon. Its name originates from the Tainui waka migration, bestowed by the tohunga Rakataura who observed the peak seemingly floating above the mist.33 For centuries, it has been a place of deep spiritual and practical importance for Māori, initially inhabited by Ngāti Kahupungapunga and later becoming central to the rohe (territory) of Tainui descendants, including Ngāti Koroki Kahukura, Ngāti Hauā, and Raukawa, who continue their ancestral connection and mana whenua responsibilities today.29 The mountain's forests provided essential resources like food (birds) and medicinal plants (rongoā), accessed through practices guided by traditional ecological knowledge and respect for the mauri of the environment.30

While the surrounding Waikato lowlands underwent significant transformation, first through fires associated with early Polynesian settlement and later through widespread forest clearance for European agriculture from the late 19th century, Maungatautari's steep slopes largely preserved its forest cover.[4] However, the forest was not immune to the impacts of introduced species. Mammals such as possums, goats, deer, pigs, rats, mustelids, and cats established populations from the mid-1900s or earlier.[29] By the late 20th century, the ecological consequences were severe: browsing mammals like possums and goats caused significant vegetation damage, visible even today, while predators decimated native fauna.[29] Once rich in birdlife, by the year 2000, only 12 indigenous forest bird species were known to still breed on or regularly use the mountain.[4]

Recognizing its ecological value, parts of Maungatautari were formally set aside as a scenic reserve as early as 1912.[26] The impetus for the ambitious restoration project seen today emerged nearly 90 years later, championed by local farmer David Wallace, who demonstrated the feasibility of predator fencing on his own land before proposing the audacious idea of encircling the entire mountain.[26] This vision galvanized community support, leading to the formation of the Maungatautari Ecological Island Trust (MEIT) in 2001.[4] MEIT brought together the key stakeholders – mana whenua, local landowners (many of whom allowed the fence to cross their property or included their land within the sanctuary [26]), community members, Waipa District Council, and the Department of Conservation (DOC) – under a shared goal of ecological restoration.[26]

Following successful trials within two smaller fenced exclosures established in 2003-2004 to test fence construction and pest eradication techniques [3], construction of the main 47-kilometre perimeter fence commenced in July 2004.[3] The completion of this formidable barrier in August/September 2006 marked a pivotal moment, setting the stage for the eradication of pest mammals and the beginning of Maungatautari's transformation into a functioning ecological island.[3]

7.4. Introduction: Maungatautari – A Bold Experiment in Mainland Restoration

Sanctuary Mountain Maungatautari is one of the planet's largest mainland restoration efforts. A 47-km predator-proof fence now encircles the 3,363 ha -ha volcanic massif in Waikato, creating an 'ecological island' that shields native species from introduced mammals. Located in the Waikato region of the North Island, the sanctuary encompasses the entirety of Maungatautari, a 3,363 ha -hectare ancient, eroded andesitic volcanic cone. Its establishment addresses a critical challenge facing New Zealand's biodiversity: the profound and often devastating impact of introduced terrestrial mammals on ecosystems that evolved over millennia in their absence. These introductions disrupted ecological balances, leading to the decline and extinction of numerous native species.

In response, Maungatautari was conceived as a large-scale "ecological island". By encircling the mountain with a specialized fence designed to exclude mammalian pests, the project aims to create a safe haven where the impacts of these introduced species are minimized, allowing the severely modified native ecosystems to recover and flourish. This approach moves beyond traditional pest control, which often yields temporary results, towards creating a permanently protected environment. The sheer scale of the undertaking—a 47km fence enclosing 3,363 ha hectares—sets it apart from many other fenced sanctuaries, presenting unique challenges but offering unparalleled opportunities for landscape-level restoration and the recovery of entire ecological communities, not just individual species. This chapter section provides a comprehensive overview of Sanctuary Mountain

Maungatautari, examining its historical context, the ecological restoration process including fence construction and pest eradication, its significance for native flora and fauna, the extensive species reintroduction program, and the ongoing operational realities and challenges, particularly concerning financial sustainability.

Image caption: A 47-kilometre-long pest-exclusion fence encircles Sanctuary Mountain Maungatautari, creating a secure ecological haven completely isolated from the surrounding agricultural landscape of Pukeatua. This monumental barrier is one of the largest of its kind in the world, designed to keep out invasive predators such as rats, stoats, and possums, thereby allowing native flora and fauna to thrive in a restored forest environment.

Image Description: Fence in the Sanctuary Mountain Maungatautari, Waikato, North Island, New Zealand. Photo source: Te Awamutu News, "Sanctuary solutions sought," by Chris Gardner, published June 20, 2024, page 3. Location: Sanctuary Mountain Maungatautari, Waikato, North Island, New Zealand.

Image Caption: Main entrance gate for visitors – Sanctuary Mountain Maungatautari

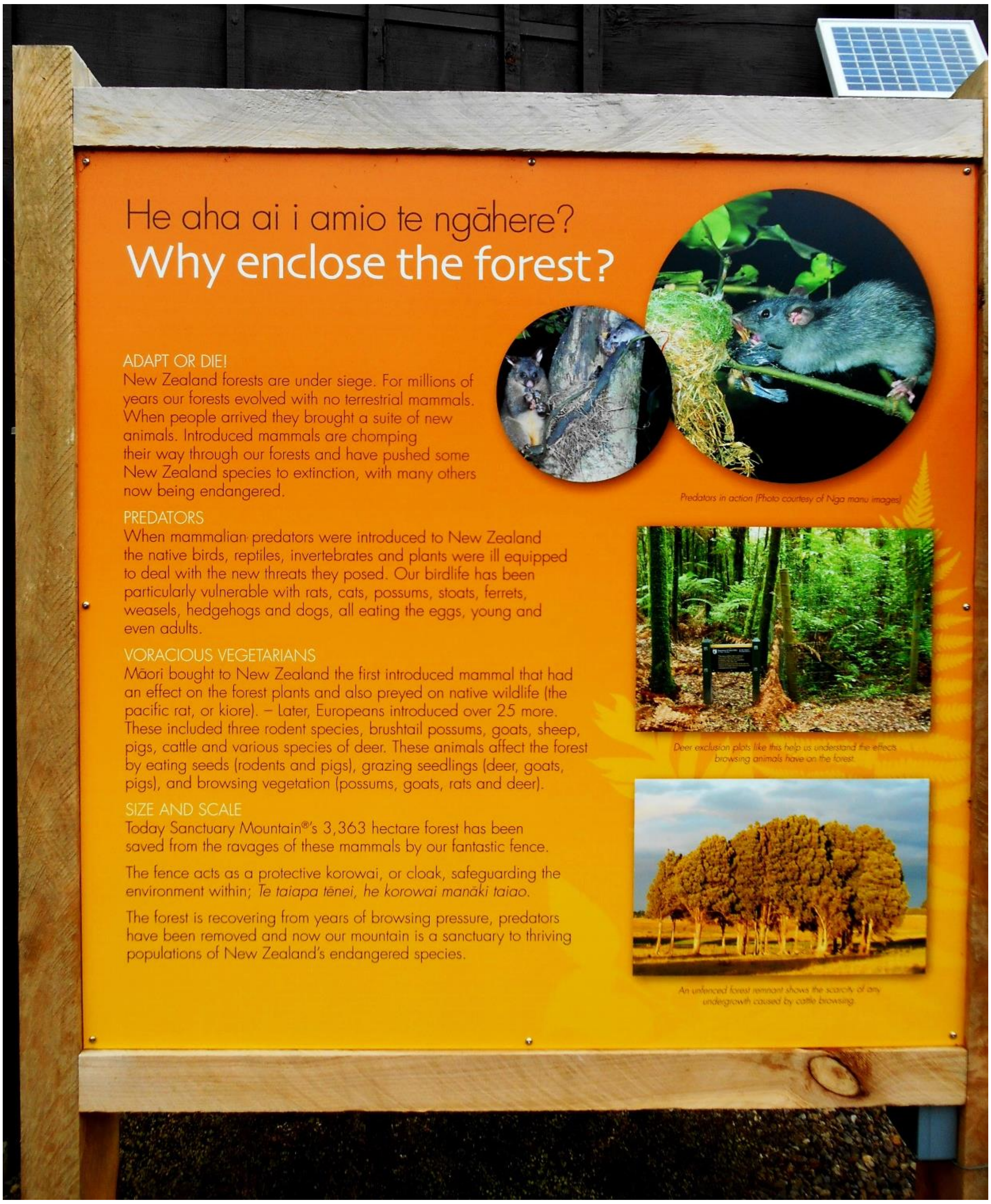
7.4.1. Genesis of a Sanctuary: Vision, Community, and Governance

The foundation for Sanctuary Mountain Maungatautari lies in the mountain's long-standing recognition as an area of ecological importance, formally designated as a reserve since 1912. The mountain itself, an ancient volcanic remnant, provides diverse terrain and habitats. However, the catalyst for the ambitious restoration project emerged much later, driven by growing community concern over the visible decline of native wildlife within the reserve.

In 2001, this concern coalesced into the formation of the Maungatautari Ecological Island Trust (MEIT). This initiative was remarkable for its community-led origins, bringing together diverse stakeholders including mana whenua (local Māori tribes with ancestral authority, notably Ngāti Koroki Kahukura, Ngāti Hauā, Raukawa, and Waikato-Tainui), local landowners, residents, and council representatives. The Trust was inspired, in part, by the pioneering efforts of local farmer David Wallace, who had earlier demonstrated the feasibility of predator-proof fencing on his own land. MEIT adopted a powerful vision: "To remove forever, introduced mammalian pests and predators from Maungatautari, and restore to the forest a healthy diversity of indigenous plants and animals not seen in our lifetime". This vision is further encapsulated in the Trust's stated purpose of being "Inspired Kaitiaki" (guardians) and its aim to "Share the Mauri and Mana of the Maunga" (the life force and prestige of the mountain).

The project area encompasses a complex mosaic of land tenures within the fence line. Approximately 2,530 hectares constitute the Maungatautari Scenic Reserve, administered by the Waipa District Council, while the remainder comprises private land holdings and Māori-owned land. This mixed ownership presented significant logistical and relational challenges from the outset. The genesis of the project, while powerfully community-driven, was described as "fraught from the beginning" , partly because crucial agreements with landowners regarding fence construction and long-term access for maintenance were not fully formalized before the fence was built. While mechanisms like subdivision entitlements were offered to recognize landowner contributions, issues surrounding guaranteed permanent access persisted, reflecting the inherent tension between collective conservation goals and individual property rights in such large-scale, collaborative ventures.

The governance structure of the Trust itself has evolved. Initially established with a board intended to represent iwi and the community, the trust deed was amended in 2012 to formalize a co-governance structure. This change reflects broader shifts in New Zealand resource management, emphasizing partnership under the Treaty of Waitangi and recognizing the fundamental role of mana whenua in kaitiakitanga. This co-governance framework is now a central element of the sanctuary's identity and operations, influencing decision-making processes, shaping relationships with partners like the Department of Conservation (DOC) and local councils, and underpinning recent funding successes.



Photograph credit: Ismar Borges de Lima, Sanctuary Maungatautari, picture taken on 21st December 2016, New Zealand.

Image Caption: Interpretive panel at Sanctuary Mountain Maungatautari (Waikato, New Zealand), titled "Why enclose the forest?", outlining the threats posed by introduced mammals, the sanctuary's 3 363-hectare predator-proof fence and the resulting forest recovery.

7.4.2. Engineering Exclusion: The 47km Pest-Proof Fence

The cornerstone of the Maungatautari restoration strategy is the 47-kilometre pest-exclusion fence, a significant feat of engineering designed to create a secure "ecological island" free from the pressures of introduced mammals. The decision to invest in fencing stemmed from the recognition that traditional pest control methods, such as poisoning and trapping campaigns, often provide only temporary relief and struggle to achieve complete eradication or prevent reinvasion over large, complex landscapes.

The fence utilizes the specialized Xcluder® design. Typically, this involves a 2-metre high structure made from fine stainless steel mesh (with apertures small enough, 6 x 22 mm, to exclude even juvenile mice) topped with a curved metal hood to prevent climbing or jumping over. The mesh also extends 30 centimetres below ground, forming a skirt to deter burrowing animals.

Construction of this ambitious barrier was a multi-stage process. Initial feasibility was tested through the creation of two smaller trial enclosures—the Northern (35 ha) and Southern (65 ha) enclosures—in 2003-2004. Following the success of these trials, construction of the main 47km perimeter fence commenced in July 2004 and was completed by September 2006. The project represented a massive undertaking, involving significant financial investment (estimated around $20 million by 2011, with $14.5 million raised through community efforts) and countless hours of volunteer labor.

Building and maintaining such a structure in Maungatautari's environment presents numerous ongoing challenges. The fence traverses extremely steep and rugged volcanic terrain, complicating both construction and maintenance. A critical design hurdle involved the 42 streams crossing the fence line. Specialized water gates had to be engineered to allow the natural flow of water and the passage of native aquatic life, such as eels and kōkopu (using features like fish tunnels), while simultaneously blocking entry for pests. The integrity of these water gates is crucial, necessitating electronic surveillance systems to monitor their closure and detect potential breaches.

Beyond the initial build, the fence demands constant vigilance and resources for its upkeep. Storms can cause significant damage, requiring rapid repairs (as occurred in July 2007). Vegetation growth must be managed to prevent it from compromising the fence structure or providing climbing access for pests. Regular inspections and maintenance are essential to address wear and tear and ensure the fence remains an effective barrier. The operational demands are significant, reflected in reports of 24/7 monitoring systems and dedicated fence maintenance teams.

Furthermore, the assumption that a single fence design could exclude all target pests indefinitely has been challenged. The recent experience with translocated kākāpō, which proved capable of climbing over the existing fence using natural features or the fence structure itself, necessitated specific modifications. Trials for a kākāpō-proof barrier began as early as 2010, with the final version installed by 2023 after considerable effort and funding. This illustrates that the fence is not a static structure but one that requires ongoing adaptation and investment to meet evolving challenges and specific species requirements. Its integrity remains the absolute foundation upon which the sanctuary's ecological restoration goals depend.

7.4.3. The Battle Against Invaders: Pest Eradication and Control

Following the completion of the main fence in 2006, MEIT embarked on a systematic program to eradicate the suite of introduced mammals residing within the 3,363 ha -hectare enclosure. The target list was extensive, reflecting the range of species impacting New Zealand's native ecosystems: ship or black rats (*Rattus rattus*), Norway or brown rats (*Rattus norvegicus*), stoats (*Mustela erminea*), feral cats (*Felis catus*), weasels (*Mustela nivalis*), ferrets (*Mustela furo*), red deer (*Cervus elaphus scoticus*), fallow deer (*Dama dama*), feral pigs (*Sus scrofa*), feral goats (*Capra hircus*), brushtail possums (*Trichosurus vulpecula*), European hedgehogs (*Erinaceus europaeus*), European rabbits (*Oryctolagus cuniculus*), brown hares (*Lepus europaeus*), and house mice (*Mus musculus*). Some of these species, like the possum, had established on the mountain relatively recently (first recorded 1958) compared to other parts of New Zealand.

A multi-faceted eradication strategy was employed. The primary tool, particularly for small mammals, was the aerial application of cereal pellets containing the anticoagulant toxin brodifacoum (specifically, PestOff Rodent Bait 20R at 20 ppm concentration). Helicopter drops were conducted, with the first major applications on the main mountain occurring in November and December 2006. The use of aerial brodifacoum required careful planning and adherence to strict protocols, including the development of a specific Code of Practice and obtaining Resource Consent, to manage risks associated with the toxin's persistence and potential non-target effects. Alongside aerial operations, ground-based methods including trapping, ground baiting, and the use of bait stations were implemented, both during the initial eradication phase and for ongoing monitoring and response to any potential incursions. Larger animals like deer, pigs, and goats were targeted through hunting efforts.

The initial eradication campaign proved highly successful for most target species. Following earlier success within the pilot enclosures (cleared by 2004), by 2007, 14 of the 15 target mammal species were considered eradicated from the main mountain block. An intensive monitoring network, comprising 270 kilometres of tracks and 2,700 monitoring tunnels, was established to verify eradication success and detect any subsequent incursions.

However, one species proved intractable: the house mouse (*Mus musculus*). Despite a third targeted aerial poison drop in September 2007, mice persisted within the sanctuary. This failure led to a significant strategic shift. Recognizing the immense difficulty and potential unsustainability of achieving and maintaining complete mouse eradication across such a large area, the Trust adopted a new policy March 2012 (Smuts-Kennedy & Parker 2013), moving from eradication to ongoing mouse *control*. Mice remain present throughout the sanctuary, sometimes reaching high densities, and are managed primarily through trapping efforts.

The persistence of mice, even in the absence of other mammalian predators and competitors, has demonstrable ecological consequences. Research conducted within Maungatautari has shown that mice alone can significantly reduce the abundance and alter the community composition of ground-dwelling invertebrates, with negative impacts observed on caterpillars, spiders, wētā, and beetles. Reductions in the mean body size of some invertebrate taxa and potential impacts on earthworm communities have also been documented. While the removal of the larger suite of mammals has undoubtedly yielded substantial biodiversity gains , the lingering presence of mice highlights the challenges in achieving full ecological restoration and may hinder the recovery of invertebrate populations or species particularly sensitive to mouse predation.

The Maungatautari experience underscores the practical limits of pest eradication technology and strategy, particularly for highly adaptable species like mice in large, complex mainland environments. It demonstrates that even within the fortress of a pest-proof fence, achieving the original vision of complete pest removal may require compromises and a commitment to long-term, resource-intensive management of remaining species. Furthermore, the ecological effects of these remnant mouse populations serve as a reminder that seemingly "minor" components of the invasive species load can still exert significant pressure on native ecosystems, influencing food webs and biodiversity outcomes in ways that require ongoing study and management.

7.4.4. Ecological Renaissance: Forest, Flora, and Fauna Discoveries

The exclusion of browsing and predatory mammals has catalyzed a remarkable ecological recovery within Sanctuary Mountain Maungatautari. One of the most visible signs is the regeneration of the forest structure. With the removal of deer, goats, and possums, the forest understory, often sparse or absent in unprotected mainland forests due to browsing pressure, is becoming thick and lush. Seedlings that previously would have been consumed are now able to establish and grow, contributing to the development of distinct understory and sub-canopy layers. This natural regeneration process is further aided by the increasing populations of native birds, which play a vital role in seed dispersal. The flora of Maungatautari exhibits considerable diversity, changing distinctly with altitude.

Beyond the general forest recovery, the sanctuary has been the site of several significant biological discoveries, highlighting its role as a refuge for unexpected biodiversity:

- Hochstetter's Frog (*Leiopelma hochstetteri*): In December 2004, a previously unknown population of this endemic frog was discovered within a rocky stream system on Maungatautari. This species, belonging to an ancient lineage, is classified nationally as 'At Risk – Declining'. It is a semi-aquatic, nocturnal frog found along shaded, moist stream margins. The initial surveys indicated a relatively small population spread over at least 120 hectares, with genetic analysis linking it most closely to a population on Mt Ranginui, some 55 km distant. The timing of the discovery, just prior to the main pest eradication phase, provided a unique opportunity to study the species' response to predator removal. Subsequent monitoring revealed a dramatic increase in frog numbers within surveyed areas, with the population quadrupling along specific transects within three years following eradication, demonstrating a strong release from predation pressure.
- Duvaucel's Gecko (*Hoplodactylus duvaucelii*): In March 2010, the discovery of a dead Duvaucel's gecko in a mouse trap provided the first confirmed record of this species on mainland New Zealand in nearly a century. This species is New Zealand's largest living gecko, a long-lived, robust, nocturnal omnivore. Classified as 'At Risk - Relict' under the NZTCS and 'Near Threatened' globally , its presence strongly suggested a remnant population had survived undetected on the mountain, likely confined to refugia prior to pest removal. Genetic analysis confirmed its status as a relic mainland population.
- Silver Beech (*Lophozonia menziesii*): The finding of approximately 100 silver beech trees in April 2006 generated considerable excitement in the botanical community. This species is primarily found in the South Island and the southern/central North Island, making its natural occurrence on Maungatautari geographically disjunct and unexpected. Researchers suggested the trees likely established during the cooler conditions of the last glacial period, with the largest individuals estimated to be several centuries old. The discovery was significant not only for the trees themselves but also for the potential host-specific fungi and insects associated with this distinct forest type.

The removal of mammalian predators has also led to significant recovery among invertebrate populations. Studies documented dramatic increases in wētā captured in pitfall traps (e.g., a 12-fold increase for Auckland tree wētā, *Hemideina thoracica*, and a 52-fold increase for other wētā species) within two years of mammal eradication in the southern enclosure. Changes in the age structure and sex ratio of captured wētā were also observed, suggesting improved survival and population dynamics. Similarly, native beetle populations in the southern enclosure showed a reported 300% increase in the first two years post-eradication, although later research indicated that persistent mouse populations continued to impact beetle communities.

These discoveries and recoveries underscore Maungatautari's profound importance not only as a site for active restoration but also as a vital reservoir of existing biodiversity. The presence of relic populations and unexpected species highlights the mountain's value in conserving unique genetic heritage that persisted despite the historical presence of pests. The rapid and positive responses observed in frogs and invertebrates following pest removal provide compelling evidence of the limiting effects of introduced mammals and the potential for ecological resilience when these pressures are alleviated.

(See Appendix A for a detailed list of native and reintroduced species recorded at Sanctuary Mountain Maungatautari, including their NZTCS conservation status).

7.4.5. Homecoming: Reintroducing Taonga Species

A core objective of the Maungatautari project, following the establishment of a relatively pest-free environment, was the systematic reintroduction of native *taonga* (treasured) species that had become locally extinct due to habitat loss and predation. This ambitious program aimed to reconstruct a more complete suite of the original biodiversity, restoring ecological interactions and enhancing the conservation status of threatened species nationally. The reintroduction program commenced in 2006 and has involved a diverse array of birds, reptiles, amphibians, fish, and invertebrates, sourced from various wild populations and captive breeding programs across New Zealand.

The sequence and scale of these translocations demonstrate a long-term commitment to ecological restoration (see Table 7.3).

Table 7.3 - Selected Species Reintroductions at Sanctuary Mountain Maungatautari

Year(s)	Species	Common Name(s)	Number Released (Founders)	Source Population(s) (if known)	NZTCS Status (at time of writing)	Notes
2005-Present	*Apteryx mantelli* (Western taxon)	North Island Brown Kiwi	320+ (founders by 2021), 333+ (kōhanga chicks)	Various North Island iwi lands, DOC, conservation partners	Not Threatened	First hatching 2007. Kōhanga site since 2017. Pop. ~2500. Source site for other translocations.
2006	*Porphyrio hochstetteri*	South Island Takahē	2 (initial pair)	DOC Recovery Program	Nationally Vulnerable	Critically Endangered at time of release. Two breeding pairs established. 27+ chicks contributed to national pop. by end 2024.

2007	*Nestor meridionalis septentrionalis*	North Island Kākā	7 (initial release)	Wild birds attracted to enclosure prior	At Risk - Recovering	Breeding successfully, flocks reported.
2007	*Galaxias argenteus*	Giant Kōkopu	Unspecified	Unknown	At Risk - Declining	Reintroduced to Tautari Wetland.
2007	*Galaxias fasciatus*	Banded Kōkopu	Unspecified	Unknown	Not Threatened	Reintroduced to Tautari Wetland.
2007	*Galaxias postvectis*	Shortjaw Kōkopu	Unspecified	Unknown	Threatened - Nationally Vulnerable	Reintroduced to Tautari Wetland.
2009	*Mohoua albicilla*	Whitehead (Pōpokotea)	60	Tiritiri Matangi Is / Tawharanui?	Not Threatened	Now widespread in sanctuary.
2009-2011	*Notiomystis cincta*	Hihi (Stitchbird)	155 - over 3 translocations	Tiritiri Matangi Is (135), Little Barrier Is / Hauturu (20)	Threatened - Nationally Vulnerable	Conservation Dependent; likely requires ongoing supplementary feeding.
2011-2012	*Petroica longipes*	North Island Robin	80 (40 + 40)	Pureora Forest	Not Threatened	Breeding confirmed.
2012-2013	*Deinacrida mahoenui*	Mahoenui Giant Wētā	200 (100 + 100)	Mahoenui Scientific Reserve / Captive Breeding (Ōtorohanga?)	Threatened - Nationally Critical	One of the world's largest insects.
2012	*Sphenodon punctatus*	Tuatara	50	Stephens Island / Takapourewa	At Risk - Relict	Housed in purpose-built tuatarium in Tautari Wetland.
2013	*Philesturnus rufusater*	North Island Saddleback	40	Tiritiri Matangi Island	At Risk - Recovering	Breeding confirmed.
2015	*Callaeas wilsoni*	North Island Kōkako	40	Pureora Forest	At Risk - Recovering	Population contributing to national recovery; often heard at higher elevations.

2021	*Acanthisitta chloris*	Rifleman (Tītipounamu)	80	Pirongia Forest Park, Pureora Forest	Not Threatened	New Zealand's smallest endemic bird.
2023	*Strigops habroptilus*	Kākāpō	10 (4 + 6)	Whenua Hou, Anchor Is, Chalky Is, Hauturu	Threatened - Nationally Critical	First time on mainland in ~40 years. Fence modifications required. Escapes occurred; 7 of 10 returned to islands by mid-2024.

This extensive list highlights Maungatautari's crucial role within New Zealand's national conservation network. It functions not only as a receiving site, providing a secure mainland habitat for some of the country's most critically endangered species like kākāpō, takahē, and hihi, but increasingly as a source population for others. The thriving kiwi population, now estimated at around 2,500 individuals, has allowed Maungatautari to become a designated *kōhanga kiwi* (kiwi nursery) site and contribute significantly to establishing or bolstering kiwi populations elsewhere, such as the major translocation of 222 birds in 2024.

The program also underscores the interconnectedness of New Zealand's conservation sites. Founder individuals for Maungatautari's populations were sourced from numerous other locations, including offshore islands like Tiritiri Matangi, Little Barrier/Hauturu, and Stephens Island/Takapourewa, as well as mainland reserves like Pureora Forest. This network facilitates genetic management and spreads the risk for endangered species across multiple secure locations.

However, the reintroduction process is not without challenges and uncertainties, demanding an adaptive management approach. The kākāpō translocation provides a stark example. Despite extensive planning and fence modifications specifically designed to contain these notoriously adept climbers , several individuals managed to escape shortly after release, necessitating intensive recapture efforts and the eventual return of most birds to their source islands. This experience demonstrates that reintroductions, particularly for species with complex behaviors or specific habitat requirements, are often experimental processes requiring ongoing monitoring, evaluation, and flexibility to adjust strategies based on outcomes.

7.5. Ornithological Capital and Scientific Value: A Living Laboratory and Biological Bank

7.5.1 The Kōhanga Kiwi Powerhouse

Sanctuary Mountain Maungatautari has rapidly evolved into a cornerstone of North Island brown kiwi recovery, functioning as a highly productive "kōhanga" – a nursery or source site – for the western genetic lineage of the species.37 This nationally significant program is managed in close partnership between MEIT, mana whenua Ngāti Koroki Kahukura, and the national charity Save the Kiwi.40

The key to the kōhanga's success lies in the sanctuary's secure environment, which allows the kiwi population, estimated at around 2,500 individuals [37], to breed at a rate far exceeding what is possible in areas with predators like stoats, which typically kill 95% of kiwi chicks before they reach a survivable size.[40] This high productivity generates a substantial annual surplus of young kiwi.[39]

Through a carefully managed process, these surplus juvenile and sub-adult kiwi are captured within the 3,363 ha -hectare sanctuary, undergo thorough health checks (including blood and faecal tests for disease screening [69]), and are then translocated to establish new kiwi populations or supplement existing ones in other predator-managed landscapes across the North Island.[39] The scale of this operation is unprecedented. Following an initial transfer of 13 birds to Waimarino in 2019, the numbers increased dramatically: 111 kiwi were moved in the autumn of 2023 to the Tongariro Forest Kiwi Sanctuary (managed by DOC and iwi partners) and the Capital Kiwi project area near Wellington; 222 kiwi followed in 2024 to Tongariro, Capital Kiwi, and Taranaki Mounga; and a further 232 were translocated in 2025 to the same three destinations.[21] In just the two years 2023-2024, over 333 kiwi originating from Maungatautari were released into new homes.[40]

This makes SMM currently responsible for the largest single kiwi translocation program in New Zealand.[41] The ability to sustainably 'harvest' such large numbers of birds year after year, without negatively impacting the source population's density or long-term viability, provides powerful validation of the kōhanga concept.[40] It represents a remarkable return on the initial investment required to establish and maintain the sanctuary, transforming a protected population into a dynamic engine driving national kiwi recovery. The program itself is a complex logistical undertaking, requiring seamless collaboration between SMM's staff and volunteers, Save the Kiwi experts, DOC, the managers and communities at the recipient sites, and crucially, mana whenua at both the source (Ngāti Koroki Kahukura) and destination locations, ensuring cultural protocols and values (such as the tono process) are respected throughout.[39] The success of this program has also created a unique opportunity for public engagement, with the recent introduction of "Kiwi Experience" tours allowing visitors to witness the health check process and see kiwi up close, with proceeds directly supporting the conservation work.[56] This directly links the tangible conservation output back to the visitor economy, creating a positive feedback loop.

7.5.2. A Hub for Conservation Science

Beyond its role in species recovery, Sanctuary Mountain Maungatautari serves as an invaluable "living laboratory" for ecological research.[13] Its large scale, the controlled environment resulting from the exclusion of most mammalian pests, its well-documented history, and its relative accessibility make it an ideal site for investigating fundamental questions in ecology and conservation science. More than 60 peer-reviewed scientific publications are reported to have utilized research conducted at or involving SMM.

The research undertaken is diverse, addressing critical knowledge gaps relevant to conservation management in New Zealand and internationally:

- **Avian Ecology and Predator Impacts**: Numerous studies have focused on the demography of reintroduced bird populations, examining factors influencing survival, breeding success, dispersal patterns, and population growth rates for species like kiwi [39], hihi [45], and kōkako.[61] Comparing populations inside the fence with those in nearby unfenced areas (like Te Tapui Scenic Reserve or other sites) allows researchers to isolate and quantify the impacts of mammalian predators on native bird populations and nesting success.[16]

- **Biodiversity Monitoring Techniques**: SMM has been a site for advancing monitoring methodologies. Research comparing the effectiveness and biases of traditional human-observer point counts with data collected by Autonomous Recording Units (ARUs) has helped refine techniques for large-scale acoustic monitoring of bird populations.[16] Using paired sampling (where human counts and ARU recordings happen simultaneously) allows for the calculation of correction factors (offsets) to calibrate ARU data, potentially enabling more efficient and extensive monitoring coverage, potentially integrated with citizen science efforts.[74] SMM was one of the sites used in foundational work demonstrating the conservation benefits of fenced sanctuaries using robust density estimation methods.[16]
- **Invertebrate Community Responses**: Researchers have utilized SMM's unique environment (particularly comparing the mouse-free southern enclosure with the main mountain area where mice persist) to study how invertebrate communities respond to the removal of different guilds of mammalian predators.[44] These studies have revealed significant increases in the abundance and size of many native invertebrates (like beetles, wētā, spiders, and earthworms) after the removal of rats, possums, and other larger mammals, but also documented the negative impacts that high densities of mice alone can have on these communities.[20]
- **Ecosystem Function Restoration**: Research has extended beyond individual species to examine the restoration of ecological processes. Studies have documented increased rates of pollination and seed dispersal by native birds within the sanctuary compared to outside, linked directly to the higher densities of frugivorous birds like tūī and bellbirds.[13] Other research has investigated seedling survival and fungal ecology in the low-predator environment.[20]
- **Biosecurity and Fence Science**: The operational challenges of maintaining a large fenced sanctuary provide practical research opportunities. Studies inform best practices for fence design, ongoing maintenance strategies, effective pest detection methods (e.g., optimal use of tracking tunnels, bait stations, cameras), and rapid response protocols for inevitable incursions.[19] The persistent mouse population has spurred research into mouse ecology in these environments and potential control strategies.[19]
- **Translocation Ecology**: SMM serves as a testing ground for improving translocation success. Research has evaluated factors like the effects of different release strategies (e.g., 'soft' vs 'hard' release for hihi [60]), the importance of genetic management when sourcing founder individuals [49], and the physiological and demographic responses of species moved to novel environments (e.g., tuatara translocated to warmer climates [66]).

7.5.3. Sustaining the Sanctuary: Operations, Funding, and Challenges

The long-term success of Sanctuary Mountain Maungatautari depends not only on ecological factors but also on robust operational management and sustainable funding. The sanctuary is managed by the Maungatautari Ecological Island Trust (MEIT), operating under a co-governance partnership with mana whenua. Day-to-day operations rely on a combination of paid staff and a significant contribution from volunteers, with nearly 200 volunteers reported as active in early 2025, involved in crucial tasks like pest monitoring and fence checks.

Historically, the sanctuary's funding involved a partnership between central government (DOC), Waikato Regional Council, and Waipa District Council, with each reportedly contributing around $300,000 annually in the early 2010s. However, this model evolved, and by 2013, MEIT increasingly needed to seek contestable funding [Provided Herald article]. A significant shift occurred around 2022 with the cessation of baseline operational funding from DOC [Provided Herald article]. While project-specific funding continued, including a substantial grant ($589,000) from the government's temporary Jobs for Nature program which supported operational costs like salaries and fence maintenance, the end of this program exacerbated financial pressures [Provided Herald article].

These funding changes culminated in a widely reported financial crisis in mid-2024. With daily operating costs cited at $5,000 and facing a shortfall of $250,000 for the year, the Trust warned of potential closure by September 2024 if a solution was not found. This news prompted expressions of deep concern from conservation partners like Save the Kiwi and regional tourism bodies, who highlighted the ecological and economic value of the sanctuary and described potential closure as a "travesty" [Provided Herald article]. Fundraising efforts, including an annual gala, were intensified.

Following advocacy and a visit by the Minister for Conservation [Provided Herald article], the government announced a significant funding injection in February 2025: $750,000 over three years, sourced from the International Visitor Conservation and Tourism Levy (IVL). This funding was described by sanctuary management as "crucial" and providing essential "breathing space," helping to bridge the immediate fiscal gap. Continued support from Waikato Regional Council ($1.47 million committed over four years until 2026) also provides a degree of stability.

Despite this welcome relief, the Trust acknowledges the need for long-term financial self-sufficiency. Strategies being explored include diversifying revenue streams by enhancing visitor experiences, developing cultural tourism offerings in partnership with mana whenua, and leveraging the sanctuary's value for research collaborations. The potential for visitor revenue to contribute more significantly to operational costs has been considered for many years, drawing comparisons to other sanctuaries like Zealandia, although balancing visitor access with conservation priorities remains a key consideration.

The sanctuary's financial journey vividly illustrates the vulnerability inherent in funding large-scale, long-term conservation infrastructure primarily through short-term grants and fluctuating government budget allocations. The shift away from consistent baseline operational funding towards contestable, project-based sources created instability that ultimately threatened the sanctuary's existence [Provided Herald article]. This underscores a systemic challenge for such projects: securing reliable, ongoing funding commensurate with the perpetual demands of maintaining complex infrastructure like the pest-proof fence and conducting essential monitoring. The potential closure crisis highlighted the direct link between financial health and ecological security; without consistent investment in core operations, decades of conservation effort and ecological gains are placed at risk. The recent IVL funding acknowledges the connection between tourism and conservation, offering a potential pathway towards greater sustainability, but the fundamental challenge of securing permanent operational funding remains.

7.6. The Maunga Experience: Visitor Engagement and Education

While fundamentally a conservation initiative, Sanctuary Mountain Maungatautari actively engages the public through visitor experiences and educational programs, recognizing the importance of public support and connection for its long-term mission. Access for visitors is primarily focused on the Southern Enclosure, known in Māori as Te Tūī a Tāne ('The weaving together of all things Tāne', the forest god), located near Pukeatua, approximately a 30-40 minute drive from Cambridge. This area hosts the main Visitor Centre and associated facilities [Provided text].

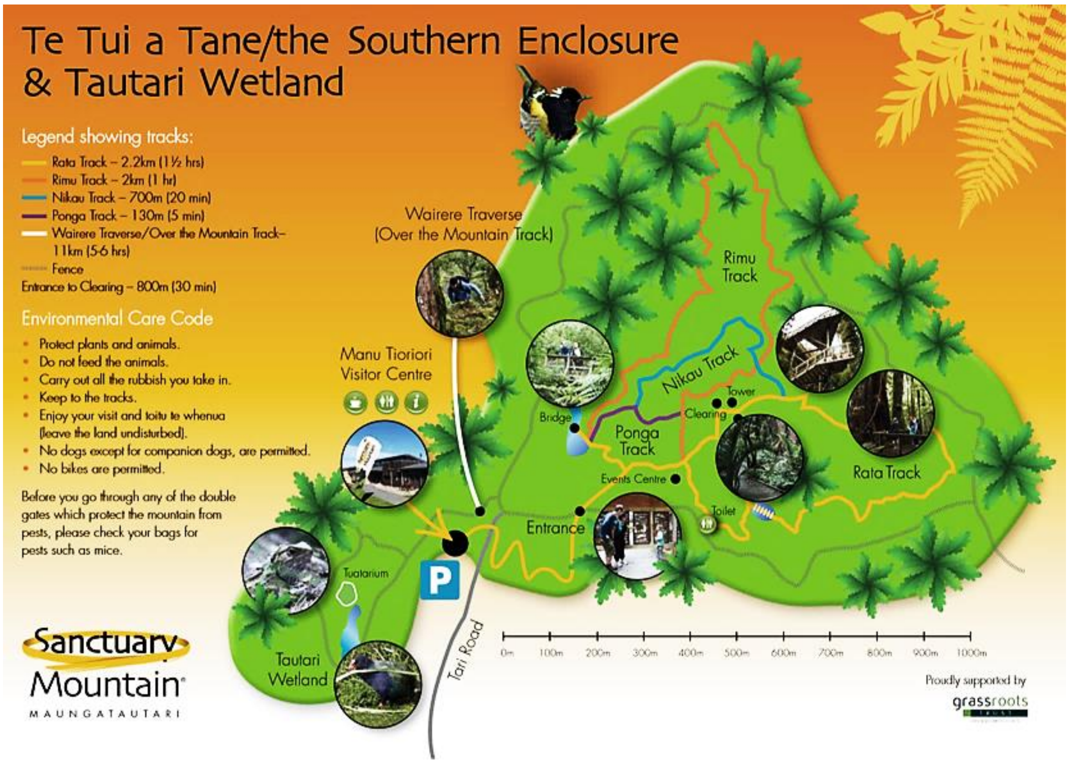
Visitors can explore Te Tūī a Tāne independently using a 'Sanctuary Explorer pass', which grants access to over five kilometres of well-maintained walking tracks [Provided text]. These trails wind through the regenerating forest, offering opportunities to observe native birds, identify plants, check for inhabitants in purpose-built 'wētā motels', and potentially spot kākā in designated clearing areas [Provided text]. A key feature within this enclosure is the 16-metre high viewing tower, constructed by volunteers, which allows visitors a unique perspective from within the forest canopy, illustrating how the forest structure changes at different heights.

Guided tours are promoted as the optimal way to gain a deeper understanding of the sanctuary's history, ecological significance, and the stories behind the restoration project and its endangered residents [Provided text]. Experienced guides lead informative walks, potentially allowing sightings of species like tuatara, kākā, and takahē [Provided text]. Specialized night tours offer a different perspective, providing chances to see glowworms (*Arachnocampa luminosa*), encounter nocturnal invertebrates like wētā, and listen for the calls of kiwi and ruru (morepork, *Ninox novaeseelandiae*). Access to certain sensitive areas, such as the Tautari Wetland enclosure where one of the takahē families resides, is restricted to guided tours only, demonstrating a strategy to manage visitor impact. The Tautari Wetland, gifted to the Trust in 2005 and subsequently fenced, also houses the purpose-built tuatarium and populations of reintroduced kōkopu and resident longfin eels (*Anguilla dieffenbachii*).

Other access points exist but offer fewer facilities. The Northern Enclosure, one of the original trial areas, is managed as a public reserve with year-round open access, featuring bush walks through steeper mountain terrain. The Wairere Traverse track provides a more challenging option for experienced hikers, taking approximately five hours to cross the mountain from north to south [Provided text].

Education is an explicit component of the sanctuary's activities. Initiatives include participation in the Department of Conservation's 'Kiwi Guardians' program, designed to engage children with nature [Provided text], and specific events like a 'Coding Challenge' aimed at raising conservation awareness through technology. The sanctuary serves as a powerful living classroom and a tangible example of large-scale ecological restoration in action. The visitor program reflects a deliberate effort to balance public access and engagement with the primary goal of conservation. By concentrating facilities and self-guided access in the Southern Enclosure and restricting access to more sensitive areas like the takahē breeding site , the Trust manages potential disturbance. The emphasis on guided tours and immersive experiences like night walks and the canopy tower aims to foster a deeper connection and understanding among visitors, reinforcing the message that their visit directly supports the non-profit Trust's vital conservation work. This experiential approach is crucial for building public advocacy and potentially contributing to the sanctuary's financial sustainability through tourism revenue.

Image title: Cubs trek into Maungatautari's interior bush. Source/Credit: Photo by Ryan's Daughter Photography. Published in the article *Sanctuary Mountain Maungatautari precious to Te Awamutu Cub Scouts* by Dean Taylor, Waikato Herald, 7 October 2024. Available at: https://www.nzherald.co.nz/waikato-news/news/sanctuary-mountain-maungatautari-precious-to-te-awamutu-cub-scouts/T4I5MYWTYREUTPGEEX2XA7HL74/



Map Title - Te Tui a Tāne / the Southern Enclosure & Tautari Wetland Sanctuary Mountain Maungatautari – it is a fully fenced mainland ecological sanctuary in

New Zealand, offering immersive walking tracks through restored native forest and wetland habitats.

7.6.1. Map Overview:

This detailed visitor map highlights the trail network within the Southern Enclosure of Maungatautari (see details in Table 7.4), showcasing a predator-free environment rich in biodiversity, accessible from the Manu Tīoriori Visitor Centre. The enclosure includes native bush walks, ecological education sites, and the adjacent Tautari Wetland—a restored habitat for endangered species.

Table 7.4 - Walking Tracks (Legend Summary)

Track Name	Color	Distance	Estimated Time	Notes
Rata Track	Orange	2.2 km	1.5 hrs	Loops around the southern section
Rimu Track	Green	2.0 km	1 hr	Northern forest path
Nikau Track	Blue	700 m	20 min	Connects central forest features
Ponga Track	Red	130 m	5 min	Short forest loop near the entrance
Wairere Traverse	Yellow	11 km	5–6 hrs	Over-the-mountain full-day hike
Entrance to Clearing	Dashed	800 m	30 min	Access path to interior forest

Key Features on the Map:

- Manu Tīoriori Visitor Centre – Entry point with educational displays, guides, and amenities.
- Tautari Wetland – A protected habitat supporting rare wetland species.
- Events Centre – Location for group visits and conservation programs.
- Tuatarium – A special enclosure for observing tuatara, New Zealand's endemic reptile.
- Double Entry Gates – Biosecurity gates to prevent pests from entering the sanctuary.
- Bridge, Clearing, Tower – Forest infrastructure for enhanced viewing and access.

Environmental Care Code:

- Protect plants and wildlife.
- Do not feed animals.
- Take out all your rubbish.
- Stay on marked tracks.
- Leave the forest undisturbed.
- No bikes or pets allowed (except service dogs).
- Check your bags for pests (e.g., mice) before entering.

Support & Conservation:

This sanctuary is proudly supported by Grassroots Trust and is a model of ecological restoration, reconnecting people with Aotearoa's unique flora and fauna through immersive and accessible forest experiences.

7.6.2. The Power of Volunteers: Citizen Science in Action

The operational success and community connection of Sanctuary Mountain Maungatautari are inextricably linked to the dedication of its large volunteer workforce.22 Volunteers contribute thousands of hours annually, providing essential support across a wide range of activities, from biosecurity monitoring and habitat maintenance to species care and visitor engagement.

In the 2023-24 financial year, 224 registered volunteers collectively contributed a remarkable 14,899 hours of their time and skills [18] (an increase from the 177 volunteers noted in 2022 [65]). This immense contribution is equivalent to the work of approximately seven to eight full-time employees, representing a vital input of labour and expertise that allows SMM to undertake tasks that would otherwise be financially challenging. This reliance on volunteers is characteristic of many community-based conservation projects in New Zealand [77], fostering a strong sense of community ownership and connection to the place.[32]

Volunteer activities directly support SMM's core conservation and operational objectives:

- **Biosecurity Monitoring**: A major role involves checking the extensive network of pest detection devices. This includes placing, retrieving, and interpreting results from approximately 15,000 tracking cards annually, checking and maintaining bait stations and trap lines along the fence and internal tracks.[18] Volunteers may also assist with deploying and reviewing footage from the growing network of trail cameras used for surveillance.[53]
- **Infrastructure and Habitat Maintenance**: Volunteers are heavily involved in maintaining the vast network of tracks within the sanctuary, particularly the critical perimeter track needed for 24/7 fence access.[22] Other tasks include controlling invasive weeds, participating in planting days for habitat restoration [18], and assisting with fence checks and minor repairs.[22]
- **Species Management Support**: Volunteers contribute to the care of animals, for example, by assisting with duties in the aviary when birds are being held for translocation or recovery [21], or working in the native plant nursery to propagate plants for restoration efforts.[21]
- **Visitor Engagement**: Many volunteers share their passion and knowledge by serving as visitor hosts at the centre or leading guided tours for the public.[21]

This deep involvement of volunteers represents a powerful form of citizen science.[77] Community members are not just passive supporters; they are active participants in collecting crucial monitoring data (e.g., pest tracking results) and undertaking hands-on conservation management tasks.[77] The data gathered by volunteers, such as the presence or absence of pest footprints in tracking tunnels, directly informs the sanctuary's biosecurity status assessments and triggers management responses when needed.[78] This integration of volunteer effort and data collection into core operational decision-making is fundamental to the sanctuary's ability to function effectively and maintain its ecological integrity. While relying heavily on volunteers brings immense benefits in terms of cost-effectiveness and community engagement, it also necessitates ongoing effort in recruitment, training, coordination, and retention to ensure the continuity of these vital contributions.[22]

During the 2023–24 financial year Sanctuary Mountain Maungatautari recorded a series of striking accomplishments (Gardner, 2024):

- More than **20 000 people** passed through the visitor gates, a reflection of the maunga's growing profile as a wildlife-tourism destination.
- **Ten kākāpō**—the first of their species to live on the mainland in decades—were safely released inside the fenced forest.
- The thriving kōhanga population enabled the **translocation of 222 western brown kiwi** to other recovery sites, each bird completing a comprehensive health assessment before departure.
- Restoration teams added ecological resilience by **planting over 400 trees** near the visitor centre and wetland complex, together with **130 native sedges and rushes** in riparian zones.
- Cultural and learning activities expanded: **95 participants** joined rongoā rākau (traditional Māori plant medicine) walks, while the education programme engaged **4 207 school learners**.
- Community support remained pivotal—volunteers clocked **14 899 hours**, processed roughly **15 000 tracking cards** for pest surveillance, and responded with staff to **108 fence-breach alerts**.
- Commercial performance followed suit: retail takings in the visitor centre climbed **38 percent**, and the **"Mauri of the Maunga" gala and auction generated NZ $75 000** to bolster conservation projects.

These metrics underscore the breadth of the sanctuary's "mahi"—from species recovery and habitat restoration to education, cultural engagement and revenue generation—all of which feed back into the ongoing protection of this 3 363-hectare mainland ecological island.

7.7. Avitourism and Socio-Economic Contributions: Sustainable Futures

7.7.1 The Visitor Experience: Trends and Attractions

Sanctuary Mountain Maungatautari has rapidly emerged as a significant nature-based tourism destination, attracting a growing number of domestic and international visitors drawn to the unique experience of an accessible, predator-free ancient forest teeming with native wildlife.36 Visitor numbers have shown remarkable growth, particularly following the easing of COVID-19 travel restrictions. Totals climbed from 8,461 in the 2021-22 financial year to 15,452 in 2022-23, and surged further to 20,145 in 2023-24.18 This represents a dramatic 138% increase over just two years [Outline].

The composition of visitors has also shifted, reflecting the recovery of international tourism to New Zealand. The international visitor share rose from 12% in 2021-22 to approximately 27-30% in 2023-24.[21] This indicates SMM's growing appeal to overseas tourists seeking authentic wildlife encounters and contributing to its recognition as a world-class conservation project.[29]

The core visitor experience revolves around exploring the sanctuary's unique environment. Well-maintained walking tracks cater to various fitness levels, allowing visitors to wander through towering podocarp-broadleaf forest, listen to the restored chorus of native birdsong – a sound largely lost from much of the mainland – and appreciate the lush undergrowth recovering in the absence of browsing mammals.[41] Popular options accessible from the main visitor centre include walks within the Southern Enclosure and the Tautari Wetlands boardwalk.[31]

To enhance understanding and engagement, SMM offers guided tours led by knowledgeable staff and volunteers, providing deeper insights into the forest ecology, conservation efforts, and cultural significance of the maunga.[50] A key architectural feature is the 16-metre high canopy viewing tower located within the Southern Enclosure, offering visitors a different perspective on the forest structure and potential bird sightings.[31]

Beyond standard daytime visits, SMM offers specialised experiences. Night tours provide a rare opportunity to encounter nocturnal wildlife, including native glow worms (*Arachnocampa luminosa*), listen for kiwi calls, and enjoy stargazing away from city lights. A recent innovation, driven by the success of the kōhanga kiwi program, is the limited-season "Kiwi Experience" tour. This allows small groups of visitors the extraordinary chance to witness kiwi undergoing health checks during the translocation season, providing an intimate look at conservation in action.[56] Visitor satisfaction with these experiences is reported to be high [85], contributing to SMM's reputation as one of New Zealand's top birding destinations [Outline]. While specific data on visitor seasonality is limited in the available sources, peak periods likely coincide with summer months and school holidays, aligning with broader tourism patterns in the region.[76] The demographics appear diverse, attracting families, school groups, independent travellers (both domestic and international), and special interest nature tourists.[76]

7.7.2. Economic Ripples: Local and Regional Impact

The growing popularity of Sanctuary Mountain Maungatautari translates into tangible economic activity, both for the sanctuary itself and the surrounding Waikato region. Revenue generated directly by the Trust from visitor-related activities has increased substantially. Income from goods and services, encompassing entry fees, guided tours, retail sales in the visitor centre, and potentially venue hire, reached $642,821 in the 2022-23 financial year, an impressive 82% increase from the previous year's $353,608.18 This growth continued into 2023-24, with total visitor centre income rising by 36% compared to 2022-23, driven by increased visitation, tour participation (up 21% in number, 26% in income), and strong retail performance (up 38% overall).21

This economic activity extends beyond the sanctuary gates, contributing to the wider regional economy of the Waikato, where tourism is a significant industry.[86] While specific economic impact studies quantifying SMM's precise contribution (e.g., multiplier effects, jobs supported in related sectors) were not available in the reviewed sources, it is reasonable to infer that the influx of over 20,000 visitors annually generates downstream benefits for local businesses in nearby towns like Cambridge, Te Awamutu, and Putāruru. This likely includes spending on accommodation, food and beverage, fuel, and other goods and services by visitors travelling to and staying in the area specifically to experience the sanctuary.[26] Experiences at other major sanctuaries like Zealandia in Wellington have shown that such attractions draw significant numbers of out-of-region and international visitors who contribute substantially to the local economy.[83]

The sanctuary itself is a direct employer, providing jobs for rangers, visitor centre staff, educators, and administrative personnel.[22] Although staffing levels experienced cuts in 2023-24 due to funding constraints, with seven ranger positions disestablished [18], the operation still requires a core paid workforce. Additionally, SMM engages external contractors for specialized work, such as heavy vegetation management along the fence line.[22] Furthermore, the substantial contribution of volunteer hours (nearly 15,000 in 2023-24 [21]) represents significant social capital and provides indirect economic value by enabling a level of operational activity that would otherwise require considerably higher expenditure on wages.[75] Research conducted in partnership with the Waikato Impact Hub indicated that SMM volunteers reported a 20% higher sense of wellbeing compared to non-volunteers, suggesting additional social benefits linked to participation.[27]

7.7.3 Funding Conservation through Tourism — Revised Narrative

Although Sanctuary Mountain Maungatautari (SMM) has enjoyed impressive growth in visitation and on-site spending, the financial statements for the year ending 30 June 2024 still show an operating deficit of NZ $547 976 (Gardner, 2024). Roughly NZ $300 000 of that shortfall is non-cash depreciation, but the gap also reflects high fixed costs—about NZ $5 000 a day—and a steep drop in external grants and donations from the previous year (MEIT, 2024a) (Refer to Diagram 7.1 for figures comparison). In short, tourism success on its own does not yet offset the full cost of safeguarding a 47-km predator fence, round-the-clock biosecurity, and extensive species-management work.

7.7.4. Tourism revenues as conservation fuel

SMM's model hinges on recycling visitor income directly into conservation tasks (MEIT, 2024a). **Entrance fees, guided-tour charges, retail profit and public donations** all help underwrite fence maintenance, intensive pest surveillance, habitat restoration and an expanding education programme.

Since mammal eradication finished in 2007 the maunga has become a flagship site for native-species recovery, immersive environmental learning and high-yield avitourism (Smuts-Kennedy & Parker, 2013; MEIT, 2024a). Sustaining those gains is expensive: the fence must be inspected daily, translocated wildlife require ongoing husbandry, and visitor infrastructure must satisfy both conservation and tourism standards (Gardner, 2024).

Recent commercial initiatives illustrate how tourism bolsters the budget:

- **Kiwi Experience tours** (January–March 2025) channel **100 % of ticket income** to the kōhanga-kiwi programme and routine operations (MEIT, 2025a).
- The **"Mauri of the Maunga" Gala Dinner and Auction** in 2023-24 raised **NZ $75 000**, earmarked for upgrading kākāpō-proof fencing and intensifying biosecurity patrols (MEIT, 2024b).
- MEIT's 2023-24 annual report confirms that **every commercial surplus—admissions, tours, retail, venue hire—is reinvested** in core conservation and visitor-facility costs (MEIT, 2024a).

Persisting funding gap

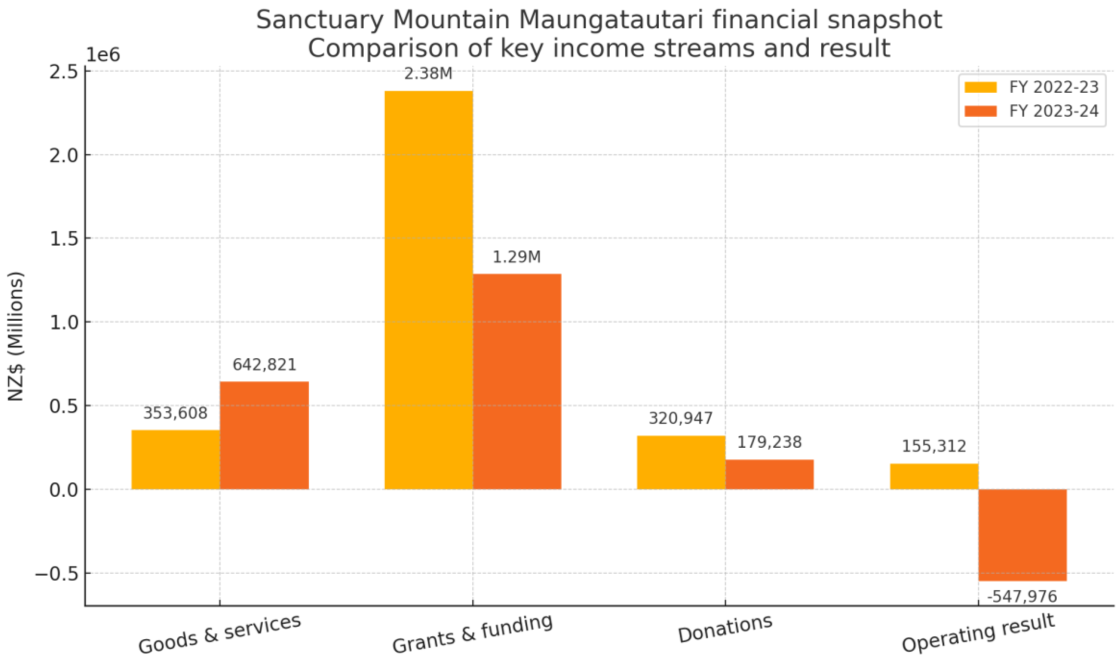
Despite a near-doubling of goods-and-services revenue to NZ $642 821, external grants and contracts plunged from NZ $2.381 million (2023) to NZ $1.286 million (2024), and donations slid from NZ $320 947 to NZ $179 238 (Gardner, 2024; MEIT, 2024a). The squeeze forced the Trust to cut seven of its thirteen ranger positions (Gardner, 2024). Diagram 7.1 visualises these contrasting trends in income streams and bottom-line results.

Pathways to resilience

MEIT now concentrates on five revenue "pillars": tourism, education services, research partnerships, philanthropic donations and an emerging biodiversity-credit market (MEIT, 2024a). Government support arrived in February 2025, when **NZ $750 000 over three years** was allocated from the International Visitor Levy, explicitly linking inbound-tourism taxes to SMM's conservation mandate (MEIT, 2025b; Ministry of Business, Innovation and Employment [MBIE], 2025). Even so, the long-term viability of this **3 363-ha**

predator-free mainland island depends on broadening and stabilising revenue sources so that annual income reliably matches the full cost of its ambitious restoration mission, "The trust is focussing on earning revenue through five funding pillars: tourism, education, science and research, donations, and biodiversity credits" (Gardner, 2024, para.10).

Diagram 7.1 — Sanctuary Mountain Maungatautari: Key Financial Streams, FY 2023 vs FY 2024



7.7.5. The Education-Tourism Synergy Loop

Sanctuary Mountain Maungatautari actively cultivates a synergistic relationship between its conservation mission, its educational programs, and its tourism operations.26 The restored natural environment, with its flourishing wildlife and audible birdsong, serves as the primary attraction drawing visitors.41 The revenue generated from these visitors, through entry fees, tours, and retail sales, is then reinvested to support the ongoing conservation work and operational costs.18 Educational initiatives, centered around the Manu Korokī Centre 21, enhance the value proposition for visitors (especially schools and families) and simultaneously work to build public understanding, appreciation, and long-term support for conservation goals.26 Experiences like the Kiwi Tour 56 exemplify this synergy by directly linking a unique tourism offering to a core conservation activity, with proceeds funding that specific program. The significant involvement of volunteers, who contribute to both conservation tasks and visitor guiding, further interweaves these different facets of the sanctuary's operation.21

While this synergy is demonstrably present and growing stronger with increasing visitor numbers [21], the financial data from 2023-24 suggests that the loop is not yet robust enough to create a fully self-sustaining financial model.[18] The high costs associated with managing a large, fenced sanctuary currently outstrip the revenue generated through tourism and related activities. This indicates that while the education-tourism synergy provides a vital contribution and a pathway towards greater financial independence, reliance on external funding sources remains critical in the short to medium term. Fully realizing the potential of this synergy might require developing additional high-value, low-impact tourism products, optimizing pricing strategies, and exploring complementary revenue streams derived from the sanctuary's ecological assets, such as the potential market for biodiversity or carbon credits.[18]

7.7.6. Conclusion: Legacy, Lessons, and Future Horizons

Sanctuary Mountain Maungatautari stands as a monumental achievement in New Zealand conservation, representing a bold and largely successful experiment in mainland ecological restoration at an unprecedented scale. Its primary accomplishments include the construction and maintenance of one of the world's longest pest-proof fences, the successful eradication of 14 species of introduced mammals from within its perimeter, and the subsequent, often dramatic, recovery of the native forest structure and invertebrate populations. The sanctuary has proven to be a vital refuge, enabling the discovery of cryptic remnant populations like Hochstetter's frogs and Duvaucel's geckos, and safeguarding unexpected flora such as the disjunct population of silver beech. Furthermore, its extensive species reintroduction program has successfully re-established numerous threatened and locally extinct species, including nationally significant populations of kiwi, takahē, kōkako, and many others, positioning Maungatautari as a key hub in national species recovery efforts. As for kokako,

Beyond its direct biodiversity outcomes, Maungatautari serves as an invaluable living laboratory. The project has yielded critical insights into the techniques and challenges of large-scale pest eradication and exclusion, particularly highlighting the persistent difficulty of managing house mice within fenced sanctuaries and documenting their ecological impacts in the absence of other mammals. It has provided a platform for refining species translocation methodologies and understanding ecosystem responses to the removal of invasive species pressures.

However, the sanctuary's journey also underscores significant ongoing challenges. Maintaining the integrity of the extensive 47km fence against environmental damage and potential incursions requires perpetual vigilance and resources. The persistent mouse population necessitates continuous control efforts and presents an ongoing ecological variable impacting invertebrate communities and potentially other restoration goals. The recent kākāpō translocation trial, while historic, highlighted the complexities and uncertainties inherent in reintroducing highly specialized species, demanding ongoing adaptive management. Perhaps most critically, ensuring long-term financial sustainability remains a paramount challenge, as evidenced by the 2024 funding crisis. Securing stable, sufficient operational funding, rather than relying on short-term grants, is essential to protect the decades of investment and ecological gains. Navigating the complexities of co-governance and diverse stakeholder relationships also requires continuous effort.

Looking forward, the future of Sanctuary Mountain Maungatautari depends on addressing these challenges proactively. Continued innovation in pest management, particularly for mice, is needed. Developing diverse and sustainable funding streams, potentially integrating enhanced tourism and research partnerships, is critical. Ongoing adaptive management will be essential for optimizing reintroduction outcomes and responding to unforeseen ecological changes.

Despite these hurdles, Maungatautari remains a powerful symbol of what can be achieved through ambitious vision, community collaboration, and dedicated conservation action. It offers a tangible glimpse into a restored New Zealand ecosystem and serves as an inspiration for conservation efforts worldwide. Its legacy lies not only in the biodiversity it protects but also in the valuable lessons learned about the complexities, costs, and profound rewards of restoring nature on a grand scale. Fulfilling its founding vision requires an enduring commitment from its Trust, partners, funders, and the wider community to sustain this unique ecological taonga for generations to come.

7.7.7. Appendix A: Native and Reintroduced Species Recorded at Sanctuary Mountain Maungatautari

This table provides a non-exhaustive list of native and reintroduced species known to be present within Sanctuary Mountain Maungatautari (see Table 7.5 for details), compiled from project reports, the official website, and scientific literature cited in this chapter. Conservation status follows the New Zealand Threat Classification System (NZTCS) as per the latest available assessments at the time of writing (primarily Robertson et al., 2021 for birds; Dunn et al., 2018 for fish; Burns et al., 2018 or subsequent regional assessments for amphibians; Hitchmough et al., 2021 or subsequent assessments for reptiles; relevant DOC listings for invertebrates and mammals). Status can change; refer to official NZTCS lists for current classifications.

Table 7.5 - List of native and reintroduced species known to be present within Sanctuary Mountain Maungatautari

Category	Scientific Name	Common Name(s)	Status within Sanctuary	NZTCS Status (approx. 2021-2024)
Mammals				
	Chalinolobus tuberculatus	NZ Long-tailed Bat (Pekapeka)	Native	Threatened - Nationally Critical
Birds				
	Acanthisitta chloris	Rifleman (Tītipounamu)	Reintroduced (2021)	Not Threatened
	Anas gracilis	Grey Teal	Native	Not Threatened
	Anas rhynchotis	Australasian Shoveler	Native	Not Threatened
	Anas superciliosa	Grey Duck (Pārera)	Native	Threatened - Nationally Vulnerable
	Anthornis melanura	Bellbird (Korimako)	Native/Recovered	Not Threatened
	Apteryx mantelli (Western)	North Island Brown Kiwi	Reintroduced (2005+)	Not Threatened
	Botaurus poiciloptilus	Australasian Bittern (Matuku)	Native (Visitor?)	Threatened - Nationally Critical
	Callaeas wilsoni	North Island Kōkako	Reintroduced (2015)	At Risk - Recovering
	Chrysococcyx lucidus	Shining Cuckoo (Pīpīwharauroa)	Native (Migrant)	Not Threatened

Circus approximans	Swamp Harrier (Kāhu)	Native	Not Threatened
Egretta novaehollandiae	White-faced Heron	Native	Not Threatened
Falco novaeseelandiae	NZ Falcon (Kārearea)	Native	Threatened - Nationally Vulnerable
Gerygone igata	Grey Warbler (Riroriro)	Native	Not Threatened
Halcyon sancta	Sacred Kingfisher (Kōtare)	Native	Not Threatened
Hemiphaga novaeseelandiae	NZ Pigeon (Kererū)	Native	Not Threatened
Hirundo neoxena	Welcome Swallow (Warou)	Native (Self-introduced)	Not Threatened
Mohoua albicilla	Whitehead (Pōpokotea)	Reintroduced (2009)	Not Threatened
Nestor meridionalis septentrionalis	North Island Kākā	Reintroduced (2007)	At Risk - Recovering
Ninox novaeseelandiae	Morepork (Ruru)	Native	Not Threatened
Notiomystis cincta	Hihi (Stitchbird)	Reintroduced (2009-11)	Threatened - Nationally Vulnerable
Petroica longipes	North Island Robin (Toutouwai)	Reintroduced (2011-12)	Not Threatened
Petroica macrocephala toitoi	North Island Tomtit (Miromiro)	Native	Not Threatened
Phalacrocorax carbo	Black Shag (Kawau)	Native	Not Threatened
Phalacrocorax melanoleucos	Little Pied Cormorant	Native	Not Threatened
Philesturnus rufusater	North Island Saddleback (Tīeke)	Reintroduced (2013)	At Risk - Recovering
Poliocephalus rufopectus	NZ Dabchick (Weweia)	Native	At Risk - Recovering
Porphyrio hochstetteri	South Island Takahē	Reintroduced (2006)	Threatened - Nationally Vulnerable

	Porphyrio porphyrio	Pūkeko	Native	Not Threatened
	Prosthemadera novaeseelandiae	Tūī	Native/Recovered	Not Threatened
	Rhipidura fuliginosa placabilis	North Island Fantail (Pīwakawaka)	Native	Not Threatened
	Strigops habroptilus	Kākāpō	Reintroduced (2023)	Threatened - Nationally Critical
	Tadorna variegata	Paradise Shelduck (Pūtangitangi)	Native	Not Threatened
	Zosterops lateralis	Silvereye (Tauhou)	Native (Self-introduced)	Not Threatened
Amphibians				
	Leiopelma hochstetteri	Hochstetter's Frog	Native (Rediscovered 2004)	At Risk - Declining
Reptiles				
	Hoplodactylus duvaucelii	Duvaucel's Gecko	Native (Rediscovered 2010)	At Risk - Relict
	Hoplodactylus granulatus	Forest Gecko	Native	Not Threatened
	Naultinus elegans elegans	Auckland Green Gecko	Native	At Risk - Declining
	Oligosoma aeneum (formerly *Cyclodina aenea*)	Copper Skink	Native	Not Threatened
	Oligosoma judgei (formerly *Hoplodactylus pacificus*)	Pacific Gecko	Native	Not Threatened
	Sphenodon punctatus	Tuatara	Reintroduced (2012)	At Risk - Relict
Fish				
	Anguilla dieffenbachii	Longfin Eel (Tuna)	Native	At Risk - Declining
	Galaxias argenteus	Giant Kōkopu	Reintroduced (2007)	At Risk - Declining

	Galaxias fasciatus	Banded Kōkopu	Reintroduced (2007)	Not Threatened
	Galaxias postvectis	Shortjaw Kōkopu	Reintroduced (2007)	Threatened - Nationally Vulnerable
Invertebrates				
	Deinacrida mahoenui	Mahoenui Giant Wētā	Reintroduced (2012-13)	Threatened - Nationally Critical
	Hemideina thoracica	Auckland Tree Wētā	Native	Not Threatened
	Lasiorhynchus barbicornis	NZ Giraffe Weevil	Native	Not Threatened
	Mecodema oconnori	Large Carabid Beetle	Native	Data Deficient
	Onychophora	Velvet Worms	Native	Various (Data Deficient/Threatened)
	Glowworms (*Arachnocampa luminosa*)	Glowworm	Native	Not Threatened
Flora				
	Lophozonia menziesii	Silver Beech (Tawhai)pre	Native (Discovered 2006)	Not Threatened

References

Animalia.bio. (n.d.). *Duvaucel's gecko*. Retrieved April 28, 2025, from https://animalia.bio/index.php/duvaucels-gecko

Auckland Council. (n.d.). *Tāwharanui Regional Park map* [Map]. Retrieved April 29, 2025, from https://www.aucklandcouncil.govt.nz/parkmaps/map-tawharanui-regional-park.pdf

Auckland Council. (2022). *Conservation status of amphibian species in Tāmaki Makaurau / Auckland, 2022* (Technical Report TR2022/4). https://www.reptiles.org.nz/sites/default/files/2024-11/Conservation%20status%20of%20amphibian%20species%20in%20Tamaki%20Makaurau%20-%20Auckland%2C%202022.pdf

Baber, M., Moulton, H., Smuts-Kennedy, C., Gemmell, N., & Crossland, M. (2006). Discovery and spatial assessment of a Hochstetter's frog (*Leiopelma hochstetteri*) population found in Maungatautari Scenic Reserve, New Zealand. *New Zealand Journal of Zoology, 33*(2), 147–156. https://doi.org/10.1080/03014223.2006.9518439

BirdLife International. (2017). *Notiomystis cincta*. The IUCN Red List of Threatened Species 2017: e.T22704154A118814893. https://dx.doi.org/10.2305/IUCN.UK.2017-3.RLTS.T22704154A118814893.en

BirdLife International. (2018). *Philesturnus rufusater.* The IUCN Red List of Threatened Species 2018: e.T103730503A132191453. https://dx.doi.org/10.2305/IUCN.UK.2018-2.RLTS.T103730503A132191453.en

BirdLife International. (2022). *Callaeas wilsoni.* The IUCN Red List of Threatened Species 2022: e.T103730482A216851596. https://dx.doi.org/10.2305/IUCN.UK.2022-2.RLTS.T103730482A216851596.en

Birds New Zealand. (n.d.). *North Island brown kiwi.* In *New Zealand Birds Online.* Retrieved April 28, 2025, from https://www.nzbirdsonline.org.nz/species/north-island-brown-kiwi

Bombaci, S. P., Innes, J., Kelly, D., Flaherty, V., & Pejchar, L. (2021). Excluding mammalian predators increases bird densities and seed dispersal in fenced ecosanctuaries. *Ecology, 102*(6), e03340.

Bombaci, S. P., Pejchar, L., & Innes, J. (2018). Fenced sanctuaries deliver conservation benefits for most common and threatened native island birds in New Zealand. *Ecosphere, 9*(11), e02497.

Burns, R. J., Bell, B. D., Haigh, A., Bishop, P. J., Easton, L., Wren, S., … Makan, T. (2018). *Conservation status of New Zealand amphibians, 2017* (NZ Threat Classification Series 25). Department of Conservation.

Department of Conservation. (n.d.-a). *Atlas details: Hoplodactylus duvaucelii.* Retrieved April 28, 2025, from http://www.doc.govt.nz/our-work/reptiles-and-frogs-distribution/atlas/atlas-details/?SpeciesID=13178

Department of Conservation. (n.d.-b). *Kākāpō.* Retrieved April 28, 2025, from https://www.doc.govt.nz/nature/native-animals/birds/birds-a-z/kakapo/

Department of Conservation. (n.d.-c). *Mahoenui giant wētā.* Retrieved April 28, 2025, from http://www.doc.govt.nz/mahoenui-giant-weta

Department of Conservation. (n.d.-d). *Translocation best-practice guideline – Whitehead.* Retrieved April 28, 2025, from https://www.doc.govt.nz/Documents/getting-involved/translocation/translocation-best-practice-whitehead.pdf

Department of Conservation. (2023). *Predator Free 2050: Biennial progress report 2021–2023.*

Dunn, N. R., Allibone, R. M., Closs, G. P., Crow, S. K., David, B. O., Goodman, J. M., … Rolfe, J. R. (2018). *Conservation status of New Zealand freshwater fishes, 2017* (NZ Threat Classification Series 24). Department of Conservation.

Franke-Bowell, J. (2023, October 17). The great kākāpō escape at Sanctuary Mountain Maungatautari. *Waikato Times.*

Gardner, C. (2024, October 31). *Sanctuary numbers detailed.* **Te Awamutu News**. https://www.teawamutunews.nz/2024/10/sanctuary-numbers-detailed/

Innes, J., Bradfield, P., Brown, K., Bryden, D., Burns, R., Carpenter, J., … Wills, S. (2024). North Island kōkako (*Callaeas wilsoni*) recovery update: 2000 to 2023. *Notornis, 71*(4), 129–145. https://doi.org/10.63172/859470jcouke

Jones, C., Innes, J., Watts, C., Didham, R. K., & Fitzgerald, N. (2020). Contrasting responses of beetle communities to mammal eradication in a fenced New Zealand ecosanctuary. *New Zealand Journal of Ecology, 44*(2), 3404.

Longson, C. G., Brejaart, R., Baber, M. J., & Babbitt, K. J. (2017). Rapid recovery of a population of the cryptic and evolutionarily distinct Hochstetter's frog in a pest-free environment. *Ecological Management & Restoration, 18*(1), 26–31.

Maungatautari Ecological Island Trust. (2024a). *Annual report 2023 – 2024*. Sanctuary Mountain Maungatautari. https://www.sanctuarymountain.co.nz/library/files/SMM_Annual_Report_2023-24.pdf

Maungatautari Ecological Island Trust. (2024b, August 7). *"Mauri of the Maunga" gala dinner raises $75 000 for conservation* [News post]. https://www.sanctuarymountain.co.nz/about-us/news/post/mauri-of-the-maunga-gala

Maungatautari Ecological Island Trust. (2025a, January 15). *Kiwi Experience tours launched to support the kōhanga-kiwi programme* [Press release]. https://www.sanctuarymountain.co.nz/about-us/news/post/kiwi-experience-tours

Maungatautari Ecological Island Trust. (2025b, February 24). *Funding boost confirmed for Sanctuary Mountain Maungatautari* [News post]. https://www.sanctuarymountain.co.nz/about-us/news/post/funding-boost

Ministry of Business, Innovation and Employment. (2025, February 24). *International Visitor Levy to support Sanctuary Mountain Maungatautari* [Media release]. https://www.mbie.govt.nz/

Neems, J. (2010, April 22). Rare lizard killed in trap. *Waikato Times* (archived June 13, 2011).

New Zealand Department of Conservation. (2020). *Towards a Predator-Free New Zealand: Predator Free 2050 strategy.*

New Zealand Ecological Society. (n.d.). *New Zealand Threat Classification System (NZTCS).* Retrieved April 28, 2025, from https://nztcs.org.nz/

New Zealand Ecological Society. (2021). Assessment details: *Notiomystis cincta*. NZTCS Database. https://nztcs.org.nz/assessments/118770

New Zealand Frog Research Group. (n.d.). *Hochstetter's frog.* NZ Frogs. https://nzfrogs.org/hochstetters-frog/

New Zealand Herpetological Society. (n.d.-a). *Hochstetter's frog.* https://www.reptiles.org.nz/herpetofauna/native/leiopelma-hochstetteri

New Zealand Herpetological Society. (n.d.-b). *Duvaucel's gecko.* https://www.reptiles.org.nz/herpetofauna/native/hoplodactylus-duvaucelii

Office of the Auditor-General New Zealand. (2016). *Principles for effectively co-governing natural resources: Appendix 6 – Maungatautari Ecological Island Trust.* https://oag.parliament.nz/2016/co-governance/appendix6.htm

Ōtorohanga Kiwi House. (2024, February 13). Restoring giants: The release of Mahoenui giant wētā. https://www.kiwihouse.org.nz/post/restoring-giants-the-release-of-mahoenui-giant-w%C4%93t%C4%81

Parker, K. A. (2013). Translocations. In *The state of New Zealand's birds 2012.* Ornithological Society of New Zealand.

Petricevich, J. (2023, December). Titipounamu / Rifleman survey. *Dawn Chorus.* https://www.tiritirimatangi.org.nz/blog/titipounamu-rifleman-survey/

Robertson, H. A., Baird, K., Elliott, G. P., Hitchmough, R. A., McArthur, N. J., Makan, T. D., … Michel, P. (2021). *Conservation status of birds in Aotearoa New Zealand, 2021* (NZ Threat Classification Series 36). Department of Conservation. https://www.doc.govt.nz/globalassets/documents/science-and-technical/nztcs36entire.pdf

Sanctuary Mountain Maungatautari. (n.d.-a). *About us.* https://www.sanctuarymountain.co.nz/about-us

Sanctuary Mountain Maungatautari. (n.d.-b). *Birds.* https://www.sanctuarymountain.co.nz/about-us/our-wildlife/birds

Sanctuary Mountain Maungatautari. (n.d.-c). *Hihi – Stitchbird.* https://www.sanctuarymountain.co.nz/about-us/our-wildlife/birds/hihi

Sanctuary Mountain Maungatautari. (n.d.-d). *Kākāpō.* https://www.sanctuarymountain.co.nz/about-us/our-wildlife/birds/kakapoparrot

Sanctuary Mountain Maungatautari. (n.d.-e). *Kiwi.* https://www.sanctuarymountain.co.nz/about-us/our-wildlife/birds/kiwi

Sanctuary Mountain Maungatautari. (n.d.-f). *North Island kōkako.* https://www.sanctuarymountain.co.nz/about-us/our-wildlife/birds/northislandkokako

Sanctuary Mountain Maungatautari. (n.d.-g). *Our news & corporate docs.* https://www.sanctuarymountain.co.nz/about-us/news

Sanctuary Mountain Maungatautari. (n.d.-h). *Our story.* (Archived April 7, 2017).

Sanctuary Mountain Maungatautari. (n.d.-i). *Our wildlife.* https://www.sanctuarymountain.co.nz/about-us/our-wildlife

Sanctuary Mountain Maungatautari. (n.d.-j). *South Island takahē.* https://www.sanctuarymountain.co.nz/about-us/our-wildlife/birds/southislandtakahe

Sanctuary Mountain Maungatautari. (n.d.-k). *Visit us.* https://www.sanctuarymountain.co.nz/visit-us

Sanctuary Mountain Maungatautari. (2023). *Annual report 2023.* https://www.sanctuarymountain.co.nz/library/files/NEW_SMM_2023_Annual_Report_EMAIL.pdf

Sanctuary Mountain Maungatautari. (2025, February 24). Funding boost. https://www.sanctuarymountain.co.nz/about-us/news/post/funding-boost

Smuts-Kennedy, C., & Parker, K. A. (2013). Reconstructing avian biodiversity on Maungatautari. *Notornis, 60*(1), 93–106.

Smuts-Kennedy, C., Parker, K. A., & Stapleton, M. C. (2007). Eradication of introduced mammals from Maungatautari, New Zealand. In *Proceedings of the 23rd Vertebrate Pest Conference* (pp. 115–121).

Trap.nz Forum contributors. (2024, June–July). Mouse trapping grid inside predator fence. *Trap.nz.* https://forums.trap.nz/t/mouse-trapping-grid-inside-predator-fence/9987

Waipa District Council. (2021). *He Mahere Mō Maungatautari – Maungatautari Reserve Management Plan.*

https://www.waipadc.govt.nz/.../Maungatautari%20Reserve%20Management%20Plan_v3_for%20print.pdf

Waikato Business News. (2025, February 22). Financial boost for Sanctuary Mountain. https://wbn.co.nz/2025/02/22/financial-boost-for-sanctuary-mountain/

Watts, C. H., Armstrong, D. P., Innes, J., & Thornburrow, D. (2011). Dramatic increases in wētā following mammal eradication on Maungatautari – evidence from pitfalls and tracking tunnels. *New Zealand Journal of Ecology, 35*(3), 261–272.

Watts, C. H., Thornburrow, D., Cave, V., & Innes, J. (2020). Responses of beetle and wētā communities to mammal eradication at two fenced forest sites at Maungatautari. *New Zealand Journal of Zoology, 48*(2), 155–174.

Wikipedia contributors. (n.d.-a). *Duvaucel's gecko*. Wikipedia. https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Duvaucel%27s_gecko

Wikipedia contributors. (n.d.-c). *Hochstetter's frog*. Wikipedia. https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Hochstetter%27s_frog

Wikipedia contributors. (n.d.-d). *Kākāpō*. Wikipedia. https://en.wikipedia.org/

Wilson, D. J., Norbury, G. L., Walker, S., & Overton, J. M. (2022). Do mice matter? Impacts of house mice alone on invertebrates, seedlings and fungi at Sanctuary Mountain Maungatautari. *New Zealand Journal of Ecology, 46*(1), 3472.

Works Cited list (numeric, matching superscripts)

1 About Predator Free 2050. https://predatorfreenz.org/about-us/predator-free-2050/predator-free-2050-vision/
3 Sanctuary Mountain Maungatautari – Wikipedia.
4 Smuts-Kennedy, C., & Parker, K. A. (2013). Reconstructing avian biodiversity on Maungatautari. PDF, Birds NZ.
6 Predator Free 2050 – Wikipedia.
9 DOC. Towards Predator Freedom strategy PDF.
11 Predator Free NZ Trust. Fenced sanctuaries.
12 Burns, B., Innes, J., & Day, T. (2012). The use and potential of pest-proof fencing…
13 Innes, J., et al. (2012). Role of predator-proof fences … New Zealand Journal of Ecology.
16 Bombaci, S. P., Pejchar, L., & Innes, J. (2018). Fenced sanctuaries deliver conservation benefits…
18 Cambridge Te Awamutu News (2024, 31 Oct.). Sanctuary numbers detailed.
19 Maitland, M. (2012). Mice in fenced sanctuaries (workshop notes).
20 Wilson, D. J., et al. (2022). Do mice matter?…
21 Maungatautari Ecological Island Trust. Annual Report 2023–2024.
22 Maungatautari Ecological Island Trust. Annual Report 2021–2022.
26 Office of the Auditor-General (2016). Appendix 6: Maungatautari Ecological Island Trust.
27 Waikato Chamber of Commerce. Sanctuary Mountain Maungatautari profile.
28 Mobile Systems NZ. The Maungatautari Sanctuary Mountain project.
29 ESRI StoryMaps. Maungatautari Sanctuary Mountain.
30 Predator Free NZ Trust. A Māori conservation perspective on Maungatautari.
31 Maungatautari Ecological Island Trust. Our Story page.
32 Maungatautari Ecological Island Trust. Tiaki at Sanctuary Mountain page.
33 Waipa District Council (2021). Maungatautari Reserve Management Plan.
37 Maungatautari Ecological Island Trust. Kiwi (species page).
39 DOC. Tongariro Forest Kiwi Sanctuary annual report 2022–23.
40 NZ Nature Fund. Kōhanga Kiwi programme.

41 Maungatautari Ecological Island Trust. Sanctuary Mountain main website homepage.
42 Maungatautari Ecological Island Trust (2025). 2023–24 Annual report – highlights.
44 Watts, C. H., et al. (2020). Beetle and wētā community responses…
45 Brejaart, R., et al. (2017). Dispersal distances in reintroduced hihi.
49 Parker, K. A., et al. (2011). Translocation of hihi… PDF.
50 "About Sanctuary Mountain Maungatautari" (visitor information page).
52 Maungatautari Ecological Island Trust. Sanctuary rules & bio-security procedures.
53 Waipa District Council (2024). Maungatautari Reserve Committee agenda, 1 May 2024.
54 Waipa District Council (2021). Reserve Committee agenda, 17 Nov 2021.
55 Duplicate of 20 (retained as it is separately cited).
56 Maungatautari Ecological Island Trust. New Kiwi Experience tours (news item).
57 Waikato NZ (2024). Up-close kiwi experience media release.
58 NZ Herald (2025). Waikato kiwi translocation season article.
59 Seddon, P. J., & Ewen, J. G. (2015). Parasite management in translocations. Oryx.
60 Parker, K. A., et al. (2013). Not so soft? Delayed release… Oryx.
61 Innes, J., et al. (2024). North Island kōkako recovery update.
62 ResearchGate figure – current kokako distribution (2024).
64 Massey University thesis: Habitat suitability for kākāpō at Maungatautari.
65 Maungatautari Ecological Island Trust (2025, 24 Feb.). Funding boost announcement.
66 Miller, K. A., et al. (2015). Survival and growth of tuatara… Oryx.
69 NZ Herald (2025). Record-breaking kiwi translocation season.
70 Maungatautari Ecological Island Trust. Annual Report 2022–2023.
71 Campbell-Hunt, C. (2015). Indigenous Māori knowledge in the Maungatautari Eco-island project.
74 Bombaci, S. P., & Pejchar, L. (2019). Paired acoustic sampling for forest birds.
75 Maungatautari Ecological Island Trust & Impact Hub Waikato (2021). Social impact report.
76 NZ Wetland Trust (2022). National Wetland Discovery Centre feasibility report.
77 Predator Free NZ Trust (2024). Empowering Action report.
78 Clarke, S., et al. (2019). Citizen-science volunteers and river monitoring (MoRPh survey).
86 Infometrics (2024). Waikato Region quarterly economic monitor.

Chapter 8

Costa Rica: Ecological Foundations and Landscapes of Birdwatching Tourism

Ismar Borges de Lima
Universidade Estadual de Roraima-UERR, Brazil &
RECINATUR Foundation. Email: ismar@uerr.edu.br

Summary

This chapter explores Costa Rica's emergence as a global model in integrating birdwatching with ecotourism, conservation, and sustainable development. Despite its compact geography, Costa Rica boasts an exceptional proportion of global biodiversity—estimated at 4%—and has adeptly harnessed this natural capital to cultivate an avitourism sector characterized by ecological sensitivity, economic productivity, and social inclusivity. The analysis commences by examining the ecological and biogeographic underpinnings of Costa Rica's avian richness, emphasizing how its position as a continental land bridge, coupled with significant topographic and climatic variation, fosters a dense mosaic of habitats and high rates of endemism. These environmental attributes not only attract a global audience of birdwatchers but also provide critical year-round resources for resident and migratory bird populations. Subsequently, the chapter scrutinizes Costa Rica's robust conservation framework—encompassing its extensive protected area network (SINAC), progressive environmental legislation (e.g., Biodiversity Law No. 7788, 1998), and innovative incentive mechanisms like the Payments for Ecosystem Services (PES) program. This governance architecture effectively aligns avitourism initiatives with broader biodiversity protection and community development objectives. Employing policy analysis and specific site examples, such as the foundational work in the Tapantí–Macizo de la Muerte buffer zone (Rodríguez et al., 2004) and recent circuit design efforts in the Río Navarro–Río Sombrero Protected Zone (Arias & Torres, 2024), the chapter illustrates how birdwatching has become integral to national strategies for ecotourism and sustainable land use. This integration continually reinforces Costa Rica's international standing as a vanguard of sustainable tourism and a premier sanctuary for birds and bird enthusiasts alike.

8.0 A Biodiversity in a Small Frame: Natural Foundations of Costa Rica's Avitourism Potential

Costa Rica, occupying a mere 51,100 square kilometers (0.03% of Earth's land surface), presents a striking paradox: a geographically modest nation harboring an immense concentration of life. It stands as one of the planet's most biologically rich countries, a distinction that has established it as a focal point for biologists, conservation practitioners, eco-tourists, and, notably, a burgeoning international community of birdwatchers. Current estimations place the country's species count at over 500,000, representing approximately 4% of documented global biodiversity—an extraordinary density given its limited territorial expanse.

This remarkable natural endowment is the product of several interconnected ecological, geological, and climatic factors. Situated within the Mesoamerican biodiversity corridor, Costa Rica historically served as a crucial land bridge facilitating the interchange and coevolution of species between the North and South American continents (Stiles, 1991). This unique biogeographic function, acting as both conduit and crucible, has fostered significant levels of endemism and ecological specialization. Furthermore, the country's complex topography—characterized by volcanic mountain ranges, intermontane valleys, and extensive river basins—generates a diverse array of microclimates and distinct life zones (Holdridge, 1987). Within relatively short distances, often traversable in a few hours, landscapes transition dramatically from lowland tropical rainforests to high-elevation cloud forests, and from seasonally dry tropical forests to páramo ecosystems exceeding 3,000 meters. This pronounced topoclimatic heterogeneity creates finely partitioned ecological niches, supporting high biodiversity levels not only across broad geographic gradients but also within localized areas (Kappelle, 1996a; Arias & Torres, 2024).

Complementing this spatial diversity is Costa Rica's relative climatic stability, which sustains year-round biological activity. Unlike temperate regions marked by pronounced seasonal dormancy, Costa Rican ecosystems exhibit continuous functionality. This enables uninterrupted cycles of feeding, breeding, and migratory stopovers for both resident and transient avian populations (Stiles, 1991). Collectively, these attributes constitute the vibrant, living foundation upon which the nation's birdwatching tourism is constructed—a foundation comprising not just an abundance of birds, but entire ecosystems characterized by intricate complexity, dynamic processes, and rich evolutionary narratives. As underlined by Echeverri et. al. (2022), "Costa Rica is an ideal country to explore […] Approximately 70% of all international visitors to Costa Rica state that the wildlife, dramatic scenery, and opportunities for adventure sports are the main motivation for visiting the country" (p.2), and tourism represents 7% of the national gross domestic product and employs 3% of the working population directly and a further 9% indirectly in the country, and avitourism is a growing niche.

8.1. Conservation Architecture: Governance, Territory, and the National Commitment to Nature

Costa Rica's dedication to biodiversity conservation transcends rhetoric, being deeply embedded within its institutional and legal structures. Few nations have rivaled Costa Rica's innovation and commitment in environmental governance. A pivotal development was the establishment of the Sistema Nacional de Áreas de Conservación (SINAC) under the purview of the Ministry of Environment and Energy (MINAE). SINAC exemplifies a consolidated approach to environmental management, uniquely integrating wildlife protection, forestry administration, and protected area oversight within a single administrative framework that operates through regionally decentralized conservation areas (Meza-Ocampo, 2017).

Presently, a significant 25.1% of Costa Rica's terrestrial territory receives formal protection status, encompassing a spectrum from national parks and wildlife refuges to privately owned reserves. This network safeguards nearly half of the country's remaining forest cover. This achievement is the culmination of decades of proactive conservation policy, initiated in the 1970s and significantly intensified during the 1990s. These formative periods saw the establishment of a cohesive territorial system of Protected Wilderness Areas (PWAs), with 44% of the current system designated between 1971–1990 and a further 50% added between 1991–1999. Since the year 2000, conservation strategies have increasingly focused on finer scales, prioritizing smaller, often community-managed areas, including vital wetland corridors, buffer zones around larger parks (as exemplified by the Tapantí–Macizo de la Muerte and Río Navarro–Río Sombrero areas), and integrated agroecological landscapes (Rodríguez et al., 2004; Arias & Torres, 2024; Zamora et al., 2013; Zúñiga & Fallas, 2018).

The operational philosophy underpinning this governance model is distinctly hybrid, synergizing top-down legal mandates (e.g., Biodiversity Law No. 7788, 1998) with bottom-up community engagement and decentralized regional management. Each of the eleven designated conservation regions possesses planning autonomy and actively collaborates with municipal governments, non-governmental organizations (NGOs), and private landowners to regulate land use and promote sustainable practices. Crucially, conservation in Costa Rica extends beyond pristine wilderness, embracing territorial integration that includes working landscapes and human-modified ecosystems, acknowledging their role in broader ecological connectivity and service provision. This adaptable and spatially integrated conservation strategy has cultivated an environment—both ecologically robust and institutionally supportive—that is highly conducive to the flourishing of nature-based tourism, particularly avitourism (Arias & Torres, 2024).

8.1.2. From Rainforest to Rural Farm: Modalities of Ecotourism and the Rise of Avitourism

Since the 1980s, Costa Rica has meticulously cultivated a global reputation as an ecotourism pioneer. Well before "sustainability" became a ubiquitous international objective, the nation was actively promoting travel experiences centered on principles of low-impact visitation, meaningful ecological interpretation, and substantive community participation (Budowski, 1990). This strategic positioning has yielded considerable economic and environmental dividends. Ecotourism contributes significantly to national tourism revenues and demonstrates robust growth, reportedly expanding at an annual global rate of 25–30%, substantially outpacing the growth of conventional "sun and sand" tourism, estimated at around 4% per year. Importantly, Costa Rican ecotourism is not a monolithic entity but rather a diverse constellation of specialized modalities, each offering unique experiences:

- **Adventure Ecotourism:** Activities such as river rafting, ziplining through forest canopies, canopy trekking, and cave exploration provide adrenaline-driven engagement with natural landscapes.

- **Agroecotourism:** Initiated in 1991 through a collaboration between the Costa Rican Tourism Institute (ICT) and the Instituto de Desarrollo Agrario (IDA), this modality immerses visitors in rural agricultural settings. It offers firsthand encounters with traditional and sustainable farming practices, ranging from shade-grown coffee cultivation to the management of medicinal plant gardens (Guerrero-Moreno & Oliveira-Junior, 2024).

- **Cultural and Ethnoecological Tourism Barrantes** (Sotela & Quirós Arias, 2020): Focusing on the rich heritage of Afro-Caribbean and Indigenous communities, this approach interweaves biodiversity appreciation with explorations of local foodways, spiritual traditions, cosmology, and artisanal craftsmanship.

- ***Ex Situ* Conservation Experiences:** Privately operated butterfly gardens, specialized aviaries, and wildlife rehabilitation centers serve dual roles as public educational venues and alternative conservation economies, often contributing to species recovery and awareness programs.

Avitourism intersects significantly with each of these modalities, either directly through dedicated bird-focused tours and activities or indirectly through the conservation of habitats essential for diverse avifauna. The permeable boundaries existing between ecotourism, rural tourism (Zamora et al., 2013), and avitourism constitute a strategic asset for Costa Rica. This flexibility permits the development of diversified tourism offerings tailored to accommodate a wide spectrum of traveler interests, motivations, and market segments (Arias & Ramírez, 2020; Arias & Ramírez, 2021), further solidifying the nation's appeal as a multifaceted nature destination.

For Pereira et. al. (2022), birdwatching encompasses observing birds in their native habitats—whether in dedicated reserves, community cafés, or even private gardens—and often involves traveling to particular locations to seek out target species. "In Costa Rica, a nation rich in biodiversity due to its strategic location, varied ecosystems, and multitude of life zones, habitats support around 924 bird species. This remarkable variety has rightly dubbed the country 'the little giant of birdwatching'" (p.8). positioning it as a top destination for avitourists. Consequently, Costa Rica's unparalleled avifauna presents a prime opportunity for developing specialized tourism offerings that cater to an expanding global market of birdwatching enthusiasts.

Figure 8.1 - Observation Hide in Costa Rica's Highlands

Figure 8.1 – Caption: This image depicts a thoughtfully designed indoor birdwatching observatory situated within Costa Rica's highland cloud forest ecosystem. The architectural approach prioritizes minimizing human impact while maximizing visitor experience, providing a tranquil, sheltered, and unobtrusive vantage point suitable for birdwatchers of varying experience levels. Features such as wide observation windows, utilization of natural light, and the provision of educational resources like field guides (e.g., Garrigues & Dean, 2014; Vallely & Dyer, 2018) and visual aids enhance both the ecological and pedagogical value of the birdwatching encounter. Such facilities exemplify key

tenets of sustainable tourism infrastructure: minimal ecological disturbance, delivery of a high-quality visitor experience, and potential accessibility for community-based guiding enterprises. (Source: Adapted from generic representations of birding infrastructure).

8.1.3. Oceans, Wetlands, and Rivers: Expanding the Avitourism Landscape

While terrestrial forest ecosystems frequently dominate narratives about Costa Rican birdlife, the country's extensive aquatic and coastal systems represent vital, albeit sometimes underappreciated, components of the national birdwatching landscape. Costa Rica's marine territory, encompassing an area nearly ten times larger than its landmass, harbors marine and coastal ecosystems characterized by remarkable biological productivity and significant ecological importance (Di Cecco et al., 2021).

The nation's Caribbean and Pacific coastlines, collectively stretching over 1,300 kilometers, are renowned not only for their scenic beaches but also serve as critical habitats for migratory shorebirds, resident seabird colonies, and diverse marine fauna. Particularly noteworthy is Isla del Coco National Park, a designated UNESCO World Heritage Site, which alone contributes over 97,000 hectares to the marine protected area system. Inland, Costa Rica features a network of over 300 distinct wetlands distributed across the country; nine of these have received international recognition as Ramsar Sites due to their global significance for waterfowl populations and migratory bird conservation (Sánchez, 1998; Sánchez Pérez, 2002; Sánchez et al., 2009). Furthermore, the country's numerous rivers and waterfalls, organized within 34 major watersheds, provide essential ecological services and considerable recreational appeal (de Guisa, 2013; Zamora et. al., 2013). Water-based birding activities, such as guided kayaking or boat tours along biodiverse riparian corridors like those found in Tortuguero or Caño Negro, introduce an additional layer of experiential diversity for avitourists. In essence, Costa Rica's avitourism potential is not confined solely to its forests; it is intrinsically linked to and enhanced by a complex hydrological matrix that sustains a rich and varied avian life across multiple ecosystem types.

Figure 8.2 - River-Based Birdwatching Tour in Costa Rica's Lowland Rainforests

Figure 8.2 -Caption: A group of birdwatchers attentively scans dense riparian vegetation while navigating a tropical canal within one of Costa Rica's characteristic lowland rainforest regions. Riverine avitourism experiences, exemplified by tours in areas like Tortuguero National Park or the Caño Negro Wildlife Refuge, provide outstanding opportunities for observing aquatic and forest-edge bird species with minimal disturbance. These excursions typically blend ecological immersion with visitor comfort and accessibility, often led by knowledgeable local guides who offer interpretation of both the observed avifauna and the surrounding habitat dynamics (Stiles & Skutch, 1989). This mode of birdwatching effectively illustrates Costa Rica's strategic approach of integrating biodiversity conservation with the development of sustainable, low-impact ecotourism products. (Source: Adapted from typical promotional imagery for Costa Rican river tours).

8.4. The Costa Rican Birdwatcher Survey

8.4.1 Study Context and Acknowledgements

In 2023, Alianza Costa Rica Birding, in collaboration with the Mesa Nacional de Aviturismo, launched a comprehensive investigation into Costa Rica's domestic birdwatching community, led by Arias and Ramirez (2023). This research was designed to bolster the country's standing as a world-class destination for avitourism by systematically characterizing local enthusiasts' demographics, behaviors, and preferences. We gratefully acknowledge the Instituto Costarricense de Turismo and its Ruta Nacional de Aves program; the Asociación Ornitológica de Costa Rica; Birdwatching Central America; Proyecto Aves y Cultura; and the Ecotourism and Ecotourism Management program at

the University of Costa Rica's Paraíso campus for their invaluable logistical and technical support.

8.4.2. Methodology and Rationale

Despite drawing approximately 200,000 international birding tourists annually, Costa Rica's domestic birder segment—now exceeding 6,000 active participants—remained largely unstudied until 2016. To address this gap, we instituted a biennial, structured-survey protocol to map the evolving profile of national birdwatchers. The Fourth Study of the Costa Rican Birdwatcher represents the culmination of hundreds of completed questionnaires and extensive stakeholder engagement. Its findings furnish critical evidence to inform policymakers, tour operators, and conservation planners in the design of targeted birdwatching products, outreach strategies, and habitat-management policies that genuinely reflect the needs and motivations of Costa Rica's growing local avitourism community.

8.4.3. Growth and Demographics

- **Community expansion:** In 2016, we estimated **2,000–3,000** local birders. Today, that number has doubled or even tripled, thanks to the rise of local clubs, digital platforms, and educational initiatives—an upward trend further accelerated by the pandemic.

- **Gender & age:** Women now represent **35 %** of domestic birders. Approximately **90 %** took up the hobby within the last decade, and **80 %** are under fifty years old—markedly younger than in many other countries.

- **Geographic spread:** In 2016, **60 %** of birders lived in the Greater Metropolitan Area; today, **60 %** reside in rural regions and **40 %** in urban centers.

- **Education & income:** Three-quarters hold a university or postgraduate degree. Most are salaried professionals (only **7 %** are retired); **30 %** are self-employed.

  Monthly incomes fall into these brackets:
  - < ₡ 500 000 (42 %)
  - ₡ 500 000–₡ 1 000 000 (32 %; ≈ USD 987–1 974)
  - ₡ 1 000 000–₡ 2 000 000 (20 %; ≈ USD 1 974–3 948)
  - ≥ ₡ 2 000 000 (6 %; ≥ USD 3 948)

Because **3–4 out of every 10 jobs** in Costa Rica relate to ecotourism or biodiversity, one's profession is the single strongest driver for entering the birdwatching community.

8.4.4. Motivations, Tools & Behaviors

- **Core motivations** align with global trends: **84 %** cite conservation concern and **84 %** note mental-health benefits; **76 %** find birding fun and stimulating.
- **Complementary activities** include visits to public and private reserves, nature photography, and butterfly watching.
- **Digital platforms** are now indispensable: birders rely on **eBird, Xeno-Canto, and Merlin**, though traditional field guides remain in use. **Instagram** has overtaken other networks as the top place to share sightings.
- **Club membership & engagement:** Six in ten birders are not affiliated with any group, but local clubs continue to foster growth. **53 %** label themselves "softcore"

birders (spending ≥ 40 % of a trip watching birds), **27 %** are "hardcore" (100 % birding), and **20 %** are occasional enthusiasts.

8.4.5. Outings & Destinations

- **Trip frequency & duration:**
    - **80 %** undertake local weekend excursions.
    - **35 %** embark on trips lasting three days or longer; half go solo, half in groups.
    - In the past three years, **50 %** have made more than ten birdwatching trips within Costa Rica.
    - **79 %** travel abroad at least once a year to explore foreign avifauna.
- **Top domestic sites:** Central Valley surrounds; Los Quetzales NP; Monteverde; La Fortuna–Arenal; and Sarapiquí.

8.4.6. Gear & Investment

- **Optics & cameras:**
    - **80 %** own binoculars.
    - **70 %** possess a camera (basic or professional).
- **Equipment spending:**
    - Up to ₡ 500 000 (42 %), approximately USD 987
    - ₡ 500 000–₡ 1 000 000 (23 %), approximately USD 987–1 974
    - ₡ 1 000 000–₡ 2 000 000 (17 %), approximately USD 1 974–3 948
    - Over ₡ 2 000 000 (18 %), over USD 3 948

These findings paint a portrait of a **young, rapidly growing**, and **tech-savvy** birder community whose evolving preferences and behaviors will shape the next phase of Costa Rica's birdwatching landscape.

8.4.7. Geographic Distribution of Domestic Birding Hotspots

The map on Fig. 8.3 presents the location of 30 key birdwatching sites identified by Costa Rican residents in the Fourth Study of the Costa Rican Birdwatcher. Each icon pinpoints a location—ranging from urban corridors in the Central Valley and foothill reserves in the Central Highlands to remote marine parks such as Isla del Coco and coastal wetlands like Caño Negro. Color-shaded provinces delineate the country's major biogeographic zones (e.g., North Pacific, Caribbean Lowlands, South Pacific), highlighting the wide regional spread of birder activity. By mapping these hotspots together, we can readily see both the concentration of visits around well-developed tourism clusters (Monteverde, La Fortuna–Arenal, Los Quetzales) and the under-explored frontier areas (Osa Peninsula, Tortuguero, Nicoya Peninsula). This spatial overview provides a foundation for targeted conservation outreach, infrastructure investment, and ecotourism product development tailored to the unique ecological and logistical contexts of each region.

Fig. 8.3 - The Map presents 30 hotspots cited in the Survey.
Map adapted from the original, Arias & Ramirez (2023), page 12.

To provide a comprehensive view of where domestic birders travel and what they experience, the table below profiles all 30 hotspots cited in the survey. For each site, we list its popularity (% of birders who have visited), primary conservation designation or management status, the key birding attractions and practices that draw enthusiasts there, and practical notes on access and visitor facilities. This detailed breakdown highlights the breadth of Costa Rica's avitourism offerings—from well-trodden cloud-forest reserves and urban corridors to remote marine parks and community-managed forests—enabling stakeholders to tailor conservation outreach, visitor services, and product development to the unique context and needs of each destination. This table can serve as a guide for developing targeted marketing, infrastructure improvements, and conservation education tailored to each hotspot's unique context. Below is an expanded Table 8.1 covering **all 30 hotspots** listed by domestic birders, with their visit rate, primary conservation designation, key birding attractions and practices, and notes on accessibility or facilities.

Table 8.1 –Thirty Birding Hotspots and Key Practices Identified by Arias & Ramírez's (2023) Domestic Birders Survey

#	Site	% Visited	Conservation Area / Status	Main Birding Attractions & Practices	Notes & Facilities
1	**Central Valley**	53 %	Mixed municipal and private reserves	Urban and foothill birding; wintering waterfowl in rivers and wetlands	Numerous roadside stops; coffee-farm tours; easy highways

#	Site	% Visited	Conservation Area / Status	Main Birding Attractions & Practices	Notes & Facilities
2	**Los Quetzales NP**	52 %	National Park	Resplendent Quetzal, Emerald Toucanet at hummingbird feeders	Cloud-forest lodges; well-marked trails
3	**Monteverde**	51 %	Biological Reserve	Three-wattled Bellbird, Bellbirds in cloud forest; guided night walk for owls	Canopy bridges; private reserves; shuttles from Santa Elena
4	**La Fortuna–Arenal**	51 %	National Park & Arenal Lacustrine Wetlands	Lake-shore birding (kingfishers, waterbirds), toucans, tanagers	Boat launches; thermal springs; ranger-led excursions
5	**Sarapiquí**	50 %	Maquenque Wildlife Refuge & private reserves	Great green macaw, trogons, manakins; river-edge boat and trail birding	Riverside lodges; canopy platforms; 4×4 recommended
6	**Carara NP**	49 %	National Park	Scarlet macaw, motmots, forest edge species in transitional dry–wet forest	Small visitor center; short loop trails
7	**Turrialba**	44 %	Volcano National Park	Volcano-forest specialists (Palm Tanager, Spangle-cheeked Tanager)	Rural road access; basic trail network
8	**Cachí–Orosi Valley**	42 %	Protected Watersheds & private reserves	Riparian species (Harpy Eagle, toucans); boat tours on Cachí reservoir	Minimal infrastructure; boat rentals
9	**Braulio Carrillo foothills**	42 %	NP buffer zones	Mixed-species flocks; hummingbirds; Sunbittern	Access via Route 32; few visitor services
10	**Nicoya Peninsula**	42 %	Coastal reserves & wildlife refuges	Dry-forest endemics (Yellow-naped Amazon), mangrove river tours	Seasonal ferry; field stations
11	**Península de Osa**	37 %	National Park & Corcovado Marine Area	High endemism (trogons, antbirds); guided jungle hikes	Limited roads; ranger-led patrols
12	**Caño Negro**	36 %	National Wildlife Refuge	Wetland species (jabirus, herons, ducks); boat safaris	Seasonal water levels; basic boat launch
13	**Valle del El General**	36 %	National Park & forest reserves	Montane forest species (Resplendent Quetzal, hummingbirds)	Mountain lodges; steep access
14	**Palo Verde**	34 %	National Wetland & Refuge	Waterbird extravaganza (storks, ibis); dry-forest edge species	Boat tours; visitor center
15	**Tortuguero**	34 %	National Park & Canals	Canal birding (kingfishers, herons); rain-forest edge walks	Boat-only access; canal lodges
16	**Poás–Barva**	30 %	Volcano & Forest Reserves	High-elevation species (quail-doves, flycatchers)	Visitor trails; crater viewpoints

#	Site	% Visited	Conservation Area / Status	Main Birding Attractions & Practices	Notes & Facilities
17	**Bahía Ballena**	30 %	Marine Park & Coastal Reserve	Shorebird watching; mangrove specialists	Coastal trails; tide-dependent access
18	**Manuel Antonio**	28 %	National Park	Mixed flocks (tanagers, warblers); near-shore seabirds	Well-developed trails; visitor facilities
19	**Rincón de la Vieja**	27 %	Volcano National Park	Dry-forest and montane species (orioles, trogons)	Hot springs; multiple trailheads
20	**Boca Tapada**	26 %	Private Reserves & Wildlife Refuge	Lowland rainforest specialists (macaws, trogons)	Lodges along rivers; boat & 4×4 access
21	**Las Cruces**	26 %	Biological Station (INBio/OLF)	Secondary-forest birding; research station tours	On-site lodging; guided walks
22	**Los Santos**	25 %	High-elevation reserves	Páramo specialists; hummingbird feeders	Coffee-farm stays; road access
23	**Keköldi–Sixaola**	24 %	Indigenous Reserve	Caribbean lowland endemics; mixed-species flocks	Community-led trails; guide services
24	**La Cruz**	23 %	Wildlife Refuge	Pacific coastal species; mangrove birding	4×4 required; seasonal access
25	**Miravalles–Tenorio**	20 %	Volcano Reserves	Alkali-forest specialists; geothermal-area birding	On-trail signage; remote camps
26	**Buenos Aires**	16 %	Agricultural frontier	Edge and open-country species	Roadside stops; farm-stay options
27	**Piedras Blancas**	14 %	National Park	Lowland rainforest canopy monkeys & understory birds	Limited lodging; basic trails allows
28	**Barra del Colorado**	14 %	Coastal Wildlife Refuge	Mangrove-dependent species; marine migrants	Boat charters; rustic facilities
29	**Bajos del Toro**	13 %	Private Conservation Area	Cloud-forest edge; seasonal wetland birding	Project lodge; guided hikes
30	**Isla del Coco (Cocos Island)**	3 %	National Park	Pelagic birds (boobies, tropicbirds); endemic species	36-hr boat trip; no on-site lodging

Critical notes

- Sites with low access (e.g., Isla del Coco, Tortuguero, Península de Osa) show markedly lower visitation due to logistics or cost.
- Research stations (Las Cruces, Bajos del Toro) attract both scientists and advanced birders.
- Community-managed and Indigenous areas (Keköldi–Sixaola) offer unique cultural experiences alongside birding.
- Marine and wetland sites (Barra del Colorado, Caño Negro) require boat access, explaining their mid-rank visitation.

8.5. Ecological Zoning, Avitourism Strategy, and Regional Development in Costa Rica

8.5.1 Regional Structuring and Ecological Stratification for Birdwatching

Costa Rica's exceptional natural diversity manifests not only biologically but also spatially. The nation is defined by a complex mosaic of distinct ecological zones, each characterized by specific altitudinal ranges, climatic conditions, vegetation communities, and corresponding avifaunal assemblages (Holdridge, 1987; Stiles, 1991). These naturally delineated regions provide a logical framework for organizing birdwatching tourism, offering access to a wide variety of habitats within relatively compact geographic areas. Key ecological divisions include the seasonally dry tropical forests of the Northern Pacific Lowlands, the humid rainforests of the Caribbean Lowlands, the montane cloud forests of the Central Highlands (Kappelle, 1996a), and the diverse mangrove and estuarine systems along both coastlines. Each region sustains a characteristic mix of resident and migratory bird species, including numerous regional endemics concentrated in areas like the Talamanca Highlands (Wolf, 1976; Kappelle, 1996b; Arias & Torres, 2024; Liu et al., 2023).

From a strategic tourism perspective, this inherent ecological stratification facilitates the segmentation of avitourism experiences into coherent regional circuits (ICT, 2017). Birdwatchers can transition relatively easily between different ecological regions, often within the scope of a single trip, enabling the design of thematic itineraries such as "highland endemics to coastal migrants" or "cloud forest and wetland explorations." This regional approach based on ecological zones not only aids in niche market development but also significantly enhances the educational depth and conservation relevance of the tourism experience provided.

8.5.2. Functional Zoning and Tourism Planning

For avitourism to develop and operate sustainably, it requires grounding in comprehensive regional planning that integrates biodiversity patterns, assesses visitor carrying capacity, and aligns with established conservation priorities (Bote, 2002). Costa Rica's existing ecotourism infrastructure has largely evolved in alignment with these ecologically significant zones and designated conservation corridors. Well-recognized birding destinations such as Monteverde, Tortuguero, Carara National Park, and the Osa Peninsula function as established anchor points within the national birding network. These locations typically benefit from developed infrastructure including trails, observation platforms or hides (Figure 8.1), interpretive signage, and the availability of professionally trained local guides (Rodríguez et al., 2004).

However, other areas, such as specific sections of the Caribbean foothills or certain inland valleys like the Río Navarro–Río Sombrero Protected Zone, possess comparable biodiversity richness but have historically received less promotional focus and infrastructure investment (Arias & Torres, 2024; Zamora et al., 2013). These relatively underrepresented zones present strategic opportunities for expanding birdwatching offerings (Yilmaz, 2011). Such expansion should ideally be planned in alignment with regional socioeconomic development goals and prioritize inclusive tourism models that directly benefit local communities (Monge, 2001; Arias & Torres, 2024; Yilmaz, 2011). Methodologies like the adaptation of the CICATUR tourism inventory framework, as employed by Arias & Torres (2024), can be valuable tools for systematically assessing resources and identifying potential within these emerging areas.

8.5.3. Visual Communication and Symbolism in Birdwatching Promotion

The symbolic representation of biodiversity significantly influences the promotion of birdwatching destinations. Iconic and charismatic species, such as the Resplendent Quetzal (Pharomachrus mocinno) or the Scarlet Macaw (Ara macao), frequently serve as flagship images in national and regional tourism branding campaigns (Wildlife Nomads, n.d.). The consistent use of vibrant, thematic imagery—featuring colorful toucans, diverse hummingbirds, and lush tropical foliage—effectively reinforces Costa Rica's established identity as a premier global avitourism destination (Borreli, 2019). Furthermore, thematic differentiation achieved through visual cues, such as region-specific photography capturing unique habitats, color-coded zoning on maps, or the use of distinct ecosystem motifs, enhances clarity for prospective tourists and strengthens the distinctiveness of individual destinations or circuits.

Effective visual communication, however, must extend beyond mere aesthetic appeal to support robust planning and responsible tourism. Maps, brochures, websites, and digital applications accompanying birdwatching circuits should strive for a balance between promotional allure and scientific accuracy (Mayorga & Kohl, 2021). They should indicate not only the likely locations for observing key species but also delineate ecologically sensitive areas, provide realistic information on access conditions and necessary logistics, highlight seasonal variations like migration periods or breeding activity, and prominently feature community-based tourism initiatives and locally developed resources, such as the guide produced for the Río Navarro–Río Sombrero zone (Arias & Torres, 2024).

8.5.4. Spatial Interpretation and Orientation for Visitors

Successfully navigating Costa Rica's diverse birding landscape demands more than just ornithological knowledge; it necessitates effective spatial orientation across a geographically complex and climatically varied terrain (May, 2013). While modern tools like elevation maps and GPS technology aid significantly in route planning, many birdwatchers continue to rely on visual guides, thematic zoning frameworks (like the regional breakdown in Figure 8.8), and local expertise to comprehend the distribution of key habitats and target species (Stiles & Skutch, 1989; Garrigues & Dean, 2014). Simplified spatial segmentation—for instance, categorizing the country into broad regions like "lowlands," "foothills," "highlands," and "coastal/marine"—can assist visitors in planning multi-site itineraries that maintain ecological coherence.

Accessibility remains a critical consideration. The ease of reaching prime birding sites varies considerably. Coastal wetlands might require boat access, high-altitude mountain ridges may involve challenging hikes or specialized transport, and remote rainforest lodges often necessitate specific logistical arrangements. Infrastructure quality, particularly road conditions, can also differ significantly between regions (Arias & Torres, 2024). A truly comprehensive birdwatching development strategy must explicitly integrate these logistical dimensions into its spatial planning logic, aiming to ensure equitable and sustainable access to both renowned "classic" destinations and promising emerging birding areas. Furthermore, the increasing use of citizen science platforms like eBird and iNaturalist not only aids researchers but also serves as a valuable tool for visitors, helping to locate recent sightings and identify local hotspots, thereby enhancing spatial orientation and trip planning (Ortega-Álvarez & Calderón-Parra, 2021; Arias & Torres, 2024).

8.6. Implications for Strategic Development and Themed Itineraries

The inherent geographic and ecological complexity of Costa Rica provides fertile ground for developing a diverse array of themed birdwatching itineraries (ICT, 2017). Such thematic routes offer curated experiences focused on specific habitats, species groups, or ecological phenomena. As highlighted by Arias and Torres (2024), "the development of birdwatching products promotes the diversification of ecotourism activities and their management in new areas, strengthening the birdwatching sector and creating development opportunities in rural regions beyond the traditional destinations" (p. 7). And examples of such products can be empirically set as 'routes' or 'circuits' with the presence of birding assets, resources and structures. Examples in Costa Rica include:

- **Cloud Forest Endemics Circuit**: Centered on the mist-shrouded highlands of Monteverde, San Gerardo de Dota, Los Quetzales National Park, and the emerging Río Navarro–Río Sombrero zone, this circuit leverages well-developed trail networks, canopy walkways, and local naturalist guides to deliver reliable sightings of iconic cloud-forest specialists. Early-morning excursions—often commencing between 5:30 and 7:00 AM—target species such as the Resplendent Quetzal (*Pharomachrus mocinno*), Three-wattled Bellbird (*Procnias tricarunculatus*), and Wandering Tattler (*Tringa incana*) against the backdrop of endemic flora (Viator 2025). Community-run lodges in San Gerardo de Dota reinvest birding fees into habitat restoration, while partnerships between the Monteverde Conservation League and the Monteverde Institute have pioneered visitor-carrying-capacity guidelines to prevent trail erosion and disturbance during peak season.

- **Mangroves and Marine Birds Expedition**: This coastal circuit threads together Osa Peninsula's Corcovado National Park, the mangrove channels of Sierpe–Térraba and Golfo Dulce, and the Caribbean waterways of Tortuguero. Visitors embark on 4–6 hour boat safaris at dawn or dusk to encounter species like the Mangrove Hummingbird (*Amazilia boucardi*), Boat-billed Heron (*Cochlearius cochlearius*), and Roseate Spoonbill (*Platalea ajaja*). Corcovado's remote ranger-patrolled beaches and the World Heritage–protected Isla del Coco extension guarantee both high biodiversity and rigorous visitor limits, while community cooperatives in Drake Bay offer homestays that direct 70 % of tour revenues to local conservation projects.

- **Wetlands and Waterfowl Route**: Navigating the Tempisque Basin, Palo Verde National Park, and Caño Negro Wildlife Refuge, this seasonally-driven circuit showcases Costa Rica's premier waterbird concentrations. Dry-season boat tours (Dec–Apr) on the Río Tempisque reveal nesting Jabiru Storks (*Jabiru mycteria*), Roseate Spoonbills, and large flocks of herons and egrets, while Caño Negro's flooded plains host Jabirus, Wood Storks, and vulnerable duck species (Sánchez Pérez, 2002). Interpretation centers at Palo Verde combine interactive exhibits with guided paddle-canoe trips, and the park's Ramsar designation underpins a visitor-education program that has reduced off-trail trampling by 60 % since 2018 .

- **Specialized Endemics Trail**: Designed for experienced listers, this trail links lesser-known foothill sites—such as Volcán Poás' oak-elm forests, Braulio Carrillo's mid-elevation ridges, and the community-managed reserves around Golfito—to target narrowly distributed species like the Coppery-headed Emerald (*Microchera cupreiceps*) and Black-cheeked Ant-Tanager (*Habia atrimaxillaris*). Expert-led small-group outings employ acoustic monitoring and GPS-tagged playback protocols under strict ethical guidelines to maximize detection rates while minimizing stress on sensitive species (Arias & Torres, 2024). Local guides from Keköldi and Sixaola indigenous reserves earn certification through programs under Executive Decree 41369 (2018), ensuring both cultural engagement and sustainable income streams.

Table 8.2 synthesizes the principal community-based avitourism circuits in Costa Rica, presenting each route's geographic span, its relative distance from the capital, the quality of access and visitor infrastructure, and the primary habitats or species that define its ecological appeal. By comparing these attributes side by side, the table allows planners and operators to evaluate trade-offs—such as longer travel times versus richer biodiversity, or well-paved roads against more rustic, low-impact experiences—and to identify priority investments in transportation, lodging, and interpretive services. Ultimately, this organized overview supports the strategic design of birding itineraries that balance operational feasibility with conservation outcomes and authentic community engagement.

Table 8.2 - Key Characteristics of Costa Rica's Thematic Birdwatching Circuits

Circuit Name	Key Locations	Distance from San José	Tourism Access & Infrastructure	Ecological Focus / Notes
1. Cloud Forest Endemics Circuit	- Monteverde Cloud Forest Reserve - San Gerardo de Dota - Los Quetzales National Park - Río Navarro–Río Sombrero Zone (Talamanca foothills)	- Monteverde: ~140 km NW - San Gerardo de Dota: ~90 km SE - Río Navarro Zone: ~65–90 km E/SE	- All sites reachable via paved or improved rural roads - Canopy bridges and early-morning guided walks (5:30–7:00 AM) - Eco-lodges in San Gerardo de Dota reinvest birding fees into habitat restoration - Monteverde Conservation League & Monteverde Institute manage visitor-carrying-capacity limits to prevent trail erosion	- Mid- to high-elevation cloud forests harboring *Pharomachrus mocinno*, *Procnias tricarunculatus*, *Microchera cupreiceps* - Critical climate-sensitive biodiversity hotspots - Community-based monitoring fosters both conservation and local livelihoods
2. Mangroves & Marine Birds Expedition	- Corcovado National Park & Golfo Dulce mangroves (Osa Peninsula) - Sierpe–Térraba delta channels - Tortuguero Canals (Northern Caribbean) - Gulf of Nicoya islands	- Osa Peninsula: ~340–370 km (via domestic flight or overland+boat) - Golfo Nicoya: ~95–120 km - Tortuguero: ~130 km (road+boat)	- Combination of road, domestic flight, and motorized boat safaris (4–6 h at dawn/dusk) - Ranger-led tours with strict group-size limits in Corcovado (UNESCO World Heritage Site) - Community cooperatives in Drake Bay channel ~70 % of tour revenues into local	- Coastal mangrove estuaries and pelagic zones - Key species: Mangrove Hummingbird (*Amazilia boucardi*), Boat-billed Heron (*Cochlearius cochlearius*), Roseate Spoonbill (*Platalea ajaja*) - Critical for migratory shorebirds and reef-associated seabirds

Circuit Name	Key Locations	Distance from San José	Tourism Access & Infrastructure	Ecological Focus / Notes
	(Isla Pájaros, San Lucas)		conservation and education projects	
3. Wetlands & Waterfowl Route	- Palo Verde National Park - Caño Negro Wildlife Refuge - Tempisque River Basin	- Palo Verde: ~175 km NW - Caño Negro: ~210 km NW - Tempisque: ~170–200 km NW	- Dry-season (Dec–Apr) boat tours from Puerto Humo, Los Chiles, and local communities - Interactive visitor center at Palo Verde with multimedia exhibits - Canoe-based wildlife viewing and boardwalks - Ramsar designation underpins an environmental-education program that has cut off-trail trampling by ~60 % since 2018	- Seasonally flooded wetlands supporting large congregations of Jabiru Storks, Wood Storks, herons, ibises, and ducks - Ideal migratory waterbird habitat (Nov–Apr) - Strong emphasis on visitor education to maintain habitat integrity
4. Specialized Endemics Trail	- Volcán Poás oak-elm forests - Braulio Carrillo NP foothills - Piedras Blancas & Golfito region (Golfo Dulce) - Keköldi & Sixaola Indigenous reserves	- Poás area: ~50–80 km NW - Braulio Carrillo: ~50 km NE - Golfito/Piedras Blancas: ~320 km SE	- Small-group, expert-led field surveys using GPS-assisted playback under ethical limits - Guides certified under Executive Decree 41369 (2018) for minimal disturbance - Collaboration with Indigenous communities for culturally respectful access and benefit-sharing	- Narrow-range, elevation-restricted endemics: Coppery-headed Emerald (*Microchera cupreiceps*), Black-cheeked Ant-Tanager (*Habia atrimaxillaris*) - Demands specialized knowledge and adherence to best-practice ethics - Supports capacity building and alternative income for local guides

Source: *Table prepared by the author, 2025, drawing on Kappelle (1996b); Rodríguez et al. (2004); Sánchez Pérez (2002); BirdLife International (2024); Arias & Torres (2024); Zúñiga & Fallas (2018).*

Academic Notes & Integration:

- These circuits are suitable for **thematic packaging**, **bird monitoring projects**, or **educational tourism modules**.
- Infrastructure and accessibility vary; combining high-demand destinations (e.g., Monteverde) with lesser-known endemic hotspots (e.g., Piedras Blancas) allows balanced itineraries.
- These circuits also represent **priority areas for biodiversity conservation**, intersecting with Costa Rica's **SINAC protected area system**, **PES schemes**, and **community-based tourism efforts**.

8.6.1. A Bried Outline: Cloud Forest Endemics Circuit and Birdwatching Resources

Costa Rica's Cloud Forest Endemics Circuit represents one of the most ecologically and ornithologically significant birdwatching routes in Mesoamerica, encompassing mid- to high-elevation montane habitats across sites such as the Monteverde Cloud Forest Reserve, San Gerardo de Dota, Los Quetzales National Park, and the Río Navarro–Río Sombrero Protected Zone. These areas harbor an exceptional concentration of **endemism and altitudinal specialization**, offering habitat to emblematic species like the **Resplendent Quetzal** (*Pharomachrus mocinno*), **Three-wattled Bellbird** (*Procnias tricarunculatus*), and **Coppery-headed Emerald** (*Microchera cupreiceps*), many of which are restricted to narrow ecological bands and cloud-laden microclimates. The circuit supports a growing network of birdwatching infrastructure—including canopy walkways, local guides, and biological stations—and integrates conservation, environmental education, and community-based tourism. This case study explores how such resources, together with Costa Rica's protected area governance and ecotourism strategies, have turned these cloud forests into both conservation priorities and international avitourism destinations (Kappelle, 1996b; Rodríguez et al., 2004; Arias & Torres, 2024).

Figure 8.4 - Photo of Sky Walk trail map at Monteverde Cloud Forest, Costa Rica. All rights reserved to the original photographer. For non-commercial educational use only.

Figure 8.4 -Caption: Suspension bridge traversing the upper canopy of the Monteverde Cloud Forest, Costa Rica. This image illustrates an example of elevated infrastructure designed for low-impact ecotourism and environmental education. Such canopy-level walkways enable visitors to access and interpret mid- and upper-strata forest ecosystems, facilitating birdwatching, biodiversity monitoring, and ecological appreciation while minimizing disturbance to understory habitats (see Nadkarni et al., 2001; Powell & Haber, 2005).

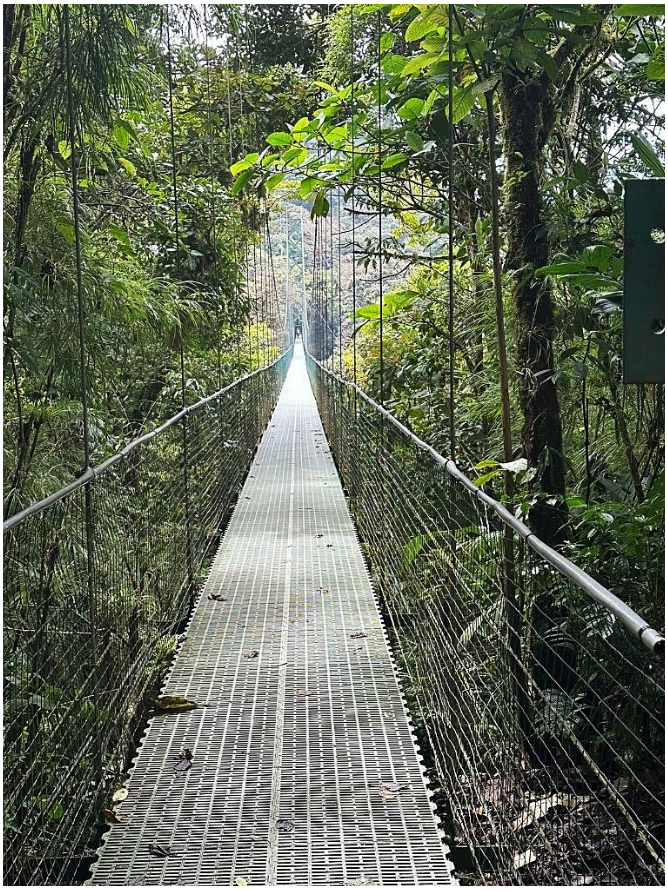


Figure 8.5 - Photo of Sky Walk trail map at Monteverde Cloud Forest, Costa Rica.

Figure 8.5 -Caption: Aerial suspension bridge within the Monteverde Cloud Forest Reserve, Costa Rica**.** This elevated walkway is part of the Sky Walk ecotourism infrastructure, designed to facilitate minimal-impact access to the cloud forest canopy. Such bridges allow for the direct observation of vertical forest stratification, promote avian and arboreal biodiversity studies, and serve as a platform for environmental education and interpretive tourism (Clark et al., 2013; Nadkarni, 2004).

Figure 8.6 - Photo of Sky Walk trail map at Monteverde Cloud Forest, Costa Rica. All rights reserved to the original photographer. For non-commercial educational use only.

Figure 8.6 -Caption: Entrance map for the Sky Walk trails and hanging bridges in the Monteverde Cloud Forest Reserve, Costa Rica**.** This sign outlines the route for the iconic Sky Walk, featuring a network of suspension bridges (Puentes 1–5) that allow immersive exploration of the mid- and upper-canopy layers of the cloud forest. The bridges vary in length from 36 to 122 meters and reach heights of up to 27 meters, offering birdwatchers and ecotourists a unique perspective on this biodiverse ecosystem. **Visitor Testimonial:** "Was really nervous to do this as I hate heights, but we booked a guide and walked across 4 hanging bridges... So glad I did it!"— *Karen H, TripAdvisor, January 2024.*

Figure 8.7 - Resplendent Quetzal (*Pharomachrus mocinno*). Photo by ryanacandee (2015, February 6), licensed under Creative Commons Attribution 2.0. Generic (CC BY 2.0). Original image available at: https://www.flickr.com/photos/31267353@N03/15993693034/ GPS location: 9°41'35.34"N, 83°54'12.1"W

Figure 8.7 - Caption: The bird in the image is the Resplendent Quetzal (*Pharomachrus mocinno*). It is one of the most iconic and revered bird species in Central America, especially in Costa Rica's Monteverde Cloud Forest. It is one of the most emblematic birds of Mesoamerican biodiversity and a key attraction for birdwatching tourism in the Monteverde Cloud Forest Reserve. Males are especially striking during the breeding season, when they exhibit elongated upper tail coverts that trail behind them in flight.

Identification and Significance (Resplendent Quetzal):

- **Brilliant emerald-green plumage** on the head, back, and wings, often with iridescent tones.
- **Vibrant crimson-red chest and belly**.
- **Yellow bill** and **large dark eyes**, giving it a gentle, ethereal appearance.
- Males (like the one in the photo) are especially magnificent during breeding season, when they grow **extraordinarily long tail streamers**.
- Considered a **symbol of freedom and divinity** by many Indigenous cultures, particularly the Maya and Aztec civilizations.

Ecotourism and Conservation Importance:

- The Resplendent Quetzal is a **flagship species** for cloud forest conservation.

- It draws thousands of **avitourists and nature photographers** annually to Monteverde and other cloud forest reserves.
- Its presence often indicates a **healthy, mature montane forest ecosystem**.

Figure 8.8 - Lesson's Motmot (*Momotus lessonii*). Photo by Kathy & Sam from Beaverton, OR, USA (2011, December 18), licensed under Creative Commons Attribution 2.0 Generic (CC BY 2.0).Originally uploaded by snowmanradio. Original image available at: [Lesson's Motmot on Wikimedia Commons]

Figure 8.8 -Caption: The bird in the photo is a Lesson's Motmot (*Momotus lessonii*). It is a striking and iconic species often encountered in Monteverde Cloud Forest, Costa Rica. It is recognizable by its vibrant turquoise crown, racquet-tipped tail, and red eye, this species is common in tropical and subtropical forests of Central America and plays a prominent role in Costa Rica's birdwatching experiences.

Key Identification Features (Lesson's Motmot):

- **Vibrant turquoise-blue crown** with black central cap.
- **Bright red eyes** and a **black facial mask** extending to the bill.
- **Green body** with blue highlights on the wings and tail.
- Long **racquet-tipped tail feathers**, often swaying pendulum-like (though not clearly visible in this image due to the angle).
- Common in **humid tropical forests** and **mid-elevation cloud forests** of Central America.

Ecological and Tourism Significance:

- Lesson's Motmot is a **favorite among birdwatchers (avitourists)** for its vivid plumage and distinctive tail.
- It's considered an **umbrella species** in conservation efforts, as protecting its habitat benefits a wide range of cloud forest biodiversity.
- Frequently featured in **eco-lodges, nature reserves, and wildlife photography tours** in Costa Rica

These strategically designed thematic routes serve multiple purposes. They enhance the tourist experience by providing structured, scientifically informed narratives. They also contribute significantly to conservation awareness, support organized bird monitoring efforts (often utilizing platforms like eBird), and stimulate local economic development through effective destination clustering and coordinated itinerary planning (Mikery & Pérez-Vázquez, 2014).

8.7. Opportunities and Gaps in Infrastructure and Interpretation

Despite Costa Rica's leadership position in many facets of ecotourism, specific gaps persist concerning the optimal integration and development of birdwatching-specific infrastructure and interpretation. Identified areas for improvement include:

- A lack of detailed, species-specific interpretive signage or readily available educational tools in many less-frequented but highly biodiverse regions.

- Limited strategic planning regarding road maintenance and access improvements within crucial biodiversity corridors that could facilitate birding tourism while minimizing ecological disruption.

- An absence, in many publicly available tourism maps and materials, of clear overlays indicating the boundaries of protected areas, designated Important Bird Areas (IBAs) (Sánchez et al., 2009; BirdLife International, 2024), or recognized biological corridors, which hinders integrated planning.

- An underrepresentation of community-based tourism ventures and locally managed reserves within mainstream tourism marketing and promotional channels (Arias & Torres, 2024).

Furthermore, crucial climatic and seasonal information—such as detailed rainfall patterns affecting accessibility, peak timing for migratory bird arrivals, or specific breeding seasons influencing visibility—is often inadequately communicated in materials aimed at the general tourist market. Systematically integrating such temporal data into itinerary suggestions, online resources, and guide training programs could significantly enhance both the quality of the visitor experience and the ecological sensitivity of birdwatching practices across the country. Addressing these gaps through targeted investment and planning, informed by local assessments like those conducted by Arias & Torres (2024) in the Río Navarro–Río Sombrero zone, is essential for the continued sustainable growth of the sector (Zúñiga & Fallas, 2018).

.

In summary, Costa Rica's birdwatching tourism landscape represents a dynamic interplay between exceptional ecological richness, pronounced spatial diversity, and evolving strategic zoning efforts. Through deliberate planning and compelling storytelling, the nation has successfully converted its natural capital into a globally respected avitourism product. However, the ongoing expansion and refinement of this offering demand more than just visual promotion and biodiversity celebration; they necessitate targeted infrastructure investment, a commitment to regional equity, robust community involvement, and sustained ecological foresight. Consequently, spatial thinking within the context of birdwatching must transcend traditional mapping to embrace integrated, inclusive, and adaptive systems that foster both sustainable tourism and effective long-term conservation.

8.8. Avitourism as Conservation Economy: Growth, Density, and International Visibility

Costa Rica's standing as a premier birdwatching destination is not merely anecdotal; it is firmly substantiated by scientific data and enjoys widespread global recognition (White, 2022). The country boasts an impressive checklist of over 935 documented bird species (Garrigues et al., 2023; Billerman et al. 2025), a figure that includes charismatic and highly sought-after endemic species such as the Mangrove Hummingbird (Amazilia boucardi) found in specific coastal habitats, and the Black-cheeked Ant-Tanager (Habia atrimaxillaris) restricted to the southern Pacific rainforests. This avian richness consistently places Costa Rica among the world's elite birding destinations.

A particularly compelling metric highlighting this status is the Bird Species National Density (BSND), a concept developed by the influential ecotourism expert Héctor Ceballos-Lascuráin. According to this index, Costa Rica ranks first globally, boasting an exceptional density of 16.9 species per 1,000 km². This figure significantly surpasses other biodiversity hotspots, including neighboring Panama, which has a BSND of 12.2. This extraordinary concentration implies that birders visiting Costa Rica can potentially encounter a remarkable diversity of species within relatively short travel distances and timeframes—a distinct practical and ecological advantage that few other countries can replicate (Arias, 2020; Arias L., 2017).

The economic significance of this sector is underscored by data from the Costa Rican Tourism Institute (ICT). According to their estimates (ICT, 2020), approximately 12.3% of international tourists arriving by air engage in birdwatching activities using specialized equipment. Studies indicate that these visitors often exhibit distinct travel patterns: they tend to have higher daily expenditures, stay for longer durations, and are more inclined to explore regions beyond the conventional tourism circuits (Arias & Ramírez, 2021; Ministerio de Comercio Exterior y Turismo [Perú], 2014). This pattern directly stimulates economic activity in rural areas, providing justification for investments in specialized infrastructure (like lodges and trails) and the training of local guides. Consequently, birdwatching in Costa Rica functions not merely as a recreational pursuit but operates as a tangible development strategy, effectively aligning economic incentives derived from tourism with crucial conservation goals and the enhancement of community well-being (Nuñez Chacón, 2025).

8.9. Ethics, Education, and Best Practices: Building a Sustainable Birdwatching Future

Acknowledging both the substantial opportunities and the potential challenges presented by the growing popularity of avitourism, Costa Rica proactively developed and launched its first comprehensive national manual outlining best practices for birdwatching (Pereira, Arias & Ramírez, 2022). This initiative was a collaborative effort involving the ICT, the Mesa Nacional de Aviturismo (National Birdwatching Roundtable), and prominent conservation NGOs. The resulting document provides detailed operational, ethical, and environmental guidelines designed to ensure that birdwatching activities actively contribute to, rather than detract from, the nation's ecological integrity (cf. BirdLife International, 2011; Ministerio de Comercio, Industria y Turismo [Colombia], 2017).

The manual places strong emphasis on promoting low-impact practices, explicitly addressing key areas such as:

- Minimal use of artificial lures: Discouraging the use of playback recordings to attract birds (Dingle, 2001), permitting it only under specific constraints related to duration, distance, volume, and species sensitivity, aligning with international ethical standards (American Birding Association, n.d.).
- Careful trail management: Advocating responsible use of designated trails to prevent soil erosion, habitat disturbance, and fragmentation.
- Ethical feeding practices: Recommending the use of fresh, ideally organic, fruits and nectar solutions in well-maintained and hygienically managed feeding stations, avoiding processed foods or excessive provisioning (Menacho, 2020; Arias & Torres, 2024).
- Responsible photography and observation: Promoting ethical behavior around nesting sites, minimizing the use of artificial light (especially for nocturnal species), and respecting wildlife disturbance distances.

Beyond visitor conduct, the manual also addresses the critical role and professionalism of the guiding sector. Bird guides are encouraged to cultivate not only comprehensive species identification skills but also strong ecological interpretive abilities, linguistic versatility to cater to international visitors, and a capacity for participatory engagement with local community initiatives and ongoing conservation projects. Continuous professional development, formal certification processes (governed by Executive Decree No. 41369, 2018), active participation in citizen science programs like eBird and iNaturalist (which aids both monitoring and tourism visibility, as highlighted by Ortega-Álvarez & Calderón-Parra, 2021; Arias & Torres, 2024), and involvement in climate resilience monitoring are all promoted as integral components of a broader movement towards establishing a truly sustainable, community-inclusive, and scientifically informed tourism model.

8.10. Legal and Policy Framework: Anchoring Avitourism in National Development

Costa Rica's strategic commitment to developing avitourism as a sustainable economic sector is further solidified by its supportive legal and policy architecture. Several key legislative instruments provide the foundation for this approach:

- **Law No. 6990 (1985)**: This early legislation established important fiscal incentives aimed at encouraging investment in sustainable tourism operations, laying groundwork for the sector's growth.
- **Biodiversity Law No. 7788 (1998)**: A landmark piece of environmental legislation, this law provides the legal basis for defining and managing protected areas (including categories like the Zona Protectora relevant to Arias & Torres, 2024), regulates access to and use of biodiversity, establishes frameworks for valuing and potentially compensating ecosystem services (like PES), and formalizes mechanisms for in situ conservation.
- **Executive Decree No. 41369 (2018)**: This decree specifically addresses the tourism sector, establishing regulations concerning the certification, required competencies, responsibilities, and professional conduct expected of tourism

guides, with particular attention given to operations within ecologically sensitive areas like national parks and reserves.

Collectively, these legal instruments, alongside numerous related regulations and policies administered by MINAE and ICT, form a robust institutional scaffold. This framework effectively links the development of avitourism with overarching national development objectives, principles of sound ecological governance, and strategies aimed at fostering rural empowerment and diversifying local economies.

Moreover, as interest in birdwatching in Costa Rica continues to soar—with ever larger numbers of tourists and local enthusiasts venturing into forests, wetlands, and private reserves—the potential for unintended disturbances to avian life and habitats also increases. In this context, the Ornithological Association of Costa Rica's mandate—to advance the study, research, and conservation of wild birds and their environments (AOCR, 2014)—makes the establishment of a formal Ethics Code not just timely, but essential. By laying out clear, science-based guidelines, the Code will help ensure that growing visitor numbers do not compromise bird welfare or ecosystem health.

Moreover, these best practices will foster respectful, cooperative relationships between birdwatchers and private-landowners, who manage much of the country's prime habitat (Sekercioglu, 2002), and will reinforce compliance with Costa Rica's existing wildlife protection laws. In doing so, the Ethics Code will safeguard both the natural integrity of birding sites and the social license for birdwatching to flourish as a sustainable, conservation-driven activity well into the future:

> Birdwatching—and the tourism that revolves around it—yields economic benefits that incentivize wildlife conservation, produces a smaller environmental footprint than many other economic activities, promotes the protection of forests beyond formally protected areas, deepens appreciation for local natural-history knowledge, and stimulates greater ornithological education and awareness among both residents and visitors.
> On the other hand, certain negative impacts of birdwatching can include disturbing birds' natural behaviors, increasing egg predation and nest abandonment, causing habitat pollution and degradation, undermining local cultural practices, and even encouraging the pursuit—or harassment—of rare or threatened species (Menacho-Odio et. al., 2020, p. 97).

8.11. A Short Case Study: Birdwatching and Nature-Based Tourism in the Buffer Zone of Tapantí–Macizo de la Muerte National Park, Costa Rica

The buffer zone adjacent to the Tapantí–Macizo de la Muerte National Park in Costa Rica's highlands serves as a compelling example of successful avitourism development integrated with conservation. This area encompasses three principal highland communities—Villa Mills (situated at approximately 2,800 meters above sea level), San Gerardo de Dota (2,200 masl), and Copey de Dota (1,950 masl)—all offering exceptional environmental conditions highly conducive to birdwatching and broader nature-based tourism. A foundational study by Rodríguez, Villalobos, and Campos (2007) highlighted the park's remarkable avian biodiversity, noting its high concentration of endemic species and consistent attraction of international visitors, thereby positioning the region as a destination with significant potential for sustainable tourism development. Their research documented a total of 216 bird species within the study area, a list that included 49 endemics (primarily regional endemics shared with Panama), 32 migratory species, 4 species listed on the IUCN Red

List at the time of the study (IUCN, 1994), and 25 species identified as possessing particular appeal for birdwatchers. Among the most highly sought-after species are iconic highland cloud forest inhabitants such as the Resplendent Quetzal (Pharomachrus mocinno), the Wrenthrush (Zeledonia coronata), the Long-tailed Silky-flycatcher (Ptilogonys caudatus), the Volcano Hummingbird (Selasphorus flammula), and the Volcano Junco (Junco vulcani)—all emblematic of the unique ecosystems found within the Talamanca mountain range (Wolf, 1976; Stiles, 1991; Kappelle, 1996a).

Tourist behavior and preferences within this region strongly reflect its rich natural attributes. Surveys conducted by the ICT (2000) indicated that a substantial 84.8% of international visitors participate in birdwatching, identifying it as the primary motivation for their visit. In contrast, domestic Costa Rican tourists visiting the area tend to favor complementary activities like recreational trout fishing, hiking, horseback riding, and general nature appreciation, "among the foreign tourists interviewed, 84.8% participated in bird watching and defined it as the most important attraction in the area. A similar percentage of national tourists considered that relax, trout fishing, hiking and horseback riding are the best attractions" (Rodríguez et.al., 2004, p.63). This divergence in motivations between international and domestic visitor segments underscores the necessity for targeted marketing strategies and infrastructure development that effectively balances immersive ecotourism experiences, particularly focused on avifauna, with broader recreational offerings catering to diverse interests. Significantly, the study by Rodríguez et al. (2004) found that species endemism was cited as the most influential factor determining the perceived value of bird species among visitors, indicating a potent alignment between conservation priorities (protecting unique species) and market demand (visitor interest in seeing rare endemics) (cf. Primack et al., 2001).

However, the trajectory of tourism development has varied across the three principal communities. Villa Mills has historically emphasized scientific tourism, often linked to ongoing forest ecology research conducted in the area (Kappelle, 1996b). San Gerardo de Dota has emerged as a prominent and well-established avitourism hub, where local residents have proactively developed accommodations, trail networks, and specialized birding services over several decades. Copey de Dota, conversely, represents a more nascent destination where community members have only more recently begun to recognize and explore the economic and ecological potential inherent in birdwatching tourism. This observed disparity highlights clear opportunities for implementing inclusive development strategies aimed at expanding birding-related infrastructure, enhancing community capacity building (e.g., guide training, hospitality skills), and strengthening local governance structures related to conservation (Zúñiga & Fallas, 2018) and tourism management (Monge, 2001).

8.11.1. Toward a Sustainable Birdwatching Tourism Model in the Macizo de la Muerte Region

The documented richness of avifauna within the Macizo de la Muerte region—characterized by high levels of endemism and attracting a consistent flow of international birdwatchers—provides compelling evidence for the strong potential of developing avitourism as a cornerstone of sustainable local economic activity (Rodríguez et al., 2004). Encouragingly, local residents have actively begun participating in this sector. Many report tangible improvements in their livelihoods derived from tourism-related activities and are concurrently engaged in environmental stewardship actions, such as cultivating native plant species known to provide food resources for birds. This grassroots involvement strongly reinforces the viability of birdwatching tourism as an expanding enterprise within the region. Simultaneously, however, it highlights the critical and urgent need for proactive, thoughtful planning to guide infrastructure development in a manner that minimizes potential negative ecological impacts (Rodriguez et al., 2004; Budowski, 1990; Kappelle, 1996b).

The three communities studied—Villa Mills, San Gerardo de Dota, and Copey de Dota—exhibit distinct levels of preparedness and existing capacity to effectively capitalize on birdwatching as a primary tourism resource. While San Gerardo de Dota currently represents the most advanced community in terms of established infrastructure and service provision, even here, the historical absence of comprehensive regulatory frameworks has arguably contributed to observable negative consequences. These include mounting pressure on sensitive natural habitats due to increased visitation and activity, and persistent risks associated with illegal bird capture and trade (IUCN, 1994), practices which threaten not only specific vulnerable species populations but also undermine the long-term ecological and economic sustainability of tourism in the region (Primack et al., 2001).

Addressing these multifaceted challenges necessitates the implementation of a coordinated, region-wide tourism management plan. Ideally, such a plan should be spearheaded by MINAE, incorporating stringent oversight mechanisms for issuing permits related to tourism infrastructure development, implementing clear spatial zoning to guide tourist activities away from highly sensitive areas, and formally designating and protecting critical ecological zones. Furthermore, strategically identifying bird species possessing both significant economic (attraction value), sustainability and forest quality (ecological value) as the existence of certain species which are sensible for the environment change, vegetation change, helps to understanding the quality of the environment, "such species identified in the region are: pava negra (*Ch. unicolor*), trepamusgo cachetón (*P. lawrence*), urraca gorgiplateada (*C. argentula*) and zeledonia *(Z. coronata*)" (Rodriguez et. al., 2004, p.66), and symbolic importance is crucial for effectively integrating biodiversity conservation objectives directly into tourism planning frameworks. Education must also be a central pillar of this strategy, manifested through comprehensive regional environmental education programs targeting local residents, business owners, and schoolchildren, fostering a deeper understanding and appreciation of the region's natural heritage (Monge, 2001; Budowski, 1990).

From a market development standpoint, the region could significantly benefit from cultivating a distinctive ecotourism brand or identity, strategically centered on its exceptional avifauna and broader natural attributes. This branding initiative should be designed to resonate effectively at local, national, and international levels. Moreover, while birdwatching provides a powerful and strategic entry point for tourism development, it should not be viewed in isolation as a universal solution. Instead, it must be carefully integrated with other sustainable livelihood activities to foster diversified, resilient local economies less dependent on a single sector. Cultivating a deeply ingrained local culture that genuinely values birds and biodiversity will be fundamentally critical for achieving long-term, synergistic goals in both conservation and sustainable development (Kappelle, 1996a; Stiles, 1991).

In this context, the insight offered by Kappelle (1996b) remains highly relevant: achieving sustainable ecotourism and effective biodiversity conservation in this region is contingent upon the active, meaningful participation of local communities coupled with robust, collaborative partnerships involving political decision-makers at municipal, regional, and national scales. Such inclusive governance structures are not merely desirable—they are imperative for constructing an equitable, enduring model of development firmly grounded in principles of environmental responsibility and profound cultural respect. As compellingly demonstrated by the research of Rodríguez et al. (2004), birdwatching initiatives within this buffer zone not only contribute positively to biodiversity conservation efforts but also offer a valuable, replicable model for achieving sustainable rural development through strategically managed nature-based tourism.

8.12. Avitourism as Vision and Vanguard

Costa Rica transcends its role as merely a destination for birdwatching; it functions as a dynamic, living laboratory for advancing sustainable tourism practices and serves as a global exemplar of conservation-centered development. The nation's confluence of exceptionally high biodiversity levels, innovative environmental governance systems, and a deeply ingrained national conservation ethic uniquely positions it to lead the global avitourism movement (Arias, 2020; Arias L., 2017).

However, this leadership role carries inherent responsibilities. Significant future challenges include effectively managing visitor carrying capacities at popular and ecologically sensitive sites, continuously professionalizing tourism services to meet evolving market expectations, and proactively safeguarding critical habitats against mounting pressures from climate change and land-use conversion.

Ensuring the long-term resilience and sustainability of Costa Rica's birdwatching sector will demand not only persistent ecological stewardship but also the implementation of careful, evidence-based management of visitor numbers, particularly as international interest continues its upward trajectory. Establishing clear, scientifically informed thresholds for visitation, supported by robust ecological monitoring programs, is essential for protecting habitat quality and minimizing disturbance to wildlife behavior.

Equally critical is the ongoing professionalization of birding guides and associated service providers, emphasizing ecological literacy, cultural sensitivity, adherence to ethical best practices in wildlife tourism (American Birding Association, n.d.), and potentially incorporating training on new technologies and citizen science participation (Ortega-Álvarez & Calderón-Parra, 2021; Arias & Torres, 2024). By strategically investing in both ecological integrity and service excellence, Costa Rica can solidify and reinforce its leadership position as a global model for sustainable avitourism.

Ultimately, through the continued implementation of sound policies, the fostering of participatory governance structures that empower local communities (Kappelle, 1996b), and sustained investment in education, appropriate infrastructure, and the diversification of local livelihoods, Costa Rica's avitourism sector possesses the potential to evolve into a mature, equitable, and highly resilient model—one where the well-being of birds, the prosperity of communities, and the health of ecosystems are intrinsically linked and mutually reinforcing. Local initiatives, such as the detailed circuit design and resource inventory undertaken in the Río Navarro–Río Sombrero Protected Zone (Arias & Torres, 2024), represent crucial building blocks in realizing this broader national vision.

8.13. Costa Rica Birdwatching Species

Figure 8.9. Montage of Characteristic Bird Species of Costa Rica. A curated selection of emblematic avian species spanning Costa Rica's major ecosystems—from cloud-forest

quetzals and lowland macaws to coastal spoonbills and dry-forest magpie-jays—designed to showcase the country's extraordinary birdwatching diversity.

Source Description: Wildlife Nomads. (n.d.). Birds of Costa Rica: A birdwatcher's paradise. Wildlife Nomads Blog. https://www.wildlifenomads.com/blog/birds-of-costa-rica-a-birdwatchers-paradise
Caption:

A Detailed Outline for Each Species presented in **Fig. 8.9**:

- **Resplendent Quetzal (***Pharomachrus mocinno***):** The jewel of Mesoamerican highlands, this iridescent green trogon—with its elongate tail streamers—is most reliably encountered in the cloud-forest preserves of Monteverde and San Gerardo de Dota (Rodríguez et al., 2004). Its presence signals intact montane forest and makes it a must-see for serious birders.
- **Scarlet Macaw (***Ara macao***):** Once extirpated from parts of the Pacific coast, this crimson-and-gold parrot has rebounded along the Osa Peninsula and in Carara National Park thanks to targeted conservation programs. Its loud, gregarious flocks draw visitors to lowland rainforest and riparian corridors.
- **Keel-billed Toucan (***Ramphastos sulfuratus***):** With its rainbow-colored bill, this charismatic toucan is ubiquitous in both Caribbean and Pacific lowland forests. It is often one of the first species newcomers learn to identify, making it an ideal subject for wildlife photography.

- **Jabiru Stork (*Jabiru mycteria*):** The tallest flying bird in the Americas, the Jabiru frequents the wetlands of Palo Verde and Caño Negro. Its stately foraging along marsh margins highlights the importance of seasonal flood-plains for waterbird conservation.
- **Fiery-billed Aracari (*Pteroglossus frantzii*):** This smaller toucanid, recognized by its intricately patterned bill, inhabits humid rainforests from the southern Pacific slope into western Panama. Its localized range and distinctive calls make it a prized scrub-forest specialty.
- **Snowcap (*Microchera albocoronata*):** A jewel of the Caribbean foothills, the male Snowcap's brilliant white crown and deep violet body captivate observers at mid-elevation feeders, illustrating Costa Rica's role in Neotropical hummingbird diversity.
- **White-throated Magpie-Jay (*Calocitta ormosa*):** Endemic to the dry forests of Guanacaste and the Nicoya Peninsula, this social corvid—with its dramatic black-and-white crest—is often habituated to human presence, offering accessible viewing even in agricultural landscapes.
- **Lesson's Motmot (*Momotus lessonii*) & Broad-billed Motmot (*Electron platyrhynchum*):** Both motmots frequent forest edges and secondary growth, their pendulous tail-rackets and subtle coloration rewarding careful observation in lowland and foothill habitats.
- **Green Violet-ear (*Colibri thalassinus*) & Black-crested Coquette (*Lophornis helenae*):** Representative of highland and lowland hummingbird guilds, respectively, these species display Costa Rica's rich micro-endemism and are major attractions at both private feeders and protected reserves.
- **Orange-bellied Trogon (*Trogon caligatus*):** This understory denizen of humid forests is prized for its vivid plumage and shy behavior, making each sighting a highlight on mid-elevation trails.
- **Blue-gray Tanager (*Thraupis episcopus*) & Speckled Tanager (*Ixothraupis varia*):** Both tanagers serve as indicator species for habitat quality in plantations and edges (Blue-gray) and interior forests (Speckled), respectively, illustrating the importance of habitat mosaics.
- **Roseate Spoonbill (*Platalea ajaja*):** Though best known from coastal mangroves and shrimp-farm lagoons, this pink wading bird occasionally appears in inland wetlands, underscoring connections between coastal and freshwater systems.
- **Fiery-billed Aracari** *(Pteroglossus frantzii)* and **Speckled Tanagers (*Ixothraupis varia*):** These species, together with the major families represented above, round out a portfolio of taxa that collectively span Costa Rica's elevational, climatic, and biogeographic gradients.

By focusing on these emblematic species—each tied to distinct habitats and conservation narratives— Figure 8.3 provides a concise yet comprehensive reference for avitourism guides, ecotourism developers, and conservation educators seeking to showcase Costa Rica's unparalleled birdlife.

8.13.1 - What are the criteria for setting a species of 'tourism value'?

According to Arias and Torres (2024), a set of elements are taken into account for establishing the bird relevance for avitourism sector. To identify which bird species hold the greatest appeal for ecotourists, researchers and birds experts classify them using a hierarchy that considers their seasonal presence, conservation status, and observed abundance. First, "residents" are those species that live and breed in Costa Rica year-round, while "migrants" travel latitudinally in response to changing resources and climate. "Endemics" are species found only within a specific region—whether entirely within Costa Rica or shared narrowly with neighboring countries, such as along the Talamanca Range.

The factor in legal protections are also taken into consideration: under Costa Rica's SINAC regulations, birds may be designated as threatened or endangered, and we also note their global listing on the IUCN Red List, "To define and prioritize each species' birdwatching appeal, we followed Rodríguez and Guido (2012) and applied the following criteria: resident status, migratory behavior, regional endemism, national conservation status (as listed on the Official List of Endangered Species and Species with Reduced or Threatened Populations maintained by the National System of Conservation Areas), and global conservation status according to the IUCN" (Arias & Torres, p. 22).

Finally, it is gauged the abundance by comparing our field-survey records with established literature, ranking species from "rare" through "uncommon" and "common" to "abundant." This layered approach ensures that both birdwatchers and conservation planners can prioritize species that are locally significant, globally vulnerable, or particularly abundant and visible in the field.

8.8. Costa Rica's Extraordinary Geographic and Ecological Diversity (Infographic Description)

Costa Rica's remarkable geographic and ecological heterogeneity provides an unparalleled setting for birdwatching tourism globally. The country can be broadly divided into three principal ornithological regions—Caribbean, Highlands, and Pacific—each encompassing a variety of distinct ecosystems, including lowlands, foothills, mid-elevation slopes, cloud forests, dry forests, rainforests, and extensive wetlands (Stiles & Skutch, 1989; Skutch, 1977; 2002); Arias & Torres, 2024). These diverse life zones support a vast array of resident and migratory bird species and are strategically anchored by a comprehensive network of national parks, biological research stations, and numerous private reserves. The following visual summary, Fig. 8.10, (adapted from Borreli, 2019) aims to outline key birdwatching locations distributed across these major regions, highlighting the specific habitats that sustain unique avifaunal assemblages, including significant numbers of endemic species. This overview serves as a practical guide for planning sustainable nature-based travel and informs conservation-oriented tourism strategies.

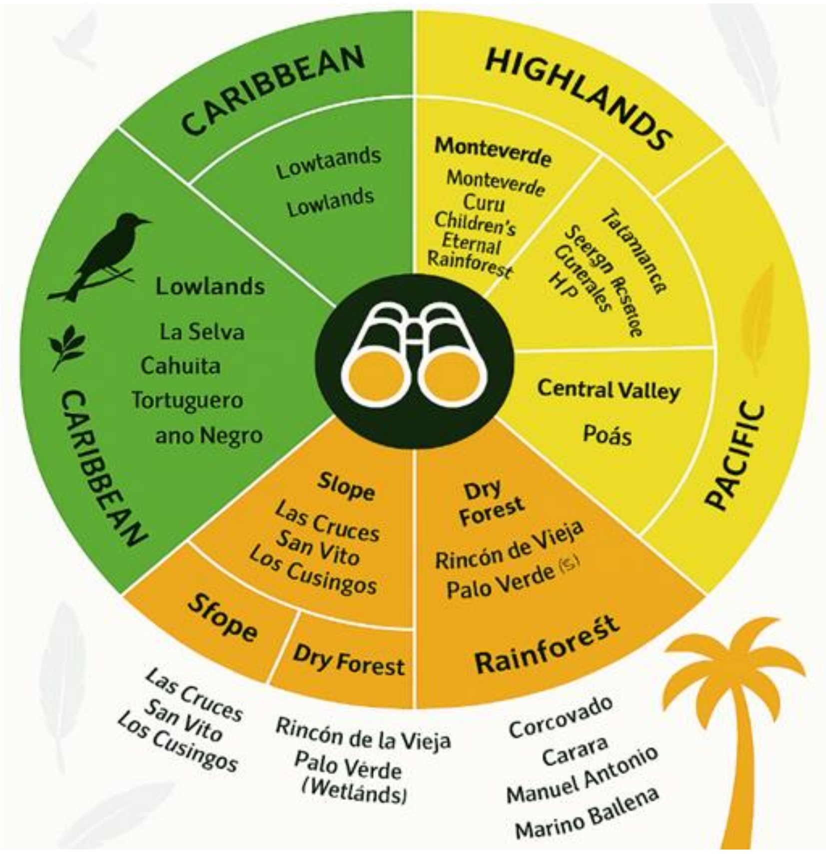


Figure 8.10 - Infographic Note: Infographic concept adapted and expanded based on the structure presented in Borreli, J. (2019, October 10). Costa Rica birding guide. Costa Rica Birding Blog. https://www.costaricafocus.com/costa-rica-bird-watching-guide/, incorporating information from sources cited throughout this chapter.

Birdwatching Regions of Costa Rica

A Visual Overview of Key Locations by Region and Habitat Type

Caribbean Region

Lowlands

- La Selva Biological Station
- Cahuita National Park
- Tortuguero National Park
- Caño Negro Wildlife Refuge

Foothills

- Arenal Volcano Area
- Turrialba Highlands
- Braulio Carrillo National Park
- Tenorio Volcano National Park

Highlands Region

Monteverde Sector

- Monteverde Cloud Forest Reserve
- Santa Elena Cloud Forest Reserve (implied, often linked)
- Children's Eternal Rainforest

Talamanca Range

- Savegre Valley & San Gerardo de Dota (Rodríguez et al., 2004)
- Los Quetzales National Park
- Tapantí–Macizo de la Muerte National Park & Buffer Zone (Rodríguez et al., 2004)
- Río Navarro–Río Sombrero Protected Zone (Arias & Torres, 2024)

Central Valley

- Poás Volcano National Park (areas permitting access)

Pacific Region

Slope Forests (Southern Pacific)

- Las Cruces Biological Station & Wilson Botanical Garden
- San Vito area
- Los Cusingos Bird Sanctuary (former home of Alexander Skutch)

Dry Forest & Wetlands (Northern Pacific)

- Rincón de la Vieja National Park

- Palo Verde National Park (Wetlands focus)
- Santa Rosa National Park (Dry forest focus)

Pacific Rainforest (Central & Southern)

- Corcovado National Park (Osa Peninsula)
- Carara National Park
- Manuel Antonio National Park
- Marino Ballena National Park

The Table 8.3, addendum section below, shows a curated selection of fifteen iconic bird species that serve to exemplify the remarkable avian richness distributed across Costa Rica's diverse ecosystems. These species were chosen based on criteria including their visual distinctiveness, ecological significance, and particular relevance to birdwatching tourism activities occurring in different regions of the country. For each species listed, the table provides concise information regarding its primary geographic distribution within Costa Rica, preferred habitat types, key identifying characteristics or traits, and recognized regional hotspots where sightings are generally more frequent or reliable. Spanning from specialized inhabitants of high-elevation cloud forests like the Resplendent Quetzal to characteristic species of the lowland rainforests such as the Keel-billed Toucan, and including rarer wetland specialists like the Jabiru Stork, this catalogue aims to offer both birders and researchers a practical reference tool useful for field identification, strategic travel planning, and fostering conservation-oriented observation practices.]

8.9. Conclusion

Costa Rica's remarkable success in transforming its compact but biodiverse landscape into a premier birdwatching destination stems from the deliberate integration of ecological science, robust governance, and community engagement. The country's position as a biogeographic land bridge, coupled with topoclimatic heterogeneity and year-round climatic stability, has generated an unparalleled mosaic of habitats that support over 935 documented bird species (Garrigues et al., 2023; Billerman et al., 2025). These natural foundations have been matched by an innovative conservation architecture—SINAC's coordinated protected-area network, pioneering incentive programs like Payments for Ecosystem Services, and progressive legislation such as Biodiversity Law No. 7788 (1998)—all of which serve to align tourism development with biodiversity protection and rural livelihoods. Case studies in the Tapantí–Macizo de la Muerte buffer zone (Rodríguez et al., 2004) and the Río Navarro–Río Sombrero circuit design (Arias & Torres, 2024) illustrate how policy, spatial planning, and participatory inventory methods can generate high-value avitourism products while reinforcing ecological stewardship and local empowerment. Looking ahead, the continued resilience of Costa Rica's avitourism sector will depend on targeted investments in under-served regions, strategic infrastructure improvements, and the professionalization of guiding services under ethical best-practice standards. Expanding thematic circuits—such as the Cloud Forest Endemics and Mangroves & Marine Birds expeditions—must be matched with rigorous visitor-carrying-capacity thresholds, adaptive monitoring programs, and inclusive governance frameworks that embed local communities at every stage. Moreover, leveraging digital platforms like eBird and iNaturalist (Di Cecco et al., 2021) to integrate real-time sighting data will enhance spatial orientation, marketing precision, and conservation outcomes. By embracing adaptive, inclusive, and evidence-based approaches, Costa Rica can not only maintain its leadership as a global model of sustainable birdwatching tourism but also forge a true conservation economy in which ecological integrity, community well-being, and visitor satisfaction advance hand in hand.

Addendum – Table on Iconic Bird Species

Table 8.3 - Key Fifteen Iconic Bird Species that Exemplify the Avian Richness of Costa Rica's Ecosystems

Bird Name	Main Area / Region	Habitats	Peculiarities	Costa Rica Region	Other Notes
Black-crested Coquette	Caribbean lowlands, Central highlands	Humid lowland and foothill forests, forest edges, gardens	Tiny, ornate hummingbird with a black crest and whirring flight; males perform elaborate aerial displays	Sarapiquí, Braulio Carrillo, Turrialba	Best seen feeding on flowering shrubs during dry season
Blue-gray Tanager	Widespread across lowlands and mid-elevations	Open woodlands, gardens, secondary forest	Common, sociable bird; pale blue-gray coloration with brighter blue wings and tail	Countrywide, especially prevalent in Central Valley and Caribbean slope	Frequently seen near human settlements and fruit feeders
Broad-billed Motmot	Lowland and foothill rainforests	Dense humid forest interiors, shady ravines	Stocky bird with distinctive racket-tipped tail; deep hooting call	Caribbean lowlands (e.g., La Selva), southern Pacific	Often perches motionless in low light, ideal for photography
Fiery-billed Aracari	Pacific lowlands	Lowland rainforests, second-growth forests	Brightly colored small toucan with orange-red bill base	Southwest Pacific (Osa Peninsula, Golfo Dulce)	Feeds on fruits, sometimes nests in woodpecker holes
Green Violet-ear Hummingbird	Highland forests	Montane forests, forest edges, clearings	Metallic green hummingbird with violet ear-patch and buzzing call	Cordillera Central, Monteverde, Talamanca	Aggressive at feeders; thrives in highland gardens
Jabiru Stork	Northern lowlands	Freshwater marshes, wetlands, riverbanks	Tallest flying bird in the Americas; bald red neck and massive bill	Palo Verde, Caño Negro, Tempisque basin	Rare and declining; nests on tall trees in wetlands
Keel-billed Toucan	Caribbean and southern Pacific lowlands	Tropical forests, canopy layers, forest edges	Iconic toucan with rainbow-colored bill; noisy and social	La Selva, Sarapiquí, Osa, Tortuguero	Feeds on fruits, sometimes eggs or nestlings
Lesson's Motmot	Widespread in mid-elevation forests	Gallery forests, forest edges, urban parks	Elegant bird with a pendulum-like tail and turquoise crown	Central Valley, Pacific slope, Monteverde	Often seen perched quietly; calls are low-pitched hoots
Orange-bellied Trogon	Foothill forests	Humid pre-montane forests	Colorful trogon with orange belly and green back	Caribbean slope foothills, Braulio Carrillo	Usually silent; nests in tree cavities
Quetzal	Highland cloud forests	Montane evergreen forests	One of the most striking birds; long tail plumes and iridescent green plumage	Monteverde, Los Quetzales National Park, San Gerardo de Dota	Symbol of freedom in Mesoamerican cultures; eats wild avocados
Roseate Spoonbill	Northern Pacific wetlands	Mangroves, estuaries, mudflats	Pink wading bird with spoon-shaped bill; sweeps for invertebrates	Palo Verde, Gulf of Nicoya	Often seen with herons and ibis; vivid coloration in breeding season
Scarlet Macaw	Pacific lowlands	Rainforests, especially near coasts	Large red parrot with yellow and blue wings; powerful beak	Carara, Osa Peninsula, Tárcoles	Recovering populations due to reintroduction efforts
Snowcap Hummingbird	Caribbean slope foothills	Lowland and foothill forests	Tiny hummingbird with brilliant white crown and deep purple body	Turrialba, Rancho Naturalista, foothill rainforests	Elusive and endemic to Central America
Speckled Tanagers	Atlantic foothills	Humid tropical forests, second growth	Dappled green and black plumage; gregarious in mixed flocks	Caribbean slope, Arenal, La Selva	Often seen at fruiting trees or feeders
White-throated Magpie-Jays	Northwestern Pacific lowlands	Dry forest edges, open fields, gardens	Large jay with expressive crest and social behavior	Guanacaste, Nicoya Peninsula	Bold and vocal; adapts well to human-altered landscapes

Source: Table prepared by the author (2025), based on data available in the literature (e.g., Stiles & Skutch, 1989; Garrigues & Dean, 2014; Vallely & Dyer, 2018; Arias & Torres, 2024) and specialized digital platforms (e.g., eBird, Birds of the World [Billerman et al., 2022]).

References

Alvarado Sánchez, M. (2020). El patrimonio territorial de la península de Nicoya, Costa Rica: su puesta en valor como atractivo turístico. In G. J. Marafon, M. Faccioli, & M. A. Sánchez (Orgs.), *Patrimônio, território e turismo no Brasil, Costa Rica e Itália* (pp. 39–68) [Recurso eletrônico, ePub]. EdUERJ. ISBN 978-65-00-03032-7.

American Birding Association. (n.d.). ABA code of birding ethics. https://www.aba.org/aba-code-of-birding-ethics/

Arias, L. (2023). Aves Endémicas de Costa Rica. Editorial Tecnológica de Costa Rica.

Arias, S. (2020). *III Estudio: Perfil del observador de aves costarricense, caracterización y preferencias del pajarero tico* (14 p.). Costa Rica Birding Publication. Retrieved May 1, 2025, from https://www.academia.edu/93966086/III_Estudio_Perfil_del_Observador_de_Aves_Costarricense_Caracterización_y_Preferencias_del_Pajarero_Tico.

Arias, S., & Ramírez, D. (2023). *Cuarto estudio: Perfil del observador de aves costarricense: Caracterización y preferencia del Pajarero Tico* [Report]. Mesa Nacional de Aviturismo & Costa Rica Birding. Retrieved May 1, 2025, from https://www.academia.edu/105400345/Cuarto_Estudio_Perfil_del_Observador_de_Aves_Costarricense

Arias, S., & Ramírez, D. (2021). Perfil del observador de aves internacional, Caracterización, Preferencias y Tendencias [Profile of the international birdwatcher: Characterization, Preferences and Trends]. Costa Rica Birding.

Arias, S., & Torres, F. (2024, October). *Gestión y diseño del circuito de aviturismo en la Zona Protectora Río Navarro - Río Sombrero* (Cuadernos de Investigación No. 6). Comisión Editorial, Sede del Atlántico, Universidad de Costa Rica. ISBN 978-9930-638-02-6.

Barrantes Sotela, O., & Quirós Arias, L. (2020). Del modelo conservacionista al patrimonio territorial y el turismo en Costa Rica. In G. J. Marafon, M. Faccioli, & M. A. Sánchez (Orgs.), *Patrimônio, território e turismo no Brasil, Costa Rica e Itália* (pp. 9–38) [Recurso eletrônico, ePub]. EdUERJ. ISBN 978-65-00-03032-7

Billerman, S. M., B. K. Keeney, G. M. Kirwan, F. Medrano, N. D. Sly, and M. G. Smith, Editors (2025). Birds of the World. Cornell Laboratory of Ornithology, Ithaca, NY, USA. https://birdsoftheworld.org/bow/home

BirdLife International. (2011). Manual de buenas prácticas ambientales para el manejo de los recursos naturales y el aviturismo en el noroccidente de Pichincha [Handbook of environmental best practices for managing natural resources and birdwatching tourism in northwestern Pichincha]. Fundación Ecofondo.

BirdLife International. (2024). Endemic Bird Areas factsheet: Costa Rica and Panama highlands. Retrieved February 13, 2024, from https://www.google.com/search?q=https://datazone.birdlife.org/eba/factsheet/18

Borreli, J. (2019, October 10). Costa Rica birding guide. Costa Rica Birding Blog. https://www.costaricafocus.com/costa-rica-bird-watching-guide/

Bote Gómez, V. (1990). *Planificación económica del turismo: De una estrategia masiva a una artesanal* (1a ed.; Serie Trillas Turismo, 373 p.). México, DF: Trillas.

Budowski, T. (1990). Ecoturismo a la Tica. In Hacia una Centroamérica Verde: Seis casos de conservación integrada (pp. 69–82). Departamento Ecuménico de Investigaciones (DEI).

de Guisa, M. (2013). *Zona Protectora Río Navarro–Río Sombrero : Étape de diagnostic du futur Plan Général d'Aménagement : Réalisation de la carte d'occupation des sols de la zone* [Technical report]. AgroParisTech; Sistema Nacional de Áreas de Conservación (SINAC).

Di Cecco, G. J., Barve, V., Belitz, M. W., Stucky, B. J., Guralnick, R. P., & Hurlbert, A. H. (2021). Observing the observers: How participants contribute data to iNaturalist and implications for biodiversity science. *BioScience, 71*(11), 1179–1188. https://doi.org/10.1093/biosci/biab093

Dingle, H. (2001). Raising the bar for bird guides [Review of the book *The Sibley guide to birds*, by D. A. Sibley]. *Science, 293*(5537), 2002–2004. https://doi.org/10.1126/science.1061613

Dyer, D., & Howell, S. N. G. (2023). *Birds of Costa Rica*. Princeton University Press.

eBird. (2020). Guía de Protocolos de eBird [eBird protocol guide]. Cornell Lab of Ornithology.

Echeverria, A., Smith, J. R., MacArthur-Waltz, D., Lauck, K. S., Anderson, C. B., Monge Vargas, R., Alvarado Quesada, I., Wood, S. A., Chaplin-Kramer, R., & Daily, G. C. (2022). Biodiversity and infrastructure interact to drive tourism to and within Costa Rica. *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences of the United States of America, 119*(11), e2107662119. https://doi.org/10.1073/pnas.2107662119

Garrigues, R., & Dean, R. (2014). *The birds of Costa Rica: A field guide* (2nd ed.). Cornell University Press.

Garrigues, R, P Camacho-Varela, M Montoya, P O'Donnell, O Ramírez-Alán & J Zook (2023) Lista Oficial de las Aves de Costa Rica 2023-2024 – Actualización octubre 2023. Comité de Especies Raras y Registros Ornitológicos de Costa Rica (Comité Científico), Asociación Ornitológica de Costa Rica. Available at https://listaoficialavesdecostarica.wordpress.com/lista-oficial/

Guerrero-Moreno, M. A., & Oliveira-Junior, J. M. B. (2024). O ecoturismo de base comunitária como estratégia sustentável para o desenvolvimento local em áreas protegidas. In *Sociedade, natureza e desenvolvimento na Amazônia* (Vol. 4, Cap. 15). Santarém, Pará: Universidade Federal do Oeste do Pará.

Holdridge, L. R. (1987). *Ecología basada en zonas de vida* (Colección Libros y Materiales Educativos/IICA, No. 83). San José, Costa Rica: Instituto Interamericano de Cooperación para la Agricultura (IICA). ISBN 92-9039-131-6.

Instituto Costarricense de Turismo (ICT). (2000). Encuesta aérea de extranjeros: Temporada alta 2000 [Foreign air arrivals survey: High season 2000]. Instituto Costarricense de Turismo.

Instituto Costarricense de Turismo (ICT). (2010). Inventario Turístico Atractivos Turísticos. Dirección de Planeamiento y Desarrollo Turístico. Instituto Costarricense de Turismo.

Instituto Costarricense de Turismo (ICT). (2017). Rutas Turísticas de Costa Rica. Propuesta de una ruta de observación de aves. Instituto Costarricense de Turismo. https://www.ict.go.cr/es/informacion-institucional/desarrollo-turistico.html

Instituto Costarricense de Turismo (ICT). (2020). Estimación de los turistas que realizaron actividades 2017-2020. Encuesta de no residentes realizadas en los aeropuertos internacionales. Instituto Costarricense de Turismo.

IUCN. (1994). 1994 IUCN Red List of Threatened Animals. IUCN. [Note: Used as cited in original case study text for historical context; current IUCN status is available online].

IUCN. (2023). The IUCN Red List of Threatened Species. Version 2023-1. https://www.iucnredlist.org

Jiménez, G. (2019). *Mapa Zona Protectora Río Sombrero–Río Navarro* [Map; scale 1:45 000]. Departamento de Información y Regularización Territorial, Ministerio de Ambiente y Energía; Sistema Nacional de Áreas de Conservación. Costa Rica.

Kappelle, M. (1996a). Un bosque tropical montano nuboso: El robledal de altura en Costa Rica. *Revista Forestal Centroamericana, 5*(16), 18–23. https://repositorio.catie.ac.cr/handle/11554/9628

Kappelle, M. (1996b). *Los bosques de roble (Quercus) de la Cordillera de Talamanca, Costa Rica: Biodiversidad, ecología, conservación y desarrollo*. Instituto Nacional de Biodiversidad (INBio). https://agris.fao.org/search/en/providers/122621/records/647396d5e011068800980254

Liu, Z., Sandoval, L., Sherman, L. B., & Wilson, A. M. (2023). Vulnerability of elevation-restricted endemic birds of the Cordillera de Talamanca (Costa Rica and Panama) to climate change. *Neotropical Biodiversity, 9*(1), Article 14. https://doi.org/10.1080/23766808.2023.2261196

May, R. H. (2013). *En los pasos de Zeledón: Historia de la ornitología nacional y de la Asociación Ornitológica de Costa Rica*. CreateSpace Independent Publishing Platform.

Mayorga, M., & Kohl, J. (2021). Esencia de la interpretación del patrimonio: una visión holística para experimentar y conservar el patrimonio natural y cultural. EUNED.

Menacho, R. (2020). Aves y ventanas de Costa Rica [Birds and windows of Costa Rica]. Programa de Manejo de Recursos Naturales, Universidad Estatal a Distancia (UNED). https://avesyventanascostarica.wordpress.com/soluciones/

Menacho-Odio, R., Araya, D., Avalos, G., Bottazzi, M., Delgado, G., Garrigues, R., García-Blanco, S., Garro, R., Fonseca-Arce, A., & Quesada, D. (2020). Presentación de un Código de Ética para la observación de aves en Costa Rica. *Zeledonia, 24*(2), 97–101. https://www.zeledonia.com/uploads/7/0/1/0/70104897/codigoetica.pdf

Meza-Ocampo, T. (2017). Zonas Protectoras: Cuencas Río Navarro y Río Sombrero. Temas De Nuestra América. Revista De Estudios Latinoamericanos, 33(62), 43-50. https://www.revistas.una.ac.cr/index.php/tdna/article/view/9207

Mikery Gutiérrez, M. J., & Pérez-Vázquez, A. (2014). Métodos para el análisis del potencial turístico del territorio rural [Methods for the analysis of tourism potential of rural areas]. *Revista Mexicana de Ciencias Agrícolas, Especial Núm. 9*, 1729–1740. https://cienciasagricolas.inifap.gob.mx/index.php/agricolas/article/view/1060/896

Ministerio de Comercio Exterior y Turismo (Perú). (2014). Perfil del observador de aves: El turismo en cifras [Profile of the birdwatcher: Tourism in figures]. Comisión de Promoción del Perú para la Exportación y el Turismo – PROMPERÚ.

Ministerio de Comercio, Industria y Turismo (Colombia). (2017). Guía de buenas prácticas para la actividad de aviturismo en Colombia [Guide to best practices for birdwatching tourism in Colombia]. Programa de Transformación Productiva (PTP).

Monge, X. (2001). *Plan de acción para el desarrollo ecoturístico del Macizo de la Muerte* [Technical report]. DEAGROTEC – Consultores en Desarrollo Empresarial y Agrotécnico S.A.

Nuñez Chacón, M. (2025, January 8). Expertos coinciden en potencial de Costa Rica en turismo de avistamiento de aves [Experts agree on Costa Rica's potential for birdwatching tourism]. Semanario Universidad. https://semanariouniversidad.com/pais/expertos-coinciden-en-potencial-de-costa-rica-en-turismo-de-avistamiento-de-aves/

Ortega-Álvarez, R., & Calderón-Parra, R. (2021). Linking biological monitoring and wildlife ecotourism: A call for development of comprehensive community-based projects in search of sustainability. *Environment, Development and Sustainability, 23*(3), 4149–4161. https://doi.org/10.1007/s10668-020-00761-7
o4-mini

Pereira, T., Arias, S., & Ramírez, D. (2022). *Manual de buenas prácticas para la actividad de aviturismo en Costa Rica*. San José, Costa Rica: Mesa Nacional de Aviturismo. https://www.academia.edu/101357089/Manual_de_buenas_pra_cticas_Aviturismo_Costa_Rica

Primack, R. B., Rozzi, R., Feinsinger, P., Dirzo, R., & Massardo, F. (Eds.). (2001). *Fundamentos de conservación biológica: Perspectivas latinoamericanas* (797 pp.). Fondo de Cultura Económica.

Ralph, C. J., Geupel, G. R., Pyle, P., Martin, T. E., & DeSante, D. F. (1997). Handbook of field methods for monitoring landbirds (Gen. Tech. Rep. PSW-GTR-159). Pacific Southwest Research Station, Forest Service, U.S. Department of Agriculture.

Rodríguez, J. V., Barrantes, G., & Chacón, E. (2004). Guía de aves de Costa Rica. INBio.

Rodríguez, C., & Guido, I. (2012). Potencial para el turismo de observación de aves en la zona de amortiguamiento de la Reserva Biológica Alberto Manuel Brenes, Costa Rica. *Zeledonia, 16*(2), 21–47.

Rodríguez, O., Villalobos, R., & Campos, J. J. (2004). La observación de aves y el turismo de naturaleza en la zona de amortiguamiento del Parque Nacional Tapantí–Macizo de la Muerte. *Recursos Naturales y Ambiente*, (43), 62–71. https://repositorio.catie.ac.cr/bitstream/handle/11554/6464/La_observacion_de_aves_pdf.pdf?sequence=1

Sánchez Pérez, J. E. (2002). *Aves del Parque Nacional Tapantí, Costa Rica*. Santo Domingo de Heredia, Costa Rica: Editorial INBio.

Sánchez, J. E. (1998). *Lista de aves de Costa Rica / Checklist of Costa Rican Birds*. San José, Costa Rica: Asociación Ornitológica de Costa Rica.

Sánchez, O., & Propin, E. (2005). El turismo alternativo en México: un acercamiento conceptual y metodológico. Universidad Autónoma del Estado de México.

Sánchez, R., Stiles, F. G., & Skutch, A. F. (2009). Guía de las aves de Costa Rica. Zona Tropical. [Note: Seems related to Stiles & Skutch, potentially an updated/translated version or derivative work].

Sekercioglu, Ç. H. (2002). Impacts of birdwatching on human and avian communities. *Environmental Conservation, 29*(3), 282–289.

Skutch, A. F. (2002 [1977]). *Aves de Costa Rica* (Revised and corrected ed.). Editorial Costa Rica; Editorial Tecnológica de Costa Rica.

Stiles, F. G. (1991). Aves. In D. H. Janzen (Ed.), Historia natural de Costa Rica (2nd ed., pp. 515–555). Editorial de la Universidad de Costa Rica.

Stiles, F. G., & Skutch, A. F. (1989). A guide to the birds of Costa Rica. Cornell University Press.

Vallely, A. C., & Dyer, D. (2018). Birds of Central America: Belize, Guatemala, Honduras, El Salvador, Nicaragua, Costa Rica, Panama. Princeton University Press.

White, J. (2022, January 17). Top birdwatching destinations in the world. Birda. https://birda.org/top-birding-locations-in-the-world/

Wildlife Nomads. (n.d.). Birds of Costa Rica: A birdwatcher's paradise. Wildlife Nomads Blog. https://www.wildlifenomads.com/blog/birds-of-costa-rica-a-birdwatchers-paradise

Wolf, L. L. (1976). Avifauna of the Cerro de la Muerte region, Costa Rica. American Museum Novitates, (2503), 1-37.

Yilmaz, S. (2011). An analysis of rural tourism potential and development strategies in the Çanakkale region of Turkey. Journal of Yaşar University, 6(21), 3548–3565.

Zamora, N., Arroyo, J. P., & Herrera, B. (2013). Plan de manejo para la Zona Protectora Río Navarro-Río Sombrero. SINAC.

Zamora, A., et al. (2013). *Zona Protectora Río Navarro–Río Sombrero: Análisis de situación territorial* (39 p.). Turrialba, Costa Rica: CATIE.

Zimmer, P., & Grassmann, S. (1996). *Evaluar el potencial turístico de un territorio*. Bruselas, Bélgica: Observatoire européen Leader II.

Zúñiga, C., & Fallas, A. (2018). *Plan general de manejo: Zona Protectora Río Navarro–Río Sombrero* [Technical report]. Sistema Nacional de Áreas de Conservación, Ministerio de Ambiente y Energía, Costa Rica.

Chapter 9

South Africa and its Strategic Role within the Global Birdwatching Tourism Landscape: Diversity, Endemism, and Conservation

Ismar Borges de Lima
Universidade Estadual de Roraima-UERR, Brazil &
RECINATUR Foundation. Email: ismar@uerr.edu.br

Aggrey Thuo
Associate Professor in Spatial and Environmental Planning at Kenyatta University, Kenya. Deputy Vice-Chancellor (Planning, Administration and Finance) at Jaramogi Oginga Odinga University of Science and Technology, Kenya
Email: aggreythuo@jooust.ac.ke/ thuo.aggrey@ku.ac.ke

Summary

This chapter examines South Africa's extraordinary birdlife and its strategic role within the global avitourism landscape. Renowned for its rich biodiversity, ecological variety, and exceptional levels of endemism, South Africa stands as one of the world's premier destinations for birdwatching tourism. The chapter explores key avian biomes—from the fynbos and wetlands of the Western Cape to the savannas and riparian ecosystems of Kruger National Park—highlighting their ecological significance and avitourism value. Through a detailed survey of protected areas, flagship species, and tourism infrastructure, the chapter situates birdwatching within the broader nexus of conservation policy, sustainable development, and cultural identity. Special attention is given to South Africa's status as a megadiverse nation, its role in hosting globally important bird areas (IBAs), and the growing professionalization of birding tours that support conservation financing. By integrating scientific data, field-based observations, and critical reflections on wildlife governance, this chapter underscores how avitourism in South Africa exemplifies the possibilities of ethically grounded, ecologically informed, and economically viable nature tourism. It invites readers to consider not only the aesthetic pleasures of birdwatching, but also the socio-ecological responsibilities it entails within the African context.

9.0. Introduction

Avitourism, or bird-based tourism, represents a significant and rapidly growing niche within Africa's broader tourism landscape. This specialized sector offers considerable economic potential while simultaneously contributing to vital conservation efforts and community development initiatives across the continent. Prior to the disruptions caused by the COVID-19 pandemic (Rogerson & Rogerson, 2020), the tourism industry contributed approximately 8.5% to Africa's Gross Domestic Product (GDP). According to WTTC's 2023 Economic Impact Research for Africa, in 2019 the Travel & Tourism sector contributed USD 186 billion to the continent's economy and supported 25 million jobs (WTTC, 2023). Looking ahead, WTTC's *Africa Travel & Tourism Economic Impact*

Research 2022: Forecasts to 2032 shows that Travel & Tourism GDP in Africa is projected to expand at an average annual rate of 6.8 % between 2022 and 2032—reaching almost USD 279 billion, equal to 7.2 % of continental GDP (World Travel & Tourism Council, 2022, p. 14). Within this dynamic industry, birdwatching has emerged as the second most popular nature-based activity. It characteristically attracts visitors who tend to spend more, stay for longer durations, and distribute their expenditures more broadly, particularly benefiting rural areas, compared to participants in many other tourism segments (UNWTO, 2014; UNWTO, 2021; Schwoerer & Dawson, 2022).

South Africa, in particular, has strategically embraced avitourism as a key component of its national development agenda, and the country's authorities have explicitly identified avitourism as a means to address poverty and advance the objectives outlined in the Millennium Development Goals (DoT, 2011a; 2011b). The National Avitourism Strategy aims to establish South Africa as a premier, globally competitive birding destination. This vision hinges on integrating high-quality wildlife encounters with strong conservation ethics and meaningful community involvement (Voces do Sul). While South America is renowned for its sheer avian diversity, often called "the bird continent," Africa, and especially South Africa, has arguably earned the title of "the birding continent." This distinction arises not only from the spectacular and ecologically varied birdlife but also from its remarkable abundance and the relative ease with which birds can be observed, making birdwatching deeply embedded in the nation's natural and cultural identity (American Birding Association, 2014).

Often celebrated as the "Rainbow Nation," South Africa is recognized by Conservation International as one of the world's 17 megadiverse countries, safeguarding a substantial portion of global biodiversity. It provides some of the most rewarding and well-supported nature-based tourism experiences available globally, characterized by first-rate birding infrastructure, relatively low travel costs, excellent facilities for wildlife viewing, and an extraordinary mosaic of ecosystems. These diverse habitats range from the unique fynbos shrublands and montane grasslands to savannas, wetlands, extensive coastlines, and nutrient-rich marine upwelling zones, each supporting a distinct assemblage of bird species. According to the most recent official figures from BirdLife South Africa (2025), the country is home to approximately 890 species and 19 endemics (found nowhere else) and nearly 150 near-endemics (largely restricted to the region).

The South African avitourism market alone is estimated to generate approximately ZAR 1 billion annually ($54,200,000 USD as on May 2, 2025 currency conversion rates) (Ryan, 2012). Angulo et. al., (2009), has noted that "in observing animals, humans are more likely to place greater value on larger-bodied and rare species, making them a viewing favourite as opposed to usual or common birds" (p. 6). However, this should not be taken as a permanent variable. Martín-López et al. (2007) pointed out that individuals with advanced biodiversity knowledge are less inclined to focus on morphologically distinct, charismatic species and instead place greater emphasis on rarity. Accordingly, local birders—presumed to possess substantial expertise—would be expected to prioritize rare species over more conspicuous ones; however, the data do not support this expectation. One likely explanation lies in the dataset's scope: highly specialized birders often undertake brief, purpose-driven excursions to chase rare sightings, which broader sampling methods may overlook. Furthermore, the exclusion of waterbirds—many of which are regionally scarce yet globally widespread—heightened the relative importance of terrestrial endemics while omitting taxa that might otherwise captivate local specialists. Nevertheless, a marked preference for larger-bodied species persists, echoing Angulo et al.'s (2009) finding that sheer size can serve as its own powerful attractant.

However, the expansion of avitourism is not without potential drawbacks. Unmanaged tourism growth can pose risks to delicate ecosystems, leading to disturbances at sensitive nesting sites or soil compaction in critical conservation areas. These threats can be particularly acute during breeding seasons or when enthusiasts engage in close-range photography (Knight & Cole, 1995; Newsome et al., 2005). To mitigate these potential negative impacts, the principles of ecotourism are increasingly being integrated into the design of avitourism products. This involves emphasizing low-impact infrastructure development, providing expert-guided interpretation to enhance visitor understanding and responsible behavior, and fostering local stewardship. Such approaches aim to ensure that avitourism actively contributes to biodiversity protection while simultaneously channeling tangible economic and social benefits directly to the communities residing near key birding areas (Biggs et al., 2011; HaySmith & Hunt, 1995).

Beyond its direct economic contributions and conservation advantages, birdwatching plays a crucial role in biodiversity monitoring through large-scale citizen science initiatives. Platforms such as eBird effectively harness millions of observations submitted by birdwatchers globally. This crowdsourced data allows for the mapping of species distributions and occurrences in near real-time, providing researchers and protected area managers with an unprecedented wealth of information for conservation planning and adaptive management strategies (Sullivan et al., 2014). These citizen-science networks create a positive feedback loop: birders deepen their engagement by contributing valuable data, while conservation practitioners utilize these inputs to refine habitat protection priorities and management actions (Sullivan et al., 2014). Nevertheless, a persistent challenge involves ensuring the equitable distribution of benefits derived from cultural ecosystem services like avitourism. Currently, a significant portion of the revenue, especially from high-end birding tours, tends to be captured by tour operators and international visitors, with local host communities often receiving only a limited share (Steven et al., 2015; Monz et al., 2021). Addressing this requires the implementation of equitable models, such as robust revenue-sharing agreements, co-management structures for protected areas, and targeted skills development programs, to empower local stakeholders and enable them to access both employment and entrepreneurial opportunities within the sector (Twining-Ward et al., 2018).

Furthermore, looking towards the future, the sustainability of avitourism faces significant challenges from climate and land-use change, as highlighted by Manley and Egoh (2024) in their continental-scale modeling assessment for Africa. Utilizing extensive eBird data and sophisticated machine-learning techniques, their research identified species richness, the extent of protected area coverage, accessibility, and maximum temperature as key factors determining the suitability of locations for birding across the continent currently. Projecting these factors forward under various Shared Socioeconomic Pathways (SSP126, 370, and 585), their models predict substantial geographic shifts in optimal birdwatching areas by the middle of the century. These anticipated changes, if not proactively managed, could restrict the flow of cultural ecosystem services to people, thereby jeopardizing both conservation outcomes and sustainable development goals (PubMed). Consequently, incorporating climate resilience strategies into tourism planning is imperative. This includes prioritizing the establishment of buffer zones around protected areas, diversifying tourism circuits to reduce reliance on specific locations, and actively supporting adaptive community-based enterprises. Such measures offer a viable pathway to sustain the ecological, economic, and social benefits of avitourism for generations to come.

Among South Africa's premier avitourism destinations, Cape Town and the Kruger National Park exemplify the country's offerings due to their exceptional biodiversity, accessibility, and iconic status.

Perched on Africa's southwestern tip under Table Mountain's imposing skyline, Cape Town is bathed by the cold, upwelling waters of the Benguela Current. This unique intersection places it squarely within the globally significant Cape Floristic Region, famed for more than 9,000 vascular plant species—many found nowhere else. Such botanical richness underpins specialized fynbos avifauna: for example, Protea-pollinating specialists like the Cape Sugarbird and rock-dwelling endemics such as the Cape Rockjumper thrive here (Meadows & Compton, 2015). Cape Town's appeal also extends significantly to marine avitourism, encompassing seabird and pelagic birding opportunities. The cold Benguela upwelling sustains significant populations of albatrosses, shearwaters, petrels, and the endemic African Penguin. Accessible coastal sites such as Boulders Beach allow for close observation of penguin breeding colonies, while offshore boat trips and visits to nearby locations like the Strandfontein sewage works and the West Coast National Park provide opportunities to see vast numbers of shorebirds, terns, gulls, and various migratory species. The West Coast National Park (27,600 hectares) is particularly notable during the spring flower season (August-September), which coincides with the arrival of large flocks of Greater and Lesser Flamingos, Southern Black Korhaan, and numerous migratory waders (Daniels, 2020).

In this chapter and throughout the book, the term **"avitourism"** is used as the primary designation for tourism focused on the observation of birds in their natural habitats. Throughout the text, you will also encounter the synonymous expressions **"birdwatching tourism," "birding,"** and **"birdwatching."** These terms are employed interchangeably and refer to the same activity of travelling with the principal aim of observing wild bird species for recreation, education, and/or conservation purposes.

9.1. Kruger National Park

In contrast to the coastal and fynbos environments of the Cape, Kruger National Park delivers a classic African savannah birding experience. Covering nearly 20,000 km² and linked to neighboring reserves in the Great Limpopo Transfrontier Park, Kruger National Park offers an unparalleled savannah birding panorama. Within its boundaries lie at least 13 ecological zones—from grasslands and mopane woodlands to riverine corridors and granitic kopjes—harboring over 550 bird species. Raptors dominate the skies, with Martial Eagles, Bateleurs and African Fish-Eagles regularly patrolling overhead, while shaded woodlands convene colorful mixed flocks of Yellow-breasted Apalis, African Paradise-Flycatchers and Brubrus (Kemp et al., 2023; Joubert, 1986). Kruger's rest camps and designated picnic sites offer safe environments for birding on foot, while extensive networks of roads facilitate excellent viewing opportunities during game drives (guided or self-driven). These drives increase the chances of encountering more elusive species like the Pel's Fishing Owl, Narina Trogon, and Gorgeous Bushshrike.

The Kruger Park is also a stronghold for the charismatic Southern Ground-Hornbill. Although birders must generally remain within vehicles due to the presence of large predators like lions and leopards, the birds habituated around camps and picnic spots, such as sunbirds and hornbills attracted to flowering trees, offer excellent photographic subjects (Tarboton, 2016; Joubert, 1986). The park's extensive system of rivers, lakes, and artificial water points supports abundant waterbird populations, including Saddle-billed Storks, African Jacanas, Openbill Storks, various lapwings, and ducks. These aquatic habitats become even richer during the austral summer (October to March) with the arrival of Palearctic and intra-African migrants. Night drives provide a different perspective, revealing nocturnal species like the Spotted Eagle-Owl, African Scops-Owl, Pearl-spotted Owlet, nightjars, thick-knees, and coursers (Kemp, et al., 2023; Tarboton, 2016). While birds are the primary focus for avitourists, Kruger's abundant mammal populations ("megafauna") are an unavoidable and integral part of the experience, with frequent encounters involving species like Cape buffalo, chacma baboons, giraffes, elephants, rhinos, lions, and leopards among the 148 recorded mammal species (Daniels, 2020). This combination of rich birdlife, megafauna viewing, ecological integrity, and well-developed infrastructure makes Kruger a globally significant site for avitourism.

Nature-based tourism, including avitourism and broader wildlife viewing (e.g., mammal-focused safaris), offers substantial potential for stimulating local economic development (Hodur et al., 2005; Şekercioğlu, 2002; Dinets & Hall, 2018). Birdwatching, defined as the activity of observing birds in their natural environments, has evolved significantly since its origins in the United Kingdom and the United States during the 20th century, spreading globally to become characterized by some as a "scientific sport" or popular pastime (Dunne, 2003; Moss, 2009). This activity is particularly prominent in South Africa, where it stands as one of the most specialized tourism niches (Rogerson et al., 2013; Hoogendoorn & Rogerson, 2015; Visser, 2016). Birdwatchers often invest considerable resources in travel, accommodation, guided services, and specialized equipment.

Beyond its leisure aspects, birdwatching serves two critically important functions. Firstly, birders contribute significantly to scientific understanding through participation in citizen-science projects (Sullivan et al., 2014; Callaghan et al., 2021). These initiatives engage volunteers in collecting vast amounts of observational data, which enable researchers to address complex ecological questions and monitor long-term trends in bird populations (Moss, 2009). The knowledge generated is vital for identifying environmental threats to vulnerable species and informing effective conservation strategies (Robbins, 2014). Secondly, avitourism generates significant economic and conservation impacts. As birdwatchers travel to diverse, sometimes remote, locations, they raise awareness about local biodiversity and can incentivize the adoption of sustainable land-use practices (Şekercioğlu, 2002). When local communities derive tangible financial benefits—through employment as guides, hospitality staff, or providers of other services—their motivation to protect local bird populations and their habitats increases. In this context, birds often serve as an "umbrella" group, whereby efforts to conserve them indirectly benefit the broader ecological community (Ryan, 2012).

Southern Africa, as a region, is exceptionally rich in birdlife, hosting approximately 10% of the world's avian species and about half of those found in Africa (Hockey et al. 2005; Forbes, 1950). The region is notable for its high level of endemism, boasting 98 endemic species, five species whose breeding ranges are entirely confined within its boundaries, and 62 near-endemic species—a concentration unparalleled elsewhere on the continent (Hockey et al., 2005). This rich ornithological heritage is supported by advanced research programs, such as the Southern African Bird Atlas Projects (SABAP1 and SABAP2), which rely heavily on the contributions of a large network of dedicated amateur ornithologists (Hockey et al., 2005).

Despite the growing body of international research on birdwatching tourism, a notable gap exists in understanding precisely which bird species are the primary drivers of birder interest and travel decisions. While it is recognized that preferences often lean towards charismatic species (Colléony et al., 2017), the factor of rarity also plays a significant role, with uncommon or difficult-to-find species frequently being key targets for enthusiasts aiming to expand their "life lists" (Angulo et al., 2009; Martín-López et al., 2007). Therefore, this study aims to utilize existing datasets to quantitatively assess which bird species generate the most demand among birders visiting South Africa and to explore the underlying factors influencing these preferences.

In conclusion, South Africa provides an avitourism experience that is both exceptionally rich biologically and remarkably well-facilitated logistically. Its combination of high avian endemism, excellent infrastructure, welcoming culture, affordability, and conservation-oriented tourism products continues to draw both specialist birders and general nature enthusiasts from around the globe. As noted by the American Birding Association (2014), South Africa offers more than just a destination; it presents an immersive experience that successfully integrates natural heritage with world-class tourism standards, making it one of the most compelling places on Earth for a birding adventure that combines biodiversity, stunning landscapes, and cultural discovery.

Source: American Birding Association. (2014). *Birder's guide to travel* (Vol. 26, No. 1). Colorado Springs, CO: American Birding Association.

Figure 9.1 – West Coast National Park, Table Mountain National Park.

9.2. South Africa and its most rewarding birding hotspots

Boasting a remarkable avian diversity that includes over 10% of the world's bird species within its borders, South Africa stands as a top-tier global destination for birdwatching, or avitourism. The nation's extraordinary variety of habitats – from coastal fynbos and arid deserts to lush forests, high-altitude grasslands, expansive wetlands, and savanna bushveld – supports a rich tapestry of birdlife. This includes a high number of endemic (found nowhere else) and near-endemic species, alongside iconic birds like the national bird, the Blue Crane, making it an irresistible draw for casual birders and dedicated "twitchers" alike. Here below are some of South Africa's most rewarding birding hotspots according to Kruger & Viljoen, (2020); Kemp, *et al,* (2023); Pahlad & Procheş, (2021); Daniels, (2020); Tarboton, (2016); Rogerson, *et al,* (2013); Taylor & Peacock (2018), Taylor et. al. (2015) and Kopij (2001).

9.2.1. Mkhuze Game Reserve, KwaZulu-Natal

- **Overview:** Mkhuze Game Reserve—now part of the iSimangaliso World Heritage mosaic—records over 420 bird species, making it a top destination for local and visiting birders. Its mosaic of habitats ranges from rare dry sand forests and bankside riverine groves to acacia savanna, mixed woodland, grassy plains and rocky hills. Birdwatchers benefit from a network of roads and discreet hides (e.g. Nsumo Pan) as well as expert-led walks like the Fig Forest trail, which provide close-up views of specialists endemic to these unique forest patches.mangaliso Wetland Park World Heritage Site.
- **Habitats:** Offers exceptional habitat diversity including dry sand forests (a rare type), riverine forests along the Mkhuze River, acacia savanna, mixed woodlands, grasslands, and rocky ridges.
- **Birding Experience:** Features excellent infrastructure for birders, including strategically placed hides (notably Nsumo Pan) and a well-maintained road network. Guided walks, such as the Fig Forest Walk, offer intimate encounters with forest specialists.
- **Key Species:** Sought-after specials include the elusive Pel's Fishing-Owl, the localized Neergaard's Sunbird and Pink-throated Twinspot (often found in sand forest), Southern Banded Snake-Eagle, Broad-billed Roller, Gorgeous Bushshrike, and Blue-mantled Crested-Flycatcher.

9.2.2. Kruger National Park, Limpopo & Mpumalanga

- **Overview:** South Africa's flagship national park is a vast wilderness hosting over 500 bird species. Its sheer size encompasses multiple biomes.
- **Habitats:** Ranges from acacia thornveld and mixed woodlands in the south to mopane woodland and riparian forests further north along major rivers (Luvuvhu, Limpopo, Olifants, Sabie).
- **Birding Experience:** The park's northern regions (like Pafuri and Punda Maria) are renowned as hotspots where southern ranges of tropical species meet northern ranges of southern African birds. Birding often involves self-driving, stopping at waterholes, picnic sites, and viewpoints, or staying in camps offering guided walks and drives. Patience is key, as many species are localized or elusive. The austral summer (October-March) brings numerous intra-African and Palearctic migrants, significantly boosting species counts.
- **Key Species:** A staggering list includes raptors (Martial Eagle, Bateleur, Tawny Eagle), vultures, owls (including Verreaux's Eagle-Owl), hornbills (Southern Ground-Hornbill, Yellow-billed Hornbill), rollers, bee-eaters, kingfishers, storks (Saddle-billed Stork), Pel's Fishing-Owl (in riparian areas), Kori Bustard, and numerous passerines. Specific northern specials include Böhm's Spinetail and Grey-headed Parrot.

9.2.3. iSimangaliso Wetland Park, KwaZulu-Natal

- **Overview:** South Africa's first World Heritage Site, this expansive park protects an unparalleled mosaic of ecosystems and boasts over 530 bird species, including the country's highest density of breeding birds.
- **Habitats:** Encompasses huge freshwater lakes (Lake St Lucia being the largest estuary in Africa), coastal dune forests, grasslands, swamps, marine environments, and mangrove-lined channels.
- **Birding Experience:** Offers diverse birding opportunities – boat trips on the estuary (excellent for waterbirds, African Fish Eagles, kingfishers), drives through grasslands and forests, and exploring coastal sections. Seasonally flooded pans are particularly productive.
- **Key Species:** Famous for huge flocks of Greater and Lesser Flamingos and Pink-backed Pelicans. Wetland specials include African Pygmy-Goose and Lesser Jacana. Coastal forests hold Neergaard's Sunbird, Pink-throated Twinspot, Livingstone's Turaco, and Woodward's Batis. Rare finds can include Pel's Fishing-Owl and Mangrove Kingfisher. Grasslands may yield Rosy-throated Longclaw and Short-tailed Pipit (winter).

9.2.4. Kirstenbosch National Botanical Gardens, Western Cape

- **Overview:** Situated on the eastern slopes of Table Mountain in Cape Town, Kirstenbosch is world-renowned for its cultivation of indigenous flora, particularly fynbos, but also serves as an easily accessible site for key regional bird species.
- **Habitats:** Ranges from landscaped gardens to natural fynbos and Afromontane forest patches on the upper slopes.
- **Birding Experience:** Offers easy walking on paths through diverse plantings and trails leading into natural vegetation. The upper sections, rich in proteas and ericas, are best for fynbos specials.
- **Key Species:** Readily seen endemics include Cape Sugarbird, Orange-breasted Sunbird, Malachite Sunbird, Cape Spurfowl, Southern Boubou, Cape Batis, and Forest Canary. Following streams or paths like Skeleton Gorge upwards may reveal Cape Siskin, Swee Waxbill, and occasionally Victorin's Warbler. Forest patches hold African Olive-Pigeon and Lemon Dove.

9.2.5. Wakkerstroom & Surrounds, Mpumalanga

- **Overview:** This charming village is the gateway to South Africa's most accessible high-altitude grasslands and associated wetlands, making it a critical hub for specialized and often threatened grassland birds.
- **Habitats:** Primarily montane grasslands, interspersed with marshes, dams, and patches of mistbelt forest.
- **Birding Experience:** Birding typically involves driving designated routes through farmland (requiring local guide access for best results) and scanning grasslands, as well as visiting hides overlooking wetlands. BirdLife South Africa has a strong presence here.
- **Key Species:** Highly sought-after grassland endemics include Rudd's Lark, Botha's Lark, Yellow-breasted Pipit, Blue Korhaan, Southern Bald Ibis, and White-bellied Korhaan. Wetland areas host Grey Crowned Crane, Red-chested Flufftail, and various waterfowl.

9.2.6. West Coast National Park, Western Cape

- **Overview:** Centered around the vital Langebaan Lagoon, a Ramsar Wetland of International Importance, this park is a crucial stopover for migratory waders and offers excellent coastal and fynbos birding.
- **Habitats:** Includes the sheltered lagoon, salt marshes, granite outcrops, coastal fynbos, and offshore seabird breeding islands (not usually accessible but viewable).
- **Birding Experience:** Best visited during the austral summer (August-April) when thousands of Palearctic waders congregate on the lagoon shores. Several well-placed bird hides provide excellent viewing. Driving through the fynbos sections is also productive.
- **Key Species:** Wader spectacle includes Curlew Sandpiper, Sanderling, Grey Plover, Ruddy Turnstone, Bar-tailed Godwit, and many others. Resident species include African Penguin (nearby Stony Point or Boulders), Cape Gannet, African Oystercatcher, and fynbos endemics like Black Harrier, Southern Black Korhaan, and Cape Penduline-Tit.

9.2.7. Kgalagadi Transfrontier Park, Northern Cape

- **Overview:** A vast arid wilderness spanning the border between South Africa and Botswana, the Kgalagadi offers unparalleled opportunities to see desert-adapted species and spectacular raptors.
- **Habitats:** Characterized by red dunes, dry riverbeds (Nossob and Auob), sparse vegetation, and camelthorn trees.
- **Birding Experience:** Primarily vehicle-based birding along the riverbed roads, scanning for raptors and ground-dwelling birds. Waterholes and rest camps concentrate activity. Requires preparation for remote, hot conditions.
- **Key Species:** Famous for raptors like Martial Eagle, Bateleur, Tawny Eagle, Secretarybird, and Pygmy Falcon. Other specials include Kori Bustard, Northern Black Korhaan, Sociable Weaver (with enormous communal nests), various sandgrouse species, Kalahari Scrub-Robin, and Crimson-breasted Shrike.

9.2.8. Pelagic (Seabird) Birding Trips, Western Cape

- **Overview:** The nutrient-rich waters of the cold Benguela Current off the southwestern Cape coast support one of the world's most diverse and abundant seabird populations.
- **Habitats:** Open ocean, particularly areas associated with upwelling and fishing trawler activity.
- **Birding Experience:** Specialized boat trips, usually departing from Simon's Town or Hout Bay, venture offshore, often following fishing trawlers where thousands of birds gather. Cape Town itself is the main departure point (especially for the Cape Town Pelagics Company). Trips can last several hours and require sea-legs. Winter months (May-September) often bring the highest diversity of albatrosses and petrels.
- **Key Species:** An incredible array of tubenoses including Shy, Black-browed, and Yellow-nosed Albatrosses (with chances of Royal Albatrosses in winter), White-chinned and Pintado Petrels, Great and Sooty Shearwaters, Wilson's and European Storm-Petrels, Cape Gannet, Subantarctic Skua, various terns and cormorants closer to shore. Marine mammals are also common sightings.

Table 9.1 of South Africa's premier birding hotspots, organized by site, overview, habitats, visitor experience, and key species. Information is drawn from the original data and updated with current authoritative sources where possible.

Table 9.1 – South Africa's Premier Birding Hotspot: An Overview

Site	Overview	Habitats	Birding Experience	Key Species
1. Mkhuze Game Reserve (iSimangaliso Wetland Park, KZN)	Part of the iSimangaliso World Heritage Site; >420 species recorded	Sand forest, riverine forest, acacia savanna, mixed woodlands, grasslands, rocky ridges	Self-drive or guided walks; hides at pans (e.g. Nsumo); Fig Forest Walk	Pel's Fishing-Owl, Neergaard's Sunbird, Pink-throated Twinspot, Southern Banded Snake-Eagle, Gorgeous Bushshrike
2. Kruger National Park (Limpopo & Mpumalanga)	>500 species across multiple biomes; flagship savanna park	Thornveld, mopane woodland, riparian forest, grassland, rocky outcrops	Self-drive/game drives; guided walks; night drives	Martial Eagle, Bateleur, African Fish-Eagle, Pel's Fishing-Owl, Narina Trogon, Southern Ground-Hornbill
3. iSimangaliso Wetland Park (KZN)	South Africa's first World Heritage Site; >530 bird species	Freshwater lakes & pans, coastal dune forest, mangroves, grassland, swamps	Boat trips on Lake St Lucia; forest and grassland drives; seasonal pan hides	Greater & Lesser Flamingo, African Pygmy-Goose, Neergaard's Sunbird, Pink-throated Twinspot, Mangrove Kingfisher
4. Kirstenbosch Botanical Gardens (Western Cape)	Eastern slopes of Table Mountain; fusion of cultivated gardens & natural fynbos	Fynbos shrubland, Afromontane forest pockets, landscaped gardens	Easy walking trails; canopy walkway; guided fynbos walks	Cape Sugarbird, Orange-breasted Sunbird, Malachite Sunbird, Victorin's Warbler, Cape Batis
5. Wakkerstroom & Surrounds (Mpumalanga)	Gateway to high-altitude grasslands & wetlands; key for threatened endemics	Montane grassland, marshes, farm dams, mistbelt forest patches	Vehicle-based routes; wetland hides; guided grassland walks	Rudd's Lark, Botha's Lark, Yellow-breasted Pipit, Southern Bald Ibis, Grey Crowned Crane
6. West Coast National Park (Western Cape)	Centered on Langebaan Lagoon (Ramsar site); vital for Palearctic waders	Salt marsh, coastal fynbos, granite outcrops, offshore islands	Series of hides overlooking lagoon; fynbos drive routes	Curlew Sandpiper, Bar-tailed Godwit, Cape Gannet, African Oystercatcher, Black Harrier
7. Kgalagadi Transfrontier	Arid wilderness spanning South Africa–	Red dunes, dry riverbeds	Long-range vehicle safaris;	Secretarybird, Kori Bustard, Sociable Weaver, Crimson-

Site	Overview	Habitats	Birding Experience	Key Species
Park (Northern Cape)	Botswana; desert specialists	(Nossob/Auob), camelthorn savanna	waterhole hides; guided drives	breasted Shrike, Pygmy Falcon
8. Pelagic Trips (off Western Cape)	Offshore seabird voyages into the Benguela upwelling	Open ocean upwellings, fishing-boat congregation zones	Full-day boat trips (Simon's Town/Hout Bay); often in winter	Shy, Black-browed & Yellow-nosed Albatrosses; White-chinned Petrel; Cape Gannet; Wilson's Storm-Petrel

Notes on Improvements and Updates:

- **Species lists** have been refined to highlight the most sought-after endemics and specialties at each site.
- **Habitats** are grouped into broad ecological zones to simplify understanding of where species occur.
- **Visitor Experience** emphasizes the typical mode of exploration (self-drive, boat, hides, guided).
- **Key Species** focus on 4–6 flagship birds per site for clarity
- This table has been integrated into Chapter 9 under section 9.1. South Africa's Most Rewarding Birding Hotspots, providing readers with a concise yet comprehensive reference to plan their own itineraries.

9.3. Beyond Specific Spots: South Africa's Birding Routes

It's also worth noting that South Africa has developed numerous formal **Birding Routes** (often facilitated by BirdLife South Africa partners), such as the Zululand Birding Route, the Cape West Coast Birding Route, and the Escarpment Birding Route (Brink *et al,* 2024; Kruger & Viljoen, 2020; Rogerson, *et al,* 2013;). These routes package information, guide services, and accommodation options to help birders explore specific regions effectively. South Africa's sheer variety ensures that whether you seek forest dwellers, wetland specialists, desert nomads, grassland endemics, or ocean wanderers, there is a world-class birding experience awaiting you.

9.3.1. South African Birding Hotspots: A Species Showcase

A. Mkhuze Game Reserve, KwaZulu-Natal

A1 - Species 1: Pel's Fishing-Owl (*Scotopelia peli)*

One of Africa's largest and most sought-after owls, the Pel's Fishing-Owl is unmistakable with its rufous-buff plumage, barred markings, and large, dark eyes (lacking ear tufts). Unlike most owls, it specializes in catching fish, snatching them from the water surface with its powerful talons. It primarily inhabits dense riverine forests and swamps with large, slow-moving rivers or permanent water bodies like the pans found in Mkhuze. These owls are nocturnal and often located by their distinctive, deep, booming calls echoing along waterways. Seeing this elusive giant is a highlight for many birders visiting Mkhuze's riparian habitats.

Fig. 9.2 - Pel's Fishing Owl (*Scotopelia peli*) photographed at Mkhuze Game Reserve, KwaZulu-Natal, South Africa. Image captured on 25 September 2014 at 07:27 by Derek Keats (Johannesburg, South Africa). Licensed under Creative Commons Attribution 2.0 Generic

A2 - Species 2: Neergaard's Sunbird *(Cinnyris neergaardi)*

Figure 9.3 - Neergaard's Sunbird South Africa. Male Neergaard's Sunbird (*Cinnyris neergaardi*; Passeriformes: Nectariniidae), Near Threatened (IUCN).
Photo credit: Adam Riley (Rockjumper Birding Tours); eBird checklist S64988833; Macaulay Library ML 204683471. Released under CC BY-SA 4.0.

Description: This small, localized sunbird is a prized sighting, particularly associated with the specific coastal scrub and dry sand forest habitats found in Mkhuze and surrounding areas of northern KwaZulu-Natal and southern Mozambique. The male is striking with an iridescent green head and back, a distinctive narrow blue band above a broader red breast band, and a black belly. The female is much plainer grey-brown. They feed primarily on nectar, often from flowering shrubs and trees within their restricted sand forest habitat. Finding this species requires targeting its specific environment within the reserve. **Image:**

B.Kruger National Park, Limpopo & Mpumalanga

B1 - Species 1: Southern Ground-Hornbill (*Bucorvus leadbeateri)*

Figure 9.4 - Southern Ground Hornbill (*Bucorvus leadbeateri*), adult female, photographed on the H4-2 road south of Lower Sabie, Kruger National Park, Mpumalanga, South Africa. Image by Bernard Dupont, taken on 19 November 2024. Licensed under Creative Commons Attribution-Share Alike 2.0 Generic (CC BY-SA 2.0).

Description: An iconic and charismatic resident of African savannas, the Southern Ground-Hornbill is the largest hornbill species globally. Easily identified by its large size, entirely black plumage (except for white primary feathers visible in flight), and striking bare red skin on the face and inflatable throat pouch (blue in females of breeding age). They are cooperative breeders, living in groups and foraging predominantly on the ground for insects, reptiles, amphibians, and small mammals. Found throughout Kruger, particularly in woodland and savanna areas, their deep booming calls are characteristic. They are listed as *Vulnerable* due to habitat loss and slow breeding rates. However, the Southern Ground-Hornbill (*Bucorvus leadbeateri*) has been subject to ongoing conservation translocation projects in South Africa.

B2 - Species 2: Bateleur (*Terathopius ecaudatus)*

A spectacular and distinctive eagle instantly recognizable in flight by its unique silhouette – very short tail and long wings often held in a dihedral, resulting in a characteristic rocking motion as it soars low over the savanna. Adults are strikingly colored with black plumage, a rich chestnut back and tail, silvery-white underwings, and a bright red bare face and legs (which can flush brighter when excited). They are masters of low-level gliding, covering vast distances daily searching for prey, primarily reptiles, birds, and mammals, but also readily scavenging. Commonly seen soaring over Kruger's open woodlands and savannas. The Bateleur is classified as Near Threatened (IUCN 2023).


Figure 9.5 - Bateleur (male) (*Terathopius ecaudatus*) spotted along the H1-3 road south of Satara, Kruger National Park, Mpumalanga, South Africa. Photographed by Bernard Dupont (France) on 6 November 2023. Licensed under Creative Commons Attribution-Share Alike 2.0 Generic (CC BY-SA 2.0).

C. iSimangaliso Wetland Park, KwaZulu-Natal

C1 - Species 1: Pink-throated Twinspot (*Hypargos margaritatus)*


Figure 9.6 - Male Pink-throated Twinspot (*Hypargos margaritatus*) at the Kumasinga hide, Mkhuze Game Reserve, South Africa. Photograph by Alandmanson, taken on 19 October 2014. Licensed under Creative Commons Attribution-Share Alike 4.0 International (CC BY-SA 4.0).

Description: This beautiful but secretive little finch is a special find associated with dense thickets, forest edges, and dry woodlands, particularly the sand forests found within iSimangaliso (and nearby Mkhuze). The male has a distinctive pink throat, grey head, brown back, and black underparts heavily spotted with white. The female is duller. They forage quietly on the ground or low down in vegetation, often in pairs or small groups, feeding mainly on grass seeds. Their elusive nature makes spotting them a rewarding experience in the park's forest habitats. **Image:**

C2 - Species 2: African Fish Eagle (*Haliaeetus vocifer)*

Fig. 9.7 - African Fish Eagle (*Haliaeetus vocifer*)—a protected area listed in the World Database on Protected Areas (WDPA ID: 920). Image captured by Diego Delso on 24 May 2024 at 10:13. Licensed under Creative Commons Attribution-Share Alike (CC BY-SA). Source: Own work. [Photographer ID: Diego Delso (b. 1974), Wikidata: Q28147777]

Description: The quintessential "Voice of Africa," this large, powerful eagle is an iconic symbol of African waterways. Adults are unmistakable with a pure white head, neck, breast and tail contrasting sharply with a chestnut body and black wings. They possess a bright yellow bare face and powerful yellow feet. Primarily fish-eaters, they hunt from prominent perches overlooking water, snatching fish near the surface with their talons. Their loud, ringing "weee-ah, kyo-kyo-kyo" call is one of the most evocative sounds in Africa. They are abundant throughout iSimangaliso's lakes, estuaries, and river systems.   Image:

D. Kirstenbosch National Botanical Gardens, Western Cape

D1 - Species 1: Cape Sugarbird (*Promerops cafer)*

Figure 9.8 - Cape Sugarbird (*Promerops cafer*) observed at Kirstenbosch National Botanical Garden, Cape Town, South Africa, on 17 March 2018 at 08:23. Photograph by Derek Keats, Johannesburg, South Africa. Source: Wikimedia Commons.

Description: An unmistakable endemic bird strongly associated with the Fynbos biome, particularly areas rich in Protea species. This large passerine has grey-brown plumage, a distinctive yellow patch under the tail, and a long, downcurved bill for nectar feeding. Males possess exceptionally long tail streamers, significantly longer than the female's tail. They are specialist nectarivores, playing a crucial role in pollinating proteas, but also feed on insects and spiders. Easily seen probing Protea flowerheads or perched prominently in the upper, natural sections of Kirstenbosch. Image:

D2 - Species 2: Orange-breasted Sunbird *(Anthobaphes violacea)*

Figure 9.9 - Orange-breasted Sunbird (*Anthobaphes violacea*) at Kirstenbosch National Botanical Garden, Cape Town, South Africa. Photographed on 4 March 2023 at 08:02 by Der Berzerker (Washington, DC, USA). Licensed under Creative Commons Attribution-Share Alike 2.0 Generic

Description: Another stunning Fynbos endemic, this small sunbird is intricately linked to flowering ericas and proteas. The male is brilliantly colored with an iridescent green head, violet breast band, and fiery orange belly. The female is a much duller olive-grey. They are highly active nectarivores, using their thin, curved bills to feed, and are important pollinators. Commonly found flitting between flowering shrubs, particularly ericas, in the higher, natural fynbos areas of Kirstenbosch and surrounding Table Mountain National Park.

E. Wakkerstroom & Surrounds, Mpumalanga

E1 - Species 1: Rudd's Lark (*Heteromirafra ruddi*)
One of South Africa's rarest and most sought-after endemic birds, Rudd's Lark is critically endangered due to habitat loss. It inhabits very specific pristine, high-altitude grasslands characterized by particular grass structures, found around Wakkerstroom and a few other isolated locations. It is a cryptic, medium-sized lark, heavily streaked brown above and buffy below, with a relatively short tail. It spends most of its time foraging secretively on the ground and is best located by its distinctive display flight and song. Finding this species requires dedicated searching in its specific habitat, often with experienced local guides.

Figure 9.10 - Rudd's Lark (*Heteromirafra ruddi*) photographed in Wakkerstroom, Mpumalanga, South Africa. Image taken by Maans Booysen (Birding Weto) on 26 October 2015. Licensed under Creative Commons Attribution-Share Alike 4.0 International (CC BY-SA 4.0).

E2 - Species 2: Southern Bald Ibis (*Geronticus calvus)*

Figure 9.11 - Southern Bald Ibis (*Geronticus calvus*) at Weltvogelpark Walsrode, Germany. Photograph taken on 21 May 2016 at 14:17 by Nasser Halaweh. Licensed under Creative Commons Attribution-Share Alike 4.0 International (CC BY-SA 4.0).

Description: A large, striking, and near-endemic ibis restricted to the high-altitude grasslands and mountainous regions of South Africa, Lesotho, and Eswatini. Adults are glossy black with iridescent sheens, but are instantly recognizable by their featherless, bright red head and upper neck, and long, downcurved red bill. They forage in flocks, probing moist grasslands for insects and other invertebrates. They breed colonially on cliff ledges. Wakkerstroom's surrounding grasslands provide important foraging habitat for this Vulnerable species.

Notes:

Species Conservation Status. Check the current data base on birds for updated and accurate information, particularly in relation to:

- Southern Ground-Hornbill: Listed as "Vulnerable". While globally Vulnerable (IUCN), it's often assessed as Endangered within South Africa itself.
- Bateleur: Listed as "Near Threatened (IUCN 2023)". This should be double-checked against the latest IUCN Red List; it has often been assessed as Endangered in recent years due to rapid declines.
- Rudd's Lark: Mentioned as "critically endangered due to habitat loss". Check against the latest BLSA Red List and IUCN status (often listed as Endangered).
- Southern Bald Ibis: Listed as "Vulnerable". This is generally correct according to IUCN.

9.4. Avitourism in South Africa: A Strategic Niche for Ecotourism and Sustainable Development

9.4.1. Introduction: Situating Avitourism within South Africa's Ecotourism Landscape

Avitourism, or birdwatching tourism, represents an increasingly significant sub-sector within the broader ecotourism and nature-based tourism domains (Cordell & Herbert, 2002). Defined as travel undertaken with the primary objective of observing wild birds in their natural habitats, avitourism encompasses a wide spectrum of activities—from leisurely birdwatching to intensive 'twitching', where enthusiasts traverse great distances to view rare or endemic species (Dooley, 2005). The rise of birdwatching—now more widely termed 'birding'—as one of the world's fastest-growing recreational pursuits, has expanded its geographical scope beyond pristine reserves to include urban edges, landfills, and wastewater treatment areas (Weidensaul, 2007).

South Africa is uniquely positioned to capitalize on this growth, with its exceptional ornithological diversity—featuring approximately 725 resident species and more recent estimates (eBird, BirdLife) list **approximately 870 – 890 recorded species**, fluctuating by migratory status and checklist versions, accounting for nearly 10% of the world's birdlife (Biggs et al., 2011). This richness is supported by diverse habitats including grasslands, wetlands, fynbos, karoo shrublands, and montane forests, as well as by **112** Important Bird Areas **(IBAs)**, with some overlaps reclassified into Key Biodiversity Areas (KBAs) as per post-2018 updates, as appointed by the BirdLife South Africa. In 2011, South Africa attracted 8.3 million international tourists, contributing R71 billion (USD 3.83 billion)[2] in direct expenditure (SAT, 2012), with avitourism accounting for a measurable portion of this inflow.

Firmly situated within the ecotourism framework (Ceballos-Lascuráin, 1996), avitourism delivers both ecological and socio-economic dividends. It enhances the conservation value of bird species and their habitats, supports local livelihoods, and promotes community empowerment (Simango, 2011). Organizations such as BirdLife South Africa (BLSA) are instrumental in advancing avitourism by aligning tourism with biodiversity conservation.

[2]As of April 25, 2025, the South African rand (ZAR) was trading at approximately 0.05351 USD per ZAR . Based on this exchange rate, R71 billion equates to approximately $3.83 billion USD

With strategic marketing and policy support from institutions like the National Department of Tourism (NDT) and the Industrial Development Corporation (IDC), avitourism's role in national development agendas could be significantly amplified.

Figure 9.12 – Birdlife of South Africa – Key Species

9.4.2. Profiling the Avitourist: Demographics and Motivations

Avitourists represent a distinct and increasingly important market segment within the global tourism industry. Characterized by high levels of motivation and specialization, these travelers are primarily driven by the pursuit of avian diversity—especially the opportunity to observe rare, endemic, and migratory bird species in their natural habitats (Leuschner et al., 1989). Recent trends indicate a growing inclination among avitourists to visit remote, biodiversity-rich regions, underscoring their willingness to engage in specialized and often logistically complex travel (Jones & Buckley, 2004).

Key source markets for avitourism continue to be the United States, the United Kingdom, Canada, Australia, and Scandinavia (Jones & Buckley, 2004). Within these regions, avitourists are typically middle-aged, relatively affluent, highly educated males who prefer short, high-expenditure trips due to professional and time constraints (Mehmetoglu, 2007; Eubanks et al., 2004). This demographic profile aligns with broader patterns observed in niche tourism, where specialized interests often correlate with higher disposable income and educational attainment.

In the United States, participation in birdwatching rose dramatically—by 225%—between 1982 and 2002 (Scott & Thigpen, 2003), reflecting a broader societal trend toward nature-based recreation. A similar expansion occurred in the United Kingdom, where membership in the Royal Society for the Protection of Birds (RSPB) doubled within the same period (Huxley, 2007). Comparable growth patterns have been recorded in France, Australia, and New Zealand, suggesting the global spread of avitourism as a mainstream, albeit specialized, recreational activity. Notably, while birdwatchers in Western Europe tend to skew older (Lovibond, 2005), younger demographics predominate in emerging markets such as Turkey, where avitourism is still consolidating (Cakici & Harman, 2007). The rise in avitourism has been partially attributed to the influence of nature documentaries, wildlife-focused media, and broader societal shifts promoting biodiversity engagement and outdoor recreation (Rodger et al., 2007). Such influences have helped to democratize birdwatching, expanding its appeal beyond traditional hobbyists to new and diverse audiences.

In the South African context, international avitourists predominantly originate from Europe (60%), followed by Africa (24%) and the United States (8%). Demographically, there is a strong male skew (82%), and the average age of visitors is approximately 53 years. Educational attainment among these travelers is notably high, with over 60% holding tertiary qualifications. A majority (60%) prefer to organize their own itineraries, although a substantial proportion still relies on specialized birding tour operators. Typical visits span an average of 20 days, with preferences for self-catering accommodations and small group or couple-based travel structures. Primary motivational factors include the pursuit of rare species sightings, recommendations from peer networks or authoritative guides, and information disseminated through books and online platforms.

A national survey conducted in 2009 further segmented avitourists into three categories: casual (33%), enthusiastic (57%), and fanatical (10%) birders. The study found that enthusiastic birders exhibited a threefold increase in average spending compared to a decade earlier—highlighting their growing economic significance, particularly for small businesses and community-based guide services.

9.4.3. Infrastructure and Promotion of Avitourism in South Africa
South Africa offers an extensive and mature avitourism infrastructure, providing both domestic and international birders with a wide array of high-quality experiences. Flagship national parks such as Kruger National Park, iSimangaliso Wetland Park (formerly Greater St. Lucia), West Coast National Park, De Hoop Nature Reserve, Ndumo Game Reserve, and Kgalagadi Transfrontier Park are globally recognized for their avian biodiversity and strategic positioning within critical conservation networks.

The development of formalized "birding routes" since 2004 has significantly enhanced the accessibility and visibility of avitourism experiences across the country. These routes—such as the Zululand, Greater Limpopo, Southern KwaZulu-Natal, Eastern and Western Cape, Gauteng, and Mpumalanga birding routes—strategically package information, accommodation options, guide services, and interpretative resources. Notably, community bird guides, often trained through local initiatives, play a vital role by offering culturally contextualized and ecologically rich birding experiences, particularly in locating elusive or habitat-specific species.

Annual events such as National Bird Week, the Big Birding Day (sponsored by Sappi and BirdLife South Africa), and various regional birding festivals have become fixtures in the avitourism calendar, further entrenching birdwatching as a major ecotourism niche. Facilities such as well-positioned bird hides, accessible trails, and comprehensive regional bird checklists add to the infrastructure supporting avitourists.

Urban avitourism attractions, such as the Umgeni River Bird Park in Durban and Montecasino Bird Gardens in Johannesburg, cater to novice birders and families. These venues offer low-impact wildlife experiences while contributing to broader conservation education and ex-situ biodiversity awareness efforts (Rodger et al., 2007; Head, 2000).

Strategic marketing initiatives remain critical to sustaining and growing the sector. Traditional avenues—including birding magazines, airline publications, and general travel media such as *Conde Nast* and *Sunday Times Travel Weekly*—remain important. However, digital platforms have become indispensable. Tools such as eBird, specialized booking websites, and SEO-optimized content significantly enhance the ability of avitourism providers to connect with global demand (South African Department of Tourism, 2012).

9.4.4. Economic Impact and Socio-Economic Contributions

The economic contributions of avitourism to South Africa's tourism sector are both substantial and increasing. Taylor (2010) estimated that between 21,000 and 40,000 avitourists—combining domestic and international visitors—generate an annual revenue of between R482 million and R890 million. Of this total, international avitourists (8,000 to 16,000) alone contribute approximately R309 million to R618 million annually. More recent projections suggest that when related expenditures on birding equipment, guide services, and ancillary tourism activities are included, the total avitourism economy exceeds R1.7 billion per year.

Domestic birders, numbering between 18,000 and 23,000, also play a critical role, particularly in sustaining avitourism activity across seasonal cycles and rural destinations.
Avitourism offers especially crucial economic diversification in marginalized regions such as the Northern Cape, where limited alternative development pathways exist (La Rouche, 2001). Its alignment with migratory bird calendars allows for an extension of the traditional tourism season, thus providing steadier income flows for local communities. Beyond direct revenue generation, avitourism contributes to broader developmental objectives. Research shows that it fosters foreign exchange earnings, catalyzes job creation, and stimulates local economies (Turpie & Ryan, 1998). Guide services alone have been shown to generate R47 million annually, according to estimates from the Department of Trade and Industry. Moreover, avitourism aligns with South Africa's national strategies for inclusive growth and community empowerment. Community-based avitourism initiatives have demonstrated notably lower costs per job created when compared with more traditional tourism ventures, enhancing their appeal as strategic tools for sustainable development (Biggs et al., 2011; DTI, 2010).

9.4.5. Community Participation and Capacity Building

The long-term viability of avitourism as a conservation and economic development tool depends fundamentally on meaningful community participation. Viewing "community" as a network of ecological and social relationships fosters stewardship and a sense of ownership (Honey, 1999; Sirakaya, Jamal, & Choi, 2002). Importantly, inclusive consultation—reaching beyond elite or externally selected stakeholders—is critical to prevent local resistance or disillusionment (Stegeborn, 1996; Bernard, 1995). Empirical studies highlight that local ownership, access to educational opportunities, and community empowerment consistently yield greater conservation and socio-economic benefits than short-term financial handouts (Berkes, 2004; Fabricius, 2004). At the same time, performance-based remuneration systems, particularly for bird guides, have proven effective in sustaining engagement and reinforcing conservation incentives (Sanderson, 2005).

The Wakkerstroom Bird Guide Training Centre, established in 2000 within the Grassland Biosphere Reserve (Barnes, 1998), stands as a benchmark of success. This initiative significantly boosted local incomes—from approximately R600 to R2,200 per month—and trained guides who now serve as vital environmental educators and conservation ambassadors in their communities (Department of Trade and Industry-DIT, 2010).

Similarly, the Zululand Birding Route provides a compelling case study in avitourism-driven community development. Supported by a coalition of private and public partners, the project has trained over 35 community guides, created 10 full-time tourism positions, and catalyzed the formation of 18 small, medium, and micro-sized enterprises (SMMEs) (Zululand Birding Route, n.d.).

9.4.6. Sustainability and Ecological Integrity

For avitourism to serve as a genuine tool for sustainable development, it must safeguard both community well-being and ecological integrity. When properly managed, avitourism exerts minimal environmental impact, generates conservation incentives, and fosters environmental education among both tourists and local communities (Bramwell & Lane, 1993; Honey, 1999).

Nevertheless, unmanaged growth introduces risks. Inappropriate behaviors such as flash photography, overcrowding at sensitive sites, and artificial feeding practices can disrupt breeding behaviors, migratory patterns, and overall species health (Valentine, 1984; Jones & Nealson, 2005). Although the long-term cumulative effects remain understudied (Lindsay et al., 2008), the precautionary principle necessitates proactive regulation.

To mitigate such risks, integrated policies should combine ecological education initiatives, enhanced local stewardship, continuous facility improvements, and rigorous conservation zoning (Accinelli, Brida, & Carrera, 2008; Hillel, 2002). Given their strong conservation ethic, avitourists often advocate for sustainable tourism modernization (Claude & Zaccour, 2009). However, external threats such as safety and security concerns continue to constrain broader sectoral growth and must be proactively addressed to sustain the sector's momentum.

9.4.7. Legal Framework for Biodiversity Conservation in South Africa

South Africa's commitment to safeguarding its natural heritage is rooted in a robust suite of laws and strategic plans. At the apex sits the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa, which guarantees every citizen the right to an environment "that is not harmful to their health or well-being" (Section 24). Building on this foundation, the National Environmental Management Act (NEMA, Act No. 107 of 1998) establishes overarching principles—such as sustainable development and public participation—that guide all environmental governance. Specialized legislation then targets key conservation priorities:

the Protected Areas Act (Act No. 57 of 2003) creates and regulates national parks, reserves, and co-management agreements; the National Biodiversity Strategy and Action Plan (NBSAP, adopted under the Biodiversity Act No. 10 of 2004) sets long-term goals for species and ecosystem protection; and the National Biodiversity Framework (NBF, first published 2009) refines short- to medium-term priorities, reviewed every five years. To expand South Africa's conservation estate, the National Protected Area Expansion Strategy (NPAES, 2008) identifies priority regions for new reserves, while the National Biodiversity Assessment (NBA, led by SANBI) delivers periodic, data-driven evaluations of the nation's biodiversity health. Together, these instruments form an integrated, multi-layered approach to environmental stewardship—ensuring that policies, protected areas, and scientific monitoring work in concert to secure South Africa's rich biological diversity.

9.4.8. Important Bird and Biodiversity Areas (IBAs) of South Africa

The Map and Table below are drawn from BirdLife South Africa's *State of South Africa's Birds Report 2018* (Taylor & Peacock, 2018), which identifies and evaluates the country's IBAs using standardized global criteria. Each IBA is highlighted on the map to show its geographic location, while the table summarizes key information for each site: dominant habitat types, flagship bird species, conservation status, and principal threats. These IBAs span a diverse array of ecosystems—from the fynbos shrublands of the Western Cape and high-altitude grasslands of Mpumalanga to the expansive wetlands along the KwaZulu-Natal coast—making them vital focal points for both biodiversity conservation and avitourism activities. By integrating spatial and biological data, this overview provides researchers, conservation practitioners, and birdwatchers with a practical tool to prioritize monitoring efforts, guide habitat management, and foster community partnerships across South Africa's most critical birding landscapes.

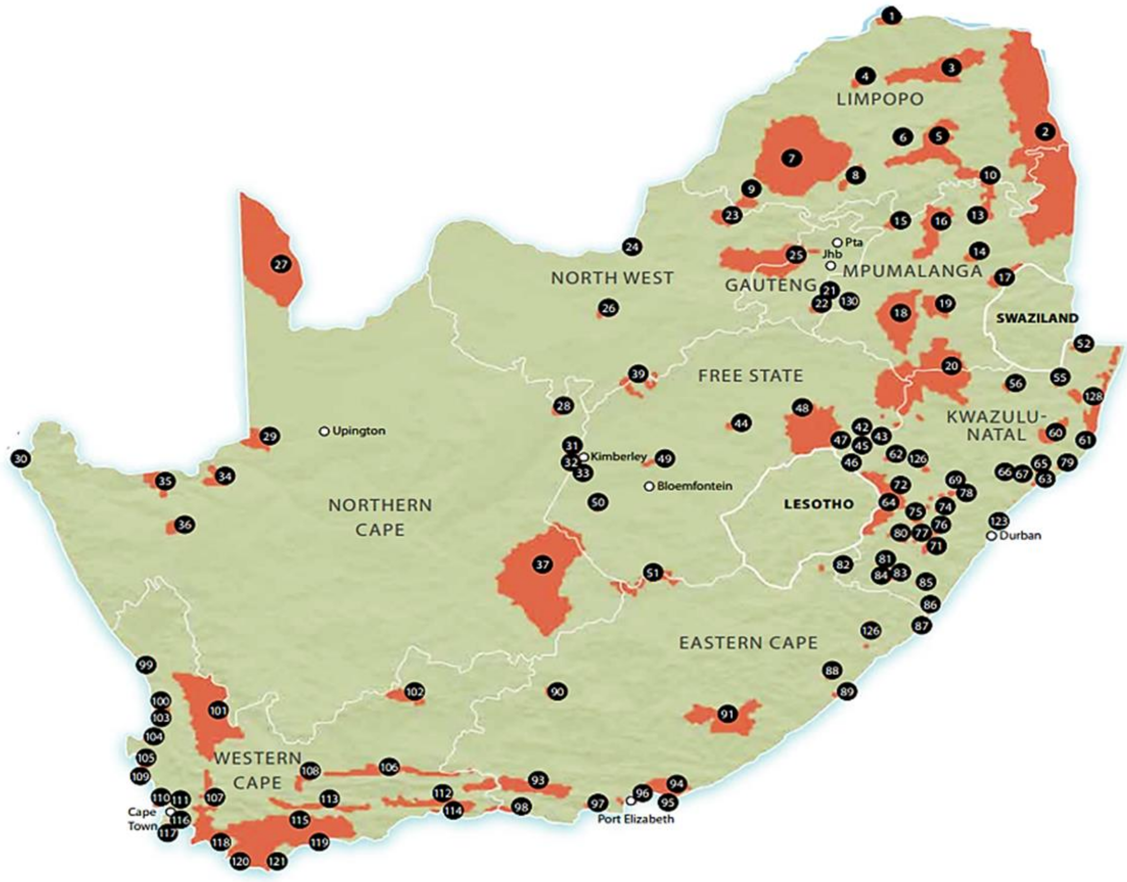


Figure 9.13 – South Africa spotted with the Important Bird and Biodiversity Areas (IBAs).

LIMPOPO

1 Mapungubwe National Park (P)
2 Kruger National Park and adjacent areas (P)
3 Soutpansberg (P)
4 Blouberg Vulture Colonies (P)
5 Wolkberg Forest Belt (P)
6 Polokwane Nature Reserve (U)
7 Waterberg System (P)
8 Nyl River Floodplain (P)
9 Northern Turf Thornveld (U)
10 Blyde River Canyon (P)

MPUMALANGA

13 Misty Mountain Nat. Heritage Site (F)
14 Kaapsehoop (F)
15 Loskop Dam Nature Reserve (F)
16 Steenkampsberg (P)
17 Songimvelo Nature Reserve (F)
18 Amersfoort-Bethal-Carolina (U)
19 Chrissie Pans (P)
20 Grasslands (P)

GAUTENG

21 Blesbokspruit (P)
22 Suikerbosrand Nature Reserve (F)
130 Devon Grasslands (U)

NORTH WEST

23 Pilanesberg National Park (F)
24 Botsalano Nature Reserve (F)
25 Magaliesberg (P)
26 Barberspan and Leeupan (P)

NORTHERN CAPE

27 Kalahari Gemsbok National Park (F)
28 Spitskop Dam (U)
29 Augrabies Falls National Park (F)
30 Orange River Mouth Wetlands (U)
31 Dronfield (U)
32 Kamfers Dam (U)
33 Benfontein (U)
34 Mattheus-Gat Conserv. Area (U)
35 Haramoep & Black Mnt. Mine (U)
36 Bitterputs Conservation Area (U)
37 Platberg-Karoo Conservancy (U)

FREE STATE

39 Sandveld & Bloemhof Dam (P)
42 Alexpan (U)
43 Ingula Nature Reserve (U)
44 Willem Pretorius Game Reserve (F)
45 Murphy's Rust (U)
46 Sterkfontein Dam NR (P)
47 Golden Gate Highlands NP (F)
48 Rooiberge-Riemland (U)
49 Soetdoring Nature Reserve (F)
50 Kalkfontein Dam NR (F)
51 Upper Orange River (F)

KWAZULU-NATAL

52 Ndumo Game Reserve (F)
55 Phongolo Nature Reserve (F)
56 Ithala Game Reserve (F)
59 Chelmsford Nature Reserve (F)
60 Hluhluwe-iMfolozi Park (F)
61 Lake Eteza Nature Reserve (F)
62 Spioenkop Nature Reserve (F)
63 Umlalazi Nature Reserve (F)
64 Maloti Drakensberg Park (F)
65 Ngoye Forest Reserve (F)
66 Entumeni Nature Reserve (F)
67 Dlinza Forest Nature Reserve (F)
69 Umvoti Vlei (P)
71 KwaZulu-Natal Mistbelt Forests (P)
72 Hlatikulu (U)
74 Karkloof (P)
75 Umgeni Vlei Nature Reserve (F)
76 Midmar Nature Reserve (F)
77 Impendle Nature Reserve (F)
78 KwaZulu-Natal Mistbelt Grasslands (U)
79 Richards Bay Game Reserve (F)
80 Greater Ngwangwana River (F)
81 Franklin Vlei (U)
83 Penny Park (U)
84 Mount Currie Nature Reserve (F)
85 Oribi Gorge Nature Reserve (F)
86 Umtamvuna Nature Reserve (F)
123 Mount Moreland (U)
128 iSimangaliso Wetland Park (F)

EASTERN CAPE

82 Matatiele Nature Reserve (F)
87 Mkhambathi Nature Reserve (F)
88 Colleywobbles Vulture Colony (U)
89 Dwesa-Cwebe Nature Reserve (F)
90 Camdeboo National Park (F)
91 Amatola-Katberg Mountain (P)
93 Kouga-Baviaanskloof Complex (P)
94 Woody Cape Section: Addo Elephant National Park (P)
95 Algoa Bay Islands: Addo Elephant National Park (F)
96 Swartkops Estuary-Redhouse and Chatty Saltpans (P)
97 Maitland-Gamtoos Coast (P)
98 Tsitsikamma-Plettenberg Bay (P)
126 Pondoland Cape Vulture (U)

WESTERN CAPE

99 Olifants River Estuary (U)
100 Bird Island (F)
101 Cedarberg-Koue Bokkeveld Complex (P)
102 Karoo National Park (F)
103 Verlorenvlei Estuary (U)
104 Berg River Estuary (U)
105 West Coast NP and Saldanha Bay Islands (F)
106 Swartberg (P)
107 Boland Mountains (P)
108 Anysberg NR (F)
109 Dassen Island (F)
110 Robben Island (F)
111 Rietvlei Wetland: Table Bay NR (F)
112 Outeniqua Mountains (P)
113 Langeberg Mountains (P)
114 Wilderness-Sedgefield Lakes Complex (P)
115 Overberg Wheatbelt (U)
116 False Bay Nature Reserve (F)
117 Boulders Beach (F)
118 Cape Whale Coast (P)
119 De Hoop Nature Reserve (F)
120 Dyer Island Nature Reserve (F)
121 Agulhas Plain-Heuningnes Estuary (P)

Of South Africa's 112 IBAs, 46% are fully protected, while 29% have partial protection and 25% are completely unprotected.

PROTECTION STATUS
F = Fully Protected
P = Partially Protected
U = Unprotected

Table 9.2 – This Infographic Table Completes the Information Available on Map 9.13 with the Important Bird and Biodiversity Areas – IBAs of South Africa. This Table is a reproduction of the original available at Taylor & Peacock (2018), in the Booklet, '*State of South Africa's Birds Report 2018*', by BirdLife South Africa, p. 39.

9.5. Supporting Birding and Conservation in South Africa: The Role of BirdLife South Africa and GoBirding.org

South Africa's rich birdlife attracts visitors and researchers from around the globe. Facilitating access to birding opportunities while promoting conservation requires dedicated effort and resources. A central organisation in this field is BirdLife South Africa, the country's leading non-profit entity focused on bird conservation. Its work extends across many areas, including the protection of important bird habitats (landscape conservation), specific endangered species, and marine birds (seabird conservation). BirdLife South Africa also invests in scientific research and innovation to inform its strategies, engages in policy discussions and advocacy to influence conservation laws, and actively works on empowering local communities through conservation-related projects.

As part of its mission to share knowledge and foster interest in birds, BirdLife South Africa publishes *African Birdlife* magazine. For those seeking specific information or historical context, the organization maintains a publicly accessible digital archive of past articles from the magazine, allowing users to search by topic, author, or species name. This serves as a valuable resource for both casual readers and researchers, although users must respect copyright when accessing and using these materials.

Recognising the need for practical information for people wishing to experience the country's birdlife firsthand, BirdLife South Africa hosts a dedicated online platform called GoBirding.org. This website functions as a central information hub designed specifically for individuals planning birdwatching trips within South Africa. Rather than promoting specific tours, GoBirding.org aims to provide objective, location-based information to help users organize their own activities. The platform uses an interactive map interface, allowing users to easily find resources relevant to specific regions they plan to visit. Key information categories available through GoBirding.org include:

- **Birding Sites:** Details on recognized locations known for good birdwatching opportunities.
- **Accommodation:** Places to stay near key birding areas.
- **Guides and Tour Operators:** Contact information for professional local guides, including community-based guides (linking to BirdLife South Africa's empowerment goals), as well as larger tour operating companies that offer birding excursions.
- **Bird Clubs:** Connections to local birding groups, which can be valuable sources of current information and community connection.
- **Blogs:** Links to personal accounts and articles offering insights into birding experiences in different areas.

In essence, GoBirding.org acts as a facilitator, connecting potential visitors with the necessary local contacts, logistical information, and site details needed to plan a birding trip. By centralizing this diverse information, BirdLife South Africa, through its GoBirding.org platform, makes the country's exceptional birding opportunities more accessible to a wide audience, supporting both tourism and the appreciation of South Africa's avian biodiversity.

9.6. Sharing Knowledge: BirdLife South Africa's Publications

A key aspect of BirdLife South Africa's work involves sharing knowledge and fostering appreciation for birds and their conservation among a wide audience. The organization's flagship publication is *African Birdlife* magazine (see Fig. 9.1 for Magazines' cover of 2022 edition). Typically published multiple times a year, this magazine serves as a primary communication channel, featuring a blend of content designed to appeal to both seasoned birders and general nature enthusiasts. Articles often cover recent conservation news, findings from ornithological research presented in an accessible manner, practical bird identification tips, stunning photography, and information on birding destinations across the continent. Complementing the current magazine issues, BirdLife South Africa provides a valuable digital resource through the *African Birdlife* archive. This online collection allows public access to articles published in the magazine throughout its history, up until approximately two years before the present date (meaning, as of mid-2025, articles published up to mid-2023 would likely be available). While these archived articles are generally free for viewing and downloading in PDF format, users are reminded that copyright restrictions apply to their use. The archive offers convenient search options, enabling users to locate specific articles based on criteria such as the title, author's name, subject matter, or the name of a particular bird species. Together, the magazine and its extensive archive represent a significant repository of information on South Africa's rich avian heritage and ongoing conservation efforts.

Fig. 9.14 - Flagship publication is *African Birdlife* magazine. Typically published multiple times a year. The Magazines' cover of 2022 edition.

9.7. Digital Platforms: Key Online Resources for Avitourism in South Africa

This resource directory gathers South Africa's most trusted online platforms to guide your avitourism projects—whether you're planning a birding trip, carrying out field research, or partnering with local communities. You'll find national agencies like the Department of Environment, Forestry and Fisheries and SANBI, which offer up-to-date policies and comprehensive biodiversity databases. Leading conservation NGOs such as BirdLife South Africa and the Endangered Wildlife Trust share site-specific action plans, technical reports, and outreach materials. Academic partners—including the Percy FitzPatrick Institute and UCT's Animal Demography Unit—host citizen-science initiatives and publish authoritative ornithological studies. Finally, specialized tools like the Southern African Bird Atlas Project (SABAP2), eBird, and the Mabula Ground Hornbill Project deliver detailed distribution maps and species-monitoring data. No matter your level of expertise or language background, you can use this directory (see Table 9.2) to find reliable information and collaborate with experts across South Africa's dynamic avitourism community.

Table 9.3 - Key online resources for avitourism in South Africa:

Category	Resource	URL	Description
Government & National	Department of Environment, Forestry and Fisheries (DEFF)	https://www.environment.gov.za/	National conservation policies, protected-area management plans, biodiversity regulations.
	South African National Biodiversity Institute (SANBI)	https://www.sanbi.org/	Biodiversity research programmes, scientific publications, and interactive species & habitat databases.
NGOs & Trusts	BirdLife South Africa	https://www.birdlife.org.za/	IBAs, bird conservation projects, policy positions, and technical reports (including avitourism guides).
	Endangered Wildlife Trust (EWT)	https://www.ewt.org.za/	Conservation of cranes, raptors, and other threatened species; data downloads and educational materials.
	Nature's Valley Trust	https://www.naturesvalleytrust.co.za/	Coastal and forest conservation programmes, community engagement, and collaborative research outputs.
Research Institutes & Units	Percy FitzPatrick Institute of African Ornithology	https://www.fitzpatrick.uct.ac.za/	Ornithological staff profiles, publications, and study/research opportunities.
	Animal Demography Unit (University of Cape Town)	https://www.adu.org.za/	Citizen-science projects (CAR, CWAC, SAFRING), virtual museum,

Category	Resource	URL	Description
			and fine-scale bird distribution data.
Atlas Projects & Citizen Sci.	Southern African Bird Atlas Project (SABAP2)	http://sabap2.adu.org.za/	Grid-based maps of bird distribution and abundance, continually updated by volunteers.
	eBird – South Africa	https://ebird.org/region/ZA/	Global bird-sighting database with South African hotspots, real-time checklists, and analytics.
Species-Specific Initiatives	Mabula Ground Hornbill Project	https://ground-hornbill.org.za/	Research, reintroduction strategies, and education on the Southern Ground-Hornbill.
	Regionally Threatened Bird Species (SANBI)	https://www.speciesstatus.sanbi.org/	Accounts for 132 threatened bird species from the Eskom Red Data Book for South Africa, Lesotho, and Eswatini.
Birding Routes & IBA	IBA Directory (BirdLife SA)	https://www.birdlife.org.za/conservation/important-bird-areas/iba-directory/	Interactive directory of IBAs with maps, key species lists, and threat-mitigation plans.

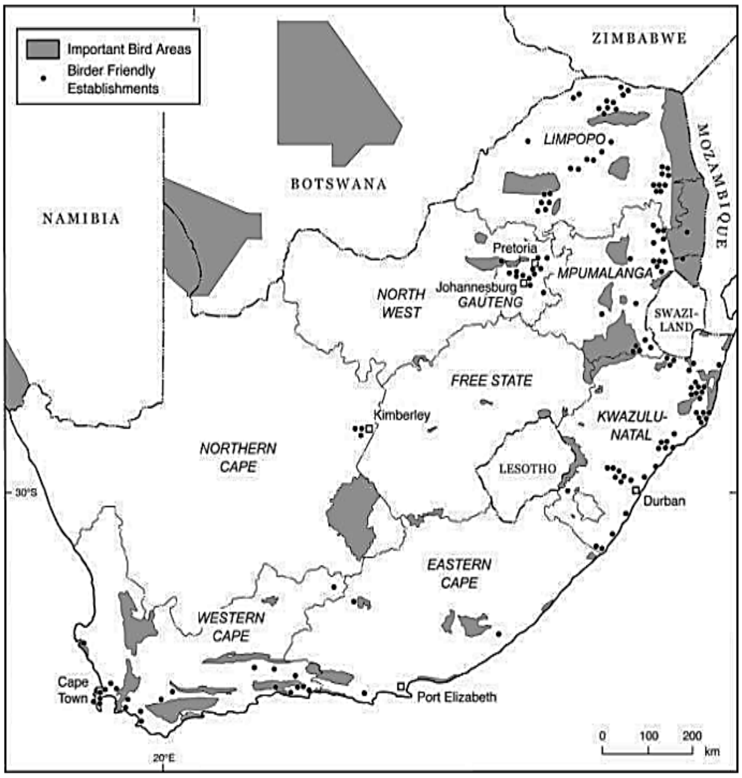
Note: Use this table to identify and access the most relevant portals for data, planning, community contacts, and research underpinning avitourism in South Africa.

9.8. Conclusion: Pathways to Avitourism Excellence in South Africa

Avitourism offers South Africa a powerful opportunity to advance a model of tourism that is high-value, low-impact, and deeply intertwined with biodiversity conservation. By linking rural economies to specialist nature-based enterprises, promoting social inclusion through community participation, and reinforcing South Africa's global reputation for biodiversity-based tourism, avitourism can deliver long-term ecological and socioeconomic dividends (Department of Trade and Industry-DIT, 2010; Roe et al., 2004). However, the sector must reckon with accelerating climate and land-use changes. Recent modeling by Manley & Egoh (2024) shows that optimal birding areas in Africa will shift markedly under future warming scenarios. In response, South African conservation agencies have begun piloting integrated fire-management zones in fire-prone fynbos shrublands—using prescribed burns and fire-wise community planning to maintain habitat heterogeneity and reduce unplanned wildfire severity. At the same time, "fire-wise" disaster-preparedness initiatives around Cape Town's fynbos fringe are strengthening local capacity to manage climate-induced fire risks (UNFCCC) (Smit et.al., 2024). Key priorities moving forward include:

1. **Expanding community-based guide training** to ensure locally led, climate-resilient avitourism products;
2. **Leveraging digital marketing**—including eBird and SEO-optimized platforms—to reach global audiences with real-time, climate-aware birding information;
3. **Embedding avitourism in national tourism strategies** as a cornerstone of both conservation finance and climate adaptation; and
4. **Addressing barriers** of safety, infrastructure, and accessibility in a way that integrates ecological zoning and disaster preparedness.

With these measures, South Africa's avitourism sector can achieve a synergistic balance between ecological stewardship and sustainable economic opportunity—remaining an exemplar of how nature-based tourism can adapt to and mitigate the challenges of a changing climate. Figure 9.2 and Fig. 9.3 outline the main birding areas and birder friendly establishments in sub-Saharan Africa with an emphasis for the eastern and western South Africa geographical spots.



Source: Afanasiev, O. (2022). *Birdwatching, ornithological tourism and avitourism*. https://www.spst-journal.org/afanasiev, and Birdlife South Africa.

Figure 9.15 - The main birding areas and birder friendly establishments in South Africa. Geographical map.

Birding Hotspots in Eastern and Western South Africa	
Western South Africa	**Eastern South Africa**
• Kirstenbosch Botanical Garden	• Mkuze Game Reserve
• Boulders Beach African penguin colony	• Ndumo Game Reserve
• Strandfontein Sewage Works	• Greater St Lucia Park
• Pelagic birding: Cape Town, Lamberts Bay, Betty's Bay	• Eshowe: Dlinza and Entumeni Forests
• West Coast National Park	• Marievale Bird Sanctuary
• Tanqua Karoo	• Suikerbosrand Nature Reserve
• De Hoop Nature Reserve	• Wakkerstroom
• Bushmanland: Brandvlei, Pofadder	• Kruger National Park
• Kalahari: Kgalagadi Transfrontier Park	• Strydom Tunnel
• Cape Recife	• Mapungubwe National Park
• Addo Elephant Park	• Magoebaskloof
• Karoo National Park	• Sani Pass

Source: BirdLife South Africa. (2010). *Avitourism in South Africa* [Information booklet]. Department of Trade and Industry (the dti). https://birdlifezimbabwe.org/wp/wp-content/uploads/2023/11/Avitourism-in-South-Africa-Information-booklet.pdf

Figure 9.16 - The main birding areas in Eastern and Western South Africa

References

Accinelli, E., Brida, J. G., & Carrera, E. (2008). A good policy of sustainable tourism. *Revista de Administración, Finanzas y Economía (Journal of Management, Finance and Economics)*, 2(2), 150–161.

Afanasiev, O. (2022). Birdwatching, ornithological tourism and avitourism: Terminological dispute and review of world and Russian practices. *Revista Anais Brasileiros de Estudos Turísticos / ABET*, 12(Special Issue), 1–12. https://periodicos.ufjf.br/index.php/abet/article/view/37562

Allan, D. G. (1995). Ecotourism and birding in South Africa. In E. M. Cadell & J. Ledger (Eds.), *Ecotourism and the Environment in Southern Africa* (pp. 126–141). Endangered Wildlife Trust 1995. Vision.

American Birding Association. (March, 2014). *Birder's guide to travel* (Vol. 26, No. 1). Colorado Springs, CO: American Birding Association. https://www.aba.org/birders-guide-mar-2014/#4

Angulo, E., Deves, A. L., Saint Jalmes, M., & Courchamp, F. (2009). Fatal attraction: Rare species in the spotlight. *Proceedings of the Royal Society of London B: Biological Sciences*, 276(1660), 1331–1337. https://doi.org/10.1098/rspb.2008.1475

Barnes, K. N. (1998). *Important bird areas of southern Africa*. BirdLife South Africa.

Becker, N. (2009). A comparative analysis of the pricing systems of nature reserves. *Tourism Economics*, 15(1), 193–213.

Berkes, F. (2004). Rethinking community-based conservation. *Conservation Biology*, 18, 621–630.

Biggs, D., Turpie, J., Fabricius, C., & Spenceley, A. (2011). The value of avitourism for conservation and job creation—An analysis from South Africa. *Conservation & Society, 9*(1), 80–90. https://www.jstor.org/stable/26393127

BirdLife South Africa. (2010a). *Avitourism in South Africa* [Information booklet]. Department of Trade and Industry (the dti). https://birdlifezimbabwe.org/wp/wp-content/uploads/2023/11/Avitourism-in-South-Africa-Information-booklet.pdf

BirdLife South Africa. (2010b). *Birding routes*. Retrieved September 18, 2010, from http://www.birdlife.org.za/page/5312/birding_routes

BirdLife South Africa. (2025). *Checklist of Birds in South Africa 2025 (Version 4)* [PDF]. BirdLife South Africa. https://www.birdlife.org.za/wp-content/uploads/2025/03/BLSA-Checklist-2025-v4.pdf

Brink, C. W., Lee, A. T. K., Priyadarshani, D., Hwang, W.-H., Retief, E., Chetty, K., & Whitecross, M. A. (2024). Recent distribution and population trends for Secretarybirds *Sagittarius serpentarius* in South Africa, Lesotho, and Eswatini from citizen science data. *Bird Conservation International, 34*, e23. https://doi.org/10.1017/S0959270924000157

Cakici, A., & Harman, S. (2007). Leisure involvement of Turkish birdwatchers. *Anatolia*, 18, 153–157.

Callaghan, C. T., Watson, J. E. M., Lyons, M. B., Cornwell, W. K., & Fuller, R. A. (2021). Conservation birding: A quantitative conceptual framework for prioritizing citizen science observations. *Biological Conservation*, 253, 108912. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.biocon.2020.108912

Ceballos-Lascuráin, H. (2001). *Integrating biodiversity into the tourism sector: Best practices guidelines*. UNEP/UNDP/GEF/BPSP. https://www.cbd.int/doc/case-studies/tour/cs-tour-unep.pdf

Claude, D., & Zaccour, G. (2009). Investment in tourism market and reputation. *Journal of Public Economic Theory*, 11(5), 797–817.

Colléony, A., Clayton, S., Couvet, D., Saint Jalme, M., & Prévot, A. C. (2017). Human preferences for species conservation: Animal charisma trumps endangered status. *Biological Conservation*, 206, 263–269. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.biocon.2016.11.035

Conradie, N., & van Zyl, C. (2013). Agreement of the international avitourist market to ecotourism principles: A South African development perspective. *African Journal of Business Management*, 7(30), 3013–3021. https://doi.org/10.5897/AJBM12.1200

Conradie, N., & Van Zyl, C. (2021). Investigating the environmental and avi-values and birding behaviour of Gauteng's youth. *African Journal of Hospitality, Tourism and Leisure*, 10(5), 1695–1710. https://doi.org/10.46222/ajhtl.19770720-187

Cordell, H. Ken; Herbert, Nancy G. 2002. The Popularity of Birding is Still Growing. Birding. February 2002. pp 54-61

Daniels, N. (2020). *A systematic conservation plan for threatened freshwater wetland dependent waterbirds across South Africa*. Western University of Cape, South Africa.

Department of Trade and Industry – DTI (2010). *Avitourism in South Africa* [Information booklet]. Pretoria, South Africa: Department of Trade and Industry, 52pags.

Dinets, V., & Hall, J. (2018). Mammal watching: A new source of support for science and conservation. *International Journal of Biodiversity and Conservation*, 10(4), 154–160. https://doi.org/10.5897/IJBC2017.1162

Dooley, S. (2005). *The big twitch*. Allen & Unwin.

DoT (Department of Tourism). (2011a). *Final Draft National Avitourism Strategy of South Africa*. Pretoria: DoT.

DoT (Department of Tourism). (2011b). *National Tourism Sector Strategy*. Pretoria: DoT.

Dunne, P. (2003). *Pete Dunne on bird watching: The how-to, where-to, and when-to of birding*. Houghton Mifflin Harcourt.

Eubanks, T., Stoll, J., & Ditton, R. (2004). Understanding the diversity of eight birder sub-populations: Socio-demographic characteristics, motivations, expenditures and net benefits. *Journal of Ecotourism*, 3, 151–172.

Fabricius, C. (2004). The fundamentals of community-based natural resource management. In C. Fabricius & E. Koch (Eds.), *Rights, resources and rural development: Community-based natural resource management in southern Africa* (pp. 40–43). Earthscan.

Forbes, V. S. (1950). Le Vaillant's travels. *South African Geographical Journal*, 32(1), 32–51. https://doi.org/10.1080/03736245.1950.10559273

Gurluk, S., & Rehber, E. (2008). A travel cost study to estimate recreational value for a bird refuge at Lake Manyas, Turkey. *Journal of Environmental Management*, 88, 1350–1360.

Head, L. (2000). Renovating the landscape and packaging the penguin: Culture and nature on Summerland Peninsula, Phillip Island, Victoria, Australia. *Australian Geographical Studies*, 38(1), 39–53.

Hodur, N. M., Leistritz, F. L., & Wolfe, K. L. (2005). Assessing the economic development potential of nature tourism. *Great Plains Research*, 15(2), 279–296. https://digitalcommons.unl.edu/greatplainsresearch/791/

Hockey, P. A. R., Dean, W. R. J., & Ryan, P. G. (Eds.). (2005). *Roberts – Birds of Southern Africa* (7th ed.). John Voelcker Bird Book Fund.

Honey, M. (1999). *Ecotourism and sustainable development: Who owns paradise?* Island Press.

Hoogendoorn, G., & Rogerson, C. M. (2015). Tourism geography in the global South: New South African perspectives. *South African Geographical Journal*, 97(2), 101–110. https://doi.org/10.1080/03736245.2015.1034574

Huxley, J. (2007, May 19). Flushed with success. *Sydney Morning Herald*.

Jones, D., & Buckley, R. (2004). *Bird watching tourism in Australia*. CRC for Sustainable Tourism, Griffith University.

Jones, D., & Nealson, T. (2005). *Impacts of birdwatching on communities and species*. CRC for Sustainable Tourism, Griffith University.

Joubert, S. C. J. (1986). The Kruger National Park—an introduction. *Koedoe*, 29(1), 1–11.

Kemp, L. V., Birss, C., Smit-Robinson, H. A., Kotze, A., Tate, G., & Little, R. M. (2023). *Biodiversity management plan for the Southern Ground-Hornbill in South Africa* (Version 1.0). South African Southern Ground-Hornbill Action Group & Department of Environment, Forestry and Fisheries.

Kopij, G. (2001). Feeding ecology of the Southern Bald Ibis, *Geronticus calvus*, in the Free State, South Africa. *Ostrich—Journal of African Ornithology*, 72(3–4), 193–198.

Kruger, M., & Viljoen, A. (2020). Bird(er)s of a feather? A typology of birders to South African national parks based on their behavioural involvement. *Annals of Leisure Research, 26*(1), 1–26. https://doi.org/10.1080/11745398.2020.1813041

Manley, K., & Egoh, B. N. (2024). Climate and biodiversity change constrain the flow of cultural ecosystem services to people: A case study modeling birding across Africa under future climate scenarios. *Science of The Total Environment*, 919, 170872. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.scitotenv.2024.170872

Martín-López, B., Montes, C., & Benayas, J. (2007). The non-economic motives behind the willingness to pay for biodiversity conservation. *Biological Conservation*, 139(1–2), 67–82. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.biocon.2007.06.005

Meadows, M. E., & Compton, J. S. (2015). Table Mountain: Wonder of nature at the foot of Africa. In *Landscapes and Landforms of South Africa* (pp. 95–102).

Mehmetoglu, M. (2007). Nature-based tourists: The relationship between their trip expenditures and their activities. *Journal of Sustainable Tourism*, 15(2), 200–211.

Moss, S. (2009). Birding past, present and future—a global view. In J. del Hoyo, A. Elliott, & D. A. Christie (Eds.), *Handbook of the Birds of the World* (Vol. 4, pp. 15–45). Lynx Edicions.

Newsome, D., Dowling, R. K., & Moore, S. A. (2005). *Wildlife tourism*. Channel View Publications.

Pahlad, R., & Procheş, Ş. (2021). Birdwatching in a southern African context: Explaining highlights on bird lists. *South African Geographical Journal*, 103(3), 411–419.

Robbins, J. (2014, April 14). Paying farmers to welcome birds. *The New York Times*.

Roe, D., Ashley, C., Page, S., Meyer, D., Meyer, D., & London, P. P. T. P. (2004). *Tourism and the poor: Analyzing and interpreting tourism statistics from a poverty perspective*. Retrieved from http://scholar.google.com/scholar?hl=en&as_sdt=1,16&q=Tourism+and+the+Poor:+Analyzing+and+Interpreting+Tourism+Statistics+from+a+Poverty+Perspective

Rogerson, C. M. (2011). Niche tourism policy and planning: The South African experience. *Tourism Review International*, 15, 199–211.

Rogerson, C. M., Rogerson, J. M., & Simango, S. (2013). From recreation to niche tourism: The transformation of birdwatching in South Africa. *African Journal for Physical Health Education, Recreation and Dance*, 19(sup-3), 122–137.

Rogerson, C. M., & Rogerson, J. M. (2020). Covid-19 tourism impacts in South Africa: Government and industry responses. *GeoJournal of Tourism and Geosites*, 31(3), 1083–1091.

Ryan, P. G. (2012). Who's that birder? Profiling avitourism in South Africa. *Africa—Birds and Birding*, 17(2), 52–53.

http://www.fitzpatrick.uct.ac.za/sites/default/files/image_tool/images/275/Publications/PDF_Archive/Africa_Birds_And_Birding/Volume_Index/Volume_17/ABB17%282%2952-53.pdf

Şekercioğlu, C. H. (2002). Impacts of birdwatching on human and avian communities. *Environmental Conservation*, 29(3), 282–289. https://doi.org/10.1017/S0376892902000206

Simango, S. S. (2011). *The evolution, structure and market for birding tourism in South Africa* (Master's thesis). University of the Witwatersrand.

Steven, R., Morrison, C., & Castle, J. G. (2014). Birdwatching and avitourism: A global review of research in its participant markets, distribution and impacts, highlighting future research priorities to inform sustainable avitourism management. *Journal of Sustainable Tourism*, 23(8–9), 1257–1276.

Smit, I. P. J., Baard, J. A., & van Wilgen, B. W. (2024). Fire regimes and management options in mixed grassland–fynbos vegetation, South Africa. *Fire Ecology, 20*, Article 29. https://doi.org/10.1186/s42408-024-00262-2

Tarboton, W. (2016). *Sasol guide to birds of the Kruger National Park*. Penguin Random House South Africa.

Taylor, M. R., & Peacock, F. (2018). *State of South Africa's Birds Report*. BirdLife South Africa. https://www.birdlife.org.za/wp-content/uploads/2018/04/State-of-South-Africas-Birds-Report-2018-1.pdf

Taylor, M. R., Peacock, F., & Wanless, R. M. (Eds.). (2015). *The 2015 Eskom red data book of birds of South Africa, Lesotho and Swaziland*. BirdLife South Africa.

Turpie, J., & Ryan, P. G. (1998). *The nature and value of birding in South Africa*. BirdLife South Africa Research Series, No. 1. Randburg.

United Nations Framework Convention on Climate Change - UNFCCC. (n.d.). *Momentum for Change: Reducing wildfire risks associated with anticipated climate change in the Fynbos region*. https://unfccc.int/momentum-for-change/reducing-wildfire-risks-in-fynbos

UNWTO (United Nations World Tourism Organization). (2021). *2nd edition UNWTO Global Tourism Investment Forum*. https://www.unwto.org/2nd-edition-unwto-global-tourism-investment-forum

Weidensaul, S. (2007). *Of a feather: A brief history of American birding*. Harcourt.

World Travel & Tourism Council. (2023). *Africa travel & tourism economic impact research 2023: Discover the direct and total economic contribution that the travel & tourism sector brings to Africa* [Report]. World Travel & Tourism Council. https://researchhub.wttc.org/product/africa-economic-impact-report

World Travel & Tourism Council. (2022). *Africa travel & tourism economic impact research 2022: Forecasts to 2032* [Report]. World Travel & Tourism Council. https://researchhub.wttc.org/product/africa-economic-impact-report

Chapter 10

Ecuador's Blueprint for Sustainable Birdwatching Tourism: From Cloud Forests to Coastlines

Ismar Borges de Lima
Universidade Estadual de Roraima-UERR, Brazil &
RECINATUR Foundation. Email: ismar@uerr.edu.br

Johanna Paulina Flores Ruano.
Docente Facultad de Ciencias Económicas
Universidad Técnica del Norte, Ecuador.
Emails: jpflores@utn.edu.ec

Carmen Amelia Trujillo.
Docente Posgrado Universidad Técnica del Norte, Ecuador.

Kennedy Rolando Lomas Tapia.
FUNEDES Fundación y Ex-docente
Posgrado Universidad Técnica del Norte, Ecuador
Email: funedesjournal@gmail.com

Carmen del Pilar Suárez Rodríguez
Professor; PhD., M.A. South Huasteca Regional Academic Coordination (CARHS-UASLP), Mexico.
Email: pilar.suarez@uaslp.mx

Summary

This chapter presents an in-depth exploration of Ecuador's emergence as a preeminent birdwatching destination and a pioneer in linking tourism with biodiversity conservation. Although Ecuador occupies less than 0.2 percent of the planet's land surface, it supports a staggering 1,736 bird taxa—one of the highest species densities on Earth—across an extraordinary array of habitats, from Amazonian lowland rainforests and Andean cloud forests to dry coastal scrub and the unique archipelago of the Galápagos (Croes & Rivera, 2017; IOC, 2024). The narrative opens by situating Ecuador within the select group of seventeen "megadiverse" nations, then unpacks the country's complex geology and climate gradients—steep elevational changes, converging ocean currents, and island isolation—that give rise to both high species richness and notable endemism. Readers are guided through practical birding circuits that showcase rapid ecological transitions: a four-hour drive from the humid foothills of San Jorge Eco-Lodges to the coastal habitats near Machalilla National Park can yield hundreds of new species, epitomizing Ecuador's capacity for unparalleled daily turnover. Through carefully chosen case studies, the chapter examines national and local initiatives that align economic incentives with habitat protection. The Socio Bosque program, which compensates landowners for conserving native forests, and the designation of Important Bird and Biodiversity Areas have mobilized both public and private resources. Community-based ecotourism ventures,

often in partnership with NGOs and private lodges, illustrate how rural households can derive sustainable incomes by hosting and guiding international birding groups. A critical assessment of policy innovations highlights strengths—such as multi-sector governance forums and payment-for-ecosystem-services schemes—as well as ongoing challenges, including gaps in inter-agency coordination, uneven benefit sharing among indigenous and mestizo communities, and vulnerability to climate-driven land-use shifts. Market analysis reveals a maturing professional birding sector, characterized by specialized guides, themed "megadiverse" itineraries, and digital platforms that connect visitors with real-time sighting data. By weaving together ecological, economic, and social dimensions, the chapter argues that Ecuador's integrated avitourism model not only catalyzes rural development but also fortifies long-term conservation outcomes. In closing, it reflects on the transferability of Ecuador's lessons—demonstrating that with strategic planning, robust partnerships, and equitable governance, countries worldwide can convert their biological riches into inclusive and resilient forms of sustainable tourism.

10.0. Introduction: Ecuador – A Nexus of Avian Wonders, Tourism and Conservation Leadership Setting the Stage: Global Significance

Below is a concise guide to the chapter's structure—the roadmap that will carry you from the broad global context all the way to on-the-ground recommendations. Each part builds on the last, weaving together ecology, policy, tourism practice, and community engagement into a coherent narrative about why Ecuador stands at the forefront of avian conservation and sustainable nature tourism.

***Roadmap.* This chapter is organized into eight interlinked parts:**

I. Ecological Foundations (10.1–10.2)

- Ecuador's updated species tally and density
- Key endemic families (hummingbirds, tanagers)
- The eight faunal zones driving beta diversity

II. Conservation Priority Frameworks (10.3)

- Important Bird and Biodiversity Areas (IBAs) & Key Biodiversity Areas (KBAs)
- Endemic Bird Areas (EBAs) – a legacy context

III. Flagship & Threatened Species (10.4)

- Profiles of Ecuador's most iconic birds
- Their tourism value and conservation status

IV. Premier Birding Routes & Destinations (10.5–10.6)

- The six national circuits
- Spotlight on Mindo, Yasuní, Antisana, Galápagos, and private reserves

V. Economic & Community Impacts (10.7)

- Avitourism's contribution to GDP and jobs
- Rural livelihood case studies

VI. Socio Bosque Payments-for-Ecosystem-Services (10.8)

- Program scale, outcomes, and equity challenges

VII. Infrastructure & Sustainability (10.9)

• Guides, trails, lodges, transport, and digital tools

• Ethical birding practices and carrying-capacity planning

VIII. Conclusions & Lessons Learned (10.10)

• Distilled take-aways, replicability for other megadiverse nations, and future directions

Imagine a place sitting on the world's middle line, carved in two by the towering Andes – that's Ecuador, and it offers an amazing window into the richness of life on Earth.[1] Though its land area is roughly equivalent to that of Colorado, USA.[3] Ecuador supports such an extraordinary array of life that it ranks among just seventeen "megadiverse" nations worldwide.[5] Nowhere is this natural wealth more striking than in its birdlife: Ecuador has earned its place as a top destination for birdwatching tourism—or avitourism—thanks to a remarkable variety of habitats. From the humid depths of the Amazon rainforest to the arid Pacific shoreline, from mist-clad cloud forests to the windswept high-Andean *páramo*, and stretching out to the unique Galápagos Islands, the country offers an unparalleled patchwork of ecosystems that sustain one of the world's densest concentrations of bird species.[1]

This chapter offers a current, comprehensive examination of Ecuador's outstanding avian diversity, the expanding network of lodges, trails, and guiding services that support avitourism, and the suite of conservation efforts designed to protect these natural treasures. We analyze the ecological foundations of this wealth, review the infrastructure and economic factors driving birdwatching tourism, and evaluate the policy frameworks that aim to align sustainable development with biodiversity conservation (Croes, 2017).

Ecuador's reputation in the birding world rests not only on raw species numbers but on the extraordinary ease with which visitors can sample vastly different habitats.[3] The Andes' steep elevation gradients carve out numerous distinct faunal zones and microhabitats,[8] and a fairly well-developed transport network[2] enables birdwatchers to explore multiple environments with far less time and expense than in larger megadiverse countries.[3] This synergy of biological richness, compact geography, and accessibility gives Ecuador a clear competitive edge in the global avitourism market, drawing both casual enthusiasts and serious researchers. It is this powerful combination of diversity, density, and convenience that underpins Ecuador's success as both a refuge for birds and a destination for those who come to observe them (Croes, 2017; Ministerio de Turismo del Ecuador, 2012).

Ecuador, despite its smaller size, has long been a pioneer in birdwatching tourism in the Andes. According to Cartay et al. (2020), the evolution of Ecuadorian ornithology and birdwatching tourism can be traced through three defining epochs. The first dawned in 1926, when F. M. Chapman consolidated earlier fieldwork—most notably H. Watkins's collections at New York's Museum of Natural History—into Ecuador's inaugural avifaunal treatise (Chapman, 1926). The second era began in the late 1970s: in 1976, Tjitte de Vries joined the Pontificia Universidad Católica del Ecuador, supervising over fifty undergraduate theses on Ecuador's birds until 2006, and in 1980 R. S. Ridgely founded the Corporación Ornitológica del Ecuador (1986) and co-authored the landmark guide *The Birds of Ecuador* with John Greenfield (Ridgely & Greenfield, 2001). The third phase comprises critical conservation and taxonomic syntheses: the *Red Book of the Birds of Ecuador*, the updated edition of *Birds of Ecuador* by José Freile and Robert Restall (Greeney, 2018), and the systematic vetting of records by the Ecuadorian Committee of Ornithological Records (Freile et al., 2019).

Cartay et al. (2020) further highlight that organized birdwatching tourism emerged around 1980 with pioneering operators Víctor Emmanuel Nature Tours (est. 1979) and Bird Quest

(1989), both influenced by foundational texts such as *Aves de Ecuador y Galápagos* (1996) and the Spanish edition of *The Birds of Ecuador* (2006) (Freile & Córdova, 2008; Greenfield, 2018; 2020). Private conservation NGOs have since acquired key forest tracts to mitigate deforestation, while in 2006 the Ministries of Environment and Tourism partnered with the non-profit Mindo Cloudforest (founded December 4, 2001) to draft the *National Strategy for the Management and Sustainable Development of Birdwatching Tourism in Ecuador* (Greenfield, 2006). In fact, it was one of the first of its kind in the region. This early start was driven by recognition of Ecuador's extraordinary bird density and diversity (hosting ~1,680 species, or 17% of the world's birds, in a country the size of Colorado). The 2006 strategy helped consolidate a specialized birding tourism offering, strengthening a network of birding routes across the country (Ministerio de Turismo de Ecuador, 2018). Since then, Ecuador has developed famed birding circuits such as the Northwestern Ecuador route (Mindo-Tandayapa area) and the Amazonian route (around Napo), which are frequented by international birders. The country invested in infrastructure like canopy towers in the Amazon and birding lodges in cloud forests, often in partnership with NGOs and private reserves.

A hallmark of Ecuador's approach is the close tie between conservation and tourism: many of the prime birdwatching sites are protected areas or private reserves established explicitly to conserve bird habitats (e.g., Jocotoco Foundation reserves), with visitor fees helping fund protection. Ecuador also promotes community-based avitourism, exemplified by indigenous community projects such as Sani Lodge or Napo Wildlife Center, where local people manage eco-lodges that offer rich birding opportunities. These efforts have paid off – Ecuador consistently ranks as a top birding destination, known for giving visitors a chance to see a large number of species (including endemics) in a relatively short trip. The country's long-term engagement with avitourism strategy shows the importance of planning and partnerships in developing a sustainable birding tourism product. This should include the complementary initiatives by foundations—including San Francisco de Quito, Jatun Sacha, Arco Iris, Jocotoco, Maquipucuna, and Aves & Conservación (formerly CECIA)—many of which maintain ties with BirdLife International, have cemented Ecuador's standing within the world's largest bird-conservation network.

10.1. The Role of Endemic Species in Attracting Tourists

A key driver of avitourism in high-biodiversity countries is the presence of endemic and rare species that cannot be seen anywhere else. Serious birdwatchers often plan trips specifically to observe these unique birds – commonly referred to as searching for "lifers" (first-time sightings of species to add to one's life list). Recent research confirms that avian biodiversity richness correlates strongly with birdwatching tourism demand (Kroger, 2021). In Costa Rica, for example, tourism to protected areas was found to increase as the number of bird species – particularly threatened and endemic species – increased in those areas (Echeverri et al., 2022). Notably, the relationship can be nonlinear; a study by Echeverri et al. (2022) observed that birding visitation tends to peak in regions of intermediate to high species richness (around a few hundred species), after which other factors (like accessibility) might limit further tourism gains. This suggests that while sheer numbers of birds are important, the presence of specialty species (endemics or iconic birds) can be an even stronger magnet for birders, provided the sites are accessible.

In the Andes, endemic bird species play an outsized role in attracting international birders. The Eastern Cordillera of Colombia, for instance, is home to endemic hummingbirds and antpittas that avid birders travel great distances to see. Ecuador's many restricted-range species (such as the Jocotoco Antpitta or the El Oro Parakeet) have made it a must-visit destination for those aiming to glimpse species found nowhere else on Earth. Peru's diverse ecosystems – from Andean cloud forests to Amazonian lowlands – host a suite of endemic birds like the Marvelous Spatuletail and the Inca Wren that are high on birders' target lists. The allure of such endemics is not merely about rarity; these species often have an almost mythical reputation in birding circles, fueling what might be called an "avian treasure hunt." Tourists' willingness to pay for and travel long distances increases for destinations with high endemism, since each endemic species represents a unique addition to their life list (Kroger, 2021). In economic terms, endemic-rich countries have a comparative advantage in avitourism, as their unique birds give them a selling point that cannot be replicated elsewhere. This has encouraged countries like Colombia, Ecuador, and Peru to emphasize their endemic species in marketing materials and tourism development plans. By highlighting flagship endemics and "bucket-list" species, these destinations tap into a dedicated segment of birders motivated by rarity and exclusivity, thereby boosting tourist arrivals and associated economic benefits. The Figure 10.0 below illustrates the principal birding circuits by region (Amazonia, Chocó, Andes, Galápagos).

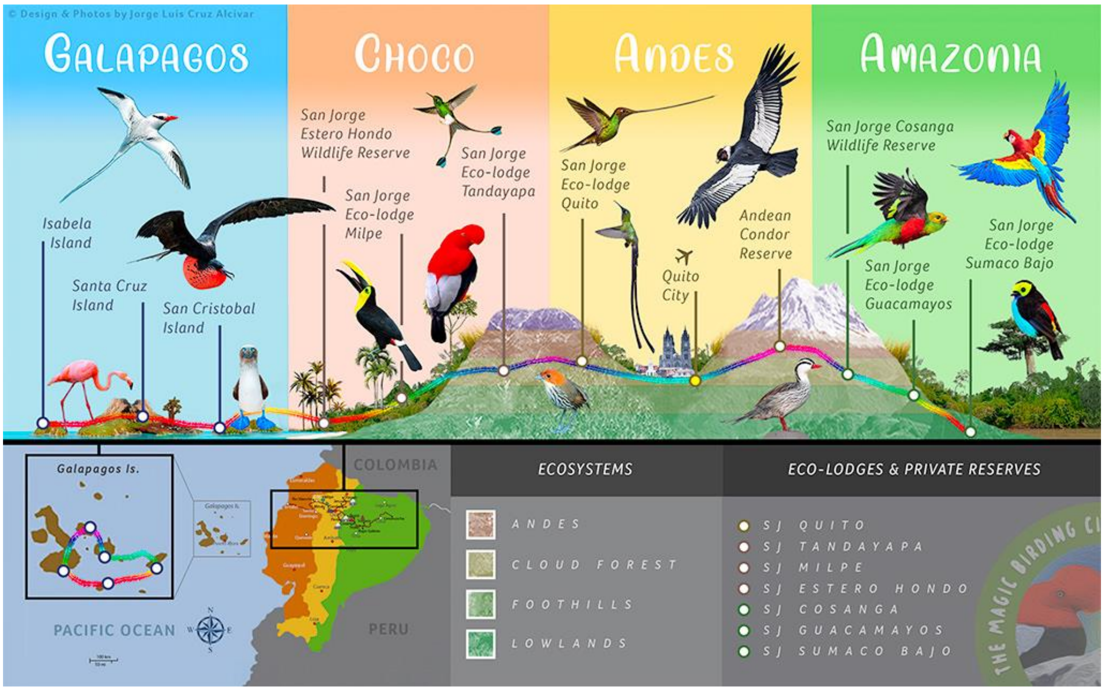


Fig. 10.0 - 'Magic Birding Circuits' for San Jorge Eco-lodges in Ecuador, Source: San Jorge Eco-Lodges, Ecuador, available at: https://www.sanjorgeecolodges.com/

Image Caption: The image is a promotional graphic, 'Magic Birding Circuits', for San Jorge Eco-lodges in Ecuador, designed and photographed by Jorge Luis Cruz Alcivar. It highlights four distinct ecosystems in Ecuador: Galapagos, Choco, Andes, and Amazonia, and the bird species and San Jorge Eco-lodges found in each region. The graphic includes a map of Ecuador showing the locations of the eco-lodges and a key identifying the ecosystems and their corresponding lodges.

II. Ecuador's Avian Cornucopia: Updated Biodiversity Benchmarks

10.1.1 Species Richness and Global Standing: An Updated Assessment

Ecuador's wealth of bird species is truly extraordinary, cementing its reputation as a world leader in avian diversity. The *Comité Ecuatoriano de Registros Ornitológicos* (CERO) maintains the definitive national checklist, updating it as new records emerge. According to CERO's 2024 Master List, Ecuador hosts 1,736 species—1,686 of which are validated by physical vouchers, plus 50 regarded as hypothetical or awaiting confirmation. Ecuador's recorded species translate to roughly 16 percent of global avifauna within a footprint of under 0.2 percent of Earth's landmass—one of the highest species densities documented anywhere[1] (Freile & Restall, 2022).

Note: This chapter follows the Ecuador Bird List as updated by the International Ornithological Committee (IOC; Gill et al., 2024). As of December 2023, Ecuador's official checklist includes **1,736 species** (1,686 confirmed, 50 pending documentation). The master list aligns the IOC, Clements et al. (2023), SACC, and BirdLife International–HBW taxonomies, and uses the Spanish names first compiled by Greenfield, Ortiz-Crespo, and Matheus (Ortiz et al., 1990) and maintained by CERO. Two simplified versions are available online—one in IOC format and one following Clements et al. Under Clements et al., the total comes to **1,724 species**. You may encounter duplicate entries in the IOC-based list where the IOC splits taxa that Clements et al. treat as a single species.
To clarify the status of each record, the checklist is divided into:

- **Primary List (1,686 species):** Species with at least one verifiable record in Ecuador, supported by tangible evidence such as:
    - A publicly accessible photograph or museum specimen
    - A published or archived audio or video recording
    - Online validation by the Comité Ecuatoriano de Registros Ornitológicos.

- **Secondary (Undocumented) List (50 species):** Species observed or heard by experienced birders but lacking documentary evidence. These records remain hypothetical until corroborated by tangible proof (e.g., image, specimen, recording) or formally excluded by further study.

Species tallies naturally fluctuate as fieldwork uncovers new populations, taxonomic treatments evolve, and checklist criteria shift. Thus, earlier CERO counts—1,673 in 2019; 1,679 in 2017; 1,690 in 2018; 1,699 in 2020; and 1,722 in 2021—differ slightly from today's totals. Other estimates span from just over 1,500 to around 1,600 or 1,660–1,684, depending on the source (Freile & Restall, 2022; eBird, 2024). The regular revisions by CERO underscore the vibrancy of ornithological research in Ecuador and highlight the need to base conservation and reporting on this authoritative, up-to-date list.[1]

On the global stage, Ecuador consistently ranks among the top five or six countries for sheer bird diversity. (BirdLife International, 2023a) While its exact position shifts with each checklist update, Ecuador typically trails only larger nations such as Colombia, Peru, and Brazil. Yet when one adjusts for land area—calculating species per square kilometer—Ecuador often surpasses them all, owing to its compact territory and vast species inventory (Freile & Restall, 2022; Freile et. al., 2010). Citizen-science programs like the Great Backyard Bird Count further illustrate Ecuador's prominence: in both the 2024 and provisional 2025 counts, the country ranked among the top three globally for species observed, usually behind only Colombia and India—evidence not only of its rich birdlife but of its accessibility and popularity with observers (Great Backyard Bird Count, 2024).

10.1.2. Hummingbirds and Tanagers: Jewels of the Equator

Among Ecuador's avian treasures, two families stand out: hummingbirds (Trochilidae) and tanagers (Thraupidae and allies). (Freile & Restall, 2022) The nation boasts about 132 hummingbird species—roughly 36 %–37 % of all hummingbirds known to science—a figure second only to Colombia and representing the highest density of these iridescent birds anywhere (Freile & Restall, 2022). Emerging research on plant–pollinator timing suggests that these hummingbirds face a shifting buffet. A modelling study of 62 hummingbird-pollinated plant species in nearby montane forests showed that climate change scenarios can advance or delay peak flowering by several weeks—potentially decoupling nectar availability from hummingbird breeding and migration cycles (Correa de Lima et al., 2019). In Ecuador itself, citizen-science records reveal seasonal elevational movements in several high-Andean hummingbirds, likely tracking these phenological shifts (Ecography, 2023). Integrating flowering-time data with hummingbird sighting records could therefore sharpen our understanding of how future warming will redistribute both plants and their avian pollinators across Ecuador's steep elevational gradients.

These diminutive nectar-seekers inhabit elevations from the highest páramo to the lowland Amazon. Noteworthy examples include the Sword-billed Hummingbird (Ensifera ensifera) with the longest bill-to-body ratio of any bird; the shimmering Violet-tailed Sylph (Aglaiocercus coelestis) of cloud-forest understories; the Booted Racket-tail (Ocreatus underwoodii) with its signature tail streamers; the Giant Hummingbird (Patagona gigas), the largest of its kind; the tiny Wire-crested Thorntail (Discosura popelairii); and the critically endangered Blue-throated Hillstar (Oreotrochilus cyanolaemus), the endangered Black-breasted Puffleg (Eriocnemis nigrivestis), and the endangered Esmeraldas Woodstar (Chaetocercus berlepschi). (Freile & Restall, 2022)

Equally impressive are Ecuador's tanagers, with estimates exceeding 140 species—potentially nearly half of global tanager diversity. (Freile & Restall, 2022) Some sources cite up to 152 species (Ridgely & Greenfield, 2001), and guided tours in southern Ecuador alone may encounter as many as 50 in a single trip. (Exotic Birding, 2023) These vividly colored birds populate forest canopies and understories, often traveling in mixed-species flocks. Standouts include the Paradise Tanager (Tangara chilensis) of the Amazon, the Glistening-green Tanager (Chlorochrysa phoenicotis) of the Chocó, the Blue-winged Mountain Tanager (Anisognathus somptuosus) widespread across highlands, and the Scarlet-breasted Dacnis (Dacnis berlepschi), a Chocó specialty. (Freile & Restall, 2022)

The sheer spectacle of hummingbirds and tanagers draws birdwatchers and photographers from around the world, spurring the growth of lodges and reserves equipped with specialized feeders and observation platforms. In many Andean cloud forests, lodges maintain elaborate hummingbird feeder setups and fruit stations designed to attract tanagers, offering guests unparalleled close-range viewing and photographic opportunities. Tours marketed explicitly as "Hummingbird and Tanager Extravaganzas" underscore the strong commercial appeal of these families, demonstrating how targeted aspects of Ecuador's biodiversity directly drive and shape the avitourism industry.

10.1.3. Endemism: Ecuador's Unique Avian Heritage

Beyond sheer numbers, Ecuador's avifauna is distinguished by a significant level of endemism—species found nowhere else on Earth. According to recent assessments citing Lelis Navarrete and the Instituto Nacional de Biodiversidad (INABIO) (Instituto Nacional de Biodiversidad [INABIO], 2023), Ecuador is home to 35 nationally endemic bird species, including 6 species restricted entirely to mainland Ecuador and 29 species confined to the Galápagos Islands. This figure updates earlier estimates (e.g., 37 or 33 species) (Freile & Restall, 2022). Examples of mainland endemics include (Freile & Restall, 2022; Freile et. al., 2010; Exotic Birding, 2023):

- El Oro Parakeet (*Pyrrhura orcesi*): Found in the southwestern foothills. Status: Endangered.

- Black-breasted Puffleg (*Eriocnemis nigrivestis*): Restricted to high-altitude forests on the slopes of Pichincha and Imbabura volcanoes. Status: Endangered.
- Blue-throated Hillstar (*Oreotrochilus cyanolaemus*): Discovered recently, found in a small páramo area in the southwest. Status: Critically Endangered.
- Violet-throated Metaltail (*Metallura baroni*): Found in *páramo* and *Polylepis* woodland in the Cajas Massif region. Status: Endangered.
- Esmeraldas Woodstar (*Chaetocercus berlepschi*): Inhabits coastal semi-deciduous forest and scrub in western Ecuador. Status: Endangered.
- Ecuadorian Tapaculo (*Scytalopus robbinsi*): Found in the understory of foothill forests in southwestern Ecuador. Status: Vulnerable.
- El Oro Tapaculo (*Scytalopus orostictus*): Another range-restricted tapaculo from the southwest. Status: Endangered.
- Pale-headed Brushfinch (*Atlapetes pallidiceps*): Known from a tiny area of dry scrub in Azuay province, famously rediscovered after being thought extinct. Status: Endangered.

Note: The Ecuadorian Hillstar (*Oreotrochilus chimborazo*) is often cited as a near-endemic, also occurring just across the border in Colombia. (Freile & Restall, 2022).

The Galápagos archipelago stands as a globally celebrated hotspot of bird endemism. Here, 29 species occur nowhere else, including the iconic group of Darwin's Finches—at least 13 distinct species that illustrate adaptive radiation—the Galápagos Penguin (*Spheniscus mendiculus*), the Flightless Cormorant (*Phalacrocorax harrisi*), the Lava Gull (*Leucophaeus fuliginosus*), and the Galápagos Dove (*Zenaida galapagoensis*).[1]

Beyond these national endemics, Ecuador also contributes to an estimated 300 regional endemics shared with Colombia and Peru. These species occupy narrowly defined biogeographic zones—such as the Chocó and Tumbesian regions—that cross modern political boundaries.[2] Examples include the Rufous-headed Chachalaca (*Ortalis erythroptera*), the Pale-browed Tinamou (*Crypturellus transfasciatus*), the White-whiskered Hermit (*Phaethornis yaruqui*), and the Gorgeted Sunangel (*Heliangelus strophianus*).[3] The extraordinary density of these range-restricted birds underscores Ecuador's vital role in global avian conservation.

10.1.4. Mapping Conservation Priorities: IBAs and EBAs

Identifying and safeguarding critical sites is essential for the long-term survival of Ecuador's diverse birdlife. Two prominent international frameworks underpin these efforts: Important Bird and Biodiversity Areas (IBAs) (see Fig. 10.1 below) and Endemic Bird Areas (EBAs). IBAs are designated by BirdLife International according to globally standardized criteria, highlighting sites that support key populations—whether threatened species, those with restricted ranges, biome-specific assemblages, or large congregations of birds (BirdLife International, 2023a).

Ecuador's IBA program was relaunched in 2003 through a partnership among Aves y Conservación (BirdLife's Ecuador partner), BirdLife International, Conservation International, and the Ministry of Environment. To date, approximately 107 IBAs have been recognized—10 across the Galápagos and 97 on the mainland—together covering about 35.7 % of the country's land area and encompassing the majority of its threatened and range-restricted birds (BirdLife International, 2023c). Although many of these IBAs lie within the *Sistema Nacional de Áreas Protegidas* (SNAP), a significant portion lacks full legal protection, underscoring the need for continued conservation action. The IBA network thus provides a strategic roadmap for prioritizing national conservation efforts.

Endemic Bird Areas (EBAs) are broader regions identified where two or more restricted-range species—those with breeding distributions under 50,000 km²—overlap (BirdLife International, 2023a). These zones often represent evolutionary hotspots and carry exceptional conservation value. Ecuador straddles several such EBAs, including Chocó, Tumbesian, Northern Andes, and Galápagos (Schulenberg, 2018; BirdLife International, 2023b). For a detailed listing of each EBA's name, location, characteristic habitats, and key endemic or restricted-range species, see Table 10.0.

Note: Important Bird and Biodiversity Areas (IBAs) and Endemic Bird Areas (EBAs) serve different roles in conservation planning. IBAs are an active, site-scale framework maintained by BirdLife International—now incorporated within the broader Key Biodiversity Areas (KBA) network (datazone.birdlife.org)—and remain the primary tool for identifying and prioritizing critical bird habitats. By contrast, EBAs were defined in a one-off global analysis (Stattersfield et al., 1998) to highlight regions of high endemism; BirdLife no longer updates or operationally uses EBAs, preferring more current approaches. While EBAs can still be cited to illustrate historical patterns of endemic bird richness, they should not be presented as an ongoing designation. In discussions of Ecuador's conservation priorities, use IBAs (or KBAs) for present-day site selection, and mention EBAs only as background on endemism—with a clear statement that they are a legacy classification rather than a current framework.

Table 10.0 - EBA name, location in Ecuador, key habitats and endemic/restricted species.

EBA Name	Code	General Location in Ecuador	Key Habitats	Example Endemic/Restricted-Range Species
Chocó	041	NW Ecuador (Esmeraldas, Carchi, Imbabura, Pichincha, etc.), Pacific slope lowlands & foothills	Extremely wet rainforest, cloud forest	Baudo Guan, Dark-backed Wood-Quail, Banded Ground-Cuckoo, Choco Poorwill, White-whiskered Hermit, Violet-tailed Sylph, Hoary Puffleg, Toucan Barbet, Plate-billed Mountain-Toucan, Choco Trogon, Long-wattled Umbrellabird, Scarlet-and-white Tanager, Blue-whiskered Tanager, Scarlet-breasted Dacnis [8]
Tumbesian Region	045	SW Ecuador (Guayas, Manabí, El Oro, Loja)	Arid/semi-arid deciduous forest, scrub	Pale-browed Tinamou, Rufous-headed Chachalaca, White-winged Guan (Peru, extirpated Ecuador?),

				Ochre-bellied Dove, Ecuadorian Ground-Dove, Scrub Nightjar, Tumbes Hummingbird, Blackish-headed Spinetail, Henna-hooded Foliage-gleaner, Saffron Siskin, Gray-cheeked Parakeet [8]
Ecuador-Peru East Andes	044	Eastern Andean slopes & foothills (Sucumbíos, Napo, Pastaza, Morona Santiago, Zamora Chinchipe)	Lower montane/subtropical wet forest	Black Tinamou, White-breasted Parakeet, Neblina Metaltail, Royal Sunangel, Coppery-chested Jacamar, Orange-throated Tanager, Foothill Antwren, Golden-collared Toucanet [28]
Northern Central Andes	042	Higher elevations of Andes (Carchi, Imbabura, Pichincha, Cotopaxi, Tungurahua, Chimborazo, Cañar, Azuay)	Temperate cloud forest, Polylepis woodland, upper subtropical forest	Bearded Guan, Andean Guan, Curve-billed Tinamou, Ecuadorian Hillstar, Golden-breasted Puffleg, Rainbow Starfrontlet, Sword-billed Hummingbird, Gray-breasted Mountain-Toucan, Giant Conebill [8]
Central Andean Páramo	043	High Andean grasslands (>3500m)	Páramo grassland, cushion plant bogs	Andean Condor, Andean Teal, Andean Snipe, Tawny Antpitta, Rufous-bellied Seedsnipe, Many-striped Canastero [8]
Galápagos Islands	031	Offshore archipelago	Arid coastal scrub, Scalesia forest, Miconia zone, pampa zone	Darwin's Finches (multiple spp.), Galapagos Penguin, Flightless Cormorant, Waved Albatross, Lava Gull, Galapagos Hawk, Galapagos Dove [8]

The concentration of endemic and restricted-range species within these specific EBAs, particularly the highly threatened Chocó and Tumbesian regions [8], creates an urgent conservation imperative. These areas are not just statistically important; they represent unique evolutionary heritage. Loss of habitat within these EBAs translates directly into the potential extinction of globally unique species and simultaneously diminishes Ecuador's distinctive appeal for specialist avitourists who are often motivated by the prospect of observing these rare endemics.[61] Consequently, conservation action focused on these EBAs is critical for maintaining both ecological integrity and the foundation of a significant component of Ecuador's sustainable tourism economy.

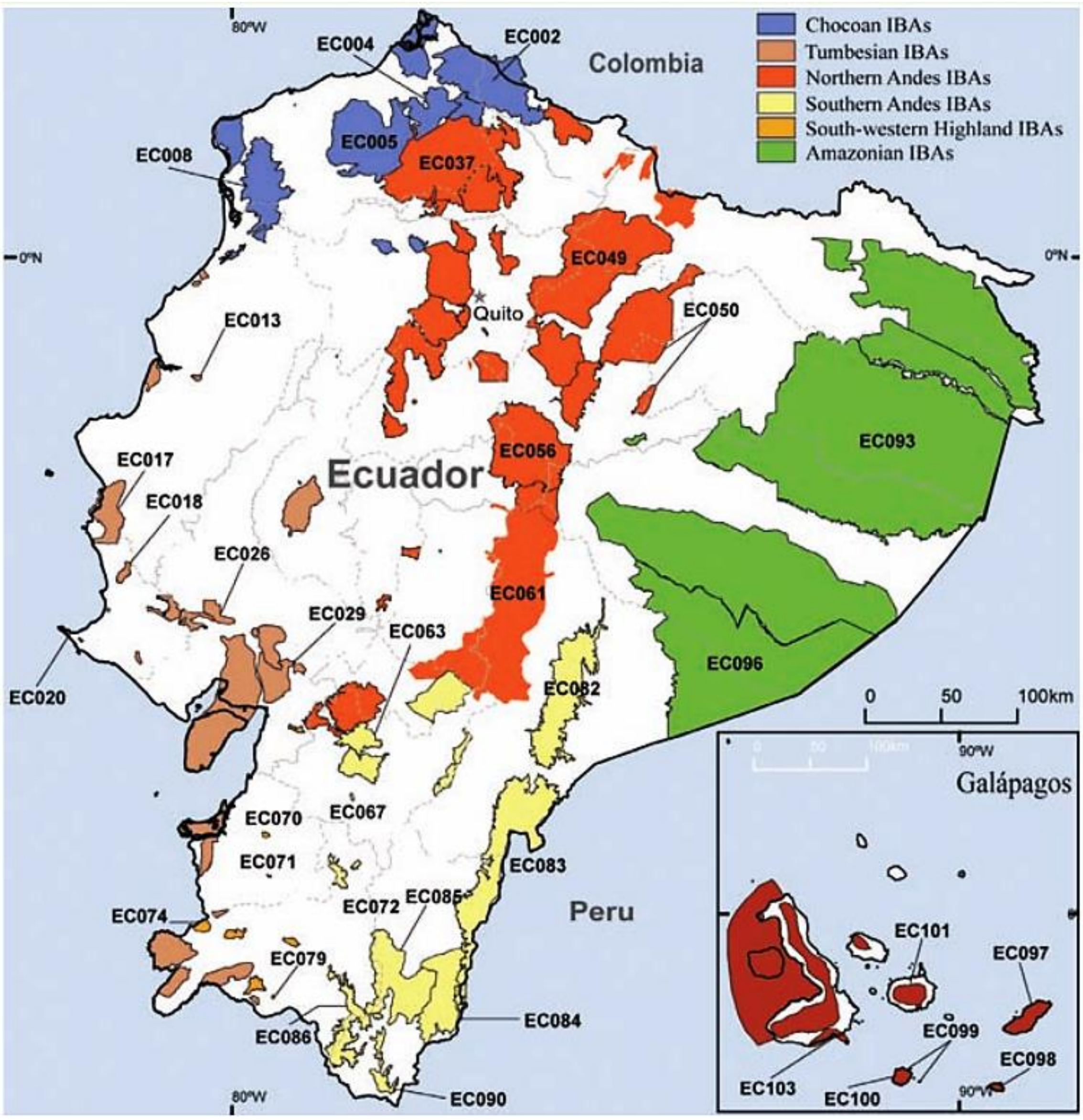


Figure 10.1 - Important Bird and Biodiversity Areas (IBAs) of Ecuador by Biogeographic Region: Map of Ecuador showing the distribution of 107 IBAs, color-coded by biogeographic zone: Chocó (purple), Tumbesian (brown), Northern Andes (red), Southern Andes (yellow), Southwestern Highlands (orange), and Amazonian (green). Galápagos IBAs (10 sites) are inset at lower right. These sites—identified using BirdLife International's standardized criteria—cover 35.7 % of Ecuador's land area and encompass the majority of its threatened and range-restricted bird species (BirdLife International, 2023a; 2023c). Map credit and source: Freile et. al., 2010, Neotropical Birding, *'Important Bird Areas of the Neotropics: Ecuador'*, p. 5., https://www.neotropicalbirdclub.org/wp-content/downloads/NeoBird7-Freile.pdf

III. The Ecological Canvas: Ecuador's Diverse Biogeographical Zones

10.2. Overview of Major Regions

Ecuador's remarkable bird diversity owes much to its intricate geography, which packs a vast array of habitats into a compact landmass. The country is traditionally divided into four principal regions, each supporting its own suite of ecosystems and avian assemblages[1]:

1. **Amazon Rainforest (Oriente):** Occupying Ecuador's eastern flank, this sector forms part of the greater Amazon Basin. It features expansive lowland rainforests characterized by heavy rainfall, persistent humidity, and a dense canopy, all interlaced with rivers that feed into the Amazon River system.
2. **Andes Mountains (Sierra):** Bisecting the nation from north to south, the Andes soar above 5,000 m in places. Along their slopes lie temperate cloud forests, while the highest elevations open into the páramo—treeless grasslands above the tree line that host specialized high-altitude bird species.
3. **Pacific Coast (Costa):** Running along Ecuador's western border, this zone showcases a marked moisture gradient from the wet forests of Esmeraldas province in the north to the semi-arid scrub and mangroves of Santa Elena province in the south, interspersed with sandy beaches and coastal wetlands.
4. **Galápagos Archipelago (Insular):** Situated some 900–1,000 km offshore,[7] this volcanic island chain is famed for its endemic fauna. It encompasses a spectrum of island habitats—from dry coastal shores to misty highland cloud forests—each harboring unique bird communities.

10.2.1 Detailed Faunal Zones: Habitats, Altitudes, and Bird Communities

For a more nuanced understanding relevant to bird distribution and birding, these four major regions are further subdivided into eight distinct faunal zones, primarily defined by elevation, humidity, and biogeographic history (refer to Table 10.1).[3] The uplift of the Andes acted as a major barrier, isolating western and eastern populations, while the coastal moisture gradient further drove diversification in the west.[3] Each zone possesses characteristic bird communities:

Table 10.1 – The Eight Faunal Zones in Ecuador

Faunal Zone	Approx. Altitude Range (m)	Key Habitat Types	Characteristic / Endemic Bird Species Examples	Key Sites/Regions
Amazonian Lowlands (Oriente)	< 600m	Tropical rainforest (terra firme, várzea/igapó flooded forests), riverine habitats	Hoatzin, Macaws (e.g., Scarlet, Blue-and-yellow), Toucans (e.g., Channel-billed, White-throated), Antbirds (60+ spp.), Woodcreepers, Cotingas (e.g., Plum-throated), Manakins, Trogons, Jacamars. Flagship:	Yasuní NP, Cuyabeno Reserve, Limoncocha, Sacha Lodge, La Selva Lodge, Napo Wildlife

			Harpy Eagle, Crested Eagle, Zigzag Heron, Nocturnal Curassow, Salvin's Curassow, Pavonine Quetzal, Fiery Topaz, Paradise Tanager. [8]	Center, Tiputini BS
Northwestern (Chocó) Lowlands	< 800m	Extremely wet tropical rainforest (Chocó Bioregion)	High endemism. Baudo Guan, Banded Ground-Cuckoo, Choco Poorwill, Tooth-billed Hummingbird, Purple-chested Hummingbird, Choco Trogon, Five-colored Barbet, Choco Toucan, Stub-tailed Antbird, Esmeraldas Antbird, Ocellated Antbird, Black-tipped Cotinga, Blue Cotinga, Red-capped Manakin, Scarlet-and-white Tanager, Blue-whiskered Tanager, Scarlet-breasted Dacnis. [8]	Canandé Reserve, Rio Silanche Sanctuary, Playa de Oro, Cotacachi-Cayapas Reserve (low elevations)
Southwestern (Tumbesian) Lowlands	< 800m	Arid/semi-arid deciduous forest, dry scrub, coastal mangroves (Tumbesian Bioregion)	High endemism. Pale-browed Tinamou, Rufous-headed Chachalaca, Gray-cheeked Parakeet, Ecuadorian Ground-Dove, Ochre-bellied Dove, Scrub Nightjar, Tumbes Hummingbird, Ecuadorian Piculet, Blackish-headed Spinetail, Henna-hooded Foliage-gleaner, Watkins's Antpitta, Gray-and-gold Warbler, Saffron Siskin, Tumbes Sparrow, Elegant Crescentchest. [8]	Jorupe Reserve, Ayampe Reserve, Machalilla NP, Cerro Blanco Forest, Manglares Churute Reserve, Zapotillo area
Western Subtropics	800m - 2500m	Andean cloud forest (Pacific slope),	Rich in hummingbirds, tanagers, Chocó specialties. Andean Cock-of-the-Rock, Wattled Guan, Plate-	Mindo, Tandayapa Valley, Mashpi-Amagusa,

		montane wet forest	billed Mountain-Toucan, Toucan Barbet, Golden-headed Quetzal, Cloud-forest Pygmy-Owl, Giant Antpitta, Moustached Antpitta, Long-wattled Umbrellabird, Beautiful Jay, Violet-tailed Sylph, Velvet-purple Coronet, Brown Inca, Booted Racket-tail, Glistening-green Tanager, Moss-backed Tanager. [1]	Bellavista, Milpe Bird Sanctuary, Las Gralarias Reserve, Sachatamia Lodge
Eastern Subtropics	800m - 2500m	Andean cloud forest (Amazonian slope), montane wet forest	High diversity, many tanagers/hummingbirds. Andean Cock-of-the-Rock, Crested Quetzal, Black-and-chestnut Eagle, Torrent Duck, Military Macaw, Coppery-chested Jacamar, Ecuadorian Piedtail, Wire-crested Thorntail, Lazuline Sabrewing, Napo Sabrewing, Orange-eared Tanager, Yellow-throated Tanager, Vermilion Tanager, Golden-collared Toucanet, Foothill Antwren. [8]	Cosanga, Baeza, San Isidro Lodge, Wildsumaco Lodge, Narupa Reserve, Sumaco Volcano slopes, Zamora area (Copalinga)
Temperate Highlands	2500m - 3500m	Upper montane cloud forest, elfin forest, Polylepis woodland	Mossy forests. Andean Guan, Gray-breasted Mountain-Toucan, Sword-billed Hummingbird, Black-breasted Puffleg, Golden-breasted Puffleg, Mountain Velvetbreast, Giant Conebill, Crescent-faced Antpitta, Imperial Snipe, Turquoise Jay, Hooded Mountain-Tanager, Masked Mountain-Tanager, Black-capped Hemispingus. [8]	Yanacocha Reserve, Papallacta Pass (lower slopes), Cajas NP (lower parts), Tapichalaca Reserve (upper parts), Podocarpus NP (upper parts)

Páramo	> 3500m	High-altitude tussock grassland, cushion plants, bogs, rocky outcrops	Open landscapes, specialized fauna. Andean Condor, Carunculated Caracara, Black-faced Ibis, Andean Lapwing, Andean Teal, Andean Duck, Silvery Grebe, Andean Snipe, Tawny Antpitta, Rufous-bellied Seedsnipe, Ecuadorian Hillstar, Blue-mantled Thornbill, Stout-billed Cinclodes, Many-striped Canastero, Paramo Pipit. [8]	Antisana Ecological Reserve, Cajas NP, Chimborazo Reserve, Papallacta Pass (upper parts), Llanganates NP
Galápagos Islands	Sea level - ~1700 m	Arid coastal scrub, Scalesia forest, Miconia zone, pampa zone (highlands)	Unique island endemics, seabirds. Darwin's Finches (13+ spp.), Galapagos Penguin, Flightless Cormorant, Waved Albatross, Blue-footed Booby, Red-footed Booby, Nazca Booby, Frigatebirds (Great & Magnificent), Galapagos Hawk, Lava Gull, Swallow-tailed Gull, Galapagos Dove, Galapagos Mockingbirds (4 spp.). [7]	Various islands (Santa Cruz, San Cristóbal, Isabela, Española, Fernandina, Genovesa, etc.)

The rapid shifts between these biogeographic zones—precipitated by the steep elevation changes of the Andes and the stark moisture gradient along the Pacific coast—underpin Ecuador's extraordinary bird diversity. In just a few hours' drive, one can descend from the open páramo grasslands above 4,000 m through cool temperate cloud forests and into lush subtropical montane woodlands, finally arriving in the warm upper tropical lowlands, each band hosting a wholly distinct avifauna.[2] This compact juxtaposition of habitats amplifies beta diversity—the rate at which species composition changes between ecosystems—over remarkably short distances.[3] Such compressed habitat variety is a critical factor in Ecuador's appeal to birdwatchers, enabling efficient exploration of a broad spectrum of Neotropical bird communities.

Yet this mosaic of interlinked ecological habitat zones is under serious threat. Two of Ecuador's most biodiverse faunal zones—the Northwestern (Chocó) and Southwestern (Tumbesian) lowlands—face severe habitat loss and fragmentation, putting their rich assemblages of endemic and range-restricted species at grave risk.[8] Because these regions harbor many birds found nowhere else on Earth, their degradation would disproportionately erode global avian diversity and diminish the integrity of Endemic Bird Areas. Safeguarding the integrity of these vulnerable zones is thus essential to maintaining

Ecuador's status as a preeminent biodiversity hotspot. Figure 10.2 below offers a detailed overview of Ecuador's bird diversity, distinguishing native from non-native species, and serves as a key reference for understanding the country's unique avian wealth.

Fig. 10.2 - Key Diverse Bird Species of Ecuador - Native and Non-native Birds, Including the Iconic Andean Condor. **Source:** Animal Spot. Available at, https://www.animalspot.net/birds-around-the-world/birds-of-ecuador

Fig. 10.2 - Caption: A comprehensive guide to the diverse bird species of Ecuador, featuring both native and non-native birds, including the iconic Andean Condor, the national bird. The guide categorizes birds into: **Native Birds:** This section includes species such as the Andean Cock-of-the-Rock, Golden-headed Quetzal, Rufous-tailed Hummingbird, Blue-footed Booby, and the Andean Condor, among others. **Non-native Birds:** This category features birds like the House Sparrow, Canary-winged Parakeet, and Rock Pigeon. **National Bird:** The Andean Condor is

specifically marked as the national bird of Ecuador. The image is available at the website of the Animalspot.net, https://www.animalspot.net/birds-around-the-world/birds-of-ecuador

Key Takeaways from Sections 10.1 – 10.2: Ecological Foundations

- Ecuador hosts 1 736 bird species within less than 0.2 % of Earth's land area
- Hummingbirds (~132 species) and tanagers (~140+ species) exemplify its endemic richness
- Eight faunal zones—from Amazon lowlands to high-Andean páramo—drive rapid habitat turnover

IV. Charting the Course: Premier Birding Routes and Destinations

10.3 National Birding Routes: Pathways to Discovery

To showcase Ecuador's varied birdlife and habitats, the country has established six principal birding circuits that connect distinct faunal zones and prime birdwatching locales, maximizing both ease of access and species diversity for visitors.[2] Detailed official guides can be hard to find, but these routes generally follow regional clusters of bird communities (see Fig. 10.3):

1. **Northwestern Route:** Centered on the Chocó–Andean corridor northwest of Quito, this path descends from upper temperate cloud forests through subtropical montane woods into the Pacific slope's tropical lowlands. It is famed for Chocó endemics, large tanager assemblages, and an exceptional hummingbird variety. Key stops include the Mindo–Tandayapa Valley reserves (Bellavista, Sachatamia, Las Gralarias, Refugio Paz de las Aves, Milpe), the Mashpi–Amagusa area, and lower-elevation sites such as Río Silanche and Canandé Reserve.[1] Quito serves as the main gateway.
2. **Northeastern Route:** Beginning at the high páramo near Quito, this route follows the eastern Andes slope down into the Amazonian foothills, traversing páramo grasslands and cloud forests rich in east-slope specialties. Notable locations include Papallacta Pass, Antisana Ecological Reserve, the Baeza/Cosanga region (e.g., San Isidro Lodge), Guango Lodge, Wildsumaco Lodge, and the lower slopes of Sumaco Volcano.[12] Quito again functions as the hub.
3. **Amazonian Route:** Focused on the Oriente's lowland rainforests, this circuit typically departs from Francisco de Orellana (Coca), reached by a short flight from Quito. Birders travel by motorized canoe along the Napo and its tributaries to lodges and research stations deep in the basin. Prime destinations include Yasuní National Park, with accommodations such as Sacha Lodge, La Selva Jungle Lodge, Napo Wildlife Center, and Tiputini Biodiversity Station.[18] The emphasis here is on classic Amazonian species: macaws, toucans, antbirds, and other rainforest specialists.
4. **Pacific Coast Route:** Traversing Ecuador's western shoreline from the mangroves near Guayaquil southward through Tumbesian dry forests and coastal scrub, this route highlights shorebirds, waterbirds, and coastal endemics. Key sites include Manglares Churute Ecological Reserve, Machalilla National Park (and Isla de la Plata), Ayampe Reserve, and the Santa Elena Peninsula (Loma Alta).[7] Guayaquil serves as the travel hub.

5. **Southern Highlands Route:** Spanning the southern Andes and adjacent slopes, this extensive circuit encompasses Tumbesian dry forests, unique cloud forests, high páramo, and southeastern upper-Amazon foothills. Renowned for its concentration of regional endemics—especially hummingbirds and tanagers—this route visits Buenaventura, Jorupe, and Utuana reserves, Tapichalaca Reserve, Podocarpus National Park (Zamora/Bombuscaro and Cajanuma entrances), Copalinga Lodge, and the Catamayo dry valley.[18] Access is typically via Guayaquil, Cuenca, or Loja.
6. **Galápagos Route:** Entirely island-based, this circuit explores the Galápagos archipelago via multi-day cruises out of Baltra or San Cristóbal, or through land-focused tours on Santa Cruz, San Cristóbal, Isabela, and other inhabited islands.[1] Here, birders encounter the archipelago's unique endemic and seabird communities.

Supporting these routes is a robust transport network: international airports in Quito (UIO) and Guayaquil (GYE); domestic flights to hubs such as Coca, Loja, and Cuenca; and an extensive paved road system linking towns, reserves, and national parks.[2] Local traffic data underline how birdwatchers are fueling this network. In 2024, Mariscal Sucre International Airport (UIO) handled over 5.3 million passengers—an average of 15,000 per day—connecting Quito to 19 international and 8 domestic destinations. On the busiest domestic corridor, the Quito–Guayaquil route carried 1.84 million travellers in 2023, making it the country's top air link and a key conduit for avitourists shuttling between highland lodges and coastal reserves. Meanwhile, lodge operators in Mindo report that shared shuttle services now transport more than 40 % of visiting birdwatchers—up from 25 % in 2022—reflecting both rising demand and a shift toward group transfers that reduce single-occupancy car trips. Together, these logistics make Ecuador's far-flung biodiversity remarkably accessible to international birdwatchers. A detailed map of these circuits and key sites (Fig. 10.3) is available from the Ministry of Tourism of Ecuador (see https://files.goraymi.com/2018/09/09/3fbff6f066219a5c585ac50e5e62e29d.jpg).

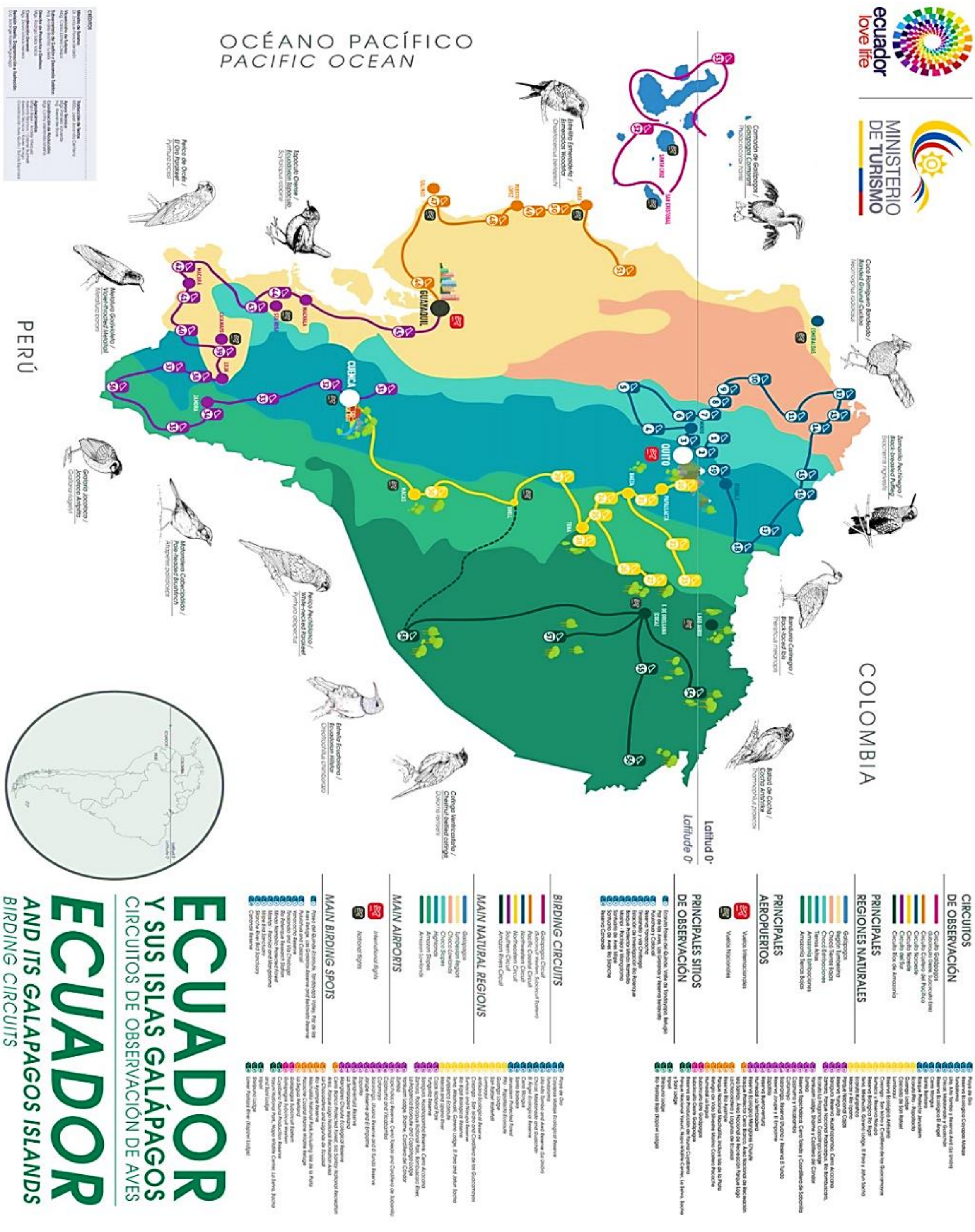


Fig. 10.3 - National Birding Routes – Regional Clusters of Birds Communities in Ecuador.
Source: Ministry for the Tourism, Ecuador.

Key Takeaways from Section 10.3: Conservation Priority Frameworks

- 107 IBAs/KBAs cover approximately 35.7 % of Ecuador's land and guide site protection
- EBAs (Chocó, Tumbesian, Andes, Galápagos) remain legacy classifications, useful for historical context
- IBAs/KBAs are the active tools for current conservation planning

10.4. Spotlight on Key Birding Havens

Ecuador offers countless excellent birdwatching sites, but a handful stand out for their extraordinary species richness, distinctive endemic birds, robust visitor infrastructure, and conservation importance: Mindo & Tandayapa Valley, Yasuní National Park, Antisana Ecological Reserve, the Galápagos Islands, and the Jocotoco Foundation Reserves (Buenaventura & Tapichalaca).

10.4.1. Mindo & Tandayapa Valley

Nestled in the Western Subtropical zone of the Chocó–Andean corridor northwest of Quito (elevations ~1,200–2,000 m), Mindo & Tandayapa represent Ecuador's most celebrated birding destination.[1] Designated South America's first Important Bird Area (EC043) in 1997,[1] this region has transformed from an agriculturally pressured landscape into a network of private reserves and eco-lodges.[29] Visitors marvel at feeder stations attracting 15–20 hummingbird species (seasonally variable)[21], witness the famed Andean Cock-of-the-Rock leks[21], and enjoy up-close encounters with antpittas at places like Refugio Paz de las Aves, where Giant, Moustached, Ochre-breasted, and Yellow-breasted Antpittas feed at close range.[31]

Today, Mindo's avifauna exceeds 600 recorded species, testament to ongoing surveys and research. High-quality lodges—such as Bellavista, Sachatamia, Las Gralarias, Séptimo Paraíso, and Mindo Gardens—offer comfortable accommodations and expert guiding.[28] Notable target species include the Plate-billed Mountain-Toucan, Toucan Barbet, Golden-headed Quetzal, Velvet-purple Coronet, Violet-tailed Sylph, and Booted Racket-tail.[8] Continued management vigilance is essential to safeguard this area's conservation-tourism success.

10.4.2. Yasuní National Park

At the heart of Ecuador's Amazon (Oriente), Yasuní National Park spans over one million hectares as a UNESCO Biosphere Reserve.[64] Often cited as one of Earth's most biodiverse regions per square kilometer, Yasuní harbors around 600 bird species.[63] Access is typically by canoe along the Napo River from Coca.[65] Remote lodges (Napo Wildlife Center, Sacha Lodge, La Selva Jungle Lodge) and the Tiputini Biodiversity Station deliver immersive forest experiences.[18] Birders traverse terra firme and seasonally flooded forests on trails, paddle blackwater creeks and oxbow lakes, observe parrot and macaw clay licks, and ascend canopy towers.[63]

Despite its protected status, Yasuní faces pressures from illegal logging, commercial hunting, potential oil-extraction expansion, and new roads.[64] Conservation programs, including Global Park Defense, work to bolster monitoring and enforcement. Iconic species here range from Harpy and Crested Eagles to Scarlet and Blue-and-Yellow Macaws, a diversity of toucans and aracaris, Hoatzin, Zigzag and Agami Herons, Nocturnal Curassow, and myriad antbirds, woodcreepers, and flycatchers.[8]

10.4.3. Antisana Ecological Reserve:

Encompassing the slopes of Antisana Volcano—Ecuador's fourth-highest peak—and its adjacent Andean habitats, this expansive reserve is accessible as a day trip or short stay from Quito.[28] Elevations span from over 4,000 m in páramo grasslands and glacial lakes (e.g., Laguna La Mica, a principal water source for Quito) down into upper montane forests.[31] Antisana is arguably the nation's most dependable site for observing the Andean Condor, which here maintains Ecuador's largest condor population.[59] Visitor amenities include interpretive centers and well-kept trail networks, with nearby haciendas and lodges—such as Tambo Cóndor—offering accommodations.[69] Beyond condors, key species include the Giant Hummingbird, Carunculated Caracara, Black-faced Ibis, Andean Lapwing, Silvery Grebe, Andean Teal, Andean Duck, Aplomado Falcon, and high-altitude specialists like the Rufous-bellied Seedsnipe and Ecuadorian Hillstar.[8]

10.4.4. Galápagos Islands
This UNESCO World Heritage archipelago delivers an unparalleled wildlife experience distinct from mainland Ecuador.[7] While total bird species counts are lower than on the continent, endemism is exceptionally high and species exhibit remarkable tameness.[8] Tourism operates under strict regulation—primarily via licensed cruise itineraries or land-based tours on inhabited islands such as Santa Cruz, San Cristóbal, Isabela, and Floreana.[29] Conservation oversight by the Galápagos National Park Directorate contends with invasive species (e.g., the parasitic fly *Philornis downsi*, which severely impacts finch nestlings[45]), climate change pressures, historical exploitation, and the challenges of sustainable tourism management.[45] Birding highlights include watching Darwin's Finches display their varied beak adaptations, encountering endemic seabirds like the Galápagos Penguin and Flightless Cormorant, observing Blue-footed Booby courtship dances,[68] and visiting Waved Albatross colonies on Española Island between April and December.[8]

10.4.5. Jocotoco Foundation Reserves (Buenaventura & Tapichalaca)
These private reserves exemplify the critical role of non-governmental conservation initiatives:

- **Buenaventura Reserve** protects remnants of Chocó-influenced cloud forest in El Oro province (650–1,300 m).[17] Established to safeguard the endangered endemic El Oro Parakeet and El Oro Tapaculo,[35] it features the upscale Umbrellabird Lodge[35] and an accessible lek for the threatened Long-wattled Umbrellabird.[42] Hummingbird feeders draw numerous nectarivores, and other highlights include the Club-winged Manakin, Gray-backed Hawk, and Pacific Tuftedcheek.[39]

- **Tapichalaca Reserve**, adjacent to Podocarpus National Park in Zamora Chinchipe province (1,800–3,400 m), was founded after the 1997 discovery of the Jocotoco Antpitta (*Grallaria ridgelyi*).[17] Casa Simpson Lodge[35] provides on-site lodging. Well-maintained trails wind through pristine cloud forest to a renowned feeding station, where Jocotoco, Chestnut-naped, and Slate-crowned Antpittas—and occasionally Undulated Antpittas—come into view.[39] Additional specialties include the Bearded Guan, Golden-plumed Parakeet, Masked Mountain-Tanager, and a variety of hummingbird species such as the Rufous-capped Thornbill.[39]

10.4.6. The Crucial Role of Private Reserves

The success stories of Buenaventura and Tapichalaca illustrate how private reserves complement Ecuador's national park system (SNAP).[17] While SNAP provides the foundational protected areas, a network of NGO-managed or lodge-affiliated private reserves safeguards vital habitats—often in regions lacking formal state protection.

The Jocotoco Foundation exemplifies this model, overseeing 16 reserves across Ecuador that together conserve over 39,000 hectares and support nearly 1,200 bird species, including many endemics and threatened taxa.[17] Their strategy merges land acquisition with on-site eco-lodges (operated by Jocotours), such as Umbrellabird Lodge at Buenaventura, Casa Simpson at Tapichalaca, Urraca Lodge at Jorupe, Canandé Lodge, and

Copalinga Lodge. This integrated approach generates stable funding for conservation and ensures birder access to key sites.[17]

10.4.7. Aves y Conservación

As BirdLife International's Ecuador partner, Aves y Conservación plays a pivotal role in identifying and monitoring IBAs,[53] and has established targeted reserves—such as Kinti Toisán—to protect species like the endangered Black-breasted Puffleg in the Chocó-Andes.[34]

Beyond these major NGOs, many eco-lodges maintain their own reserves, bolstering habitat protection while offering high-quality birding. Examples include Mashpi Lodge in the Chocó foothills,[31] Bellavista Cloud Forest Reserve in Tandayapa Valley,[28] San Isidro Lodge near Cosanga,[28] Wildsumaco Lodge on the eastern slope,[12] and Las Gralarias Reserve near Mindo.[41]

This proliferation of well–managed private reserves and lodges—clustered around hotspots like Mindo, Cosanga, and southern Jocotoco sites—signals a sophisticated avitourism market in Ecuador. It meets international standards for comfort, accessibility, and specialized experiences (endemic species tours, photography, expert guiding).[18]

However, relying heavily on private initiatives has trade-offs. Their agility allows rapid, targeted conservation actions often beyond government reach,[34] but financial stability can hinge on volatile tourism revenue or donor support.[81] Studies of high-end projects like Mashpi have raised concerns about equitable benefit sharing with local communities, highlighting risks of "green grabbing" if social inclusion is not prioritized.[80] These complexities underline the need to balance ecological successes with careful attention to social impact in Ecuador's conservation landscape.

Key Takeaways from Section 10.4: Flagship & Threatened Species

- Iconic species (e.g., Andean Condor, Harpy Eagle, Jocotoco Antpitta) attract birders and require urgent protection
- The table of flagship birds links tourism value with IUCN status and key threats
- Conservation success for these species underpins Ecuador's avitourism credentials

V. Feathered Icons and Conservation Imperatives: Threatened Species

Ecuador's avifauna includes many species of both ecological importance and cultural resonance—flagships that draw tourists but face serious threats, making their protection a global priority.

10.5. Profiles of Flagship Birds of Ecuador (see Table 10.2)

• **Andean Condor (*Vultur gryphus*)**: Ecuador's emblematic scavenger sustains Andean food webs by removing carrion across open páramo and rocky highlands. Recent demographic surveys estimate only ~150 individuals remain within national boundaries, reflecting steep regional declines tied to habitat loss and human persecution (Naveda-Rodríguez et al., 2016; Vargas et al., 2018). Unlike many vultures, condors exhibit cooperative foraging—groups of 3–5 birds may circle thermals before descending together onto large carcasses—underscoring their social complexity. Viewing opportunities cluster near Antisana Ecological Reserve and Chimborazo, where thermal currents and grassland mosaics create predictable flight corridors. Conservation efforts now pair community outreach (to reduce livestock conflict) with targeted surveys of nesting cliffs, yielding new insights into territory fidelity and juvenile dispersal.

• **Harpy Eagle (*Harpia harpyja*)**: One of the largest eagles globally, this apex predator of Neotropical forests indicates intact ecosystems.[8] Listed as Vulnerable by IUCN and Near Threatened in Ecuador, sightings are rare and localized to remote Amazon tracts like Yasuní National Park.[64] Its elusive, patchy presence makes it a special but unpredictable draw for expert birders.

• **Sword-billed Hummingbird (*Ensifera ensifera*)**: Famous for its bills longer than its body, this high-elevation nectar specialist relies on deep-throated flowers like Passiflora and Brugmansia. Banding studies around Papallacta and Yanacocha (2,400–3,300 m) reveal that individuals revisit the same feeder stations year after year, indicating remarkably precise trap-line memory (Loayza et al., 2021) . Although globally assessed as Least Concern, local montane deforestation fragments its specialized habitat, leading to population dips in some southern Andean valleys. Early morning observation points near buffer-zone hedgerows provide the best photo-opportunities, as birds exploit the first nectar flows before cloud-forest understories become too dim.

• **Guayaquil (Lilacine) Amazon Parrot (*Amazona lilacina*)**: Endemic to Ecuador's Pacific coast, from El Oro to Manabí provinces, this parrot is Critically Endangered due to habitat destruction and the pet trade.[86] Now recognized as a distinct species,[87] it survives in fragmented populations around Manglares Churute and Cerro Blanco; sightings elsewhere require recent verification. Community-led habitat restoration, especially near Cerro Blanco, is a key conservation strategy.

• **Blue-footed Booby (*Sula nebouxii*)**: An icon of the Galápagos, renowned for its bright blue feet and elaborate courtship.[68] Though globally Least Concern, its Galápagos population has fallen from over 2,300 breeding pairs to fewer than 800, largely due to prey declines linked to overfishing and ocean changes.[68] Its vulnerability to El Niño events and long-term reproductive failures warrants close monitoring.

• **Darwin's Finches (*Geospiza* spp., *Camarhynchus* spp., etc.)**: Classic examples of adaptive radiation, these finches have diversified beak forms to exploit varied food resources.[8] While many species are Least Concern (e.g. *Geospiza fortis*), the entire group is imperiled by the parasitic fly *Philornis downsi*—which can kill over 50% of nestlings—and by avian pox and invasive plants.[46] Conservation interventions (nest fumigation, biocontrol trials) are underway but have had mixed success.

Table 10.2 - Profiles of Flagship Birds of Ecuador: Common name, scientific name, description, location and tourism value/sightability

Common Name	Scientific Name	Brief Description	Location in Ecuador	Tourism Value / Sightability
Andean Condor	*Vultur gryphus*	Immense vulture, largest raptor in the Americas. Culturally iconic. IUCN: Near Threatened (global); CR in Ecuador.	High Andes: Antisana, Chakana, Chimborazo, Cajas	Moderate (Best viewed at roosting/viewing sites, not common)
Sword-billed Hummingbird	*Ensifera ensifera*	Bill longer than body; feeds on long tubular flowers. IUCN: Least Concern.	Andes: Yanacocha, Guango, Papallacta, Cajas NP, Tandayapa	High (Common at feeders at key lodges)

Common Name	Scientific Name	Brief Description	Location in Ecuador	Tourism Value / Sightability
Andean Cock-of-the-Rock	*Rupicola peruvianus*	Fiery-orange male; dramatic lekking displays. IUCN: Least Concern.	Cloud forests: Mindo, Tandayapa, San Isidro, Tapichalaca	High (Habituated leks, highly photogenic)
Plate-billed Mountain-Toucan	*Andigena laminirostris*	Colorful West Andean toucan; unique bill plate. IUCN: Near Threatened.	Chocó-Andes: Mindo, Tandayapa, Mashpi, Milpe, Balcón Tumpiki	Moderate (Seen at forest edges but elusive)
Blue-footed Booby	*Sula nebouxii*	Galápagos icon; vivid blue feet and courtship dance. IUCN: Least Concern.	Galápagos: Española, Seymour, Isabela, Isla de la Plata	High (Very common on tours)

10.5.1. Threats and Conservation Status

Ecuador's birds face a complex array of dangers that vary by region, demanding tailored conservation measures:

- **Habitat Loss and Fragmentation:** Widespread deforestation—driven by agricultural expansion (notably cattle ranching and pasture creation)[75], both legal and illegal logging[64], mining in the Andes and Chocó[24], new roads that open remote forests[64], and urban sprawl[46]—continues to shrink and isolate crucial bird habitats. Coastal dry forests in the Tumbesian region and lowland Chocó rainforests are among the most imperiled ecosystems.[8]
- **Hunting and Poaching:** Direct persecution threatens conspicuous species. Harpy Eagles are sometimes shot out of fear or in retaliation for livestock losses[84], while parrots such as the Critically Endangered Guayaquil Parrot suffer heavily from illegal capture for the pet trade.[86] Large game birds—guans and curassows—also fall victim to subsistence and commercial hunting, especially where roads facilitate access.[62]
- **Climate Change:** Warming temperatures may force mountain species upward, risking "mountaintop extinctions." Shifts in rainfall can disrupt flowering cycles critical to nectar feeders like the Sword-billed Hummingbird.[26] High-altitude páramo ecosystems are particularly vulnerable.[75] Models predict significant future range contractions for species such as the Harpy Eagle.[85]
- **Pollution:** Though less documented, pollution poses real dangers: Andean Condors can ingest lead fragments from hunter-discarded carcasses[82]; agricultural runoff and pesticide drift from banana and palm plantations degrade wetlands and insect prey; mercury from gold mining contaminates aquatic systems; and light pollution disrupts migration and breeding behaviors.
- **Invasive Species:** Non-native predators—rats, feral cats—devastate nests in fragile island ecosystems, especially the Galápagos.[68] The parasitic fly *Philornis downsi* causes catastrophic nestling mortality in Darwin's Finches.[45] Invasive plants also alter habitats, reducing food and nesting opportunities.[46]
- **Resource Competition and Overfishing:** Seabirds like the Blue-footed Booby compete with commercial fisheries for key prey (sardines, anchovies).[68] Studies

report reproductive failures linked to prey shortages, and Galápagos fishery data indicate booby breeding populations have halved over 20 years.[68]

Because threats differ so markedly across regions, conservation actions must be equally diverse. In the Galápagos, invasive-species eradication and strict visitor controls are priorities; in the Amazon, efforts focus on curbing illegal logging, hunting, and oil expansion; in the Andes, protecting cloud forests from agriculture and mining and conserving páramo watersheds are essential. While tourism in the Galápagos is now more regulated, historical overuse underscores the ongoing need for careful balance. Table 10.3 below) summarizes the status and primary threats for selected flagship species and their significance for tourism.

Table 10.3 – The Status and Key Threats for Selected Flagship Species with Sightability and Tourism Relevance

No.	Common Name	Scientific Name	Brief Description	Location in Ecuador	Sightability and Tourism Relevance
1	**Andean Condor**	*Vultur gryphus*	Immense vulture, largest raptor in the Americas (wingspan up to 3.3m). Adults are black with a prominent white neck ruff and large white patches on upper wings. Head and neck are bare, dull red (can flush color), male has distinctive comb (caruncle) and wattle. Heavy bird, relies on soaring over open areas using thermals. Feeds on carrion. National symbol of Ecuador and other Andean nations; culturally significant. Population estimate: fewer than 150 individuals in Ecuador (Vargas et al., 2013; BirdLife, 2024). Near Threatened (IUCN global) vs. Critically Endangered (MAATE 2022 Red List Ecuador).	High Andes: open grasslands (páramo), alpine areas, rocky slopes, typically above 3,000m up to 5,000m. Prefers open terrain for spotting carcasses. Key Sites: Antisana Ecological Reserve (Hacienda Antisanilla protects major population), Tambo Cóndor Bird Lodge, Reserva Chakana (Mirador del Isco), Papallacta Pass area, Chimborazo National Park vicinity, Cajas National Park.	Moderate to high visibility at select sites. High symbolic and cultural tourism value. Strong draw for conservation-oriented birdwatchers and eco-tourists.
2	**Sword-billed Hummingbird**	*Ensifera ensifera*	Unmistakable: possesses the	Andean temperate zone: humid	Very high visibility at

No.	Common Name	Scientific Name	Brief Description	Location in Ecuador	Sightability and Tourism Relevance
			longest bill relative to body size of any bird (bill 8–12cm, longer than body excluding tail). Bill is black and slightly upturned. Body plumage is muted green with a bronzy head. Specialist feeder on flowers with long corollas (Passiflora, Brugmansia); employs trap-line feeding strategy. Also catches insects in flight. Highly sought-after due to unique morphology. IUCN Status: Least Concern, but potentially vulnerable to habitat loss/climate change.	montane forest, forest edges, shrubland, gardens; typically, elevational limits reported up to 4,000m in some areas; although most common 2,400–3,100m. Readily visits feeders at lodges. Key Sites: Yanacocha Reserve, Reserva Zuro Loma, Guango Lodge, Papallacta area, Cajas National Park, Tandayapa Valley, Bellavista Cloud Forest Reserve.	feeders. One of the most sought-after photographic subjects due to unique morphology. Boosts eco-lodge tourism appeal.
3	**Andean Cock-of-the-Rock**	*Rupicola peruvianus*	Spectacular cotinga. Male is brilliant scarlet-orange with a large, flattened, fan-like crest often obscuring the bill, black wings and tail, and silvery-grey wing coverts (scapulars). Famous for elaborate communal courtship displays at 'leks'. Often heard before seen. Ecuador mainly features R. p. sanguinolentus.	Andean cloud forests, particularly near streams, ravines, and rocky outcrops used for nesting; middle elevations (500–2,400m). Key Sites: Mindo cloud forest region (numerous accessible leks, e.g., Refugio Paz de las Aves), Tandayapa Valley (e.g., Bellavista Cloud Forest Reserve), Sachatamia Lodge area, San Isidro Lodge (East Slope), Tapichalaca Reserve, Narupa Reserve.	Very high visibility at leks. A “bucket list” species for birders. Critical for tourism infrastructure in Mindo and other cloud forest reserves.
4	**Plate-billed Mountain-Toucan**	*Andigena laminirostris*	Striking Andean toucan. Identified by a raised ivory-yellow plate on upper mandible.	Endemic to humid cloud forests of the West Andean slope in NW Ecuador and SW Colombia;	Moderate to high. Reliable sightings near canopy lodges. A visually striking species

No.	Common Name	Scientific Name	Brief Description	Location in Ecuador	Sightability and Tourism Relevance
			Blue-grey underparts, bronzy-olive back, yellow rump. Sensitive to fragmentation. IUCN: Near Threatened.	typically 1,600–2,600m. Found in montane forest canopy and edges. Key Sites: Mindo and Tandayapa Valleys (e.g., Bellavista Cloud Forest Lodge, Reserva Las Gralarias, Mashpi area, Milpe Bird Sanctuary, Santa Rosa Bird Lodge, Balcón Tumpiki).	prized by photographers and birders alike.
5	**Blue-footed Booby**	*Sula nebouxii*	Famous Galápagos resident. Bright turquoise-blue feet used in courtship displays. Brown and white plumage. Expert diver. IUCN: Least Concern, though populations have declined (sardine depletion).	Primarily marine, breeding on rocky coasts and islands. Key Locations: Galápagos Islands (Española, North Seymour, Fernandina, Floreana, Isabela, Pinzón, Santa Cruz) and Isla de la Plata.	Extremely high visibility. Iconic species on Galápagos cruises. Major draw for nature and wildlife tours.
6	**Giant Antpitta**	*Grallaria gigantea*	One of the largest antpittas. Terrestrial, rotund, shy. Distinctive barring and gray crown. Habituated individuals at feeding stations are a major birding draw. IUCN: Vulnerable.	Andean cloud forest understory, 1,200–2,500m. Key Sites: Refugio Paz de las Aves (Mindo), Reserva Las Gralarias, Tandayapa Valley.	High at feeding sites. A flagship species for eco-tourism reserves with habituated individuals.
7	**Long-wattled Umbrellabird**	*Cephalopterus penduliger*	Large, striking black cotinga. Males have umbrella-like crest and long wattle. Lekking behavior. IUCN: Vulnerable (due to habitat loss, hunting, lek disturbance).	Chocó foothill and lower montane forests, 150–1,800m. Key Sites: Buenaventura Reserve (Umbrellabird Lodge), Rio Canandé Reserve, Milpe Bird Sanctuary, Mashpi region.	Moderate. Can be observed at known leks. Sensitive to disturbance; requires guided tourism and conservation-focused planning.
8	**Harpy Eagle**	*Harpia harpyja*	One of the world's largest and	Lowland rainforest below 900m. Key	Very low. Rare and elusive.

No.	Common Name	Scientific Name	Brief Description	Location in Ecuador	Sightability and Tourism Relevance
			strongest eagles. Distinctive crest. Apex predator of tropical forests. IUCN: Vulnerable.	Sites: Yasuní NP, Napo Wildlife Center, Sani Lodge, Narupa Reserve, Gareno Lodge, Canandé Reserve.	Sightings are extremely special. Appeals to expert birders and conservationists.
9	**Jocotoco Antpitta**	*Grallaria ridgelyi*	Large, rare antpitta discovered in 1997. Distinctive facial pattern. Tiny range (~20 km²). Chusquea bamboo-dependent. IUCN: Endangered.	Endemic to montane forest with dense bamboo in SE Ecuador (Zamora-Chinchipe). Key Site: Tapichalaca Reserve (entire known population).	High at Tapichalaca feeding stations. Conservation symbol for Ecuador; major global birding attraction.
10	**Paradise Tanager**	*Tangara chilensis*	Small, brilliantly colored tanager with lime-green head, sky-blue belly, red/yellow rump. Found in canopy, often in flocks. Misnamed: not from Chile. IUCN: Least Concern.	Humid lowland/foothill Amazon rainforest. Key Sites: Napo Wildlife Center, Sacha Lodge, La Selva, Shiripuno Lodge, Yasuní NP, Sumaco NP, Copalinga Lodge.	Very high. Easily seen in mixed flocks. Spectacular appearance makes it a favorite among birders and photographers.

Source: *(IUCN Status based on cited snippets or IUCN Red List website as of late 2024)*

Crucially, many of the species most threatened are also significant draws for avitourism – the Condor, the Harpy Eagle, the Umbrellabird, the endemic parrots and antpittas. This creates a direct, tangible link between conservation success and economic benefit. Protecting these flagship species and their habitats not only fulfills an ecological and ethical imperative but also safeguards valuable assets that underpin Ecuador's growing reputation as a world-class sustainable tourism destination. Conversely, failure to halt declines diminishes the very natural capital that attracts visitors, potentially creating a negative feedback loop. This dynamic provides a powerful economic rationale for investing in robust conservation programs targeting these iconic and imperiled birds. Image collection below shows the 10 flagship species are outlined in the Table 10.3 and below Fig. 10.4.

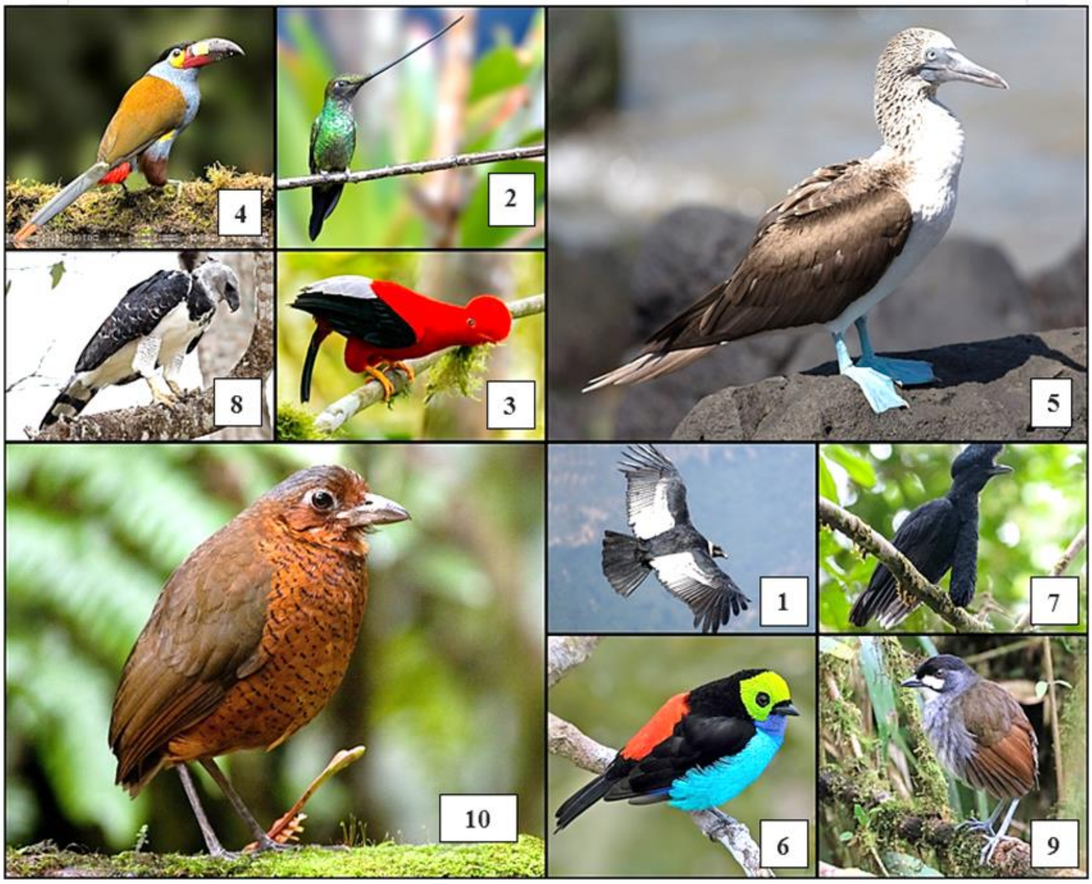


Fig. 10.4 – Ten Iconic Birds of Ecuador

Fig 10.4 Caption, Description:

1. **Andean Condor** (*Vultur gryphus*)
   Majestic scavenger of the high Andes; Ecuador's national bird and symbol of power and freedom.
2. **Sword-billed Hummingbird** (*Ensifera ensifera*)
   A high-altitude specialist with a bill longer than its body, uniquely adapted to feed on tubular flowers.
3. **Andean Cock-of-the-Rock** (*Rupicola peruvianus*)
   A dazzling bird of the cloud forests, known for its fiery plumage and elaborate lekking displays.
4. **Plate-billed Mountain-Toucan** (*Andigena laminirostris*)
   A striking cloud forest toucan with a colorful bill and a call that echoes through the Andean mist.
5. **Blue-footed Booby** (*Sula nebouxii*)
   A Galápagos icon, famous for its vivid blue feet and comical courtship dance.
6. **Giant Antpitta** (*Grallaria gigantea*)
   A reclusive and robust ground-dweller of Andean forests, once thought near-mythical.
7. **Long-wattled Umbrellabird** (*Cephalopterus penduliger*)
   A rare and dramatic species of the Chocó, with a long inflatable wattle and jet-black plumage.
8. **Harpy Eagle** (*Harpia harpyja*)
   The powerful apex predator of Neotropical rainforests, with formidable talons and rainforest authority.
9. **Jocotoco Antpitta** (*Grallaria ridgelyi*)
   A conservation flagship species, endemic to southeastern Ecuador and discovered only in 1997.
10. **Paradise Tanager** (*Tangara chilensis*)
    A vibrant mosaic of colors, found in Amazonian treetops—one of the most visually dazzling tanagers.

VI. Avitourism: Fueling Sustainable Economies and Conservation

10.6 The Economic Engine: Quantifying Avitourism's Impact

Tourism plays a vital role in Ecuador's economy, though its full potential remains untapped. BeIn 2023, international visitor receipts reached about US $1.03 billion, but projections anticipate only US $922.8 million by 2025 (Go With Guide, 2025).[74] Before COVID-19, tourism contributed roughly 2.9 percent to GDP in 2019 and directly employed over 300,000 people (World Economics, 2025). The pandemic's impact has been long-lasting: by 2025, the sector is again expected to account for just 2.9 percent of GDP, illustrating the slow pace of recovery (Travel and Tour World, 2024).[74]

Key Economic Indicators (Cunningham, 2025; Statista, 2025).

- **Tourism Revenue:** US $922.8 million forecast for 2025, with a projected annual growth rate of 2.93 percent from 2025–2029.
- **Employment Impact:** Approximately 700,000 jobs supported by tourism in 2025.[24]
- **National GDP Outlook:** Total GDP projected at US $120.7 billion by end of 2025.[20]

10.6.1. Strategic Initiatives Supporting Recovery

To accelerate the rebound, the government has launched several measures: upgrading hotel infrastructure and commissioning new luxury cruise vessels—especially for the Galápagos Islands—aimed at attracting higher-spending visitors.[24] Ecuador's role as Partner Country at FITUR 2024 further spotlighted its commitment to global tourism promotion.[20] Sustainable-tourism principles are now central to national strategies, seeking to protect biodiversity and cultural heritage while fostering economic growth.

However, pinpointing avitourism's exact economic contribution within these figures is challenging due to limited data. Yet the sheer scale of Ecuador's bird diversity and endemism (Section II) makes it a magnet for birdwatchers—an often well-educated, eco-minded, and high-spending market segment.[61] The dense network of specialized lodges, private reserves with feeders and hides, and tour operators offering dedicated birding itineraries underscores a substantial and growing niche.[2]

Economic gains from avitourism flow through multiple channels, particularly in rural birding hotspots:

- Lodge and hacienda accommodation fees
- Professional guide service charges
- Entrance fees to parks and reserves
- Domestic transport expenses (flights, ground transfers)
- Food and beverage purchases
- Sales of local crafts and souvenirs [80]

Global wildlife-tourism studies hint at the sector's promise: whale watching generated over US $1 billion annually as early as 1998,[91] and vulture-based tourism contributes millions in Southern Africa.[92] While Ecuador-specific avitourism figures await dedicated research, existing infrastructure and its strong reputation suggest a multi-million-dollar industry with significant growth potential, especially for rural development.[13]

10.6.2. Rural Transformation: Case Studies in Conservation-Based Livelihoods

One of the most compelling aspects of avitourism in Ecuador is its capacity to reshape rural economies. By moving away from subsistence farming, logging, or cattle ranching toward conservation-compatible enterprises, landowners can tap new revenue streams. The following case studies highlight both the promise and the complexities of this shift:

1. **Tandayapa Valley (Conceptual Example):** In Tandayapa, some landowners have converted dairy or tomato farms into private reserves and eco-lodges. Driven by the prospect of hosting birdwatchers eager to see species like the Andean Cock-of-the-Rock, antpittas, hummingbirds, and tanagers, these entrepreneurs now earn more from lodging fees, guiding services, and reserve entrance charges than they did from traditional crops. Although rigorous data are still needed, the success of places like Refugio Paz de las Aves—where Angel Paz habituated antpittas on his family's land, turning it into an internationally renowned birding site—demonstrates how individual or family livelihoods can be transformed.[31]
2. **Mashpi Area (Nuanced Reality):** Mashpi Lodge's luxurious reserve protects critical Chocó–Andean forests and provides well-paid jobs that inject income into the local economy.[80] It has also encouraged neighboring communities to develop small-scale nature tours focused on waterfalls and local attractions. Yet research there shows that most high-value positions—such as guides—go to outsiders with specialized skills, and the lodge's substantial profits have not necessarily translated into broader community improvements. This underscores that ecotourism's benefits depend heavily on enterprise structure, and without deliberate pro-poor strategies and capacity building, it can exclude local residents.[80]
3. **Yachana Lodge / FUNEDESIN (Integrated Amazonian Model):** Yachana Lodge in the Napo Province exemplifies reinvestment of tourism revenues into community development. Since its founding, Yachana has channelled over US $2 million back into the region, funding a clinic, 17 village microcredit banks serving 400+ members, and sustainable agriculture projects (cacao, coffee) that provide alternatives to logging or illicit crops. By prioritizing local employment and sustainable practices, Yachana shows how tourism can catalyze social, economic, and environmental gains simultaneously.[93]
4. **Kichwa Pathfinder Tours (Community-Based Amazonian Model):** Operated by indigenous Kichwa guides in the Cuyabeno Wildlife Reserve, this initiative delivers authentic experiences while directing all tourism revenue back to participating families. It creates jobs in guiding, hospitality, craft production, and transport, helping communities diversify beyond extractive activities. Although it spreads benefits widely, KPT faces familiar challenges: limited market access, tight funding, and the need for ongoing training in business and marketing.[90]

These examples demonstrate that avitourism and ecotourism can drive rural development and conservation in Ecuador—but success is not automatic. Sustainable transformation requires careful planning, genuine community involvement, investments in local skills (language, hospitality, business), and enterprise models designed to ensure local benefit rather than external capture.[80]

10.6.3. Incentivizing Protection: The Socio Bosque Program (PSB)

Complementing private and community tourism efforts is Socio Bosque, Ecuador's flagship state-led conservation incentive program launched in 2008.[94] As a Payments for Ecosystem Services (PES) scheme managed by the Ministry of Environment, Water and Ecological Transition, PSB offers 20-year contracts with direct payments to landowners, families, communities, and Indigenous Peoples who commit to conserving forests, páramos, mangroves, and other native ecosystems.

- **Status & Scale:** By 2022, Socio Bosque operated in 23 of Ecuador's 24 provinces (MAATE, 2023). Initially targeting 3.6 million hectares, it had enrolled about 1.5 million hectares under 2,748 agreements by 2018 (UNDP, 2018), benefiting over 173,000 individuals—including 161,674 Indigenous Peoples—and conserving 1,434,061 hectares (Cuenca et al., 2018).[95]
- **Coverage of Fragile Ecosystems:** Fully 98 percent of enrolled lands lie within high-risk ecosystems, making PSB a cornerstone of Ecuador's REDD+ strategy to reduce deforestation and forest degradation.[94]
- **Effectiveness:** Independent evaluations using matched-area comparisons from 2008–2014 found average deforestation reductions of 1.5 percent on enrolled lands—rising to 3.4 percent for individual contracts versus 1 percent for collective ones.[94] PSB's avoided deforestation translates into significant carbon storage (estimated at 722 million t CO_2equiv).[94]
- **Funding:** Originally government-funded, PSB now attracts international co-financing: KfW has contributed €21.5 million (often as part of broader environmental portfolios), the Global Environment Facility's projects have supported complementary initiatives, and the World Bank is backing a US $55 million REDD+ project.[96] Annual payments hovered around €7 million as of 2021.[96] Despite this, only about 8 percent of over US $200 million in climate finance since 2009 reached Indigenous Peoples and local communities directly, highlighting gaps in equitable fund distribution.[101]
- **Challenges:** PSB faces administrative hurdles—delays in payment disbursement tied to budget cycles, complex land-tenure requirements that exclude some communities, and logistical difficulties in verifying conservation compliance across remote landscapes.[96] It also struggles to incorporate secondary forests near populated areas and to ensure robust participation and free, prior, informed consent for Indigenous groups.[101]

Socio Bosque remains a critical state mechanism that links forest protection to rural livelihoods, providing a non-tourism-dependent revenue stream. To realize its full potential and align with Ecuador's sustainable development objectives, the program must address funding consistency, streamline administration, lower participation barriers, and strengthen equitable benefit sharing.[94]

Key Takeaways from Sections 10.5 – 10.6: Premier Birding Routes & Destinations
• Six national circuits connect distinct ecosystems: Chocó, Andes, Amazon, Coast, Highlands, Galápagos • Mindo, Yasuní, Antisana, the Galápagos, and Jocotoco reserves offer world-class birding infrastructure • Improved transport links (air, road, canoe) make rapid, multi-zone visits feasible

VII. Ecuador's Blueprint: Integrating Conservation, Community, and Policy

10.7 Analyzing the Integrated Framework

Ecuador's approach to reconciling biodiversity conservation with economic growth—especially through birdwatching tourism—has emerged organically rather than from a single blueprint. Over time, a dynamic interplay has formed among innovative environmental laws, a mix of public and private conservation efforts, active participation by Indigenous Peoples and local communities, and a responsive private sector. Despite ongoing implementation hurdles, Ecuador's multifaceted model warrants close attention from other megadiverse nations seeking to balance nature protection and development.

10.7.1 National Policy and Legal Framework

In 2008, Ecuador broke new ground by embedding the Rights of Nature in its Constitution (Articles 71–74), granting ecosystems the inalienable rights to exist, persist, and regenerate (Acosta, 2013). This unprecedented legal shift has resonated globally in environmental law (Guzmán, 2019; Tanasescu, 2013). Building on this foundation, Ecuador has enacted core legislation—the Forestry and Natural Areas and Wildlife Conservation Law, the Organic Environmental Code—and detailed regulations for protected areas and sustainable tourism. The Ministry of Environment, Water and Ecological Transition (MAATE) oversees these frameworks, guided by national plans such as "Creación de Oportunidades 2021–2025," which embeds ecological transition across all sectors (MAATE, 2021).

10.7.2 Diverse Conservation Mechanisms

Ecuador's conservation system is a mosaic of state parks, NGO reserves, and community-managed lands. The National System of Protected Areas (SNAP) covers roughly 16–17% of the country, including iconic parks like Yasuní, Galápagos, Podocarpus, Antisana, and Sangay (MAATE, 2023). Beyond state lands, organizations such as Fundación Jocotoco and Aves y Conservación safeguard micro-endemic bird species and steward Important Bird Areas (IBAs), while also conducting monitoring and environmental education. Launched in 2008, the Socio Bosque Program—a major Payments for Ecosystem Services initiative—offers financial rewards for forest and páramo conservation; studies indicate it cut deforestation by 1.4–1.5% between 2000 and 2014, with even greater gains on individually managed plots (Cuenca et al., 2018). Tools like Key Biodiversity Areas (KBAs) and IBAs further help prioritize the most vulnerable landscapes (Donald et al., 2019).

10.7.3 Community Involvement and Indigenous Governance

Recognizing that conservation succeeds only with local custodianship, Ecuador integrates Indigenous Peoples and local communities into its strategy. Legal recognition of ancestral territories—such as the Waorani Ethnic Reserve—co-management arrangements, and inclusion in Socio Bosque and IBA stewardship reflect this commitment. Community-based tourism initiatives have flourished in Tena, Puyo, Cotacachi, and the Napo and Zamora-Chinchipe provinces, offering alternative livelihoods while promoting cultural exchange and biodiversity awareness (Schwartzman & Zimmerman, 2005; Nyaupane & Poudel, 2011). Yet many Afro-Ecuadorian and remote Indigenous groups still face barriers—particularly land-tenure requirements—to fully benefit from incentive programs (Larson & Soto, 2008; Larson & Ribot, 2004).

10.7.4 Avitourism and the Private Sector

Ecuador's avitourism industry, built on one of the highest bird-species densities worldwide—over 1,700 species, or about 16% of global diversity—is internationally renowned (BirdLife International, 2023). Private-sector partners—lodges, tour operators, local guides, and conservation enterprises—play dual roles: driving local economies and reinvesting in habitat protection and community projects. Signature sites like Bellavista Cloud Forest, Buenaventura Reserve, and Wildsumaco Lodge not only offer expert-led birding but also channel revenues into ongoing conservation and development efforts (Sekercioglu, 2002).

10.7.5 Strengths and Challenges of the Integrated Framework

Strengths

- **Legal Innovation:** Ecuador's constitutional recognition of Nature's rights is globally unique and influential (Acosta, 2013; Guzmán, 2019).
- **Effective PES Scheme:** Socio Bosque has demonstrable environmental outcomes, serving as a regional benchmark (Cuenca et al., 2018).
- **NGO and Private Sector Engagement:** NGOs and local lodges effectively address critical conservation gaps.
- **Empowerment of Communities:** CBT and PES projects in multiple regions provide new income pathways and conservation incentives.
- **Ecological Branding:** Ecuador is globally recognized as a premier avitourism destination.

Challenges

- **Coordination Weaknesses:** Misalignment among MAATE, the Ministry of Tourism, and other bodies impedes effective implementation (Wunder et al., 2020).
- **Enforcement Deficiencies:** Protected areas face enforcement shortfalls due to funding and geographic constraints.
- **Funding Instability:** Conservation finance depends heavily on external sources, making programs like SBP vulnerable.
- **Social Exclusion:** Tenure documentation requirements restrict access to PES and conservation funding (Larson & Ribot, 2004).
- **Conflict with Extractivism:** Extractive activities such as mining and oil exploitation often receive stronger political backing than conservation (Guzmán, 2019).

10.7.6. Evaluating Specific Issues

Deforestation Reduction through Socio Bosque

SBP's impact on forest preservation is statistically significant, especially in the Amazonian and Chocó bioregions. While its 1.4–1.5% reduction might seem small, in spatial and long-term terms, the effect is substantial (Cuenca et al., 2018).

Carbon Storage Potential

Ecuador's forests are estimated to store up to 722 million tons of CO_2 equivalent, reinforcing the case for REDD+ and carbon offsetting strategies (Angelsen, 2009). However, updated assessments are needed using spatially explicit data and revised baselines.

Climate Finance Equity

Of the US$200+ million received for climate mitigation since 2009, only 8% has reportedly been directed to IPLCs (FAO & UNDP, 2021). Socio Bosque and related mechanisms would benefit from more transparent audits of benefit-sharing mechanisms.

Key Takeaways from Section 10.7: Economic & Community Impacts

- Avitourism contributed an estimated US $922 million in 2025 forecasts and supports ~700 000 jobs
- Case studies (Tandayapa, Mashpi, Yachana, Kichwa Pathfinder) illustrate both benefits and equity challenges

- High-spending birders catalyze rural diversification away from extractive livelihoods

10.8. Lessons Learned: Successes, Challenges, and Replicability

10.8.1. Successes

- Viable PES models with verified conservation results.
- Branding of Ecuador as a high-yield avitourism destination.
- Strong NGO infrastructure and reserve network (e.g., Jocotoco).
- Empowerment of communities through CBT in high-biodiversity areas.
- Groundbreaking legal reforms advancing global conservation discourse.

10.8.2. Challenges and Areas for Improvement

- Financial diversification to reduce donor dependency.
- Inclusive governance ensuring IPLC leadership.
- Strengthened inter-ministerial coordination and decentralization.
- Landscape-level planning balancing conservation and extractive sectors.
- Monitoring frameworks with participatory indicators and impact metrics.

10.8.3 Replicability

Ecuador's model is not one-size-fits-all. Replication depends on enabling political, legal, ecological, and institutional conditions. Adaptation must ensure local ownership and cultural contextualization (Scherr et al., 2004).

10.8.4 Fostering Stewardship: The Role of Responsible Birding

Responsible birdwatching lies at the heart of sustainable avitourism. Adhering to ethical guidelines—such as refraining from using playback near active nests, honoring local traditions, employing high-quality optics and minimal-disturbance approaches, promptly reporting any illegal activities, and sharing observations through citizen-science platforms like eBird—helps minimize impacts on wildlife while enriching collective knowledge (Sullivan et al., 2009).

The map titled *Mapa del Sistema Nacional de Áreas Protegidas (SNAP)* offers a detailed, up-to-date cartographic representation of Ecuador's 47 official protected-area units. Drawing on the Ministerio del Ambiente's January 2015 data, INEC's 2012 statistics, and the national inventory of Patrimonio de Áreas Naturales del Estado, it employs the WGS-84 datum with a UTM Zone 17S projection. Published at a scale of 1:1,500,000 (base cartography at 1:250,000) in May 2016, and later redigitized by Parks and Tribes and Cofan Lodge, the map is available at https://www.nationalparks-worldwide.com/sam/ecuador/map-ecuador-national-parks.jpg. It distinguishes multiple categories—National Parks, Biological Reserves, Geobotanical Reserves, Ecological Reserves, Marine Reserves, National Recreation Areas, Fauna Production Reserves, Wildlife Refuges, and Ecological Conservation Areas—each reflecting tailored management goals that together safeguard Ecuador's extraordinary continental and insular biodiversity.

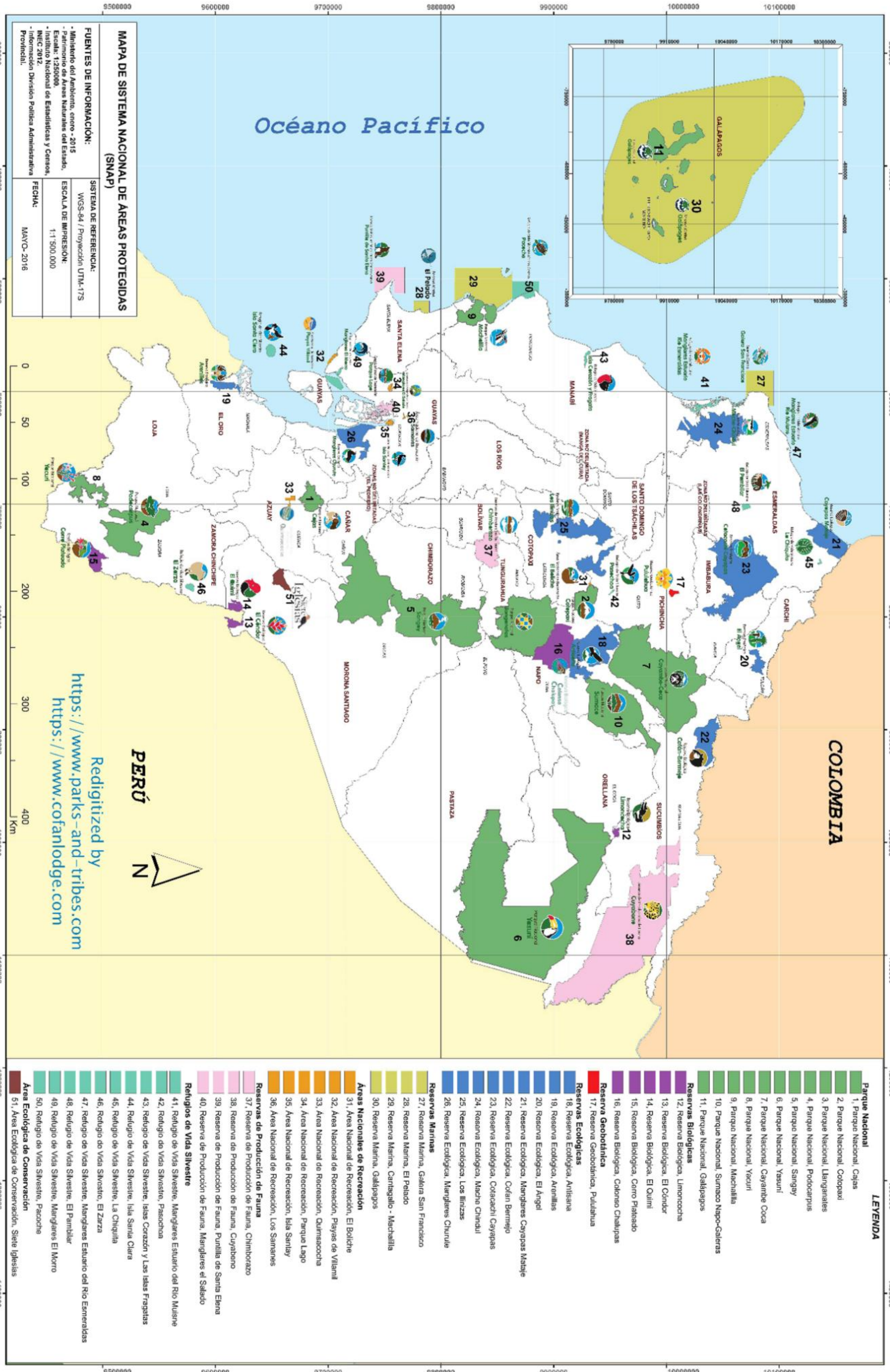


Fig. 10.5 - Conservation Areas by Category – SNAP, Ecuador.

Figure 10.5 – Map Description/Caption:

ECUADOR'S CONSERVATION AREAS BY CATEGORY
(*Sistema Nacional de Áreas Protegidas* - SNAP)

NATIONAL PARKS (Parque Nacional)

1. Cajas
2. Cotopaxi
3. Llanganates
4. Podocarpus
5. Sangay
6. Yasuni
7. Cayambe Coca
8. Yacuri
9. Machalilla
10. Sumaco Napo-Galeras
11. Galápagos
12. Cotacachi Cayapas*

**(On May 7, 2019, the Cotacachi-Cayapas Ecological Reserve was officially reclassified as a National Park under Ministerial Agreement No. 072, in accordance with Ecuador's Organic Environmental Code-COA).*

BIOLOGICAL RESERVES (Reserva Biológica)

12. Limoncocha
13. El Cóndor
14. El Quimi
15. Colonso Chalupas

GEOBOTANICAL RESERVE (Reserva Geobotánica)

16. Pululahua

ECOLOGICAL RESERVES (Reserva Ecológica)

17. Antisana
18. El Ángel
19. Manglares Cayapas Mataje
20. Los Ilinizas
21. Manglares Churute

MARINE RESERVES (Reserva Marina)

23. Galera San Francisco
24. El Pelado
25. Cartagelto - Machalilla
26. Galápagos

NATIONAL RECREATION AREAS (Área Nacional de Recreación)

27. El Boliche
28. Playas de Villamil
29. Quimsacocha
30. Parque Lago
31. Isla Santay
32. Las Samanes

FAUNA PRODUCTION RESERVES (Reserva de Producción de Fauna)

33. Chimborazo
34. Cuyabeno
35. Puntilla de Santa Elena
36. Manglares el Salado

1.

WILDLIFE REFUGES (Refugio de Vida Silvestre)

37. Estuario Río Muisne
38. Isla Corazón & Fragatas
39. La Chiquita
40. La Envidia
41. Isla Santa Clara
42. El Zarza
43. Pasochoa
44. Manglares El Morro
45. Estuario Río Esmeraldas
46. Pacoche

47. Siete Iglesias

TOTAL DESIGNATED SITES: 47

10.8.5. Birdwatching Tourism in the Ecuador's *Sistema Nacional de Áreas Protegidas (SNAP)*

Ecuador's National System of Protected Areas (SNAP) stands among Latin America's most ecologically vital and institutionally varied networks. Covering more than 16 percent of the country's land, SNAP encompasses diverse ecosystems—from Amazonian lowland rainforest and Andean cloud forests to coastal mangroves and the Galápagos Islands—each renowned for high levels of endemism and species of global conservation concern. SNAP units are organized into categories such as Parques Nacionales (National Parks), Reservas Biológicas (Biological Reserves), Reservas Ecológicas (Ecological Reserves), Reservas Marinas (Marine Reserves), and Refugios de Vida Silvestre (Wildlife Refuges), among others. All are granted legal protection under the Organic Environmental Code and reinforced by Ecuador's 2008 constitutional recognition of the Rights of Nature, which accords ecosystems the right to exist and regenerate (Acosta, 2013).

Within this protected-area framework, avitourism—nature-based tourism focused on birdwatching—has emerged as a powerful mechanism for funding conservation and fostering community development. With over 1,700 recorded bird species—more than 15 percent of the world's total—Ecuador ranks among the top global destinations for birdwatchers (BirdLife International, 2023). Many SNAP sites, including Yasuní National Park, Podocarpus, Antisana, and the Galápagos marine reserves, are officially designated Important Bird and Biodiversity Areas (IBAs) and Key Biodiversity Areas (KBAs), making them prime locations for specialized birding tours. Revenue from park entry fees, guiding services, and associated hospitality ventures not only supports on-the-ground conservation efforts but also incentivizes habitat protection and scientific monitoring. Moreover, avitourism strengthens ties with Indigenous Peoples and local communities through participatory initiatives—such as the national Socio Bosque payment-for-ecosystem-services program and community-based tourism schemes—advancing multiple Sustainable Development Goals, from poverty reduction and gender equity to biodiversity conservation. While challenges remain in ensuring equitable benefit sharing, improving infrastructure, and coordinating across environmental and tourism agencies, SNAP continues to provide both a template for conservation excellence and a foundation for responsible tourism in one of the planet's richest biodiversity hotspots.

10.8.6. Planning and Sustainability Challenges

While birdwatching tourism is often seen as a low-impact, environmentally friendly form of travel, its growth presents planning and sustainability challenges that must be carefully managed. One challenge is ensuring that increased visitation does not inadvertently harm the very bird species and habitats that tourists come to see. Even well-meaning birders can cause stress to wildlife if guidelines are not in place – for example, excessive use of playback (recorded bird calls to lure birds), getting too close to nests, or trampling sensitive habitat off-trail. To address this, many destinations and birding tour operators have adopted codes of conduct that promote ethical birding (e.g., maintaining distance, limiting group size, using guides who enforce rules) (Kruger & Viljoen, 2023). Protected area managers often have to consider the carrying capacity for popular birding sites: how many visitors can an area accommodate per day or per season without ecological degradation? In regions like the Andes where some bird habitats (like cloud forests) are delicate, controlling visitor flow through permit systems or guided access may be necessary to minimize disturbance.

Another aspect is the potential environmental footprint of travel. Long-haul flights and vehicle use in remote areas mean that international birding tourism has a carbon footprint to reckon with. While this is not an impact on local habitats per se, it raises the importance of sustainable practices to offset or minimize emissions (some birding companies contribute to carbon offset programs or tie trips to conservation donations) (MacArthur Foundation, 2018). On the ground, ensuring that tourism infrastructure (lodges, trails) is developed with minimal clearing of habitat and that waste is managed properly is part of sustainability planning. The goal is to integrate avitourism with conservation so that increased tourism leads to stronger protection for birds, rather than unintended harm.

Effective community engagement is also a vital planning element. Many high-biodiversity birding areas in Colombia, Ecuador, and Peru overlap with rural communities, including indigenous territories. Involving these communities in tourism planning helps ensure that they receive benefits and take active roles in stewardship. This can reduce pressures like habitat destruction – if locals see that a live bird is more valuable for tourism than a trapped or hunted one, they have incentive to conserve. Indeed, Colombia's national avitourism strategy explicitly aims to integrate local communities and encourage their leadership in guiding and hospitality, as a means to align economic and conservation interests (MacArthur Foundation, 2018). Similarly, avitourism projects in Peru's Amazon or Ecuador's cloud forests often form partnerships with local people, training them as guides or lodge operators, thereby spreading awareness about the importance of preserving bird habitats. Planning for sustainability also involves long-term monitoring and adaptive management. Authorities and researchers keep track of tourism's impacts on bird populations (for instance, monitoring if nesting success is affected at frequently visited sites) and on communities (ensuring equitable benefit distribution). If negative trends are detected, management strategies can be adjusted – for example, temporarily closing a trail during breeding season, or providing alternative sites to spread out tourist pressure. Fortunately, avitourism tends to attract visitors who are conservation-minded by nature, and many birders are supportive of regulations that protect birds (even if it means restricting their own access at times). This synergy between birder interests and conservation goals is a strength of avitourism, but it does not eliminate the need for careful planning by governments and NGOs. The emphasis, as echoed by researchers and policymakers, is on sustainable practices that minimize environmental impacts while maximizing social and economic benefits (Kruger & Viljoen, 2023; MacArthur Foundation, 2018). Achieving this balance is an ongoing challenge, requiring collaboration across tourism authorities, wildlife agencies, local stakeholders, and the birding community.

Key Takeaways from Section 10.8: Socio Bosque Payments-for-Ecosystem-Services

- PSB enrolled ~1.5 million ha under 2 748 agreements, benefiting over 173 000 stakeholders
- Achieved average deforestation reduction of 1.5–3.4 % versus matched controls
- Administrative delays and tenure barriers hinder full equitable reach

10.9. Infrastructure and Resource Needs for Quality Birdwatching Experiences: Challenges for the Public and Private Sectors

Delivering high-quality birdwatching experience requires more than just abundant birds; it hinges on supportive infrastructure and skilled human resources. Specialized guiding services are arguably the most critical resource. Unlike general tourists, birders strongly prefer guides who are expert at bird identification (by sight and call), know the local hotspots, and understand how to find secretive species. The availability of well-trained local birding guides can make or break a destination's reputation in the birding community. Recognizing this, countries like Colombia have invested in training programs for local bird guides as part of their avitourism development (MacArthur Foundation, 2018). Such programs not only improve the visitor experience but also create employment for local residents as guides or "nature trail experts" in their communities (MacArthur Foundation, 2018). In Malaysia, a study by Kumar and Khen (2020) showed that high service quality – including knowledgeable guides, reliable transportation, comfortable lodging, and good customer service – significantly increases visitor satisfaction and the destination's image among birders, in turn boosting their loyalty and likelihood of repeat visits (Kumar & Khen, 2020). In short, birders are often discerning travelers who notice details; thus, elevating service standards (from guide expertise to lodge meals) is essential in avitourism.

Apart from guides, the physical infrastructure supporting birdwatching must be considered. Key needs include:

- **Accessible Birding Trails and Sites:** Well-maintained trails or boardwalks that lead through bird-rich habitats (e.g., forest trails, wetlands boardwalks) allow birders to reach observation spots safely and with minimal habitat disturbance. Many top birding destinations have created dedicated birding routes (for example, Ecuador has a network of avitourism routes nationwide) (Ministerio de Turismo de Ecuador, 2018) and even observation towers or hides in prime locations.
- **Amenities and Facilities:** Basic facilities such as canopy towers, bird blinds (hides), viewing platforms, and visitor centers enhance the experience by enabling closer, more comfortable observation of birds. Additionally, having field guides (books) and species checklists available for visitors, and amenities like rest areas or hides, contributes to a positive experience.
- **Accommodation and Local Services:** Birders often seek lodges or hotels strategically located near key birding areas (for early pre-dawn starts). Lodges that cater to birders may offer early breakfasts, packable lunches, and even bird feeders on-site to attract hummingbirds or other species for easy viewing. The growth of avitourism in remote areas has spurred investment in small ecolodges and homestays, which not only serve tourists but also benefit local communities economically (MacArthur Foundation, 2018).
- **Transportation and Access:** Good transportation infrastructure (roads, bridges) is crucial to access remote birding hotspots. Many biodiverse areas are hard to reach; improving road access (while balancing environmental concerns) can open up new sites for tourism. In the absence of roads, some tours use boats or small aircraft – making safe transport options important. As Echeverri et al. (2022) noted, even in biodiversity-rich regions, poor accessibility can limit tourism; investments in infrastructure are needed alongside conservation to realize avitourism potential.
- **Information and Communications:** Modern birders increasingly rely on digital resources (e.g., eBird, birding apps) for information on recent sightings and site guides. Ensuring internet or cell coverage in key sites can be valuable. Additionally,

clear signage, maps of birding trails, and interpretation materials (boards describing local birds) enrich the experience and education of visitors.

Investing in these infrastructure and resource areas has direct payoffs. A well-supported birding destination leads to satisfied visitors who not only spread positive word-of-mouth among the birding community but also tend to stay longer and spend more. Importantly, involving local communities in these services – as guides, lodge owners, transport providers – helps distribute the economic benefits. As one study pointed out, if avitourism is developed fully, local people gain employment as guides and nature experts, linking economic incentives to conservation of bird habitats (MacArthur Foundation, 2018). Conversely, neglecting infrastructure (for example, lack of trained guides or poor facilities) can result in missed opportunities: birders may skip a country or site if they hear that logistics are too difficult or that the support on the ground is subpar. Thus, strategic planning and investment in avitourism infrastructure is considered a cornerstone of developing this niche tourism in a sustainable, community-friendly way.

Key Takeaways from Section 10.9: Infrastructure & Sustainability

- Expert guides, well-maintained trails, hides, and lodging are critical for quality experiences
- Ethical codes (limited playback, group size control) and carrying-capacity planning reduce disturbance
- Digital tools (eBird, apps) and reliable transport/internet boost birder satisfaction

VIII. Conclusion

10.10. Sustaining Ecuador's Legacy as a Global Avitourism Leader

Birdwatching tourism in the Andean countries such as Ecuador has become a vibrant and growing sector, fueled by unmatched bird diversity and a passionate global birding community. The global trends point to avitourism's rise as a significant niche, with millions of birders contributing billions of dollars to economies, and South America stands out as a major beneficiary of this boom. Endemic and rare species act as key attractions, essentially natural capital that draws visitors seeking unique sightings (Steven et al., 2015; Daru et al., 2020). We see that birdwatchers are not a monolithic group but have diverse profiles – from hardcore listers ("twitchers") to casual nature lovers – and understanding these segments is crucial for catering to their needs. Ecuador rightly boasts a world-leading reputation in avian biodiversity and birdwatching tourism. This remarkable achievement is founded on its extraordinary natural wealth— 1,736 bird species inhabit a mosaic of interlinked habitat zones that range from the lush Amazonian lowlands to the misty high-Andean páramo and the inimitable Galápagos archipelago. Such "natural capital" has been strategically harnessed through an array of specialized tourism amenities: an interconnected network of national birding routes, a selection of top-tier eco-lodges, and a robust system of national parks enriched by numerous private and community-managed reserves.[2] To deliver quality experiences, destinations must invest in infrastructure and human resources: expert guides, well-maintained trails, birder-friendly facilities, and accessible information all contribute to satisfaction and positive destination image (Kumar & Khen, 2020; MacArthur Foundation, 2018). At the same time, it is evident that avitourism development must be guided by sustainability principles. Proper planning and management can mitigate environmental impacts, ensuring that increased tourism does not disturb bird habitats and instead supports conservation (Kruger & Viljoen, 2023; MacArthur Foundation, 2018).

The experiences of leading birding nations provide valuable lessons. Colombia's strategic approach, Ecuador's early adoption of avitourism planning, and Peru's innovative promotional efforts all highlight the importance of national-level support and community involvement in building a successful avitourism sector. These case studies show that when done thoughtfully, birdwatching tourism can create a win-win scenario: travelers gain unforgettable experiences and destination countries gain not only economic revenue but also stronger incentives to protect their natural heritage. In regions like the Andes, where biodiversity is both a treasure and a responsibility, avitourism offers a pathway to sustainable development that celebrates and conserves the very resources it depends on. Going forward, continued research (e.g., on tourist behavior, species disturbance, and economic impacts) will be important to guide policy. Research tells us a lot about birdwatching tourism. Studies show what different birdwatchers are like (Kruger & Viljoen, 2023), what kind of service they expect (Steven et al., 2015), and how important local wildlife is (Echeverri et al., 2022). This information helps businesses and planners improve birdwatching tours and services. If countries with lots of wildlife use these findings, they can make sure that birdwatching tourism helps protect nature and benefits local people in the future.

National initiatives like Socio Bosque further exemplify Ecuador's forward-thinking approach, directly linking conservation incentives to rural livelihoods.[94] Together, these elements have given rise to a vibrant avitourism sector that not only draws birdwatchers from around the globe but also positions Ecuador at the forefront of biodiversity-driven sustainable development.[13] Yet beneath this success lies a series of pressing challenges that threaten its durability. Widespread habitat loss and fragmentation—driven by agricultural clearing, timber extraction, mineral exploitation, and expanding infrastructure—continue to imperil some of the country's most unique and endangered ecosystems, notably the endemic-rich Chocó and Tumbesian lowlands.[8] Securing reliable funding and streamlining administration for cornerstone programs like Socio Bosque remain ongoing hurdles.[94] Equally crucial is the quest for genuine social equity: ensuring that the financial rewards of both tourism and conservation flow equitably to Indigenous and local communities, thereby contributing tangibly to poverty reduction and community well-being. This goal demands continual refinement of existing models (de Koning et al., 2011), stronger governance frameworks, improved coordination among environmental and tourism agencies, and steadfast enforcement of regulations amid competing economic pressures.[6] Adding to the complexity, the accelerating impacts of climate change—altering precipitation patterns, shifting species' ranges, and stressing fragile habitats—require adaptive planning informed by the latest ecological and socio-economic monitoring.[26]

Looking forward, Ecuador stands as a living laboratory for how countries can chart a path toward sustainable development grounded in natural capital. Its future leadership will depend on proactive strategies: sustained investment in its protected-area network, ongoing support for dynamic programs like Socio Bosque, and amplified backing for private and community-based conservation efforts. Equally important is forging genuine partnerships among government bodies, NGOs, private enterprises, and especially Indigenous and local communities—guided by transparency, equity, and collaborative decision-making. Through adaptive management—underpinned by rigorous, integrated monitoring of environmental and social indicators[78]—Ecuador can refine its approaches and build resilience. While the country's integrated model offers valuable lessons for other megadiverse nations, its own experience underscores that success requires perpetual vigilance, a willingness to adapt, and an unwavering commitment to safeguard its irreplaceable natural heritage while promoting shared prosperity. By capitalizing on its strengths and confronting its challenges head-on, Ecuador can cement its status not only as a bucket-list destination for bird enthusiasts but as a global exemplar of conservation innovation well into the 21st century.

Key Takeaways from Section 10.10: Conclusions & Lessons Learned

- Ecuador's integrated model blends legal innovation, PES, NGO reserves, and community engagement
- Replicable elements include robust IBAs/KBAs, Socio Bosque, and public-private partnerships
- Ongoing challenges: cross-agency coordination, equitable benefit-sharing, climate adaptation, and sustainable financing

References

Acosta, A. (2013). *El Buen Vivir: Sumak Kawsay, una oportunidad para imaginar otros mundos*. Ediciones Abya-Yala.

Anchundia, D., Huyvaert, K. P., & Anderson, D. J. (2014). Chronic lack of breeding by Galápagos Blue-footed Boobies and associated population decline. *Avian Conservation and Ecology, 9*(1), Article 6. https://doi.org/10.5751/ACE-00650-090106

Angelsen, A. (2009). *Realising REDD+: National strategy and policy options*. CIFOR.

Aves y Conservación. (n.d.). *Kinti Toisán Reserve: A new site for the conservation of the Black-breasted Puffleg and other bird diversity in the Chocó-Andes region*. Retrieved April 14, 2025, from https://avesconservacion.org/kinti-toisan-reserve-a-new-site-for-the-conservation-of-the-black-breasted-puffleg-and-other-bird-diversity-in-the-choco-andes-region/

BirdLife International (2021). Species factsheet: Blue-footed Booby *Sula nebouxii*. Downloaded from https://datazone.birdlife.org/species/factsheet/blue-footed-booby-sula-nebouxii on 04/05/2025.

BirdLife International (2020). Species factsheet: Andean Condor *Vultur gryphus*. Downloaded from https://datazone.birdlife.org/species/factsheet/andean-condor-vultur-gryphus on 04/05/2025

BirdLife International (2020). Species factsheet: Lilacine Amazon *Amazona lilacina*. Downloaded from https://datazone.birdlife.org/species/factsheet/lilacine-amazon-amazona-lilacina on 04/05/2025

BirdLife International (2025) IUCN Red List for birds. Downloaded from https://datazone.birdlife.org on 04/05/2025

Cartay, R., Mayoral-Izaguirre, M., & Izaguirre-Mayoral, M. L. (2020). Revisión y visión prospectiva del aviturismo en Ecuador. *Gestión Turística*, 8–26. https://doi.org/10.4206/gest.tur.2020.n34-01

Chapman, F. M. (1926). *The distribution of bird-life in Ecuador: A contribution to a study of the origin of Andean bird-life* (Bulletin of the American Museum of Natural History, Vol. 55, pp. 1–784). American Museum of Natural History.

Charles Darwin Foundation. (n.d.). *Biocontrol of the avian vampire fly*. https://www.darwinfoundation.org/en/our-work/land/biocontrol-of-avian-vampire-fly/

Conservation Birding. (n.d.). *Buenaventura Reserve*. https://conservationbirding.org/?reserve=buenaventura-reserve

Croes, R., & Rivera, M. (2017). Tourism potential to benefit the poor: A social accounting matrix model applied to Ecuador. *Tourism Economics, 23*(1), 29–48. https://doi.org/10.5367/te.2015.0495

Cuenca, P., Robalino, J., Arriagada, R., & Echeverría, C. (2018). Are government incentives effective for avoided deforestation in the tropical Andean forest? *PLoS ONE, 13*(9), e0203545. https://doi.org/10.1371/journal.pone.0203545

Darwin Foundation. (n.d.). *Geospiza fortis Gould, 1837*. Darwin Foundation Data Zone. https://datazone.darwinfoundation.org/en/checklist/?species=5094

de Koning, F., Aguinaga, M., Bravo, M., Chiu, M., Lascano, M., Lozada, T., & Suarez, L. (2011). Bridging the gap between forest conservation and poverty alleviation: The Ecuadorian Socio Bosque program. *Environmental Science & Policy, 14*(5), 531–542. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.envsci.2011.04.007

Donald, P. F., Fishpool, L. D. C., Ajagbe, A., Bennun, L. A., Bunting, G., Burfield, I. J., … Wege, D. C. (2019). Important Bird and Biodiversity Areas (IBAs): The development and characteristics of a global inventory of key sites for biodiversity. *Bird Conservation International, 29*(2), 177–198. https://doi.org/10.1017/S0959270918000102

Earth.Org. (2024, June 26). *Private conservation and ecotourism: A case study of rural development in Ecuador*. https://earth.org/private-conservation-and-ecotourism-a-case-study-of-rural-development-in-ecuador/

Echeverri, A., Smith, J. R., MacArthur-Waltz, D., & Lauck, K. S. (2022). Biodiversity and infrastructure interact to drive tourism to and within Costa Rica. *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences*, *119*(11), e2107662119. https://doi.org/10.1073/pnas.2107662119

Ecuador Explorer. (n.d.). *Ecuador's faunal zones*. https://ecuadorexplorer.com/html/faunal_zones.html

FAO & UNDP. (2021). *Forest-related finance flows and equity: State of the World's Forests 2021*. UN Environment Programme.

Freile, J. F., Brinkhuizen, D. M., Greenfield, P. J., Krabbe, N., Lysinger, M., Navarrete, L., Nilsson, J., Olmstead, S., Ridgely, R. S., Sánchez-Nivicela, M., Solano-Ugalde, A., Athanas, N., Ahlman, R., & Boyla, K. A. (2024). *Lista de las aves del Ecuador / Checklist of the birds of Ecuador*. Comité Ecuatoriano de Registros Ornitológicos. https://ceroecuador.wordpress.com/

Freile, J. F., Cisneros-Heredia, D. F., Santander, T., Boyla, K. A., & Díaz, D. (2010). Important Bird Areas of the Neotropics: Ecuador. *Neotropical Birding*, (7), 5. https://www.neotropicalbirdclub.org/wp-content/downloads/NeoBird7-Freile.pdf

Fundación Jocotoco. (n.d.). *Our reserves*. https://www.jocotoco.org.ec/web2/EN/reserves

Global Conservation. (n.d.). *Yasuní National Park, Ecuador*. https://globalconservation.org/projects/yasuni-national-park-ecuador/

GlobalForestWatch. (2019, April 2). *Endemic Bird Areas*. https://data.globalforestwatch.org/documents/4eea031c5a2e4a7cbebbd2e8b7447fa0

Go With Guide. (2025). *Tourism in Ecuador statistics 2025: Travel trends from the center of the Earth*. https://gowithguide.com/blog/tourism-in-ecuador-statistics-2025-travel-trends-from-the-center-of-the-earth-5812

Google Arts & Culture. (n.d.). *Galapagos Islands*. https://www.google.com/intl/en-GB/maps/about/behind-the-scenes/streetview/treks/galapagos-islands/

Greenfield, P., Rodríguez, O., Krohnke, B., & Campbell, I. (2006). *Estrategia nacional para el manejo y desarrollo sostenible del aviturismo en Ecuador*. Ministerio de Turismo, Corpei, & Mindo Cloudforest Foundation. https://docplayer.es/6569692-Estrategia-nacional-para-el-manejo-y-desarrollo-sostenible-del-aviturismo-en-ecuador.html

Greeney, H. F. (2018). Book review: *Birds of Ecuador*. *Ornitología Neotropical, 30*, 260–261.

Greeney, H. F., Angulo, F., Dobbs, R. C., Crespo, S., Miller, E. T., Cáceres, D., & Salagaje, L. A. (2020). Notes on the breeding biology of the Tumbesian avifauna in southwest Ecuador and northwest Peru. *Revista Ecuatoriana de Ornitología, 6*, 1–54. https://doi.org/10.18272/reo.vi6.1146

Guzmán, J. J. (2019). Decolonizing law and expanding human rights: Indigenous conceptions and the rights of nature in Ecuador. *Revista Deusto de Derechos Humanos, (4)*, 59–86. https://doi.org/10.18543/djhr-4-2019pp59-86

Hilty, S. L., & Brown, W. L. (1986). *A guide to the birds of Colombia*. Princeton University Press.

IFEMA. (January, 2024). *Interview with Ecuador's Minister of Tourism, Niels Olsen: FITUR Partner Country 2024*. https://www.ifema.es/en/fitur/news/interview-minister-tourism-ecuador-niels-olsen

INTERLACE Project. (n.d.). *Socio Bosque Program, Ecuador*. https://interlace-hub.com/socio-bosque-program-ecuador

IUCN. (2020). *Vultur gryphus*. The IUCN Red List of Threatened Species 2020: e.T22697641A181325230. https://www.iucnredlist.org/

IUCN. (2021). *Harpia harpyja*. The IUCN Red List of Threatened Species 2021. https://www.iucnredlist.org/es/species/22695998/197957213

Kroger, E. (2021). *Bird diversity in the Ecuadorian Chocó: A proposal for avitourism in Villaflora and Manduriacu Reserve* [Independent study project, School for International Training]. SIT Digital Collections. https://digitalcollections.sit.edu/isp_collection/3430

Kruger, M., & Viljoen, A. (2023). Bird(er)s of a feather? A typology of birders to South African national parks based on their behavioural involvement. *Annals of Leisure Research*, *26*(1), 1-26. https://doi.org/10.1080/11745398.2020.1813041

Kumar, D. M., Govindarajo, N. S., & Khen, M. H. S. (2020). Effect of service quality on visitor satisfaction, destination image and destination loyalty – Practical, theoretical and policy implications to avitourism. *International Journal of Culture, Tourism and Hospitality Research, 14*(1), 83–101. https://doi.org/10.1108/IJCTHR-04-2019-0066

Larson, A. M., & Soto, F. (2008). Decentralization of natural resource governance regimes. *Annual Review of Environment and Resources, 33*, 213–239. https://doi.org/10.1146/annurev.environ.33.020607.095522

Larson, A. M., & Ribot, J. C. (2004). Democratic decentralisation through a natural resource lens: An introduction. *The European Journal of Development Research, 16*(1), 1–25. https://doi.org/10.1080/09578810410001688707

MAATE. (2021). *Plan Nacional de Desarrollo: Creación de Oportunidades 2021–2025*. Quito: Ministerio del Ambiente, Agua y Transición Ecológica.

MAATE. (2023). *Sistema Nacional de Áreas Protegidas del Ecuador (SNAP).* https://www.ambiente.gob.ec

Ministerio de Turismo del Ecuador. (2012, August 30). **Conservación de aves y sus hábitats se analizan en Reunión Ecuatoriana de Ornitología**. Retrieved May 5, 2025, from https://www.turismo.gob.ec/conservacion-de-aves-y-sus-habitats-se-analizan-en-reunion-ecuatoriana-de-ornitologia/

Naveda-Rodríguez, A. (2015). Conservation status of diurnal raptors in Venezuela. *Journal of Raptor Research, 49*(4), 441–449. https://doi.org/10.3356/rapt-49-04-441-449.1

Nyaupane, G. P., & Poudel, S. (2011). Linkages among biodiversity, livelihood, and tourism. *Annals of Tourism Research, 38*(4), 1344–1366. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.annals.2011.03.006

Ridgely, R. S., & Greenfield, P. J. (2001). *The birds of Ecuador*. Cornell University Press.

Scherr, S. J., White, A., & Khare, A. (2004). *For services rendered: The current status and future potential of markets for the ecosystem services provided by tropical forests*. ITTO.

Schwartzman, S., & Zimmerman, B. (2005). Conservation alliances with Indigenous peoples of the Amazon. *Conservation Biology, 19*(3), 721–727.

Sekercioglu, C. H. (2002). Impacts of birdwatching on human and avian communities. *Environmental Conservation, 29*(3), 282–289.

Statista. (2025). *Travel & tourism – Ecuador*. Statista. Retrieved May 5, 2025, from https://www.statista.com/outlook/mmo/travel-tourism/ecuador

Stattersfield, A. J., Crosby, M. J., Long, A. J., & Wege, D. C. (1998). *Endemic Bird Areas of the world: Priorities for biodiversity conservation*. BirdLife International.

Steven, R., Morrison, C., & Castley, J. G. (2015). Birdwatching and avitourism: A global review of research into its participant markets, distribution and impacts, highlighting future research priorities to inform sustainable avitourism management. [1] *Journal of Sustainable Tourism*, *23*(8-10), 1257-1276. [1] https://doi.org/10.1080/09669582.2014.924955

Sullivan, B. L., Wood, C. L., Iliff, M. J., Bonney, R. E., Fink, D., & Kelling, S. (2009). eBird: A citizen-based bird observation network in the biological sciences. *Biological Conservation, 142*(10), 2282–2292.

Sutherland, P. (2014, August 6). Blue-footed boobies on the decline, plummeting sardine stocks may be to blame. *Mongabay*. https://news.mongabay.com/2014/08/blue-footed-boobies-on-the-decline-plummeting-sardine-stocks-may-be-to-blame/

Tanasescu, M. (2013). The rights of nature in Ecuador: The making of an idea. *International Journal of Environmental Studies, 70*(6), 846–861.

Travel and Tour World. (2024). *Ecuador's tourism sector gears up for major growth with new hotels and cruises in 2025*. https://www.travelandtourworld.com/news/article/ecuadors-tourism-sector-gears-up-for-major-growth-with-new-hotels-and-cruises-in-2025/

United Nations Development Program. (2018, September). *Environmental and Social Assessment of Ecuador's Socio Bosque Programme*. UNDP.

Vargas, F. H., Ortega, A., Carrion, J. M., Pazmiño, X., Arias, P., Cardoso, F., et al. (2013, October 21–24). Breeding and mortality records of Andean Condors (*Vultur gryphus*) in Ecuador [Conference presentation]. *I Worldwide Raptor Conference*, Bariloche, Argentina.

World Economics. (2025). *Ecuador GDP: Current GDP estimates for 2025*. https://www.worldeconomics.com/GrossDomesticProduct/Current-GDP/Ecuador.aspx

Other Sources Consulted

1. Ecuador land of birds – Feria de Aves de Sudamérica / South ..., accessed April 14, 2025, https://www.birdfair.net/ecuador-land-of-birds/
2. Birds, Birding Trips and Birdwatching Tours in Republic of Ecuador - Fat Birder, accessed April 14, 2025, https://fatbirder.com/world-birding/south-america/republic-of-ecuador/
3. Ecuador Birding - Faunal Zones, Logistics, Recommended Guides, accessed April 14, 2025, https://ecuadorexplorer.com/html/birding.html
4. Birding | Birdwatching Tours - Imagine Ecuador, accessed April 14, 2025, https://www.imagineecuador.com/birdwatching-tours-ecuador/
5. Megadiverse Countries 2025 - World Population Review, accessed April 14, 2025, https://worldpopulationreview.com/country-rankings/megadiverse-countries
6. Management of the Ecotourism Potential in the Coastal Region of Ecuador - Richtmann Publishing, accessed April 14, 2025, https://www.richtmann.org/journal/index.php/ajis/article/download/14171/13749/48146
7. ECUADOR - sea alarm, accessed April 14, 2025, https://www.sea-alarm.org/web/wp-content/uploads/2022/02/Ecuador-2021.pdf

8. Ecuador's Faunal Zones - Birding in Ecuador - Ecuador Explorer, accessed April 14, 2025, https://ecuadorexplorer.com/html/faunal_zones.html
9. (PDF) RARE BIRDS IN ECUADOR: THIRD REPORT OF THE ..., accessed April 14, 2025, https://www.researchgate.net/publication/342460178_RARE_BIRDS_IN_ECUADOR_THIRD_REPORT_OF_THE_COMMITTEE_FOR_ECUADORIAN_RECORDS_IN_ORNITHOLOGY_CERO
10. LISTA OFICIAL | Comité Ecuatoriano de Registros Ornitológicos, accessed April 14, 2025, https://ceroecuador.wordpress.com/lista-oficial/
11. (PDF) FOURTH REPORT OF THE COMMITTEE FOR ECUADORIAN RECORDS IN ORNITHOLOGY (CERO) AND A REVISION OF UNDOCUMENTED AND ERRONEOUS RECORDS IN LITERATURE - ResearchGate, accessed April 14, 2025, https://www.researchgate.net/publication/342464074_FOURTH_REPORT_OF_THE_COMMITTEE_FOR_ECUADORIAN_RECORDS_IN_ORNITHOLOGY_CERO_AND_A_REVISION_OF_UNDOCUMENTED_AND_ERRONEOUS_RECORDS_IN_LITERATURE
12. Sixth report of the Committee for Ecuadorian Records in Ornithology (CERO), accessed April 14, 2025, https://www.researchgate.net/publication/371010235_Sixth_report_of_the_Committee_for_Ecuadorian_Records_in_Ornithology_CERO
13. (PDF) Birdwatching as an Alternative for Forest Conservation - ResearchGate, accessed April 14, 2025, https://www.researchgate.net/publication/387205434_Birdwatching_as_an_Alternative_for_Forest_Conservation
14. Rare birds in Ecuador: first annual report of the Committee of Ecuadorian Records in Ornithology (CERO) - Semantic Scholar, accessed April 14, 2025, https://www.semanticscholar.org/paper/Rare-birds-in-Ecuador%3A-first-annual-report-of-the-Ingenier%C3%ADas-Freile/4361bd7710dcb0b6df97bb7f2920d5445ae4840b
15. Fifth report of the committee for ecuadorian records in ornithology (cero), with comments on some published, undocumented record - SciSpace, accessed April 14, 2025, https://scispace.com/pdf/fifth-report-of-the-committee-for-ecuadorian-records-in-4acgytq71n.pdf
16. field guide to the birds of - Prefectura del Guayas, accessed April 14, 2025, https://guayas.gob.ec/wp-content/uploads/dmdocuments/turismo/guia-aves-ingles.pdf
17. Ecuador - American Bird Conservancy, accessed April 14, 2025, https://conservationbirding.org/?country=ecuador
18. Ecuador: Field Guides Birding Tours, accessed April 14, 2025, https://fieldguides.com/ecuador-field-guides-birding-tours/
19. Top Countries by Bird Species Count (Updated for 2025) - Worldostats, accessed April 14, 2025, https://worldostats.com/country-stats/birds-species-count-by-country/
20. Ecuadorian birds - Mindo Lindo, accessed April 14, 2025, http://mindolindo.de/en/vogelfuehrungen/ecuadorian-birds/
21. Ecuador: Birds of the Choco-Andean region - 10 days - Sergio Photo Tours, accessed April 14, 2025, https://sergiophototours.com/tours/ecuador-birds-the-choco-andean-region-10-days/
22. 2025 Final Results - Great Backyard Bird Count, accessed April 14, 2025, https://www.birdcount.org/2025-final-results/
23. Hummingbirds of Ecuador, list of Ecuador hummingbird species ..., accessed April 14, 2025, https://www.hummingbirdcentral.com/hummingbirds-of-ecuador.htm
24. Ecuador Hummingbirds – Ultimate Guide for Spotting Colibris - Happy Gringo Travel, accessed April 14, 2025, https://happygringo.com/blog/ecuador-hummingbirds/
25. Hummingbirds of South America, accessed April 14, 2025, https://www.hummingbirdcentral.com/hummingbirds-of-south-america.htm
26. Sword Billed Humming Bird (Ensifera ensifera) Stephensons Natural History Museum invites you to visit and have a look at preserv - GCU, accessed April 14, 2025, https://gcu.edu.pk/pages/academics/zoology/aom/AoM-January2025.pdf

27. Sword-billed hummingbird - Wikipedia, accessed April 14, 2025, https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Sword-billed_hummingbird
28. Choco Endemics – The Northwest and Eastern Slope - Sword Billed Expeditions, accessed April 14, 2025, https://swordbilledexpeditions.com/ecuador/choco-endemics-the-northwest-and-eastern-slope/
29. Birding In Ecuador | Mindo Best Birding 16 Days Private - Dana Tours LLC, accessed April 14, 2025, https://www.galapagosdanatours.com/birdwatching-tours/
30. Ecuador Birding Tour - 2024 Christmas Birdwatching & Wildlife Nature Tours | Naturalist Journeys, accessed April 14, 2025, https://www.naturalistjourneys.com/tours/2024/12/19/christmas-in-ecuador
31. Birding the Chocó-Andes Region: Western and Eastern Slopes of Ecuador - Holbrook Travel |, accessed April 14, 2025, https://www.holbrooktravel.com/where-we-travel/central-and-south-america/ecuador/ecuador-birding-choco-andes-region-western-bedford
32. Category:Endemic birds of Ecuador - Wikipedia, accessed April 14, 2025, https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Category:Endemic_birds_of_Ecuador
33. ECUADOR Endemic & Range-Restricted Birds - Exotic Birding, accessed April 14, 2025, http://www.exoticbirding.com/ecuador/special-birds.html
34. Kinti Toisán Reserve: a new site for the conservation of the Black ..., accessed April 14, 2025, https://avesconservacion.org/kinti-toisan-reserve-a-new-site-for-the-conservation-of-the-black-breasted-puffleg-and-other-bird-diversity-in-the-choco-andes-region/
35. Reserves - Fundación Jocotoco, accessed April 14, 2025, https://www.jocotoco.org.ec/web2/EN/reserves
36. www.nanmagazine.com, accessed April 14, 2025, https://www.nanmagazine.com/en/a-wonderful-world-of-tanagers/#:~:text=These%20spectacular%20birds%2C%20so%20vivid,species%20found%20on%20our%20planet.
37. A wonderful world of tanagers - Nan Magazine, accessed April 14, 2025, https://www.nanmagazine.com/en/a-wonderful-world-of-tanagers/
38. Southern Ecuador Hummingbird & Tanager Extravaganza - VENT, accessed April 14, 2025, https://ventbird.com/southern-ecuador-hummingbird-tanager-extravaganza-8172025-8282025
39. Southern Endemic Ecuadorian Birds - Neblina Forest, accessed April 14, 2025, https://www.neblinaforest.com/southern-endemic-ecuadorian-birds/
40. Our Birding Map - Ecuador Birds Tours, accessed April 14, 2025, https://www.ecuadorbirdstours.com/mapas/our-birding-map.html
41. About - Reserva Las Gralarias, accessed April 14, 2025, https://www.reservalasgralarias.org/about.html
42. Buenaventura - American Bird Conservancy, accessed April 14, 2025, https://conservationbirding.org/?reserve=buenaventura-reserve
43. Tapichalaca - Conservation Birding, accessed April 14, 2025, https://conservationbirding.org/?reserve=tapichalaca-reserve
44. Endemic Bird Species | For UNESCO World Heritage Travellers, accessed April 14, 2025, https://www.worldheritagesite.org/connection/Endemic+Bird+Species
45. Geospiza fortis - dataZone, accessed April 14, 2025, https://datazone.darwinfoundation.org/en/checklist/?species=5094
46. Medium ground finch - Wikipedia, accessed April 14, 2025, https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Medium_ground_finch
47. Medium ground finch - Facts, Diet, Habitat & Pictures on Animalia.bio, accessed April 14, 2025, https://animalia.bio/medium-ground-finch/1000
48. Geospiza fortis Gould, 1837 - GBIF, accessed April 14, 2025, https://www.gbif.org/species/5231030
49. Bird Checklists of the World - Tumbes - Avibase, accessed April 14, 2025, https://avibase.bsc-eoc.org/checklist.jsp?region=PEtu&list=howardmoore

50. Mapping of Selected Important Bird Areas near Quito, Ecuador - Pacific Biodiversity Institute, accessed April 14, 2025, http://pacificbio.org/publications/fish_wildlife/Ecuador_IBA_Mapping_2003.pdf
51. The Important Bird Area Program of BirdLife International - SPREP, accessed April 14, 2025, https://www.sprep.org/att/IRC/eCOPIES/Birdlife-Pacific/The%20Important%20Bird%20Area%20Program%20of%20BirdLife%20International.htm
52. Important Bird and Biodiversity Areas (IBAs): the development and characteristics of a global inventory of key sites for biodiversity | Bird Conservation International - Cambridge University Press & Assessment, accessed April 14, 2025, https://www.cambridge.org/core/journals/bird-conservation-international/article/important-bird-and-biodiversity-areas-ibas-the-development-and-characteristics-of-a-global-inventory-of-key-sites-for-biodiversity/CCBCA00B56F9F1CD6E049AF22CA3792A
53. Important Bird Areas of the Neotropics:Ecuador, accessed April 14, 2025, https://www.neotropicalbirdclub.org/wp-content/downloads/NeoBird7-Freile.pdf
54. BirdLife Endemic Bird Areas | Global Forest Watch Open Data Portal, accessed April 14, 2025, https://data.globalforestwatch.org/documents/4eea031c5a2e4a7cbebbd2e8b7447fa0
55. List of endemic bird areas of the world - Wikipedia, accessed April 14, 2025, https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/List_of_endemic_bird_areas_of_the_world
56. www.frontiersin.org, accessed April 14, 2025, https://www.frontiersin.org/journals/conservation-science/articles/10.3389/fcosc.2024.1412440/pdf
57. Description of Southern Ecuador Birding Tour - EXOTIC BIRDING, accessed April 14, 2025, http://www.exoticbirding.com/ecuador-bird-tours/southern-birding-tour/description.html
58. fieldguides.com, accessed April 14, 2025, https://fieldguides.com/itineraries/esw24-ITIN.pdf
59. Birds of Ecuador - Galapagos Unbound, accessed April 14, 2025, https://www.galapagosunbound.com/birds-ecuador
60. Antisana Ecological Reserve - A complete guide for visitors | Real Dreams, accessed April 14, 2025, https://www.realdreamsecuador.com/en/antisana-ecological-reserve-a-complete-guide-for-visitors/
61. Birdwatching and avitourism: a global review of research into its participant markets, distribution and impacts, highlighting fu - SciSpace, accessed April 14, 2025, https://scispace.com/pdf/birdwatching-and-avitourism-a-global-review-of-research-into-3kkhkwkm2n.pdf
62. The edge of the subtropics: a preliminary list of the birds of San José de Sumaco, Ecuador, accessed April 14, 2025, https://bioone.org/journals/bulletin-of-the-british-ornithologists-club/volume-143/issue-4/bboc.v143i4.2023.a3/The-edge-of-the-subtropics--a-preliminary-list-of/10.25226/bboc.v143i4.2023.a3.full
63. birding in the ecuadorian amazon - La Selva Jungle Lodge, accessed April 14, 2025, https://www.laselvajunglelodge.com/birdwatching/
64. Yasuni National Park, Ecuador - Global Conservation, accessed April 14, 2025, https://globalconservation.org/projects/yasuni-national-park-ecuador
65. Amazon's Hidden Gem: Why Yasuní National Park Is A Must-Visit, accessed April 14, 2025, https://tripxl.com/blog/yasuni-national-park/
66. Southern Ecuador - Mark Pretti Nature Tours, accessed April 14, 2025, https://www.markprettinaturetours.com/southern-ecuador
67. Southern Ecuador Jocotoco Reserves Birding Tour - Otober 2025, accessed April 14, 2025, https://www.sunrisebirding.com/25EcuadorJocotoco/index.html
68. Blue-footed Booby Bird Facts (Sula nebouxii) | Birdfact, accessed April 14, 2025, https://birdfact.com/birds/blue-footed-booby
69. Quito + Antisana Ecological Reserve Tour - Quasar Expeditions, accessed April 14, 2025, https://www.quasarex.com/ecuador/antisana-ecological-reserve-tour

70. Ecuador bird checklist - Avibase - Bird Checklists of the World - Birds Canada, accessed April 14, 2025, https://avibase.bsc-eoc.org/checklist.jsp?amp;list=howardmoore®ion=EC
71. Ecuador bird checklist - Avibase - Bird Checklists of the World - Birds Canada, accessed April 14, 2025, https://avibase.bsc-eoc.org/checklist.jsp?region=EC&list=howardmoore
72. Tapichalaca — Jocotoco USA, accessed April 14, 2025, https://www.jocotococonservation.org/tapichalaca
73. Street View Treks: Galápagos Islands - Google Maps, accessed April 14, 2025, https://www.google.com/intl/en-GB/maps/about/behind-the-scenes/streetview/treks/galapagos-islands/
74. Tourism In Ecuador Statistics, 2025: Travel Trends From The Center Of The Earth, accessed April 14, 2025, https://gowithguide.com/blog/tourism-in-ecuador-statistics-2025-travel-trends-from-the-center-of-the-earth-5812
75. Conservation and Sustainability Practices in Ecuador - SIT Study Abroad, accessed April 14, 2025, https://studyabroad.sit.edu/wp-content/uploads/2020/08/2021SSP-ece-envi3000.pdf
76. Blue-footed Booby | Audubon Field Guide, accessed April 14, 2025, https://www.audubon.org/field-guide/bird/blue-footed-booby
77. Blue-footed booby - Wikipedia, accessed April 14, 2025, https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Blue-footed_booby
78. Full article: Assessing natural heritage in Ecuador: a comprehensive framework for environmental policy - Taylor & Francis Online, accessed April 14, 2025, https://www.tandfonline.com/doi/full/10.1080/02697459.2025.2474821?src=exp-la
79. Ecuador - Aves y Conservación - BirdLife International, accessed April 14, 2025, https://www.birdlife.org/partners/ecuador-aves-y-conservacion/
80. Private Conservation and Ecotourism: A Case Study of Rural Development in Ecuador, accessed April 14, 2025, https://earth.org/private-conservation-and-ecotourism-a-case-study-of-rural-development-in-ecuador/
81. 14 An Ecotourism Project Analysis and Evaluation Framework for International Development Donors - CABI Digital Library, accessed April 14, 2025, https://www.cabidigitallibrary.org/doi/pdf/10.5555/20083258118
82. Andean condor - Wikipedia, accessed April 14, 2025, https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Andean_condor
83. Search for "Andean Condor" - IUCN Red List of Threatened Species, accessed April 14, 2025, https://www.iucnredlist.org/es/search/map?query=Andean%20Condor&searchType=species
84. Harpy Eagle - Global Conservation, accessed April 14, 2025, https://globalconservation.org/endangered-species/harpy-eagle
85. HarpiaHarpyja - Institute for Neotropical Wildlife and Environmental Studies, accessed April 14, 2025, https://www.neowild.org/speciesfiles/harpia-harpyja/
86. EAZA Best Practice Guidelines, accessed April 14, 2025, https://strapi.eaza.net/uploads/Ecuadorian_amazon_Best_Practice_Guidelines_2016_NV_74c626a5d6.pdf
87. Lilacine amazon - Wikipedia, accessed April 14, 2025, https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Lilacine_amazon
88. Rosen Research Review: Tourism's Potential to Benefit Ecuador's Poor, accessed April 14, 2025, https://hospitality.ucf.edu/rosen-research-review/rosen-research-review-tourisms-potential-to-benefit-ecuadors-poor/
89. Tourism and the local economy in Ecuador - SciSpace, accessed April 14, 2025, https://scispace.com/pdf/tourism-and-the-local-economy-in-ecuador-24jkkp6gwd.pdf
90. The Economic Impact of Community-Based Tourism in the Ecuadorian Amazon: A Case Study of Kichwa Pathfinder Tours - Sea Going Green, accessed April 14, 2025, https://www.seagoinggreen.org/blog/the-economic-impact-of-community-based-tourism-in-the-ecuadorian-amazon-a-case-study-of-kichwa-pathfinder-tours

91. Wildlife Watching and tourism - Convention on the Conservation of Migratory Species of Wild Animals, accessed April 14, 2025, https://www.cms.int/sites/default/files/document/ScC14_Inf_08_Wildlife_Watching_E_0.pdf
92. Economic Value of ecosystem services provided by vultures in Southern Africa - BirdLife International, accessed April 14, 2025, https://www.birdlife.org/wp-content/uploads/2025/02/Economic-Valuation-of-Ecosystem-Services-Provided-by-Vultures-in-Southern-Africa-Report_.pdf
93. Exploring Ecotourism in Ecuador - Columbia Business School, accessed April 14, 2025, https://business.columbia.edu/sites/default/files-efs/pubfiles/2264/Exploring_Ecotourism_in_Ecuador.pdf
94. Are government incentives effective for avoided deforestation in the ..., accessed April 14, 2025, https://pmc.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/articles/PMC6136730/
95. Socio Bosque - Ministerio del Ambiente, Agua y Transición Ecológica, accessed April 14, 2025, https://sociobosque.ambiente.gob.ec/
96. Socio Bosque Program Ecuador | Interlace Hub, accessed April 14, 2025, https://interlace-hub.com/socio-bosque-program-ecuador
97. Ecuador's Socio Bosque Program - Initiative 20x20, accessed April 14, 2025, https://initiative20x20.org/restoration-projects/ecuadors-socio-bosque-program
98. QUINTA COMUNICACIÓN NACIONAL Y PRIMER REPORTE BIENAL DE TRANSPARENCIA DEL ECUADOR HACIA LA CONVENCIÓN MARCO DE LAS NACIONES UN - UNFCCC, accessed April 14, 2025, https://unfccc.int/sites/default/files/resource/a.%205CN1RBT-27dic_final.pdf
99. P17862204931de010ab040170... - World Bank Documents and Reports, accessed April 14, 2025, https://documents1.worldbank.org/curated/en/099255112222211843/P17862204931de010ab040170e48e29edc.docx
100. Project/Program Completion Report (PCR)1 - UNDP Evaluation Resource Center, accessed April 14, 2025, https://erc.undp.org/api/download?filePath=%2Fdocuments%2F15400%2Fmgmtresponse%2Fkeyaction%2Fdoc_8073682823399986180Completion_Report_GCF_2023_Fin%5B1%5D.pdf
101. FUNDING RAINFOREST PROTECTION IN THE ECUADORIAN AMAZON, accessed April 14, 2025, http://ecociencia.org/wp-content/uploads/2022/06/PBFC_EN.pdf
102. Ecuador's next debt-for-nature deal falls short of Indigenous involvement - Mongabay, accessed April 14, 2025, https://news.mongabay.com/2025/02/ecuadors-next-debt-for-nature-deal-falls-short-of-indigenous-involvement/
103. Management of the Ecotourism Potential in the Coastal Region of Ecuador: A Thematic Analysis Evidenced in the Framework of Ecuadorian Public Policies - ResearchGate, accessed April 14, 2025, https://www.researchgate.net/publication/387938500_Management_of_the_Ecotourism_Potential_in_the_Coastal_Region_of_Ecuador_A_Thematic_Analysis_Evidenced_in_the_Framework_of_Ecuadorian_Public_Policies
104. Internship Final Report Guidelines 1.Title of internship: Update of the information on species, criteria and limits of the IBAs, accessed April 14, 2025, https://www.conservationleadershipprogram.org/media/2023/08/Internship-Final-Report-Estefania.pdf
105. Primate Conservation Efforts and Sustainable Development Goals in Ecuador, Combining Research, Education and Capacity Building - PubMed, accessed April 14, 2025, https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/36290136/

Chapter 11

Peru - Birdwatching, Conservation, and Tourism Segmentation

Ismar Borges de Lima
Universidade Estadual de Roraima-UERR, Brazil &
RECINATUR Foundation. Email: ismar@uerr.edu.br

Tomas Cotrina Trigoso
Universidad César Vallejo y Universidad San Martín
Jirón Martínez de Compañón 1035, Tarapoto 22201, Perú
Email: tcotrina@unsm.edu.pe

Summary

Peru today boasts nearly 1,900 bird species—including roughly 120 endemics—making it one of the planet's top avian hotspots and a magnet for global birdwatchers. Its extraordinary diversity stems from a dramatic ecogeographic tapestry: the arid Pacific coast and fog-dependent lomas, the soaring Andes with cloud forests, puna grasslands and Polylepis woodlands, and the vast Amazon basin with terra firme and seasonally flooded forests. These contrasting habitats, compressed into one country, fuel high speciation and endemism, and underpin three nationally branded birding circuits (North, Central, South) promoted by PROMPERÚ. Avitourism in Peru is woven into its conservation fabric. The national protected-area network (SINANPE), managed by SERNANP, safeguards key ecosystems, while Important Bird Areas guide research and habitat protection. Community-based and Indigenous tourism initiatives—ranging from community-run ecolodges in Tambopata to youth-led bird trails in Loreto—offer locally rooted stewardship models. At the same time, platforms like eBird have mobilized citizen scientists and park staff to document Peru's avifauna, propelling the country to multiple victories in the Global Big Day and enhancing both scientific knowledge and international visibility. Market segmentation recognizes distinct birder types: "hardcore" enthusiasts pursuing lifers and endemics in remote cloud forests; "softcore" visitors combining iconic species (e.g., Andean Cock-of-the-Rock, macaws at clay licks) with cultural highlights like Machu Picchu; and domestic ecotourists. Typical international birders are well-educated, affluent, and stay 2–3 weeks, generating significant revenue for rural economies (Großmann et. al., 2025; Handler, 2022; Chen & Chen, 2015), particularly if it is considered that "the eco-birdwatching industry is an important part of ecotourism. As an ecological product, the realization of birdwatching's value is of great significance for the achievement of ecological, social, and economic benefits within specific regional units" (Liu et. al., 2021, p.2). Yet Peru's avitourism boom faces challenges: infrastructure gaps in remote regions, uneven service quality, potential ecological impacts from overtourism (e.g., along Manu Road), and overarching threats from habitat loss and climate change. Strategic recommendations include strengthening public–private–community partnerships, investing in capacity building for local guides, diversifying and sustainably managing infrastructure, and integrating climate adaptation into conservation planning. When aligned with effective governance and equitable benefit-sharing, Peru's birdwatching sector not only stimulates economic diversification and regional development but also serves as

a powerful lever for environmental education, cultural valorization, and the protection of one of the world's richest avian legacies.

Part I: Introduction and Context

11. Introduction: Birding in the Peruvian Context

11.1. Peru's status as a mega-diverse nation for avifauna

Peru, with a population of approximately 33.7 million, ranks as the sixth-largest economy in Latin America and the Caribbean by GDP (World Tourism Organization, 2024), and the country boasts a rich tapestry of attractions—spanning ancient archaeological sites, vibrant cultural traditions, world-renowned cuisine, and a wealth of opportunities for nature- and adventure-based tourism; and to broaden its economic foundations, Peru actively has sought to promote sustainable foreign investment (World Tourism Organization, 2024). Peru is widely recognized as one of the world's most biodiverse countries, especially when it comes to birdlife (Moncrieff et. al., 2025), and "the species richness, especially that of birds, is among the highest in the world, while the country also is an established tourism destination" (Puhakka, Salo, & Sääksjärvi, 2011, p. 2). Its extraordinary variety of bird species places it among the global leaders in avian diversity, drawing the attention of scientists, conservationists, and birdwatchers alike, standing – according to some experts – as a 'titan' in the realm of global biodiversity, particularly renowned for its staggering avian richness.

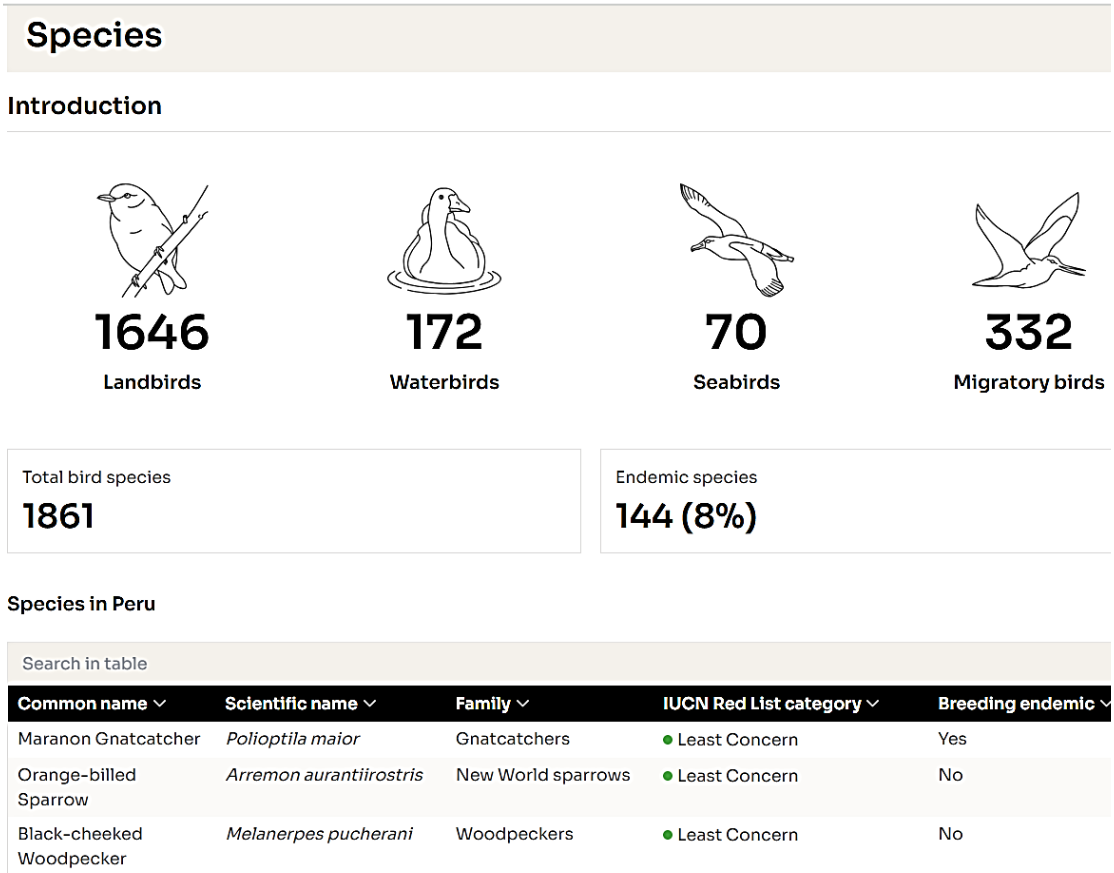
Peru ranks consistently among the world's top five countries for bird species richness, with nearly **1,900 recorded species**—roughly **17%** of the planet's total—and a dynamic checklist shaped by ongoing taxonomic revisions. The number of species varies slightly depending on the data source: the **Birdlife International** estimates it at 1,861 species in 2024 (see Figure 11a); the **eBird Peru** counts 1,882 species in the 2025's current updated list (see Fig.11b); the **WordRainforest** estimates it at 1,892 species in 2024, and according to the **National Service of Natural Areas Protected by the State** (SERNANP), Peru now ranks first globally in bird diversity, hosting 1,879 species.

The country's dramatic geography—from arid Pacific deserts and fog-dependent *lomas* to snow-capped Andes and vast Amazon rainforest—creates a mosaic of habitats driving speciation and endemism: coastal mangroves and deserts, Tumbesian dry forests, cloud forests, Polylepis woodlands, puna grasslands, terra firme rainforest, and seasonally flooded várzea.[2–3] "The Tropical Andes, including large parts of Peru, represent the world's foremost "biodiversity hotspot" (Myers et. al., 2020, p.5), supporting remarkably high levels of species diversity and endemism across multiple groups. Peru's complex patchwork of ecological regions is the engine behind its status as a megadiverse nation and highlights the need for focused conservation measures in each of its distinct habitat types (Fjeldså & Rahbek, 1998; Fjeldså & Irestedt, 2009). Saldaña (2020, p. 193) underlines that "the seasonally dry tropical forest (SDTF) of the southwest of Ecuador and northwest of Peru (Equatorial SDTF) has an outstanding level of endemicity and is a critically important hotspot of biodiversity in the world" (p.193), but the survival of species raises serious concerns as, "birds are worryingly supported by small fragments of dry forests and scrub remaining in the area, mainly on inaccessible slopes since most of the natural vegetation has been destroyed by human activities for farmland and livestock" (p.193).

The term "megadiversity countries" refers to a group of nations identified by Conservation International in the late 1990s for their exceptionally "high biodiversity" (Myers et. al., 2020) and endemism. Together, these 17 countries, including Peru, are estimated to contain over 70% of the planet's biological diversity. Brazil, South Africa, and Ecuador are some of these countries as well, and they have been widely discussed in specific chapters of this book. According to Conservation International, the criteria for megadiversity include possessing at least 5,000 endemic plant species and having a marine ecosystem within national borders.[3]

While Peru's exact ranking fluctuates slightly with taxonomic updates and new discoveries, its position near the apex of global bird diversity remains undisputed[1] — reflecting not only the country's vast ecological range but also the ongoing efforts to document and understand its rich avifauna, "Peru holds exceptional avian diversity derived from its complex geography, including the lengthy Pacific coastline, the Andean cordillera with peaks over 6000 m, extensive tracts of lowland Amazonian rainforest, and unique inter-Andean dry valleys" (Schulenberg et al., 2010, p. 6). This exceptional status is not merely a function of large territory but is intrinsically linked to Peru's dramatic and complex geography. The interplay between the arid Pacific Coastline, the towering Andes Mountains, and the vast Amazon Rainforest creates an extraordinary mosaic of habitats packed into one nation.[3]

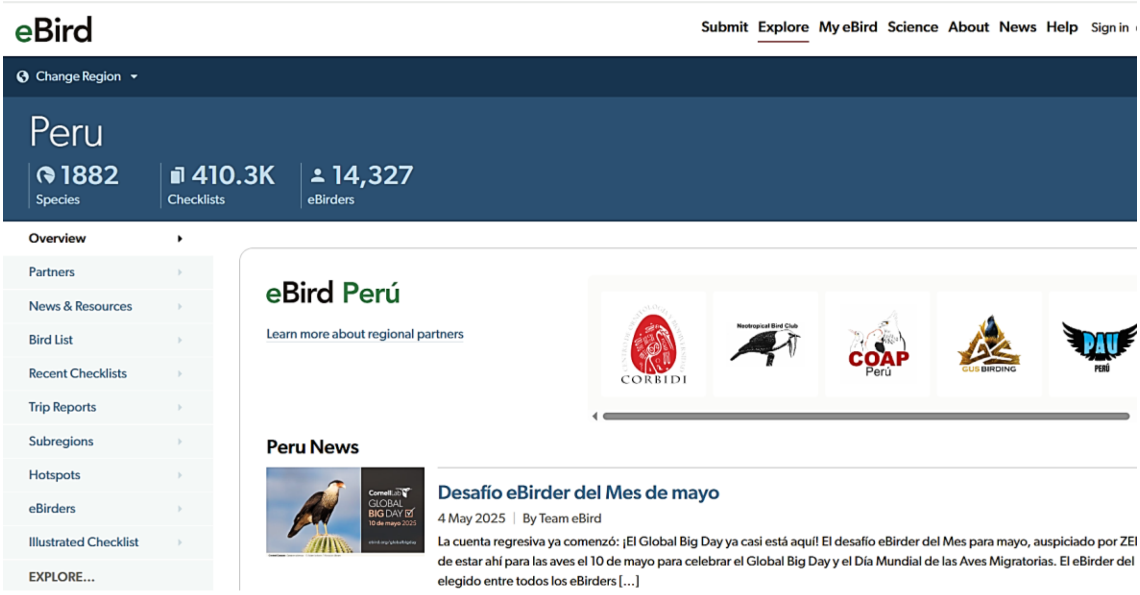
Figure 11a - Peru's avian diversity by major group in 2024 (data from Birdlife International).



Common name	Scientific name	Family	IUCN Red List category	Breeding endemic
Maranon Gnatcatcher	*Polioptila maior*	Gnatcatchers	Least Concern	Yes
Orange-billed Sparrow	*Arremon aurantiirostris*	New World sparrows	Least Concern	No
Black-cheeked Woodpecker	*Melanerpes pucherani*	Woodpeckers	Least Concern	No

Figure 11a - Breakdown of Peru's avian diversity by major group—1,646 landbird species, 172 waterbird species, 70 seabird species, and 332 migratory species—totaling 1,861 species, of which 144 (8 %) are endemic. Source: Datazone – Birdlife International, available at: https://datazone.birdlife.org/country/factsheet/peru

Fig. 11b - 'eBird Peru' Main Website on Peruvian Avifauna and the Estimated Number of Species in the Country.



Figugre 11b - Caption: eBird Perú overview page, showing Peru's total of 1,882 recorded bird species, 410.3 K checklists submitted, and 14,327 active eBirders contributing to the platform. **Credit:** Screenshot of the eBird "Peru" region page, Cornell Lab of Ornithology eBird platform, accessed May 2025 (https://ebird.org/region/PE).

The Andes, in particular, act as both a barrier and a generator of diversity, with steep elevational gradients fostering distinct life zones over short distances (Fjeldså & Rahbek, 1998; Fjeldså & Irestedt, 2009), "the Tropical Andes, including large parts of Peru, represent the world's foremost biodiversity hotspot, harboring exceptional concentrations of species richness and endemism across numerous taxa, most notably vascular plants and vertebrates such as birds." (Herzog et al., 2011, p. 1). This topographical heterogeneity, encompassing coastal deserts, mangroves, dry forests, high Andean puna grasslands, Polylepis woodlands, cloud forests, and lowland Amazonian rainforests, serves as a powerful engine driving speciation and supporting the high number of endemic species – birds found nowhere else on Earth.[3] The direct link between habitat diversity, often correlated with topographic complexity, and avian species richness is well-documented in the Neotropics, with areas of high physiographic complexity in the Andes of Peru exhibiting peak diversity levels.[10] Consequently, understanding Peru's avian megadiversity necessitates appreciating this intricate ecogeographic framework—defined by profound spatial diversity—with effective conservation requiring attention to threats across this wide spectrum of ecosystems. This calls for a deep commitment to ecological and environmental stewardship.

11.1.1. Relevance of birdwatching to tourism, conservation, and cultural identity

Birdwatching, often termed avitourism, has emerged globally as a significant and rapidly growing niche within the broader ecotourism secto,[13] "avitourism, or birdwatching tourism, represents a rapidly growing segment of nature-based tourism globally" (Steven et. al., 2015, p.38), and it attracts people who are frequently well-cultured, "relatively affluent, and willing to travel internationally to observe birds in their natural habitats." (Steven, Morrison, & Castley, 2015, p. 38). In Peru, given its unparalleled avian wealth, avitourism holds particular relevance, intersecting profoundly with economic development, biodiversity conservation, and national cultural identity. Economically, birdwatching attracts a dedicated and often affluent segment of travelers, generating substantial revenue for the country and, importantly, for local economies in often remote areas through demand for specialized guides, lodging, transportation, and other services.[13] Sotomayor et al. (2023) argue that birdwatching experiences, particularly in rich natural settings like the Peruvian Amazon, possess the potential to be deeply transformative for tourists.

It is timely to mention that the risks of tourism overload exist and it can impact fragile ecosystems (e.g., Manu Road), and issues of carrying capacity and sustainable management of tourism areas draw further attention as it can disrupt the virtuous cycle if neglected. The global market for nature-based tourism, including birdwatching, is valued in the tens of billions of dollars (Future Market Insights, 2024), and Peru aims to capture a significant share of the enthusiasts interested in its unique offerings.[13]

Beyond economics, avitourism functions as a potent tool for conservation (Steven et. al., 2015). The interest generated by birds, especially rare and endemic species, provides tangible economic incentives for habitat protection.[13] Tourism revenue can directly fund conservation activities, including research, protected area management, habitat restoration, and community-based conservation projects.[13] By demonstrating the economic value of intact ecosystems, birdwatching can help counteract pressures from potentially destructive land uses like unsustainable agriculture or resource extraction.[18] Furthermore, the practice of birdwatching often fosters environmental awareness and a conservation ethic among both visitors and local communities.[13]

Culturally, birds are deeply woven into the Peruvian fabric. Iconic species like the Andean Cock-of-the-Rock (*Rupicola peruvianus*), the national bird, feature prominently in cultural symbolism.[4] Indigenous communities, particularly in the Amazon and Andes, possess rich traditional ecological knowledge encompassing bird identification, behavior, ecological roles, and cultural significance, often expressed through stories, songs, and traditional uses.[22] Avitourism, when practiced sensitively, can offer opportunities to celebrate and sustain this cultural heritage, providing a platform for sharing Indigenous knowledge and reinforcing cultural identity.[26] The potential exists for a positive feedback loop where tourism revenue supports conservation efforts, which in turn maintain the bird diversity that attracts tourists, while also potentially supporting cultural continuity.[18] However, the realization of this virtuous cycle is not automatic; it hinges critically on the adoption of sustainable tourism practices, effective governance, and ensuring that benefits are shared equitably, particularly with the local and Indigenous communities who steward many of these bird-rich landscapes.[13]

11.1.2. Manuel A. Plenge's *Bibliography of the Birds of Peru* (2001–2016)

In May 2016, Manuel A. Plenge consolidated decades of ornithological scholarship in *Bibliography of the Birds of Peru, 2001–2016, Volume 2*, a 107-page compendium published and printed by Consultores Asociados en Naturaleza y Desarrollo S.A.C. This meticulously organized volume brings together every relevant book, monograph, thesis, dissertation, article, and book chapter on Peruvian avifauna published over a fifteen-year span. Plenge's work is more than a simple listing: each entry is annotated with publication details and classified by subject, geography, and taxonomic focus—providing researchers and ecotourism practitioners with a single, authoritative starting point for any inquiry into Peru's birds.

Among the 1,200+ references, three stand out for their explicit treatment of birdwatching and ecotourism in Peru. Altamirano, Shany, and Álvarez (2010 [2012]) examine the

Mishquiyaquillo basin's birdlife and its potential for sustainable avitourism in the San Martín region, offering habitat descriptions and visitor guidelines (Altamirano-Guerrero et. al., 2010). Quispe and Berioska's 2014 Master's thesis at La Molina University analyzes how conservation status correlates with ecotourism use at Manu National Park's bird-viewing platforms. And in 2013 the Ministry of Foreign Trade and Tourism published the *Guía de Aves: Santuario Histórico Bosque de Pómac*, a 78-page guide designed both for professional guides and the curious traveler.

Plenge's bibliography serves as an indispensable tool for anyone working at the intersection of ornithology, conservation, and nature-based tourism in Peru. By gathering these—and over a thousand more—sources into a single, searchable volume, he has dramatically reduced the effort required to locate foundational and cutting-edge literature. As a testament to his generosity, Plenge has kept the work freely updated each year, cementing his reputation not only as Peru's premier ornithological bibliographer but also as a mentor and collaborator to countless students, scientists, and tour operators.

Since 2016, Peru's rich birdlife and the growing interest in birdwatching have captured the attention of researchers, travel writers, and conservationists alike. A steady stream of studies and news stories has explored everything from the economic benefits of eco-lodges in the Amazon to the best ways to build low-impact viewing platforms in the high Andes. At the same time, new digital tools—like Merlin Bird ID and the eBird citizen-science platform—have transformed how visitors identify species and how scientists gather data on bird populations. Feature articles in popular outlets have also sounded the alarm on threats such as avian flu outbreaks and the loss of critical habitats due to climate change and deforestation. Meanwhile, community-led tourism projects have demonstrated how local people can share their deep knowledge of birds while earning sustainable incomes.

With a global focus, beyond the Peruvian geographical region, research on birdwatching tourism has experienced three distinct phases in terms of annual publication output according to a bibliometric analysis of birdwatching tourism research developed by Mohammadi et. al., (2024). According to them, from 1978 to 2000, fewer than 20 papers were published each year. The period from 2001 to 2010 saw this figure rise to between 20 and 60 publications annually. Between 2011 and 2022, the field entered its most prolific phase, with yearly outputs climbing to between 62 and 120 papers. The earliest recorded birdwatching research dates back to 1879, but no related publications appeared until 1978. Publication activity peaked in 2021, with 140 papers released. Across the entire dataset, the average birdwatching tourism paper has received 15.74 citations, underscoring the growing influence of this research area in recent decades (Mohammadi et. al., 2024).

Insights and Trends

- **Acceleration of Interest:** The sharp rise in publications since 2011 reflects both the expansion of citizen-science platforms (e.g., eBird) and growing recognition of birdwatching as a high-value segment of sustainable tourism.

- **Citation Impact:** An average of nearly 16 citations per paper indicates that these studies are not only increasing in number but also in scholarly relevance, informing conservation policy, destination management, and community engagement.

- **Peak Year – 2021:** The record high of 140 publications in 2021 coincides with post-COVID-19 research surges and renewed focus on nature-based recovery strategies. This suggests that global events can sharply influence research priorities.

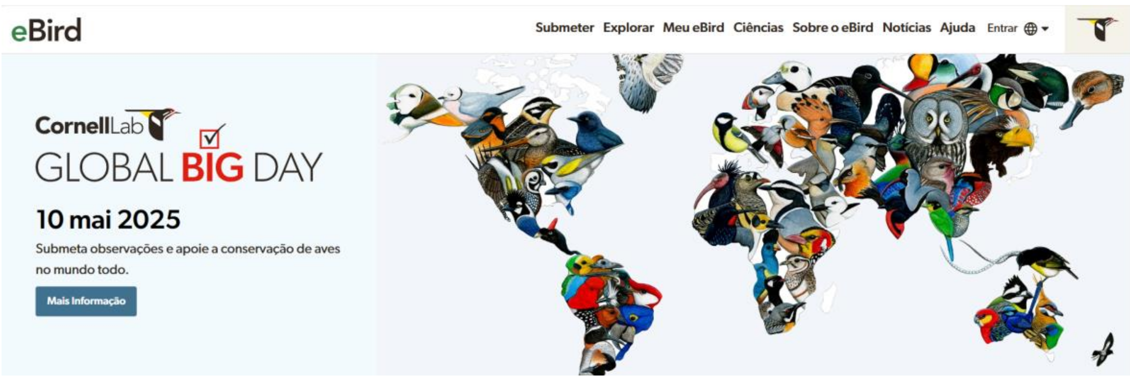
- **Future Directions:** As climate change, habitat loss, and emerging diseases (e.g., avian influenza) pose new challenges, we can expect a further shift toward interdisciplinary work that integrates ecology, economics, and social science to guide resilient, equitable avitourism development.

From a global academic standpoint, Tamimzadeh and Özel (2024) conducted a comprehensive bibliometric analysis of 474 birdwatching and birding publications indexed in the Web of Science from 1976 to 2023. Using VOSviewer, they mapped publication trends, identified leading authors and institutions, and revealed key thematic clusters—such as citizen science integration and the socio-economic dimensions of avitourism—thereby charting the field's evolution and highlighting emerging research frontiers.

11.1.3. Filling the 2025 Publication Void: Global Big Day as Catalyst

While 2025 has seen comparatively few landmark journal articles or books addressing Peru's birdlife and its burgeoning tourism sector, the biannual Global Big Day events have stepped into this void—serving as both real-time research platforms and powerful marketing springboards. On 10 May 2025, Peru's ornithological and tourism communities will mobilize thousands of citizen scientists, park rangers, guides, and local volunteers in a nationwide effort to document the greatest number of species in a single day. This mass participation not only generates invaluable distribution and abundance data—complementing the slower pace of peer-reviewed studies—but also spotlights emerging birding circuits, community-run lodges, and conservation challenges in remote areas. In doing so, Global Big Day functions as a living "publication," disseminating Peru's avian richness instantly via digital platforms (eBird checklists, social media, live blogs) to a global audience of scientists, conservationists, and travelers.

Building on this momentum, Peru's birding sector is already preparing for the October Big Day, timed to coincide with key migratory passages. Together, these two flagship events plug the thematic gap left by the absence of major 2025 academic releases: they deliver cutting-edge data, drive market interest, and reinforce Peru's positioning as "Country of Birders." By integrating real-world fieldwork with strategic promotion—through MINCETUR's "Global Big Day: Perú, Paradise of Birdwatching" virtual seminar, regional birding route branding, and targeted outreach to international tour operators—these events not only enrich Peru's scientific and policy discourse but also translate immediately into bookings, guide training, and community revenue. In essence, the Global Big Day framework has become the most dynamic "publication" of 2025, advancing both the knowledge base and the economic underpinnings of avitourism in Peru.



11.1.4. Objectives of the chapter: to analyze the evolution, practice, and strategic value of birdwatching tourism in Peru

Yet despite this wealth of information, there has been no single source that brings these pieces together in a clear, practical way for anyone interested in Peru's birding boom. This chapter fills that gap. It weaves together the latest ecological research, tourism data, and real-world examples from coastal mangroves to cloud forests to Amazon floodplains. Readers will find not only a snapshot of current best practices—how to plan trips that benefit conservation and local communities—but also a set of guiding principles for doing bird tourism responsibly. By linking Peru's stunning diversity of ecosystems, its system of protected areas, and the different needs of international birders, citizen scientists, and local nature lovers, this chapter offers a roadmap for ensuring that Peru remains a world-class destination for birdwatchers, while protecting the very habitats that make it so extraordinary.

The chapter aims to provide a comprehensive analysis of Peru's position as a world-leading birdwatching destination. It will trace the historical trajectory of ornithological exploration and the subsequent rise of avitourism within the country, noting that the chapter also considers the experiential and potentially transformative aspects of avitourism, and the study by Sotomayor, Romo, and Guillén (2023) contributes to the academic understanding of how nature-based tourism, specifically birdwatching, can function as a catalyst for transformative personal experiences. The chapter will detail the foundations of Peru's avian appeal: its extraordinary species richness, high levels of endemism, and diverse biogeographical zones. Key birding regions and nationally promoted routes will be described, highlighting the geographic distribution of birding opportunities,

Furthermore, the chapter will delve into the characteristics of the birdwatchers who visit Peru, examining their motivations, behaviors, and market segmentation. The significant role of citizen science platforms, particularly eBird, and associated technologies in enhancing Peru's global visibility and supporting conservation will be explored. Note: Peru consistently ranks among the top five countries globally in eBird checklist submissions, with hotspots like Manu Road, Abra Patricia, and the Amazon lowlands drawing international attention, and the Manu Road hotspot ranking top three globally in daily and annual species richness. Peru has been increasingly used in scientific publications and conservation decision-making, adding empirical value to tourism and science knowledge. Attention will be given to the growing importance of community-based and Indigenous tourism initiatives, analyzing their contributions to conservation, cultural preservation, and local livelihoods, as well as the challenges they face.

The analysis will extend to national tourism development strategies, policies, and infrastructure, including a critical assessment of strengths, weaknesses, opportunities, and threats (SWOT analysis) facing the sector (Pung, 2023; Yilmaz & Öztürk, 2023). Finally, the chapter will address pressing challenges, such as habitat loss and climate change, consider post-pandemic recovery and resilience, and discuss prospects and recommendations for enhancing Peru's strategic position. Ultimately, this chapter seeks to illuminate the complex and dynamic interplay between birdwatching, biodiversity conservation, and sustainable development in the unique context of Peru, offering insights valuable to researchers, policymakers, conservationists, and tourism practitioners operating within this vibrant field.

Globally a fast-growing niche, avitourism attracts educated, relatively affluent travelers committed to observing birds *in situ* (Steven et. al., 2015).[5] In Peru, birdwatching stimulates local economies—guides, lodges, transport—and can directly fund research, protected-area management, and habitat restoration.[6] Moreover, it fosters environmental awareness among visitors and communities. However, tourism overload risks (e.g., Manu Road) highlight the need for carrying-capacity management. Birds also permeate Peru's cultural identity: the Andean Cock-of-the-Rock (*Rupicola peruvianus*), national bird, features in folklore; Indigenous groups possess rich Traditional Ecological Knowledge (TEK) about bird ecology, songs, and cultural uses.[7] When practiced sensitively, avitourism can reinforce this cultural heritage and catalyze a virtuous cycle of conservation funding and cultural continuity.

This chapter traces Peru's evolution into a premier birdwatching destination: from early ornithological exploration to modern avitourism. We detail Peru's avian appeal—species richness, endemism, biogeographical zones—and describe key birding regions and nationally promoted routes. We examine market segmentation of birdwatchers, the role of eBird and citizen science in enhancing Peru's visibility and conservation impact, and community-based tourism initiatives. Finally, we critically assess national tourism policies, infrastructure, SWOT factors, and future prospects under climate change and post-pandemic recovery.

Part II: The Foundations of Peruvian Avitourism

11.2. The Rise of National Institutions: CORBIDI, SERNANP, PROMPERÚ

Below is a brief introductory note on key Peruvian institutions driving ornithology, protected-area management, and tourism promotion, followed by their abbreviations and core mandates.

The Rise of National Institutions:

Over the past three decades, Peru has strengthened its capacity to research and conserve birdlife, manage its vast network of protected areas, and promote nature-based tourism—especially birdwatching—through a set of dedicated organizations. From the NGO sector's work in ornithological research and community engagement, to the government's creation of a unified protected-area agency, and on to the national ministry and its tourism-promotion arm, these institutions form a collaborative framework that supports both biodiversity conservation and sustainable development.

CORBIDI (2006–)
Centro de Ornitología y Biodiversidad
A Lima-based NGO advancing ornithology through scientific research, conservation education, and inclusive birdwatching programs that engage local communities and foster public appreciation of Peru's bird diversity.

SINANPE (est. 1990) & **SERNANP (est. 2008)**
Sistema Nacional de Áreas Naturales Protegidas por el Estado & *Servicio Nacional de Áreas Naturales Protegidas por el Estado*
SINANPE is Peru's National System of Protected Areas, established to coordinate all state reserves, parks, and sanctuaries. SERNANP, created in 2008 as its management agency, administers these areas—balancing strict conservation objectives with sustainable local development and ecotourism.

PROMPERÚ
Comisión de Promoción del Perú para la Exportación y el Turismo
Operating under the umbrella of MINCETUR, PROMPERÚ is responsible for international marketing and promotion of Peru's tourism products—including

officially branded "Birdwatching Routes" in the North, Central, and South regions—and for organizing trade fairs, roadshows, and digital campaigns.

MINCETUR
Ministerio de Comercio Exterior y Turismo
The national ministry charged with formulating and implementing Peru's foreign trade and tourism policies, overseeing regulatory frameworks, capacity-building programs, and inter-agency coordination to foster economic growth through sustainable tourism.

The formalization and strategic development of ornithology and avitourism in Peru were significantly advanced by the establishment and activities of key national institutions, each playing distinct but complementary roles.

The Center for Ornithology and Biodiversity (CORBIDI), established in 2006, emerged as a crucial non-governmental organization dedicated to promoting natural sciences, particularly ornithology, in Peru.[13] CORBIDI actively engages in research, conservation, and education, collaborates internationally, supports conservation of threatened species, and promotes inclusive birdwatching initiatives.

The Peruvian national system of protected areas (*Sistema Nacional de Áreas Naturales Protegidas por el Estado*, SINANPE) was first established in 1990, and as of June 2011, consisted of a total of 72 nationally administered protected areas" (Puhakka, Salo, & Sääksjärvi, 2011, p. 3). SINANPE safeguards essential avian habitats, promoting participatory governance models and integrating conservation with local development efforts,[19] and it is managed by the SERNANP. It is important to distinguish between SINANPE and SERNANP. SINANPE refers to Peru's National System of Natural Protected Areas, officially established by law in 1990 under the Ley de Áreas Naturales Protegidas (Law No. 26834, enacted in 1997, regulating it formally). SINANPE encompasses national parks, national reserves, national sanctuaries, and other protected categories, forming the physical and legal network of conservation areas. In contrast, SERNANP (*Servicio Nacional de Áreas Naturales Protegidas por el Estado*) is the specialized government agency created in 2008 (by Legislative Decree No. 1013) responsible for the management, oversight, and strategic coordination of SINANPE, "Protected areas are cornerstones of biodiversity conservation, but their effectiveness often depends on integrating ecological goals with the socio-economic needs of local communities, where sustainable tourism can provide a viable economic incentive for conservation" (Dudley, 2008, p. 65). In this chapter, SINANPE is used to refer to the system of protected areas themselves, while SERNANP denotes the administrative body governing them.

PROMPERÚ, under the Ministry of Foreign Trade and Tourism, has complemented these efforts by actively promoting birdwatching routes, organizing international events, and structuring Peru's avitourism branding,[27] as while "finding synergies between conservation goals and local level development initiatives is fundamental for both the short-term protection of important sites and their long-term conservation" (Puhakka, Salo, & Sääksjärvi, 2011, p. 11). The success of avitourism thus depends on maintaining these institutional synergies and balancing biodiversity conservation with sustainable tourism development.

For the purposes of this chapter, we adopt the IUCN's working definition of a "protected area" as set out by Dudley (2008) as well as the major objectives of these areas (see Text Box 10.1).

Protected area

"A clearly defined geographical space, recognized, dedicated and managed, through legal or other effective means, to achieve the long-term conservation of nature with associated ecosystem services and cultural values" —Dudley, N. (Ed.). (2008). *Guidelines for applying protected area management categories* (p. 8). Gland, Switzerland: IUCN.

Text Box 10.1. Objectives for Protected Areas
Source: Dudley (Ed.), 2008, Guidelines for Applying Protected Area Management Categories, p. 12.

All protected areas should aim to:

- Conserve the composition, structure, function and evolutionary potential of biodiversity
- Contribute to regional conservation strategies (as core reserves, buffer zones, corridors, stepping-stones for migratory species, etc.)
- Maintain diversity of landscape or habitat and of associated species and ecosystems
- Be of sufficient size to ensure the integrity and long-term maintenance of the specified conservation targets (or be capable of being increased to achieve this end)
- Maintain the values for which it was assigned in perpetuity
- Operate under the guidance of a management plan, and a monitoring and evaluation programme that supports adaptive management
- Possess a clear and equitable governance system

All protected areas should also aim, where appropriate, to:

- Conserve significant landscape features, geomorphology and geology
- Provide regulatory ecosystem services, including buffering against the impacts of climate change
- Conserve natural and scenic areas of national and international significance for cultural, spiritual and scientific purposes
- Deliver benefits to resident and local communities consistent with the other objectives of management
- Deliver recreational benefits consistent with the other objectives of management
- Facilitate low-impact scientific research activities and ecological monitoring related to and consistent with the values of the protected area
- Use adaptive management strategies to improve management effectiveness and governance quality over time
- Help to provide educational opportunities (including management approaches)
- Help to develop public support for protection

11.2.1. Key Milestones in Peruvian Avitourism (e.g., Big Day Participations, Global Ornithological Publications)

Several key milestones have marked Peru's ascent as a global birding hotspot, transforming it from a destination known primarily to specialists into one sought after by a broad international birding community.

Early scientific achievements laid crucial groundwork. The rediscovery of the White-winged Guan (*Penelope albipennis*) in 1977, a species previously thought extinct, not only highlighted the unique avifauna of the northwestern dry forests but also directly led to the creation of the Laquipampa Reserved Zone in 1982, demonstrating a tangible link between ornithological discovery and conservation action (Flanagan & Angulo, 2003).[35] In the same year, 1982, Ted Parker and Scott Robinson achieved a legendary feat at the Cocha Cashu Biological Station in Manu National Park, recording 331 bird species in a single 24-hour period using only foot and canoe transport—a "Big Day" total that stood as a remarkable benchmark for decades and showcased the incredible species density of Peru's Amazonian lowlands.[36]

The publication of comprehensive and accessible field guides was another critical step. While earlier works existed, the publication of *Birds of Peru* by Thomas S. Schulenberg, Douglas F. Stotz, Daniel F. Lane, John P. O'Neill, and Theodore A. Parker III (first edition 2007, revised 2010) was transformative.[37] This detailed guide, covering nearly all species with high-quality illustrations and distribution maps, became an indispensable tool for visiting birders, significantly lowering the barrier to entry and stimulating interest in exploring Peru's diverse regions. It is widely regarded as a motivating factor for both visiting the country and supporting its conservation.[37]

Peru's strategic participation and outstanding success in the eBird-organized Global Big Day (GBD) events, starting in 2015, catapulted its reputation onto the world stage.[39] Winning the inaugural GBD in 2015 with 1,182 species, repeating the victory in 2016 (1,226 species), and achieving first place again in 2021 (1,351 species) demonstrated Peru's exceptional biodiversity in a highly visible, competitive format.[40] Even in years when placing second, typically to neighboring Colombia, Peru consistently recorded staggering numbers (e.g., 1,431 species in 2023, approximately 1,450 species in 2024), reinforcing its status as a birding superpower.[41] The success extended to the October Big Day, with Peru achieving its first victory in that event in 2023 with 1,384 species recorded.[42] These achievements reflect not only the country's inherent richness but also the impressive mobilization of its national birding community, including SERNANP personnel, researchers, guides, and enthusiasts.[43]

Furthermore, continued world record Big Day attempts within Peru, such as the Louisiana State University team's documented 354 species in the Abra Patricia/Mayo Valley region in 2014, further solidified the country's image as a place where extraordinary birding feats are possible.[63] These events, coupled with targeted promotional campaigns by PROMPERÚ featuring defined birding routes and events like the Birding Rally Challenge,[51] and international accolades like the Infinite Discovery award in 2018,[16] have collectively cemented Peru's position. This rise was therefore not solely a consequence of Peru's natural endowments but a result of strategic actions—research, publication, competitive participation, and promotion—that effectively leveraged its avian wealth to capture global attention. Refer to Table 11.1 for a timeline of the key milestone of birdwatching tourism in Peru. The country transitioned from under-explored ornithological frontier to accessible, infrastructure-backed destination through combined scientific, institutional, and promotional efforts.

Table 11.1 - Timeline with Key Milestones in the Development of Peruvian Avitourism

Year	Milestone/Event	Description/Significance	Key References
1977	Rediscovery of the White-winged Guan (*Penelope albipennis*)	Species once thought extinct found in NW Peru, leading to heightened conservation awareness.	BirdLife International (2022)
1982	Creation of Laquipampa Reserved Zone (Flanagan & Angulo, 2003)	Protected area established to conserve the White-winged Guan and its habitat (Angulo Pratolongo & Díaz, 2012).	BirdLife International (2022)
1982	Ted Parker & Scott Robinson Big Day (Cocha Cashu)	331 species recorded in 24 hours (on foot and canoe); showcased Amazonian avian richness.	Parker & Robinson (1982)

Year	Milestone/Event	Description/Significance	Key References
2007 (rev. 2010)	Publication of *Birds of Peru*	Comprehensive, illustrated field guide became an essential tool for birders visiting Peru.	Schulenberg et al. (2007; 2010)
2014	LSU Team Big Day (Abra Patricia/Mayo Valley)	354 species recorded in a single day in NE Peru, reinforcing the country's birding potential.	LSUMNS Reports (2014)
2015	First Global Big Day (GBD) Victory	Peru wins inaugural GBD, recording 1,182 species, showcasing global avian leadership.	eBird (2015)
2016	Second GBD Victory	Peru records 1,226 species, reinforcing its premier birding destination status.	eBird (2016)
2018	Infinite Discovery Award	International recognition for Peru's biodiversity and birding promotion campaigns.	PROMPERÚ (2018)
2021	Third GBD Victory	Peru achieves 1,351 species during the event, highlighting resilience post-COVID impacts.	eBird (2021)
2023	First October Big Day Victory	Peru wins with 1,384 species, confirming year-round avian observation capacity.	eBird (2023)
2023–2024	Consistently High Big Day Totals	Peru records ~1,431 species (2023) and ~1,450 species (2024, preliminary), maintaining top global status.	eBird (2023–2024)
Ongoing	Strategic Promotion and Community Mobilization	Birding Rally Challenge, defined birding routes, SERNANP involvement, PROMPERÚ marketing, citizen science growth.	PROMPERÚ, BirdLife International, SERNANP

Source: the authors, 2025, based on data available at ebird (2015-2024), PROMPERÚ, SERNANP, Birdlife International, and publications in the thematic literature.

11.2.1.1. Peru's Transition from Underexplored to Leading Birding Destination

Peru's transformation from a relatively underexplored ornithological frontier to a globally recognized, leading birding destination is a story of revealing and leveraging immense natural capital. For much of the 20th century, while its potential was recognized by scientists undertaking challenging expeditions,[32] Peru's vast avian diversity remained largely inaccessible to the broader birdwatching public. Logistical challenges, limited infrastructure outside major centers, and a lack of comprehensive, user-friendly field resources kept it primarily within the domain of dedicated researchers and the most adventurous birders.

The confluence of several factors catalyzed a dramatic shift. Decades of scientific fieldwork built a critical knowledge base, documenting species distributions and identifying key areas of endemism and diversity.[32] The publication of the *Birds of Peru* field guide in 2007/2010 was a watershed moment, making this knowledge readily accessible and empowering a wider range of visitors to identify the birds they encountered (Schulenberg et. al., 2007).[57] Simultaneously, Peru experienced improvements in political stability and economic growth, facilitating investment in tourism infrastructure, including the development of specialized birding lodges equipped with feeders, canopy towers, and trail networks in strategic locations like Manu, Tambopata, and Abra Patricia.[18]

National institutions played a crucial role in orchestrating this transition. SERNANP's management of an expanding network of protected areas provided the essential framework for conserving bird habitats and offering secure locations for tourism.[39] PROMPERÚ and MINCETUR actively promoted Peru as a birding destination, defining marketable routes (North, Central, South), targeting key international markets, and supporting high-profile events.[42] The country's spectacular and consistent success in the Global Big Day, amplified by the reach of the eBird platform, provided unparalleled international publicity and validation of its status.[6] Consequently, Peru shed its image as solely a destination for rugged expeditions and emerged as a top-tier choice for birders of varying levels of dedication, offering both challenging adventures and comfortable, high-quality birding experiences backed by increasingly sophisticated infrastructure and services.[4]

11.2.2. Bird Diversity and Endemism in Peru

11.2.2.1. Current Species Richness: Nearly 1,900 Species, ~120 Endemics

Peru's claim as a global epicenter of avian diversity rests on staggering numbers. The country is home to approximately 1,900 bird species, a figure that places it consistently among the top three nations globally for species richness.[1] This total represents nearly one-fifth of all bird species known to science, concentrated within a single nation's borders.[4] While the exact count fluctuates slightly based on ongoing taxonomic research and new discoveries documented by bodies like the South American Classification Committee (SACC) and Peru's national committee (CRAP),[36] the magnitude of Peru's avifauna remains exceptional (Moncrieff et. al., 2025).

Beyond sheer numbers, Peru is distinguished by its high level of endemism—species found exclusively within its political boundaries. Current estimates suggest there are around 120 such endemic bird species.[5] Sources vary slightly, with some citing figures like 117 or 138, reflecting the dynamic nature of taxonomy and range documentation. These endemics include some of the most sought-after and iconic birds for visitors, such as the Marvelous Spatuletail (*Loddigesia mirabilis*), the Junin Grebe (*Podiceps taczanowskii*), the White-winged Guan (*Penelope albipennis*), the Long-whiskered Owlet (*Xenoglaux loweryi*), the Inca Wren (*Pheugopedius eisenmanni*), and a host of others spanning diverse families and habitats.[5] This combination of exceptionally high overall species richness and a large number of unique, endemic species creates a powerful draw for the international birdwatching community. It caters both to birders seeking to maximize their species lists with sheer diversity and to the more specialized 'hardcore' listers focused on encountering birds they cannot see anywhere else on Earth, making Peru a destination of unparalleled appeal across different segments of the birding market.[4]

11.2.2.2. Biogeographical Zones: From Andes to Amazon and Dry Forests to Mangroves

The fundamental driver of Peru's extraordinary avian diversity is its complex and varied geography, which generates a wide array of distinct biogeographical zones and habitats within a relatively compact area.[3] These zones transition rapidly, particularly influenced by the dramatic rise of the Andes mountains (see Figure 11.1). Following Udvardy's (1975) classification and general geographic descriptions, the key zones relevant to birdlife include[9]:

- **Coastal Zone**: This long, narrow strip along the Pacific Ocean comprises several provinces. The Pacific Desert Province covers the central and southern coast, characterized by extreme aridity, coastal plains, lomas formations (fog-dependent vegetation), and fertile river valleys.[8] North of latitude 6°S lies the Equatorial Dry Forest Province, a less arid region encompassing Tumbesian dry forests dominated by species like *Prosopis* (carob/algarrobo), *Capparis*, and *Ceiba*, as well as coastal mangroves in the far north.[8] This zone supports a unique avifauna including numerous seabirds (pelicans, boobies, cormorants, penguins, terns), shorebirds (resident and migratory), wetland specialists in coastal lagoons like Paracas and Mejía,[23] and many Tumbesian endemics concentrated in the northwestern dry forests and mangroves.[70]

- **Andean Zone (Montane Zone)**: This vast and complex zone includes the western slopes (often arid, corresponding to the Southern Andes Province), the high Andean plateaus and valleys (Altiplano, Puna grasslands, corresponding to the Puna Province), and the humid eastern slopes (cloud forests, corresponding to the Yungas Province).[8] The Andes create extreme altitudinal gradients, resulting in distinct life zones ranging from montane scrub and *Polylepis* woodlands at high elevations to lush cloud forests and stunted elfin forests on moist slopes.[8] This zone is characterized by high levels of endemism, particularly on isolated mountain ranges and within specific habitats like cloud forests and *Polylepis* patches.[10] (Fjeldså & Rahbek, 1998; Fjeldså & Irestedt, 2009). It is home to iconic species like the Andean Condor, numerous hummingbird species adapted to different altitudes, tanagers, furnariids (ovenbirds and allies), and specialized birds of the high puna, such as flamingos and grebes in high-altitude lakes like Junin.[8]
- **Amazonian Zone (Forest Zone)**: Occupying the largest portion of Peru's territory (nearly 60%), this zone lies east of the Andes and corresponds largely to the Amazonia Province.[8] It includes the High Jungle (*Rupa Rupa* or *selva alta*) on the eastern Andean foothills (roughly 400–1,000 m, though definitions vary) characterized by steep valleys and canyons, and the Low Jungle (*Omagua* or *selva baja*) below ~400 m, an expansive plain of lowland tropical rainforest traversed by major rivers like the Amazon, Marañón, Ucayali, and Madre de Dios.[8] This zone encompasses hyper-diverse habitats including terra firme forest, seasonally flooded forests (*várzea* and *igapó*), oxbow lakes, river islands, bamboo thickets, and palm swamps.[10] Amazonian Peru harbors the highest overall species richness in the country, with an incredible array of antbirds, woodcreepers, parrots, macaws, toucans, tanagers, flycatchers, and countless other families.[4]

The sharp transitions between these major zones—from arid coast over high mountains to humid rainforest—often occur over relatively short geographical distances.[10] This juxtaposition creates exceptional opportunities for birdwatchers, allowing them to experience vastly different ecosystems and avifaunas within a single, logistically feasible trip, a key advantage that enhances Peru's appeal as a birding destination (Moncrieff et. al., 2025).[42] The sheer variety of habitats directly underpins the country's status as a global bird diversity hotspot.[10]

Figure 11.1 - This Map presents the three major zones of Peru (Coastal, Andean, and Amazonian). The map is merely illustrative. It is not precise cartographic representation. Do not reproduce it. Credit: the authors.

11.2.2.3. Endemic Bird Areas (EBAs) and their conservation status

Beyond overall species richness, Peru is critically important for harboring numerous species with restricted ranges. BirdLife International identifies **Endemic Bird Areas (EBAs)** as regions containing the overlapping ranges of two or more bird species with ranges of less than 50,000 km^2.[76] These areas represent centers of endemism and are global priorities for conservation due to their irreplaceability. Peru encompasses, wholly or partially, several significant EBAs, reflecting its complex biogeography and history of speciation,[71] "Endemic Bird Areas (EBAs) identify regions of the world where the distributions of two or more restricted-range bird species overlap; these areas are irreplaceable centres of avian endemism and high priorities for conservation action" (Stattersfield et al., 1998, p. 1). Key EBAs influencing Peru's avifauna include:

- **Tumbesian Region (Peru-Ecuador Dry Forests EBA 045):** Extending from northwestern Ecuador into northwestern Peru, this EBA is renowned for its high number of restricted-range species (around 55-56), making it one of the most important EBAs globally.[70] Within Peru, it covers areas like the Tumbes National Reserve, Cerros de Amotape National Park, and El Angolo Hunting Reserve.[71] The characteristic habitats are seasonal dry forests and scrub.[70] Many of its endemic species are threatened due to habitat degradation from agriculture, grazing, and logging.[71]

- **Marañón Valley EBA (047):** This arid inter-Andean valley is a distinct center of endemism, harboring approximately 22 restricted-range species adapted to its unique dry forest and scrub habitats.[52] It acts as a significant biogeographic barrier for many Andean species.[52] Like the Tumbesian region, its habitats face threats from degradation.[70]

- **Andean EBAs:** Several EBAs cover portions of the Peruvian Andes, reflecting the complex patterns of isolation and speciation along the mountain chain. These include:
  - **North-east Peruvian Cordilleras (EBA 051):** Covering the eastern Andean slopes, including areas like the Cordillera de Colan.[76]
  - **Andean Ridgetop Forests (EBA 050):** Characterized by low-altitude ridgetop elfin forests, also found on the Cordillera de Colan.[76]
  - Other relevant Andean EBAs include the **Central Andean Yungas (EBA 054)** and potentially others depending on classification boundaries. These areas encompass critical habitats like cloud forest, elfin forest, and *Polylepis* woodlands.[76]

The conservation status within many of these EBAs is precarious, "habitat degradation, particularly the conversion of natural forests and woodlands to agriculture and pasture, represents the primary threat to many bird species in the Neotropics, especially impacting endemics concentrated in regions like the Tumbesian dry forests and Andean slopes." (Stotz et al., 1996, p. 14). The Andean EBAs, in particular, face severe threats from deforestation driven by the expansion of agriculture (cash crops, subsistence farming), cattle ranching (leading to burning of elfin forests for pasture), and selective logging (Liang, 2023).[76] Elfin forests, often restricted to ridge tops and harboring unique specialists like the Long-whiskered Owlet, are identified as particularly vulnerable and rapidly disappearing in some areas.[76] Similarly, the Tumbesian and Marañón dry forests suffer from degradation due to agricultural encroachment, wood extraction, and grazing.[70] Climate change is an additional emerging threat across all these regions, potentially altering habitat suitability and species distributions.[21] Conservation efforts within these critical areas are undertaken by SERNANP through the management of national protected areas [39] and by NGOs like ECOAN, which manages reserves like Abra Patricia and works on reforestation projects.[5]

The concentration of unique and often threatened species within EBAs makes them prime targets for specialized birdwatching tourism. This creates a critical nexus: these areas hold irreplaceable global biodiversity value but are often under high pressure (Myers et. al., 2020). Well-managed, sustainable avitourism focused on these endemic species can provide a vital economic rationale and potential funding stream for conservation actions needed to protect these habitats and the unique birds they harbor.[5] The specific interest of birders in seeing rare endemics directly aligns with the conservation priorities highlighted by the EBA concept, positioning targeted avitourism as a potentially powerful conservation tool in these high-priority landscapes.

11.2.2.4. Representative and Iconic Species (e.g., *Rupicola peruvianus*, *Loddigesia mirabilis*)

Peru's avifauna is not just diverse; it is also spectacular, featuring numerous species that are iconic, highly sought-after by birdwatchers, culturally significant, or represent key conservation priorities. These flagship species often serve as ambassadors for Peru's natural heritage, attracting visitors and galvanizing conservation support.

- **Andean Cock-of-the-Rock** (*Rupicola peruvianus*): As Peru's national bird, this stunning cotinga is arguably the country's most famous avian resident. Males, with their brilliant scarlet-orange plumage and prominent crest, perform spectacular lekking displays in cloud forest ravines. Easily observed at accessible sites along the eastern Andean slopes, such as near Aguas Calientes (Machu Picchu) and within Manu National Park, it is a prime target for both dedicated birders and general tourists.

- **Marvelous Spatuletail** (*Loddigesia mirabilis*): This Endangered hummingbird is endemic to a very small area of forest edge and secondary scrub habitat in the Utcubamba Valley region of Amazonas, northern Peru. The male's unique tail, featuring two long racquet-tipped feathers that cross independently, makes it one of the world's most spectacular and desired hummingbirds. Conservation efforts, including habitat protection at sites like Huembo managed by ECOAN, focus on this species, and nearby lodges like Owlet Lodge at Abra Patricia serve as bases for seeking it.

- **Andean Condor** (*Vultur gryphus*): Symbolizing the Andes, this massive vulture is one of the world's largest flying birds. Its impressive soaring flight can be witnessed against the dramatic backdrops of high Andean landscapes, notably in Colca Canyon, where viewpoints like Cruz del Cóndor offer reliable sightings. It also occurs in reserves like Pampa Galeras. The condor holds deep cultural significance dating back to pre-Columbian times.

- **Hoatzin** (*Opisthocomus hoazin*): This unique bird, often described as prehistoric-looking, inhabits Amazonian wetlands, particularly the edges of oxbow lakes and slow-moving rivers in areas like Manu and Tambopata. Its unusual features, including claws on the wings of chicks (used for climbing) and a digestive system based on foregut fermentation, make it a fascinating subject for birders and naturalists.

- **Macaws and Parrots**: The Peruvian Amazon boasts an extraordinary diversity of psittacids. Large, colorful macaws, such as the Scarlet Macaw (*Ara macao*), Blue-and-yellow Macaw (*Ara ararauna*), and Red-and-green Macaw (*Ara chloropterus*), are flagship species of the rainforest. The spectacle of hundreds, sometimes thousands, of parrots and macaws gathering at riverside clay licks (*collpas*) in Tambopata and Manu is a world-renowned wildlife experience and a major draw for tourism.

- **Hummingbirds**: Peru is a global hotspot for hummingbird diversity, with species found from the coast to the high Andes and deep into the Amazon. Beyond the Marvelous Spatuletail, notable species include the Giant Hummingbird (*Patagona gigas*), the world's largest, found in Andean valleys, and numerous endemics like the Royal Sunangel (*Heliangelus regalis*), Purple-backed Sunbeam (*Aglaeactis aliciae*), and Koepcke's Hermit (*Phaethornis koepckeae*). Feeders at lodges throughout the country provide excellent opportunities for observation and photography. (eBird)

- **Tanagers**: This vibrant family (Thraupidae) is exceptionally well-represented, adding splashes of color to forests across Peru, particularly in the Andean cloud forests and Amazonia. Species like the Paradise Tanager, Golden Tanager, and Grass-green Tanager are frequently encountered highlights.

- **Other Notable Endemics/Targets**: The list of significant species is extensive, including the Critically Endangered Royal Cinclodes (*Cinclodes aricomae*) and Junin Grebe (*Podiceps taczanowskii*), the Endangered White-winged Guan (*Penelope albipennis*) (Angulo Pratolongo & Díaz, 2012), the enigmatic Long-whiskered Owlet (*Xenoglaux loweryi*) (Lane & Angulo, 2018), the coastal Peruvian Plantcutter (*Phytotoma raimondii*), and the Machu Picchu endemic Inca Wren (*Pheugopedius eisenmanni*). (eBird)

These iconic and endemic species serve as powerful flagships. Their charisma and rarity attract tourists, generating revenue and interest, while their specific habitat requirements often mean that conservation efforts focused on protecting them provide umbrella benefits for a wide range of other co-occurring biodiversity. Marketing campaigns frequently leverage these species, and conservation organizations often rally support around their plight, demonstrating the crucial dual role these birds play in both tourism and conservation strategies. Table 11.2 presents an overview of Peru's avian biodiversity, the metric and, or, feature, its representative species, and locations based on the data available by the Birdlife International as of 2022.

Table 11.2 - Overview of Peru's Avian Biodiversity and Key Areas

Metric/Feature	Details	Representative Examples/Locations	Key Sources
Total Species Richness	1,861 species setting the country among the top 3 globally (Birdlife.Org); SERNAMP: 1,879 species, and Wordrainforest estimates at 1,892.	Amazonia (highest diversity), Andes, Coast	BirdLife International (2022)
Endemic Species	Approximately 138 species	Marvelous Spatuletail, Junin Grebe, White-winged Guan, Long-whiskered Owlet, Inca Wren	BirdLife International (2022)
Iconic Species	High tourist appeal / National symbol	Andean Cock-of-the-Rock, Andean Condor, Macaws (at clay licks), Hoatzin, Giant Hummingbird	BirdLife International (2022)
Key Biogeographical Zones	Coastal Desert/Dry Forest, Andes, Amazon	Paracas National Reserve, Tumbes Mangroves, Colca Canyon, Lake Junin, Manu National Park, Tambopata National Reserve, Abra Patricia	BirdLife International (2022)
Major Endemic Bird Areas (EBAs)	Concentrations of restricted-range species	Tumbesian Region (NW Peru), Marañón Valley, North-east Peruvian Cordilleras, Central Andean Yungas	BirdLife International (2022)

Source: Table prepared by the authors, 2025, with data from various sources.

Notes:

- **Total Species Richness**: The figure of nearly 1,900 bird species in Peru represents approximately 17% of the world's bird species, underscoring the country's status as a global biodiversity hotspot.
- **Endemic Species**: The number of endemic bird species in Peru is approximately 144, reflecting the country's unique habitats and evolutionary history (Harvey et. al., 2020), representing about 8% of the total species in the country. (BirdLife International)
- **Iconic Species**: Species such as the Andean Cock-of-the-Rock and the Andean Condor are not only emblematic of Peru's rich avifauna but also play significant roles in ecotourism and cultural identity.
- **Key Biogeographical Zones**: Peru's diverse landscapes, from coastal deserts to the high Andes and the Amazon rainforest, contribute to its high bird diversity. (BirdLife International)
- **Major Endemic Bird Areas (EBAs)**: Regions like the Tumbesian Region and the Marañón Valley are critical for the conservation of restricted-range bird species.

11.2.2.5. High tourist appeal / National symbol

Peru is home to numerous bird species that hold both high tourist appeal and cultural or symbolic significance, making them particularly important within the context of avitourism and environmental education.

Andean Cock-of-the-Rock (*Rupicola peruvianus*) (see Fig. 11.2)
Known locally as the "tunki," the Andean Cock-of-the-Rock is Peru's national bird. Males are renowned for their brilliant red-orange plumage and prominent fan-shaped crests, which they showcase during elaborate lekking behaviors to attract females. These displays occur in cloud forest habitats, particularly along the eastern Andean slopes, such as near Aguas Calientes (Machu Picchu) and within Manu National Park. This species is a prime target for both dedicated birders and general tourists (Schulenberg et al., 2020).

Andean Condor (*Vultur gryphus*) (see Fig. 11.3)
Symbolizing the Andes, the Andean Condor is one of the world's largest flying birds, with a wingspan reaching up to 3.3 meters (10 feet 10 inches) and a weight of up to 15 kilograms (33 pounds). Its impressive soaring flight can be witnessed against the dramatic backdrops of high Andean landscapes, notably in Colca Canyon, where viewpoints like Cruz del Cóndor offer reliable sightings. The condor holds deep cultural significance dating back to pre-Columbian times, often associated with the sun deity and considered a symbol of power and health in Andean mythology (Wallace et al., 2022).

Macaws at Clay Licks (see Fig. 11.4)
In the Amazon lowlands, macaws are commonly observed at clay licks, where they congregate to consume mineral-rich soil—a behavior that draws both researchers and birdwatchers. As Brightsmith & Villalobos (2011) has signaled it, "hundreds of birds (up to 17 species) gather daily at river-edge 'clay licks' to consume soil throughout the western Amazon Basin […] The birds, mostly psittacines, apparently consume soil for its high concentration of sodium" (p.595). These clay licks, known as "collpas," are particularly active between November and March, coinciding with the breeding season. Notable locations for observing this phenomenon include the Tambopata National Reserve and Manu National Park, where species such as the Scarlet Macaw (*Ara macao*), Blue-and-yellow Macaw (*Ara ararauna*), and Red-and-green Macaw (*Ara chloropterus*) are commonly seen (Brightsmith & Villalobos, 2011).

Hoatzin (*Opisthocomus hoazin*) (see Fig. 11.5)
The Hoatzin is a unique bird with a specialized digestive system. It is the only known bird species that utilizes foregut fermentation, similar to ruminant mammals, allowing it to digest a diet primarily composed of leaves. This adaptation results in a distinctive odor, earning it the nickname "stinkbird." The Hoatzin inhabits Amazonian wetlands, particularly the edges of oxbow lakes and slow-moving rivers in areas like Manu and Tambopata (Grajal, 1995).

Giant Hummingbird (*Patagona gigas*) (see Fig. 11.6)
The Giant Hummingbird is the largest hummingbird species, measuring approximately 20.5 centimeters (8 inches) in length. Despite its size, it exhibits the characteristic hovering flight of hummingbirds, albeit with slower wingbeats. This species is typically found in high-altitude Andean environments, ranging between 2,000 and 3,400 meters, contributing to the region's hummingbird diversity and attracting birdwatchers interested in observing its unique behaviors (Williamson et al., 2024). These iconic and endemic species serve as powerful flagships. Their charisma and rarity attract tourists, generating revenue and interest, while their specific habitat requirements often mean that conservation efforts focused on protecting them provide umbrella benefits for a wide range of other co-occurring biodiversity. Marketing campaigns frequently leverage these species, and conservation organizations often rally support around their plight, demonstrating the crucial dual role these birds play in both tourism and conservation strategy.

Figure 11.2 - Caption: Andean Cock-of-the-rock (*Rupicola peruvianus sanguinolentus*), male. The species are commonly seen in the cloud forests on the eastern flanks of the Andes, especially around Aguas Calientes (Machu Picchu) and throughout Manu National Park. **Credit:** Photo by Charles J. Sharp, Sharp Photography (www.sharpphotography.co.uk), 7 August 2023. Licensed under Creative Commons Attribution-Share Alike 4.0 International (CC BY-SA 4.0).

Figure 11.3 - Caption: Andean Condor (*Vultur gryphus*) soaring above the Colca Canyon, Peru — one of the world's deepest canyons and a prime site for observing this majestic species in flight. **Credit:** Photo by Thomas Fuhrmann, SnowmanStudios (www.snowmanstudios.de), taken on 22 February 2017 during the PanAmericana overland journey from Ushuaia to Anchorage. Licensed under Creative Commons Attribution-Share Alike 4.0 International (CC BY-SA 4.0).

Figure 11.4 - Caption: Macaws congregating at a clay lick in the Peruvian Amazon — a spectacular natural behavior where these birds consume mineral-rich clay to aid digestion and neutralize toxins from their fruit-heavy diet. **Credit:** Photo by The Next Gen Scientist, 16 October 2015. Licensed under Creative Commons Attribution 2.0 (CC BY 2.0).

Figure 11.5 - Caption: Hoatzin (*Opisthocomus hoazin*), photographed in Manu National Park, Peru — a prehistoric-looking bird known for its unique digestive system and important role in Amazonian wetland ecosystems. **Credit:** Photo by Francesco Veronesi, 5 August 2007. Licensed under Creative Commons Attribution-Share Alike 2.0 Generic (CC BY-SA 2.0).

Figure 11.6 - Caption: Giant Hummingbird (*Patagona gigas*) photographed in Peru — the world's largest hummingbird species, known for its powerful flight and high-altitude Andean habitats. **Credit:** Photo by Thomas Fuhrmann, SnowmanStudios (www.snowmanstudios.de), taken during

the PanAmericana 2017 overland journey. Date: 3 March 2017.

11.2.2.6. Endemic Bird Species of Peru

Peru hosts approximately 120 endemic bird species, reflecting its exceptional biogeographic diversity and the presence of specialized habitats across its territory. These endemic species are of particular interest in ornithological research and avitourism, as they are found nowhere else in the world and often occupy restricted or vulnerable ecosystems. Notable examples include the **Marvelous Spatuletail** (*Loddigesia mirabilis*) (see Fig. 11.7), a highly localized hummingbird endemic to northern Peru and known for its elaborate tail feathers and specialized lekking behavior.

The **Junin Grebe** (*Podiceps taczanowskii*) (see Fig. 11.8) is restricted to Lake Junín in the central highlands and is considered critically endangered due to habitat degradation and water pollution. The **White-winged Guan** (*Penelope albipennis*) (see Fig. 11.9), once thought extinct, inhabits dry forest remnants in northwestern Peru and remains a conservation priority (Angulo Pratolongo & Díaz, 2012).

The **Long-whiskered Owlet** (*Xenoglaux loweryi*) (see Fig. 11.10), discovered only in the 1970s, is one of the most enigmatic nocturnal birds of the Peruvian Andes, with limited distribution in cloud forests of Amazonas and San Martín. Lastly, the **Inca Wren** (*Pheugopedius eisenmanni*) (see Fig. 11.11) is another restricted-range species, typically observed in montane forest undergrowth around Machu Picchu. These species are essential indicators of habitat health and are key elements in the development of conservation-focused bird tourism in Peru.

Figure 11.7 - Caption: Marvelous Spatuletail (*Loddigesia mirabilis*), a highly localized and visually striking hummingbird endemic to northern Peru, known for its unique spatulate tail feathers and complex courtship displays. **Credit:** Photo by Thibaud Aronson, 22 January 2021.

Figure 11.8 - Caption: Adult Junín Grebe *(Podiceps taczanowskii)* swimming in Lake Junín, Peru. This critically endangered species is endemic to the high-altitude freshwater ecosystem of the central Andes and is highly sensitive to water quality and habitat disturbance. **Credit:** Photo taken by Gunar Engblom, Kolibri Expeditions, Birdingperu, 5 February 2016. Licensed under Creative Commons Attribution-Share Alike 4.0 International (CC BY-SA 4.0).

Figure 11.9 - Caption: White-winged Guan (*Penelope albipennis*), locally known as "pava aliblanca," photographed in the Chaparri Reserve, Lambayeque Province, Peru. This large and elusive bird is endemic to the dry forests of northwestern Peru and is a flagship species for conservation in the region. **Credit:** Photo by BluesyPete, 4 November 2019. Licensed under Creative Commons Attribution-Share Alike 3.0 Unported (CC BY-SA 3.0). **Source:** https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Penelope_albipennis1.jpg

Figure 11.10 - Caption: *Long-whiskered Owlet (Xenoglaux loweryi), a rare and elusive species endemic to the cloud forests of northern Peru. Known for its distinctive facial feathers and small size, it is one of the most sought-after birds in Neotropical ornithology and avitourism.* (Lane & Angulo, 2018). **Credit:** Photo by Thibaud Aronson, 20 January 2021. Licensed under Creative Commons Attribution-Share Alike 4.0 International (CC BY-SA 4.0).

Figure 11.11 - Caption: *Inca Wren (Pheugopedius eisenmanni), an endemic species of Peru, commonly found in dense understory vegetation around the Machu Picchu area. Its restricted range and secretive behavior make it a notable species for both conservation and avitourism in the Andean cloud forests.* **Credit:** Photo by Zieger M, 20 November 2024. Licensed under Creative Commons Attribution 4.0 International (CC BY 4.0).

Part III: Birdwatching Tourism in Practice

11.3. Birdwatching Routes and Regions

Peru's immense avian diversity is distributed across its varied landscapes, making strategic route planning essential for birdwatchers aiming to experience a representative sample of its avifauna. National tourism bodies and tour operators have developed recognized circuits that guide visitors through key regions and habitats.

11.3.1. Nationally Recognized Routes (PROMPERÚ): Norte, Centro, Sur

The Commission for the Promotion of Peru for Export and Tourism (PROMPERÚ) actively promotes three main birdwatching circuits, designed to make the country's vast offerings more accessible and marketable to international visitors. These routes traverse distinct biogeographical zones and highlight regional specialties (PROMPERÚ, 2023).

Northern Peru Birding Route

This extensive route is renowned for its high concentration of endemic and range-restricted species. It typically starts in the coastal lowlands near Chiclayo, exploring Tumbesian dry forests such as Bosque de Pómac and Laquipampa Wildlife Refuge, which are habitats for endemics like the Peruvian Plantcutter (*Phytotoma raimondii*) and White-winged Guan (*Penelope albipennis*) (Schulenberg & Parker, 1981; Williams et al., 2005). Birdwatching tourism in Peru is bolstered by specific circuits like the increasingly popular "Northern Peru Birding Route," which offers unique opportunities to see endemic species found only there, such as the Marvelous Spatuletail (Sotomayor et al., 2023).

The route then ascends into the Andes, crossing the unique arid habitats of the Marañón Valley near Cajamarca, home to species like the Marañón Spinetail (*Synallaxis maranonica*) and Yellow-faced Parrotlet (*Forpus xanthops*). It continues through renowned cloud forest areas like Abra Patricia and the Alto Mayo valley, eventually reaching lower montane forests around Moyobamba and Tarapoto. This circuit offers exceptional habitat diversity and is famous for highly sought-after species like the Marvelous Spatuletail (*Loddigesia mirabilis*) and Long-whiskered Owlet (*Xenoglaux loweryi*) (Züchner & Boesman, 2020; Angulo Pratolongo et al., 2008). Birdwatching tourism in Peru is bolstered by specific circuits like the increasingly popular "Northern Peru Birding Route," which offers unique opportunities to see endemic species found only there, such as the *Marvelous Spatuletail* (Sotomayor et al., 2023).

Central Peru Birding Route

This route offers access to some of the highest Andean habitats easily reachable from Lima. It typically involves excursions east of Lima up the Santa Eulalia Canyon towards the Ticlio Pass and the Marcapomacocha area, targeting high-altitude specialists like the Diademed Sandpiper-Plover (*Phegornis mitchellii*) and White-bellied Cinclodes (*Cinclodes palliatus*). The route continues into the Junín department, focusing on the puna grasslands and Lake Junín, which is critical for the endemic and flightless Junín Grebe (*Podiceps taczanowskii*) and the elusive Junín Rail (*Laterallus tuerosi*). From the highlands, birders often descend the eastern slope through areas like the Carpish Tunnel and Unchog forest towards Tingo María or Oxapampa/Satipo, encountering cloud forest species and foothill birds. This route is known for its challenging altitudes but provides access to a unique set of high Andean endemics and specialties (Puhakka et al., 2011).

Southern Peru Birding Route

This is the most popular and well-developed tourist circuit in Peru, seamlessly blending world-class cultural attractions with exceptional birding opportunities. It covers a vast altitudinal range, from the coastal deserts and wetlands near Paracas and Nazca, up through the high Andes around Arequipa (Colca Canyon for Andean Condors), Puno (Lake Titicaca), and Cusco (Sacred Valley, Abra Málaga pass, Machu Picchu), and finally descending into the hyper-diverse Amazonian lowlands of Manu National Park and the Tambopata/Madre de Dios region. This route offers incredible contrasts and a huge potential species list, including coastal endemics, high Andean specialists, cloud forest birds like the Andean Cock-of-the-Rock (*Rupicola peruvianus*) and Inca Wren (*Pheugopedius eisenmanni*), and the staggering diversity of the southeastern Amazon. The well-established tourism infrastructure makes this route accessible to a wider range of birders, including those combining birding with cultural tourism (BirdLife International, 2024).

The formal structuring of these national routes by PROMPERÚ provides a valuable framework, simplifying trip planning for both independent birders and international tour operators. It helps organize the vastness of Peru's offerings into manageable itineraries. However, this focus on defined circuits, particularly the heavily visited Southern Route, carries the inherent risk of concentrating tourism pressure and impacts in specific areas, potentially leading to localized overuse and neglecting other regions with high potential. Sustainable management therefore requires not only promoting these routes but also monitoring their impacts and potentially developing strategies for diversification to distribute benefits and pressures more evenly (Puhakka et al., 2011).

11.3.2. Regional hotspots and strategic areas

11.3.2.1. Regional Hotspots and Strategic Areas

Within the broader national routes, specific locations stand out as "hotspots"—areas renowned for exceptional bird diversity, unique species assemblages, established infrastructure, or strategic importance for conservation and tourism. These sites often serve as anchors for birding itineraries:

A-Manu and Madre de Dios:
This region in southeastern Peru is synonymous with Amazonian biodiversity. Manu National Park, a UNESCO World Heritage site, protects a vast area from high Andean grasslands down to lowland rainforest, boasting over 1,000 bird species, "the Manu Biosphere Reserve in southeastern Peru is globally renowned for its extraordinary biodiversity, encompassing an altitudinal gradient from Andean grasslands to lowland Amazonian rainforest and hosting over 1,000 bird species, making it a prime destination for ecotourism and scientific research." (Terborgh, 1999, p. 8). Access is typically via the Manu road (for cloud forest birding) or by river into the lowland reserved zone. The adjacent Tambopata National Reserve and the surrounding Madre de Dios region offer similar incredible diversity, with easier access from Puerto Maldonado. This area is famed for its accessible macaw and parrot clay licks, numerous oxbow lakes teeming with waterbirds and Giant Otters, extensive trail systems through pristine rainforest, and canopy towers offering access to the forest's upper layers. Numerous specialized ecolodges, such as the Manu Birding Lodge and lodges operated by companies like Rainforest Expeditions, cater specifically to birders and nature tourists. The Madre de Dios region consistently

ranks among the highest areas for species recorded during the Global Big Day, underscoring its richness and the activity of birders and researchers there. It serves as a major hub for both ecotourism and tropical ecology research.

B-Abra Patricia and Alto Mayo:
Located along the Northern Route in the departments of Amazonas and San Martín, this cloud forest region is a critical center for Andean endemism. The Abra Patricia-Alto Nieva Private Conservation Area and Conservation Concession, managed by the Peruvian NGO ECOAN with support from international partners like American Bird Conservancy, protects over 24,000 acres adjacent to the Alto Mayo Protection Forest. This area is home to more than 500 bird species. It is famed as one of the most reliable sites for the Endangered and enigmatic Long-whiskered Owlet, as well as other threatened and range-restricted species like the Ochre-fronted Antpitta, Royal Sunangel, Johnson's Tody-Tyrant, and the Critically Endangered Yellow-tailed Woolly Monkey (Angulo Pratolongo et al., 2008). Infrastructure includes the well-regarded Owlet Lodge at Abra Patricia, offering comfortable accommodation, extensive trails, a canopy tower, and feeding stations (including for antpittas). Nearby associated sites include the Huembo Conservation Center, focused on the Marvelous Spatuletail, and Waqanki Lodge near Moyobamba, known for its hummingbird feeders. The area offers excellent night birding opportunities. Its strategic location along the Northern Route and its concentration of target species make it a key stop for serious birders.

C-Manglares de Tumbes:
Situated in the extreme northwest of Peru on the border with Ecuador, the Manglares de Tumbes National Sanctuary protects a vital mangrove ecosystem within the Tumbesian EBA. This habitat, unique in Peru, supports a specialized avifauna, including resident waterbirds, numerous migratory species, and Tumbesian endemics adapted to mangrove and adjacent dry forest habitats. Approximately 148 bird species have been recorded in the sanctuary. Key activities include boat or kayak tours through the mangrove channels, particularly during low tide, and birdwatching along trails. The sanctuary is part of a larger complex of protected areas in the region, including the Cerros de Amotape National Park and Tumbes National Reserve, which protect extensive areas of Tumbesian dry forest.

D-Paracas and Mejía Wetlands:
These two coastal sites are crucial hotspots for waterbirds, seabirds, and migrants. Paracas National Reserve, south of Lima in the Ica department, protects a significant stretch of coastal desert and marine ecosystems (Majluf and Reyes, 2009; Valdés-Velásquez et. al., 2023). It is renowned for its large populations of seabirds, including the endemic Humboldt Penguin, Peruvian Pelican, Inca Tern, and Guanay Cormorant, particularly visible around the nearby Ballestas Islands. The reserve's bays and beaches are also important for migratory shorebirds. The reserve hosts approximately 216 bird species. Further south, near Arequipa, the Lagunas de Mejía National Sanctuary is a designated Ramsar site, recognized as a critical stopover point for Nearctic migratory birds along the Pacific coast. This complex of coastal lagoons, marshes, and beaches hosts over 200 resident and migratory bird species, including various ducks, rails, gulls, terns, and shorebirds.

These hotspots exemplify the diversity of birding experiences available in Peru. Their strategic importance stems from their concentration of unique biodiversity, the presence of supporting tourism infrastructure (lodges, guides), and their frequent inclusion within established protected areas, making them focal points for both conservation action and tourism development.

Valdés-Velásquez et al. (2023) demonstrate that integrating ecological and cultural priorities into the planning of rapidly urbanizing coastal zones like Paracas Bay is both possible and necessary. Despite the area's outstanding natural heritage, ongoing development has outpaced the adoption of biodiversity safeguards in municipal, regional, and national policies. The authors warn that, unless conservation goals are formally embedded in all levels of planning and sectoral regulations, the long-term environmental health and socio-economic stability of Paracas Bay will be jeopardized (Valdés-Velásquez et al., 2023).

Findings are organized across four analytical dimensions—legal frameworks, institutional engagement, social support, and information availability—drawing on the Convention on Biological Diversity's 2020 Action Plan for 'Biodiversity Mainstreaming' (see 11.4.6., conclusion section) and the evaluation criteria proposed by Karlsson-Vinkhuyzen et al. (2017). Each dimension was tailored to the local context and then reviewed by fifteen independent experts to ensure relevance and rigor. This structured assessment highlights existing strengths, uncovers critical data and governance gaps, and recommends priority actions to embed biodiversity considerations effectively into Paracas Bay's coastal development trajectory (Valdés-Velásquez et. al., 2023).

11.3.2.2. A selection of some key birding hotspots and Points of Interest (POIs) across Peru

The map (see Fig. 11.12) presented in the next paragraphs illustrates a selection of key birding hotspots and points of interest (POIs) across Peru, compiled by the platform Perubirds in collaboration with Guiacalles. These locations are distributed throughout the country's diverse ecological regions, from coastal deserts and Andean highlands to Amazonian lowlands, reflecting Peru's exceptional ornithological richness. This map not only guides birdwatchers to priority locations but also reflects how bird tourism infrastructure has expanded across regions with distinct ecological and cultural characteristics. Its utility lies in supporting itinerary planning, conservation awareness, and the promotion of lesser-known sites that hold high potential for sustainable nature tourism in Peru. Also refer to Table 11.3 with a summary helping to easily visualize the major Peruvian birdwatching routes and key Hotspots

Green circles indicate areas of significant birding activity or infrastructure, such as ecolodges, reserves, and observation trails. Notable sites in the **northern region** include *Chaparri Ecolodge* and *Manglares de Churute*, which are important for dry forest endemics and wetland species, respectively. The **central highlands** feature the *Junín Lake* area, known for the endemic and critically endangered *Junin Grebe*, while *Bosque Unchog* stands out for its cloud forest specialists. Moving southward, the **southern Andes** host vital observation zones like *Abra Málaga*, a key location for high-elevation endemics, and *Lagunas de Mejía*, an important coastal wetland for migratory shorebirds. In the **Amazon region**, sites such as *Laguna Sandoval* and *Muyuna Lodge* offer access to rich lowland rainforest bird communities, including macaws, toucans, and antbirds. Many of these hotspots also overlap with protected areas or conservation initiatives, highlighting the synergy between biodiversity protection and avitourism.

Figure 11.12 - Key Birding Hotspots and Points of Interest (POIs) across Peru

Table 11.3 - Major Peruvian Birdwatching Routes and Key Hotspots

Route/Region	Key Areas/Hotspots	Primary Habitats	Notable Species/Endemics	Key Sources
Northern Route	Tumbes, Chiclayo, Cajamarca, Marañón Valley, Moyobamba, Tarapoto, Abra Patricia	Coastal Dry Forest, Mangroves, Arid Scrub, Cloud Forest, Montane Forest	White-winged Guan, Marvelous Spatuletail, Long-whiskered Owlet, Tumbesian endemics, Marañón endemics	[51]
Central Route	Lima Coast, Santa Eulalia, Marcapomacocha, Lake Junin, Carpish Tunnel, Oxapampa	Coastal Desert, High Andes Grassland (Puna), *Polylepis*, High-altitude Lakes, Cloud Forest	Junin Grebe, Junin Rail, Diademed Sandpiper-Plover, Golden-backed Mountain Tanager, White-cheeked Cotinga	[51]

Southern Route	Paracas, Nazca, Arequipa, Colca Canyon, Lake Titicaca, Cusco, Machu Picchu, Manu NP, Tambopata NR	Coastal Desert, Wetlands, High Andes (Puna), Cloud Forest, Lowland Amazon Rainforest	Andean Condor, Inca Tern, Giant Hummingbird, Andean Cock-of-the-Rock, Macaws, Hoatzin, Manu/Tambopata specialties	23
Manu/Madre de Dios Hotspot	Manu NP, Tambopata NR, Los Amigos CICRA	Lowland & Foothill Rainforest, Oxbow Lakes, Bamboo, Clay Licks	Extreme species diversity, Macaws, Antbirds, Hoatzin, Giant Otter	10
Abra Patricia/Alto Mayo Hotspot	Abra Patricia PCA, Alto Mayo PF, Huembo, Waqanki	Cloud Forest, Elfin Forest, Montane Forest	Long-whiskered Owlet, Marvelous Spatuletail, Royal Sunangel, Ochre-fronted Antpitta	35

Source: Table prepared by the authors, 2025, based on data from various sources.

11.3.3. Role of the 'Natural Protected Areas' (*Áreas Naturales Protegidas* - ANPs) and eBird data integration

Peru's comprehensive network of Áreas Naturales Protegidas (ANPs), managed by SERNANP, constitutes the cornerstone of the country's strategy for conserving its immense biodiversity, including its avifauna. This network, encompassing approximately 17.9% of the national territory across more than 270 units (including nationally administered areas, regional conservation areas, and private conservation areas), safeguards a vast array of ecosystems (refer to Fig. 11.13). From iconic National Parks like Manu, Huascarán, and Cerros de Amotape, to National Reserves like Tambopata and Paracas, National Sanctuaries like Manglares de Tumbes and Lagunas de Mejía, and numerous other categories, these ANPs provide the essential protected habitats where a majority of Peru's bird species reside and where much of the country's birdwatching tourism takes place.

In recent years, the management and appreciation of birdlife within these ANPs have been significantly enhanced by the integration of data from eBird, the global online platform for citizen science bird observations managed by the Cornell Lab of Ornithology. eBird allows birdwatchers – from casual observers to professional researchers and guides – to submit checklists of birds seen at specific locations and times, creating a massive, publicly accessible database on bird distribution, abundance, and seasonality. This data is increasingly utilized for scientific research, conservation planning, and monitoring population trends.

Crucially, there is a strong synergy between the ANP network and the eBird platform in Peru. Many eBird "hotspots" (locations with high checklist submissions and species diversity) correspond directly to ANPs or specific sites within them, such as lodges or trailheads. Furthermore, SERNANP itself actively participates in and utilizes eBird. Agency staff, park rangers, and associated projects frequently contribute checklists, sometimes using official institutional accounts (e.g., "Reserva Nacional Calipuy - SERNANP", "SERNANP BPAM"), particularly during coordinated events like the Global Big Day and October Big Day. This institutional engagement not only enriches the eBird database with valuable data from protected areas but also signifies governmental recognition of citizen science's utility.

This dynamic interplay between the formal protected area system (ANPs managed by SERNANP) and the global citizen science network (eBird) creates a powerful feedback loop. The ANPs provide the legally protected habitats necessary for bird conservation and tourism. eBird, in turn, provides accessible, near real-time data on bird occurrences within these habitats, generated by a vast network of observers. This data enhances the visibility of ANPs as birding destinations, helps birders plan their trips and locate target species, and provides valuable information for SERNANP and researchers to monitor bird populations, track changes over time, and inform conservation management decisions within the protected areas. This integration strengthens both conservation effectiveness and the quality of the tourism experience.

As part of a national performance audit of Peru's protected natural areas, the Contraloría General de la República carried out an evaluation of 64 Áreas Naturales Protegidas (ANP) across the country, highlighting both achievements and challenges in their management. This initiative, conducted within the scope of an institutional review of SERNANP (Servicio Nacional de Áreas Naturales Protegidas por el Estado), revealed that while 28 ANP are effectively advancing toward their conservation goals, a significant number—32 ANP—show clear opportunities for improvement in areas such as administration, enforcement, and resource use. More critically, four ANP were found to lack basic economic resources required for their functioning, making them particularly vulnerable. These include the Bosques de Protección de Puquio Santa Rosa (La Libertad), Pagaibamba (Cajamarca), Aledaño a la Bocatoma del Canal Nuevo Imperial (Lima), and the Coto de Caza de Sunchubamba (between Cajamarca and La Libertad). The findings, published through the INDIMAPA platform (see Fig. 11.13), underscore the need for more targeted support, better resource allocation, and strategic planning to ensure that Peru's globally significant biodiversity is not only protected in law but effectively managed in practice. This assessment reveals both strong and weak points in Peru's system of natural protected areas:

- The majority of high-performing ANPs are concentrated in areas with strong conservation investment and avitourism infrastructure, such as Manu, Tambopata, and Machu Picchu.
- Medium-ranked areas represent strategic priorities for targeted improvements, particularly in community reserves and transitional forest regions.
- The low-ranked sites often correspond with those underfunded or facing pressure from agricultural encroachment or institutional weakness.

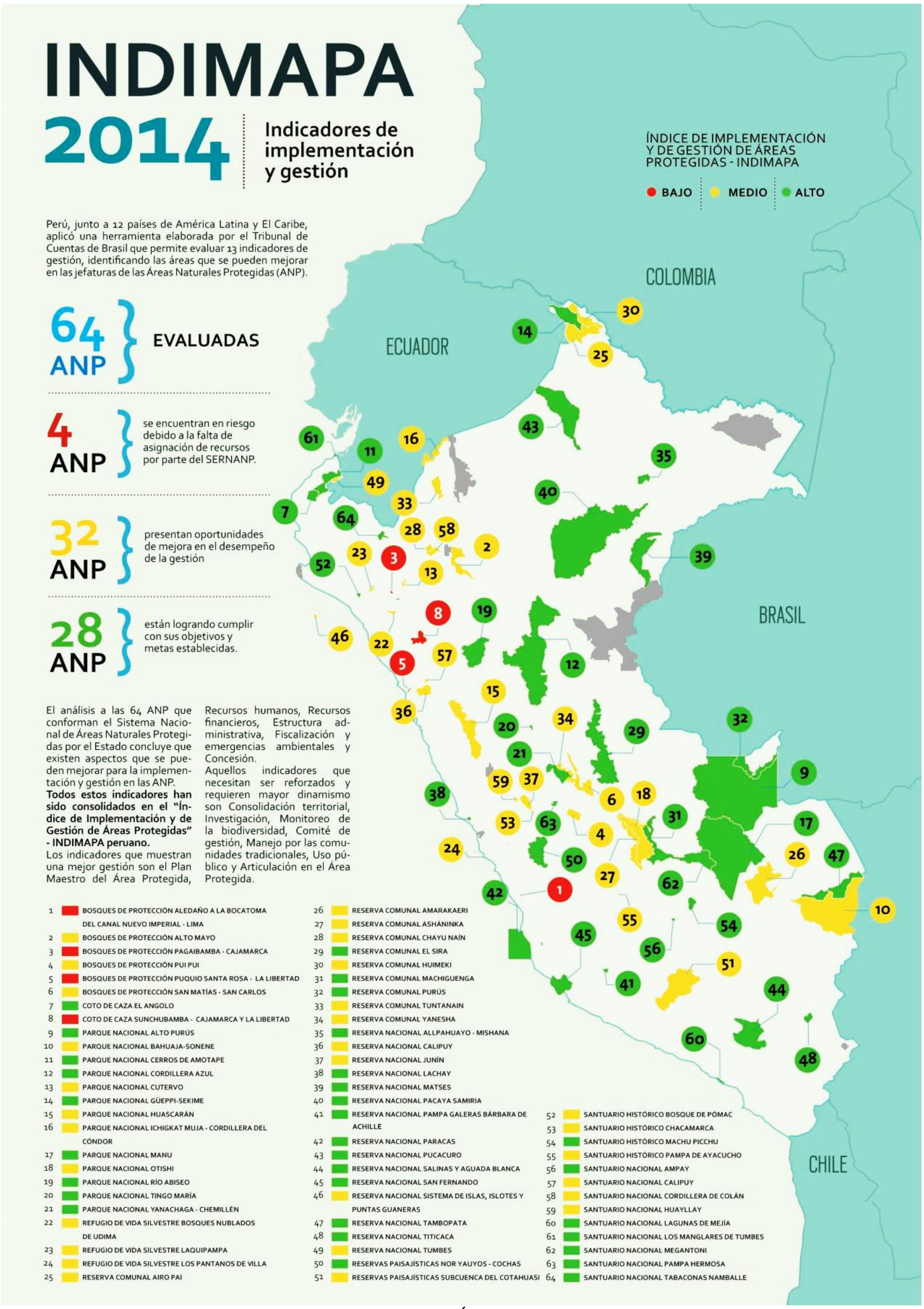


Figure 11.13 - Peru's comprehensive network of Áreas Naturales Protegidas (ANPs), managed by SERNANP. This network, encompassing approximately 17.9% of the national territory across more than 270 units. **Source / Credit**: ANDINA - Agencia Peruana de Noticias. INDIMAPA, (FIN) NDP/LZD, published on 14/12/2014. Available at, https://andina.pe/agencia/noticia-contraloria-evaluo-gestion-64-areas-naturales-protegidas-al-auditar-al-sern-535505.aspx

11.3.3.1. Overview and Analytical Description

INDIMAPA 2014 presents a national-level assessment of 64 protected areas in Peru, using an index developed in collaboration with Latin American countries and adapted from Brazil's *Tribunal de Cuentas* methodology. The map categorizes these areas based on the quality of implementation and management according to specific criteria such as human and financial resources, territorial consolidation, enforcement, monitoring, and local governance. The evaluated protected areas are classified into three performance levels:

- 🟥 **Low** (Red): Areas with serious management deficiencies.
- 🟡 **Medium** (Yellow): Areas with important opportunities for improvement.
- 🟢 **High** (Green): Areas showing effective management and reaching objectives.

Summary Statistics:

- **64 ANP Evaluated**
  - 🟥 **4 ANP** in *high-risk* due to insufficient resource allocation
  - 🟡 **32 ANP** with *improvement opportunities*
  - 🟢 **28 ANP** *meeting objectives and targets*

The following Tables 11.4, 11.5 and 11.6 help to present the data of the Indimapa by specific region and related protected areas.

Table 11.4. ANP with LOW Implementation and Management (Red – 4 Areas)

Nº	Protected Area Name	Region
3	Bosque de Protección Pui Pui	Junín
5	Bosque de Protección San Matías-San Carlos	Ucayali
8	Parque Nacional Cerros de Amotape	Tumbes/Piura
57	Santuario Nacional Lagunas de Mejía	Arequipa

Table 11.5. ANP with MEDIUM Implementation and Management (Yellow – 32 Areas)

Nº	Protected Area Name	Region(s)
1	Bosques de Protección Aledaños a la Bocatoma del Canal Nuevo Imperial	Lima
2	Bosque de Protección Alto Mayo	San Martín
4	Bosque de Protección Pagaibamba	Cajamarca
6	Bosque de Protección San Matías-San Carlos	Pasco
7	Parque Nacional Tingo María	Huánuco
10	Reserva Nacional de Tumbes	Tumbes
11	Reserva Nacional de Lachay	Lima
12	Reserva Nacional de Paracas	Ica
13	Reserva Nacional Salinas y Aguada Blanca	Arequipa/ Moquegua
14	Reserva Nacional Allpahuayo-Mishana	Loreto
15	Reserva Nacional Pacaya Samiria	Loreto

Nº	Protected Area Name	Region(s)
16	Parque Nacional Yanachaga Chemillén	Pasco
18	Santuario Nacional Megantoni	Cusco
19	Santuario Nacional Pampa Hermosa	Junín
21	Reserva Comunal Asháninka	Junín/Ucayali
23	Reserva Comunal Yanesha	Pasco
24	Reserva Comunal Amarakaeri	Madre de Dios
25	Reserva Comunal Airo Pai	Loreto
26	Reserva Comunal Huimeki	Ucayali
27	Reserva Comunal Chayu Nain	Loreto
28	Reserva Comunal Shawi	Loreto
29	Reserva Comunal El Sira	Ucayali/Huánuco/ Pasco
32	Parque Nacional Otishi	Cusco/Junín
33	Santuario Nacional Calipuy	La Libertad
34	Santuario Nacional Ampay	Apurímac
38	Santuario Histórico Chacamarca	Junín
44	Santuario Nacional Cordillera de Colán	Amazonas
45	Santuario Nacional Los Manglares de Tumbes	Tumbes
46	Santuario Nacional Tabaconas Namballe	Cajamarca
52	Santuario Nacional Lagunas de Mejía (duplicate entry for contextual cross-reference)	Arequipa
55	Santuario Nacional Pampa Hermosa	Junín
56	Santuario Nacional Los Manglares de Tumbes (duplicate)	Tumbes

Table 11.6. ANP with HIGH Implementation and Management (Green – 28 Areas)

Nº	Protected Area Name	Region(s)
9	Parque Nacional del Manu	Cusco/Madre de Dios
17	Reserva Nacional Matsés	Loreto
20	Reserva Comunal Purús	Ucayali
22	Reserva Comunal Machiguenga	Cusco
30	Parque Nacional Ichigkat Muja - Cordillera del Cóndor	Amazonas
31	Parque Nacional Sierra del Divisor	Loreto/Ucayali
35	Reserva Nacional Tambopata	Madre de Dios
36	Santuario Histórico Bosque de Pómac	Lambayeque
37	Santuario Histórico de Machu Picchu	Cusco
39	Santuario Nacional Ampay	Apurímac
40	Santuario Nacional Calipuy	La Libertad
41	Santuario Nacional de Huayllay	Pasco
42	Santuario Nacional Cordillera de Colán	Amazonas

Nº	Protected Area Name	Region(s)
43	Santuario Nacional Los Manglares de Tumbes	Tumbes
47	Santuario Nacional Tabaconas Namballe	Cajamarca
48	Santuario Nacional Tingo María	Huánuco
49	Santuario Histórico de Chacamarca	Junín
50	Santuario Histórico de Pampas Galeras – Bárbara D'Achille	Ayacucho
51	Santuario Nacional Lagunas de Mejía	Arequipa
53	Santuario Nacional Los Manglares de Tumbes	Tumbes
54	Santuario Nacional Pampa Hermosa	Junín
58	Reserva Nacional de Salinas y Aguada Blanca	Arequipa/ Moquegua
59	Reserva Nacional San Fernando	Ica
60	Santuario Nacional Manglares de Tumbes	Tumbes
61	Santuario Nacional Megantoni	Cusco
62	Santuario Nacional Tabaconas Namballe	Cajamarca
63	Santuario Nacional Tingo María	Huánuco

11.3.4. The Birdwatcher Profile and Market Segmentation

Understanding the characteristics, motivations, and behaviors of birdwatchers visiting Peru is crucial for effective tourism planning, marketing, and management that aligns with sustainability goals. While specific, up-to-date, Peru-focused market research can be limited, available studies and global trends provide valuable insights such as the '*Ornithology tourism market insights – Growth & forecast 2024–2034*', published by the Future Market Insights (2024).

11.3.4.1. Demographic and Psychographic Profiles

Data from Peru's national tourism planning documents, such as the Plan Estratégico Nacional de Turismo (PENTUR), indicate that international birdwatchers visiting Peru are predominantly aged between 35 and 59 years, belong to higher socioeconomic strata (A and B+), and typically possess high levels of education (MINCETUR, 2016). While both men and women participate, some specialized segments might show a male skew. However, more recent global market analyses suggest a broadening demographic, with increasing participation from younger travelers (under 35) and older age groups (65+), indicating diversification beyond the traditional middle-aged profile (Balmford et al., 2009).

Psychographically, birdwatchers visiting Peru exhibit a strong affinity for nature, wildlife, and conservation. They are often motivated by a desire for authentic experiences, learning, and discovery. There is a growing emphasis within the broader birding community on environmental sustainability and ethical travel practices, with many birders actively seeking low-impact travel options and supporting businesses that demonstrate commitment to conservation and community well-being (Wilkins et al., 2019). This inherent profile—educated, relatively affluent, and environmentally conscious—presents a significant opportunity for Peru. This market segment is potentially highly receptive to sustainable tourism models that link their travel expenditures directly to the conservation of the birds and habitats they come to see, provided these connections are communicated effectively and transparently.

11.3.4.2. Softcore vs. Hardcore: Motivations, Behaviors, Spending

The birdwatching market is not monolithic; it encompasses a spectrum of dedication and intensity. A useful distinction is often made between "hardcore" (or enthusiast/committed) and "softcore" (or casual/active) birders, although these categories represent points on a continuum (Großmann et. al., 2025; Handler, 2022; Chen & Chen, 2015).

- **Hardcore/Enthusiast Birders**: For this segment, birding is the primary, often sole, motivation for travel. They possess deep ornithological knowledge, often maintain detailed life lists (tracking species seen), and are driven by the challenge of finding rare, endemic, or specific target species ("lifers"). They are typically willing to travel long distances, endure physically demanding conditions (e.g., high altitudes, remote locations, basic accommodation), and dedicate extensive time in the field. They utilize specialized equipment like high-powered binoculars, spotting scopes, professional camera gear, and sound recording devices. Their spending is often concentrated on specialized birding tours led by expert guides, longer trip durations, and potentially higher overall trip costs to access prime birding areas. They are active users of platforms like eBird for recording sightings and planning trips (eBird, 2023).

- **Softcore/Casual/Active Birders**: While genuinely interested in birds and nature, birdwatching may be one component of a broader travel experience that includes cultural sightseeing, general wildlife viewing, relaxation, or adventure activities. Their motivation might be less about ticking off specific species and more about enjoying the overall natural environment and seeing charismatic or colorful birds. Their knowledge level and equipment may be less specialized. They might prefer more comfortable accommodation and less strenuous itineraries. This segment may travel independently, join general nature tours, or participate in shorter, less intensive birding excursions. Their spending patterns might reflect a broader range of interests.

Peru's diverse offerings uniquely position it to cater to both ends of this spectrum. The staggering species count and high number of endemics are powerful magnets for the hardcore birder seeking ornithological challenges and unique sightings. Simultaneously, the presence of spectacular landscapes, iconic and easily observable species (like condors, macaws, Cock-of-the-Rock), and the possibility of combining birding with world-renowned cultural sites like Machu Picchu appeal strongly to the softcore segment. Recognizing these distinct motivations is crucial for developing targeted marketing messages and designing appropriate tourism products, from intensive, multi-week endemic-focused tours to shorter, more comfortable trips blending birds with other attractions.

11.3.4.3. Key Source Markets (UK, USA, Canada, Australia)

Identifying the primary geographic origins of birdwatchers visiting Peru helps focus marketing and promotional efforts. Data from national tourism plans (PENTUR) has historically pointed to the United States, the United Kingdom, Germany, and the Nordic countries as key source markets for this specialized segment (MINCETUR, 2016; Yli-Hakala, 2010). Anecdotal evidence from tour operators and the broader nature travel industry often corroborates this, frequently adding Canada and Australia to the list of significant English-speaking markets.

The concentration of visitors from these developed nations aligns with the general profile of international birders as being relatively affluent and having a cultural tradition of interest in natural history and international travel. PROMPERÚ has recognized the potential scale of this market, estimating that out of approximately 6 million people globally who travel internationally for birdwatching, around 2.4 million express interests in visiting Peru (PROMPERÚ, 2022). This underscores the substantial, albeit niche, market potential Peru aims to capture. The origin of these tourists suggests that marketing strategies should prioritize channels popular within these specific countries, such as specialized birding magazines (e.g., BirdWatching, British Birds), online forums and blogs, social media groups dedicated to birding, participation in international birding fairs, and collaboration with specialized tour operators based in these source markets.

11.3.4.4. Travel patterns: length of stay, spending, planning behavior

Birdwatching tourism in Peru is characterized by distinct travel patterns that differentiate it from mass tourism. A key feature is the extended length of stay. Due to the time required to travel between diverse regions and adequately explore bird-rich habitats, trips focused on birding are often long. According to PROMPERÚ, birdwatching tourists in Peru stay on average between 16 and 18 nights, significantly longer than the average stay of general tourists (Arbio)

This extended duration, combined with the specialized nature of the activities (requiring expert guides, specialized lodging, travel to remote areas), translates into relatively high per-trip expenditure. PROMPERÚ estimates that birdwatching tourists spend between US$2,795 and $3,221 per person per trip, highlighting avitourism as a high-yield market segment that contributes significantly to foreign exchange earnings relative to the number of visitors.

Planning behavior among birders visiting Peru is typically thorough and often begins well in advance of the travel date. The internet serves as a primary information source, alongside specialized birding magazines, online forums, recommendations from fellow birders, and detailed information provided by tour operators. Birders often research specific target species, locations, and optimal timing. Travel arrangements show a mix: a notable proportion (estimated at 34% by PROMPERÚ) opt for pre-arranged package tours offered by specialized birding companies, which handle logistics, guiding, and accommodation. However, a significant number, particularly within the enthusiast/hardcore segment, prefer independent travel, meticulously planning their own itineraries, although they frequently hire local guides for specific sites or regions.

These travel patterns underscore the nature of avitourism as a high-value niche (Steven et. al., 2015). The long stays and high spending highlight its economic importance. The reliance on specialized information channels and the long planning lead times provide opportunities for targeted marketing and early engagement by Peruvian destinations and service providers. The demand for both package tours and support for independent travel necessitates a diverse range of service offers, from fully guided expeditions to logistical support, vehicle hire, and access to knowledgeable local guides.

Birdwatching tourism has become an increasingly important segment within Peru's broader ecotourism strategy. To better understand the profile, preferences, and satisfaction levels of birdwatchers, the Peruvian Ministry of Foreign Trade and Tourism (MINCETUR) conducted a detailed survey during the first quarter of 2024. This study provides essential empirical data on both domestic and international tourists who visited selected protected areas, offering valuable insights into behaviors, motivations, and areas for strategic improvement.

11.3.4.5. Profile and Characteristics of International and Domestic Birdwatchers Visiting in Peru's Protected Areas

In 2024, the Peruvian Ministry of Foreign Trade and Tourism (*Ministerio de Comercio Exterior y Turismo*, MINCETUR) conducted a comprehensive study titled *Estudio del Perfil y Características del Turista Observador de Aves*, aiming to **profile domestic and international birdwatchers visiting Peru's protected areas**. Based on 1,329 face-to-face surveys carried out across seven national protected areas (ANPs) during **December 2023 and January 2024**, the study offers valuable **insights into visitor demographics, travel behaviors, motivations, and satisfaction levels**. The surveyed sites included major conservation hotspots such as Parque Nacional Tingo María, Parque Nacional Yanachaga Chemillén, Reserva Nacional Pacaya-Samiria, and Parque Nacional del Manu, among others, covering six regions: Cusco, Huánuco, Lambayeque, Loreto, Madre de Dios, and Pasco.

Among the key findings, **most visitors (78.7%) were first-time tourists to these protected areas**, a figure rising sharply to 97.2% among foreign visitors. Regarding travel composition, 30.4% traveled with friends or relatives without children, followed closely by 28.7% who visited with a partner. Smaller groups included direct family groups (17.4%) and solo travelers (10.5%).

Visitors overwhelmingly cited **the natural landscape and environment as their primary source of satisfaction (85.7%), particularly among Peruvian nationals (87.0%)**. Other significant reasons for positive experiences included the variety of animals (39.4%) and the richness of plant life (31.2%). Conversely, the principal sources of dissatisfaction were the prevalence of mosquitos and insects (26.8%), the scarcity of information about attractions (20.5%), and the lack of signage and established routes (19.9%).

Regarding accommodation, **the majority (61.6%) stayed in lodges**, bungalows, or cabins, while 19.2% camped and 8.4% opted for hostels. Visitors typically remained for one to two nights (53.3%), although a notable 38.9% stayed three to four nights. The average expenditure for tourists was, in *Soles* - the Peruvian currency, S/ 1,282 (**USD 340.32**), whereas excursionists—those making shorter trips—spent an average of S/ 88 (**USD 23.34**).

The **primary motivation for visiting was contact with nature (25.1%)**, followed by an interest in exploring the jungle (21.2%) and the desire to rest and relax (19.1%). Although birdwatching specifically accounted for 34.2% of activities undertaken, hiking (85.0%) and boating (34.6%) were more predominant. When organizing their trips, a majority (53.2%) traveled independently, while 27.6% arranged services through a local travel agency, and 13.2% through an agency located elsewhere in Peru.

Among international visitors, 89.7% were visiting Peru for the first time, with 99.1% staying four nights or more. The study found that 36.3% of all visitors engaged directly in birdwatching activities. Within this segment, a classification by engagement level revealed that **2.3% were classified as hardcore birdwatchers** (dedicating all their time to the activity), **23.4% as softcore birdwatchers** (spending more than 40% of their time on birdwatching), and **74.3% as occasional birdwatchers** (spending less than 40%).

Key decision-making **factors when selecting a birdwatching destination** included the **diversity of species (58.6%)**, the possibility of observing rare or uncommon birds (45.5%), and the opportunity to observe a "lifer"—a species observed for the first time by the birdwatcher (39.4%). The principal birdwatching destinations identified were Reserva Nacional Tambopata (42.4%), Moyobamba–Tarapoto (28.3%), and the Amazon region (23.2%).

Internationally, Peru emerged as the leading birdwatching destination for **foreign visitors (90.6%)**, ahead of Brazil (22.6%), Ecuador (17.0%), Colombia (15.1%), and Costa Rica (11.3%). Most birdwatchers (76.8%) traveled with their own equipment, although 20.2% rented equipment at the destination, and 3.0% purchased new equipment upon arrival.

In terms of travel arrangements for birdwatching, **41.4% of participants had purchased a specialized package**, 23.2% organized their trip independently, and 34.3% had not previously traveled internationally for birdwatching purposes. Satisfaction levels were generally high: **the overall satisfaction score was 87.0 points out of 100**. Notably, the Reserva Nacional Pacaya-Samiria received the highest satisfaction score (95.4), while the Santuario Histórico Bosque de Pómac recorded the lowest (81.3).

The Net Promoter Score (NPS), a measure of willingness to recommend the destination, stood at 68.1%. The Reserva Nacional Pacaya-Samiria also led in this indicator, with a remarkable 94.3% promoter score, followed by Área de Conservación Privada Chaparrí (79.0%) and Parque Nacional Tingo María (70.8%).

Visitor **recommendations for improving the experience** included providing **more information (35.2%), enhancing tourism infrastructure (33.9%), and improving service quality (24.2%).** Additionally, visitors expressed the need for better safety measures, cleaner facilities, and more accessible specialized infrastructure for birdwatching activities.

Sociodemographic data revealed that **53.2% of visitors were male** and **46.8% female**, with an **average age of 36 years**. Most visitors (60.6%) were between 25 and 44 years old. Academically, **39.8% had completed university studies**, and **32.0% were employed in the private sector**. Among foreigners, most hailed from Europe (57.7%)—with Spain (16.4%), France (12.8%), and Germany (10.3%) being the top countries—followed by visitors from North America (27.0%).

Finally, the study highlights important strategic recommendations for improving Peru's birdwatching tourism segment, including developing targeted infrastructure, offering detailed interpretive information, enhancing guide training, and diversifying services to cater to both specialized birdwatchers and broader ecotourism audiences. As shown, Peru's remarkable natural richness, when paired with improved management and visitor services, has the potential to further consolidate the country's position as a leading birdwatching destination globally.

Overall, the findings of the 2024 MINCETUR study reveal both the strengths and opportunities within Peru's birdwatching tourism sector. High levels of visitor satisfaction, combined with Peru's exceptional avian biodiversity, position the country as a premier destination for birdwatchers globally. However, continued investments in infrastructure, information, and specialized services will be critical to sustaining and expanding this market in an increasingly competitive international ecotourism landscape.

The following master table presents a comprehensive synthesis of the data collected by the Peruvian Ministry of Foreign Trade and Tourism (MINCETUR) during the *Estudio del Perfil y Características del Turista Observador de Aves*, conducted in the first quarter of 2024. Based on 1,329 surveys of domestic and international visitors to selected protected areas (Áreas Naturales Protegidas, ANP), the table consolidates key findings on visitor profiles, travel behavior, motivations, activities, birdwatching patterns, satisfaction levels, and demographic characteristics. All percentages, figures, and data are reported exactly as found in the original study, ensuring the accuracy and fidelity of the information while enhancing accessibility for academic, professional, and policy audiences. The following Master Table 11.7 provides an integrated overview of the figures discussed.

Master Table 11.7 - Profile and Characteristics of Birdwatching Tourists in Peru: a synthesis of the data collected by the Peruvian Ministry of Foreign Trade and Tourism (MINCETUR) during the *Estudio del Perfil y Características del Turista Observador de Aves*, conducted in the first quarter of 2024

Category	**Detail/Aspect**	**Percentage or Value**
Visitor Profile	First-time visitors to ANP	78.7%
	First-time foreign visitors	97.2%
	Traveling with friends/relatives (no children)	30.4%
	Traveling with partner	28.7%
	Traveling with direct family (parents and children)	17.4%
	Traveling alone	10.5%
Reasons for Satisfaction	Natural landscape	85.7%
	Variety of animals	39.4%
	Variety of flora	31.2%
Main Dissatisfaction	Mosquitos/insects	26.8%
Accommodation Type	Lodge/Bungalow/Cabin	61.6%
	Camping	19.2%
	Hostel	8.4%
	Family/friends' house	5.1%
Stay Duration	1–2 nights	53.3%
	3–4 nights	38.9%
	5+ nights	7.8%
Travel Expenditure	**Average tourist expenditure**	S/ 1,282 USD 340.32 *Shorter trip excursionists USD 23.34
Activities	Hiking	85.0%
	Boating	34.6%
	Birdwatching	34.2%

Category	Detail/Aspect	Percentage or Value
	Visiting communities	19.3%
Birdwatcher Typology	Hardcore birdwatchers	2.3%
	Softcore birdwatchers	23.4%
	Occasional birdwatchers	74.3%
Birdwatching Criteria	Diversity of species	58.6%
	Opportunity to observe rare species	45.5%
	"Lifer" observation opportunities	39.4%
Top Birdwatching Destinations	Reserva Nacional Tambopata	42.4%
	Moyobamba–Tarapoto	28.3%
	Amazonas	23.2%
	Paracas	23.2%
	Parque Nacional del Manu	22.2%
International Birdwatching Tourism	Visitors choosing Peru	90.6%
	Top foreign nationality: USA	18.9%
	Major origin continent: Europe	57.7%
Satisfaction Scores	Overall visitor satisfaction score	87.0 points
	Highest satisfaction: Pacaya-Samiria	95.4 points
Net Promoter Score (NPS)	**Overall NPS**	68.1%
Visitor Demographics	Average visitor age	36 years
	Male visitors	53.2%
	Female visitors	46.8%
	Visitors aged 25–44 years	60.6%
	Visitors with university education completed	39.8%
	Visitors working in private sector	32.0%

Source: Table prepared by the authors with data available in the MINCETUR's survey of 2024.

11.3.5. The Role of eBird and Citizen Science in Peru's Global Visibility

The rise of citizen science platforms, particularly eBird, has played a transformative role in elevating Peru's profile as a global birding destination and in advancing ornithological knowledge and conservation efforts within the country, "Citizen science platforms like eBird have revolutionized ornithological data collection by enabling massive public participation, generating vast datasets on bird distribution, abundance, and phenology at unprecedented spatial and temporal scales, with significant applications in research and conservation" (Sullivan et al., 2014, p. 1).

11.3.5.1. Global Big Day and October Big Day rankings

Peru's performance in the biannual global birding competitions organized by the Cornell Lab of Ornithology via the eBird platform – the **Global Big Day (GBD)** in May and the **October Big Day (OBD)** – has been nothing short of spectacular, serving as powerful international marketing showcases.[6] Since the GBD's inception in 2015, Peru has consistently placed among the top contenders, achieving first place globally in 2015 (1,182 species), 2016 (1,226 species), and 2021 (1,351 species).[60] In other years (2017-2020, 2022-2024), it secured second place, often closely behind neighboring Colombia, but still recording extraordinary totals, such as 1,454 species in 2023 and 1,450 in 2024.[6] This dominance extended to the autumn event when Peru claimed its first victory in the October Big Day in 2023, registering 1,384 species.[46]

These rankings are widely publicized within the global birding community and significantly enhance Peru's visibility and reputation.[46] Achieving such high species counts on a single day is a testament not only to Peru's inherent megadiversity but also demonstrates the existence of a highly organized, motivated, and geographically widespread network of birders capable of mobilizing significant participation across the country's diverse regions.[45] The high number of checklists submitted from Peru during these events (e.g., 4,420 checklists in GBD 2024, ranking 4th globally) further underscores the level of engagement.[6]

11.3.5.2 What is eBird?

eBird is a free, open-access database that enables users to:

- Record bird sightings through mobile apps or web interfaces.
- Create personal checklists of observed species.
- Contribute georeferenced data to a central database.
- Generate species maps, migration patterns, and abundance trends.

It is structured around a **"checklist" system**, where users submit lists of bird species observed at a specific time and location. These lists feed into a global repository, enabling near real-time mapping of bird populations across the planet.

11.3.5.3. Citizen Science in Action: Peru's Role:

Peru has emerged as a **leader in Latin America** for bird observations on eBird, regularly placing among the top countries during major global citizen science events such as:

- **Global Big Day (May)**
- **October Big Day**

These events mobilize hundreds of Peruvian birders, local communities, park rangers (guardaparques), ecotourism operators, and scientists to collaboratively observe and report bird species across the country in a single 24-hour period. In recent editions (e.g., 2023, 2024), Peru has ranked **first or second globally** in number of species recorded—often exceeding 1,400 species in a day.

11.3.5.4. Why is eBird Important for Peru?

The following Table 11.8 presents the Peru's engagement with eBird, and the related significant scientific, conservation, and tourism implications:

Table 11.8 – Peru's Engagement with eBird and the Key Tourism Implications of it

Dimension	Role in Peru
Science & Monitoring	eBird data supports biodiversity inventories, range mapping, and climate-related shifts in avian populations. It also helps identify new species records and monitor endangered or endemic birds.
Protected Area Management	Data from eBird is used by SERNANP and NGOs to assess bird diversity in national parks, reserves, and communal conservation areas.
Community Participation	Encourages **citizen engagement** in environmental stewardship, including local birdwatchers, students, and Indigenous guides.
Tourism Development	Helps define **birding routes**, hotspot prioritization, and tourism infrastructure planning (lodges, trails, guides). Birders use eBird to choose where to travel and what species to target.
Education and Outreach	eBird promotes learning about birds, ecosystems, and conservation through interactive participation. It is used in schools, workshops, and festivals.

11.3.5.5. Key eBird Features in Peru

- **Hotspot Mapping:** Over 4,000 eBird "hotspots" have been established in Peru, including Manu, Tambopata, Abra Patricia, Junín, and Machu Picchu.
- **Species Lists by Region:** Users can explore which species are most frequently observed in each department, reserve, or route.
- **Contributor Networks:** Peru has an active community of contributors, from professional ornithologists (e.g., CORBIDI) to grassroots bird clubs and park rangers.
- **Integration with Merlin App:** Bird identification using sound and photo recognition is now linked to eBird accounts for Peruvian species.

11.3.5.6. SERNANP and organized national contributions

The success in global birding events is not solely the result of independent efforts but involves coordinated national participation, significantly bolstered by the official involvement of SERNANP, the national protected areas agency.[44] SERNANP actively encourages and coordinates participation by its staff, particularly park rangers, within the extensive network of ANPs during GBD and OBD.[46] Data submitted through official SERNANP eBird accounts (e.g., from Reserva Nacional Calipuy, Bosque de Protección Alto Mayo - BPAM) contribute substantially to the national species totals and provide valuable insights into the birdlife within protected areas (Angulo Pratolongo et. al., 2008).[44] In OBD 2023, for instance, park rangers were credited with sighting 727 species within ANPs.[46]

This governmental participation occurs alongside contributions from numerous other actors, including research institutions like CORBIDI, local bird clubs, universities, private tour operators and their guides, and countless individual citizen scientists.[45] Reports often emphasize the "joint work" and collaborative spirit underlying Peru's achievements in these events.[61] The formal involvement of a state agency like SERNANP is particularly noteworthy. It signals governmental recognition of the value of citizen science platforms like eBird, not only for gathering crucial biodiversity data from protected areas but also as effective tools for national promotion and fostering a strong public-private-citizen partnership focused on birds and their conservation.[28]

11.3.5.7. Community science, participatory conservation, and local engagement

eBird exemplifies the power of **citizen science** (or **community science**), defined as the voluntary involvement of the public in scientific data collection and monitoring.[87] By providing a user-friendly platform accessible via website and mobile app, eBird empowers anyone, anywhere, to contribute valuable observations on bird distribution, abundance, and phenology.[87] This crowdsourced data, when aggregated, becomes a powerful resource for scientific research and conservation decision-making, helping to track population trends, identify important habitats, and assess the impacts of environmental change.[6]

Beyond data generation, participation in citizen science fosters crucial **local engagement** and environmental awareness. The act of observing, identifying, and recording birds can deepen participants' connection to their local environment and cultivate a sense of stewardship.[6] In Peru, projects like "Celebra las Aves en la Amazonía Peruana" in Loreto vividly illustrate this effect. By engaging rural and indigenous communities (students, teachers, parents, elders) in bird-focused activities – including learning, art, cultural exchange, and contributing observations. The project sparked significant community interest and tangible conservation actions, such as discouraging unsustainable hunting practices and establishing local birdwatching trails guided by youth.[22] Similarly, the involvement of local guides in contributing data to eBird or participating in Big Days leverages their expertise while integrating them into the broader scientific and conservation community.[59] Citizen science platforms thus act as a vital bridge, transforming individual passion and local knowledge into collective scientific understanding and conservation impact, while simultaneously empowering participants as active stewards of their natural heritage.[22]

11.3.5.8. Technological tools: Merlin, iNaturalist, sound recording, photography

The growth and accessibility of citizen science in ornithology have been significantly amplified by complementary technological tools that aid identification and documentation.

- **Merlin Bird ID:** Developed by the Cornell Lab of Ornithology, this free mobile application utilizes artificial intelligence to help users identify birds through photographs or sound recordings.[89] With the recent addition of packs covering regions like the Philippines, Merlin now offers identification assistance for over 10,000 species globally, including comprehensive coverage for Peru.[90] It seamlessly integrates with eBird, allowing users to identify a bird and potentially log the sighting. Merlin has dramatically lowered the barrier to entry for bird identification, making it easier for beginners to participate and learn.[89] While highly effective, users are often cautioned that AI identification, especially for rare or difficult species or based solely on sound, should ideally be verified through visual confirmation or expert review.[92]

- **iNaturalist:** This broader citizen science platform allows users to record observations of any living organism, not just birds, primarily through photographs.[89] Its community-based identification system, where experts help verify sightings, makes it a valuable tool for documenting biodiversity and confirming identifications.[89] While eBird is the primary platform for bird checklists and abundance data, iNaturalist serves as an important repository for photographic evidence and has been used for specific bird-related projects, such as tracking the impact of avian influenza on seabirds along the Pacific coast, including Peru (Sidik, 2023).[93] Some potential for data duplication exists if users log sightings on both platforms.[92]

- **Sound Recording:** Audio recording has become an increasingly vital tool in ornithology, particularly for detecting nocturnal, cryptic, or canopy-dwelling species that are difficult to see.[89] Digital recorders allow birders and researchers to capture vocalizations, which can then be analyzed and archived on platforms like eBird's Macaulay Library or Xeno-canto.[92] Merlin's Sound ID function further enhances the utility of field recordings.[89] Researchers conducting surveys or Big Day attempts often rely heavily on identifying birds by sound and documenting calls.[56]

- **Photography:** Advances in digital photography, particularly the accessibility of cameras with long telephoto lenses, have revolutionized bird documentation.[80] High-quality photographs serve as verifiable records of bird sightings and are frequently uploaded to eBird and iNaturalist to support observations, especially for rare or unusual species.[63] Photography is also a major motivation for many birdwatchers and wildlife tourists (Tapper, 2006).[65]

Collectively, these technological tools have democratized participation in bird study and conservation. Mobile apps, AI identification, digital recording, and online data platforms have made it significantly easier for a much broader audience to engage meaningfully with ornithology, contribute valuable data, and share their findings, thereby expanding the reach and impact of citizen science initiatives in Peru and globally.[87]

11.3.6. Community-Based and Indigenous Bird Tourism

As avitourism develops in Peru, there is growing recognition of the crucial role that local communities (Zavaleta et. al., 2023), particularly indigenous groups, play as stewards of biodiversity and potential partners in sustainable tourism initiatives, "Community-based tourism initiatives, when properly designed and managed, can empower local and indigenous communities by providing alternative livelihoods, fostering cultural pride, and creating direct incentives for the conservation of biodiversity within their territories" (Scheyvens, 1999, p. 246).

11.3.6.1. Integration of Indigenous knowledge and territories

Indigenous territories, especially within the vast Amazon basin and Andean landscapes, often overlap significantly with areas of high biodiversity and endemism, making them critical for conservation.[26] Furthermore, indigenous communities frequently possess profound **Traditional Ecological Knowledge (TEK)**, accumulated over generations, encompassing detailed understanding of local ecosystems, plant and animal life cycles, behavior, taxonomy (often reflected in unique vernacular names), and sustainable resource use practices,[22] "traditional Ecological Knowledge (TEK) held by indigenous peoples often encompasses sophisticated understandings of local ecosystems, species interactions, and sustainable resource management practices, representing a valuable, yet often underutilized, resource for conservation planning and adaptive management." (Berkes, Colding, & Folke, 2000, p. 1251). This knowledge extends significantly to birds, including their identification, calls, nesting habits, seasonal movements, and cultural significance within traditional narratives, songs, and beliefs.[22]

Examples of this deep connection are evident across Peru. Studies with **Awajún** communities in the Cordillera de Colán (Amazonas) and Alto Mayo (San Martín) have documented their extensive knowledge of local birdlife, including unique names for hundreds of species, and their traditional reliance on forest resources (Altamirano-Guerrero et. al., 2010).[25] Faced with pressures like deforestation and immigration, some Awajún communities have initiated their own conservation actions, such as hunting moratoriums and establishing community reserves, demonstrating a motivation for long-term forest protection rooted in both necessity and cultural values.[26] Projects in these areas increasingly seek to support sustainable livelihoods that build on this cultural and natural capital, such as the "Bosque de las Nuwas" (Women's Forest) initiative focused on medicinal plants within the Shampuyacu community.[94] Similarly, the "Celebra las Aves" project in **Loreto** successfully engaged indigenous and mestizo communities by explicitly valuing and integrating traditional bird stories and songs into educational activities, fostering conservation awareness in a culturally relevant manner.[22] The **Ese Eja** community's long-standing partnership in the Tambopata region (Madre de Dios) represents another model where indigenous territory and tourism are linked.[27]

There is significant potential, and indeed a growing necessity, for conservation and tourism models that move beyond externally imposed frameworks and instead actively collaborate with indigenous communities, respecting their rights, recognizing their territories, and integrating their invaluable TEK.[26] Such collaborative approaches promise not only more effective and sustainable conservation outcomes but also culturally appropriate development pathways that empower indigenous peoples as key partners and decision-makers in managing their ancestral lands and the biodiversity they contain.

11.3.6.2. Examples of community-led initiatives: guides, ecolodges, co-management

Community involvement in Peruvian bird tourism manifests in various forms, extending beyond passive roles to active participation in service provision, enterprise development, and resource management.

- **Community Guides:** A common and impactful model involves training and employing local residents, including indigenous youth, as specialized birding and nature guides.[13] This leverages their intimate knowledge of the local terrain, wildlife, and sometimes traditional ecological insights, providing authentic experiences for visitors while generating direct income.[24] Examples include indigenous guides from communities near Manu National Park participating in research and tourism activities [59], and youth guides leading tours on community-established birding trails in Loreto as part of the "Celebra las Aves" project.[22]

- **Community Ecolodges and Enterprises:** More integrated initiatives involve community ownership or co-management of tourism infrastructure and related businesses. The Posada Amazonas lodge, co-owned by the Ese Eja community and Rainforest Expeditions since 1998, stands as a well-known example of a long-term partnership where the community receives a majority share of profits (60%) and families hold shares, significantly boosting local incomes.[27] Other examples include community associations managing tourism around specific attractions, like the Karajía Communal Tourism Association in Amazonas, which manages visits to pre-Inca sarcophagi and has been evaluated for potential inclusion in MINCETUR's national community tourism strategy.[96] Related sustainable enterprises, such as the Awajún women's "Bosque de las Nuwas" medicinal plant project in Alto Mayo, demonstrate diversification into products derived from conserved forest resources.[94]

- **Co-management and Conservation Agreements:** Communities are increasingly involved in the governance and management of natural resources and protected areas. This can take the form of formal **co-management** agreements with SERNANP for state-protected areas, where community participation in decision-making is actively sought.[39] It also includes communities establishing their own **conservation areas** or reserves on communal lands, sometimes linked to tourism development, as seen with Aguaruna communities in the Cordillera de Colan.[26] **Conservation agreements**, where communities receive benefits (financial or technical support) in exchange for commitments to conservation actions (e.g., protecting forests, restoring habitats), are another mechanism used by NGOs like Conservation International with communities like Shampuyacu.[94] The management of the Allpahuayo Mishana National Reserve also involves local community participation.[28]

These examples illustrate that successful and sustainable community-based tourism often extends beyond single activities like guiding. Models that incorporate lodging, development of value-added products (crafts, agroforestry products, traditional medicine), and direct participation in conservation planning and resource management tend to offer more diverse income streams, greater community empowerment, and stronger links between tourism benefits and conservation outcomes.[18]

11.3.6.3. Conservation co-benefits and cultural valorization

Community-based and indigenous bird tourism initiatives in Peru often generate positive outcomes that extend beyond direct economic gains, creating valuable co-benefits for both biodiversity conservation and cultural preservation.

From a **conservation perspective**, involving local communities as active partners can significantly enhance the effectiveness of conservation efforts. When communities derive tangible benefits from tourism linked to healthy ecosystems, they have stronger incentives to protect those resources.[18] This can lead to reduced pressure from activities like poaching, illegal logging, or unsustainable agricultural practices, as tourism provides alternative livelihoods.[18] Community involvement can also result in improved surveillance and enforcement within territories, the establishment of locally managed conservation zones (as seen with Aguaruna communities[26]), and active participation in habitat restoration efforts.[22] The presence of responsible tourism can also bring greater attention to conservation issues in remote areas.

Simultaneously, these initiatives can play a vital role in **cultural valorization and revitalization**. Tourism focused on authentic experiences often creates demand for and appreciation of traditional knowledge, local languages, arts, crafts, music, and cuisine.[22] When TEK related to birds and the environment is shared with visitors through guided tours or cultural exchanges, it reinforces the value of this knowledge within the community, particularly among younger generations.[22] Projects like the Awajún medicinal plant initiative explicitly aim to rescue and preserve ancestral practices.[94] This process can strengthen community pride, cultural identity, and social cohesion, counteracting homogenizing pressures from the outside world.[22] The potential for community-based avitourism to generate this synergistic "triple win" – economic benefits, environmental conservation, and cultural strengthening – represents its most compelling advantage as a sustainable development model.[13]

11.3.6.4. Challenges: capacity-building, access, policy support

Despite the significant potential, community-based and indigenous tourism initiatives in Peru face numerous challenges that can hinder their success and sustainability.

- **Capacity Building:** Communities often lack the specific skills required to effectively manage and operate tourism enterprises. This includes technical training in hospitality standards, specialized guiding techniques (ornithology, interpretation, first aid, language proficiency), business administration, financial management, marketing, and digital literacy.[28] Sustained investment in human resource development is crucial.

- **Market Access:** Connecting with the international tourism market, particularly the specialized avitourism niche, can be difficult for remote communities.[20] They may struggle to compete with established private tour operators, lack marketing resources, and face challenges in building relationships with international agencies to secure a consistent flow of visitors.

- **Infrastructure Deficiencies:** Many communities interested in tourism are located in remote areas lacking adequate basic infrastructure. Poor road access, unreliable transportation, limited availability of quality accommodation that meets tourist expectations, inadequate sanitation facilities, and poor communication connectivity (internet, phone service) can be major deterrents for visitors and obstacles for enterprise development.[48]

- **Policy and Institutional Support:** A supportive policy environment is critical. This includes clear and secure land tenure rights for communities, streamlined bureaucratic processes for establishing and operating tourism enterprises, access to financial credit and technical assistance, and policies that ensure fair benefit-sharing arrangements in partnerships.[28] Lack of coordination between different government agencies can also pose challenges.

- **Internal Community Dynamics:** Effective community-based tourism requires strong internal governance structures, clear leadership, participatory decision-making processes, mechanisms for equitable distribution of benefits, and strategies for managing potential internal conflicts.[96] Building and maintaining social cohesion and collective action can be complex.

- **External Environmental and Social Pressures:** Community initiatives operate within a larger context often characterized by significant external threats. Ongoing deforestation, expansion of extractive industries (mining, logging), agricultural encroachment, migration pressures, and sometimes social instability can undermine conservation efforts and the viability of tourism enterprises, regardless of the community's own efforts.[24]

Overcoming these multifaceted challenges typically requires sustained support from external partners, including government agencies, non-governmental organizations (NGOs), and sometimes the private sector. While community-based tourism holds immense promise for integrating conservation and development, its success is not guaranteed and depends heavily on addressing these barriers related to skills, market integration, infrastructure, policy frameworks, internal organization, and the mitigation of external threats.[28]

Part IV: Strategic Development and Future Outlook

11.4. Tourism Development, Infrastructure, and Policy

The growth of avitourism in Peru occurs within the broader context of national tourism development strategies, infrastructure realities, and evolving policy frameworks aimed at promoting sustainable practices.

11.4.1. National strategies (MINCETUR, PromPerú, COP promotion)

Peru's government, primarily through the **Ministry of Foreign Trade and Tourism (MINCETUR)** and its promotional arm **PROMPERÚ**, has recognized the strategic importance of tourism for national development and has formulated plans to guide its growth.[28] The **National Strategic Tourism Plan (PENTUR) 2016-2025** has served as a key guiding document, outlining long-term objectives such as sustainable development, diversification of tourism products beyond traditional offerings, decentralization to spread benefits to more regions, and targeted marketing efforts.[48] Avitourism has been identified as a specialized niche product with high potential within these strategies.[53]

More recent initiatives reflect ongoing adaptation and ambition. Following the severe impacts of the COVID-19 pandemic, MINCETUR launched the **"National Strategy for the Reactivation of the Tourism Sector 2022-2025"**.[99] This strategy focuses on key pillars including securing financial resources, improving tourism conditions and facilitation, strengthening the supply of tourism products (including specialized offerings like birdwatching) with enhanced quality and biosafety, and boosting promotion and positioning in domestic and international markets.[99] Furthermore, the government has articulated a **"Vision 360 to 2030"** aiming to establish Peru as the premier tourism destination in Latin America, with ambitious goals for increasing international arrivals and the sector's contribution to GDP and employment.[47]

PROMPERÚ executes the promotional aspects of these strategies, actively marketing Peru's birdwatching potential through the development of the North, Central, and South birding routes, participation in international tourism fairs, organization of familiarization trips for media and operators (e.g., the Birding Rally Challenge), and digital campaigns highlighting Peru's avian diversity and endemic species.[42] Peru also leverages major international events held in the country, such as the Conference of the Parties (COP) meetings on climate change or biodiversity, to showcase its natural assets and commitment to sustainability, potentially linking these themes to nature-based tourism promotion.

While these national strategies demonstrate high-level commitment and provide a framework for developing the avitourism sector, their ultimate success depends on effective implementation on the ground. Translating strategic goals into tangible outcomes requires overcoming persistent challenges related to funding allocation, inter-agency coordination, addressing infrastructure deficits, ensuring equitable regional development, and integrating conservation imperatives consistently across all development actions.[47] The existence of formal plans is a strength, but the gap between planning and effective execution remains a critical area for attention.

11.4.2. Infrastructure gaps and innovations in interpretation

Tourism infrastructure – encompassing transport, accommodation, communication, and site facilities – is a critical determinant of a destination's accessibility and competitiveness. In Peru, the infrastructure supporting avitourism presents a mixed picture. Strengths exist, particularly along the well-trodden Southern Route and in established hotspots where specialized lodges have been developed to cater specifically to birders and nature tourists.[42] These often feature amenities like comfortable rooms, reliable food service, well-maintained trail systems, strategically placed observation towers (canopy towers), and bird feeding stations that enhance the visitor experience.[65]

However, significant **infrastructure gaps** persist, particularly in regions outside the main tourist circuits or in more remote areas crucial for certain endemic species.[48] Poor road conditions, lack of reliable public or private transport options, limited availability of quality accommodation meeting international standards, and inadequate communication infrastructure (internet, mobile phone coverage) are frequently cited weaknesses.[97] These deficiencies can increase travel time and costs, diminish visitor comfort, and potentially deter tourists from exploring less-developed but highly rewarding birding areas.[82] The need for improved lodging and services has been noted even in areas with significant attractions, such as Cocachimba near the Gocta waterfall.[97] Addressing these gaps is recognized as a challenge within national tourism plans.[54]

Alongside these challenges, **innovations** are emerging. The development of purpose-built birding lodges represents a key innovation in catering to this niche market.[65] There is growing interest in incorporating sustainable design principles and technologies, such as the use of renewable energy sources (solar, wind) for powering lodges, particularly in off-grid locations, reducing both operational costs and environmental footprint.[97] In terms of interpretation, the use of mobile technology, such as identification apps like Merlin Bird ID, complements traditional guiding.[89] Efforts are also being made to improve heritage interpretation at sites where natural and cultural values intersect, enhancing the educational and experiential quality for visitors.[100]

Infrastructure development, however, presents a delicate balance. While necessary to improve access and visitor experience, poorly planned infrastructure can lead to significant negative environmental impacts, including habitat fragmentation, pollution, increased human disturbance, and the introduction of invasive species – threats that directly undermine the biodiversity that attracts tourists in the first place.[20] Therefore, future infrastructure development must prioritize sustainable planning, employ low-impact construction methods, and be carefully integrated with conservation objectives to avoid compromising the very assets upon which the avitourism sector depends.

11.4.3. Sustainable tourism models and governance

Recognizing the potential negative impacts of tourism and the importance of long-term viability, Peru has increasingly embraced the principles of **sustainable tourism**. This approach seeks to manage tourism development in a way that minimizes negative environmental and socio-cultural impacts while maximizing economic benefits for local communities and contributing to the conservation of natural and cultural heritage.[13] National strategies explicitly incorporate sustainability goals, aiming for growth that is environmentally responsible, socially inclusive, and economically viable.[47]

Effective governance is crucial for implementing sustainable tourism models. This requires collaboration and coordination among a diverse range of stakeholders, including national government agencies (MINCETUR, SERNANP), regional and local governments, the private sector (tour operators, lodges, transport providers), NGOs focused on conservation and community development, academic institutions, and, critically, local and indigenous communities themselves,[18] "Effective governance for sustainable tourism requires multi-stakeholder collaboration, integrating government agencies, the private sector, NGOs, and local communities in decision-making processes to balance economic development, social equity, and environmental protection" (Bramwell & Lane, 2000, p. 5). Participatory governance approaches, where local communities have a meaningful voice in planning and decision-making processes, are increasingly recognized as essential for ensuring equity and local buy-in.[39]

Peru showcases several examples of efforts towards sustainable tourism models relevant to avitourism:

- **Internationally Recognized Sustainable Destinations:** Several Peruvian sites have gained recognition in programs like the Green Destinations Top 100, highlighting successful practices in areas like community involvement, waste management, gender equality in governance (e.g., Tingo María National Park), and sustainable resource management (e.g., Los Órganos, Alto Mayo, Allpahuayo Mishana).[28] These often involve multi-sectoral collaboration.

- **Community-Based Tourism (CBT):** Initiatives where communities directly own, manage, or significantly benefit from tourism enterprises (guides, lodges, cultural experiences) are promoted as a means of empowering local populations and linking livelihoods to conservation.[18] MINCETUR has guidelines and strategies specifically for CBT development.[96]

- **Protected Area Mechanisms:** Mechanisms like ecotourism concessions within ANPs, the establishment of Private Conservation Areas (PCAs) often linked to lodges or community lands, and conservation easements provide legal frameworks for integrating tourism with conservation objectives on both public and private lands.[19]

- **Certification and Standards:** Voluntary standards or branding, such as SERNANP's "Aliados por la Conservación" (Allies for Conservation) brand for authorized tour operators working within ANPs, aim to promote responsible practices.[43]

Achieving truly sustainable avitourism requires robust governance structures that can effectively navigate the inherent complexities of balancing conservation priorities with economic development aspirations and ensuring meaningful community participation. Success often hinges on factors like strong local leadership, transparent and equitable benefit-sharing mechanisms, consistent monitoring of impacts, adaptive management strategies, and the sustained enforcement of environmental regulations and tourism policies.[18] While models and policies exist, effective implementation across Peru's diverse regions remains an ongoing challenge and a critical area for continued focus.

11.4.4. SWOT analysis: strengths, weaknesses, opportunities, and threats

A systematic analysis of the Strengths, Weaknesses, Opportunities, and Threats (SWOT) provides a strategic overview of the Peruvian avitourism sector, synthesizing the key internal and external factors influencing its current status and future prospects.[102] SWOT analysis has been widely employed as a strategic tool in tourism studies to assess destination potential, identify development gaps, and support sustainable planning (Pung, 2023; Yilmaz & Öztürk, 2023). It has proven especially useful in wildlife and nature-based tourism contexts, where ecological sensitivity intersects with visitor management (Tapper, 2006). As Newsome et al. (2005) explain, “wildlife” refers to “all non-domesticated vertebrates […]” (p. 1). They go on to clarify that this definition “does not imply that interactions between [invertebrates and flora] and wildlife species are unimportant in the overall well-being of wildlife populations, nor that these groups are unlikely to gain interest in wildlife tourism operations" (p. 1). The adoption of this term in the literature coincided with the rise of the interrelated disciplines of wildlife biology, wildlife management, and wildlife conservation, which together underpin our modern understanding of—and approaches to—wildlife research and stewardship, and themes interrelated to wildlife tourism and bird species (Tapper, 2006).

Works such as Higham and Lück (2007) and Steven, Pickering, and Castley (2014) have applied SWOT to explore how tourism can be aligned with conservation goals and stakeholder interests. Drawing from these approaches, this analysis examines the positioning of Peru's avitourism within a dynamic and globally competitive landscape. Table 11.9 critically outlines the key four points of the analysis.

Table 11.9 - SWOT Analysis of Peruvian Avitourism

	Strengths (Internal, Positive)	Weaknesses (Internal, Negative)
Internal Factors	• **Unparalleled Avian Biodiversity:** World-leading species richness (~1,860) and high endemism (~120 species).[1] • **Diverse Habitats/Landscapes:** Rapid transitions between coast, Andes, Amazon offering varied experiences.[3] • **Extensive Protected Area Network (ANPs):** Managed by SERNANP, covering key habitats.[40] •**Rich Cultural Heritage:** Iconic archaeological sites combinable with birding.[42] • **Growing International Reputation:** High visibility from GBD success, awards, guides.[16] • **Dedicated Institutions:** PROMPERÚ (promotion), SERNANP (conservation), CORBIDI (research/NGO).[38] • **Active Citizen Science Community:** Strong eBird participation.[6] • **High-Value Tourist Profile:** Educated, affluent, environmentally aware visitors with long stays.[13]	• **Infrastructure Gaps:** Deficiencies in roads, transport, quality lodging, and connectivity, especially in remote/northern regions.[48] • **Service Quality Variability:** Lack of sufficient trained/specialized guides and consistent service standards in some areas.[98] • **Localized Safety/Security Perceptions:** Concerns about safety in certain regions can deter tourists.[98] • **Implementation Challenges:** Potential gap between national strategies (PENTUR) and effective on-the-ground execution; bureaucracy.[48] • **Accessibility Issues:** Difficulty reaching some high-potential remote birding areas. • **Uneven Benefit Distribution:** Tourism benefits often concentrated in specific regions (e.g., South) or among established operators.[20] • **Information Availability:** Lack of readily available, detailed information for some lesser-known areas.[98]

External Factors	Opportunities (External, Positive)	Threats (External, Negative)
	• **Growing Global Avitourism Market:** Increasing interest in birdwatching and nature travel worldwide (Steven et al. 2015).[13] • **Product Diversification:** Potential to develop new routes, destinations, and specialized products (e.g., photography, sound recording tours) to reduce pressure and cater to diverse interests.[82] • **Community-Based Tourism Expansion:** Strengthening and scaling successful community initiatives for greater impact.[18] • **Integration of Traditional Knowledge (TEK):** Leveraging indigenous knowledge for unique, culturally rich experiences and conservation.[26] • **Technological Advancement:** Utilizing apps, online platforms, and digital marketing for enhanced experience and promotion.[89] • **Strengthened Partnerships:** Enhancing collaboration between public, private, community, and NGO sectors.[13] • **Sustainability Focus:** Capitalizing on growing demand for eco-friendly and responsible travel; potential for carbon offsetting schemes.[13]	• **Habitat Loss & Degradation:** Pervasive threat from agriculture, logging, mining, urbanization, infrastructure development impacting key bird habitats.[21] • **Climate Change:** Long-term impacts on species distribution, habitat suitability, extreme weather events, glacial melt affecting water resources.[21] • **Unsustainable Tourism Practices:** Risk of negative impacts (disturbance, pollution, resource depletion, cultural disruption) if tourism growth is poorly managed.[20] • **Overexploitation/Illegal Wildlife Trade:** Affecting certain bird populations (e.g., parrots for pet trade).[103] • **Economic & Political Instability:** Potential for economic downturns, social unrest, or policy changes impacting tourism investment and arrivals. Peru's tourism resilience is relatively high, but recovery from political shocks can be slow in certain regions. • **Pandemics & Health Crises:** Demonstrated vulnerability of the tourism sector to global health events.[86] • **Increased Competition:** Other Neotropical countries also actively developing and promoting their avitourism offerings. To note, Colombia's avitourism boom is currently the biggest direct regional competitor (highlighted by BirdLife International).

Source: Table prepared by the authors, 2025.

This SWOT analysis offers a clear picture of where Peru stands in the growing world of birdwatching tourism. The country holds some of the planet's most exceptional natural assets—its incredible bird diversity, iconic species, and breathtaking landscapes are undeniable strengths. It also finds itself in a favorable global context, with more and more people seeking nature-based experiences, especially ones that connect them with wildlife. That's a major opportunity.

But to truly make the most of this potential, there's work to be done. Challenges like uneven infrastructure, limited access in remote regions, and inconsistent service quality continue to hold the sector back. These are internal weaknesses that need targeted investment and support.

At the same time, external threats—like deforestation, environmental degradation, and climate change—loom large. These forces threaten not just the future of avitourism, but the very birds and habitats that make Peru so special in the first place.

As for the illegal trade of wildlife species, particularly birds, from South America, as a threat that draws attention from Peruvian authorities and from other nations of the region. Since the late 1960s, South American countries have taken very different paths to curb the once-rampant trade in live wild birds. Brazil led the way in 1967 by banning all exports of wild-caught animals, a bold move that set a new standard. As each nation joined CITES afterward, they chose their own strategies: Bolivia, Colombia, and Ecuador completely outlawed wild bird trade; Guyana and Suriname continued to export under strict CITES quotas and buyer-country rules; and Brazil and Peru even developed captive-breeding operations to meet demand. In fact, Peru and Venezuela only phased out small-scale wild exports of common species quite recently. These varied approaches reflect each country's effort to find a balance between economic needs and protecting precious bird populations (Ortiz-von Halle, 2018).

In her 2018 report, Ortiz-von Halle looks back over five decades of these changing rules to see what's worked—and what still needs work. She shows how governments, pushed by scientists, conservation groups, and international pressure, built new agencies and passed landmark laws in the early '70s to save species driven to the brink by trapping. While progress has been made—some birds have bounced back, and illegal markets have slowed—many challenges remain: agencies often lack funding, wildlife traffickers adapt quickly, and local communities need a stronger voice. Ortiz-von Halle's findings remind us that real success comes not just from well-crafted laws on paper, but from robust enforcement, genuine community partnerships, and seamless regional cooperation to safeguard South America's remarkable birdlife for generations to come. Central to all of these efforts is the recognition that birds themselves are the very foundation of avitourism—without thriving populations and healthy ecosystems, the entire industry would collapse, underscoring the imperative to value and protect avifauna as our most vital tourism asset.

To move forward, Peru needs to build on its strengths, embrace its opportunities, and take urgent, coordinated action to improve what's lacking and protect what's at risk. With the right strategy and collaboration, avitourism can become a powerful force for conservation, local development, and national pride.

11.4.5. Challenges and Future Prospects

While Peru has successfully established itself as a premier global birding destination, the long-term sustainability and continued growth of its avitourism sector face significant challenges, intertwined with broader environmental and socio-economic pressures. Addressing these challenges while capitalizing on future opportunities will be key to realizing the full potential of avitourism for conservation and development.

11.4.5.1. Habitat loss, climate change, and species vulnerability

The most fundamental threats to Peru's avifauna, and consequently its avitourism potential, stem from environmental degradation. **Habitat loss and fragmentation** remain pervasive issues across the country,[21] "the primary driver of avian biodiversity loss in the Tropical Andes is habitat destruction and fragmentation, primarily due to agricultural expansion and deforestation, which disproportionately affects species with specialized habitat requirements and restricted geographic ranges" (Fjeldså, & Rahbek, 1998, p. 165).

The primary drivers include the expansion of agriculture (both smallholder subsistence farming and larger-scale commercial crops), unsustainable logging practices, mining activities (legal and illegal), and infrastructure development (roads, urbanization).[26] These pressures impact all major biomes, from the coastal dry forests and Andean slopes to the vast Amazonian rainforest. Studies in the Andes, for instance, show dramatic declines (up to 60-93%) in bird species richness in areas converted to open farmland or pasture compared to intact forests.[77] Species with specialized habitat requirements or diets, such as forest-dependent insectivores and frugivores, and those with naturally restricted ranges (many endemics), are particularly vulnerable to these changes.[76]

Compounding these pressures is the growing threat of **climate change,** and this phenomenon has been widely discussed regarding the Andean regions, including Peruvian ones in a series of papers organized by Herzog et al., (2011), in the book, '*Climate Change and Biodiversity in the Tropical Andes*', and the investigation of Herzog et al. on the '*Patterns of diversity and endemism in the birds of the tropical Andes*', and the work of Marengo et. al., entitled '*Climate Change, Evidence and Future Scenarios for the Andean Region*', as part of the same volume. [21] While direct habitat destruction is often the more immediate driver in many areas [77], climate change poses significant long-term risks. Expected impacts include shifts in species' altitudinal and latitudinal ranges, potentially leading to mismatches between species and their required resources or protected area boundaries.[21] Gonda (2020) warns that,

> the climate-suitable ranges for many species are projected to change as their habitats shift, shrink, or expand due to rising global temperatures. Many species are heading uphill to keep pace with warming temperatures and humidity changes, seeking optimal conditions to which they are adapted. Shifts in species' distribution and new environmental conditions are altering the ecological processes that result from species interactions and may, in turn, facilitate the spread of invasive species and diseases into new areas. These changes can ultimately lead to population declines and local extinctions (p. 25).

Changes in temperature and precipitation patterns can alter habitat suitability, affect breeding cycles, and increase the frequency and intensity of extreme weather events like droughts, floods, and wildfires, further stressing ecosystems.[103] Vulnerable ecosystems, such as high Andean wetlands and glaciers (vital water sources), are particularly sensitive.[5] However, preparedness for longer-term, chronic stresses like climate change may be weaker, requiring targeted efforts to build awareness and implement appropriate risk management strategies.[104] Building future resilience in Peruvian avitourism will likely necessitate greater diversification (both within the tourism sector and in local economies beyond tourism), strengthening social safety nets and support networks for communities and small enterprises, integrating robust risk management planning (for health, climate, and economic shocks), and fostering adaptive governance structures capable of responding effectively to unforeseen challenges.[86]

The combined impacts of habitat loss and climate change create synergistic threats that increase the **vulnerability of many Peruvian bird species**, particularly the numerous endemics and restricted-range specialists concentrated in EBAs.[5] Addressing these intertwined environmental challenges requires integrated conservation strategies focused on protecting remaining intact habitats (especially large, connected landscapes that allow for species movement), restoring degraded areas, promoting climate-resilient land management practices in agricultural landscapes (e.g., silvopasture, maintaining fencerows [77]), and strengthening the protected area network to encompass climate refugia.

11.4.5.2. Tourism recovery and resilience post-COVID-19

The global COVID-19 pandemic delivered a severe shock to Peru's tourism sector, including avitourism, highlighting its vulnerability to external crises.[86] Border closures, international travel restrictions, and domestic lockdowns led to a near-complete collapse in visitor arrivals for extended periods.[47] This had devastating economic consequences, particularly for local communities, guides, lodges, and small businesses heavily reliant on tourism income, especially in rural and remote areas.[86] Projects in areas like Río Abiseo National Park and Amarakaeri Communal Reserve saw visitor numbers plummet, drastically impacting community livelihoods.[86]

The post-pandemic recovery phase has focused not just on rebuilding visitor numbers but on "building back better," with an increased emphasis on **sustainability, resilience, and community inclusion**.[28] Peru's national tourism reactivation strategy explicitly aims to promote unique and biosafe experiences while strengthening the sector's foundations.[99] The crisis underscored the need for tourism systems, particularly those involving vulnerable communities, to enhance their **resilience** – their capacity to anticipate, absorb, adapt to, and recover from shocks, whether they be pandemics, economic downturns, or the accelerating impacts of climate change.[104] Studies examining community responses, such as in the Lomas de Lúcumo eco-tourism area near Lima, suggest that factors like strong social cohesion, community self-organization skills, cultural identity, and diversified livelihoods contribute to adaptive capacity in the face of immediate crises like COVID-19.[104] Even as we have emerged from the global COVID-19 pandemic, wild bird populations still face their own perilous challenge: outbreaks of avian influenza that threaten to decimate hundreds of thousands of birds (Sidik, 2023).

11.4.5.3. Recommendations: public-private-community partnerships, education, strategic marketing

Based on the analysis of Peru's strengths, weaknesses, opportunities, and threats in the avitourism sector, several key recommendations emerge for fostering sustainable growth and maximizing conservation benefits:

1. **Strengthen Multi-Stakeholder Partnerships:** Enhance collaboration and coordination between government agencies (MINCETUR, PROMPERÚ, SERNANP, regional/local authorities), the private sector (tour operators, lodges, airlines), NGOs (conservation and development focused, both national like CORBIDI/ECOAN and international), academic institutions, and local/indigenous communities.[13] Establishing formal, functioning multi-stakeholder platforms for key birding regions or routes could facilitate joint planning, conflict resolution, and resource mobilization. Ensuring transparent and equitable benefit-sharing mechanisms within these partnerships, particularly for community-based initiatives, is paramount.[18]

2. **Invest in Education and Capacity Building:** Continue and expand environmental education programs focused on bird conservation and ecosystem value, targeting diverse audiences including schoolchildren, local communities, tourism service providers, and visitors themselves.[13] Promote participation in citizen science initiatives like eBird to foster engagement and data collection.[89] Crucially, invest in targeted capacity building for local communities involved or wishing to engage in avitourism, covering areas such as specialized bird guiding skills (ornithology, interpretation, ethics, languages), hospitality management, business planning, financial literacy, and marketing.[13]

3. **Implement Strategic and Diversified Marketing:** Continue promoting Peru's established strengths (biodiversity, endemics, iconic species, key routes) in core international markets (USA, UK, Europe, Canada, Australia) through specialized channels.[53] Tourism practitioners operating along the Northern Peru Birding Route, or similar wildlife observation sites, are encouraged to explore and intentionally design experiences that maximize the potential for transformation among visitors. (Sotomayor et al., 2023). However, also develop strategies to:

   - **Diversify geographically:** Promote lesser-known regions and routes with high potential to alleviate pressure on hotspots like the Southern Circuit and distribute economic benefits more widely.[82]

   - **Diversify product offerings:** Develop and market specialized tours catering to growing interests like bird photography, sound recording, or family-friendly birding experiences.[17]

   - **Highlight sustainability:** Explicitly market Peru's commitment to sustainable practices, conservation successes, and opportunities for responsible travel, appealing to the growing segment of environmentally conscious tourists.[13] Leverage technology (virtual tours, high-quality online content, social media engagement) for promotion.[91]

4. **Prioritize Sustainable Infrastructure Development:** Address critical infrastructure gaps (transport, lodging, communication) identified as weaknesses, particularly in emerging birding regions.[48] However, ensure all new infrastructure development adheres to strict environmental impact assessments and sustainable design principles to minimize habitat fragmentation, pollution, and disturbance, especially within or near protected areas and sensitive habitats.[97] Encourage investment in low-impact and green technologies (e.g., renewable energy, waste management systems) for tourism facilities.[28]

5. **Integrate Conservation and Climate Adaptation:** Mainstream biodiversity conservation and climate change adaptation into all tourism planning and policy.[21] Strengthen the management effectiveness of the ANP network and support the expansion of conservation efforts on private and communal lands (PCAs, conservation agreements).[19] Support research to understand climate change impacts on birds and habitats, and develop adaptation strategies for both wildlife and tourism operations. Promote avitourism models that directly contribute funding or support to conservation actions (e.g., through park fees, levies, direct donations, partnerships with conservation NGOs).[18]

6. **Empower Local and Indigenous Communities:** Actively support the development of viable community-based and indigenous-led tourism initiatives through

targeted technical assistance, access to finance, secure land tenure, and facilitated market linkages.[18] Promote models that integrate TEK respectfully and ensure communities have agency in decision-making and receive a fair share of the benefits derived from tourism on their lands.[26]

11.4.5.4. Peru's vision as "País de Pajareros": potential and global positioning

Peru possesses all the necessary ingredients to solidify and enhance its position as the preeminent global destination for birdwatchers – a true "País de Pajareros" (Country of Birders). Its unparalleled species richness and endemism provide an unmatched natural foundation.[3] Its diverse landscapes offer a stunning variety of birding experiences within a single country.[42] It has achieved significant international recognition through competitive events and targeted promotion.[16] Furthermore, there is a growing network of dedicated institutions, skilled guides, specialized infrastructure, and an active national birding community.[6]

The potential lies in strategically leveraging these strengths while proactively addressing the identified weaknesses and threats. Fully realizing the vision of "País de Pajareros" requires moving beyond simply having the most birds to becoming a global leader in **sustainable and equitable avitourism**. This involves not only offering world-class birding experiences but also demonstrating a clear commitment to conserving the habitats upon which these birds depend, mitigating climate change impacts, ensuring that tourism benefits contribute meaningfully to local community well-being (especially for indigenous populations), and fostering a strong national culture of appreciation for avian biodiversity. These transformative experiences can yield long-term benefits for participants by encouraging them to adopt new perspectives and ideas that embrace environmental consciousness and sustainability (Sotomayor et al., 2023).

Achieving this vision necessitates continued investment in research, conservation, infrastructure (developed sustainably), human capital (guides, managers), and innovative tourism products. It requires strengthening governance frameworks that facilitate effective collaboration between public, private, and community actors. By successfully integrating conservation goals with high-quality, responsible tourism development, Peru can not only maintain its competitive edge in the growing global avitourism market but also establish a model for how nature-based tourism can serve as a powerful engine for sustainable development and biodiversity protection on a national scale. The potential is immense, but requires ongoing commitment, strategic planning, and effective action across multiple sectors.

11.4.6. Conclusion

Peru's journey to becoming a globally acclaimed birdwatching destination is a compelling narrative of extraordinary natural wealth meeting strategic human endeavor. With approximately 1,860 bird species, including around 120 endemics, inhabiting ecosystems that range from coastal deserts and mangroves across the towering Andes to the vast Amazon rainforest, the nation offers an unparalleled spectacle of avian diversity.[1] This chapter has traced the evolution from early scientific expeditions focused on collection and resource extraction to the rise of modern avitourism, driven by dedicated institutions like CORBIDI, SERNANP, and PROMPERÚ, landmark publications like the "Birds of Peru" field guide, and the remarkable success achieved through citizen science platforms like eBird and events such as the Global Big Day.[29]

The analysis highlights a powerful **synergy between birdwatching, biodiversity conservation, and the potential for sustainable tourism**. The specialized market of birdwatchers, often educated, affluent, and environmentally conscious, provides a high-value clientele whose interests align closely with conservation goals.[13] Revenue generated from avitourism can provide crucial funding for protected area management, habitat restoration, and research, while offering economic alternatives to local communities that incentivize the protection of natural habitats.[13] Furthermore, community-based and indigenous tourism initiatives demonstrate the potential to not only conserve biodiversity but also to validate and sustain traditional ecological knowledge and cultural identity.[22]

However, realizing the **transformative potential of avitourism for conservation and regional development** requires navigating significant challenges. Persistent threats from habitat loss due to agricultural expansion, logging, and mining, compounded by the growing impacts of climate change, fundamentally endanger the avian resources upon which the sector depends.[21] Infrastructure gaps, variability in service quality, and the need for enhanced capacity building, particularly within local communities, remain obstacles to equitable and widespread development.[96] The vulnerability exposed by the COVID-19 pandemic underscores the need for building greater resilience within the tourism system.[86] Etiology matters in the attempts of overcoming challenges in order to achieve transformative avitourism towards conservation and sustainable regional development. In the context of systematic reviews, **etiology** refers to the identification and analysis of the causes—or causal factors—underlying a particular health or social problem. As Petticrew and Roberts (2006) note, etiology reviews aim to answer questions such as "What factors increase or decrease the risk of a given outcome?" by systematically locating, appraising, and synthesizing evidence from observational and other non-experimental studies. Such etiology-focused systematic reviews provide policymakers and practitioners with a robust evidence base on which to target interventions at the root causes of problems.

Ultimately, Peru's continued success as a "*País de Pajareros*" (literally, Country of Birds) hinges on its ability to effectively implement sustainable practices and foster robust governance models. This necessitates strengthening partnerships between public, private, and community sectors, prioritizing conservation within all development planning, investing in education and local empowerment, and strategically marketing its unique offerings while managing visitor impacts responsibly. Valdés-Velásquez et al. (2023) present biodiversity mainstreaming as a strategic framework for policy design and decision-making that embeds conservation objectives across sectors. They define biodiversity mainstreaming as "the process of integrating mechanisms, standards, indicators, and public perceptions of biodiversity conservation into all economic sectors, institutional policies, and development plans" (Valdés-Velásquez et al., 2023, p. 7), and the target is to achieve and maintain "healthy and resilient biodiversity, ecosystem functions, and services by ensuring the inclusion of all relevant actors" (Valdés-Velásquez et al., 2023, p. 7). This approach offers a practical tool for multi-stakeholder governance, supporting the protection of natural resources—such as avifauna—and enhancing the sustainability of avitourism.

Birdwatching in Peru offers more than just the opportunity to see incredible birds; it presents a pathway for fostering deeper connections – connecting visitors with nature, connecting economic benefits with conservation outcomes, connecting modern science with traditional knowledge, and ultimately, connecting diverse peoples through a shared appreciation for the planet's extraordinary avian heritage. The careful stewardship of this connection holds the key to a future where both Peru's birds and its people can thrive.

References

Adventure Travel Trade Association. (2021, May 28). *Peru achieves first place in the Global Big Day*. AdventureTravelNews. https://www.adventure.travel/stories/peru-achieves-first-place-in-the-global-big-day

All About Birds. (2020, July 22). *Primaries: Merlin goes global; eBird goes to Parliament; Big Red turns 20*. Cornell Lab of Ornithology. https://www.allaboutbirds.org/news/primaries-merlin-goes-global-ebird-goes-to-parliament-big-red-turns-20/

All About Birds. (2022, September 22). *In Peru, a celebratory revolution inspired by birds*. Cornell Lab of Ornithology. https://www.allaboutbirds.org/news/in-peru-a-celebratory-revolution-inspired-by-birds/

Altamirano-Guerrero, J. O., Shany, N., & Álvarez-Alonso, J. (2010). Avifauna y potencial para el aviturismo de la cuenca del Mishquiyaquillo (Región San Martín, Amazonía Peruana). *Folia Amazónica*, *19*(1–2), 7–22.

American Bird Conservancy. (2012, October 22). *New private reserve recognized by Peruvian government to protect birds*. https://abcbirds.org/news/rare-birds-protected-in-new-40000-acres-peruvian-reserve/

American Bird Conservancy. (2022, December 23). *New iNaturalist space created to track avian flu in seabirds*. https://abcbirds.org/news/avian-flu-seabird-tracking-project/

Angulo Pratolongo, F., & Díaz, V. R. (2012). New protected areas for the critically endangered White-winged Guan. *WPA News: The International Newsletter of the World Pheasant Association*, (89), 14.

Angulo Pratolongo, F., Palomino Cárdenas, C. W., Arnal-Delgado, H., Aucca Ch., & Uchofen, O. (2008). *Corredor de conservación de aves Marañón–Alto Mayo: Distribución de aves de alta prioridad de conservación y propuestas de áreas para su conservación* (pp. 1–146). Asociación Ecosistemas Andinos & American Bird Conservancy.

Arbio Peru. (n.d.). *Peru recognized as the best destination in the world for bird watching*. https://www.arbioperu.org/en/blog-posts/peru-recognized-as-the-best-destination-in-the-world-for-bird-watching/

Avibase. (n.d.). *Avibase - Bird checklists of the world - Peru*. https://avibase.bsc-eoc.org/checklist.jsp?region=PE

Barrio, J., & Begazo, A. (2015). The avifauna of El Angolo Hunting Reserve, north-west Peru: Tumbesian endemics and other significant records. *Bulletin of the British Ornithologists' Club, 135*(1), 6–28. https://boc-online.org/bulletins/downloads/BBOC1351-Barrio.pdf

Baumhackl, H. (2019). Peru "Land of the Incas": A tourism destination on the rise. *Journal of Tourism and Hospitality Management, 7*(2), 95–116. https://doi.org/10.15640/jthm.v7n2a10

Bed and Birding. (n.d.). *Manu Birding Lodge*. https://www.bedandbirding.com/details.php?id=11

Berkes, F., Colding, J., & Folke, C. (2000). Rediscovery of traditional ecological knowledge as adaptive management. *Ecological Applications, 10*(5), 1251–1262.

Biggs, D., Turpie, J., Fabricius, C., & Spenceley, A. (2011). The value of avitourism for conservation and job creation in South Africa. *Conservation & Society, 9*(1), 80–90.

Bio Manu Expeditions. (n.d.). *Madre de Dios River: Biodiversity hotspot of Peru.* https://biomanuexpeditions.com/madre-de-dios-river-biodiversity-hotspot/

Bird Count India. (n.d.). *About.* (Implied source for BCN description.)

BirdLife International. (2019a). *Endemic Bird Areas factsheet: Marañón valley.* http://datazone.birdlife.org/eba/factsheet/47

BirdLife International. (2019b). *Endemic Bird Areas factsheet: Peru-Ecuador dry forests.* http://datazone.birdlife.org/eba/factsheet/45

BirdLife International. (2021). *Birds and biodiversity targets: What the birds tell us about the Aichi Targets.* https://www.birdlife.org/wp-content/uploads/2021/02/birds_and_biodiversity_targets_report.pdf

BirdLife International. (2021). *Important Bird Areas factsheet: Peru.* https://datazone.birdlife.org/country/factsheet/peru

BirdLife International. (2022). *State of the World's Birds 2022.* https://dogadernegi.org/wp-content/uploads/2022/09/birdlife-sowb-report-2022-english-reduced-size.pdf

BirdLife International. (2022, January 13). *New growth in Peru.* https://www.birdlife.org/news/2022/01/13/new-growth-in-peru/

BirdsCaribbean. (n.d.). *About us.* https://www.birdscaribbean.org/

Bramwell, B., & Lane, B. (Eds.). (2000). *Tourism collaboration and partnerships: Policies, practice and sustainability.* Clevedon, UK: Channel View Publications. ISBN 1-873150-22-9.

Brightsmith, D. J., & Villalobos, E. M. (2011). Parrot behavior at a Peruvian clay lick. *The Wilson Journal of Ornithology, 123*(3), 595–602. Retrieved from https://vetmed.tamu.edu/themacawsociety/wp-content/uploads/sites/45/2019/03/brightsmith_and_villalobos_2011_clay_lick_behavior.pdf

Callaghan, C. T., Slater, M., & Major, R. E. (2018). The convergence of citizen science and peer-to-peer networks: Integrating existing projects to drive future research. *Royal Society Open Science, 5*(4), 172188.

Chen, L.-J., & Chen, W.-P. (2015). Push–pull factors in international birders' travel. *Tourism Management, 48*, 416–425. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.tourman.2014.12.011

Comité de Registros de Aves Peruanas (CRAP). (2012–2014). *Reportes del Comité de Registros de Aves Peruanas.* Boletín de la Unión de Ornitólogos del Perú (UNOP). http://www.corbidi.org/crap.html

Conservation Birding. (n.d.). *Abra Patricia - Owlet Lodge.* http://conservationbirding.com/aboutabra.htm and https://conservationbirding.org/?reserve=abra-patricia-owlet-lodge

Conservation International. (n.d.). *Alternative development pathways for indigenous Awajun communities: Building new livelihood opportunities from indigenous cultural and natural capital.* Fondation Ensemble. https://www.fondationensemble.org/en/projet/alternative-development-pathways-for-indigenous-awajun-communities-building-new-livelihood-opportunities-from-indigenous-cultural-and-natural-capital/

Conservation International Peru. (n.d.). *The value of a standing forest: The experience of the native community of Shampuyacu with Conservation International and its partners.*

https://www.conservation.org/docs/default-source/peru/the-value-of-a-standing-forest.pdf

Conradie, B., & van Zyl, H. (2020). Environmental literacy and conservation behavior amongst birders in South Africa. *Ostrich, 91*(3), 205–213.

Contraloría General de la República del Perú. (2021). *Informe de Auditoría de Desempeño a las Áreas Naturales Protegidas*. https://www.contraloria.gob.pe

Cornell Lab of Ornithology. (n.d.). *eBird*. https://ebird.org/home

Cornell Lab of Ornithology. (n.d.). *eBird Global Big Day*. https://ebird.org/globalbigday

Cornell Lab of Ornithology. (n.d.). *eBird Partners - Peru*. https://ebird.org/region/PE/partners

Cornell Lab of Ornithology. (n.d.). *eBird Portals*. https://ebird.org/peru/about/portals

Cornell Lab of Ornithology. (2020, July 22). *In Peruvian Amazon, celebration of birds takes flight*. *Cornell Chronicle*. https://news.cornell.edu/stories/2020/07/peruvian-amazon-celebration-birds-takes-flight

Cornell Lab of Ornithology. (2023, October 14). *eBirders - San Martín - October Big Day 2023*. https://ebird.org/region/PE-SAM/ebirders??yr=BIGDAY_2023b

Cornell Lab of Ornithology. (2024, May 15). *Global Big Day 2024 results*. *eBird News*. https://ebird.org/news/global-big-day-2024-results

CTCN (Climate Technology Centre & Network). (n.d.). *Servicio Nacional de Áreas Naturales Protegidas por el Estado - SERNANP*. https://www.ctc-n.org/networking-and-collaboration/collaboration/servicio-nacional-de-reas-naturales-protegidas-por-el

Cushman, G. T. (2005). "The most valuable birds in the world": International conservation science and the revival of Peru's guano industry, 1909–1965. *Environmental History, 10*(3), 477–509. Doi: 10.1093/envhis/10.3.477

Dauphiné, N., & Cooper, R. J. (2009). Ecology and conservation of Aguaruna-Jívaro forest birds in the Cordillera de Colán, Peru. *Ornitologia Neotropical, 20*(4), 587–604. Available at: https://digitalcommons.usf.edu/ornitologia_neotropical/vol19/iss5/43

Davies, T. J., et al. (1997). The conservation status of birds on the Cordillera de Colán, Peru. *Bird Conservation International, 7*(4), 359–375. https://www.cambridge.org/core/services/aop-cambridge-core/content/view/9B114739B5DA4BF013D2422D0654B40F/S0959270900001490a.pdf/div-class-title-the-conservation-status-of-birds-on-the-cordillera-de-colan-peru-div.pdf

Devex. (n.d.). *Ornithology and Biodiversity Center (CORBIDI)*. https://www.devex.com/organizations/ornithology-and-biodiversity-center-corbidi-163838

Díaz-Alván, J., et al. (2020). Bird diversity in seasonally dry forests of the southern sector of the Regional Conservation Area Angostura Faical, Tumbes, Peru. *Revista Peruana de Biología, 27*(1), 191–204. http://www.scielo.org.pe/scielo.php?script=sci_arttext&pid=S2413-32992020000100191

Dudley, N. (Ed.). (2008). *Guidelines for Applying Protected Area Management Categories*. IUCN.

eBird. (n.d.). *Hotspot: Manu Birding Lodge*. https://ebird.org/region/L3601096

eBird. (n.d.). *Hotspot: RN Calipuy*. https://ebird.org/region/L7385526

eBird. (n.d.). *Trip report: Patagonia & Central Chile*. https://ebird.org/tripreport/239055

eBird News. (2014, October 21). *LSU Museum of Natural Science sets new world Big Day record*. https://ebird.org/news/lsubigday/

FAO (Food and Agriculture Organization of the United Nations). (n.d.). *Peru – Forest Resources Assessment*. https://www.fao.org/4/s4009e/S4009E05.htm

Fink, D., Auer, T., Johnston, A., Ruiz-Gutierrez, V., & Hochachka, W. M. (2020). *eBird Status and Trends*. Cornell Lab of Ornithology. https://science.ebird.org/en/status-and-trends

Flanagan, J. N. M., & Angulo, F. (2003). La Zona Reservada de Laquipampa – ecología, conservación y manejo. In *Memorias del Primer Congreso Internacional de Bosques Secos* (6–9 de noviembre 2003). Universidad de Piura.

Flanagan, J. R., & Johansson, R. S. (2003). Action plans used in action observation. *Nature, 424*(6950), 769–771. https://doi.org/10.1038/nature01861

Franke, I., Mattos, J., Salinas, L., Mendoza, C., & Zambrano, S. (2005). Áreas importantes para la conservación de las aves en Perú. In K. Boyla & A. Estrada (Eds.), *Áreas importantes para la conservación de las aves en los Andes tropicales* (pp. 471–619). Quito, Ecuador: BirdLife International.

Gonda, C. M. (2020). *Climate change and biodiversity in the Tropical Andes* [PDF]. Fundación Ambiente y Recursos Naturales-FARN. https://farn.org.ar/wp-content/uploads/2020/06/Report-Tropical-Andes_SIMPLES_baja.pdf

Fjeldså, J., & Rahbek, C. (1998). Continent-wide conservation priorities and diversification process. In G. M. Mace, A. Balmford, & J. Ginsberg (Eds.), *Conservation in a changing world* (pp. 139–160). Cambridge University Press.

Fjeldså, J., & Rahbek, C. (1998). Priorities for conservation in Bolivia, illustrated by a continent-wide analysis of bird distribution. In *Biodiversity - a challenge for development research and policy* (pp. 313-327). Springer.

Fjeldså, J., & Irestedt, M. (2009). Diversification of the South American avifauna: Patterns and implications for conservation in the Andes. *Annals of the Missouri Botanical Garden, 96*(3), 398–409. https://doi.org/10.3417/2007148

Future Market Insights (2024). Ornithology tourism market insights – Growth & forecast 2024–2034. Retrieved May 6, 2025, from https://www.futuremarketinsights.com/reports/ornithology-tourism-sector-perspective-and-outlook

Grajal, A. (1995). Structure and function of the digestive tract of the Hoatzin (Opisthocomus hoazin): A folivorous bird with foregut fermentation. *The Auk, 112*(1), 20–28. https://doi.org/10.2307/4088763

Grand View Research. (2024). *Birdwatching tourism market size, share & trends analysis report*. https://www.grandviewresearch.com/industry-analysis/birdwatching-tourism-market-report

Großmann, N., Wilde, M., & Randler, C. (2025). Understanding birdwatching motivation through the lens of self-determination theory. *Leisure Sciences*. Advance online publication. https://doi.org/10.1080/01490400.2025.2481946

Harvey, M. G., Bravo, G. A., Claramunt, S., Cuervo, A. M., Derryberry, G. E., Battilana, J., Seeholzer, G. F., McKay, J. S., O'Meara, B. C., Faircloth, B. C., Edwards, S. V., Pérez-Emán, J., Moyle, R. G., Sheldon, F. H., Aleixo, A., Smith, B. T., Chesser, R. T., Silveira, L. F., Cracraft, J., … Brumfield, R. T. (2020). The evolution of a tropical biodiversity hotspot. *Science, 370*(6522), 1343–1348. https://doi.org/10.1126/science.aaz6970

Herzog, S. K., Martínez, R., Jørgensen, P. M., & Tiessen, H. (Eds.). (2011). *Climate change and biodiversity in the tropical Andes*. Inter-American Institute for Global Change Research (IAI) and Scientific Committee on Problems of the Environment (SCOPE).

Herzog, S. K., & Kattan, G. H. (2011). Patterns of diversity and endemism in the birds of the tropical Andes. In S. K. Herzog, R. Martínez, P. M. Jørgensen, & H. Tiessen (Eds.), *Climate change and biodiversity in the tropical Andes* (pp. 245–259). Inter-American Institute for Global Change Research (IAI) and Scientific Committee on Problems of the Environment (SCOPE).

Higham, J. E. S., & Lück, M. (Eds.). (2007). *Marine wildlife and tourism management: Insights from the natural and social sciences*. CABI. https://doi.org/10.1079/9781845933456.0000

iNaturalist Forum. (2022, November). *Importing Merlin IDs to iNaturalist?* https://forum.inaturalist.org/t/importing-merlin-ids-to-inaturalist/37120

Inca Expert. (n.d.). *Birds of Peru: 10 fascinating must-see & endemic species.* https://www.incaexpert.com/blog/birds-of-peru

Inkaterra. (2023, October). *Peru hosts its first October Big Day, worldwide birding competition. Inkaterra Newsletter*. https://www.inkaterra.com/newsletters/2023/octubre/nl-octubre.html

IUCN (International Union for Conservation of Nature). (2011). *The IUCN Red List of Threatened Species. Version 2011.1.*

Lane, D. F., & Angulo, F. (2018). The distribution, natural history, and status of the Long-whiskered Owlet (Xenoglaux loweryi). *The Wilson Journal of Ornithology, 130*(3), 650–657. https://doi.org/10.1676/17-061.1

Larsen, T. H. (2018). *A bird's eye view: Lessons from 50 years of bird trade regulation in Amazon countries*. TRAFFIC International. https://www.traffic.org/site/assets/files/11517/birds-eye-view.pdf

Latam Airlines. (n.d.). *Birdwatching in Peru: Tumbes.* https://www.latamairlines.com/us/en/activities/birdwatching-peru/tumbes

Leading Peru Travel. (n.d.). *Impact of tourism on nature protection in Peru.* https://leadingperutravel.com/blog/impact-of-tourism-on-nature-protection-in-peru

Liang, J. (2023, August 21). *Hundreds of Andean bird species at risk due to deforestation: New research shows how to protect them*. Florida Museum of Natural History. https://www.floridamuseum.ufl.edu/science/hundreds-of-andean-bird-species-at-risk-due-to-deforestation-new-research-shows-how-to-protect-them/

Liu, T., Ma, L., Cheng, L., Hou, Y., & Wen, Y. (2021). Is ecological birdwatching tourism a more effective way to transform the value of ecosystem services?—A case study of birdwatching destinations in Mingxi County, China. *International Journal of Environmental Research and Public Health, 18*(23), 12424. https://doi.org/10.3390/ijerph182312424

Machupicchu.org. (n.d.). *Peru's Indigenous Rainforest Communities*. https://www.machupicchu.org/perus-indigenous-rainforest-communities.htm

Machupicchu.org. (n.d.). *Peruvian Jungle Birdwatching Expeditions in 2025*. https://www.machupicchu.org/peruvian-jungle-birdwatching-expeditions-in-2025.htm

Machupicchu.org. (n.d.). *Your ultimate Peru wildlife viewing guide: Amazon adventures*. https://www.machupicchu.org/your-ultimate-peru-wildlife-viewing-guide-amazon-adventures.htm

Majluf, P., & Reyes, J. C. (2009). Conservation challenges in the Paracas National Reserve, Peru: Balancing biodiversity and human livelihoods. *Environmental Conservation, 36*(3), 220–228. https://doi.org/10.1017/S0376892909990228

Marengo, J. A., Pabón, J., Díaz, A., Rosas, G., Ávalos, G., Montealegre, E., Villacis, M., Solman, S., & Rojas, M. (2011). Climate change: Evidence and future scenarios for the Andean region. In S. K. Herzog, R. Martínez, P. M. Jørgensen, & H. Tiessen (Eds.), *Climate change and biodiversity in the tropical Andes* (pp. 110–125). Inter-American Institute for Global Change Research (IAI) and Scientific Committee on Problems of the Environment (SCOPE).

Mohammadi, A., Alambeigi, A., & Steven, R. (2024). A bibliometric analysis of birdwatching tourism research: An exploration for emerging insights. *Journal of Wildlife and Biodiversity, 8*(1), 213–232. https://doi.org/10.5281/zenodo.10201991

Moncrieff, A. E., Johnson, O., Felix, C., Hiller, A. E., Corbett, E. C., & Brady, M. L. (2025). Avifaunal surveys in the central Peruvian Amazon clarify range limits and highlight links between avian and habitat diversity. *The Condor: Ornithological Applications, 127*(3), 934–951. https://doi.org/10.1676/20-00082

Mosammam, H., et al. (2016). SWOT analysis of tourism development strategy in coastal areas of Iran. *Tourism Management Perspectives, 20*, 128–140.

Myers, N., Mittermeier, R. A., Mittermeier, C. G., da Fonseca, G. A. B., & Kent, J. (2000). Biodiversity hotspots for conservation priorities. *Nature, 403*(6772), 853–858. https://doi.org/10.1038/35002501

Neotropical Bird Club. (2019). 25 years, 25 bird books. *Neotropical Birding, 25*, 34–37. https://www.neotropicalbirdclub.org/neotropicalBirding/NB25/NB25-190729-digital-lr.pdf

Newsome, D., Dowling, R. K., & Moore, S. A. (2005). *Wildlife tourism*. Channel View Publications.

O'Neill, J. P., & Graves, G. R. (1977). A new genus and species of owl (Aves: Strigidae) from Peru. *The Auk, 94*(3), 409–416.

Omarzadeh, D., et al. (2021). Ecotourism potential assessment using integrated SWOT and quantitative strategic planning matrix (QSPM) models in Taleghan County, Iran. *Environmental Development, 38*, 100616.

Ortiz-von Halle, B. (2018). *Bird's-eye view: Lessons from 50 years of bird trade regulation & conservation in Amazon countries*. TRAFFIC. ISBN 978-1-911646-04-4

Partners in Flight. (2025, January 15). *CORBIDI: Innovación inclusiva en la observación de aves en Perú*. https://partnersinflight.org/corbidi-innovacion-inclusiva-en-la-observacion-de-aves-en-peru/

Peru.info / PromPerú. (n.d.). *Birdwatching Peru*. https://birdwatching.peru.travel/en

Peru.info / PromPerú. (n.d.). *Experience authentic adventures with community-based tourism in Peru*. https://peru.info/en-us/tourism/blogperu/3/46/experience-authentic-adventures-with-communitybased-tourism-in-peru

Peru.travel / PromPerú. (n.d.). *Birdwatching routes*. https://birdwatching.peru.travel/en/routes

Peru.travel / PromPerú. (n.d.). *The Southern Peru Birding Route*. https://birdwatching.peru.travel/Imagenes/archivos/8/the-southern-peru-birding-route-2023.pdf

Peru.travel / PromPerú. (2021, May 14). *Peru takes first place at Global Big Day*. https://www.peru.travel/en/news/peru-takes-first-place-at-global-big-day

Peru.travel / PromPerú. (2023, March 13). *Peru obtained the second place in the Global Big Day 2023*. https://birdwatching.peru.travel/en/blog/peru-obtained-the-second-place-in-the-global-big-day-2023

Peru Adventures Tours. (n.d.). *Birds in the National Sanctuary of Lagunas de Mejia*. https://www.peruadventurestours.com/en/arequipa/birds_of_mejia_lagoons.html

Peru Adventures Tours. (n.d.). *Laguna de Mejia – Peru Bird Sanctuaries*. https://www.peruadventurestours.com/en/arequipa/mejia_bird_sanctuary.html

Peru Explorer. (n.d.). *Conservation projects in Peru: Protect the Amazon*. https://www.peru-explorer.com/conservation-projects-in-peru-protect-the-amazon.htm

Peru Explorer. (n.d.). *Discover Peru's best bird watching expeditions*. https://www.peru-explorer.com/discover-perus-best-bird-watching-expeditions.htm

Peru Explorer. (n.d.). *Peru birdwatching top activities: Explore nature's best*. https://www.peru-explorer.com/peru-birdwatching-top-activities-explore-natures-best.htm

Peru North. (n.d.). *Alto Mayo & Abra Patricia birding 5-day*. https://www.perunorth.com/alto-mayo-abra-patricia-birding-5d

Petticrew, M., & Roberts, H. (2006). *Systematic reviews in the social sciences: A practical guide*. Blackwell Publishing. https://doi.org/10.1002/9780470754887

Plenge, M. A. (2016). *Bibliografía de las aves del Perú / Bibliography of the birds of Peru, 2001–2016* (Vol. 2, 209 pp.).

PROMPERÚ. (2013). *Perfil del observador de aves*.

PROMPERÚ. (2023). *Birdwatching routes*. https://birdwatching.peru.travel/en/routes

Puhakka, L., Salo, M., & Sääksjärvi, I. E. (2011). Bird diversity, birdwatching tourism and conservation in Peru: A geographic analysis. *PLoS ONE, 6*(11), e26786. https://doi.org/10.1371/journal.pone.0026786

Pung, J. M. (2023). SWOT analysis in tourism. In J. Jafari & H. Xiao (Eds.), *Encyclopedia of Tourism*. Springer, Cham. https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-319-01669-6_840-1

QTI Travel. (2022). *Mincetur published a new strategy to reactivate the tourism sector for the period of 2022–2025*. https://qtitravel.com/blog/mincetur-published-a-new-strategy-to-reactivate-the-tourism-sector-for-the-period-of-2022-2025/

Rahbek, C., & Graves, G. R. (2001). Multiscale assessment of patterns of avian species richness. *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences, 98*(8), 4534–4539.

Randler, C. (2022). Motivations and specialization of birders are differently related to engagement in citizen science projects of different complexity. *Behavioral Sciences, 12*(10), 395. https://doi.org/10.3390/bs12100395

Remsen, J. V., et al. (2011/2015). *A classification of the bird species of South America*. American Ornithological Society. http://www.museum.lsu.edu/~Remsen/SACCBaseline.html

Ren, Z., et al. (2022). Birdwatching tourism: A systematic literature review. *Journal of Outdoor Recreation and Tourism, 39*, 100531.

ResearchGate. (n.d.). *Agreement of the international avitourist market to ecotourism principles: A South African development perspective*. https://www.researchgate.net/publication/304185371_Agreement_of_the_international_avitourist_market_to_ecotourism_principles_A_South_African_development_perspective

ResearchGate. (n.d.). *Ecotourism in Peru: Laguna de los Patos as a case study*. https://www.researchgate.net/publication/362525970_Ecotourism_in_Peru_Laguna_de_los_Patos_as_a_case_study

ResearchGate. (n.d.). *Notes on the birds of Canyon Colca, southern Peru*. https://www.researchgate.net/publication/314664724_Notes_on_the_birds_of_Canyon_Colca_southern_Peru

Ridgely, R. S., & Greenfield, P. J. (2001). *The birds of Ecuador: Status, distribution, and taxonomy*. Cornell University Press.

Ridgely, R. S., & Tudor, G. (1994). *The birds of South America: Vol. II, The Suboscine Passerines*. University of Texas Press.

Rockjumper Birding. (n.d.). *Biggest Day – New world record!* https://www.rockjumperbirding.com/biggest-day-new-world-record/

Roy, H. E., Byrne, D. H., & Pickering, C. M. (2012). A systematic review of the impacts of recreational activities on birds. *Conservation Biology, 26*(5), 767–776.

Saldaña, I. S., Ugaz, A., Baldeón, A., Benites, D. A., Barrionuevo, R., & Vallejos, L. M. (2020). Bird diversity and noteworthy records from the western side of the Porculla Pass and the Huancabamba–Chamaya River sub-basin, northwest of Peru. *Arnaldoa, 27*(1). https://doi.org/10.22497/arnaldoa.271.27111

Sánchez-Rivero, M., et al. (2020). Birdwatching tourism: A review of the literature and a research agenda. *Current Issues in Tourism, 23*(18), 2255–2273.

Scheyvens, R. (1999). Ecotourism and the empowerment of local communities. *Tourism Management, 20*(2), 245–249.

Schulenberg, T. S., Stotz, D. F., Lane, D. F., O'Neill, J. P., & Parker III, T. A. (2010). *Birds of Peru: Revised and Updated Edition*. Princeton University Press.

Schulenberg, T. S., Stotz, D. F., Lane, D. F., O'Neill, J. P., & Parker III, T. A. (2020). Andean Cock-of-the-rock (Rupicola peruvianus), version 1.0. In T. S. Schulenberg (Ed.), *Birds of the World*. Cornell Lab of Ornithology. https://doi.org/10.2173/bow.andcot1.01

SciELO Perú. (2020). Bird diversity in seasonally dry forests of the southern sector of the Regional Conservation Area Angostura Faical, Tumbes, Peru. *Revista Peruana de Biología, 27*(1). http://www.scielo.org.pe/scielo.php?script=sci_arttext&pid=S2413-32992020000100191

SciSpace. (n.d.). *Birdwatching and avitourism: A global review of research into its participant markets, distribution and impacts, highlighting future research priorities to inform sustainable avitourism management*. https://scispace.com/pdf/birdwatching-and-avitourism-a-global-review-of-research-into-3kkhkwkm2n.pdf

Sekercioğlu, Ç. H. (2002). Impacts of birdwatching on human and avian communities. *Environmental Conservation, 29*(3), 282–289.

SERNANP. (2022). *Sistema Nacional de Áreas Naturales Protegidas por el Estado – SINANPE*. https://www.sernanp.gob.pe/sinanpe

SERNANP (Servicio Nacional de Áreas Naturales Protegidas por el Estado). (n.d.). *Aliados por la Conservación*.

SERNANP (Servicio Nacional de Áreas Naturales Protegidas por el Estado). (n.d.). *Santuario Nacional Lagunas de Mejía*. (Implied source.)

Servat, G. P., Tello, J. G., Valqui, T., Angulo, F., & Aucca, C. (2012). The IXth Neotropical Ornithological Congress in Peru (Cusco, 8–14 November 2011). *Journal of Caribbean Ornithology*, Special Issue, 1–4. https://data.fs.usda.gov/research/pubs/iitf/ja_iitf_2012_Servat001.pdf

Sidik, S. M. (2023, Spring). The bird flu blazes on, amping up concerns for wildlife and human health. *Audubon Magazine*. Retrieved from https://www.audubon.org/magazine/spring-2023/from-audubon-magazine/bird-flu-blazes-amping-concerns-wildlife-and-human-health

Schulenberg, T. S.; Stotz, D. F.; Lane, D. F.; O'Neill J. P; Parker, T. A. 2007. Birds of Peru. Princeton, NJ: Princeton University Press. 656 pp.

Sotomayor, S., Romo, P., & Guillén, K. (2023). Transformative birdwatching tourism experiences in the Peruvian Amazon. In A. Mandić & S. K. Walia (Eds.), The Routledge Handbook of Nature Based Tourism Development (1st ed., pp. 264-280). Routledge.

Stattersfield, A. J., Crosby, M. J., Long, A. J., & Wege, D. C. (1998). *Endemic Bird Areas of the World: Priorities for Biodiversity Conservation* (Birdlife Conservation Series No. 7). Cambridge, UK: BirdLife International.

Stemmer (formerly Jathe), M., et al. (2022). Birdwatching tourism: A systematic literature review and research agenda. *Journal of Sustainable Tourism, 30*(10), 2345–2363.

Steven, R., Pickering, C., & Castley, J. G. (2011). A review of the impacts of nature-based recreation on birds. *Journal of Environmental Management, 92*(10), 2287–2294. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jenvman.2011.05.005

Steven, R., Morrison, C., & Castley, J. G. (2015). Birdwatching and avitourism: A global review of research into its participant markets, distribution and impacts, highlighting future research priorities to inform sustainable avitourism management. *Journal of Sustainable Tourism*, *23*(8–9), 1257–1276. https://doi.org/10.1080/09669582.2014.924955

Stotz, D. F., Fitzpatrick, J. W., Parker III, T. A., & Moskovits, D. K. (1996). *Neotropical Birds: Ecology and Conservation*. University of Chicago Press.

Sullivan, B. L., Aycrigg, J. L., Barry, J. H., Bonney, R. E., Bruns, N., Cooper, C. B., ... & Kelling, S. (2014). The eBird enterprise: An integrated approach to development and application of citizen science. *Biological Conservation, 169*, 31-40.

Tamimzadeh, S., & Özel, Ç. H. (2024). Determining the bibliometric profile of birdwatching and birding research on Web of Science with VOSviewer software. *Applied Tourism Research and Social Sciences*, 7(1), 212–225. https://doi.org/10.53353/atrss.1315960

Tapper, R. (2006). *Wildlife watching and tourism: A study on the benefits and risks of a fast growing tourism activity and its impacts on species* (68 pp.). United Nations Environment Programme & Secretariat of the Convention on the Conservation of Migratory Species of Wild Animals. ISBN 3-931742-07-7.

Terborgh, J. (1999). *Requiem for Nature*. Island Press.

Tierras Vivas. (n.d.). *Mangroves of Tumbes Peru*. https://www.tierrasvivas.com/en/travel-blog/mangroves-of-tumbes-peru

Udvardy, M. D. F. (1975). *A classification of the biogeographical provinces of the world* (IUCN Occasional Paper No. 18). Morges, Switzerland: IUCN.

Valdés-Velásquez, A., Diz, D., Forsberg, K., Llerena, C., Ossio, C., López de la Lama, R., de la Puente, S., Aravena, C., Wagner, T., DaCosta, V., Nelva Díaz, L., Mercado, T., Delgado, E., Votier, S., Johnson, A., & Salazar, A. (2023). *Mainstreaming biodiversity into local coastal development: Key findings for the Paracas Bay Area, Peru*. Heriot-Watt University. https://gcrf.site.hw.ac.uk/2023/01/23/mainstreaming-biodiversity-into-local-coastal-development-key-findings-for-the-paracas-bay-area-peru/

Wallace, R. B., Reinaga, A., Piland, N. C., Piana, R. P., Vargas, F. H., Zegarra, R. E., ... & Zurita, L. (2022). Defining spatial conservation priorities for the Andean Condor (Vultur gryphus). *Journal of Raptor Research, 56*(1), 1–16. https://doi.org/10.3356/JRR-20-59

Williamson, J. L., Gyllenhaal, E. F., Bauernfeind, S. M., Bautista, E., Baumann, M. J., Gadek, C. R., ... & Witt, C. C. (2024). Endurance athletes hiding in plain sight in the high Andes. *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences, 121*(23), e2407414121. https://doi.org/10.1073/pnas.2407414121

Williams, R., Álvarez-Alonso, J., & Coppin, L. (2005). Análisis de la factibilidad de la Ruta Aviturística del Norte del Perú con recomendaciones para su desarrollo e implementación. Informe para PROMPERÚ, Lima

WorldAtlas. (n.d.). *Ecologically megadiverse countries of the world*. https://www.worldatlas.com/articles/ecologically-megadiverse-countries-of-the-world.html

World Economic Forum. (2013). *The Travel & Tourism Competitiveness Report 2013: Peru*. https://www3.weforum.org/docs/WEF_TT_Peru_CompetitivenessReport_2013.pdf

World Population Review. (n.d.). *Megadiverse countries 2025*. https://worldpopulationreview.com/country-rankings/megadiverse-countries

World Rainforests / Mongabay. (n.d.). *Total number of bird species, by country*. https://worldrainforests.com/03birds.htm

World Tourism Organization. (2024). *Tourism Doing Business – Investing in Peru* (ISBN 978-92-844-2593-8 [print]; 978-92-844-2594-5 [electronic]). Madrid, Spain: UNWTO. https://doi.org/10.18111/9789284425945

WWF Ecuador. (2025, March 11). *Indigenous youth from Loreto and Amazonas raise their voices to defend their territories*. https://www.wwf.org.ec/?393931/Indigenous-Youth-from-Loreto-and-Amazonas-Raise-Their-Voices-to-Defend-Their-Territories

WWF International. (n.d.). *A bird's eye view: Lessons from 50 years of bird trade regulation in South America*. https://wwfint.awsassets.panda.org/downloads/south_america_bird_trade_2.pdf

Yilmaz, İ. N., & Öztürk, A. (2023). SWOT analysis of sustainable ecotourism potential management in protected areas: A case study of Artvin. *Journal of Tourism and Hospitality, 12*, 517. Retrieved from https://www.longdom.org/open-access/swot-analysis-of-sustainable-ecotourism-potential-management-in-protected-areas-a-case-study-of-artvin-99966.html

Yli-Hakala, E. (2010). *PENTUR – Plan Estratégico Nacional de Turismo: The role of the Strategic Tourism Plan in Peru* (Bachelor's thesis, HAAGA-HELIA University of Applied Sciences). 63 pp.

Zavaleta Chavez Arroyo, F. O., Sánchez Pantaleón, A. J., Navarro-Mendoza, Y. P., & Esparza-Huamanchumo, R. M. (2023). Community tourism conditions and sustainable management of a community tourism association: The case of Cruz Pata, Peru. *Sustainability, 15*(5), 4401. https://doi.org/10.3390/su15054401

Other Sources Consulted

1. Megadiverse countries - Wikipedia, accessed April 19, 2025, https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Megadiverse_countries
2. Countries with the most bird species - world rainforest, accessed April 19, 2025, https://worldrainforests.com/03birds.htm
3. The World's 17 Megadiverse Countries - WorldAtlas, accessed April 19, 2025, https://www.worldatlas.com/articles/ecologically-megadiverse-countries-of-the-world.html
4. Peru Birdwatching Top Activities: Explore Nature's Best, accessed April 19, 2025, https://www.peru-explorer.com/peru-birdwatching-top-activities-explore-natures-best.htm
5. New growth in Peru - BirdLife International, accessed April 19, 2025, https://www.birdlife.org/news/2022/01/13/new-growth-in-peru/
6. A World of Positive Impact: Results from Global Big Day 2024 - eBird, accessed April 19, 2025, https://ebird.org/news/global-big-day-2024-results
7. Global Big Day - eBird, accessed April 19, 2025, https://ebird.org/globalbigday
8. Geography of Peru - Wikipedia, accessed April 19, 2025, https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Geography_of_Peru
9. FOREST GENETIC RESOURCES INFORMATION No. 15, accessed April 19, 2025, https://www.fao.org/4/s4009e/S4009E05.htm
10. Bird Biogeography II, accessed April 19, 2025, https://avesbiology.com/birdbiogeography2.html

11. Birds of Western Ecuador: A Photographic Guide 9780691157801, 2016930081, accessed April 19, 2025, https://dokumen.pub/birds-of-western-ecuador-a-photographic-guide-9780691157801-2016930081.html
12. Peru Endemic Birds Checklist, accessed April 19, 2025, https://lntreasures.com/perub.html
13. Birdwatching Tourism: Perspectives, Impacts and Sustain - CABI Digital Library, accessed April 19, 2025, https://www.cabidigitallibrary.org/doi/pdf/10.1079/9781800626669.0006?download=true
14. birdwatching, ornitological tourism and avitourism: terminological dispute and review of world and russian - Dialnet, accessed April 19, 2025, https://dialnet.unirioja.es/descarga/articulo/9878730.pdf
15. Birdwatching and avitourism: a global review of research into its participant markets, distribution and impacts, highlighting fu - SciSpace, accessed April 19, 2025, https://scispace.com/pdf/birdwatching-and-avitourism-a-global-review-of-research-into-3kkhkwkm2n.pdf
16. Peru recognized as the best destination in the world for bird watching - Arbio, accessed April 19, 2025, https://www.arbioperu.org/en/blog-posts/peru-recognized-as-the-best-destination-in-the-world-for-bird-watching/
17. Birdwatching Tourism Market Size And Share Report, 2030 - Grand View Research, accessed April 19, 2025, https://www.grandviewresearch.com/industry-analysis/birdwatching-tourism-market-report
18. Impact of Tourism on Nature Protection in Peru., accessed April 19, 2025, https://leadingperutravel.com/blog/impact-of-tourism-on-nature-protection-in-peru
19. Bird Diversity, Birdwatching Tourism and Conservation in Peru: A Geographic Analysis, accessed April 19, 2025, https://www.researchgate.net/publication/51844494_Bird_Diversity_Birdwatching_Tourism_and_Conservation_in_Peru_A_Geographic_Analysis
20. Agreement of the international avitourist market to ecotourism principles: A South African development perspective - ResearchGate, accessed April 19, 2025, https://www.researchgate.net/publication/304185371_Agreement_of_the_international_avitourist_market_to_ecotourism_principles_A_South_African_development_perspective
21. BIRDS AND BIODIVERSITY TARGETS | BirdLife International, accessed April 19, 2025, https://www.birdlife.org/wp-content/uploads/2021/02/birds_and_biodiversity_targets_report.pdf
22. In Peruvian Amazon, a celebration of birds takes flight | Cornell ..., accessed April 19, 2025, https://news.cornell.edu/stories/2020/07/peruvian-amazon-celebration-birds-takes-flight
23. Birds of Peru: 10 Fascinating Must-See & Endemic Species - Inca Expert, accessed April 19, 2025, https://www.incaexpert.com/blog/birds-of-peru
24. In Peru, a Celebratory Revolution Inspired by Birds | Living Bird, accessed April 19, 2025, https://www.allaboutbirds.org/news/in-peru-a-celebratory-revolution-inspired-by-birds/
25. What's in a Bird's Name? Bird Records and Aguaruna Names in Amazonian Indigenous Territories of Peru - MDPI, accessed April 19, 2025, https://www.mdpi.com/2673-6004/6/1/2
26. Bird Conservation in Aguaruna-jívaro Communities in the Cordillera De Colán, Peru - Digital Commons @ USF - University of South Florida, accessed April 19, 2025, https://digitalcommons.usf.edu/cgi/viewcontent.cgi?article=1829&context=ornitologia_neotropical
27. Peru's Indigenous Rainforest Communities - Machu Picchu, accessed April 19, 2025, https://www.machupicchu.org/perus-indigenous-rainforest-communities.htm
28. Peru's Commitment to Sustainable Tourism: Green Destinations Top 100 People's Choice Award 2025, accessed April 19, 2025, https://www.apec2016.pe/perus-commitment-to-sustainable-tourism-green-destinations-top-100-peoples-choice-award-2025/
29. "The Most Valuable Birds in the World": International Conservation Science and the Revival of Peru's Guano Industry, 1909-1965 | Request PDF - ResearchGate, accessed

April 19, 2025, https://www.researchgate.net/publication/249293196_The_Most_Valuable_Birds_in_the_World_International_Conservation_Science_and_the_Revival_of_Peru's_Guano_Industry_1909-1965
30. Alfonso Olalla and His Family: The Ornithological Exploration of Amazonian Peru, accessed April 19, 2025, https://bioone.org/journals/bulletin-of-the-american-museum-of-natural-history/volume-2010/issue-343/677.1/Alfonso-Olalla-and-His-Family--The-Ornithological-Exploration-of/10.1206/677.1.full
31. Avifaunal surveys in the central Peruvian Amazon clarify range limits and highlight links between avian and habitat diversity - Harvey Lab, accessed April 19, 2025, http://www.harveybirdlab.org/docs/Moncrieffetal2020.pdf
32. Ornithology History | Research at The Academy of Natural Sciences of Drexel University, accessed April 19, 2025, https://ansp.org/research/systematics-evolution/ornithology/ornithology-history/
33. Ornithology and Biodiversity Center (CORBIDI) - Devex, accessed April 19, 2025, https://www.devex.com/organizations/ornithology-and-biodiversity-center-corbidi-163838
34. Why biodiversity changes from place to place - UNM Newsroom, accessed April 19, 2025, https://news.unm.edu/news/why-biodiversity-changes-from-place-to-place
35. The distribution, natural history, and status of the Long-whiskered Owlet (Xenoglaux loweryi), accessed April 19, 2025, https://www.tandfonline.com/doi/abs/10.1676/17-061.1
36. CRAP - CORBIDI, accessed April 19, 2025, http://www.corbidi.org/crap.html
37. ornitologia neotropical - USDA Forest Service, accessed April 19, 2025, https://data.fs.usda.gov/research/pubs/iitf/ja_iitf_2012_Servat001.pdf
38. CORBIDI: Innovación inclusiva en la observación de aves en Perú ..., accessed April 19, 2025, https://partnersinflight.org/corbidi-innovacion-inclusiva-en-la-observacion-de-aves-en-peru/
39. SERNANP del Perú - Adaptation At Altitude, accessed April 19, 2025, https://adaptationataltitude.org/organisation/sernanp-del-peru/
40. Servicio Nacional de Áreas Naturales Protegidas por el Estado | Climate Technology Centre & Network, accessed April 19, 2025, https://www.ctc-n.org/networking-and-collaboration/collaboration/servicio-nacional-de-reas-naturales-protegidas-por-el
41. New Private Reserve Recognized by Peruvian Government to Protect Birds, accessed April 19, 2025, https://abcbirds.org/news/new-private-reserve-recognized-by-peruvian-government-to-protect-birds/
42. Southern - Peru Birding Route -.: Birdwatching | PERÚ.travel :., accessed April 19, 2025, https://birdwatching.peru.travel/Imagenes/archivos/8/the-southern-peru-birding-route-2023.pdf
43. Los Manglares de Tumbes National Sanctuary - Sernanp, accessed April 19, 2025, https://visitaareasnaturales.sernanp.gob.pe/en/anps/los-manglares-de-tumbes-national-sanctuary/
44. RN Calipuy, La Libertad, Peru - eBird Hotspot, accessed April 19, 2025, https://ebird.org/region/L7385526
45. San Martín, Peru - eBird, accessed April 19, 2025, https://ebird.org/region/PE-SAM/ebirders??yr=BIGDAY_2023b
46. peru hosts its first october big day, worldwide birding competition - Inkaterra Hotels, accessed April 19, 2025, https://www.inkaterra.com/newsletters/2023/octubre/nl-octubre.html
47. Tourism Doing Business – Investing in Peru, accessed April 19, 2025, https://cdn.www.gob.pe/uploads/document/file/7137646/6127384-tourism-doing-business-investing-in-peru.pdf
48. PENTUR – Plan Estratégico Nacional de Turismo The role of Strategic Tourism Plan in Peru - Theseus, accessed April 19, 2025, https://www.theseus.fi/bitstream/10024/17337/1/Essi_Yli-Hakala.pdf

49. Experience authentic adventures with community-based tourism in Peru - Perú Info, accessed April 19, 2025, https://peru.info/en-us/tourism/blogperu/3/46/experience-authentic-adventures-with-communitybased-tourism-in-peru
50. Birdwatching | PERÚ.travel - Peru Travel, accessed April 19, 2025, https://birdwatching.peru.travel/en
51. Birdwatching | Routes | PERÚ.travel, accessed April 19, 2025, https://birdwatching.peru.travel/en/routes
52. Birds, culture, and Scenic Beauty along the Northern Peru Birding Route - 10,000 Birds, accessed April 19, 2025, https://www.10000birds.com/birds-culture-and-scenic-beauty-along-the-northern-peru-birding-route.htm
53. cdn.www.gob.pe, accessed April 19, 2025, https://cdn.www.gob.pe/uploads/document/file/31487/22123_PENTUR_Final_JULIO2016.pdf20180706-19116-y07vnb.pdf
54. The Peru Travel & Tourism Competitiveness Report 2013 - www3 .weforum .org /docs /WE, accessed April 19, 2025, https://www3.weforum.org/docs/WEF_TT_Peru_CompetitivenessReport_2013.pdf
55. Notes on the birds of Laquipampa Wildlife Refuge, Lambayeque, Peru - CORBIDI, accessed April 19, 2025, http://www.corbidi.org/uploads/4/9/8/9/49890817/2012_aveslaquipampa_angulo_et_al.pdf
56. The Biggest Day: A New World Record - Rockjumper Birding Tours, accessed April 19, 2025, https://www.rockjumperbirding.com/biggest-day-new-world-record/
57. Neotropical Birding 25, accessed April 19, 2025, https://www.neotropicalbirdclub.org/neotropicalBirding/NB25/NB25-190729-digital-lr.pdf
58. FOLIA VOL19-130412.cdr - Instituto de Investigaciones de la Amazonía Peruana - IIAP, accessed April 19, 2025, http://iiap.org.pe/Upload/Publicacion/PUBL925.pdf
59. The Biggest "Big Day" for Los Amigos Bird Observatory - Amazon Conservation Association, accessed April 19, 2025, https://www.amazonconservation.org/the-biggest-big-day-for-los-amigos-bird-observatory/
60. Peru obtained the second place in the Global Big Day 2023 -.: Birdwatching | PERÚ.travel :., accessed April 19, 2025, https://birdwatching.peru.travel/en/blog/peru-obtained-the-second-place-in-the-global-big-day-2023
61. Peru achieves first place in the Global Big Day | Adventure.Travel, accessed April 19, 2025, https://www.adventure.travel/stories/peru-achieves-first-place-in-the-global-big-day
62. Peru takes first place at Global Big Day, accessed April 19, 2025, https://www.peru.travel/en/news/peru-takes-first-place-at-global-big-day
63. World Big Day Record Broken in Peru! - eBird, accessed April 19, 2025, https://ebird.org/news/lsubigday/
64. (PDF) Notes on the birds of Canyon Colca, southern Peru - ResearchGate, accessed April 19, 2025, https://www.researchgate.net/publication/314664724_Notes_on_the_birds_of_Canyon_Colca_southern_Peru
65. Manu Birding Lodge - Peru | Homes made for birders., accessed April 19, 2025, https://www.bedandbirding.com/details.php?id=11
66. About Abra Patricia - Conservation Birding, accessed April 19, 2025, http://conservationbirding.com/aboutabra.htm
67. Abra Patricia Reserve - American Bird Conservancy, accessed April 19, 2025, https://conservationbirding.org/?reserve=abra-patricia-owlet-lodge
68. Discover Peru's Best Bird Watching Expeditions - Peru Explorer, accessed April 19, 2025, https://www.peru-explorer.com/discover-perus-best-bird-watching-expeditions.htm
69. repositoriodigital.uns.edu.ar, accessed April 19, 2025, https://repositoriodigital.uns.edu.ar/bitstream/handle/123456789/5611/TESINA%20TORRALBA%202020.%20FINALIZADA.pdf?sequence=1&isAllowed=y
70. Bird diversity and noteworthy records from the western side of the Porculla pass and the Huancabamba-Chamaya river sub-basin, northwest of Peru - SciELO, accessed April 19,

2025, http://www.scielo.org.pe/scielo.php?script=sci_arttext&pid=S2413-32992020000100191
71. boc-online.org, accessed April 19, 2025, https://boc-online.org/bulletins/downloads/BBOC1351-Barrio.pdf
72. National Sanctuary of the Mangroves of Tumbes - Tierras Vivas, accessed April 19, 2025, https://www.tierrasvivas.com/en/travel-blog/mangroves-of-tumbes-peru
73. DAY TRIP - BIRD WATCHING MEJIA SANCTUARY - Peru Ultimate Expedition, accessed April 19, 2025, https://peruultimateexpedition.com/tour/day-trip-bird-watching-mejia-sanctuary
74. LAGUNAS DE MEJIA NATIONAL BIRD SANCTUARY $105 USD Per Person - Peru Adventure Tours, accessed April 19, 2025, https://www.peruadventurestours.com/en/arequipa/mejia_bird_sanctuary.html
75. Discover birdwatching in Tumbes - LATAM Airlines, accessed April 19, 2025, https://www.latamairlines.com/us/en/activities/birdwatching-peru/tumbes
76. www.cambridge.org, accessed April 19, 2025, https://www.cambridge.org/core/services/aop-cambridge-core/content/view/9B114739B5DA4BF013D2422D0654B40F/S0959270900001490a.pdf/div-class-title-the-conservation-status-of-birds-on-the-cordillera-de-colan-peru-div.pdf
77. Hundreds of Andean bird species at risk due to deforestation: New ..., accessed April 19, 2025, https://www.floridamuseum.ufl.edu/science/hundreds-of-andean-bird-species-at-risk-due-to-deforestation-new-research-shows-how-to-protect-them/
78. Madre de Dios River: Biodiversity Hotspot of Peru - Bio Manu Expeditions, accessed April 19, 2025, https://biomanuexpeditions.com/madre-de-dios-river-biodiversity-hotspot/
79. Endemic Bird Areas - ArcGIS Online, accessed April 19, 2025, https://www.arcgis.com/sharing/rest/content/items/4eea031c5a2e4a7cbebbd2e8b7447fa0/info/metadata/metadata.xml?format=default&output=html
80. Your Ultimate Peru Wildlife Viewing Guide: Amazon Adventures - Machu Picchu, accessed April 19, 2025, https://www.machupicchu.org/your-ultimate-peru-wildlife-viewing-guide-amazon-adventures.htm
81. Alto Mayo & Abra Patricia Birding | Tarapoto | Moyobamba, Wakanki - Northern Peru & Amazonia Tours, accessed April 19, 2025, https://www.perunorth.com/alto-mayo-abra-patricia-birding-5d
82. Peru "Land of the Incas". A Tourism Destination on the Rise, accessed April 19, 2025, http://jthm.thebrpi.org/journals/jthm/Vol_7_No_2_December_2019/10.pdf
83. Manu Birding Lodge, Madre de Dios, Peru - eBird Hotspot, accessed April 19, 2025, https://ebird.org/region/L3601096
84. Birds In The National Sanctuary Of Lagunas De Mejia - Peru Adventure Tours, accessed April 19, 2025, https://www.peruadventurestours.com/en/arequipa/birds_of_mejia_lagoons.html
85. Conservation Projects in Peru: Protect the Amazon - Peru Explorer, accessed April 19, 2025, https://www.peru-explorer.com/conservation-projects-in-peru-protect-the-amazon.htm
86. Supporting Tourism Recovery with IUCN - Planeterra, accessed April 19, 2025, https://planeterra.org/sustainable-tourism-and-protected-areas-in-a-post-covid-world/
87. Peru Partners - eBird, accessed April 19, 2025, https://ebird.org/region/PE/partners
88. Regional portals & collaborators - eBird Peru, accessed April 19, 2025, https://ebird.org/peru/about/portals
89. Citizen science for conservation - Friends of Verloren Valei, accessed April 19, 2025, https://verlorenvalei.org.za/2023/10/05/citizen-science-for-conservation/
90. Primaries: Merlin Goes Global; eBird Goes to Parliament; Big Red Turns 20 | All About Birds, accessed April 19, 2025, https://www.allaboutbirds.org/news/primaries-merlin-goes-global-ebird-goes-to-parliament-big-red-turns-20/
91. Avitourism and Australian Important Bird and Biodiversity Areas | PLOS One, accessed April 19, 2025, https://journals.plos.org/plosone/article?id=10.1371/journal.pone.0144445
92. Importing Merlin IDs to iNaturalist - General, accessed April 19, 2025, https://forum.inaturalist.org/t/importing-merlin-ids-to-inaturalist/37120

93. New iNaturalist Space Created to Track Avian Flu in Seabirds - American Bird Conservancy, accessed April 19, 2025, https://abcbirds.org/news/avian-flu-seabird-tracking-project/
94. Shampuyacu - Conservation International, accessed April 19, 2025, https://www.conservation.org/docs/default-source/peru/the-value-of-a-standing-forest.pdf
95. Alternative development pathways for indigenous Awajun communities: Building new livelihood opportunities from indigenous cultural and natural capital - Fondation Ensemble, accessed April 19, 2025, https://www.fondationensemble.org/en/projet/alternative-development-pathways-for-indigenous-awajun-communities-building-new-livelihood-opportunities-from-indigenous-cultural-and-natural-capital/
96. Community Tourism Conditions and Sustainable Management of a Community Tourism Association: The Case of Cruz Pata, Peru - MDPI, accessed April 19, 2025, https://www.mdpi.com/2071-1050/15/5/4401
97. Sustainable Tourism and Renewable Energy: Binomial for Local Development in Cocachimba, Amazonas, Peru - MDPI, accessed April 19, 2025, https://www.mdpi.com/2071-1050/11/18/4891
98. Bird Diversity, Birdwatching Tourism and Conservation in Peru: A Geographic Analysis - PMC - PubMed Central, accessed April 19, 2025, https://pmc.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/articles/PMC3223161/
99. Mincetur published a new strategy to reactivate the tourism sector for the period of 2022-2025 • Quality Travel International, accessed April 19, 2025, https://qtitravel.com/blog/mincetur-published-a-new-strategy-to-reactivate-the-tourism-sector-for-the-period-of-2022-2025/
100. Strengths of Peru as a birdwatching tourism destination. | Download Table - ResearchGate, accessed April 19, 2025, https://www.researchgate.net/figure/Strengths-of-Peru-as-a-birdwatching-tourism-destination_tbl3_51844494
101. Tourism as a threat to critically endangered and endangered birds: global patterns and trends in conservation hotspots - Griffith Research Online, accessed April 19, 2025, https://research-repository.griffith.edu.au/bitstream/10072/55390/1/86319_1.pdf
102. SWOT Analysis of Sustainable Ecotourism Potential Management in Protected Areas: A Case Study of Artvin - Longdom Publishing SL, accessed April 19, 2025, https://www.longdom.org/open-access/swot-analysis-of-sustainable-ecotourism-potential-management-in-protected-areas-a-case-study-of-artvin-99966.html
103. State of the World's Birds 2022, accessed April 19, 2025, https://dogadernegi.org/wp-content/uploads/2022/09/birdlife-sowb-report-2022-english-reduced-size.pdf
104. Community eco-tourism in rural Peru: Resilience and adaptive capacities to the Covid-19 pandemic and climate change - ResearchGate, accessed April 19, 2025, https://www.researchgate.net/publication/353717502_Community_eco-tourism_in_rural_Peru_Resilience_and_adaptive_capacities_to_the_Covid-19_pandemic_and_climate_change
105. TRAFFIC - Panda.org, accessed April 19, 2025, https://wwfint.awsassets.panda.org/downloads/south_america_bird_trade_2.pdf
106. Bird's-eye view: Lessons from 50 years of bird trade regulation & conservation in Amazon countries - Traffic.org, accessed April 19, 2025, https://www.traffic.org/site/assets/files/11517/birds-eye-view.pdf
107. Community eco-tourism in rural Peru: Resilience and adaptive capacities to the Covid-19 pandemic and climate change - PMC - PubMed Central, accessed April 19, 2025, https://pmc.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/articles/PMC8424132/
108. Virtual Avitourism Training Session 1 - YouTube, accessed April 19, 2025, https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=HIRwvAWxO3E
109. Peru bird checklist - Avibase - Bird Checklists of the World - Birds Canada, accessed April 19, 2025, https://avibase.bsc-eoc.org/checklist.jsp?region=PE
110. Global Big Day 2024 - eBird Trip Report, accessed April 19, 2025, https://ebird.org/tripreport/239055

Chapter 12

Brazil: The Continent of Birds

Ismar Borges de Lima
Universidade Estadual de Roraima-UERR, Brazil &
RECINATUR Foundation. Email: ismar@uerr.edu.br

Irma Brígida Suárez Rodríguez
Universidad Autónoma de San Luís Potosí (UASLP), Mexico. RECINATUR Foundation - General Director UNESCO Global Geopark Project Leader.
Email: irma.suarez@uaslp.mx

Summary
This chapter offers a panoramic exploration of Brazil's exceptional birdlife, positioning the country as one of the foremost global destinations for birdwatching and conservation-oriented tourism. With more than 1,900 documented bird species distributed across six ecologically distinct biomes—Amazon, Atlantic Forest, Cerrado, Caatinga, Pantanal, and Pampa—Brazil presents a continent-sized tapestry of avian experiences unmatched in scale and diversity. The chapter investigates how this rich biodiversity underpins a rapidly growing avitourism sector, driven by both domestic and international demand, and supported by expanding infrastructure, citizen science, and institutional conservation frameworks. It examines key regional circuits, endemic hotspots, and emblematic species, while analyzing how birds serve not only as ecological indicators, but as cultural and educational ambassadors in conservation narratives. Emphasis is also placed on the segmentation of birdwatching markets, the rise of community-based ecotourism, and the role of national policy and NGOs in integrating tourism with environmental stewardship. By tracing how Brazil's birds and biomes intertwine with tourism, conservation, and cultural identity, this chapter underscores the country's unique potential to lead a global movement for avian-centered, inclusive, and ecologically grounded tourism.

Part I: Brazil's Birds, Biomes, and the Future of Conservation Tourism

To guide readers through this expansive overview of Brazil's unrivaled avian wealth and its significance for conservation-oriented tourism, the Introduction unfolds in five interlinked sections. We begin by situating Brazil as a continental-scale ornithological treasure, then describe the ecological mosaic that underpins its diversity, highlight the experiential dimensions of avitourism, underscore birds as both indicators and ambassadors of ecosystem health, and finally zoom in on Roraima's unique frontier role.

This is a roadmap of Chapter 12, showing each Part and its internal sections and subsections. The roadmap will help readers to easily navigate and to find the exact content of interest.

12.0. Introduction: The Unparalleled Avian Paradise

The chapter begins with an outline of Brazil's key ecological values and its network of protected areas, then proceeds to a biome-based examination of the country's outstanding avifauna (see Fig. 12A), integrating avitourism data to illustrate regional birding practices—from the inundated forests of the Amazon to the sweeping grasslands of the Pampa. Major birding destinations are analyzed next, demonstrating how endemic species richness combined with well-developed infrastructure has propelled these sites onto the international stage. Using demographic statistics, visitor survey results, and targeted case studies, the text delineates the profiles, motivations, and behavioral patterns of both domestic and international birdwatchers, thereby highlighting avitourism's role as a significant economic driver. The discussion then turns to the mechanisms through which avitourism revenues enhance rural livelihoods, finance habitat conservation efforts, and support environmental education programs, "Many protected area managers seeking to expand and diversify their funding portfolios consider tourism revenue to be an increasingly significant fiscal source for protected area management and conservation", and the revenues come from distinct sources, "entrance and activity charges, accommodation, concession and lease fees, and sales of tourist commodities" (Steven et al., 2013, p.1), a perception also shared previously by Emerton et. al., (2006). Throughout, every recorded sighting is treated not only as an encounter of aesthetic and scientific value but also as a sensitive barometer of ecosystem integrity, reinforcing the critical linkage between best-practice birdwatching and enduring conservation success.

Globally, government budget allocations are still the principal source of protected area management funds. However, many protected area agencies increasingly rely on tourism revenues to supplement or replace government allocations. Tourism thus contributes to the conservation of threatened bird species, especially in developing nations with high biodiversity (Steven et al., 2013, p.4).

Spanning nearly half the South American continent, Brazil is a biodiversity superpower, a land where ecological grandeur and ornithological richness converge on a continental scale. With more than 1,900 bird species officially recorded—including countless endemics and a growing number of migratory visitors—, and "birds are one of the best known and most highly valued elements of the natural world, comprising more than eleven thousand different species, an extraordinary variety […] Each species is unique, in its appearance, in its habits and in where it is found" (BirdLife International, 2018, p.8). In this sense, Brazil offers birdwatchers an experience that few places on Earth can rival, its vast and varied landscapes host a kaleidoscope of ecosystems: from the verdant immensity of the Amazon Rainforest, the world's largest tropical wilderness; to the seasonally inundated wetlands of the Pantanal, famed for its open visibility and dense wildlife concentrations; the biologically intricate but heavily fragmented Atlantic Forest; the sun-drenched savannas of the Cerrado; the semi-arid thorny scrub of the Caatinga; and the cool, undulating grasslands of the Pampa in the far south.

This ecological mosaic is the foundation of Brazil's breathtaking avian diversity, which draws passionate observers, researchers, and photographers from every corner of the globe. For the avitourist—the bird-focused traveler—Brazil is not a single destination but an immense, living atlas of feathered treasures, each biome offering its own set of species, behaviors, and seasonal phenomena. Whether glimpsing the flash of a Hyacinth Macaw gliding above the Pantanal, listening for the haunting call of a Solitary Tinamou in the Atlantic Forest, or scanning the white-sand forests of the north for endemics of the Guiana Shield, the experience is nothing short of transformative.

Brazil's natural spectacle is made even more compelling by the colorful and often charismatic birds that inhabit its varied habitats. These creatures, seen darting through mangroves, soaring across 'open campos' - a regional term for open grasslands, or perched motionless in rainforest canopies, animate the landscape and provide visceral connections between observer and environment. As Pedro Develey, Executive Director of SAVE Brasil (BirdLife International's official partner in Brazil), insightfully notes, *"Birds are our messengers. They can communicate the situation of our planet and engage people with nature."* This sentiment reflects a deeper truth: birdwatching is not merely a recreational activity, but also a powerful portal to conservation awareness and environmental engagement.

Birdwatching tourism—or avitourism—is not only a distinct branch of ecotourism but also a specialized segment of wildlife tourism. It weaves together a network of local operators, licensed guides, transport providers, lodging and dining venues, retail outlets, private nature reserves, and formal protected areas—from National Parks to Private Natural Heritage Reserves (RPPNs). Enthusiasts often travel great distances in search of novel, endemic, rare, or endangered species to add to their life lists, while others return to familiar sites simply to savor once-seen favorites. This ongoing quest fuels a thriving market for tailored services and products—small-group birding trips, expert-led workshops, field guides, high-performance optics, photographic gear, and even bird-friendly garden supplies (Higham et al., 2008; Steven et al., 2013), and "Brazil is currently experiencing a surge in birdwatching and bird photography", and it has been observed that interactive online platforms such as eBird and WikiAves, together with numerous birdwatching fairs and festivals, "reflect this growing interest. It's estimated that nearly 100,000 Brazilians are actively engaged in birding and photography" (BirdLife International, 2025, para.10).

As one of the fastest-growing nature-based tourism sectors worldwide—and increasingly across Brazil—avitourism frequently reaches remote communities that benefit economically from guiding services, hospitality, and local crafts. Because top-quality birdwatching depends on healthy, intact ecosystems, stakeholders have a direct incentive to conserve habitats: better-preserved forests, wetlands, and grasslands translate into richer birding experiences (Sekercioglu, 2002), "because of the zeal of many birdwatchers and the resources these people are willing to invest in this activity, birdwatching is becoming the most rapidly growing and most environmentally conscious segment of ecotourism and provides economic hope for many threatened natural areas around the world" (Sekercioglu, 2002, p.282). Beyond direct tourism income, birdwatchers underpin a creative economy of digital platforms (eBird, Merlin), smartphone apps, guidebooks, artisan goods, apparel, and specialized equipment—strengthening both local livelihoods and a collective conservation ethic (Buckley, 2009), "practicing birdwatching requires only the willingness to appreciate the animals with the 'naked eye,' but to enhance the experience and deepen one's knowledge, enthusiasts rely on equipment such as binoculars, a notebook for jotting observations, a camera, and a field guide" (Oliveira, 2022, para.3), and, as a reminder, upholding ethical treatment of the birds and safeguarding their habitats is crucial for a rewarding birdwatching experience, and as Sekercioglu (2002, p.283) has emphasized, "given their education and high expectations, birdwatchers are more likely to make efforts to reduce their environmental impact, to appreciate the distinctness and significance of different ecosystems and to pay the required protected-area fees while travelling, than other ecotourists" (p.283).

Table 12.0 below offers a concise overview of how birdwatching tourism can both bolster and undermine local communities and ecosystems. Drawing on Sekercioglu's analysis, it contrasts the economic, social, and conservation benefits—such as enhanced local incomes and strengthened wildlife protection—with the ecological and cultural risks, including habitat disturbance and community exclusion. This synthesis aims to inform practitioners and policymakers of the trade-offs involved and to guide more balanced, sustainable avitourism initiatives.

Table 12.0 - Concise Overview of Positive and Negative Impacts of birdwatching tourism on local communities and ecosystems

Positive Impacts	**Negative Impacts**
• Links between bird species richness and boosts in local earnings	• Stressing birds through playback recordings and excessive proximity
• Financial rewards that promote wildlife protection	• Heightened risk of nest predation and brood abandonment
• Lower environmental footprint and greater revenue compared with other tourism forms	• Aggravated disturbance of sensitive or endangered species
• Empowerment of communities by showcasing distinctive local birdlife	• Visitor-driven pollution and damage to natural habitats
• Draw of off-the-beaten-path sites beyond standard tourist circuits	• Economic benefits leaking out of the community
• Safeguarding of unprotected areas owing to the presence of sought-after species	• Frustration among residents left out of tourism gains
• Recognition and use of local ecological knowledge	• Erosion of cultural traditions linked to tourism expansion
• Creation of jobs and training opportunities for local bird-watching guides	
• Generation of funds directed to avian conservation initiatives	
• Contributions to scientific understanding of bird ecology	

Source: Adapted and paraphrased from Sekercioglu (2002, p. 284).

By integrating rigorously designed, low-impact protocols with the intrinsic allure of Brazil's avifauna, birdwatching tourism exemplifies a synergistic pathway toward ecological stewardship and community empowerment. When carefully orchestrated—through locally guided excursions, adherence to ethical wildlife observation standards, and reinvestment of revenues into habitat conservation and environmental education—avitourism transcends mere recreation. It cultivates a shared sense of responsibility among visitors and residents, transforming each encounter with macaws in the Pantanal or tanagers in the Atlantic Forest into an opportunity for mutual learning and advocacy. Moreover, by channeling sustainable income into rural economies—supporting guide training, small-scale lodging, and artisanal production—this form of wildlife tourism fosters resilient livelihoods that are inextricably linked to the health of natural ecosystems. As Connell (2009) observes, such community-centered initiatives not only drive local development but also reinforce the conservation ethos that underpins long-term biodiversity preservation, demonstrating that academic principles and humanistic values can coalesce to produce both vibrant economies and thriving landscapes. In fact, it is a tourism niche with brings together distinct disciplines and approaches, "the attention paid to birdwatchers and birdwatching in the available literature highlights the multi-disciplinary nature of the field. Studies include those from the social sciences, geography, tourism, conservation science, recreation ecology and economics" (Steven et. al., 2014, p. 12).

Current studies on avitourism impacts remain scattered across social science, natural science, and conservation disciplines, with few thorough evaluations of its benefits or drawbacks. This disconnect is notable given avitourism's place within the broader ecotourism sector, where balancing environmental, social, and economic goals is essential for ethical and sustainable practice (Steven et. al., 2014). According to Wight (2007), robust CSR frameworks integrate five core dimensions—economic value creation, legal compliance, ethical conduct, environmental stewardship, and social engagement—providing a streamlined cycle of goal-setting, stakeholder dialogue, performance monitoring, and transparent reporting, and, yet, it matters "ethical practices, stakeholder empowerment, and institutional governance" (Wight, 2007, p.222) for strengthening the avitourism sector.

In fact, clear examples of community development driven by avitourism are rare, especially in rural areas that could most benefit from new income streams. Since birdwatchers, their activities, and the birds themselves are inherently intertwined, interdisciplinary research that weaves together social, economic, and ecological methods is needed to paint a fuller picture of these relationships. Moving avitourism forward—as both an industry and a tool for bird conservation—demands studies that clarify how it can effectively support avian protection. Establishing a sustainable avitourism model will require adequate tourism infrastructure, stable local economies, and intact bird habitats. In this regard, BirdLife International's Important Bird Areas program provides an excellent foundation for identifying the most promising birding destinations (Steven et al., 2014).

12.1. Brazilian Territory: Birds Resources, IBAs, Protected Areas

Brazil is home to an astonishing diversity of avian families, with over 1,000 species spanning more than 100 distinct groups. The Figure 12A highlights ten of the most emblematic families found within Brazil's borders—Hummingbirds (89 species), Tanagers (37 species), Toucans (22 species), Parrots & Parakeets (87 species), Limpkins (24 species), Trogons (12 species), Woodpeckers (57 species), Antbirds (192 species), Woodcreepers (64 species), and Cotingas (31 species)—each represented by a striking photograph and clearly labeled with its total species count. Together, these families illustrate both the richness of Brazil's birdlife and the varied ecological niches—from forest canopies to wetlands—where these captivating birds thrive.

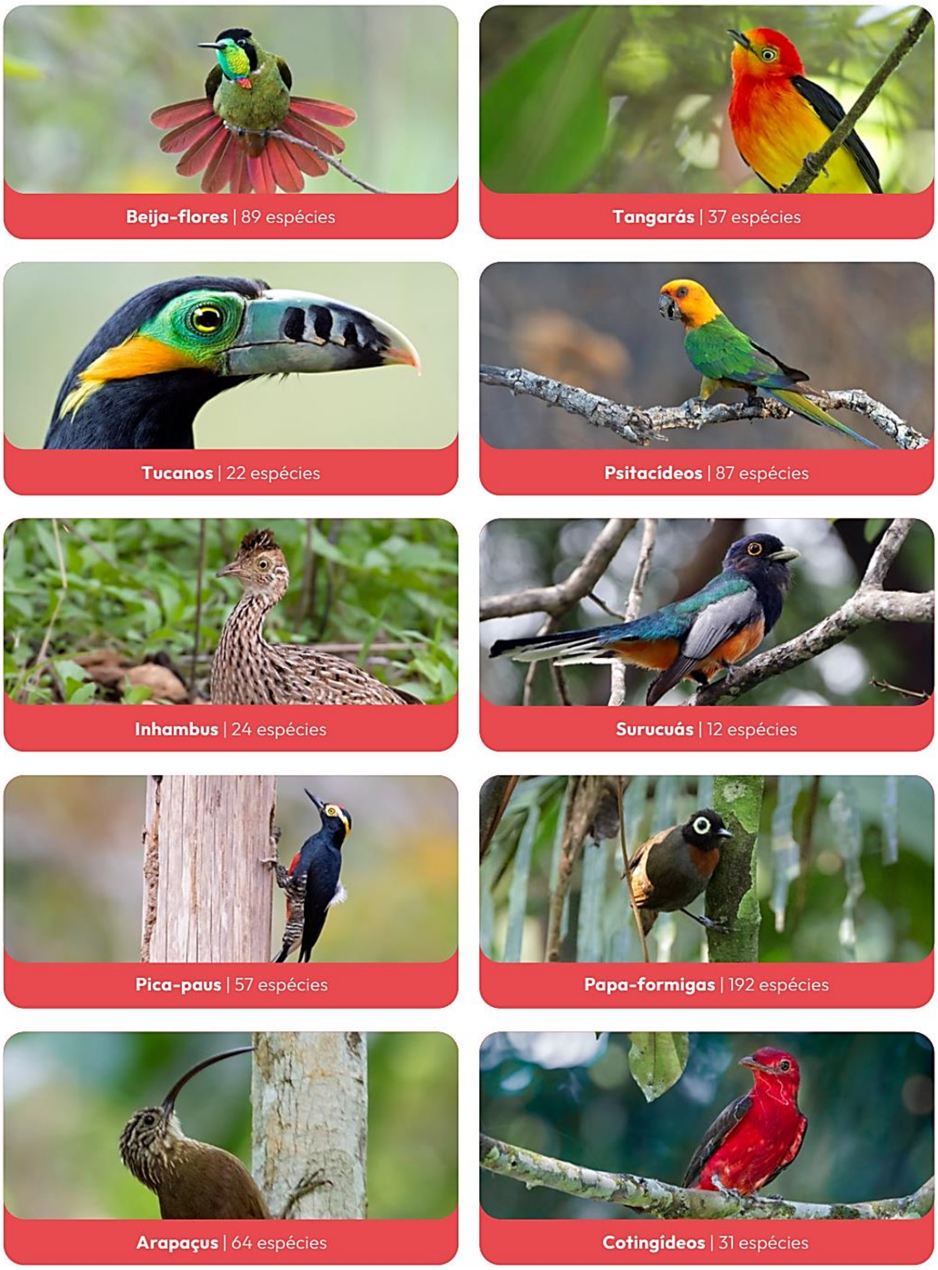


Figure 12A - There are 102 bird family in the Brazilian territory. **Source:** Embratur, 2024, '*Tudo Sobre: Observação de Aves*', p. 15. Birds photograph credits: Caio Brito, Ciro Albano and Pablo Cerqueira.

Image Caption for Figure 12B: List of the ten bird families, ordered by descending number of species, with English name, Portuguese name, and scientific family name:

- **Hummingbirds** | Beija-flores | *Trochilidae* | 89 species
- **Tanagers** | Tangarás | *Thraupidae* | 37 species
- **Toucans** | Tucanos | *Ramphastidae* | 22 species
- **Parrots & Parakeets** | Psitacídeos | *Psittacidae* | 87 species
- **Limpkins** | Inhambus | *Aramidae* | 24 species
- **Trogons** | Surucuás | *Trogonidae* | 12 species
- **Woodpeckers** | Pica-paus | *Picidae* | 57 species

- **Antbirds** | Papa-formigas | *Thamnophilidae* | 192 species
- **Woodcreepers** | Arapaçus | *Dendrocolaptidae* | 64 species
- **Cotingas** | Cotingídeos | *Cotingidae* | 31 species

Brazil has established an extensive network of protected areas that collectively safeguard nearly a third of its national territory. Brazil's federal government alone has formally designated 338 Conservation Units across a range of management categories (see Fig. 12B). When state- and municipal-level protected areas are included, the nationwide total rises even further. As for the Federal Units, these include 75 National Parks—large tracts of pristine ecosystems dedicated to both strict preservation and public enjoyment—and 37 Environmental Protection Areas, which accommodate low-impact human activities while maintaining ecological integrity. Complementing these are 30 Ecological Stations and 31 Biological Reserves, both of which permit only scientific research and environmental monitoring, plus 68 National Forests, where sustainable timber extraction is balanced with habitat conservation (EMBRATUR, 2024).

In addition to these broadly defined units, Brazil's commitment to niche protection is evident in specialized categories: five Natural Monuments preserve sites of unique geological or cultural value; nine Wildlife Refuges provide safe havens for vulnerable fauna; and two Sustainable Development Reserves focus on coupling community livelihoods with ecosystem stewardship. There are also 68 Extractivist Reserves, where traditional populations sustainably harvest non-timber forest products. Internationally recognized designations bolster this framework further: Brazil hosts 27 Ramsar Wetlands of International Importance, seven UNESCO Biosphere Reserves, and 13 Areas of Relevant Ecological Interest, each playing a critical role in transboundary conservation initiatives and global biodiversity targets. Together, these units demonstrate Brazil's multifaceted approach to conservation—ranging from strict protection to sustainable use—and underscore the country's leadership in preserving tropical biodiversity. By integrating rigorous scientific research (in ecological stations and biological reserves), sustainable resource management (in national forests and extractivist reserves), and community-based stewardship (in sustainable development reserves), Brazil exemplifies how a nation can mobilize diverse strategies to protect ecosystems, support local cultures, and meet international environmental commitments.

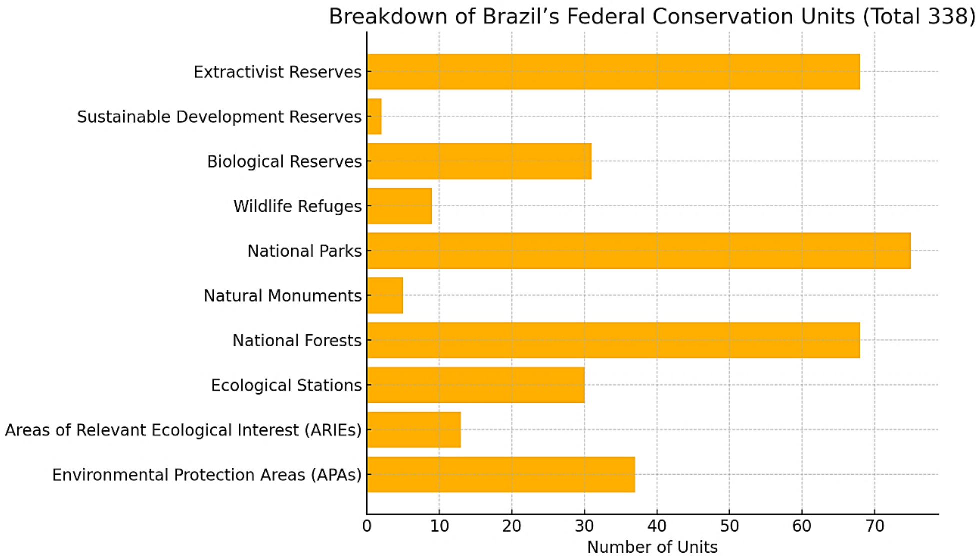


Figure 12B – Infographic with the Breakdown of Brazil's Federal Conservation Units – Totaling 338.

The map below (Fig. 12C) sourced from BirdLife International's DataZone, illustrates the full extent of Brazil's protected-area network, highlighting federal, state, and private Conservation Units (in green). Spanning every biome—from the sprawling Amazon and Pantanal wetlands to the fragmented patches of Atlantic Forest and Caatinga scrub—these units collectively safeguard critical habitats for thousands of bird species. This comprehensive spatial overview underscores the geographic breadth of Brazil's conservation commitments, while also revealing gaps where additional protection or connectivity could further strengthen long-term biodiversity resilience.

Figure 12C – The Map sourced from BirdLife International's DataZone, illustrates the full extent of Brazil's protected-area network, highlighting federal, state, and private Conservation Units (in green).

12.1.1. Important Bird and Biodiversity Areas (IBAs) in Brazil: 231 IBAs Across the Country

Important Bird and Biodiversity Areas (IBAs) are sites designated by BirdLife International because they play a decisive role in securing the long-term survival of bird species worldwide. Each IBA meets at least one rigorous criterion—such as hosting globally threatened species, supporting large waterbird congregations, or exhibiting exceptional avian diversity—that makes it indispensable for effective conservation planning. In Brazil, 231 IBAs (now integrated within the Key Biodiversity Areas network) stretch across nearly one million square kilometers, from the riverine archipelagos of the Amazon to the fragmented remnants of the Atlantic Forest (see Fig.12D), and SAVE Brasil – which operates in 10 Brazilian states – has been "reviewing and updating these areas while proposing new ones … in collaboration with BirdLife and other Partner NGOs, they will begin identifying Key Biodiversity Areas (KBAs) in Brazil, expanding their focus beyond birds" to include other species and plants (BirdLife International, 2025, para.5). For birdwatchers, these areas are true hotspots: they reliably concentrate charismatic endemics and migratory marvels, offer high encounter rates, and frequently benefit from local guides and visitor infrastructure.

Today's birding community can harness digital platforms to make the most of these priority sites. WikiAves—Brazil's leading online repository of bird observations—provides an interactive map that overlays user-submitted sightings, seasonal "heat maps," and observation hotspots (Fig. 12F) atop official IBA boundaries. The map presents the bird register as informed by volunteers in these areas. This convergence of citizen science and formal conservation data enables tour operators and individual birders alike to craft itineraries that optimize species diversity and viewing success, whether in the flooded forests of the Pantanal, the gallery woodlands of the Cerrado, or the coastal lagoons of the Atlantic Forest (WikiAves, n.d.).

Yet the enduring appeal of IBAs for avitourism hinges on maintaining healthy habitats. According to BirdLife International's DataZone analysis, IBAs in Brazil have, on average, 52 percent of their area under formal protection (see Fig. 12E) —either within protected areas or classified as Other Effective area-based Conservation Measures (OECMs). While 75 IBAs boast more than 80 percent coverage, and 12 enjoy complete legal protection, 46 remain almost entirely unprotected and another 40 fall below 20 percent coverage. To ensure that Brazil's richest birding sites continue to offer world-class experiences, conservationists, policymakers, and tourism stakeholders must work together to extend and connect these safeguards—securing the future for both the birds we cherish and the communities that benefit from their presence (BirdLife International DataZone, 2025).

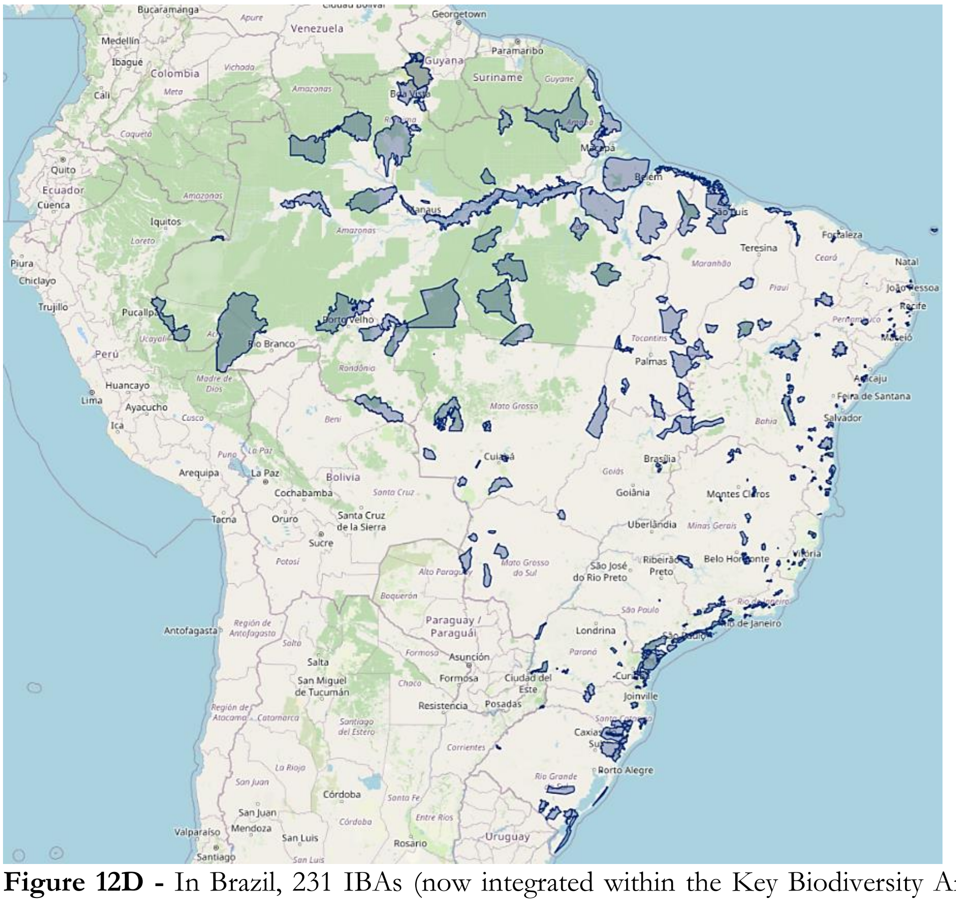


Figure 12D - In Brazil, 231 IBAs (now integrated within the Key Biodiversity Areas network) stretch across nearly one million square kilometers, from the riverine archipelagos of the Amazon to the fragmented remnants of the Atlantic Forest.

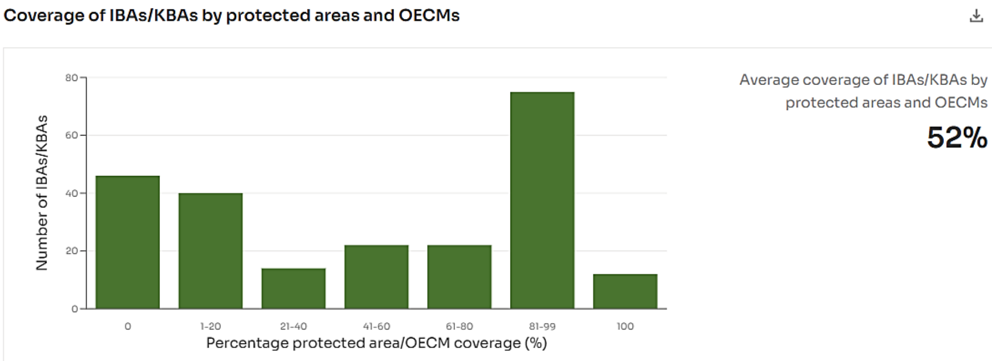


Figure 12E - BirdLife International's DataZone analysis, IBAs in Brazil have, on average, 52 percent of their area under formal protection

It is noteworthy that birds have long served as powerful sentinels of environmental health, offering insights into a wide range of ecological and biodiversity dynamics. As Mekonen (2017) explains, their presence, abundance, and behavior can reveal the effects of stressors on other taxa and signal the overall richness of life within a habitat. This practical value has led conservationists and government agencies around the world to adopt bird-based indicators, and in some countries the 'forest service monitors' designated management indicator species to assess the impact of forestry practices on ecosystem communities. Beyond tracking species richness—including the distribution of rare and threatened birds—these avian indicators also reflect levels of pollutants like pesticides and heavy metals, the integrity of ecosystems from rainforests to urban green spaces, and the biological consequences of disturbances such as logging, eutrophication, or habitat restoration. By acting as both ecological and biodiversity barometers, birds provide an invaluable, cost-effective window into the condition of the natural world (Mekonen, 2017; Sekercioglu, 2002; Kissling et.al., 2008).

Figure 12F – WikiAves interactive map that overlays user-submitted sightings, seasonal "heat maps," and birds observation hotspots in Brazil. The map presents the bird register as informed by volunteers in these areas.

12.1.2. Measuring the Marvel: Brazil's Avian Statistics

Quantifying the avian wealth of Brazil is a task undertaken with scientific rigor by the *Comitê Brasileiro de Registros Ornitológicos* (CBRO), the Brazilian Ornithological Records Committee. According to their most recent comprehensive checklist, published in 2021 by Pacheco and colleagues, Brazil is home to 1971 documented bird species on its Primary List.

This new edition of the Annotated Checklist of the birds of Brazil recognizes 1971 species on the Primary List (SI). Of this total, 1066 (54%) are monotypic, i.e., without any subspecies or "geographic races," while 905 (46%) are polytypic, i.e., divided into subspecies (trinomials) in at least one recent reference work. Among the polytypic species, 591 are represented in Brazil by more than one subspecies and 314 by a single one. In total, there are 3064 valid or potentially valid forms (distinct species and subspecies) occurring in the Brazilian territory. A further 11 species, for which records are based on observations only, make up the Secondary List (Supplementary Information S1). Among the main higher taxa, 33 orders, 102 families, 85 subfamilies, and 732 genera are recognized as occurring in Brazil (Supplementary Information S1) (Pacheco et. al., 2021, p. 97).

This list includes species confirmed with verifiable evidence such as specimens, photographs, audio recordings, or, more recently, remote tracking data. This staggering number represents approximately 18% of the world's known bird species, firmly establishing. The world bird species estimates range from 10,800–11,000 depending on the taxonomy (BirdLife International 2024 = ~11,000 spp.). Brazil as a global epicenter of avian diversity. An additional 11 species reside on the Secondary List, indicating probable occurrence based on published records that lack definitive documentation. However, it is noteworthy that numbers may vary slightly depending on the taxonomic criteria used (e.g., BirdLife, IOC, Clements lists can vary by 5–10 species), and this should be taken into account by the readers for some slight differences in number of species, etc. and, at a global level, "much of what we know about the current status of the world's bird species—and of biodiversity more widely—is due to the IUCN Red List of Threatened Species" (BirdLife International, 2018, p.14).

Beyond the sheer number of species, Brazil's global significance is amplified by its extraordinary level of endemism. A remarkable 293 bird species are found exclusively within Brazil's borders, only Australia and Indonesia rank ahead in number of endemic bird species. This high rate of endemism ranks Brazil third globally in this measure, underscoring its critical importance for global bird conservation efforts. The loss of habitats within Brazil equates directly to the potential global extinction of these unique species. This dual status – ranking third globally for both total bird species and number of endemic species – powerfully highlights Brazil's exceptional importance and responsibility in global biodiversity conservation.

It is crucial to understand that these figures are not static. The checklist is a dynamic document, periodically updated by the CBRO's Taxonomy Subcommittee to reflect ongoing ornithological research and taxonomic understanding. The 2021 list, for instance, represented a 4.3% increase from the previous edition published in 2015, adding 90 species. These additions resulted from new species descriptions, newly documented occurrences within Brazil, taxonomic revisions (such as splitting species or elevating subspecies to species status), and the verification through documentation of species previously on the Secondary List. Conversely, eight species were removed from the Primary List due to being synonymized or reclassified as subspecies. Other resources, such as Avibase, also compile checklists for Brazil, drawing from various sources including the CBRO list.

The Brazilian avifauna comprises a mix of residency statuses. Platforms like WikiAves, Birdlife International/DataZone and eBird [3] have contributed to new, verifiable records, and it is important to draw attention from the readers that the *iNaturalist* and *Xeno-canto* has been growing in Brazil with the rise of citizen science, with increased observational effort by amateur birdwatchers equipped with cameras and reporting, "this unstructured 10 year-old citizen-science database hosts over 2 million photographs and >120 000 audio recordings of >1870 bird species, registered throughout the country and abroad by over 27 000 birdwatchers and academics (e.g. ornithologists)" (Schubert et al., 2019, p.1). This constant refinement of Brazil's avian inventory highlights the vibrancy of ornithological discovery and the ongoing need for monitoring across this vast and complex nation, "the acquisition of ornithological records via citizen science has proven to be a valuable tool that directly contributes, for example, to biogeography studies and conservation actions in large areas and over long periods of time" (Klemann-Junior et. al., 2017, p. 2). The changing numbers reflect not just the biological reality but also the intensifying human effort to understand and catalogue it, revealing a biodiversity landscape that continues to yield secrets.

Brazil's extraordinary avian diversity is captured in the latest figures from BirdLife International's DataZone: of the 1,816 species recorded within Brazil's borders, 1,608 are terrestrial landbirds, 164 are freshwater waterbirds, and 70 are seabirds, while 373 species

[3] Website Urls: **WikiAves** (https://www.wikiaves.com.br); **eBird** (https://ebird.org/home); https://datazone.birdlife.org/country/factsheet/brazil

undertake significant migratory journeys through or beyond the country's airspace. Remarkably, 268 species—around 15 percent—are found nowhere else on Earth, underscoring Brazil's global importance for endemic conservation. By breaking down these data by habitat guild and endemism, this snapshot not only illustrates the sheer scale of Brazil's birdlife but also highlights priority groups and regions for both scientific study and sustainable birdwatching tourism.

12.1.3. Urban and Wilderness Birding Opportunities in Brazil: An Ecological Review

The foundation of Brazil's exceptional bird diversity lies in its mosaic of distinct major biomes, each offering unique ecological niches and supporting characteristic avian communities. These vast ecological regions act as distinct stages upon which the drama of avian life unfolds.

12.1.3.1. Urban Birdwatching vs. Natural Areas Birdwatching

12.1.3.1.1. Urban Birdwatching: City Parks, Squares, Public Urban Areas, Backyards, etc

Urban birdwatching offers an accessible window into the avian world, transforming city parks, greenways (Mendes et. al., 2024), "a birdwatching activity must be established as a sustainability strategy and a tourism practice, especially in urban parks, serving as a bridge between the individual and the natural environment" (Mendes et al., 2024, p. 4). For example, birdwatching in Belém's metropolitan urban parks offers more than leisure—it transforms these green spaces into open-air classrooms where students, researchers, and visitors alike can engage directly with Amazonian biodiversity. By scheduling guided visits and hands-on monitoring sessions, the project team from UFPA's Faculties of Tourism and Biology enabled primary school students to apply ecological and ornithological theory in real time. These excursions foster environmental literacy, nurture curiosity about species behavior and habitat relationships, and underscore the role of urban parks as living laboratories for interdisciplinary education (Mendes et. al., 2024).

Urban landscapes across Brazil teem with avian life—parks, gardens, and tree-lined streets often host surprisingly rich bird communities, and many cities now support active bird-watching clubs. In fact, diligent observers can record upwards of 100 species over time in a single residential district. Certain birds have adapted particularly well to city living: the Great Kiskadee (*Pitangus sulphuratus*), famous for its "bem-ti-vi" call, scavenges a wide range of foods, including human scraps, while Rufous-bellied Thrush (*Turdus rufiventris*), Sayaca Tanager (*Thraupis sayaca*), Bananaquit (*Coereba flaveola*), and Swallow-tailed Hummingbird (*Eupetomena macroura*) will readily visit feeders stocked with fruit or nectar (Ridgely et al., 2016).

Enhancing urban habitats with native tree and shrub plantings not only enriches the visual landscape but also reinstates critical links in local food webs—supporting insects, nectar sources, and nesting sites that underpin bird diversity (Ridgely et al., 2016). Moreover, bringing nature into the city delivers profound benefits for human well-being: access to green spaces improves air and water quality, mitigates stress, and fosters a sense of connection to the living world (Ulrich, 1984; WHO, 2016). In this light, creating bird-friendly urban environments is both an ecological imperative and a public-health strategy.

Beyond formal instruction, urban-park birdwatching invites broader audiences—families, amateur naturalists, and eco-tourists—to experience the Amazon's avifauna within the city limits. Such scientific visits blend recreation, leisure, and research, creating meaningful interactions that reinforce conservation values. Preliminary results indicate that students not only retained key biological concepts but also developed skills in species identification, data recording, and ecological interpretation. This dual function—educational laboratory and recreational destination—highlights urban parks as vital nodes in a sustainable tourism network, where environmental stewardship and visitor engagement go hand in hand. Even backyard feeders into lively stages where adaptable generalists—such as sparrows, starlings, and pigeons—thrive despite the challenges of noise, artificial lighting, and dense built structures that can both suppress sensitive species and simplify detectability for observers (Fernández-Juricic, 2002), in some respects, these issues fall within the scope of urban ecology.

The discipline of urban ecology arose in the 1990s, primarily motivated by a widespread interest in documenting the distribution and abundance of animals and plants in cities. Today, urban ecologists have greatly expanded their scope of study to include ecological and socioeconomic processes, urban management, planning, and design, with the goal of addressing issues of sustainability, environmental quality, and human [wildlife, avifauna] well-being within cities and towns (McDonnell & MacGregor, 2016, p. 936).

12.1.3.1.2. Birdwatching in Natural Areas: Birding in the Wilderness

In contrast, natural-area birding transports enthusiasts into remote settings—national parks, private reserves, wetlands, and savanna or forest landscapes—where specialists and endemic rarities await discovery under the guidance of experienced naturalists. In Brazil, these two modes of avitourism intersect with the country's six major biomes, each presenting its own suite of habitats and bird communities: the lush remnant forests of the Atlantic Forest hotspot, the immense carbon-rich canopy of the Amazon, the fire-adapted savannas of the Cerrado, the expansive floodplains of the Pantanal, the drought-tolerant scrublands of the Caatinga, and the rolling grasslands of the Pampa. Together, urban and wilderness birding opportunities—framed by this mosaic of biomes—create a full spectrum of experiences that cater to casual observers and passionate life-listers alike, while galvanizing conservation efforts across Brazil's diverse landscapes. And, it is pertinent to underline that, "despite, or perhaps because of, an increasingly urban, technology-driven world, our fascination and love for birds continues to grow […] Birdwatching is now big business and a major source of income in many areas"; and for many people, birds are their main bond to the natural world—"an important link to the biological systems upon which we all depend" (BirdLife International, 2018, p. 10).

As for the Brazilian biomes and birdlife, the legendary Amazon, the world's largest tropical rainforest, harbors an almost unimaginable number of species adapted to its dense forests, diverse river systems, and complex canopy structure. The Atlantic Forest (*Mata Atlântica*), stretching along the eastern coast, is recognized as a global biodiversity hotspot; though highly fragmented, its remaining patches teem with endemic species found nowhere else on Earth, making it a priority for conservation. The Pantanal, the planet's largest tropical wetland, presents a breathtaking spectacle of waterbirds and large, easily visible fauna, offering unparalleled wildlife viewing opportunities.

The Cerrado, a vast tropical savanna covering much of central Brazil, encompasses a mosaic of grasslands, woodlands, and gallery forests, supporting specialized birds adapted to its seasonally dry conditions. The Caatinga, a unique semi-arid region found only in northeastern Brazil, hosts resilient species adapted to its thorny scrub, cacti, and dry forests. Finally, the temperate grasslands of the Pampa in the far south add another layer to the country's avian richness.

Each of these biomes offers unparalleled opportunities for birdwatchers to explore vastly different environments and encounter specialized bird communities within a single country. However, the concept of 'Ecotones' as transitional zones with the presence of birds should not be omitted. Ecotones are natural transition zones where two distinct biomes meet and intermingle, such as the Amazon–Cerrado interface. These areas often exhibit exceptionally high species richness because they combine species from both neighboring ecosystems while also hosting unique species adapted specifically to the transitional environment. As ecological frontiers, ecotones are critical for biodiversity, evolutionary processes, and conservation efforts. Later sections will delve deeper into the specific birding experiences offered by these key regions. Understanding this biome structure provides a clear conceptual framework for appreciating the sheer variety available to the visiting *aviturista* (avitourist).

The map on Fig. 12G illustrates the geographical distribution of Brazil's six major biomes: Amazon (4.2 million km², 85% preserved), Cerrado (2.0 million km², 61%), Atlantic Forest (1.1 million km², 27%), Caatinga (0.8 million km², 63%), Pampa (0.2 million km², 41%), and Pantanal (0.1 million km², 89%). Each biome is color-coded and labeled on the map of Brazil, showing their regional placement and environmental significance. The adjacent table provides area measurements and the percentage of vegetation cover remaining as of 2008. This visual emphasizes the urgent conservation needs of highly fragmented biomes like the Atlantic Forest and the ecological importance of the Amazon and Pantanal.

Brazil's Biomes

BIOMES	AREA (MILLION KM²)	PROTECTED (%)
Amazon	4.2	85
Cerrado	2.0	61
Atlantic Forest	1.1	27
Caatinga	0.8	63
Pampa	0.2	41
Pantanal	0.1	89

Source: Ministry for the Environment, Brazil.

Figure 12G - Vegetation Cover Map of Brazil's Biomes. Ministry of the Environment (Brazil), 2008.

12.1.4. Brazilian Biomes – Names, Locations by State, and Ecological Description

This table gives a clear overview of Brazil's six major biomes, showing where they are found and what makes each one special (See Table 11.9 for a detailed outline). It highlights the unique landscapes, wildlife, and environmental importance of these rich and diverse ecosystems.

Table 12A – Biomes of Brazil at a Glance:

Biome (Portuguese)	Biome (English)	Main States (Brazil)	Ecological Description
Amazônia	**Amazon Rainforest**	Acre, Amapá, Amazonas, Pará, Rondônia, Roraima, Maranhão (western), Tocantins (north), Mato Grosso (north)	The world's largest tropical rainforest, with unmatched biodiversity, dense canopies, and crucial carbon regulation functions.
Caatinga	**Caatinga (Dry Forest/Shrublands)**	Alagoas, Bahia, Ceará, Maranhão (east), Paraíba, Pernambuco, Piauí, Rio Grande do Norte, Sergipe	A unique semi-arid ecosystem with thorny vegetation, high endemism in plants and birds, and significant vulnerability to desertification and overgrazing.
Cerrado	**Cerrado (Brazilian Savanna)**	Goiás, Mato Grosso, Mato Grosso do Sul, Minas Gerais, Tocantins, Bahia (west), Maranhão (central), São Paulo (west), Paraná (north)	The most biodiverse savanna on Earth, characterized by open grasslands, scattered trees, and a mix of dry and wet habitats; increasingly threatened by agribusiness expansion.
Mata Atlântica	**Atlantic Forest**	Espírito Santo, Rio de Janeiro, São Paulo, Paraná, Santa Catarina, Rio Grande do Sul, Bahia (coastal), Alagoas, Sergipe, Pernambuco	A richly biodiverse and highly endemic tropical forest, once covering much of Brazil's coastline, now severely fragmented due to urban growth and deforestation.
Pantanal	**Pantanal (Wetlands)**	Mato Grosso, Mato Grosso do Sul	One of the largest tropical wetlands in the world, with seasonal flood cycles that create a mosaic of habitats; famous for abundant and visible wildlife, especially birds.
Pampa	**Pampa (Southern Grasslands)**	Rio Grande do Sul	A temperate grassland biome with rolling hills, seasonal variation, and important bird populations; affected by cattle ranching and agriculture.

Source: Table prepared by the authors.

12.1.5. Brazilian Bird-conservation Initiatives and Research Organizations

12.1.5.1. Research Centers, Online Platforms: Ornithological Knowledge

Brazil's vibrant bird conservation landscape is supported by a diverse array of organizations, research centers, and online platforms that together advance ornithological knowledge, site protection, and community engagement (EMBRATUR, 2024). WikiAves and eBird offer citizen scientists user-friendly portals for submitting and accessing bird records nationwide, while Brasil Silvestre and Save Brasil spearhead on-the-ground conservation projects that restore habitats and safeguard endangered species. The RMA

(Rede de ONGs da Mata Atlântica) network unites NGOs working to preserve Atlantic Forest remnants, and SiBBr (Sistema de Informação sobre a Biodiversidade Brasileira) provides an integrated data repository spanning all Brazilian taxa—including birds. At the institutional level, CBRO (Comitê Brasileiro de Registros Ornitológicos) maintains rigorous standards for official bird records, and CEMAVE (Centro Nacional de Pesquisa e Conservação de Aves Silvestres) conducts applied research on wild bird ecology, rehabilitation, and management (EMBRATUR, 2024). By combining digital tools, field-based programs, and policy advocacy, these groups form the backbone of Brazil's efforts to study, protect, and celebrate its world-renowned avifauna.

12.1.5.2. Bird Species Protection and Conservation Initiatives

Brazil's bird-conservation landscape is characterized by a rich tapestry of initiatives that span islands, rivers, forests, and arid lands, each tailored to the needs of specific species and habitats. From the seabird monitoring and community outreach on Fernando de Noronha to freshwater stewardship in Amazonian waterways, and from the recovery of the Lear's Macaw in the Caatinga to the reforestation efforts for the Pin-tailed Manakin in the Atlantic Forest, these programs exemplify how targeted scientific research, habitat restoration, and local partnerships can converge to protect both endemic and migratory birds. By integrating ecological assessments with policy advice and hands-on conservation actions—whether restoring riparian corridors, controlling invasive species, or installing nest boxes—Brazilian NGOs and research centers are forging a collaborative model that addresses biodiversity challenges at multiple scales and fosters resilient ecosystems for generations to come. Below is a summary of key Brazilian bird-conservation initiatives, each driven by a dedicated organization or project (EMBRATUR, 2024):

- **Aves de Noronha (Birds of Noronha):** Led by Instituto Espaço Silvestre, this Program focuses on the unique avifauna of Fernando de Noronha, monitoring seabird colonies, mapping nesting sites, and engaging local communities in habitat protection and environmental education. Fernando de Noronha is a volcanic archipelago made up of 21 islands, islets, and rocky outcrops, covering a total area of 26 km²—17 km² of which belong to the main island. Lying in the Atlantic Ocean off Brazil's northeast coast, it sits 545 km from Recife and 360 km from Natal. Recognized as a global biodiversity hotspot, Fernando de Noronha harbors numerous endemic plants and animals. Ornithologists have recorded around 90 bird species here, 17 of which are year-round residents. This small chain of islands boasts Brazil's richest seabird colonies, with roughly 30,000 breeding pairs across 11 species returning each season. Since records began in 1992, annual visitors skyrocketed from 10,094 to 103,722 by last year—a jaw-dropping 927.5% surge. And it gets even more alarming: in 2018 the influx overshot the APA's 89,790-visitor limit by 15.5%, flagrantly breaching Fernando de Noronha's environmental management plan (da Silveira, 2019). The fallout has been severe: untreated sewage volumes are skyrocketing, solid-waste streams are ballooning, and the island's water, power, and public-transport networks are stretched to their breaking point. Add to that the rampant land-development, plus a flood of cars and boats, and you have a recipe for widespread pollution. As Silvia Zanirato of the University of São Paulo warns, these combined pressures sharply elevate risks to both terrestrial and marine wildlife. To make matters worse, tourism has ushered in a host of invasive species, further imperiling the island's native plants and animals (Instituto Ecológica, nd.).
- **Save Brasil Projects**: Save Brasil implements a suite of targeted conservation actions—from restoring riparian corridors and controlling invasive species to

promoting sustainable livelihoods—that benefit both endemic and migratory birds across diverse ecosystems (Somenzari et. al., 2018).

- **Projeto Aquasis**: Aquasis works at the interface of freshwater conservation and bird protection, studying waterbird populations in the Amazon and Atlantic Forest rivers, advising on hydroelectric impact mitigation, and fostering community-based stewardship of aquatic habitats.
- **Projeto Arara Azul (Blue Macaw Project)**: This long-running initiative by the Instituto Arara Azul has been instrumental in rescuing the endangered Lear's Macaw through nest-box programs, habitat restoration in the Caatinga, and collaboration with local landowners to secure foraging grounds.
- **Fundação Biodiversitas**: The Biodiversitas Foundation advances broad-scale biodiversity conservation—including priority bird species—by conducting ecological assessments, advising on protected-area design, and influencing state and federal environmental policy in Minas Gerais and beyond. Founded in 1988, the non-profit Fundação Biodiversitas works to knit together ecological integrity and human progress, devising practical tools that let nature conservation go hand-in-hand with economic and social growth. Its scientists and collaborators translate cutting-edge research into on-the-ground management solutions, and, over the decades, they have steered or taken part in more than 500 conservation initiatives across Brazil. Biodiversitas concentrates on boosting the survival odds of the country's most threatened plants and animals. That means pinpointing and defending irreplaceable habitats, producing rigorous ecological diagnostics, crafting strategic action plans, and backing public policies that safeguard biodiversity. A cornerstone of this effort is the organisation's network of four privately owned reserves, which jointly shield over 3,000 ha of prime habitat in the Atlantic Forest and Caatinga biomes (Fundação Biodiversitas, 2023). In the Atlantic Forest, the *Mata do Passarinho* RPPN protects the critically endangered Bahian puffbird (*Merulaxis stresemanni*). In the Caatinga, the flagship Canudos Biological Station (EBC) anchors a Birdwatching Tourism Programme that revolves around the iconic Lear's Macaw, while offering visitors the chance to encounter more than 180 other recorded bird species. Together, these sites showcase how carefully managed reserves can simultaneously advance species conservation and foster low-impact, nature-based tourism (Fundação Biodiversitas, 2023).
- **Programa de Conservação da Saíra-apunhalada (Pin-tailed Manakin Conservation Program)**: Launched in 2020 by the Instituto Marcos Daniel and based in Vargem Alta, Espírito Santo, this initiative is dedicated to saving the critically endangered *Nemosia rourei*, a bird found only in the state's mountainous Atlantic Forest. Combining intensive field surveys with nest-monitoring and population ecology studies, the program uses genetic analyses to assess the health and diversity of the remaining flocks. Strategic reforestation projects restore broken forest patches and establish green corridors, reconnecting habitats and allowing the manakins to move safely between sites. Equally important are the outreach efforts: school workshops, guided field trips, and locally produced educational materials foster community stewardship and raise awareness of this unique species' plight. On 16 April, Espírito Santo's state gazette announced a new amendment to Law 11.212/20 that carves out an annual "Bird-watching Week," running 22–28 April, and proclaims 28 April as "Bird Day" (Fortunato, 2024). The date is expressly tied to safeguarding the cherry-throated tanager (*Nemosia rourei*) — the state's sole endemic bird, listed as Critically Endangered by both the IUCN and Brazil's Ministry of the Environment.

By embedding these celebrations in the state's calendar of public-interest events, lawmakers aim to spotlight avian conservation and rally public support around this imperilled species (Fortunato, 2024).

Together, these varied efforts illustrate how Brazilian NGOs and research institutes address bird conservation at multiple scales—from island endemics to wide-ranging waterbirds—by blending rigorous science, habitat management, and active community engagement.

The screenshot below, taken from BirdLife International's DataZone, presents a curated gallery of Brazilian bird species, each accompanied by taxonomy, IUCN Red List status, and population trend indicators. From the vibrant Brazilian Ruby (*Clytolaema rubricauda*) and endemic Brazilian Teal (*Amazonetta brasiliensis*) to the critically endangered Brazilian Merganser (*Mergus octosetaceus*), this interface allows users to filter and sort by conservation category, flyway, or region. Visual cues—green for "Least Concern," red arrows for declining populations—provide at-a-glance insight into each species' conservation urgency. By integrating high-quality photographs with standardized data fields, DataZone empowers researchers, tour operators, and citizen scientists to identify priority species, track population changes, and plan ecotourism itineraries that both showcase Brazil's remarkable avifauna and support its long-term protection.

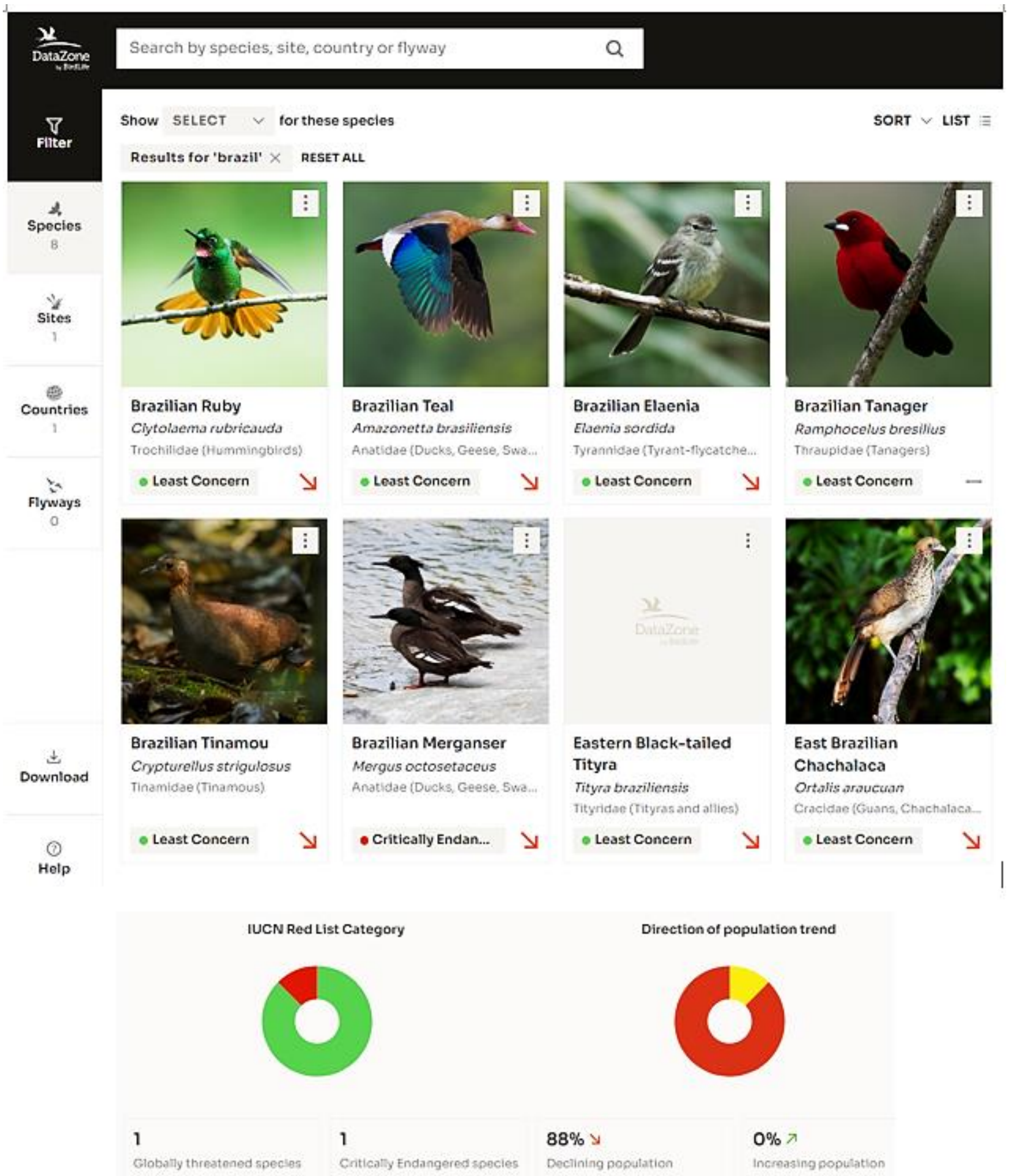


Figure 12H - BirdLife International's DataZone, presents a curated gallery of Brazilian bird species, each accompanied by taxonomy, IUCN Red List status, and population trend indicators.

12.1.5.3. Birds, Birding, Ornithology: Events in Brazil

Brazil hosts an active calendar of birding and avitourism events that span from major metropolitan centers to remote coastal towns, reflecting the country's deepening engagement with its rich avifauna (EMBRATUR, 2024). The "Avistar" series—a flagship set of gatherings organized in partnership with local ornithological societies—takes place annually in six key locations (São Paulo, Belo Horizonte, Distrito Federal, Mato Grosso do Sul, Porto Alegre, and Rio de Janeiro). Each Avistar event combines expert-led field trips to nearby nature reserves with indoor lectures, photo exhibitions, and equipment showcases, making them ideal entry points both for novices curious about birdwatching and for seasoned birders seeking regional specialties.

Beyond the Avistar network, Brazil's festival scene celebrates birds at every scale and in every biome. The Festival Brasileiro de Aves Migratórias focuses on the seasonal influx of

Nearctic migrants along the Atlantic coast; the Festival de Aves de Paraty and Festival de Aves de Porto Seguro bring international birders into the biodiverse heart of the Atlantic Forest and coastal mangroves; and the Observa Joinville program, run by the municipal government of Joinville (SC), integrates urban bird walks with citizen-science initiatives. Smaller, community-driven happenings—such as Papagaio Charão in the Semiarid region—highlight single species or local hotspots, blending cultural heritage with conservation messages.

State-level campaigns like "Vem passarinhar" ("Come Birding") in São Paulo, Ceará, Rio de Janeiro, and Mato Grosso do Sul further expand access by offering free guided tours in public parks, environmental education workshops in schools, and itineraries tailored to family groups. Collectively, these events not only generate vital ecotourism revenue for local communities but also cultivate a nationwide network of bird advocates—ensuring that Brazil's remarkable bird diversity remains both a source of wonder for visitors and a rallying point for conservation action.

12.1.5.4. Planeta Aves YouTube Channel

For anyone looking to dive deeper into Brazil's extraordinary birdlife, **Planeta Aves** is the largest ornithology channel on YouTube, with a total of 440 videos as on 8th May 2025 (see Fig. 12I), and offering new videos every Thursday. Presented entirely in Portuguese, this channel is hosted by Willian Menq—a biologist and specialist in bird ecology and behavior—and produced with support from Jessica Menq, a biologist and master's in Environment and Sustainability. On Planeta Aves, you'll find:

- **Species profiles** covering the full range of birds on our planet, with a special focus on Brazilian endemics
- **Behavioral insights** and fascinating "did you know?" segments
- **Field experiences** filmed on location, from mist-shrouded forests to coastal islets
- **Rigorous science** communicated without sensationalism, ensuring accurate, trustworthy information

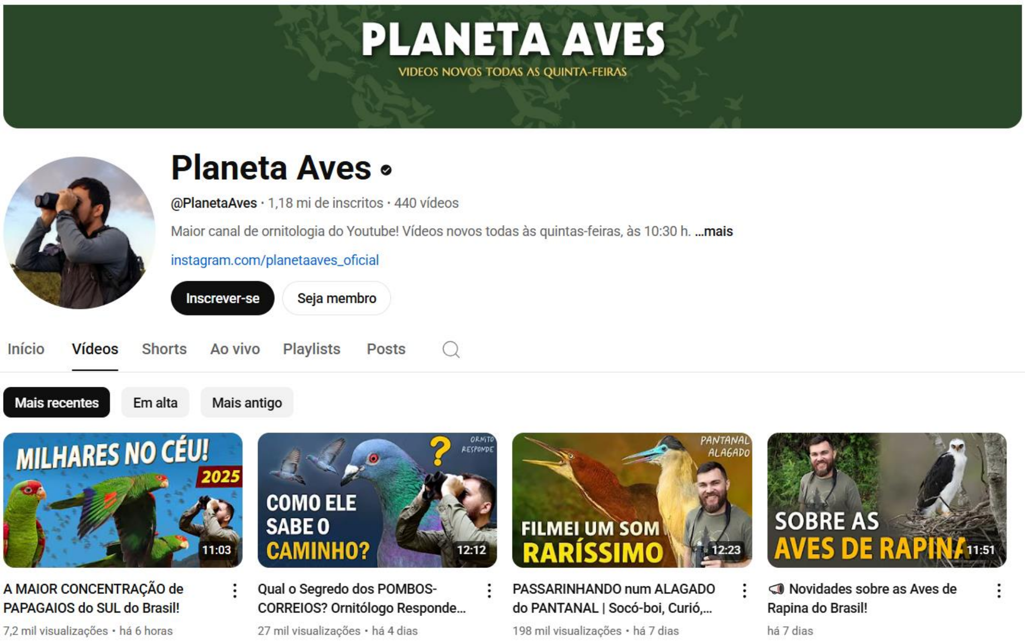


Figure 12I – Youtube Channel – Planeta Aves. Available at, https://www.youtube.com/@PlanetaAves/videos

Whether pursuing birdwatching as a passionate hobby or delving into ornithology as a serious student, Planeta Aves offers an invaluable resource: a richly curated video library that combines rigorous academic insights with clear, engaging storytelling. Covering everything from species identification and behavioral ecology to conservation challenges and habitat management, each video is designed to deepen understanding and spark curiosity about the avian world.

All episodes are freely available on YouTube where viewers can explore in-depth field footage, interviews with experts, and step-by-step guides to birding techniques. For a more personal glimpse behind the camera—plus news of upcoming releases, field expeditions, and community Q&A sessions—follow Planeta Aves on Instagram at instagram.com/planetaaves_oficial. Whether you're just starting your life list or refining advanced field skills, Planeta Aves brings scholarly rigor and accessible passion to every frame.

Part II: The Brazilian Birdwatcher: Passion, Practice, and Profile

12.2. The Art of Observation: Birdwatching and Avitourism Defined

At its core, birdwatching, known in Brazil as *observação de aves* or often simply by the English term *birdwatching*, is the practice of observing birds in their natural environments. It is an activity driven by a blend of curiosity, a deep appreciation for nature, and frequently, a desire for knowledge or the simple pleasure derived from witnessing avian beauty and behavior. Practitioners range widely, from casual observers enjoying the birds in their backyards or local parks to dedicated enthusiasts who travel significant distances, sometimes across continents, to find specific species and add them to their personal records or 'life lists'.

When this passion involves travel specifically undertaken for the purpose of seeing birds, it transitions into the realm of *aviturismo* (avitourism). This segment of nature-based tourism encompasses not just the act of observation itself, but also the associated infrastructure and services that facilitate it. These include specialized guides with local knowledge, lodges catering to the early departures required for optimal birding, dedicated tour operators designing itineraries around target species or regions, and transportation services capable of reaching often remote birding hotspots. To note that 'avitourism' is increasingly recognized as a distinct niche within nature-based and wildlife tourism (Steven et al., 2014).

Based on the exiting specialized literature, Barbosa et al., (2024) emphasize that birdwatching can be understood through four interrelated dimensions—health, science, conservation, and tourism—each reinforcing the others and contributing to both individual well-being and broader societal goals, and outlined as follows:

- Health and well-being in birdwatching typically involves gentle physical activity—walking trails, standing quietly in forest edges, or even light hiking—that aligns with global guidelines for outdoor exercise to support cardiovascular and mental health (Browning et al., 2020). Studies have shown that spending time observing wildlife in green spaces can reduce stress, improve mood, and enhance attention restoration (Pretty et al., 2007), making birdwatching an accessible form of nature-based therapy for people of all ages.

- Citizen Science and Knowledge Generation: As a form of citizen science, birdwatching empowers enthusiasts to collect and share observational data via platforms like eBird and iNaturalist. These community-driven records help researchers track migration patterns, detect population changes, and inform adaptive management strategies (Bonney et al., 2009). In turn, practitioners gain scientific literacy and a sense of stewardship, while policymakers obtain robust, ground-level evidence for crafting effective environmental regulations.

- Conservation Impact: Because birds depend on healthy habitats, birdwatching naturally incentivizes habitat protection. Local observers often become champions for preserving remnant woodlands on private lands, and the demand for quality birding experiences can drive the establishment of formal protected areas—such as Brazil's Reservas Particulares do Patrimônio Natural (RPPNs). By generating local conservation initiatives and fostering a constituency for biodiversity, birdwatching helps safeguard ecosystems and the array of species they support (Sekercioglu, 2002).

- Sustainable Tourism and Community Development: Birdwatching tourism—avitourism—draws visitors to rural and peri-urban destinations, creating income opportunities for guides, lodges, and local artisans without the heavy infrastructure footprint of mass tourism (Steven et al., 2013). When managed with community participation and ecological sensitivity, avitourism can strengthen local economies, support cultural exchanges, and underwrite conservation efforts, ensuring that both people and birds thrive.

Together, these four axes illustrate how a seemingly simple pastime—watching birds—can foster healthier lifestyles, advance scientific understanding, drive conservation outcomes, and underpin sustainable economic models. By engaging people directly with nature, birdwatching catalyzes a positive feedback loop: healthier observers care more about wildlife; richer data improve science and policy; stronger conservation measures enhance tourism experiences; and thriving economies reward continued stewardship.

While the only fundamental requirement for birdwatching is a willingness to look and listen attentively, the experience is often significantly enhanced, and knowledge deepened, through the use of specific equipment. Binoculars provide closer views, cameras serve for documentation or artistic expression, field guides aid in identification, and notebooks allow for recording observations and field notes. Clearly distinguishing between the general activity (birdwatching) and the travel-focused tourism segment (avitourism) is essential for understanding the economic and infrastructural dimensions discussed later in this report.

12.2.1. More Than a Hobby: Motivations Driving the Passion

Understanding what motivates Brazilian birdwatchers reveals a passion deeply intertwined with nature appreciation, social connection, and a strong sense of environmental responsibility. Valuable insights come from data gathered through three editions of the *Censo Brasileiro de Observação de Aves* (Brazilian Bird Observation Census) conducted in 2012, 2017, and 2023.

A particularly striking finding is the pronounced conservation ethic prevalent among observers. In the 2023 Censo, an overwhelming 87% of respondents stated they hope their activity actively contributes to conservation efforts. This commitment extends directly to their travel decisions, with 82% indicating that the conservation status of a potential destination holds maximum importance when choosing where to go birding. This strongly suggests that, for a vast majority, birdwatching is perceived not merely as a passive hobby but as an activity imbued with a sense of responsibility towards the birds and habitats they enjoy. This profound alignment between personal interest and conservation values positions Brazilian birders as active stakeholders in environmental preservation, a potentially powerful force for supporting conservation-linked tourism initiatives like those at REGUA or Canudos. This connection is further emphasized by the fact that 90% of respondents view birdwatching primarily as a means of connecting with nature, significantly higher than the 66% who consider it simply a hobby. The desire for solitude in nature is also a factor for a notable portion (59%).

Interestingly, despite the potential for solitude, birdwatching in Brazil is also a remarkably social activity. The 2023 Censo found that over 75% of observers participate in at least one WhatsApp group dedicated to birding, with many belonging to multiple groups (52% in up to three, 20% in four to seven). For 55% of respondents, the activity is explicitly seen as a way to make friends, meet new people, and share photos, information about birds, destinations, and guides. This vibrant virtual interaction, however, contrasts intriguingly with real-world travel preferences. Despite extensive online networking, most birders prefer travelling in small, intimate groups. The 2023 survey showed that 62% typically travel either as a pair (34%) or in small groups of up to five people (28%). Only 23% usually travel alone, and a smaller fraction (11%) prefer the company of a spouse or family members. This preference for smaller groups, consistent across the Censo editions, likely reflects a practical consideration: smaller groups tend to create less disturbance, thereby enhancing the chances of observing and successfully photographing more elusive or sensitive species. This suggests that while digital communities fulfill vital roles in information exchange, planning, and fostering a sense of community, the core field experience of birdwatching is often valued for its potential for close connection with nature and observational effectiveness, which smaller groups facilitate.

Furthermore, the practice often aligns with the principles of Citizen Science, where observers contribute their sightings to scientific knowledge and conservation efforts (explored further in Part VII). The desire to "help society know the birds," cited by 74% of respondents, reflects this aspect. Finally, the activity inherently involves spending time outdoors, often requiring walking or hiking, thus contributing positively to physical and mental health and well-being.

12.2.2. A Community Takes Flight: Demographics and Trends

The *Censo Brasileiro de Observação de Aves* (Brazilian Birdwatching Census) provides a valuable longitudinal snapshot of the Brazilian birdwatching community, revealing both stability and significant changes over the decade. The Censo (Census) is an initiative that comprises a series of qualitative surveys conducted in 2012, 2017, and 2023, aiming to profile birdwatchers in Brazil and assess the potential of birdwatching tourism (avitourism) in the country. The census provides insights into the socio-economic and demographic characteristics of birdwatchers, their motivations, and the infrastructure supporting birdwatching activities.

The 2023 edition of the census highlighted a growing interest in birdwatching across Brazil, with 54.9% of respondents indicating they travel specifically for birdwatching purposes. The data also revealed that 83.6% of these travelers prefer visiting parks and conservation units, underscoring the importance of protected areas in supporting avitourism. Moreover, the census emphasized the role of birdwatching in promoting conservation awareness, with 87% of participants expressing a desire to contribute actively to species conservation through their activities

A key trend is the apparent growth of the activity. While the Censo is qualitative and does not quantify the total number of birders in Brazil, the 2023 edition showed a significant influx of newcomers. A substantial 38.6% of respondents reported they had started observing or photographing birds within the preceding four to five years. This surge might be linked to several factors, including the increased accessibility of information online through platforms like WikiAves and potentially a societal response seeking connection with nature following the confinement periods during the COVID-19 pandemic. This growth is also reflected anecdotally in increased media coverage and the rising popularity of online birding communities.

Demographically, birdwatching in Brazil remains predominantly male, although female participation has shown a positive trend. The proportion of female respondents increased from 30% in the 2012 and 2017 surveys to 36% in 2023. The 2023 Censo also recorded, for the first time, 0.6% identifying as non-binary. A particularly notable finding from the 2023 survey, which included the question for the first time, concerns ethnic composition: 76.2% of respondents self-identified as white. This pronounced predominance suggests that birdwatching may currently be less accessible or appealing to Brazilians from other ethnic backgrounds, highlighting a significant area for potential outreach and inclusion efforts.

In terms of age, there is a clear trend towards an older demographic participating in the Censo surveys. The proportion of respondents aged 55 and over rose significantly, from 14% in 2012 to 26% in 2023. Conversely, the participation rate among young adults (aged 18-24 years) remained relatively stable at around 10% across the survey years. The combination of strong recent growth (38.6% starting in the last 4-5 years) and this aging demographic suggests that the activity is successfully attracting *new* participants from older age groups, possibly retirees with more disposable income and leisure time, rather than simply reflecting the aging of the existing birder cohort. This points towards a specific, growing market segment with potential implications for service design, focusing on factors like accessibility and comfort.
Brazilian birdwatchers tend to possess high levels of formal education. The percentage of observers holding postgraduate degrees increased notably from 38% in 2012 to 46% in 2023. This skew towards higher education levels might correlate with factors such as disposable income necessary for equipment and travel, or perhaps reflects the scientific curiosity and learning aspects inherent in the activity. In fact, the higher educational profile is correlated not only to disposable income but also to the scientific and ecological culture associated with birdwatching (Connell, 2009).

Interestingly, 11% of respondents in the 2023 Censo identified as having some degree of disability. This figure is slightly higher than the national average of approximately 9% reported in the latest available data from the Brazilian Demographic Census (IBGE 2022) cited by the Censo analysis. This could suggest that nature-based activities like birdwatching hold particular appeal for individuals with certain disabilities, or perhaps that outreach efforts for the Censo effectively reached this group.

Regarding experience levels, the average number of species recorded on personal lists (often called 'life lists') remained fairly consistent across the three Censo editions, hovering around 300 species. Given Brazil's vast avifauna of nearly 2000 species documented by the CBRO, this average indicates substantial potential for most domestic birders to continue adding new species to their lists. This large gap between average list size and total possible species represents a significant latent demand for travel to new locations and biomes within Brazil in search of 'lifers' (species seen for the first time).

The demographic profile emerging from the Censo – typically older, male, white, and highly educated – provides a valuable baseline but also signals significant untapped potential. The observed growth and slight diversification in gender point towards an expanding interest in birdwatching (refer to Table 11 for a statistics and figures of 2023 Censo on the birders in Brazil). However, the stark disparities in ethnic and educational representation strongly suggest that barriers, potentially related to cost, cultural awareness, or accessibility of information and locations, might be limiting participation among broader segments of Brazilian society. Addressing these disparities is not only an issue of equity but also represents a major opportunity to expand the market for avitourism and broaden the base of public support for conservation initiatives.

Table 12.1 - Profile of the Brazilian Birdwatcher (Based on 2023 Censo Brasileiro de Observação de Aves)

Characteristic	Finding (2023 Censo)	Notes
Gender	Male: ~63.4%, Female: 36%, Non-binary: 0.6%	Female participation increased from 30% in 2012/2017.
Age	26% aged 55+ (up from 14% in 2012)	18-24 age group stable around 10%. Trend towards older participants.
Ethnicity	76.2% self-identified as White	Question asked for the first time in 2023. Highlights inclusivity gap.
Education	46% hold Post-graduate degrees (up from 38% in 2012)	Predominance of higher education levels, trend increasing.
Disability	11% reported some degree of disability	Higher than national average (~9% - IBGE 2022 cited in source).
Recent Start	38.6% started in the last 4-5 years	Suggests significant recent growth in participation.
Primary Motivation	Connection with Nature (90%), Conservation (87%)	Hobby (66%), Help Society Know Birds (74%), Social (55%).
Travel for Birding	54.9% affirmed making trips for birdwatching	83.6% of these prefer visiting Parks/UCs.
Travel Group Size	62% travel in pairs (34%) or groups up to 5 (28%)	Only 23% travel solo. Preference for small groups.
Primary Location	Backyard/Window (83.6%), Local Parks/Squares	Rural areas (*Sítios*/*Fazendas*) also significant (~20%).
Spending	68% reported spending on the activity in 2022	Key expenses: Transport, Accommodation/Food, Books, Photo Equipment.
Communication	75%+ participate in WhatsApp groups	High level of virtual social interaction and information sharing.

Average 'Life List'	~300 species	Stable across Censos, significant room for growth (~1971 total species).

Source: Adapted from Barbosa et al. (2023) analysis of Censo Brasileiro de Observação de Aves data. Percentages may not sum perfectly due to rounding or multiple response options.

12.2.3. The Economics of Enthusiasm: How Birders Invest

While birdwatching can certainly be enjoyed simply by stepping outside and observing local birdlife without cost, the Censo data reveals that it often involves significant financial investment by participants, because birdwatching excursions often entail substantial travel expenditures, avitourists (birders) rank among the highest-spending segments in nature-based tourism (Steven et. al., 2014; Cordell & Herbert, 2002; Hvenegaard, Butler, & Krystofiak, 1989; Kerlinger, 1993; Sekercioglu, 2003). In the year 2022, 68% of responding birdwatchers reported incurring expenses related to their activity.

The most frequent expenditures clearly demonstrate the link between the hobby and the travel industry. Spending on transportation was reported by 73% of those who incurred costs, followed closely by accommodation and food at 67%. This high level of spending on core travel components directly quantifies the economic contribution of birdwatchers to the avitourism sector and related services like airlines, bus companies, fuel stations, hotels, lodges, and restaurants. Spending on books and field guides (59%) and photographic equipment (57%) was also common, reflecting the importance of identification resources and documentation.

Notably, photographic equipment often represents the most substantial individual outlay for many birders. In 2022, 20% of participants reported spending over R$ 2,000 (Brazilian Reais), around US$ 344,40 on this category alone. This significant investment suggests a strong overlap between birdwatching and nature photography interests within the Brazilian community. This implies that destinations offering good photographic opportunities – such as open habitats with good visibility like the Pantanal, strategically placed feeders or hides at lodges, or areas known for particularly photogenic species – may hold a competitive advantage in attracting this segment of the market. To note, photographic tourism has been a growing hybrid between birdwatching and nature photography tourism.

These spending patterns, which showed little variation across the three Censo editions (2012, 2017, 2023), underscore the direct and consistent economic contribution of birdwatchers to various sectors. Beyond these primary costs associated with travel, equipment, and resources, birdwatching fuels a broader creative economy. This encompasses the development of mobile applications for identification and listing, the publication of specialized books and regional guides, the creation of avian-themed art and handicrafts, branded apparel, and the retail sale of optical equipment (binoculars, spotting scopes), sound recorders, feeders, birdbaths, and specialized bird food. This spending directly supports not only the avitourism infrastructure itself but also a network of related industries.

Part III - Exploring Brazil's Feathered Realms: Premier Birding Destinations

12.3. Choosing Your Adventure: An Overview of Biomes and Protected Areas

Brazil's immense geographic scale and profound ecological diversity translate into vast and varied birdwatching opportunities, catering to virtually every interest. The choice of where to go often depends on the specific birds, habitats, or overall wildlife experience a visitor wishes to pursue. As noted from the 2023 Censo Brasileiro de Observação de Aves, there was a strong preference indicated among respondents for future trips to the Atlantic Forest (33%) and the Amazon (32%), although this result may be partly influenced by the fact that the majority of survey respondents resided in regions dominated by the Atlantic Forest biome.

Regardless of the specific biome targeted, Brazil's extensive network of Protected Areas (*Unidades de Conservação* - UCs) serves as the absolute cornerstone of birding travel in the country. This network includes federal categories like National Parks (*Parques Nacionais*) and Biological Reserves (*Reservas Biológicas*), state-level parks (*Parques Estaduais*), and increasingly important Private Natural Heritage Reserves (Reservas Particulares do Patrimônio Natural - RPPNs), which complement federal and state conservation units, but still part of the official SNUC system. The Censo data unequivocally confirms the centrality of these areas: an overwhelming 83.6% of birders who travel stated a preference for visiting parks and other UCs. Furthermore, the mere presence of a UC nearby is a significant factor influencing travel decisions, cited by 64.9% of respondents as an important motivator for visiting a particular region. These protected areas function as critical sanctuaries, safeguarding vital habitats and concentrating biodiversity, thereby making them essential destinations for anyone seeking to observe Brazil's remarkable avian treasures. The health, management, and accessibility of this protected area network are thus intrinsically linked to the success and sustainability of the avitourism industry.

12.3.1. Pantanal: The Majestic Wetlands

The Pantanal, recognized globally as the world's largest tropical wetland, offers a wildlife experience that is truly spectacular and is often regarded as one of the highlights of South American nature travel. Located primarily within the Brazilian states of Mato Grosso and Mato Grosso do Sul, this vast ecosystem is particularly renowned for its exceptionally high density of birds—especially large and conspicuous waterbirds—and its relatively accessible large mammal fauna. Importantly, the Pantanal increasingly exemplifies a conservation-compatible tourism model, where the maintenance of ecosystem services and support for local economies are closely tied to the success of sustainable nature-based tourism. Through the integration of wildlife observation, habitat preservation, and community-based initiatives, the Pantanal demonstrates how biodiversity conservation and economic development can be mutually reinforcing.

Iconic avian species draw birders from across the globe. The magnificent Hyacinth Macaw (*Anodorhynchus hyacinthinus*), the world's largest parrot, finds a significant stronghold here, with conservation projects actively supporting its populations. The towering Jabiru (*Jabiru mycteria*), the symbol of the Pantanal, stalks the wetlands alongside immense flocks of Wood Storks, egrets, and herons. Other characteristic sights include the raucous Southern Screamer (*Chauna torquata*), the elegant Plumbeous Ibis (*Theristicus caerulescens*), the striking Toco Toucan (*Ramphastos toco*), the endemic Chestnut-bellied Guan (*Penelope ochrogaster*), and the stately Bare-faced Curassow (*Crax fasciolata*). The sheer abundance and visibility of birdlife, particularly during the dry season when animals concentrate around remaining water sources, can be staggering.

Access to the Northern Pantanal is typically via Cuiabá, the capital of Mato Grosso state. From there, the famous Transpantaneira road, an unpaved highway punctuated by numerous rustic wooden bridges, penetrates deep into the wetlands. This road itself offers exceptional roadside birding and provides access to numerous lodges, often converted cattle ranches (*fazendas*) or purpose-built inns (*pousadas*). Key lodges frequently mentioned include Pousada Piuval, Pousada Rio Claro, SouthWild Pantanal Lodge (formerly Fazenda Santa Tereza), Araras Eco Lodge, and Hotel Porto Jofre situated at the road's terminus. In the Southern Pantanal, access is often via Campo Grande, the capital of Mato Grosso do Sul, with established lodges like Pousada Aguapé near Aquidauana offering excellent birding and mammal sightings. It is noteworthy that the Transpantaneira's endpoint at Porto Jofre is mainly famous for Jaguars, while birding continues strongly along the road itself.

Boat trips along the region's rivers, such as the Cuiabá, Pixaim, Claro, or Aquidauana rivers, are essential activities. They provide access to different riverine habitats and significantly increase the chances of encountering species like kingfishers, herons, Sungrebes, various raptors, and, crucially, mammals.

The Pantanal's appeal extends significantly beyond its avian riches. It is widely regarded as the best place in the Americas, perhaps the world, for observing Jaguars (*Panthera onca*) in the wild. Sightings are particularly frequent along the riverbanks near Porto Jofre during the dry season (roughly June to October). Families of Giant Otters (*Pteronura brasiliensis*) are also commonly encountered, often providing entertaining viewing opportunities. Alongside these stars, Capybaras, caimans, Marsh Deer, and several monkey species are abundant. This powerful combination of spectacular birding and reliable charismatic megafauna sightings makes the Pantanal a top-tier international wildlife destination. This synergy attracts a broader range of nature tourists beyond the dedicated birder community, which in turn helps sustain a robust tourism infrastructure – including lodges, experienced guides, and transportation services – that benefits birdwatchers specifically.

12.3.2. Atlantic Forest: Endemic Jewels in a Biodiversity Hotspot

The Atlantic Forest, or *Mata Atlântica*, represents a biome of extraordinary biological richness coupled with profound conservation concern. Stretching historically along much of Brazil's eastern coastline and extending inland, it is recognized as one of the world's foremost biodiversity hotspots. Centuries of deforestation, primarily for agriculture (sugarcane, coffee, cattle) and accelerating urbanization, have left the biome heavily fragmented. Despite being hailed as one of Earth's richest biodiversity strongholds, the Brazilian Atlantic Forest now holds only 11.4–16 % of its initial tree cover. Of the nearly 250 000 remaining woodland fragments, more than four-fifths are under 50 ha; approximately half of the surviving vegetation sits within 100 m of a forest edge, and the average gap between fragments measures about 1 440 m (Enedino et. al., 2018; Myers et al., 2000, Ribeiro et al., 2009).

Despite this, the remaining forest patches harbor an incredibly high concentration of endemic species – organisms found naturally nowhere else on Earth. This exceptional diversity and particularly high rate of endemism make it a prime target for serious birdwatchers, reflected in its ranking as the most desired biome for future trips among respondents in the 2023 Censo.

12.3.2.1. Several key areas offer outstanding birding opportunities within Atlantic Forest - a threatened biome (see map and details on Fig. 12J and Table 12J):

A - Itatiaia National Park: The Park was inaugurated on June 14, 1937 by President Getúlio Vargas, holds the distinction of being Brazil's inaugural national park. Nestled within the Itatiaia Massif of the Mantiqueira Mountains—straddling the border of Rio de

Janeiro and Minas Gerais—it safeguards vital fragments of the Atlantic Forest. The park's territory spans portions of the municipalities of Itatiaia and Resende in Rio de Janeiro, as well as Bocaina de Minas and Itamonte in Minas Gerais, "the Atlantic Forest (Mata Atlântica) bursts with life, much of it found only here in Brazil. Once the forest stretched for 3,000 km in a continuous swathe along Brazil's southeast coast, and in some places far inland. Now it remains mostly as tiny fragments" (Ridgely et. al., 2016, p.2). For visitor orientation, the park is divided into three principal zones: the high-altitude Itatiaia Plateau, the lower forested regions, and the Visconde de Mauá area. Although the park welcomes guests year-round, winter is the optimal season for exploring the plateau—rainfall diminishes, trails become more secure, and clear skies afford exceptional valley vistas. In contrast, the lower regions offer enjoyable excursions throughout every season. Activities available within the park include: guided and self-guided walks; mountain and rock climbing; multi-day treks; wildlife observation with great options for birdwatching; picnicking in designated areas; swimming beneath waterfalls; biking on approved trails (ICMBio, n.d.). The three principal zones range from lower slopes to montane environments reaching nearly 2,800 meters. This elevational variation supports diverse bird communities, including high-altitude specialists.

The Atlantic Forest stands out because it encompasses a mosaic of ecosystems—ranging from coastal mangroves and lowland rainforests to montane cloud forests and high-altitude grasslands—spanning latitudes just north of the Equator down into subtropical zones and elevations from sea level up to nearly 3,000 meters. Moisture-laden winds off the Atlantic create lush, wet slopes, while interior areas remain comparatively dry, producing sharp environmental contrasts. Over millennia, these shifting patterns of expansion and contraction have allowed countless plant and animal lineages to specialize in microhabitats within this ever-changing patchwork. Today, a single hectare can host over 450 tree species, and the forest overall supports more than 1,000 bird species (Ridgely et. al., 2016).

For birders, one of the first must-see destinations is Itatiaia National Park, located between Rio de Janeiro and São Paulo. Easily reachable by car in two to three hours, its upland trails and sweeping mountain vistas reveal more than 370 species—from iconic Green-billed Toucans and Brassy-breasted Tanagers to rarities like the Itatiaia Spinetail, Green-crowned Plovercrest, and a stunning array of hummingbirds (Ridgely et. al., 2016).

Closer to the coast, the lowland forests around Ubatuba and Paraty offer an equally rich avian menu—approximately 400 species in total. Here, birdwatchers might encounter Saffron Toucanets and Channel-billed Toucans in the humid canopy, listen for the ringing calls of Buff-throated Purpletufts among mangrove roots, or spot Red-necked Tanagers and Long-billed Wrens darting through dense undergrowth. These coastal corridors provide both scenic beauty and world-class birding, illustrating the remarkable ecological breadth of the Atlantic Forest (Ridgely et. al., 2016).

B - Ubatuba Region: Located on the coast of São Paulo state, Ubatuba provides access to lowland and foothill Atlantic Forest habitats backed by the steep slopes of the Serra do Mar mountain range. This area is excellent for finding coastal and lowland endemics such as the diminutive Fork-tailed Pygmy-Tyrant (*Hemitriccus furcatus*), the localized Sao Paulo Tyrannulet (*Phylloscartes paulista*), Buff-throated Purpletuft (*Iodopleura pipra*), the elusive Slaty Bristlefront (*Merulaxis ater*), Black-cheeked Gnateater (*Conopophaga melanops*), and a dazzling array of colourful tanagers and hummingbirds.

C - Intervales State Park: Situated inland in São Paulo state, this large park protects extensive tracts of mid-elevation rainforest and is recognized as part of a UNESCO Natural World Heritage Site. Its well-preserved forests offer opportunities to see a wide array of Atlantic Forest endemics, with basic state-run lodges located practically within the forest allowing for immersive experiences.

D - REGUA (Reserva Ecológica de Guapiaçu): Located in the foothills inland from Rio de Janeiro city, REGUA stands as a highly successful private conservation initiative focused on protecting and actively restoring Atlantic Forest habitat in the Guapiaçu valley. It is arguably the most reliable place in the world to find the rare and sought-after Shrike-like Cotinga (or Brazilian Laniisoma, *Laniisoma elegans*) and other lowland specialties like Salvadori's Antwren (*Myrmotherula minor*) and White-bellied Tanager (*Tangara brasiliensis*), "REGUA is a birdwatcher's paradise, featuring continuous forest from 35 to over 2,000 meters above sea level. With diverse habitats like lowland and highland forests, wetlands, and farmland, plus a lodge tailored for bird enthusiasts and excellent birdwatching trails" the ecological reserve is regarded as an exceptional destination for birders" as it is a "home to 485 recorded bird species, with an additional 70+ species seen on excursions" (Regua Organization, n.d.). It operates a well-regarded birding lodge, the Guapiaçu Bird Lodge, with income generated directly supporting land purchase, reforestation programs, scientific research, and local environmental education, showcasing an effective model of conservation funded significantly by ecotourism. REGUA partners with international organizations like the World Land Trust and Rainforest Trust.

E - Espírito Santo Highlands: Areas around the town of Santa Teresa in Espírito Santo state offer access to a different suite of endemics characteristic of the central Atlantic Forest. Target species include the stunning Frilled Coquette (*Lophornis magnificus*), the unique Wied's Tyrant-Manakin (*Neopelma aurifrons*), Serra Antwren (*Formicivora serrana*), and East Brazilian Chachalaca (*Ortalis araucuan*). Nearby private reserves like Reserva Kaetés protect critical habitat for the critically endangered Cherry-throated Tanager (*Nemosia rourei*).

F - Other Sites: Numerous other locations provide access to important Atlantic Forest habitats, including Reserva do Ibitipoca in Minas Gerais (known for its stunning landscapes and unique flora alongside birds) and areas around Salesópolis in São Paulo.

Birding in the Atlantic Forest often presents challenges due to the dense vegetation and the often skulking nature of many forest species. However, the rewards are immense, offering dedicated birders the chance to encounter some of the world's most beautiful, rare, and threatened birds. The high level of threat facing this biome due to ongoing habitat loss makes visiting these areas and supporting conservation efforts, whether through park fees or patronage of conservation-focused lodges like REGUA, particularly poignant and impactful. It positions the Atlantic Forest as a prime destination for conservation-minded birders seeking unique endemics.

Figure and Table 12J below present and outline thirty-nine prominent birdwatching locations within Brazil's Atlantic Forest biome, organized by their official conservation designation. Each entry is numbered to correspond with the map presented earlier and includes the protected-area category—such as national park, state park, biological reserve, or private natural heritage reserve—to highlight the diverse governance models under which these sites are managed. This overview is intended to guide researchers, birding tour operators, and policymakers in understanding the spatial distribution of key avitourism destinations alongside their institutional stewardship frameworks.

Figure 12J. Key Protected Areas and other Areas for Birdwatching in the Atlantic Forest. Source: Ridgely et. al, 2016, second internal page of the book.

Table 12J. Notable Atlantic Forest Birding Sites and Their Protection Categories

No.	**Name**	**Category**
1	PN Serra das Lontras	National Park (PN)
2	Reserva Biológica Una	Biological Reserve
3	RPPN Estação Veracel	Private Natural Heritage Reserve
4	Serra Bonita	Other protected area
5	PN Marinho Abrolhos	National Park (PN)
6	RPPN Mata do Passarinho	Private Natural Heritage Reserve
7	PE Rio Doce	State Park (PE)
8	PN Serra do Cipó	National Park (PN)
9	PN Serra da Canastra	National Park (PN)
10	RPPN Santuário do Caraça	Private Natural Heritage Reserve

No.	Name	Category
11	PE Ibitipoca	State Park (PE)
12	PN Caparaó	National Park (PN)
13	Reserva Biológica de Sooretama	Biological Reserve
14	Reserva Natural Vale	Natural Reserve
15	Reserva Biológica de Comboios	Biological Reserve
16	Reserva Biológica Augusto Ruschi	Biological Reserve
17	PE do Desengano	State Park (PE)
18	Serra dos Órgãos	Other protected area
19	REGUA (Reserva Ecológica de Guapiaçu)	Ecological Reserve
20	Reserva Biológica União	Biological Reserve
21	Cabo Frio	Other protected area
22	PN Tijuca	National Park (PN)
23	Ilha Grande	Other protected area
24	PN Itatiaia	National Park (PN)
25	PN Serra da Bocaina	National Park (PN)
26	Campos do Jordão	Other protected area
27	São Luiz do Paraitinga	Other protected area
28	Ubatuba and Paraty	Other protected area
29	Ilhabela	Other protected area
30	Estação Ecológica Jureia-Itatins	Ecological Station
31	Ilha do Cardoso	Other protected area
32	Serra do Japi	Other protected area
33	PE Carlos Botelho	State Park (PE)
34	PE Intervales	State Park (PE)
35	Petar (Parque Estadual Turístico Alto Ribeira)	State Park (PE)
36	Itirapina	Other protected area
37	Fazenda Bacury and Tanquã	Other protected area
38	Estação Ecológica de Caetetus	Ecological Station
39	PE Morro do Diabo	State Park (PE)

Source: Adapted from Ridgely et. al., 2016, second internal page of the book.

Legend:

- **PN** = National Park
- **PE** = State Park (Parque Estadual)
- **RPPN** = Private Natural Heritage Reserve
- **Biological Reserve** = Reserva Biológica
- **Ecological Station** = Estação Ecológica
- **Ecological Reserve** = Reserva Ecológica
- **Natural Reserve** = Reserva Natural
- **Other protected area** = sites without a formal PN/PE/RPPN/… prefix but recognized for conservation and birding.

12.3.3. Amazon: Mysteries of the Rainforest

The Amazon rainforest, the largest tropical rainforest on Earth, represents the zenith of terrestrial biodiversity. For birdwatchers, it offers an experience unlike any other – a realm of immense scale, staggering species richness, and the constant possibility of encountering rare, newly described, or enigmatic creatures. Birding here can certainly be challenging; the sheer density of the forest, the height of the canopy, low light levels, and the often elusive nature of its inhabitants require patience and skill (and often, expert local guidance). However, the potential rewards are unparalleled. Several key destinations provide access to different facets and ecosystems within the vast Brazilian Amazon:

A - Cristalino Lodge (Southern Amazon, Mato Grosso): Widely regarded as one of the premier birding and nature lodges in the entire Amazon basin, Cristalino Lodge is situated within a large private reserve adjacent to Cristalino State Park, accessed via the town of Alta Floresta. Its location in the southern Amazon, an area of high biodiversity near the transition zone with the Cerrado and Pantanal biomes, contributes to its exceptionally high bird list, approaching 600 species. The lodge boasts excellent infrastructure, including comfortable accommodations, highly knowledgeable guides (many specializing in birding), an extensive and well-maintained trail system traversing diverse habitats (*terra firme* forest, Guadua bamboo groves, seasonally flooded areas, rocky granitic outcrops), and crucially, two 50-meter canopy towers. These towers offer eye-level views of canopy species – like cotingas, toucans, parrots, and raptors – that are often difficult or impossible to see well from the forest floor. Target species include iconic birds like the Harpy Eagle (*Harpia harpyja*), Red-fan Parrot (*Deroptyus accipitrinus*), Curl-crested Aracari (*Pteroglossus beauharnaesii*), Pompadour Cotinga (*Xipholena punicea*), Kawall's Parrot (*Amazona kawalli*), Cryptic Forest-Falcon (*Micrastur mintoni*), and a bewildering array of antbirds, manakins, toucans, and woodcreepers. Access involves commercial flights to Alta Floresta (AFL), followed by a road and boat transfer. Cristalino offers a classic, high-biodiversity *terra firme* (non-flooded) rainforest experience geared towards serious nature enthusiasts and birders aiming to maximize their species list in relative comfort.

B - Mamirauá Sustainable Development Reserve (Uakari Lodge, Amazonas): Mamirauá offers a completely different, yet equally compelling, Amazonian experience. Located near the confluence of the Solimões (Upper Amazon) and Japurá rivers, several hours by boat from the town of Tefé, it is the largest protected *várzea* (seasonally flooded forest) reserve in the world. The Mamirauá Sustainable Development Reserve occupies "approximately 1,124,000 hectares" of seasonally inundated várzea forest in the central-western portion of Amazonas state "(between 03°08'S–02°36'S and 64°45'W–67°13'W), adjacent to the municipality of Tefé" (Bernardon & Nassar, 2014, p.52). Flanked by the Solimões, Japurá, and Auati-Paraná rivers, this floodplain ecosystem spans around 200,000 km²—equivalent to roughly 2% of the entire Amazon biome (Junk, 1983). The region experiences a humid tropical climate, with mean annual precipitation of about 2,350 mm (Bernardon & Nassar, 2014, p.52).

The entire ecosystem undergoes a dramatic annual transformation driven by water level fluctuations that can reach 10-15 meters. The Uakari Lodge (see Fig.12K) itself is a unique floating structure, connected by floating walkways, and is managed as a community-based tourism initiative involving local riverine communities in partnership with the Mamirauá Institute for Sustainable Development (Bernardon & Nassar, 2012). Tourism revenue directly benefits local community projects and conservation programs within the reserve. The Mamirauá Sustainable Development Reserve is exceptionally well suited for birdwatching, meeting criteria such as remarkable species richness, availability of bilingual naturalist guides, up-to-date avian inventories, specialized field guides, and visitor-oriented facilities (Peralta 2002; Peralta et.al., 2010). Since 1998, its ecotourism initiative has balanced conservation objectives with income generation for surrounding communities.

To safeguard sensitive habitats and manage visitor impact, all birding excursions are confined to a designated Ecotourism Special Management Zone, where regulations ensure sustainable use of natural resources (Peralta, 2002; Peralta et.al., 2010).

Figure 12K - Uakari Lodge, Reserva de Desenvolvimento Sustentável Mamirauá, Amazonas state, Brazil. Photo credit: Gui Gomes. **Caption:** Uakari Lodge, nestled in the heart of the Mamirauá Sustainable Development Reserve (Amazonas, Brazil), exemplifies world-class ecotourism. Surrounded by flooded forests, the lodge offers unique opportunities for birdwatching, wildlife tourism, and immersive nature experiences in one of the most biodiverse regions on Earth. A model for community-based and conservation-centered tourism in the Amazon.

Key Bird Species, Birdlife in Mamirauá

Birding here focuses on species adapted to the flooded forest environment, with around 300 species cataloged for the reserve. Activities vary significantly depending on the season: during the high-water season (roughly January-June), exploration is primarily by motorized or paddled canoe, allowing intimate access through the flooded forest canopy, bringing observers closer to canopy birds and primates. During the low-water season, trails open up within the forest for hiking. Besides characteristic birds like the bizarre Hoatzin (*Opisthocomus hoazin*) (see Fig. 12.1), Festive Parrot (*Amazona festiva*), Scarlet-Crowned Barbet (*Capito aurovirens*) (see Fig.12.2) (Bernardon & Nassar, 2012), and various river island specialists, Mamirauá is famous for its primate populations, especially the endemic and striking White Uakari monkey (*Cacajao calvus calvus*).

According to Bernardon & Nassar (2014), during a research field trip in the Reserve, Visibility of any given bird species at Mamirauá SDR is influenced by its habitat preferences, seasonal movements tied to water levels, and sheer chance. Some species, like the *Large-billed Tern* (*Phaetusa simplex*) and *Striated Heron* (*Butorides striata*), were recorded on every field trip, whereas rarer sightings—such as *Mealy Parrot* (*Amazona farinosa*) and *Cream-colored Woodpecker* (*Celeus flavus*)—occurred only once. Throughout the study, *Yellow-rumped Cacique* (*Cacicus cela*) and *Black-collared Hawk* (*Busarellus nigricollis*) topped the list with 62 observations each, followed closely by *Horned Screamer* (*Anhima cornuta*) and *Hoatzin* (*Opisthocomus hoazin*) at 61 sightings apiece—these four species appeared consistently across all months. Twenty species achieved at least 20% observation frequency, marking them as especially attractive to birding tourists. The *Horned Screamer* thrives among macrophyte-rich lakes, feeding and nesting amid aquatic plants, while the *Great Egret* (*Ardea alba*) becomes particularly abundant in the dry season when prey is concentrated in shallow waters. The *Neotropic Cormorant* (*Phalacrocorax brasilianus*) also draws large gatherings in low-water periods, creating spectacular dry-season roosts (Bernardon & Nassar, 2014). The ever-present *Hoatzin*, noisy and confiding along lake and river margins, is virtually guaranteed to appear during drought conditions, making it a highlight for visitors.

Mamirauá appeals strongly to visitors interested in experiencing a unique and dynamic ecosystem, engaging with local communities, supporting a successful sustainable development model, and seeing specific várzea wildlife, and as posed by Bernardon & Nassar (2014), "The Mamirauá SDR has an incredible potential for birdwatching activities. The motor boat sail is only one of the options for sighting, and still, it has been proved very productive in terms of capturing the richness and species diversity" (p.58).

Figure 12.1 - Hoatzin *(Opisthocomus hoazin)* photographed in the Amazon rainforest. This primitive, folivorous bird — sometimes called the "stinkbird"—is known for its unique digestive system and evolutionary significance. *(Photo: Murray Foubister, CC BY-SA 2.0)*

Figure 12.2. **Scarlet-crowned Barbet** (Capito aurovirens), taken on November 13, 2022, and uploaded to iNaturalist.

C - Anavilhanas National Park (Amazonas):
Anavilhanas National Park protects one of the world's largest fluvial archipelagos on the Rio Negro, an Amazonian mosaic of over 400 islands and flooded forests. The park spans about 340,000 hectares and harbors rich birdlife – at least 232 bird species have been catalogued so far (ICMBio, 2025; Wikiparques, 2023). Notably, the archipelago's avifauna is distinct from that of the adjacent mainland rainforest, with over 160 species identified on the river islands alone, including some species found nowhere else outside this region (BirdLife International, 2024; MMA, 2024). Birders in Anavilhanas can encounter Amazonian specialties such as the choquinha-do-Tapajós (*Myrmotherula klagesi*), maria-da-campina (*Todirostrum poliocephalum*), and formigueiro-liso (*Myrmoborus lugubris*) among other localized species (O Estado, 2024).

Birdwatching activities: The park is open year-round, and birdwatching is typically organized through boat excursions given the flooded terrain (MMA, 2024). Specialized ecotour operators based in Novo Airão (the gateway town) offer guided trips through Anavilhanas, navigating blackwater channels to access various islands. During the dry season (roughly September to February), receding waters expose beaches and concentrate food resources, making birds easier to spot – this season is considered ideal for birdwatching as flocks congregate at fruiting trees and along shorelines (MMA, 2024). Visitors commonly see flocks of toucans and parrots flying between islands, and may even glimpse riverine species endemic to the Negro's igapó forests. Infrastructure for birders is still developing: there are established boat routes and a few marked "trilhas aquáticas" (water trails) through flooded forest, but terrestrial trails on islands remain mostly closed pending further infrastructure (Wikiparques, 2023). A popular stop is the Flutuante dos Botos (Boto Dolphin floating platform) just outside the park, where tourists can observe Pink River Dolphins – while not a birding site per se, it underscores the wildlife viewing draw of the region (ICMBio, 2025). Park authorities emphasize that all visitation has an educational character, in line with the management plan's goal of sustainable ecotourism (Wikiparques, 2023).

Community and conservation partnerships: Anavilhanas is a relatively remote park with over 60 traditional communities in its vicinity (Wikiparques, 2023). Engaging local people in tourism is a priority. In early 2025, ICMBio and partners (including the Amazon NGO Fundação Vitória Amazônica, the Wildlife Conservation Society, and others) held a multi-day workshop in Novo Airão to map the current visitation scenario and build partnerships for sustainable tourism in Anavilhanas (MMA, 2025a; MMA, 2025b). This dialogue brought together community organizations, community-based tourism entrepreneurs, local guides, fishers, and artisans to ensure their perspectives inform future ecotourism plans. The initiative is a precursor to developing a concessions model for visitor services that balances business opportunities with biodiversity conservation and community needs (MMA, 2025b). Such efforts indicate a strong commitment to sustainable practices – aligning tourism growth with local livelihoods and environmental education. Notably, Anavilhanas was designated a Ramsar Wetland of international importance in 2017, underlining its ecological value and the global interest in its conservation (Wikiparques, 2023).

Visitation trends: Being accessible from Manaus (about three hours away) has made Anavilhanas increasingly popular for nature tourism. The park's visitation, while modest compared to urban parks, is growing and even hit a record recently – over 43,000 visits in 2024, the highest annual visitation in its history (Parque Anavilhanas, 2025). This reflects a post-pandemic ecotourism boom and greater interest in Amazon birding and nature tours. Park management is working to channel this growth responsibly: visitation is still regulated (with permits for private tour companies), and activities like wildlife observation, island walks, and scenic flights are conducted under guidelines to minimize impact (Wikiparques, 2023). Overall, Anavilhanas offers birdwatchers an immersive Amazon experience, with unique river-island bird species and community-engaged, sustainable tourism practices.

12.3.4. Cerrado: Surprises of the Savanna

Often overshadowed by the global fame of the Amazon and Pantanal, the Cerrado biome is a vast tropical savanna that covers much of central Brazil. It is characterized by a complex mosaic of habitats, ranging from open grasslands with scattered, twisted trees (campo limpo, campo sujo) and denser woodlands (cerradão), to gallery forests lining watercourses that act as corridors for forest species. While facing significant and ongoing threats from agricultural expansion, particularly soy cultivation and cattle ranching, the Cerrado supports a unique and highly specialized avifauna, including numerous endemic species, alongside some of South America's most charismatic mammals. Key birding destinations within the Cerrado include:

A - Emas National Park (Goiás)

A UNESCO World Heritage site, Emas National Park (Fig. 12.3) protects a large expanse of classic Cerrado grassland and savanna habitat in southwestern Goiás state. It is renowned not only for its specialized birdlife but also as one of the best places in South America to see iconic Cerrado mammals like the elegant Maned Wolf (*Chrysocyon brachyurus*), the peculiar Giant Anteater (*Myrmecophaga tridactyla*), Pampas Deer (*Ozotoceros bezoarticus*), and the continent's largest bird, the flightless Greater Rhea (*Rhea americana*). Bird specialties include the Red-legged Seriema (*Cariama cristata*) (see Fig. 12.3.1), and the elusive White-winged Nightjar (*Eleothreptus candicans*), often seen during its specific aerial display flights at certain times of year, Lesser Nothura (*Nothura minor*), Yellow-faced Parrot (*Alipiopsitta xanthops*) (Fig. 12.3.2.), Cock-tailed Tyrant (*Alectrurus tricolor*), Sharp-tailed Grass Tyrant (*Culicivora caudacuta*), and Collared Crescentchest (*Melanopareia torquata*). Access is typically via the nearby town of Chapadão do Céu.

Figure 12.3. Emas National Park Main Entrance, Goias State, Brazil. Photo taken at *Parque Nacional das Emas* on 11 September 2011. Author: Martim D'Avila Garcia. Source: Archived from Panoramio

Figure 12.3.1 The bird in the image is a Red-legged Seriema (*Cariama cristata*), a species native to South America, including Brazil, where it inhabits open fields and savanna-like environments. Easily recognized by its long red legs, grayish plumage, and elegant stature—reaching about 90 cm in height—it feeds on insects, small vertebrates, and seeds. It is often seen perched atop termite mounds, as shown here, either searching for food or surveying its surroundings. **Credit**: Photo taken by Fernando Nanzer at Parque Nacional das Emas, located in the municipalities of Chapadão do Céu (GO) and Mineiros (GO), on October 28, 2022. License: Creative Commons Attribution-Share Alike 4.0 International (CC BY-SA 4.0).

Figure 12.3.2 Yellow-faced Parrot (Alipiopsitta xanthops), yellow morph, photographed in Brazil. This species is native to central Brazil and is considered near-threatened due to habitat loss. (Photo: Charles J. Sharp, CC BY-SA 4.0)

B - Serra da Canastra National Park (Minas Gerais)

This park protects a high-altitude plateau (*chapada*) characterized by rolling grasslands, rocky outcrops (*campos rupestres*), and the scenic headwaters of the São Francisco River, including the impressive Casca d'Anta waterfall. It is critically important as one of the last remaining reliable habitats for the highly endangered Brazilian Merganser (*Mergus octosetaceus*), a primary target species for most birders visiting the park. Other key birds include the endemic Brasilia Tapaculo (*Scytalopus novacapitalis*), Golden-capped Parakeet (*Aratinga auricapillus*), Cock-tailed Tyrant, Black-masked Finch (*Coryphaspiza melanotis*), Firewood-gatherer (*Anumbius annumbi*), and Campo Miner (*Geositta poeciloptera*). Like Emas, Serra da Canastra (see Fig. 12.3.3 & 12.3.4) is also an excellent location for spotting Maned Wolf and Giant Anteater. Nearby, the historic Caraça Monastery is famous for its habituated Maned Wolves that visit the monastery grounds nightly for food scraps left out by the priests, offering almost guaranteed sightings.

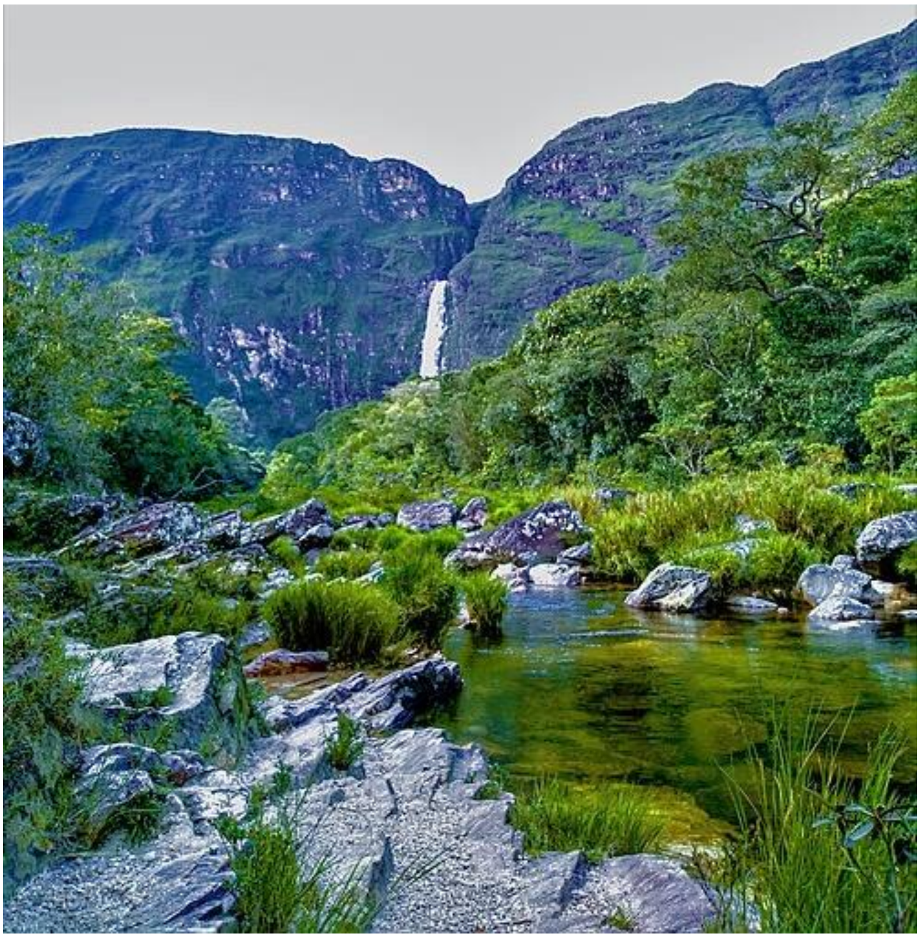


Figure 12.3.3 - Scenic view of Serra da Canastra National Park, a vast federally protected conservation area in the state of Minas Gerais, Brazil. The park spans six municipalities and is known for its dramatic landscapes and as the source of the São Francisco River. (Photo: Carlos Souto, CC BY-SA 4.0)

Figure 12.3.4 - Parque Nacional da Serra da Canastra, a federally protected area located in the municipalities of Vargem Bonita (MG), São Roque de Minas (MG), São João Batista do Glória (MG), Sacramento (MG), Delfinópolis (MG), and Capitólio (MG), Brazil, on March 29, 2019. License: Creative Commons Attribution-Share Alike 4.0 International (CC BY-SA 4.0). Photo taken by Carlos Souto.

C - Chapada dos Veadeiros National Park (Goiás):
Another UNESCO World Heritage site, Chapada dos Veadeiros National Park (Fig. 12.3.5) located north of Brasília, this park is known for its dramatic landscapes featuring numerous waterfalls, deep canyons, and high-altitude Cerrado vegetation growing on soils rich in quartz crystal, and home of several bird species among them the Red-and-green macaws (*Ara chloropterus*) (see Figure 12.3.7). While also protecting Cerrado bird endemics, it attracts a broader range of visitors interested in hiking, natural beauty, and the region's famed mystical or spiritual energy.

Figure 12.3.5- Parque Nacional da Chapada dos Veadeiros, a federally protected conservation unit located in the Cerrado biome, Goiás state, Brazil, on January 19, 2021. License: Creative Commons Attribution-Share Alike 4.0 International (CC BY-SA 4.0). Photo taken by Liu Idárraga Orozco.

12.3.6 - Chapada dos Guimarães National Park (Mato Grosso): Located conveniently close to Cuiabá (the gateway to the Northern Pantanal), this park features striking red sandstone cliffs, canyons, and waterfalls. It offers good opportunities to see Cerrado birds near the transition zone with the Pantanal, including species like Red-and-green Macaw (Ara chloropterus) nesting on cliffs and King Vulture (Sarcoramphus papa).

Figure 12.3.7 - Red-and-green macaws (*Ara chloropterus*) in their natural habitat. These large and vibrant parrots are native to South America and commonly found in tropical rainforests, including parts of the Amazon. (Photo: Charles J. Sharp, CC BY-SA 4.0)

D - Serra do Cipó National Park (Minas Gerais): Situated in the Espinhaço Mountain range, this park is famous for its unique quartzite rock formations, numerous waterfalls, and specialized high-altitude grassland and rocky field vegetation (*campos rupestres*). It is home to highly specialized endemic birds like the Cipo Canastero (*Asthenes luizae*) (Fig.12.3.8) and the stunning Hyacinth Visorbearer (*Augastes scutatus*) hummingbird.

Figure 12.3.8 - Cipó Canastero *(Asthenes luizae),* a rare and range-restricted bird species endemic to the Espinhaço Mountain Range in Brazil. It is typically associated with rocky campos rupestres vegetation. (Photo: Rick Elis Simpson, CC BY-SA 4.0)

Birding in the Cerrado offers a distinctly different experience compared to Brazil's dense forests. It often involves scanning open landscapes for grassland specialists, exploring gallery forests along rivers, and seeking out localized endemics in specific habitats like *campos rupestres*. The added thrill of potentially encountering some of South America's most unique and sought-after mammals in the same areas significantly enhances the appeal of this vast and underappreciated biome.

12.3.5. Caatinga: Resilience in the Drylands

The Caatinga is a unique biome found exclusively in the semi-arid interior of northeastern Brazil. It is characterized by its seasonally dry climate, vegetation dominated by thorny scrub, deciduous trees, succulent cacti, and remarkable adaptations evolved by its wildlife to survive prolonged droughts. While appearing harsh and desiccated for much of the year, the Caatinga bursts into life with the onset of seasonal rains, supporting a fascinating array of endemic wildlife, including several highly sought-after bird species that draw dedicated birders.

The most prominent conservation story and undisputed birding highlight of the Caatinga is the Lear's Macaw (*Anodorhynchus leari*). This large, stunningly deep-blue parrot was once perilously close to extinction, with only a few dozen individuals known in the wild in the late 1970s. Its decline was driven by habitat loss, particularly the reduction of its primary food source, the nuts of the Licurí Palm (*Syagrus coronata*), and intense pressure from illegal trapping for the international pet trade.

Thanks to decades of intensive, focused conservation efforts, primarily led by the non-governmental organization Fundação Biodiversitas at the Canudos Biological Station in the state of Bahia, the Lear's Macaw population has made a remarkable recovery. The biological station was established to protect the dramatic red sandstone canyons where the macaws nest and roost communally. Key conservation actions included purchasing and protecting critical nesting and feeding habitats, implementing rigorous anti-poaching patrols, engaging local communities through environmental education and the development of alternative livelihood programs (including training local guides for tourism and supporting handicraft production based on Licurí palm fronds), and conducting vital research on the species' ecology. As a direct result of these concerted efforts, the wild population has rebounded significantly, from perhaps fewer than 60 birds in the 1980s to recent estimates suggesting around 1,700 individuals.

Visiting the Canudos Biological Station offers birdwatchers the unforgettable spectacle of witnessing hundreds of Lear's Macaws emerging from their cliff-face roosting crevices at dawn. Their loud, raucous calls echo through the canyons as they fly off, often in pairs, towards distant feeding grounds rich in Licurí Palms. The station provides simple lodging facilities and employs local guides, ensuring that tourism revenue contributes directly to the ongoing protection of the macaws and their fragile habitat, while also offering visitors valuable insights into the local culture and the persistent challenges of conservation in this arid landscape. The recovery of the Lear's Macaw stands as a powerful global testament to what dedicated, long-term conservation action can achieve, transforming a species on the brink into a symbol of hope. This compelling narrative itself is a major draw for visitors.

Beyond the iconic Lear's Macaw, the Caatinga biome is home to other endemic and specialized birds adapted to its unique conditions. Visitors to Canudos and other Caatinga sites might encounter species such as the Cactus Parakeet (*Eupsittula cactorum*), Broad-tipped Hermit (*Anopetia gounellei*), Red-shouldered Spinetail (*Synallaxis hellmayri*), Caatinga Antwren (*Radinopsyche sellowi*), White-browed Antpitta (*Hylopezus ochroleucus*), and Great Xenops (*Megaxenops parnaguae*).

Other important birding areas in the broader northeastern region, encompassing Caatinga habitats as well as humid forest remnants ('brejos') and patches of northeastern Atlantic Forest, include:

A - Chapada do Araripe (Ceará/Pernambuco/Piauí):
This plateau is famous as the only known home of the critically endangered Araripe Manakin (*Antilophia bokermanni*) (Fig. 12.3.9), a stunningly beautiful bird discovered relatively recently (1996). Reserves like the private Oasis Araripe Reserve provide lodging and guided access for birders seeking this highly localized species.

Figure 12.3.9 - Araripe Manakin *(Antilophia bokermanni)*, a critically endangered bird endemic to the Chapada do Araripe in northeastern Brazil. Known for its striking plumage and extremely restricted range, it is a symbol of conservation efforts in the Caatinga biome. (Photo: Rick Elis Simpson, CC BY-SA 3.0)

B - Serra da Capivara National Park (Piauí):
Known primarily for its globally significant prehistoric rock art sites (a UNESCO World Heritage site), this park also protects extensive Caatinga habitat and offers opportunities to see characteristic birds like Swallow-tailed Hummingbirds (*Eupetomena macroura*) (Fig. 12.3.10) and potentially King Vultures.

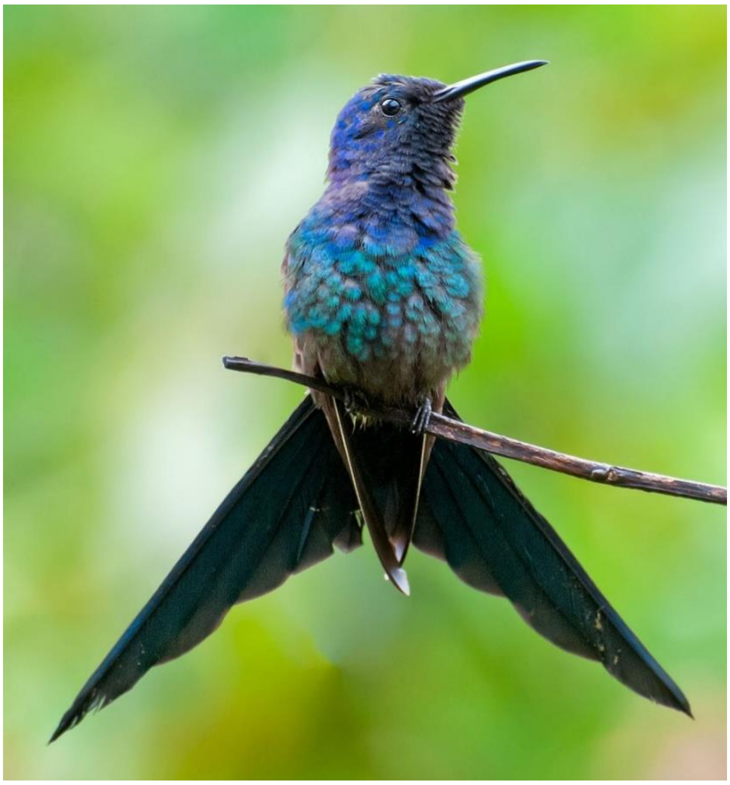


Figure 12.3.10 - Swallow-tailed Hummingbird *(Eupetomena macroura)* photographed in Piraju, São Paulo, Brazil. This striking species is widespread across eastern and central South America and is known for its long, forked tail and vibrant iridescent plumage. Photo: Dario Sanches, via Wikimedia Commons

C - Maciço de Baturité / Potengi (Ceará):
These upland areas represent humid forest 'islands' within the surrounding drier Caatinga, supporting different bird communities, including some Atlantic Forest elements, and offering lodging options like Sítio Pau Preto.

D - Serra do Urubu / Murici (Alagoas/Pernambuco):
These sites protect important and highly threatened remnants of northeastern Atlantic Forest (distinct from the main coastal block further south), home to critically endangered species targeted by conservation organizations like SAVE Brasil.

Birdwatching in the Caatinga provides a unique experience, showcasing the resilience of life in arid environments and offering encounters with some of Brazil's most iconic, endemic, and threatened birds, particularly the magnificent Lear's Macaw, whose comeback serves as an inspiring beacon for conservation efforts worldwide.

12.3.6 – Summary Table with Key Birdwatching Regions by Biomes in Brazil

Understanding the remarkable avian diversity of Brazil requires a biome-based approach, given the country's immense ecological heterogeneity. Each biome harbors distinct assemblages of bird species, shaped by evolutionary history, climatic conditions, and habitat structure. To synthesize the wealth of ornithological opportunities across the Brazilian territory, and the Master Table 12.1 presents a summary of the key birdwatching regions categorized by their associated biomes. The table highlights each biome's defining ecological characteristics, lists selected examples of iconic bird species emblematic of these regions, identifies major protected areas, lodges, and birding hotspots, and notes the relative levels of avian endemism. This structure enables a comprehensive, yet accessible overview for birdwatchers, researchers, and conservation planners alike, providing an integrated reference point for avitourism development, biodiversity conservation, and strategic itinerary planning within Brazil's unparalleled mosaic of ecosystems.

Master Table 12.1 - Key Birdwatching Regions/Biomes in Brazil

Biome	Key Characteristic	Iconic Species Examples	Major Sites/Parks/Lodges Mentioned	Endemism Level
Pantanal	World's largest tropical wetland; high wildlife density	Hyacinth Macaw, Jabiru, Toco Toucan, Southern Screamer, Jaguar, Giant Otter	Transpantaneira Road, Porto Jofre, Pousada Piuval, Pousada Aguapé, SouthWild Pantanal Lodge, Araras Eco Lodge	Low
Atlantic Forest	Highly fragmented coastal forest; global hotspot	Shrike-like Cotinga, Black-and-gold Cotinga, Itatiaia Spinetail, Cherry-throated Tanager	Itatiaia NP, Ubatuba, Intervales SP, REGUA/Guapiaçu Lodge, Santa Teresa (ES), Reserva Kaetés, Ibitipoca	Very High
Amazon	Largest tropical rainforest; vast species richness	Harpy Eagle, Hoatzin, Red-fan Parrot, Black-girdled Barbet, White Uakari **Monkey**, Pink River Dolphin	Cristalino Lodge (Alta Floresta - Terra Firme), Mamirauá SDR/Uakari Lodge (Tefé - Várzea), Anavilhanas NP, Roraima has a specific chapter*	High
Cerrado	Tropical savanna mosaic; specialized fauna & flora	Brazilian Merganser, White-winged Nightjar, Cipo Canastero, Maned Wolf, Giant Anteater	Emas NP, Serra da Canastra NP, Chapada dos Veadeiros NP, Chapada dos Guimarães NP, Serra do Cipó NP, Caraça Monastery	Moderate
Caatinga	Unique semi-arid biome; endemic to NE Brazil	Lear's Macaw, Araripe Manakin, Cactus Parakeet, White-browed Antpitta	Canudos Biological Station, Chapada do Araripe (Oasis Araripe Reserve), Serra da Capivara NP, Baturité/Potengi (Sítio Pau Preto), Murici/Serra do Urubu (NE Atl. Forest remnants nearby)	Moderate

Note: Endemism level is relative; all biomes contain endemic species, but the Atlantic Forest has the highest concentration relative to its size and degree of threat. Source: the authors, 2025.

12.3.7. Profiles and Key Avifauna for Birdwatching Tourism in Brazil

Birdwatching tourism in Brazil is uniquely privileged by the country's immense ecological diversity. Each of its major biomes hosts emblematic bird species that attract both national and international birders. These species are selected based on their endemism, rarity, aesthetic appeal, behavioral interest, and symbolic value—making them ideal flagships for avitourism development. Below is a detailed breakdown of the key bird species for each biome:

Amazon Rainforest (Amazônia)

The Amazon Rainforest is the world's largest tropical rainforest, renowned for its vast scale, high rainfall, and unparalleled biodiversity. Its avian life is influenced by complex forest stratification and varied habitats, such as *terra firme* (upland forests), *várzea* (whitewater-flooded forests), *igapó* (blackwater-flooded forests), riverine corridors, and clearings (see details in Table 12.2). These ecosystems support high levels of avian endemism and charismatic species that are major draws for birdwatchers.

Table 12.2 - Key Amazonian Birds for Tourism

Common Name	Scientific Name	Family	Tourism Relevance	IUCN Status
Golden Parakeet	*Guaruba guarouba*	Psittacidae	Endemic, brilliant plumage, IUCN Vulnerable. High-value target.	Vulnerable
Guianan Cock-of-the-rock	*Rupicola rupicola*	Cotingidae	Lekking behavior, photogenic, northeastern Amazon specialty.	Least Concern
Dark-winged Trumpeter	*Psophia viridis*	Psophiidae	Endemic, ground-dweller, often seen near lodges.	Vulnerable
Harpy Eagle	*Harpia harpyja*	Accipitridae	Iconic apex predator, elusive, nesting sites required for sightings.	Vulnerable
Hyacinth Macaw	*Anodorhynchus hyacinthinus*	Psittacidae	Marginal in Amazon, key species in Pantanal. Vulnerable due to trade.	Vulnerable
White-throated Toucan	*Ramphastos tucanus*	Ramphastidae	Common, large, striking appearance. Popular with photographers.	Least Concern
Hoatzin	*Opisthocomus hoazin*	Opisthocomidae	"Living fossil," communal, folivorous. High tourist appeal.	Least Concern
Paradise Tanager	*Tangara chilensis*	Thraupidae	Spectacular color, mixed flocks, forest edge specialist.	Least Concern

Source: Table prepared by the authors, 2025.

Cerrado (Brazilian Savanna)

The Cerrado is South America's largest savanna and a global biodiversity hotspot, comprising grasslands, woodlands, palm swamps (*veredas*), and gallery forests. It supports high bird diversity, including many endemics, but faces pressure from agriculture (refer to Table 12.3).

Table 12.3 - Key Cerrado Birds for Tourism (Revised & Verified)

Common Name	Scientific Name	Family	Tourism Relevance	IUCN Status
Cock-tailed Tyrant	*Alectrurus tricolor*	Tyrannidae	Striking display, grassland specialist, habitat loss threat.	Vulnerable

Common Name	Scientific Name	Family	Tourism Relevance	IUCN Status
Tropeiro Seedeater	*Sporophila beltoni*	Thraupidae	Recently described, rare migrant, high specialist interest.	Endangered
Brazilian Merganser	*Mergus octosetaceus*	Anatidae	Critically endangered, riverine specialist, high global target.	Critically Endangered
Red-winged Tinamou	*Rhynchotus rufescens*	Tinamidae	Large, iconic grassland bird, common but elusive.	Least Concern
Buff-necked Ibis	*Theristicus caudatus*	Threskiornithidae	Conspicuous, easily observed, common in wetlands.	Least Concern
Curl-crested Jay	*Cyanocorax cristatellus*	Corvidae	Endemic, noisy and social, visually distinctive.	Least Concern
Horned Sungem	*Heliactin bilophus*	Trochilidae	Unique iridescent 'horns,' open habitat hummingbird.	Least Concern
Yellow-faced Parrot	*Alipiopsitta xanthops*	Psittacidae	Near-threatened, endemic, attractive, impacted by habitat loss.	Near Threatened

Source: Table prepared by the authors, 2025.

🔴 Caatinga (Semi-arid Scrublands)

The Caatinga is a semi-arid biome exclusive to northeastern Brazil. It consists of dry forests, scrublands, rocky outcrops, and seasonal riverbeds. It hosts a specialized avifauna adapted to harsh climates and poor soils (see Table 12.4 for details).

Table 12.4 - Key Caatinga Birds for Tourism

Common Name	Scientific Name	Family	Tourism Relevance	IUCN Status
Araripe Manakin	*Antilophia bokermanni*	Pipridae	Critically Endangered, localized endemic, major birding target.	Critically Endangered
Great Xenops	*Megaxenops parnaguae*	Furnariidae	Caatinga endemic, dead-leaf forager, distinctive.	Least Concern
Picazuro Pigeon	*Patagioenas picazuro*	Columbidae	Common, culturally relevant, low birding draw.	Least Concern
Caatinga Parakeet	*Eupsittula cactorum*	Psittacidae	Endemic, noisy flocks, attractive, characteristic.	Least Concern
Ruby-topaz Hummingbird	*Chrysolampis mosquitus*	Trochilidae	Brightly colored, common in flowering areas.	Least Concern
Lear's Macaw	*Anodorhynchus leari*	Psittacidae	Endangered, sandstone cliff endemic, high-value species.	Endangered
White-browed Guan	*Penelope jacucaca*	Cracidae	Endemic cracid, Near Threatened, large and charismatic.	Near Threatened
Silvery-cheeked Antshrike	*Sakesphorus cristatus*	Thamnophilidae	Common antshrike, Caatinga endemic, habitat specialist.	Least Concern

Source: Table prepared by the authors, 2025.

🔵 Atlantic Forest (Mata Atlântica)

Once covering most of Brazil's coast, the Atlantic Forest is now highly fragmented. Despite this, it remains one of the richest global hotspots for bird endemism. See Table 12.5 for a summary and details:

Table 12.5 - Key Atlantic Forest Birds for Tourism

Common Name	Scientific Name	Family	Tourism Relevance	IUCN Status
Cherry-throated Tanager	*Nemosia rourei*	Thraupidae	Critically endangered, rediscovered 1998, ultimate rarity.	Critically Endangered
Black-fronted Piping-Guan	*Aburria jacutinga*	Cracidae	Endangered, conservation icon, frugivore of reserves.	Endangered
Swallow-tailed Manakin	*Chiroxiphia caudata*	Pipridae	Lek behavior, colorful, relatively common.	Least Concern
White-bearded Manakin	*Manacus manacus*	Pipridae	Lekking, loud wing snaps, common in lowlands.	Least Concern
Green-headed Tanager	*Tangara seledon*	Thraupidae	Colorful, endemic, frequent in mixed flocks.	Least Concern
Black-headed Berryeater	*Carpornis melanocephala*	Cotingidae	Endemic, loud song, coastal reserve specialty.	Vulnerable
Red-necked Tanager	*Tangara cyanocephala*	Thraupidae	Colorful, endemic, mixed flock associate.	Least Concern
Saffron Toucanet	*Pteroglossus bailloni*	Ramphastidae	Montane endemic, attractive, NT conservation status.	Near Threatened

Source: Table prepared by the authors, 2025.

🔶 Pantanal (Floodplain Wetlands)

The Pantanal is the world's largest tropical wetland, famous for its biodiversity and accessibility. Its seasonal flood pulses concentrate wildlife, making it ideal for birdwatching. Check Table 12.6 for more details.

Table 12.6 - Key Pantanal Birds for Tourism

Common Name	Scientific Name	Family	Tourism Relevance	IUCN Status
Jabiru (Tuiuiú)	*Jabiru mycteria*	Ciconiidae	Pantanal symbol, large, visible, major attraction.	Least Concern
Roseate Spoonbill	*Platalea ajaja*	Threskiornithidae	Pink, unique bill, highly photogenic wetland bird.	Least Concern
Hyacinth Macaw	*Anodorhynchus hyacinthinus*	Psittacidae	Stronghold in Pantanal, nest boxes success story.	Vulnerable
Black-collared Hawk	*Busarellus nigricollis*	Accipitridae	Fish specialist, conspicuous, easy to photograph.	Least Concern
Wood Stork	*Mycteria americana*	Ciconiidae	Common wetland stork, dramatic nesting colonies.	Least Concern
Rufescent Tiger-Heron	*Tigrisoma lineatum*	Ardeidae	Large, cryptic, frequent boat-trip sightings.	Least Concern

Common Name	Scientific Name	Family	Tourism Relevance	IUCN Status
Sunbittern	*Eurypyga helias*	Eurypygidae	Rare, unique, sunburst wing display, stream dweller.	Least Concern
Toco Toucan	*Ramphastos toco*	Ramphastidae	Largest toucan, striking bill, widespread in Pantanal.	Least Concern

Source: Table prepared by the authors, 2025.

◯ Pampa (Southern Grasslands)

The Pampa is a temperate grassland biome in southern Brazil. Its open habitats support grassland specialists and migratory birds. It is among the least developed biomes for bird tourism (see Table 12.7):

Table 12.7 - Key Pampa Birds for Tourism

Common Name	Scientific Name	Family	Tourism Relevance	IUCN Status
Chestnut Seedeater	*Sporophila cinnamomea*	Thraupidae	Vulnerable grassland breeder, key regional target.	Vulnerable
Black-and-white Monjita	*Xolmis dominicanus*	Tyrannidae	Vulnerable marshland tyrant, distinctive black-white plumage.	Vulnerable
Red Knot (rufa)	*Calidris canutus rufa*	Scolopacidae	Migratory shorebird, key site: Lagoa do Peixe.	Near Threatened
Brazilian Teal	*Amazonetta brasiliensis*	Anatidae	Common duck, widespread but not a target species.	Least Concern
Saffron-cowled Blackbird	*Xanthopsar flavus*	Icteridae	Endangered, marsh grassland icon, bright plumage.	Endangered
Long-tailed Reed Finch	*Donacospiza albifrons*	Thraupidae	NT, habitat specialist, sought by regional birders.	Near Threatened
Greater Rhea	*Rhea americana*	Rheidae	Large, iconic, vulnerable grassland bird.	Near Threatened

Source: Table prepared by the authors, 2025.

Note - When selecting birds of interest for tourism, it is essential to consider:

- **Endemism and Rarity:** The more restricted and rare a species is, the higher its value for specialized birders.
- **Visual Appeal and Behavior:** Brightly colored birds or those with unique behavior (e.g., lekking, dance, acrobatic displays) draw in both casual observers and photographers.
- **Ease of Observation:** Species easily seen in accessible habitats (trails, open wetlands) are ideal for beginner birders and families.
- **Cultural or Ecological Symbolism:** Birds that represent local identity, appear in myths, or are used in territorial branding bolster destination appeal.

12.3.8. Brazil's Iconic Birds: A Biome Snapshot

This Master Table 12.8 provides a consolidated overview of the featured species, offering key information at a glance, complementing some of the information already provided.

Bird Name	Scientific Name	Biome(s)	Key Feature	Conservation Note
Harpy Eagle	*Harpia harpyja*	Amazon Rainforest	Largest raptor, symbol of wilderness	Endangered
Scarlet Macaw	*Ara macao*	Amazon Rainforest	Vibrant colors, seen in canopy tours	
Red-breasted Toucan	*Ramphastos dicolorus*	Atlantic Forest	Striking bill, ecotourism flagship	
Surucua Trogon	*Trogon surrucura*	Atlantic Forest	Brilliant colors, popular with birdwatchers	
Hyacinth Macaw	*Anodorhynchus hyacinthinus*	Cerrado, Pantanal	Thrives in palm groves/stands, Pantanal poster bird	Vulnerable
Red-legged Seriema	*Cariama cristata*	Cerrado	Unique ground-dweller, folklore ties	
Lear's Macaw	*Anodorhynchus leari*	Caatinga	Endangered blue parrot, conservation icon	Endangered
Cactus Parakeet	*Eupsittula cactorum*	Caatinga	Adapted to arid landscapes, easily spotted	
Jabiru Stork	*Jabiru mycteria*	Pantanal	Tallest flying bird in Americas, nests conspicuously	
Greater Rhea	*Rhea americana*	Pampa	Flightless giant, emblematic of grasslands	
Saffron-cowled Blackbird	*Xanthopsar flavus*	Pampa	Bright yellow, critically endangered	Critically Endangered

Note: Conservation status included based on query text or explicit mentions in provided sources. **Source:** the authors, 2025.

The selected birds represent just a fraction of Brazil's astounding avian diversity, yet they serve as compelling ambassadors for their respective biomes. From the powerful Harpy Eagle of the Amazon to the critically endangered Saffron-cowled Blackbird of the Pampa, each species tells a story of adaptation, beauty, and, increasingly, the need for conservation. Structuring the infographic content with high-quality visuals directly linked to informative descriptions allows for an engaging and educational experience, celebrating the unique natural heritage housed within Brazil's diverse landscapes. The careful selection of images, guided by the characteristics highlighted for each bird and evidence from photographic resources, is key to creating a visually impactful and accurate representation.

12.3.10. Brazil's Iconic Birds: A Biome Snapshot

The following photo collection, see Figures from 12.3.10 shows some of the most famous and beautiful birds from each of Brazil's main natural regions, or biomes. Each picture gives a glimpse of the country's amazing birdlife and the different landscapes where these birds live.

Figure 12.3.10 - Harpy Eagle (Harpia harpyja), a Neotropical eagle species. Photograph taken by Jonathan Wilkins on 27 February 2013 at 09:47:05. Location: 22° 11' 36.23" S, 47° 51' 50.26" W. Source: Own work. Licensed under CC BY-SA. Map data based on OpenStreetMap.

Figure 12.3.11 - Scarlet Macaw (Ara macao). Photograph by Rene Cortin, taken on August 8, 2023. Licensed under Creative Commons Attribution-Share Alike 4.0 International (CC BY-SA 4.0). Original file: Scarlet macaw ara macao.jpg.

Figure 12.3.12 - Red-breasted Toucan (Ramphastos dicolorus), also known as the Green-billed Toucan, photographed at Parque Estadual da Serra da Cantareira, São Paulo-SP, Brazil, on October 25, 2009. Photographer: Dario Sanches. Licensed under Creative Commons Attribution-Share Alike 2.0 Generic (CC BY-SA 2.0). Original file: Ramphastos dicolorus -São Paulo-SP, Brasil-8.jpg.

Figure 12.3.13 - Surucua Trogon *(Trogon surrucura surrucura),* male, photographed in Santa Catarina, Rio Grande do Sul, Brazil, on October 10, 2010, at 11:31 AM. Photographer: Cláudio Dias Timm (from Rio Grande do Sul). Original file: Surucuá-variado (Trogon surrucura surrucura) - Macho. Licensed via Wikimedia Commons.

Figure 12.3.14 - Hyacinth Macaws *(Anodorhynchus hyacinthinus)* on a nest, photographed at Pousada do Neco, Porto Jofre, Transpantaneira, Poconé, Mato Grosso, Brazil, on July 26, 2019, at 20:35. Photographer: Bernard DUPONT from France. Licensed via Wikimedia Commons under Creative Commons Attribution-Share Alike 2.0 Generic (CC BY-SA 2.0). Original file: Hyacinth Macaws (Anodorhynchus hyacinthinus) on nest.

Figure 12.3.15 - Red-legged Seriema *(Cariama cristata)* photographed at the Bronx Zoo on May 21, 2017. Photographer: Dick Daniels (http://carolinabirds.org/). Licensed under Creative Commons Attribution-Share Alike 4.0 International (CC BY-SA 4.0). Original file: Red-legged Seriema RWD2.jpg.

Figure 12.3.16 - Lear's Macaw *(Anodorhynchus leari)* photographed in Canudos, Bahia, Brazil, on April 18, 2014. Photographer: João Quental. Image dimensions: 637 × 421 pixels. Licensed under Creative Commons Attribution 2.0 Generic (CC BY 2.0). Original file: Lear's Macaw Anodorhynchus leari (cropped).jpg.

Figure 12.3.17 - Jabiru *(Jabiru mycteria),* photographed in the Pantanal, Mato Grosso, Brazil, on July 29, 2015. Photographer: Andreas Trepte. Image resolution: 3,000 × 2,000 pixels. This is a featured picture on Wikimedia Commons. Licensed under Creative Commons Attribution-Share Alike 4.0 International (CC BY-SA 4.0). Original file: Jabiru Mato Grosso Pantanal Brazil-3.jpg.

Figure 12.3.18 - Cactus Parakeet *(Eupsittula cactorum)*, photographed by Tiago Lubiana on January 13, 2022. Location: 7° 01' 30.43" S, 37° 23' 40.23" W. Source: iNaturalist. Licensing depends on the uploader's settings (commonly CC BY-NC or CC BY-SA). Map based on OpenStreetMap.

12.3.19 - Greater Rhea *(Rhea americana),* photographed at Tierpark Hellabrunn on May 21, 2011. Photographer: Nasser Halaweh. Image resolution: 1,213 × 1,617 pixels. Licensed under Creative Commons Attribution-Share Alike 4.0 International (CC BY-SA 4.0). Original file: Rheidae Rhea americana 3.jpg.

12.3.20 - Saffron-cowled Blackbird *(Xanthopsar flavus)*, image titled Xanthopsar_flavus_DRAGON_HEMBRA. Photographer: Dario Niz. Source: Aves de Uruguay. Licensed under Creative Commons Attribution 3.0 Unported (CC BY 3.0). You are free to share and adapt the work, provided proper credit is given.

Figure 12.3.21- Hoatzin *(Opisthocomus hoazin)*, an iconic and unique species native to the Amazon Rainforest and other riparian and swampy forests of the Amazon Basin, including Brazil.

Key Characteristics of the Hotzin *(Opisthocomus hoazin)*:

Crest: Prominent spiky crest on its head
Coloration: Blue facial skin with red eyes, brown and buff plumage with rufous wings
Size: Medium to large (about 65 cm in length)
Behavior: Clumsy flyer, often seen perched in shrubs and trees near water

Distribution: Found in Brazil, Peru, Colombia, Venezuela, and other Amazonian countries.
Especially associated with igapó and várzea forests (flooded forest ecosystems).
Ecological Uniqueness: The Hoatzin is the only bird known to ferment vegetation in its crop, similar to how cows digest food, which gives it a strong, manure-like odor—hence its nickname, "stinkbird." Juveniles have claws on their wing digits, reminiscent of ancient bird ancestors like *Archaeopteryx*—a trait they lose as adults.
Conservation: Not currently considered endangered, but its specialized habitat (riverine forest) is sensitive to environmental changes and deforestation.

In brief:
Birdwatchers and readers interested in Brazil's rich avifauna have access to a wide range of resources to deepen their knowledge and assist in bird identification. Numerous field guides and publications dedicated to the birds of Brazil provide detailed illustrations, distribution maps, and species accounts. In addition to printed materials, online platforms such as eBird and WikiAves offer dynamic, community-driven databases with thousands of photos, sounds, and records contributed by birders across the country. These tools are invaluable for both beginners and experienced observers seeking to explore and appreciate Brazil's extraordinary bird diversity. The next sections will discuss and provide insights on the current digital and physical resources specialized in Brazilian birds, avian life and birdwatching.

Part IV – Brazilian Bird Digital and Physical Resources: Expanding Area Knowledge on Avian Life and Birdwatching

12.4. Brazilian Bird Resources (physical and, or digital): Learning about the birds

People who enjoy birdwatching and want to learn more about the birds of Brazil can find many useful resources. There are books and guides with pictures, maps, and information that help identify different bird species. You can also use websites like eBird and WikiAves, where birdwatchers from all over Brazil share photos, bird sounds, and notes about where they saw each bird. These online tools are great for anyone—from beginners to experts—who wants to explore and enjoy the incredible birdlife of Brazil. Refer to the table and guides in the following subsections regarding the physical and digital guides on birds of Brazil

Figure 12.4.1 – Collection of physical and digital guides specialized in Brazilian birds, birding and avitourism – the publications are thematic by biomes, geographical locations of sites and, or, in protected areas.

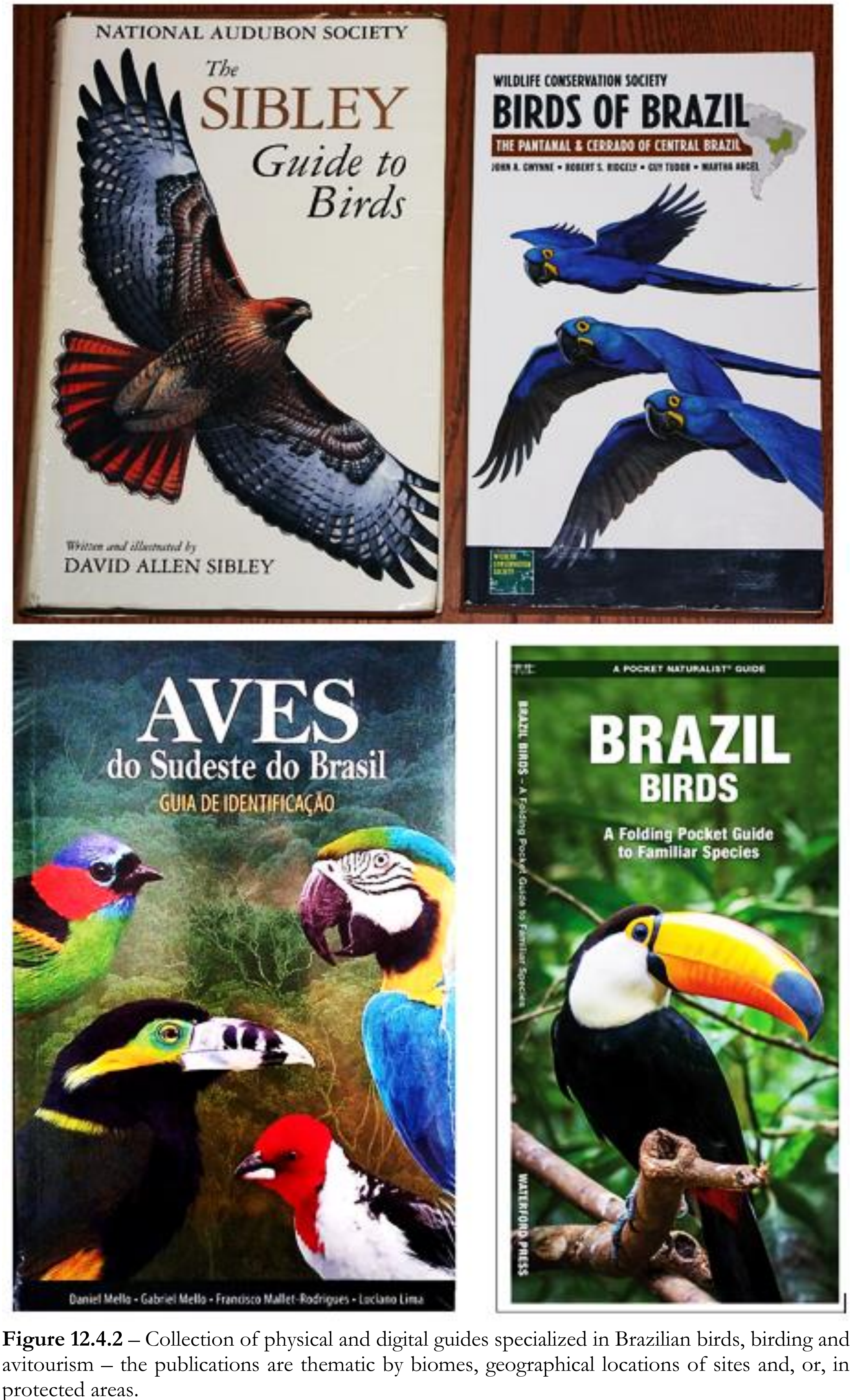


Figure 12.4.2 – Collection of physical and digital guides specialized in Brazilian birds, birding and avitourism – the publications are thematic by biomes, geographical locations of sites and, or, in protected areas.

Figure 12.4.3. Adapted from the original at, Brazil Birds: A Folding Pocket Guide to Familiar Species, Published by Waterford Press, 1st edition, November 20, 2015.

12.4.1. A Guide to Available Publications on Birds in Brazil

12.4.1.1. A Significance of Brazilian Avifauna

Brazil stands as one of the planet's paramount hotspots for avian diversity. Its vast territory encompasses a remarkable array of biomes, including the Amazon rainforest, Atlantic Forest (Mata Atlântica), Cerrado savannas, Pantanal wetlands, Caatinga drylands, and Pampa grasslands. This ecological heterogeneity supports an exceptionally rich birdlife. The Brazilian Ornithological Records Committee (CBRO) documented 1971 bird species within the country in its 2021 checklist, representing a significant portion of global avian diversity. Furthermore, Brazil possesses a high degree of endemism, with 293 species found nowhere else on Earth according to the same 2021 assessment. Key guides often highlight these endemics, such as the 218 noted by Van Perlo. This extraordinary richness and uniqueness make reliable identification resources essential for a wide range of users, including ornithological researchers, conservation practitioners managing threatened species and habitats, and the rapidly growing community of national and international birdwatchers drawn to Brazil's natural wonders.

A. Purpose and Scope of the Report

This section aims to provide a curated and annotated compilation of significant publications dedicated to the identification and study of the Birds of Brazil. The focus is on presenting between 25 and 30 key resources, encompassing comprehensive national field guides, guides specific to particular regions or biomes, specialized works (such as photographic guides or checklists), and notable recent publications. Emphasis is placed on including guides recognized for their accuracy, utility, and reputation within the ornithological and birdwatching communities. The selection includes works available in English and/or Portuguese, prioritizing the most current editions available to ensure taxonomic and distributional relevance.

B. Methodology
The compilation presented herein results from a systematic analysis of the user query requirements, followed by a thorough review and synthesis of information extracted from extensive research materials. This process involved identifying key publications, extracting pertinent details regarding authorship, publication date, language, scope, and features, and assessing their significance based on reviews and contextual information within the provided sources. The findings are structured into a coherent report, centered around a detailed comparative table, designed to facilitate informed selection of resources by the intended audience.

12.4.1.2. Overview of Key Brazilian Bird Guide Categories
The literature available for identifying Brazilian birds is diverse, reflecting the country's vast avifauna and the varied needs of users. Publications generally fall into several categories: comprehensive national guides attempting to cover all species, regional guides focusing on specific biomes or political units, and specialized works catering to particular interests or formats.

A. Comprehensive National Field Guides
Creating a single, portable field guide that adequately covers the nearly 2000 bird species distributed across Brazil's immense and varied landscapes presents a significant challenge. Nonetheless, several key works have attempted this feat, representing milestones in Brazilian ornithological literature.

- **Ber van Perlo's *A Field Guide to the Birds of Brazil* (2009):** Published by Oxford University Press, this guide is frequently cited as the most practical and comprehensive single-volume field guide in English. It covers over 1800 species, including endemics, with concise text, range maps adjacent to illustrations, and inclusion of Portuguese names. Its compact size and layout are designed for field use, though some critiques mention the small size and occasional variability in illustration quality. Its publication was considered a major advancement over previous attempts at a comprehensive English guide.
- **Deodato Souza's *All the Birds of Brazil: An Identification Guide* (2002):** This Portuguese-language guide was a pioneering effort to provide a complete field guide for Brazil, illustrating over 1600 species. For a time, it was the only comprehensive option available. However, reviews acknowledge limitations, particularly regarding the basic quality of some illustrations and the brevity of the text descriptions. While historically important, it has largely been surpassed by more modern and detailed works.
- **Tomas Sigrist's *Avifauna Brasileira* (2-Volume Set, 2009):** Published by Avis Brasilis, this bilingual (English/Portuguese) work is highly regarded within Brazil for its quality and comprehensiveness. It cleverly separates the detailed species accounts (Volume 1) from the plates, distribution maps, and habitat indicators (Volume 2), allowing the second volume to function as a more portable field component. The illustrations are generally praised for their detail and quality. However, this set is noted as being out of print and potentially difficult and expensive to acquire outside Brazil.
- **Rolf Grantsau's *Guia Completo para Identificação das Aves do Brasil* (2 Volumes, 2010):** This monumental Portuguese work is arguably the most exhaustive identification guide, covering not only species but also subspecies, totaling around 2907 taxa with approximately 2800 color illustrations. It is considered indispensable for serious researchers and ornithologists needing

detailed taxonomic coverage. However, its sheer size and weight (nearly 4 kg per volume) make it a reference work for libraries or home study rather than a field guide.

- **Helmut Sick's *Ornitologia Brasileira* (1984, revised 1997):** This classic work, originally published in 1984 and revised/expanded by José Fernando Pacheco in 1997, is a foundational text in Brazilian ornithology. Written in Portuguese, it provides extensive information on the natural history, behavior, and ecology of Brazilian birds, drawing on Sick's decades of fieldwork. While not structured as a modern field guide for rapid identification, it remains an invaluable reference. An English translation by William Belton, *Birds in Brazil: A Natural History*, was published in 1993.

The development of these comprehensive guides reveals a clear progression over time. Foundational treatises like Sick's work provided the bedrock of knowledge. Early attempts at field guides, like Souza's, addressed the need for identification tools but faced challenges with quality or completeness. The late 2000s saw the emergence of more refined options like Van Perlo's compact English guide, Sigrist's detailed bilingual set, and Grantsau's exhaustive Portuguese reference, reflecting increased interest in birding, advancements in illustration and printing, and a growing body of ornithological knowledge.

Furthermore, a pattern emerges regarding the origin and language of these major guides. Works primarily in English, such as Van Perlo's guide and the WCS series (discussed below), tend to be produced by international authors and publishers like Oxford University Press or Cornell University Press. Conversely, significant Portuguese or bilingual guides, such as those by Souza, Sigrist, Grantsau, and Frisch, often originate from Brazilian authors and publishers like Avis Brasilis or Vento Verde Editora. This likely reflects distinct target audiences (international visitors vs. domestic birders/researchers) and can influence factors like international availability and pricing, as noted with the difficulty some users experienced in obtaining Sigrist's guides outside Brazil.

B. Regional and Biome-Specific Guides

Given the sheer number of species in Brazil, regional guides offer a practical alternative or supplement to national guides. They allow for a more manageable species count for specific trips and can potentially provide greater detail or focus on the particular avifauna of a biome or state. Several key regions have dedicated guides:

Pantanal & Cerrado: These central Brazilian biomes are renowned birding destinations. The Wildlife Conservation Society (WCS) published *Birds of Brazil: The Pantanal and Cerrado of Central Brazil* (Gwynne, Ridgely, Tudor, Argel, 2010), covering 743 species with high-quality illustrations and a conservation focus. A Portuguese edition, *Aves Do Brasil. Pantanal E Cerrado*, also exists, likely based on the WCS work. An older, specialized guide is Balthasar Dubs' *Birds of Southwestern Brazil* (1992), focusing on the Pantanal and its borders. More recently, pocket guides like Renato Rizzaro's *Guia de Aves do Cerrado* (c. 2021) offer portable options.

Atlantic Forest: This biome, particularly the southeastern region near São Paulo and Rio de Janeiro, is famous for its high biodiversity and endemism. The second volume in the WCS series, *Birds of Brazil: The Atlantic Forest of Southeast Brazil* (Ridgely, Gwynne, Tudor, Argel, 2016), covers 927 species in this area. It is praised for its comprehensive coverage and excellent illustrations by acclaimed artists like Guy Tudor but is noted for being somewhat bulky for field use. For São Paulo state specifically, *Aves do Estado de São Paulo*

by Edwin O. Willis & Yoshika Oniki (2003) provides detailed Portuguese text considered accurate, though its illustrations have been criticized. For the metropolitan area, Demetrio Devely produced the bilingual *Guia de Campo Aves da Grande São Paulo* (c. 2005), covering 273 species.
Amazonia: Tomas Sigrist's *Guia de Campo: Birds of Amazonian Brazil / Aves Da Amazonia Brasileira* (2008) is a key bilingual guide for this vast region, part of his Avis Brasilis series. Photographic works like Edson Endrigo's *Aves da Amazônia - Birds - Amazon Forest* (2007) also focus on this biome.

Eastern Brazil: Before compiling his comprehensive *Avifauna Brasileira*, Tomas Sigrist published *Guia de Campo: Aves do Brasil Oriental / Birds of Eastern Brazil* (2007), a bilingual guide covering this specific area.

Caatinga and Pampa: Pocket guides by Renato Rizzaro, *Guia de Aves da Caatinga* and *Guia de Aves do Pampa*, cater to these specific biomes, likely aimed at local birders or visitors seeking simplified, portable identification aids.

The availability of both comprehensive national guides and focused regional guides highlights their complementary nature. A birder visiting multiple regions might carry a national guide like Van Perlo for overall coverage, supplemented by a detailed regional guide like the WCS Atlantic Forest volume for areas of particular focus. This strategy allows for both breadth and depth.

The emergence of highly localized guides, such as those for São Paulo state or Greater São Paulo, and the series of pocket guides for individual biomes (Cerrado, Caatinga, Pampa) signifies a diversification in the market. This trend caters to different user segments: beginners seeking simpler introductions, tourists wanting a quick reference for common species, or residents focusing on the birds in their immediate vicinity, complementing the more exhaustive guides aimed at dedicated birders and researchers.

C. Specialized Publications
Beyond standard field guides, a range of specialized publications addresses specific needs and interests within Brazilian ornithology:

- **Photographic Guides:** While illustrated guides dominate, some photographic options exist. Clive Byers' *A Photographic Guide to Birds of Southern Brazil* (2008) covers 252 species with color photos but offers limited text and scope, making it more suitable as an introductory guide or souvenir for casual observers rather than a primary field tool. More localized photographic books, like those by Edson Endrigo for Cristalino Lodge or the Amazon, also exist. The relative scarcity of comprehensive photographic *field guides* compared to illustrated ones might reflect the challenges of obtaining high-quality, standardized photos for all species and plumages needed for critical identification.
- **Family-Specific Guides:** For enthusiasts focusing on particular bird groups, detailed monographs are available. *Hummingbirds of Brazil / Beija-Flores Do Brasil* (Brettas & Silveira, 2018) and *Terra Papagalli / Land of Parrots* (Brettas & Silveira, c. 2015) are examples of large-format, bilingual books offering in-depth information and high-quality illustrations for these charismatic families.
- **Checklists:** The official *Annotated checklist of the birds of Brazil*, maintained by the Brazilian Ornithological Records Committee (CBRO), is the definitive taxonomic reference. Published periodically (e.g., 1st edition, de Q. Piacentini et al., 2015; 2nd

edition Pacheco et al., 2021), it lists all documented species and subspecies, their status (resident, migrant, endemic), and incorporates the latest taxonomic changes. Online databases like Avibase also provide checklists. These are crucial scientific tools but do not serve as identification guides.

- **Pocket/Laminated Guides:** For extreme portability and quick reference to commonly encountered species, laminated folding guides—such as *Brazil Birds: A Folding Pocket Guide to Familiar Species* by James Kavanagh (2015)—offer a practical option. These guides typically cover approximately 140 widespread species and are particularly useful for beginners or as supplementary tools during field excursions. While this chapter draws initial inspiration from introductory resources like Kavanagh's guide, it is significantly expanded and academically refined through the integration of primary ornithological research, conservation literature, and comprehensive biodiversity data.
- **Artistic/Coffee Table Books:** Some publications prioritize aesthetic presentation. Tomas Sigrist's *Birds of Brazil: An Artistic View / Aves do Brasil: Uma Visao Artistica* (2006) is a large, bilingual volume showcasing his illustrations, designed more for appreciation and reference than fieldwork due to its size and format.
- **Continental Guides:** For comprehensive coverage extending beyond Brazil, guides covering South American passerines and non-passerines are invaluable references. *Field Guide to the Songbirds of South America: The Passerines* by Robert S. Ridgely and Guy Tudor (2009) is the authoritative work on the continent's ~2000 songbirds, featuring exceptional illustrations and detailed text, though its size makes it challenging for field use. The companion volume, *Birds of South America: Non-Passerines: Rheas to Woodpeckers* by Erize, Mata, and Rumboll (2006), covers the remaining groups.

The existence of this wide array of specialized resources underscores that standard field guides cannot meet every user's requirements. Different formats and levels of detail are needed, ranging from simple identification aids (pocket guides) and visual references (photographic/artistic books) to authoritative taxonomic lists (checklists) and in-depth studies of specific families or the entire continent's avifauna (monographs/continental guides). This ecosystem of publications allows users to select tools tailored to their specific goals, whether casual observation, focused research, or artistic appreciation.

D. Recent and Foundational Works

While the user query specifically requested guides from 2024 and 2025, the research conducted did not uncover any major bird identification *guides* published within this very recent timeframe. Therefore, this report focuses on the most recent *editions* of established and significant guides, such as the 2016 WCS Atlantic Forest guide and the 2021 CBRO checklist.

It is also important to acknowledge the foundational works upon which modern guides are built. Helmut Sick's *Ornitologia Brasileira* (1984/1997) remains a cornerstone of Brazilian ornithology, providing unparalleled depth in natural history based on decades of observation. Similarly, Johan Dalgas Frisch's *Aves Brasileiras* (first edition 1964, expanded 1981, further updated 2005) represented early, ambitious attempts to illustrate a large portion of Brazil's avifauna, paving the way for later guides, even with acknowledged limitations in scope and illustration quality in the earlier editions.

These older works, while perhaps superseded for rapid field identification by more modern, user-friendly formats, retain significant value. They offer historical context, detailed biological observations often missing from concise field guides, and insights from pioneering ornithologists. Sick's work, in particular, is frequently cited and valued for its comprehensive treatment of species' life histories, serving a different but equally important role compared to contemporary identification guides. Understanding these foundational texts provides a richer appreciation of the development of ornithological knowledge in Brazil.

12.4.1.3. Table of Selected Publications on Birds of Brazil

A. Introduction to the Table

The following Table 12.4 presents a curated selection of approximately 30 publications relevant to the study and identification of birds in Brazil. The entries are chosen based on their scope (comprehensive, regional, specialized), reputation within the ornithological community, language availability (English and/or Portuguese), and the recency of their publication or latest edition, reflecting the criteria outlined in the user query. The table aims to provide a comparative overview, enabling users to identify resources best suited to their specific needs, whether for field identification, in-depth research, regional focus, or specialized interest.

B. The Table 12.4 – Selection of 30 Publications on Birds in Brazil (a Sample).

Full Title	Author(s) / Editor(s)	Publication Year	Language(s)	Brief Description (Scope; Key Features; Audience)
Comprehensive Field Guides & References				
A Field Guide to the Birds of Brazil	Ber van Perlo	2009	English (w/ PT names)	Scope: Comprehensive Field Guide (~1800 spp). Features: Illustrations opposite text/maps, compact format, distribution maps, brief text, endemics noted. Audience: Intermediate/Advanced Birders, Tourists needing single English guide.
All the birds of Brazil: an identification guide	Deodato Souza	2002	Portuguese	Scope: Comprehensive Field Guide (~1600 spp). Features: Early attempt at full coverage, illustrations facing text/maps, brief text. Audience: Portuguese-speaking Birders (historically important, likely superseded).
Avifauna Brasileira (2-Volume Set):	Tomas Sigrist	2009	Bilingual (English/ Portuguese)	Scope: Comprehensive Field Guide Set. Features: High-quality

Guia de Campo Avis Brasilis The Avis Brasilis Field Guide to the Birds of Brazil				illustrations & maps (Vol 2) separate from detailed text (Vol 1), well-regarded in Brazil. Audience: Advanced Birders, Researchers (if obtainable).
Guia Completo para Identificação das Aves do Brasil (2 Volumes)	Rolf Grantsau	2010	Portuguese	Scope: Comprehensive Reference Work (Species & Subspecies, ~2900 taxa). Features: Extensive illustrations, detailed keys, massive scope. Audience: Researchers, Ornithologists, serious students (Reference, not field portable).
Ornitologia Brasileira (Ed. rev. e ampliada por José Fernando Pacheco)	Helmut Sick	1997	Portuguese	Scope: Comprehensive Ornithological Reference/Treatise. Features: Foundational text, rich natural history, ecology, behavior, some illustrations. Audience: Researchers, Students, serious Ornithologists (Reference).
Birds in Brazil: A Natural History	Helmut Sick (trans. W. Belton)	1993	English	Scope: Comprehensive Ornithological Reference/Treatise (English translation of Sick 1984/85). Features: As above. Audience: English-speaking Researchers, Students, serious Ornithologists.
Aves Brasileiras e Plantas que as Atraem (3rd Ed.)	Johan Dalgas Frisch & Christian Dalgas Frisch	2005	Portuguese	Scope: Illustrated Guide (~1250 spp) + Bird Gardening. Features: Updated version of earlier work, includes maps, minimal text, plant info. Audience: General Interest, Gardeners, Portuguese-speaking Birders (some limitations noted).
Regional & Biome-Specific Field Guides				
Wildlife Conservation Society Birds	John A. Gwynne, Robert S. Ridgely,	2010	English	Scope: Regional Field Guide (Pantanal & Cerrado, 743 spp).

of Brazil: The Pantanal and Cerrado of Central Brazil (Vol 1)	Guy Tudor, Martha Argel			Features: High-quality illustrations, maps, conservation focus. Audience: Birders visiting Central Brazil, Researchers.
Aves Do Brasil. Pantanal E Cerrado	Martha Argel (Coord.)	2009?	Portuguese	Scope: Regional Field Guide (Pantanal & Cerrado). Features: Portuguese version/edition related to WCS Vol 1, illustrations, maps. Audience: Portuguese-speaking Birders visiting Central Brazil.
Wildlife Conservation Society Birds of Brazil: The Atlantic Forest of Southeast Brazil, including São Paulo and Rio de Janeiro (Vol 2)	Robert S. Ridgely, John A. Gwynne, Guy Tudor, Martha Argel	2016	English	Scope: Regional Field Guide (SE Atlantic Forest, 927 spp). Features: Excellent illustrations, detailed maps/text, covers high-endemism area. Audience: Birders visiting SE Brazil, Researchers (Note: bulky).
Guia de Campo: Birds of Amazonian Brazil / Aves Da Amazonia Brasileira	Tomas Sigrist	2008	Bilingual (English/ Portuguese)	Scope: Regional Field Guide (Amazonia & transition zones). Features: Part of Avis Brasilis series, illustrations, maps, habitat keys. Audience: Birders visiting the Brazilian Amazon.
Guia de Campo: Aves do Brasil Oriental / Birds of Eastern Brazil	Tomas Sigrist	2007	Bilingual (English/ Portuguese)	Scope: Regional Field Guide (Eastern Brazil). Features: Precursor to Avifauna Brasileira, illustrations, maps. Audience: Birders visiting Eastern Brazil.
Aves do Estado de São Paulo	Edwin O. Willis & Yoshika Oniki	2003	Portuguese	Scope: Regional Field Guide (São Paulo State). Features: Detailed Portuguese text, covers state avifauna. Illustrations considered problematic by some reviewers. Audience: Portuguese-speaking Birders/Researchers in São Paulo.

Guia de Campo Aves da Grande São Paulo	Demetrio Devely	c. 2005	Bilingual (English/ Portuguese)	Scope: Local Field Guide (Greater São Paulo, 273 spp). Features: Focused on metropolitan area birds, illustrations, maps. Audience: Residents/Visitors interested in São Paulo city region birds.
Birds of Southwestern Brazil: Catalogue and Guide to the Birds of the Pantanal of Mato Grosso and Its Border Areas	Balthasar Dubs	1992	English	Scope: Regional Guide (Pantanal & borders). Features: Older guide, catalogue format, color illustrations, B&W photos. Audience: Birders/Researchers interested in Pantanal (historical context).
Guia de Aves do Cerrado	Renato Rizzaro (Design/Photos), Gabriela Giovanka (Research/Revision)	c. 2021	Portuguese	Scope: Pocket Guide (Cerrado Biome). Features: Portable format, photo-based, focuses on common/representative species. Audience: Beginners, Tourists, Local Residents in Cerrado.
Guia de Bolso das Aves da Caatinga	Renato Rizzaro (Project)	Recent?	Portuguese	Scope: Pocket Guide (Caatinga Biome). Features: Portable format, likely photo-based, focuses on biome species. Audience: Beginners, Tourists, Local Residents in Caatinga.
Guia de Aves do Pampa	Renato Rizzaro (Project)		Portuguese	Scope: Pocket Guide (Pampa Biome). Features: Portable format, likely photo-based, focuses on biome species. Audience: Beginners, Tourists, Local Residents in Pampa.
Specialized Publications				
A Photographic Guide to Birds of Southern	Clive Byers	2008	English	Scope: Photographic Guide (Southern Brazil, 252 spp). Features: Color photos, concise

Brazil: Including the Pantanal and Atlantic Forest				text, limited scope. Audience: Casual Birders, Tourists (Introductory/Souvenir).
Aves Cristalino Lodge - Birds of Cristalino Lodge	Edson Endrigo & Bradley Davis	2015	Bilingual (English/ Portuguese)	Scope: Photographic Guide (Local - Cristalino Lodge, Amazonia, 228 spp). Features: High-quality photos from specific location. Audience: Visitors to Cristalino Lodge, Amazon enthusiasts.
Aves da Amazônia - Birds - Amazon Forest	Edson Endrigo	2007	Bilingual (English/ Portuguese)	Scope: Photographic Guide (Regional - Amazonia). Features: Photo book focusing on Amazonian birds. Audience: Amazon enthusiasts, Photographers.
Hummingbirds of Brazil / Beija-Flores Do Brasil	Eduardo Parentoni Brettas (Illus.), Luís Fábio Silveira (Text)	2018	Bilingual (English/ Portuguese)	Scope: Specialized Monograph (Hummingbirds). Features: Detailed species accounts, distribution maps, ecology, conservation, high-quality illustrations. Audience: Hummingbird enthusiasts, Researchers.
Terra Papagalli / Land of Parrots	Eduardo Parentoni Brettas (Illus.), Luís Fábio Silveira (Text)	c. 2015	Bilingual (English/ Portuguese)	Scope: Specialized Monograph (Parrots). Features: Detailed species accounts (91 spp), diet, nesting, conservation, high-quality illustrations, large format. Audience: Parrot enthusiasts, Researchers.
Annotated checklist of the birds of Brazil / Lista comentada das aves do Brasil pelo Comitê Brasileiro de Registros	Vítor de Q. Piacentini et al. (CBRO)	2015	English/Portuguese	Scope: Official Checklist. Features: Lists species & subspecies (~1919 spp), status, taxonomy (as of 2015). Audience: Researchers, Ornithologists, Conservationists (Taxonomic reference).

Ornitológicos (1st Ed.)				
Annotated checklist of the birds of Brazil by the Brazilian Ornithological Records Committee (2nd Ed.)	José Fernando Pacheco et al. (CBRO)	2021	English/Portuguese	Scope: Official Checklist (Updated). Features: Lists species (~1971 spp), updated taxonomy, status, endemism, distribution changes since 2015. Audience: Researchers, Ornithologists, Conservationists (Current taxonomic reference).
Brazil Birds: A Folding Pocket Guide to Familiar Species	James Kavanagh (Waterford Press)	2015	English	Scope: Pocket Guide (140 common spp). Features: Laminated, folding format, illustrations of familiar species across Brazil. Audience: Beginners, Tourists, Quick reference.
Field Guide to the Songbirds of South America: The Passerines	Robert S. Ridgely & Guy Tudor	2009	English	Scope: Continental Field Guide (Passerines, ~2000 spp). Features: Authoritative text, excellent illustrations, maps, covers all South America including Brazil. Audience: Advanced Birders, Researchers (Reference, bulky for field).
Birds of South America: Non-Passerines: Rheas to Woodpeckers	Francisco Erize, Jorge R. Rodriguez Mata, Maurice Rumboll	2006	English	Scope: Continental Field Guide (Non-Passerines). Features: Companion to Ridgely/Tudor Passerines, illustrations, maps, brief text. Audience: Advanced Birders, Researchers (Reference).
Birds of Brazil: An Artistic View / Aves do Brasil: Uma Visao Artistica	Tomas Sigrist	2006	Bilingual (English/ Portuguese)	Scope: Artistic Reference (~1800 spp). Features: Large format, focus on high-quality illustrations, brief text, maps. Audience: Art lovers, Bird enthusiasts (Coffee table book/Reference).

Aves Brasileiras (1st Ed.)	Johan Dalgas Frisch	1981	Portuguese	Scope: Early Comprehensive Illustrated Guide (~1100 spp). Features: Pioneering work, illustrations only (no text beyond names), some groups missing. Audience: Historical interest, Portuguese-speaking Birders (largely superseded).

Source: Table prepared by the authors, 2025.

12.4.1.4. Remarks

A. Summary of Resources

The landscape of publications dedicated to Brazilian birds is rich and varied, catering to a spectrum of needs and expertise levels. Comprehensive national guides, authored by individuals like Van Perlo, Sigrist, and Grantsau, attempt to cover the entirety of Brazil's vast avifauna, offering broad utility but often involving trade-offs in portability or depth. Foundational works, notably Helmut Sick's *Ornitologia Brasileira*, provide invaluable historical context and detailed natural history information, complementing modern identification guides. Regional guides, such as the WCS series for the Pantanal/Cerrado and the Atlantic Forest, offer focused coverage of key biodiversity hotspots, proving highly useful for geographically targeted trips. Furthermore, a diverse array of specialized resources exists, including photographic guides, family-specific monographs (e.g., for hummingbirds and parrots), essential taxonomic checklists from CBRO, and highly portable pocket guides for beginners or casual observers.

B. Choosing the Right Guide

Selecting the most appropriate guide(s) depends heavily on the user's specific circumstances. Key considerations include:

- **Language:** Guides are available primarily in English, Portuguese, or are bilingual. Van Perlo offers a comprehensive English option, while Sigrist (Avifauna Brasileira) and Grantsau provide top-tier bilingual or Portuguese resources, respectively.
- **Scope of Travel:** For trips covering multiple regions, a comprehensive national guide (like Van Perlo) is often the most practical starting point. For visits focused on a single biome like the Pantanal or Atlantic Forest, a dedicated regional guide (like the WCS volumes) offers greater depth for that area. Combining a national guide with relevant regional or specialized guides can provide the best of both worlds for serious birders.
- **Level of Detail & Portability:** Researchers may require the exhaustive detail of Grantsau or Sick, while field birders prioritize portability and rapid identification, favouring guides like Van Perlo or the WCS series. Beginners or tourists might find pocket guides (Kavanagh, Rizzaro) sufficient.
- **Purpose:** Identification in the field is best served by true field guides (Van Perlo, WCS, Sigrist Vol 2). Taxonomic accuracy requires consulting the latest CBRO checklist. In-depth biological information is found in works like Sick or continental references. Visual appreciation may lead towards photographic or artistic books.

C. The Role of Digital Resources

While printed guides remain fundamental tools, the importance of digital resources in modern ornithology and birdwatching cannot be overstated. Online platforms like WikiAves, frequently cited as a data source and reference in Brazil , and the global database eBird (mentioned in User Query), provide dynamic, community-driven information. These platforms offer vast libraries of photographs, sound recordings, real-time sighting data, and distribution maps that complement and often surpass the static information in printed books. Furthermore, mobile applications such as the Cornell Lab's Merlin Bird ID and dedicated apps based on field guides (like the one derived from Van Perlo's book) offer identification assistance, sound libraries, and digital checklist capabilities directly in the field. The synergy between traditional print guides and these powerful digital tools represents the contemporary approach for many birders exploring Brazil's avifauna, combining the curated knowledge of books with the immediate, multimedia-rich data available online and on mobile devices.

D. Future Outlook

The study of Brazilian ornithology is a dynamic field. New species are occasionally described, taxonomic understanding evolves, and knowledge of species distributions is constantly refined, partly fueled by the growth of citizen science contributions via platforms like WikiAves and eBird. This necessitates periodic updates to checklists and field guides. While no major new guides were identified for 2024-2025 in this review, the potential for future publications remains. For instance, a comprehensive guide project involving Lynx Edicions and prominent ornithologists like Robert Ridgely was mentioned some years ago, although its current status is unclear. Continued research and the persistent interest in Brazil's unique birdlife suggest that new resources and updated editions of existing guides will likely emerge in the coming years, further aiding the exploration and conservation of this exceptional avifauna.

Part V: Avitourism: Fueling Economies, Fostering Stewardship

12.5. The Growing Market of Birdwatching

In Brazil, birdwatching has shown remarkable growth, even though estimates of the number of practitioners still vary. Earlier studies suggested that around 50,000 birdwatchers were active in the country (ResearchGate, n.d.). However, more recent data from the collaborative platform WikiAves indicated that there were about 37,000 registered users by March 2021, with an exponential growth of approximately 1,650% over the previous decade (CBRO, 2021). More recently, the creation of the National Association for Wildlife Watching Tourism (Associação TOVS), launched with support from Embratur, marks a move toward formalizing the sector and promoting its strategic growth (Embratur, 2023).

Globally, birdwatching is a well-established and rapidly expanding market. Recent market research estimates that, in 2023, the sector generated between USD 59.78 and 62.8 billion, with projections indicating it may reach between USD 107.73 and 116.8 billion by 2033. This reflects an annual compound growth rate (CAGR) ranging between 6.07% and 6.4% (Market.us, 2023; Spherical Insights, 2024; Grand View Research, 2024a,b). Determining the exact number of birdwatchers worldwide is difficult due to varying definitions of what it means to be a birdwatcher — ranging from backyard bird feeders to international travelers pursuing technical identification. Even so, some metrics illustrate the massive scale of the activity: 96 million birdwatchers were estimated in the United States alone in 2022 (U.S. Fish & Wildlife Service, 2022); over 555,000 people participated in the 2023

Great Backyard Bird Count (Birdcount.org, 2023); and eBird, one of the world's leading birdwatching platforms, surpassed one million global users.

This scenario highlights not only tourism and economic potential of birdwatching, but also its socio-cultural and environmental complexity. With its extraordinary biodiversity, Brazil is uniquely positioned to become a global leader in this sector — one that integrates sustainable tourism, conservation of nature, and inclusive economic development.

12.5.1. Comparison with Brazilian Agribusiness

To fully grasp the scale of birdwatching's economic impact in the U.S., it is helpful to compare it with one of the most powerful sectors of the Brazilian economy: agribusiness. In previous editions of the national survey, the annual economic impact of birdwatching was estimated at about USD 40 billion — already a significant figure. With updated 2022 numbers (USD 107.6 billion in direct spending and USD 279 billion in total output), the contrast becomes even more striking.

Brazil's agribusiness exports reached record levels in 2023, estimated at around USD 165 to 166 billion (CNA Brasil, 2024; IPEA, 2024; IEA, 2024). This means that the economic output generated by birdwatching in the U.S. in 2022 (USD 279 billion) actually exceeded Brazil's total annual agribusiness exports. Even when only considering direct spending by U.S. birdwatchers (USD 107.6 billion), the amount is already a substantial portion of Brazil's export volume.

This comparison is not meant to diminish the importance of agribusiness but to highlight the powerful economic potential of a well-structured ecotourism activity like birdwatching. It also illustrates how nature-based tourism, when supported by strategic policies and professional practices, can become a major source of income and employment while promoting environmental values.

12.5.2. Economic Impact in Brazil

Despite Brazil's enormous potential, the economic impact of birdwatching within the country remains largely unmeasured at the national level. The lack of consolidated data makes it difficult to assess its current market value, its contribution to the GDP, or the number of jobs it supports. Still, local and regional evidence suggests promising signs. For example, research conducted in the Lagoa do Peixe National Park, in southern Brazil (Rio Grande do Sul), found that birdwatchers visiting the area generally have a higher socioeconomic profile. They are willing to pay for quality services, are environmentally conscious, and represent an important niche for strengthening local ecotourism.

Birdwatching stimulates several sectors directly: lodging (especially small eco-lodges), food services (restaurants and cafes), local handicrafts, and most notably, the hiring of local nature guides. These economic benefits are especially significant in rural or protected areas where tourism may be one of the few sustainable income options.

The recent creation of the National Association for Wildlife Watching Tourism (TOVS), with a strong focus on birds, signals a strategic effort to expand the market, stimulate regional development, and promote Brazil internationally as a birding destination (Embratur, 2023).
However, for Brazil to unlock the full potential of birdwatching, investments are needed in infrastructure, professional training, and, most importantly, the systematic collection and analysis of data to inform public policy and market strategies. Brazil already has the

natural assets — now it must transform them into sustainable and inclusive economic value.

12.5.3. Catering to the Birder: Infrastructure and Services

Infrastructure quality and service specialization are critical in attracting and satisfying avitourists. These elements directly influence both destination selection and overall visitor experience. The Censo Brasileiro de Observação de Aves offers valuable insights into current trends, infrastructure gaps, and visitor expectations across Brazilian birding destinations.

The 2023 edition of the Censo found that 55% of responding birdwatching destinations are located in rural areas (Zona Rural), often operating as traditional farms (fazendas) or rustic inns (pousadas). Many own private reserves (RPPNs—ranging between 13.5% and 16.6% of respondents) or are situated near public Protected Areas (UCs), with 81% reporting proximity to one. This access to protected habitats is a major draw, as birders strongly prefer visiting UCs.

Encouragingly, there is a growing trend toward specialization. The proportion of properties that report receiving birdwatchers regularly rose from 23.5% in 2012 to 39.3% in 2023. This suggests increasing market awareness and a willingness to tailor services, although much potential remains untapped.

While many birders book directly through websites or apps, guides and tour operators still play a significant role in channeling visitors. In fact, 47% of responding establishments reported receiving bookings through these intermediaries. Between 2012 and 2023, there was also a noticeable increase in the proportion of domestic tourists—a trend that mirrors the growing interest in birdwatching among Brazilians (see Section 2.3).

Regarding amenities, the most commonly offered services include species lists for the site or surrounding area (72.5%), accessible trails and observation areas (71.9%), and early breakfast service to accommodate morning birding (45.5%). The availability of feeders and birdbaths—cited by 44.9%—also appears to be gaining recognition as a key feature. According to birders surveyed, the top priorities when choosing a destination include safety (69.3%), proximity to a UC (64.9%), the presence of specific "target" species or lifers (51.1%), and ease of access (49%). To enhance the experience, birders suggested increasing access during prime birding hours (77.3%), ensuring the availability of qualified guides (70.7%), and providing up-to-date species lists (67.5%) (Barbosa et. al., 2024; Censo Brasileiro de Observação de Aves, 2023).

There is a notable alignment between what birders value and what destinations provide, particularly in terms of biodiversity and location. However, birders' suggestions point to areas needing improvement, especially regarding operational flexibility, guide training, and informational resources. Lodges and reserves that have successfully addressed these needs—such as Cristalino Lodge, REGUA, Mamirauá, and Pantanal ecolodges—serve as models for delivering specialized, high-quality services in alignment with conservation goals.

12.5.4. A Balancing Act: Sustainability and the Challenges of Avitourism

Avitourism is often considered a low-impact form of tourism, particularly when compared to conventional mass tourism. It tends to attract environmentally conscious travelers who respect biodiversity and support conservation. As demonstrated in Section 2.2, a strong conservation ethic is prevalent among Brazilian birders, reflecting global trends that link nature tourism with environmental awareness.

Nonetheless, avitourism is not without risks. Even well-intentioned visitors can inadvertently disturb sensitive species—particularly during breeding or nesting seasons. Such disturbances may cause stress, disrupt natural behaviors, or lead to abandonment of nests. Off-trail trampling, noise pollution, and poor waste management are additional concerns. While few studies have specifically addressed the negative impacts of bird tourism, the need for evidence-based management strategies is clear. Adherence to established ethical guidelines—such as those from CEMAVE (Section 7)—is essential to minimize harm.

From a development standpoint, several structural challenges must be addressed. First, there is an urgent need to professionalize avitourism services. Guide training must be strengthened, with emphasis on species identification, ethical conduct, multilingual communication, and interpretive skills. Hospitality operations must also meet international standards.
Second, infrastructure in remote biodiversity hotspots—safe roads, suitable lodging, reliable communication—requires investment. However, such development must avoid environmental harm, such as habitat fragmentation or overbuilding, which could undermine the very ecosystems that birders come to see.

Third, economic benefits from avitourism must be distributed equitably. Ensuring that local communities directly benefit—through employment, service contracts, and revenue-sharing models like Mamirauá—is not only ethically sound, but vital for long-term conservation partnerships.

Finally, maintaining balance between tourism growth and biodiversity protection requires adaptive management and continuous monitoring of social and ecological outcomes. Only through such vigilance can avitourism truly evolve into a sustainable development tool for Brazil.

Part VI - Conservation Through the Lens – Birdwatching's Vital Role

12.6. The Birdwatcher as Conservation Ally

The connection between birdwatching and conservation in Brazil is demonstrably strong and operates through multiple, mutually reinforcing pathways. As highlighted by Censo Brasileiro de Observação de Aves data, Brazilian birders exhibit a pronounced conservation ethic—87% report wanting their hobby to contribute positively to conservation outcomes. This intrinsic motivation transforms birdwatchers from passive observers into powerful allies for environmental NGOs, research institutions, and government-led conservation initiatives.
The act of observing birds in their natural habitats fosters deep appreciation for biodiversity and for the ecological relationships that sustain it. This personal engagement often leads to heightened awareness of environmental threats such as habitat loss, pollution, and climate change, and a greater willingness to act—whether through financial donations, volunteerism, or policy advocacy. As Pedro Develey of SAVE Brasil notes, birds serve as compelling "messengers," able to emotionally and intellectually connect people to broader environmental concerns.

Avitourism also creates tangible economic incentives for habitat protection. When forests, wetlands, and savannas become income-generating assets that attract paying visitors, landowners and communities gain direct financial motivation to protect, rather than convert, these ecosystems. Market-based mechanisms can reinforce this dynamic. For example, the *Alianza del Pastizal* initiative in southern Brazil (Pampa biome) certifies bird-friendly beef, produced on ranches that actively manage native pastures for grassland birds. This model offers financial premiums or market access linked to verified conservation practices.

Birdwatchers also play an increasingly important role in generating scientific data critical for conservation planning. Through platforms like eBird and WikiAves (explored in Section 6), they contribute vast volumes of georeferenced, time-stamped observations. These citizen science contributions are vital for mapping species distributions, monitoring migration patterns, identifying Important Bird and Biodiversity Areas (IBAs), and assessing the impacts of climate change and land use transformation. Birders, through their passion, mobility, and observational skills, become distributed data collectors—bridging recreational tourism with scientific research and conservation policy.

This convergence of environmental ethics, economic power, data generation, and advocacy makes the birdwatching community a multifaceted and increasingly indispensable partner in the effort to conserve Brazil's avian and ecological heritage.

12.6.1. Protected Areas – Sanctuaries for Birds and Birders
Brazil's extensive system of Protected Areas (Unidades de Conservação – UCs) forms the backbone of national biodiversity conservation and serves as the principal infrastructure for avitourism. Managed at federal, state, and municipal levels, these areas encompass National Parks, State Parks, Biological Reserves, and Ecological Stations, among other categories. They safeguard vital ecosystems across all six major Brazilian biomes.

Iconic sites like Itatiaia, Serra da Canastra, Emas, Chapada dos Veadeiros, Chapada dos Guimarães, Anavilhanas, and Serra da Capivara National Parks not only offer biodiversity refuges but also draw birdwatchers seeking endemic species, specialized habitats, or scenic beauty. According to the Censo, a striking 83.6% of birders prioritize visiting UCs, underscoring their centrality to the sector.

In parallel with public conservation lands, Private Natural Heritage Reserves (RPPNs – Reservas Particulares do Patrimônio Natural) play a growing and complementary role. Created voluntarily by landowners, NGOs, or tourism enterprises, RPPNs offer legal, perpetual protection of natural habitats on private land. Many of Brazil's most renowned birding lodges are located within or adjacent to RPPNs, integrating tourism directly with conservation.

Outstanding examples include REGUA in the Atlantic Forest, which has secured thousands of hectares through strategic land acquisition and international partnerships—financed in part by its own birding lodge. In the Amazon, Cristalino Lodge operates within a private reserve adjoining a state park, offering immersive birdwatching experiences under a conservation mandate.

These private initiatives serve multiple functions: they protect habitat corridors between public UCs, safeguard underrepresented ecosystems, and pilot innovative conservation-business models. Together, public and private reserves form a more resilient, ecologically connected landscape—essential for sustaining bird populations and enabling meaningful avitourism.

12.6.2. Shadows on the Horizon – Threats from Habitat Loss and Illegal Trade
Despite increasing public awareness and the growth of conservation-oriented tourism, Brazil's rich avifauna continues to face grave and persistent threats. Habitat loss and fragmentation remain the most pressing dangers. Driven by agricultural expansion (notably cattle ranching and soybean monoculture), logging (both legal and illegal), mining, and unregulated urban sprawl, this ongoing degradation particularly affects the Atlantic Forest and Cerrado, which have already lost much of their original vegetation. Many endemic bird species—those found nowhere else on Earth—are now endangered or critically endangered due to their shrinking, isolated habitats.

An equally serious threat alongside habitat loss is the illicit wildlife trade, which wreaks devastating harm on bird populations. Over the past fifteen years, online illegal wildlife trade has exploded, yet reliable data on its scale and dynamics remain scarce. ECO-SOLVE's Global Monitoring System now tracks national markets, with Brazil and South Africa as inaugural hubs. Brazil's most advertised species include the CITES-II pirarucu (150 ads), the CITES-I African grey parrot (43 ads), and the CITES-I hyacinth macaw (20 ads). This targeted surveillance helps pinpoint high-pressure hotspots on endangered wildlife. By revealing emerging trends, the system aims to guide law enforcement and inform policy interventions against wildlife crime (GI-TOC, 2024). Although its secretive nature makes precise figures hard to come by, researchers estimate that Brazil loses millions of animals—many of them birds—to illegal capture each year. As Destro et.al. (2012) reveal it, the 30 species most confiscated by IBAMA and accredited institutions, according to SICAFI, the most representative was the class of Aves with 80%, followed by Reptilia 16.67%, and the bird species most confiscated were "*Saltator similis* (Greenwinged Saltator) and *Sporophila caerulescens* (Double-collared Seedeater)" (p.428). The domestic market heavily targets songbirds (*Passeriformes*) and parrots (*Psittaciformes*), valued for vocalizations, plumage, or cultural significance. Law enforcement records from IBAMA and the Federal Highway Police (PRF) reveal disproportionately high seizure rates for species like the Eared Dove (*Zenaida auriculata*), Saffron Finch (*Sicalis flaveola*) (Destro, 2012, p.428), and Red-cowled Cardinal (*Paroaria dominicana*). These birds are often trafficked for local pet markets, song contests, or religious use. More endangered species, such as the Lear's Macaw, are trafficked for high-value international buyers (Destro et. al., 2019). The methods used to capture and transport birds—mist nets, sticky traps, and overcrowded containers—are inhumane and result in extremely high mortality rates. Some studies estimate that only 10% of captured individuals survive long enough to reach final buyers, "In total, 195 municipalities displaying incidences of illegal capture of wild animals were identified: 40 in the north, 71 in the northeast, 45 in the mid-west and 39 in the south/southeast regions" (Destro et.al., 2019, p. 3).

Trafficking networks have adapted to the digital era. Traditional markets still exist, but much of the trade now occurs through social media, online marketplaces, and encrypted messaging apps, facilitating illegal transactions while reducing risk of detection. These networks are often embedded within larger organized crime structures, further complicating enforcement.

A major loophole exists in the form of legal bird-breeding operations, which are susceptible to abuse. Investigations indicate that fraudulent documentation is used to "launder" wild-caught birds, presenting them as legally bred. By 2015, authorities estimated that up to three million birds may have been falsely registered. The five most popular legally held species were also among the most frequently seized—highlighting systemic overlap. The discontinuation in 2020 of enforcement initiatives like "Operação Entrega" (Operation Delivery) only increases concern.

This brutal exploitation stands in stark contrast to the respect and ethical commitment embodied by responsible birdwatchers. While one activity seeks to understand and protect birds in the wild, the other depletes populations, erodes ecosystems, and fuels organized crime. Addressing the crisis requires multifaceted strategies:

- **Stronger law enforcement**, including anti-corruption measures and wildlife forensics
- **Improved traceability** and regulation of legal breeding operations
- **Public awareness campaigns** to reduce demand
- **Socioeconomic alternatives** for communities involved in trapping
- **International cooperation** to disrupt trafficking networks

The future of Brazil's birdlife will depend not only on stopping destruction and exploitation but on strengthening the positive, participatory, and ethical forces of conservation and avitourism. This is the dual challenge—and opportunity—that lies ahead.

12.6.3. Hope Takes Wing: Conservation Success Stories and Inspiring Models
Amidst the significant challenges of habitat loss and illegal trade, numerous conservation initiatives across Brazil demonstrate that positive outcomes for birds are not only possible but already underway. In many of these efforts, birds serve as flagship species—symbols that galvanize support—while birdwatchers and the broader public act as essential allies. Several standout examples illustrate the diverse and effective strategies in play:

A - Lear's Macaw Recovery (Caatinga): Perhaps Brazil's most celebrated avian conservation success, the recovery of the Lear's Macaw (*Anodorhynchus leari*) has gained global recognition. Once on the brink of extinction in the late 20th century—primarily due to the destruction of its critical Licurí Palm habitat and intense poaching for the illegal pet trade—the species has rebounded through decades of coordinated action. Led by Fundação Biodiversitas and centered around the Canudos Biological Station, the recovery strategy included purchasing and legally protecting nesting cliffs and feeding areas, implementing anti-poaching patrols, engaging local communities through education and sustainable livelihoods (including ecotourism and handicrafts), and conducting vital ecological research. Today, the wild population has grown from fewer than 60 individuals in the 1980s to over 1,700, allowing for its downlisting from Critically Endangered to Endangered on the IUCN Red List.

B - REGUA – Reserva Ecológica de Guapiaçu (Atlantic Forest): REGUA is a model of successful private conservation within the heavily threatened Atlantic Forest. Initially launched by the Locke family to protect forest fragments on their land, the project has expanded—with key support from international partners such as the World Land Trust and Rainforest Trust, and funding from its birding lodge—into a wide-ranging conservation initiative. REGUA now protects thousands of hectares of critical forest, engages in habitat restoration, supports scientific research, provides environmental education, and reinvests tourism profits directly into conservation.

C - Hyacinth Macaw Project (Pantanal): In the Pantanal, collaborative conservation efforts between researchers, landowners, and tourism operators have led to a notable population recovery of the Hyacinth Macaw (*Anodorhynchus hyacinthinus*). Strategies include intensive monitoring of nest sites, mitigating nest competition and predation, and installing artificial nest boxes where natural cavities are scarce—practical interventions that have yielded impressive results.

D - SAVE Brasil (National Scope): As the Brazilian partner of BirdLife International, SAVE Brasil plays a national role in bird conservation across biomes. The organization helps identify Important Bird and Biodiversity Areas (IBAs), supports the creation and management of protected areas, implements species recovery programs (e.g., for the Blue-eyed Ground Dove, *Columbina cyanopis*), conducts habitat restoration, and works with communities and policy-makers to strengthen environmental protections. SAVE Brasil emphasizes that long-term conservation success depends on broad societal involvement—from rural communities to urban citizens.

E - Community-Based Tourism Models (Amazon): The Uakari Lodge, located in the Mamirauá Sustainable Development Reserve, is a leading example of community-integrated conservation through tourism. Managed by local residents, the lodge reinvests tourism revenue into community projects. It demonstrates how ecotourism can offer sustainable livelihoods while fostering the protection of biodiversity-rich ecosystems like the Amazon's *várzea* forests.

These cases exemplify a spectrum of successful conservation strategies in Brazil, from species-specific recovery efforts to private land conservation, community-based tourism, and national-level advocacy. They collectively prove that, even in the face of enormous challenges, dedicated action, strategic partnerships, and the supportive role of responsible tourism can secure a future for Brazil's remarkable birdlife.

Part VII - Citizen Science Takes Flight – Collective Knowledge for Conservation

12.7. The Power of Many: Citizen Science in a Megadiverse Nation

In a country as vast and biologically rich as Brazil—home to nearly 2,000 bird species across over 8.5 million square kilometers—monitoring avian populations, distributions, and trends poses formidable logistical and financial challenges. Here, Citizen Science (CS) — the active engagement of the public in scientific research—has emerged as a transformative force.

Empowered by smartphones with GPS, digital cameras, and growing internet access, thousands of amateur birdwatchers are now contributing valuable data across Brazil's diverse and often remote biomes. These citizen scientists, driven by a love for birds and nature, generate vast datasets that extend far beyond the reach of traditional research teams. Their efforts cover broad geographies and long time spans—critical dimensions for ecological analysis, As Sullivan et al. (2009, p. 2283), drawing on Gill (2006), have emphasized:

> No organism lends itself more readily to the concept of citizen participation in data gathering than birds. This is because there are nearly 10,000 species that occupy all terrestrial and most aquatic environments and because birds are linked to biotic processes at many levels. Birds are largely diurnal, behaviorally and morphologically conspicuous, and plentiful; they are easily observed, counted, and are among the most studied of all widespread animal groups (p.2283).

Tubelis (2023) emphasizes, drawn from the literature, that "Citizen science refers to the participation of citizens in scientific research, and such participation has been successfully increasing the knowledge about several aspects of the biodiversity found around the world" (p.28-29). In ornithology, data collected by volunteers have underpinned numerous large-scale studies over decades. For instance, Finland's long-running bird monitoring program, initiated in the 1950s, relies heavily on amateur contributions. Similarly, the British Trust for Ornithology enlists thousands of participants to compile extensive datasets used to track population trends and migratory routes. At the Cornell Lab of Ornithology, citizen-driven initiatives have generated detailed seasonal abundance profiles for migratory species, demonstrating the power of public engagement in revealing large-scale ecological patterns.

Moreover, as Tubelis notes, "Citizen science regarding birds is strongly tied to birdwatching, a traditional activity in regions such as North America and Europe that has increased substantially in the last two decades in Brazil" (p.28-29). Since 2005, Brazil has witnessed a marked surge in birdwatching through the launch of national campaigns, the growth of birding festivals, the formation of ornithological societies, and the proliferation of online platforms and citizen-science projects aimed at amateur birders (Tubelis, 2023). These developments have not only expanded public participation but have also enriched scientific understanding by integrating grassroots observations into formal research frameworks.

Citizen contributions have proven indispensable for tracking shifts in Brazil's bird populations. For example, volunteer observers have documented a remarkable 56 percent rise in vagrant bird sightings nationwide—clear evidence that decentralized monitoring networks significantly bolster both the scale and timeliness of ornithological research. Building on this collaborative ethos, Almeida et al. (2025) examined avian records from multiple digital platforms to assess urban bird diversity in large metropolitan areas. Focusing on Greater São Luís—located on Brazil's northern coast within the Amazon biome—their study, aptly titled "Together is better": the contribution of academy, citizen science and gray literature for the avifauna knowledge," demonstrates how integrating scholarly data, crowd-sourced observations, and unpublished reports yields a far more comprehensive picture of city-dwelling bird communities. By weaving these diverse information streams together, the authors highlight a model of interdisciplinary cooperation that both enriches scientific understanding and empowers local stakeholders in urban conservation efforts. Such platforms and studies are also invaluable for birdwatching tourism, offering up-to-date species data that enhance guided tours, inform route planning in urban settings, and deepen participants' engagement with the local avifauna.

12.7.1. Brazil's Digital Aviaries: The Impact of WikiAves and eBird

Two digital platforms dominate the citizen science landscape for birding in Brazil, channeling public enthusiasm into structured and accessible data:

WikiAves: Launched in December 2008, WikiAves is Brazil's most popular birding platform, uniquely tailored to the local community. Its standout feature is the requirement that nearly all records be supported by photographs or audio recordings, ensuring verifiable and reliable data. By the early 2020s, WikiAves had amassed over 4 million media records, documenting approximately 98% of Brazil's known bird species. With a user base surpassing 42,000 registered contributors, it is not only a media repository but also a powerful research tool. Its geotagged and time-stamped data support detailed mapping of species distributions, breeding behaviors, feeding ecology, and more.

eBird: Developed by the Cornell Lab of Ornithology, eBird is a global platform that uses checklist-based submissions. Users record all birds observed during a specific period at a given location, along with effort metrics (e.g., time, distance). Although media uploads are optional, eBird's standardized formats and analytical tools enable detailed studies of species distribution, abundance, habitat preferences, and migration patterns. Adoption in Brazil has grown steadily, with over 918,000 checklists and records of approximately 1,818 species (including vagrants and non-natives) as of mid-2024.

Other platforms, like Xeno-canto (focused on bird vocalizations), iNaturalist, and Biofaces, also support avian data collection, enriching the citizen science ecosystem.

WikiAves and eBird offer complementary strengths:

- WikiAves excels in visual verification and localized engagement, making it ideal for documenting behavior and regional species distributions.
- eBird offers global connectivity and standardized effort data, making it indispensable for statistical modeling and long-term population tracking.

Used in tandem, these platforms provide a comprehensive view of Brazil's avifauna, dramatically enhancing research and conservation capabilities.

12.7.2. From Sightings to Solutions: How Citizen Data Aids Science and Conservation

The vast datasets generated by citizen scientists through platforms like WikiAves and eBird are now integral to advancing ornithological knowledge and supporting conservation strategies. Researchers use these resources to address a range of key questions:

- **Species Distribution Mapping:** Citizen data facilitates detailed range maps, helps detect expansions or contractions in species' distributions, and fills knowledge gaps—especially for understudied or remote regions. For example, WikiAves has helped map the range of the threatened Vinaceous-breasted Parrot in southern Brazil.
- **Migration Studies:** Seasonal variation in sightings (from eBird checklists or WikiAves media timestamps) reveals migratory routes, stopover sites, and overwintering areas. Both platforms have been validated for tracking migratory behavior.
- **Breeding Biology Documentation:** Photos and observations of nests, eggs, or parenting behaviors help researchers study nesting ecology. WikiAves has contributed data on communal nesting in Smooth-billed Anis, among others.
- **Feeding Ecology Analysis:** Photos showing birds with prey offer insights into diet composition and foraging behavior. For example, WikiAves data has been used to analyze parental feeding in Campo Flickers.
- **Population Monitoring:** eBird's checklist data, which includes observation effort, supports statistical models that estimate relative abundance and identify population trends—crucial for species under pressure.
- **Species Lists for Protected Areas:** Both platforms are essential for compiling species inventories in national parks, state reserves, or private RPPNs, providing

baseline data for management and monitoring. Studies in states like Tocantins highlight their value in expanding regional avifaunal knowledge.

This crowdsourced data is especially powerful in regions where formal research is limited or infrequent. It enables the identification of priority conservation areas, supports Red List assessments, helps track climate change impacts, and informs management decisions for habitat restoration or species recovery.

In short, citizen science is not merely complementary to traditional science—it is amplifying, accelerating, and democratizing conservation research in one of the world's most biodiverse nations.

Part VIII - A Code for Birders: Ensuring Ethical Observation in Brazil

12.8. Why Ethics Matter: Protecting Birds and Their Habitats

As birdwatching continues to grow in popularity, both domestically and internationally, ensuring that the activity is conducted responsibly and ethically is paramount. The primary goal of ethical birdwatching is to minimize disturbance and potential harm to the birds themselves and to the habitats upon which they depend.

Unethical practices, even if unintentional, can have significant negative consequences. Approaching too closely, making loud noises, or using attraction methods improperly can cause stress to birds, disrupting critical behaviors such as feeding, resting, courtship, or caring for young. Particularly sensitive situations involve nesting birds, where disturbance can lead to nest abandonment, exposure of eggs or chicks to predators or adverse weather, or reduced parental care. Repeated disturbance can also lead to birds avoiding otherwise suitable habitats or becoming habituated to human presence in ways that increase their vulnerability.

Adhering to a recognized code of ethics is therefore essential, not only for the immediate well-being of the wildlife being observed but also for the long-term sustainability of birdwatching as a recreational, educational, and conservation-supporting pursuit. A foundation of respect – respect for wildlife, respect for habitats, respect for private property, and respect for fellow observers – underpins responsible birding practices. Ethical conduct ensures that the joy derived from observing birds does not come at the expense of the birds themselves.

12.8.1. Guiding Principles: The CEMAVE Code of Ethics Explained

Recognizing the need for clear and nationally relevant guidelines, Brazil's *Centro Nacional de Pesquisa e Conservação de Aves Silvestres* (CEMAVE) (see Table 11.8), which is part of the *Instituto Chico Mendes de Conservação da Biodiversidade* (ICMBio – the federal agency responsible for protected areas and biodiversity conservation), developed and periodically updates the official "*Código de Ética dos Observadores de Aves*" (*Code of Ethics for Bird Observers*). This code provides a comprehensive framework for responsible behavior while observing wild birds in Brazil.

Key principles outlined in the code include:

Prioritize Bird Welfare Above All Else: The well-being of the birds must always be the foremost consideration. Avoid any action that might cause undue stress, injury, or significantly alter their natural behavior. Maintain a respectful distance, particularly during sensitive activities like breeding, nesting, feeding, or roosting.

Use Playback Sparingly and Ethically: The use of recorded bird calls or songs (playback) to attract birds out into the open should be minimized and employed with extreme caution and discretion. If used, keep the volume low and the duration brief. Never use playback near known active nests, during obviously sensitive activities (like active courtship displays or hunting by raptors), or for species known to be particularly stressed or territoriality provoked by it (e.g., certain owls or rare endemics). Avoid repeatedly playing calls to the same individual bird; if a bird responds but remains hidden, accept the encounter and move on. CEMAVE guidance suggests moving at least 300 meters away before attempting playback again. Never use alarm or distress calls, as these can cause significant stress and unnatural reactions. In areas known to receive heavy birdwatching traffic (e.g., popular trails in national parks), playback should generally be avoided altogether to prevent cumulative stress on resident birds.

Respect Nesting Birds: Exercise extreme caution and maintain a significant distance when observing birds at or near nests or nesting colonies. Limit your observation time to minimize disturbance. Never touch nests, eggs, or young birds. Critically, do not remove or manipulate branches, leaves, or other vegetation to get a better view or photograph of a nest; this camouflage is vital for protecting the nest from predators and insulating it from harsh weather. Avoid using any attraction methods (like playback) in the vicinity of active nests. Intentional flushing of birds from nesting or roosting sites using loud noises (horns, firecrackers) or other deliberate disturbances is strictly prohibited and unethical.

Protect Habitats: Stay on designated trails, roads, or paths whenever possible to avoid trampling sensitive vegetation or causing soil erosion. Do not break branches, cut vegetation, or otherwise damage or disturb the natural environment. Leave habitats as you found them, or better (e.g., by picking up litter).

Share Information Responsibly: While sharing observations is crucial for citizen science and community knowledge, exercise careful discretion when publicizing the exact location of rare, threatened, or particularly sensitive species, active nests, large communal roosts, or breeding colonies. Consider the potential negative consequences: could widespread knowledge lead to excessive disturbance by crowds of observers, or worse, attract poachers or illegal collectors? Before widely disseminating such sensitive location information (e.g., on public forums or social media), it is advisable to consult with relevant environmental authorities (like ICMBio or state agencies) or the landowners/managers of the area. This allows an assessment of the risks and ensures that appropriate management measures or access controls can be implemented if needed to protect the birds or site in question. This principle requires a careful balance between the desire to share exciting discoveries and the responsibility to protect vulnerable wildlife.

Contribute Data Ethically: When sharing sightings on citizen science platforms like WikiAves or eBird, ensure the information provided (species identification, location, date, count) is as accurate as possible. If you observe a bird carrying a band, leg flag, or transmitter tag, carefully note the details (band number, colour combination, location on the bird) and report this information to the relevant banding authority (e.g., CEMAVE in Brazil, see Table 11.8). Such reports are vital for migration studies and population monitoring.

Respect Property and People: Always obtain permission before entering private land for birdwatching. Be courteous and considerate towards local residents, landowners, and fellow birdwatchers sharing the same space. Avoid blocking roads, trails, or access points with vehicles or equipment. Respect local customs and regulations.

Table 12.8 - Summary of CEMAVE Code of Ethics Principles for Birdwatchers in Brazil

Principle Area	Key Actions / Avoidances
General Conduct	**DO:** Prioritize bird welfare, keep respectful distance, minimize stress. **DON'T:** Intentionally disturb or flush birds, especially at nests/roosts.
Playback Use	**DO:** Use sparingly, low volume, brief duration, ethically. **DON'T:** Use near nests, for sensitive species, repeatedly, alarm/distress calls, in high-traffic areas.
Nesting Sites	**DO:** Exercise extreme caution, limit observation time, keep significant distance. **DON'T:** Touch nests/eggs/young, alter nest surroundings/camouflage, use attraction methods nearby, flush birds.
Habitat Protection	**DO:** Stay on trails, minimize impact. **DON'T:** Damage vegetation, remove natural cover (e.g., around nests).
Information Sharing	**DO:** Share observations accurately on platforms (WikiAves, eBird). Report banded/tagged birds to CEMAVE. **DON'T:** Publicize sensitive locations (rare species, nests) without assessing risk and consulting authorities/landowners first.
Respect	**DO:** Obtain permission for private land access. Be courteous and considerate of local residents and other observers. Follow all laws and local rules. ❌ Do **not** trespass on private property or enter protected areas without appropriate permissions. ❌ Do **not** block roads, trails, gates, or access points with your vehicle or equipment. ❌ Do **not** ignore or violate local regulations, signage, or community protocols. ❌ Do **not** behave in ways that disturb or offend local residents, such as making excessive noise, littering, or intruding into homes or culturally sensitive areas. ❌ Do **not** assume access is automatically granted in rural or Indigenous territories—always ask first and follow guidance. ❌ Do **not** disregard cultural norms or dress codes in traditional communities or remote areas.

Source: *Based on principles outlined in the Código de Ética dos Observadores de Aves by CEMAVE/ICMBio.*

12.8.2. Complementary Insights: Summary of CEMAVE Code of Ethics for Birdwatchers in Brazil

The CEMAVE (Centro Nacional de Pesquisa e Conservação de Aves Silvestres) Code of Ethics provides essential guidance for birdwatchers across Brazil's diverse and often delicate ecosystems. Its principles are designed not only to protect birds but also to foster a deeper respect for natural habitats, local communities, and fellow observers. Here are some extended considerations:

General Conduct: Birdwatching is a form of nature appreciation, not intrusion. Ethical observers understand that their presence can alter bird behavior, especially during breeding or feeding times. Staying quiet, limiting movements, and using binoculars or scopes instead of physical proximity ensures the bird's natural behavior is not disrupted.

Playback Use (audio calls): Playback is a powerful tool—but potentially harmful if misused. Excessive or inappropriate use can exhaust birds, distract them from real calls, or lure them into danger. Ethical birders limit playback, especially in public hotspots, during breeding seasons, or for threatened species. Silence often brings more meaningful encounters.

Nesting Sites: Nests are sacred spaces. Even a well-intentioned glance can cause adults to abandon a nest or expose chicks to predators. Ethical birders observe from afar, never manipulate vegetation, and avoid lingering or sharing nest locations online. The best nest encounter is the one the bird never noticed.

Habitat Protection: Every step off-trail can cause damage. Brazil's habitats—from rainforests and cerrado to mangroves and white-sand ecosystems—are fragile and sometimes slow to recover. Birders should tread lightly, avoid compacting soil, and never disturb understory growth, even if it hides a better view.

Information Sharing: Transparency helps science—recklessness endangers birds. Uploading sightings to citizen science platforms (e.g., eBird, WikiAves) strengthens conservation, but discretion is vital when it comes to rare or endangered species. Avoid publishing exact coordinates of nests or roosts unless approved by conservation authorities.

Respect for People and Places: Birdwatching often happens in shared or inhabited landscapes—Indigenous territories, farming communities, or ecotourism sites. Ethical birders ask permission, respect fences and signage, and engage respectfully with local people. Dress modestly, avoid disruptive behavior, and recognize that access is a privilege, not a right.

12.8.3. Flying Responsibly: Promoting Ethical Avitourism

Adherence to these ethical principles by individual birdwatchers, guides, and tour operators is the cornerstone of responsible avitourism in Brazil. Tourists planning birding trips have a role to play by actively choosing tour operators, local guides, and accommodation providers that demonstrate a clear commitment to ethical practices and prioritize bird welfare. It is reasonable for prospective clients to inquire about a guide's or company's policy regarding practices like playback use or approaching nests before booking a tour.

Furthermore, supporting businesses that demonstrably contribute to local conservation efforts (e.g., through funding RPPNs, supporting research, or employing local community members) and that operate with respect for local communities helps ensure that avitourism remains a positive force. By making informed and ethical choices, tourists can create market demand for responsible practices, incentivizing the entire industry to adopt higher standards and ensuring that the pursuit of observing Brazil's magnificent birds contributes positively to their long-term conservation.

Part IX - The Path Forward: Nurturing Birdwatching and Conservation in Brazil

12.9. A Sky Full of Opportunities: Future Potential

Brazil stands poised on the cusp of realizing its immense potential as a world-leading destination for avitourism. Its unparalleled avian diversity—ranking among the top three countries globally in terms of both total species and endemic species—spans a stunning array of distinct biomes, representing an incomparable natural asset. This is further strengthened by a documented and growing domestic interest in birdwatching, along with a burgeoning global market for nature-based and experiential travel that continues to expand. Together, these factors create fertile ground for the continued development of birdwatching tourism.

Vast opportunities remain largely untapped. There is significant potential to develop new birding routes and circuits, particularly those that connect different biomes or highlight regional specialties. Promoting lesser-known destinations that are rich in endemic or threatened species could help distribute tourism benefits more widely and reduce pressure on established hotspots. Further integrating avitourism with community-based conservation initiatives offers promising pathways for sustainable livelihoods directly linked to biodiversity protection. As Guto Carvalho, founder of the influential *Avistar Brasil* bird fair, has suggested, birds themselves are powerful ambassadors for conservation—capable of engaging people through the inherent beauty, wonder, and simple joy they bring to observers. Focusing on this positive emotional connection and the delight of experiencing nature can be a powerful strategy for building a broader, more inclusive culture of conservation across Brazilian society.

12.9.1. Addressing the Challenges: Ensuring Sustainable and Inclusive Growth

However, realizing this significant potential requires a concerted and strategic effort to address several key challenges. Ensuring that future growth is both environmentally sustainable and socially equitable is paramount for long-term success. Critical areas requiring attention include:

Inclusivity and Diversity: The demographic profile of current Brazilian birders—predominantly white, older, and highly educated—highlights an urgent need for proactive measures to make the activity more accessible and appealing across different socio-economic and ethnic groups in Brazil. Initiatives that promote urban birding (accessible to large populations), incorporate birdwatching into school-based environmental education, create low-cost observation opportunities, and engage in targeted outreach campaigns could significantly broaden participation. This, in turn, would foster wider environmental awareness and help build a larger, more diverse domestic constituency for conservation.

Infrastructure and Professionalization: While excellent lodges and highly skilled guides exist—particularly in well-established birding regions such as the Pantanal and parts of the Atlantic Forest—continued investment is required to improve the quality and consistency of infrastructure and services nationwide. Priorities include ensuring safe and reliable transportation to key sites, providing accommodation options across a range of budgets, improving digital connectivity in remote areas, and investing in the training and certification of local guides in emerging destinations. Well-trained guides—with strong ornithological knowledge, ethical conduct, interpretive skills, and ideally multilingual abilities—are essential to delivering high-quality visitor experiences that meet international standards.

Strengthening Conservation Links: Although avitourism inherently depends on healthy ecosystems, mechanisms must be strengthened and made more transparent to ensure that revenue generated by the activity meaningfully contributes to the conservation of birds and habitats. This can include direct financial support to public and private protected areas (such as *Unidades de Conservação* and *Reservas Particulares do Patrimônio Natural*), funding for ornithological research and monitoring, investment in habitat restoration projects, and support for community-based conservation. Ensuring that these links are clearly communicated and effectively implemented is critical for maintaining avitourism's conservation-friendly image.

Research and Monitoring: Additional research is essential to better understand the potential ecological impacts of growing tourism activity on sensitive bird species and fragile habitats. This research can inform the creation of evidence-based, best-practice guidelines for managing visitor behavior. Moreover, ongoing monitoring of both environmental and socio-economic outcomes of avitourism projects is critical to ensuring long-term sustainability and enabling adaptive management as conditions evolve.

Sustainable growth in avitourism requires a holistic approach—one that simultaneously advances market development (through inclusivity and professionalization), environmental protection (via conservation funding and impact monitoring), and the mitigation of broader societal threats (such as illegal trade and governance challenges). Neglecting any one of these pillars risks undermining the long-term viability and positive potential of birdwatching tourism in Brazil.

Combating Illegal Trade: The persistent and widespread threat of illegal wildlife trafficking—particularly involving songbirds and parrots—directly undermines conservation efforts and depletes the natural resource base upon which avitourism depends. Addressing this complex issue requires a multi-faceted approach, including enhanced law enforcement (targeting trafficking networks, not just individual poachers), anti-corruption measures, demand-reduction campaigns (especially targeting domestic buyers), regulatory reform to address loopholes in captive breeding systems used to launder wild-caught birds, and strategies to address the socio-economic drivers of illegal trade, and TRAFFIC (2020) has had a pivotal role in helping to combat the wildlife trafficking, particularly of birds in Brazil:

Approximately 400 species of birds (one out of five native species) are impacted by the illegal bird trade in Brazil. There is a robust international market for songbirds and parrots both from Brazil, as well as reverse-trade flow in these species from neighbouring countries to Brazil to feed a thriving domestic market connected to bird-singing contests, which are legal in Brazil. Combating the illegal songbird trade is inextricably linked to the need for stringent control of legal breeding facilities to prevent the laundering of illegally captured wild birds. Officials estimate that by 2015, a total of about three million birds were registered through fraudulent practices in order to launder wild or illegally traded birds. Enforcement data referenced in the report revealed that the top five most popular species of birds at legal, non-commercial breeding facilities were also among the species seized in the largest numbers from the illegal bird trade. In 2020, a successful program known as "Operation Delivery" that helped curb the widespread laundering of songbirds in Brazil for over 15 years was effectively demobilised. To reduce illegal wildlife trade in Brazil, the report offers a number of recommendations. They include developing a national strategy for combatting wildlife trafficking, enhancing data collection and sharing across agencies, strengthening current environmental crimes legislation, and investing in infrastructure and technology to handle and identify wildlife seizures. (TRAFFIC, 2020, July 27, '*Vicious circle: New report spotlights Brazil's widespread wildlife trafficking*').

Under the leadership of Joachim S. Stassart and Dário Cardoso Jr., this study combined an extensive literature review with in-depth interviews of subject-matter experts to identify critical vulnerabilities in wildlife management oversight and shortcomings in anti-trafficking efforts. Concurrently, the team conducted a detailed analysis of seventeen case studies—each revealing patterns of fraud, corruption, and laundering—and plotted these incidents on Map in Fig. 12.5 to illustrate geographic risk concentrations. By integrating documentary research, expert testimony, and empirical case evidence, this comprehensive approach lays a solid groundwork for understanding and ultimately disrupting the systemic drivers of wildlife trafficking.

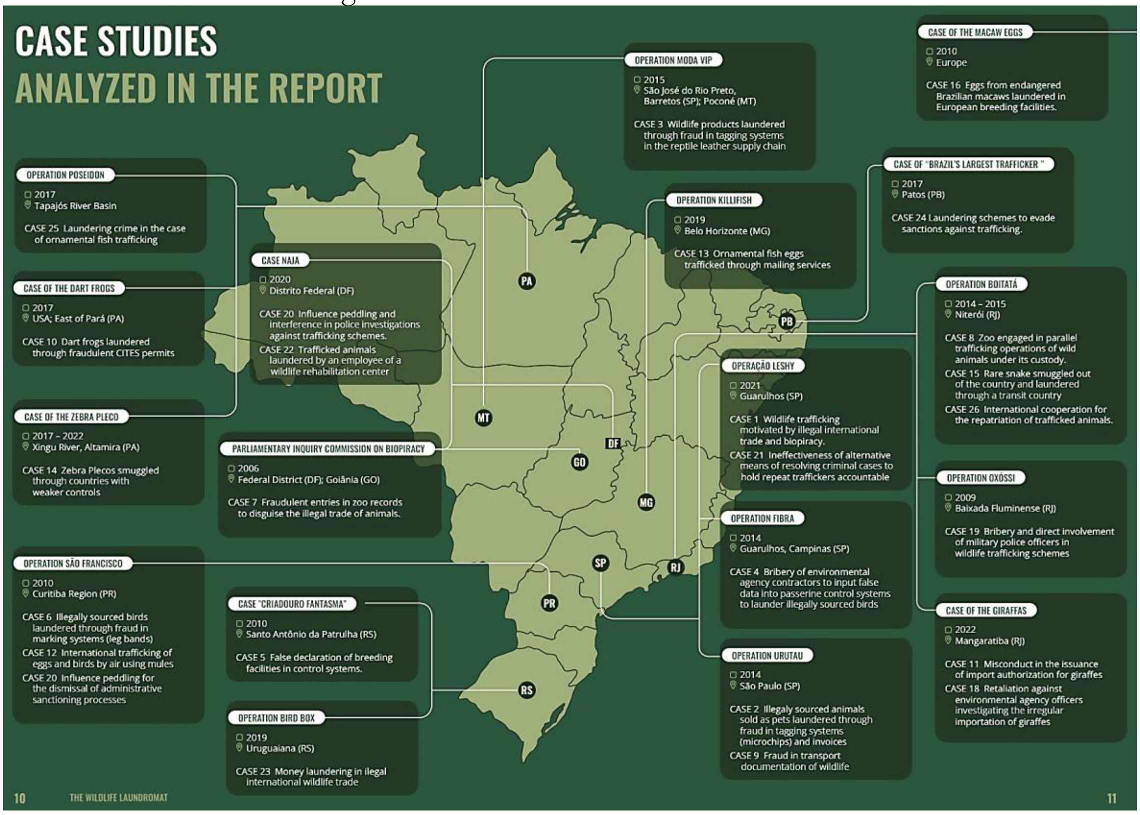


Figure 12.5 – Wildlife Trafficking in Brazil: 17 cases studies analyzed and their geographical location. **Source:** Stassart, J. S., & Cardoso Jr., D. (2020), p.10-11, *The wildlife laundromat: How fraud, corruption and laundering drive wildlife trafficking* [Report]. Transparency International Brazil. https://comunidade.transparenciainternacional.org.br/the-wildlife-laundromat

12.9.2. Conclusion: A Shared Flight Path Towards a Sustainable Future

Birdwatching in Brazil offers far more than the pursuit of an impressively long species list. It represents a powerful convergence of personal passion, economic opportunity, scientific discovery, and conservation action. From the vibrant, life-filled wetlands of the Pantanal to the endemic-rich and threatened remnants of the Atlantic Forest, the mysterious depths of the Amazon, the open savannas of the Cerrado, and the resilient drylands of the Caatinga, Brazil offers a lifetime of avian exploration opportunities within its borders.

The growing enthusiasm of its domestic birding community—amplified by the collaborative contributions of citizen science platforms such as *WikiAves* and *eBird*—is generating unprecedented knowledge about Brazil's avifauna and fostering deeper connections between people and nature. When developed responsibly, ethically, and inclusively, avitourism holds great promise: creating sustainable livelihoods for local communities, especially in remote areas; generating essential funding for conservation; and nurturing a greater appreciation for Brazil's irreplaceable natural heritage among domestic and international visitors alike.

Yet fulfilling this promise requires a clear-eyed commitment to overcoming the challenges ahead. Inclusivity must be expanded. Infrastructure and professional capacity must continue to grow. The illegal wildlife trade must be actively countered. And above all, conservation must remain at the heart of all development. As SAVE Brasil Director Pedro Develey has emphasized regarding his organization's mission, the aim must be to "protect birds and nature while bringing people into the cause… leaving a lasting legacy for birds, ecosystems, and society."

By embracing ethical practices—both individually and institutionally—by actively supporting conservation initiatives, promoting inclusivity, and celebrating the sheer wonder of its avian life, Brazil can chart a course where birdwatching truly soars hand-in-hand with the long-term protection of its globally significant natural treasures. This shared flight path calls for collaboration, commitment, and a visionary outlook focused on a future where both birds and people can thrive.

References

Almeida, S. M., Gonsioroski, G., Marques, N. C. S., et al. (2025). "Together is better": The contribution of academy, citizen science and gray literature for the knowledge of the urban avifauna of a megadiverse easternmost Amazonian ecotonal border. *Ornithological Research, 33*, Article 19. https://doi.org/10.1007/s43388-025-00224-5

Barbosa, K. V. C., Pivatto, M. A. C., Nascimento, R. A., Marques, E. M. V. C., Silva, D. A. M., Carvalho, G., & Quental, J. G. S. (2023/2024). *Perspectivas para a observação de aves no Brasil.* Retrieved from https://faunanews.com.br/wp-content/uploads/2024/05/Artigo-censo-dos-observadores-de-aves.pdf

Bernardon, B., & Nassar, P. (2012). Birdwatching in the Mamirauá Lake as an appeal to ecotourists/birdwatchers. *Uakari, 8*(2), 51. https://doi.org/10.31420/uakari.v8i2.128

BirdLife International. (2018–2024). *Species factsheets*. Retrieved from http://datazone.birdlife.org

BirdLife International. (2018). *State of the world's birds: Taking the pulse of the planet* (ISBN 978-1-912086-71-9). Cambridge, UK: BirdLife International. Retrieved from https://www.birdlife.org/wp-content/uploads/2021/02/SOWB2018_en.pdf

BirdLife International. (2024, May 17). *Soaring above: Pedro Develey's vision for Brazil's birds conservation*. BirdLife International News. Available at, https://www.birdlife.org/news/2024/05/17/soaring-above-pedro-develeys-vision-for-brazils-birds-conservation/

BirdLife International. (2025, February 27). *SAVE Brasil: 20 years of dedication to environmental conservation*. BirdLife International News. Available at, https://www.birdlife.org/news/2025/02/27/save-brasil-20-years-of-dedication-to-environmental-conservation/

Connell, J. (2009). Birdwatching, twitching and tourism: Towards an Australian perspective. *Australian Geographer, 40*(2), 203–217. https://doi.org/10.1080/00049180902964942

Cordell, H. K., & Herbert, N. G. (2002). The popularity of birding is still growing. *Birding, 34*(1), 54–61.

Daniels, D. (2017, May 21). *Red-legged Seriema (Cariama cristata), Bronx Zoo* [Photograph]. Wikimedia Commons. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Red-legged_Seriema_RWD2.jpg

da Silveira, E. (2019, March 10). Turismo descontrolado ameaça ambiente de Fernando de Noronha: Entre 1992 e 2018, o número de visitantes saltou de 10.094 para 103.722, o que coloca em risco a alta biodiversidade do arquipélago. O Eco. https://oeco.org.br/reportagens/turismo-descontrolado-ameaca-ambiente-de-fernando-de-noronha/

de Q. Piacentini, V., Aleixo, A., Eduardo Agne, C., Nachtigall Maurício, G., Fernando Pacheco, J., A. Bravo, G., R. R. Brito, G., N. Naka, L., Olmos, F., Posso, S., Fábio Silveira, L., S. Betini, G., Carrano, E., Franz, I., C. Lees, A., M. Lima, L., Pioli, D., Schunck, F., Raposo do Amaral, F., A. Bencke, G., Cohn-Haft, M., A. Figueiredo, L., C. Straube, F., & Cesari, E. (2015). Annotated checklist of the birds of Brazil by the Brazilian Ornithological Records Committee / Lista comentada das aves do Brasil pelo Comitê Brasileiro de Registros Ornitológicos. *Revista Brasileira De Ornitologia - Brazilian Journal Of Ornithology, 23*(2), 90-298. Retrieved from http://www.revbrasilornitol.com.br/BJO/article/view/1263

Destro, G. F. G., Pimentel, T. L., Sabaini, R. M., Borges, R. C., & Barreto, R. (2012). Efforts to combat wild animals trafficking in Brazil. In G. G. A. Lameed (Ed.), *Biodiversity enrichment in a diverse world* (Open access). IntechOpen. https://doi.org/10.5772/48351

Destro, G. F. G., De Marco, P., & Terribile, L. C. (2019). Comparing environmental and socioeconomic drivers of illegal capture of wild birds in Brazil. *Environmental Conservation*, *47*(1), 1–6. https://doi.org/10.1017/S0376892919000316

Emerton, L., Bishop, J., & Thomas, L. (2006). *Sustainable financing of protected areas: A global review of challenges and options* (IUCN Forest Conservation Programme, 109 pp.). Gland, Switzerland: IUCN.

Enedino, T. R., Loures-Ribeiro, A., & Santos, B. A. (2018). Protecting biodiversity in urbanizing regions: The role of urban reserves for the conservation of Brazilian Atlantic Forest birds. *Perspectives in Ecology and Conservation, 16*(1), 17–23. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.pecon.2017.11.001

Fortunato, L. (2024, April 26). *Saíra-apunhalada vira símbolo de semana dedicada à observação de aves no ES: Entenda nova lei estadual.* Terra da Gente. https://g1.globo.com/sp/campinas-regiao/terra-da-gente/noticia/2024/04/26/saira-apunhalada-vira-simbolo-de-semana-dedicada-a-observacao-de-aves-no-es-entenda-nova-lei-do-estado.ghtml

Fundação Biodiversitas. (n.d.). *Canudos Biological Station*. Conservation Birding. Retrieved from https://conservationbirding.org/?reserve=canudos-biological-station

Gill, F. B. (2006). *Ornithology* (3rd ed.). W. H. Freeman.

GI-TOC - Global Initiative Against Transnational Organized Crime (2024, October). *Monitoring online illegal wildlife trade: Trends from Brazil and South Africa*. https://globalinitiative.net/wp-content/uploads/2024/10/Monitoring-illegal-wildlife-trade-Brazil-and-South-Africa-GI-TOC-October-2024.pdf

Grand View Research. (2024a). *Birdwatching Tourism Market Size, Share & Trends Analysis Report*. Report ID: GVR-4-68038-310-8. Available at, https://www.grandviewresearch.com/industry-analysis/birdwatching-tourism-market-report

Grand View Research. (2024b). *Analysis Report. Global Wildlife Tourism Market Size & Outlook, 2023-2030*. Available at, https://www.grandviewresearch.com/horizon/outlook/wildlife-tourism-market-size/global

Hvenegaard, G. T., Butler, J. R., & Krystofiak, D. K. (1989). Economic values of bird watching at Point Pelee National Park, Canada. *Wildlife Society Bulletin, 17*(4), 526–531.

Instituto Brasileiro de Geografia e Estatística (IBGE). (2022). *Censo Demográfico 2022*. Panorama. IBGE. https://censo2022.ibge.gov.br/panorama/

Instituto Chico Mendes de Conservação da Biodiversidade (ICMBio). (2024). *Código de Ética dos Observadores de Aves*. Ministério do Meio Ambiente. https://www.gov.br/icmbio/pt-br/assuntos/centros-de-pesquisa/aves-silvestres/arquivos/codigo-etica-observadores-aves/view

Instituto Ecológica. (n.d.). *Fernando de Noronha Island faces problems with pollution*. Retrieved May 9, 2025, from https://www.ecologica.org.br/en/fernando-de-noronha-island-faces-problems-with-pollution/

Kavanagh, J. (2015). *Brazil birds: A folding pocket guide to familiar species* (1st ed.). Waterford Press. https://www.nhbs.com/brazil-birds-book

Kerlinger, P. (1993). Birding economics and birder demographics studies as conservation tools. In D. M. Finch & P. W. Stangel (Eds.), *Status and management of neotropical migratory birds* (pp. 32–38). U.S. Department of Agriculture, Forest Service.

Klemann-Junior, L., Villegas Vallejos, M. A., Scherer-Neto, P., & Simões Vitule, J. R. (2017). Traditional scientific data vs. uncoordinated citizen science effort: A review of the current status and comparison of data on avifauna in Southern Brazil. *PLOS ONE, 12*(12), e0188819. https://doi.org/10.1371/journal.pone.0188819

Market.us. (2024). *Birdwatching Tourism Market Size... Forecast 2024 to 2033*. Market.us Intelligence Report.

McDonnell, M. J., & MacGregor-Fors, I. (2016). The ecological future of cities. *Science, 352*(6288), 936–938. https://doi.org/10.1126/science.aaf3630

Myers, N., Mittermeier, R. A., Mittermeier, C. G., da Fonseca, G. A. B., & Kent, J. (2000). Biodiversity hotspots for conservation priorities. *Nature, 403*(6772), 853–858. https://doi.org/10.1038/35002501

Oliveira, N. (2022, September 23). *Turismo de observação de aves alia lazer à natureza*. Ministério do Turismo, Governo Federal. https://www.gov.br/turismo/pt-br/assuntos/noticias/turismo-de-observacao-de-aves-alia-lazer-a-natureza

Pacheco, J. F., Silveira, L. F., Aleixo, A., Agne, C. E., Bencke, G. A., Bravo, G. A., Brito, G. R. R., Cohn-Haft, M., Maurício, G. N., Naka, L. N., Olmos, F., Posso, S. R., Lees, A. C., Figueiredo, L. F. A., Carrano, E., Guedes, R. C., Cesari, E., Franz, I., Schunck, F., & Piacentini, V. de Q. (2021). Annotated checklist of the birds of Brazil by the Brazilian Ornithological Records Committee—second edition. *Ornithology Research, 29*, 94–105. https://doi.org/10.1007/s43388-021-00058-x

Peralta, N. B. (2002). Implantação do programa de ecoturismo na Reserva de Desenvolvimento Sustentável Mamirauá, Amazonas, Brasil. *Revista Ciência e Tecnologia, 2*, 1–21.

Peralta, N. B., Ozório, R., & Martins, E. (2010). *Ecoturismo de base comunitária na Reserva de Desenvolvimento Sustentável Mamirauá, Estado do Amazonas* (Série Turisol de Metodologias no Turismo Comunitário, Vol. 3, 46 pp.). São Paulo, Brazil: Rede Turisol.

Rede Nacional de Combate ao Tráfico de Animais Silvestres (RENCTAS). (2001). *1º Relatório Nacional sobre o Tráfico de Fauna Silvestre*. RENCTAS. https://www.renctas.org.br/wp-content/uploads/2014/02/REL_RENCTAS_pt_final.pdf

Reserva Ecológica de Guapiaçu - REGUA (n.d.). *Reserva Ecológica de Guapiaçu (REGUA)*. Retrieved May 10, 2025, from https://www.regua.org.br/en/

Ribeiro, M. C., Metzger, J. P., Martensen, A. C., Ponzoni, F. J., & Hirota, M. M. (2009). The Brazilian Atlantic Forest: How much is left, and how is the remaining forest distributed? Implications for conservation. *Biological Conservation, 142*(6), 1141–1153. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.biocon.2009.02.021

Ridgely, R. S., Gwynne, J. A., Tudor, G., & Argel, M. (2016). *Wildlife Conservation Society Birds of Brazil: The Atlantic Forest of Southeast Brazil, including São Paulo and Rio de Janeiro*. Cornell University Press. Retrieved from https://dokumen.pub/wildlife-conservation-society-birds-of-brazil-the-atlantic-forest-of-southeast-brazil-including-sao-paulo-and-rio-de-janeiro-9781501704307.html

Schubert, S. C., Manica, L. T., & De Camargo Guaraldo, A. (2019). Revealing the potential of a huge citizen-science platform to study bird migration. *Emu – Austral Ornithology, 119*(4), 364–373. https://doi.org/10.1080/01584197.2019.1609340

Sekercioglu, C. H. (2002). Impacts of birdwatching on human and avian communities. *Environmental Conservation, 29*(3), 282–289. https://doi.org/10.1017/S0376892902000206

Sekercioglu, C. H. (2003). Conservation through commodification. *Birding, 35*, 394–402.

Somenzari, M., do Amaral, P. P., Cueto, V. R., de Guaraldo, A. C., Jahn, A. E., de Lima, D. M., de Lima, P. C., Lugarini, C., Machado, C. G., Martinez, J., do Nascimento, J. L. X., Pacheco, J. F., Paludo, D., Prestes, N. P., Serafini, P. P., Silveira, L. F., de Sousa, A. E. B. A., de Sousa, N. A., de Souza, M. A., … Whitney, B. M. (2018). An overview of migratory birds in Brazil. *Papéis Avulsos de Zoologia, 58*, e20185803. https://doi.org/10.11606/1807-0205/2018.58.03

Spherical Insights. (2024, September). *Global birdwatching tourism market size, share, and COVID-19 impact analysis and forecast 2023–2033* (Report No. SI6310; 250 pp.). Spherical Insights. https://www.sphericalinsights.com/reports/birdwatching-tourism-market

Stassart, J. S., & Cardoso Jr., D. (2020). *The wildlife laundromat: How fraud, corruption and laundering drive wildlife trafficking* [Report]. Transparency International Brazil. Retrieved May 10, 2025, from https://comunidade.transparenciainternacional.org.br/the-wildlife-laundromat

Steven, R., Castley, J. G., & Buckley, R. (2013). Tourism revenue as a conservation tool for threatened birds in protected areas. *PLoS ONE, 8*(5), e62598. https://doi.org/10.1371/journal.pone.0062598

Steven, R., Morrison, C., & Castley, J. G. (2014). Birdwatching and avitourism: A global review of research into its participant markets, distribution and impacts, highlighting future research priorities to inform sustainable avitourism management. *Journal of Sustainable Tourism, 23*(8–9), 1257–1276. https://doi.org/10.1080/09669582.2014.924955

Sullivan, B. L., Wood, C. L., Iliff, M. J., Bonney, R. E., Fink, D., & Kelling, S. (2009). eBird: A citizen-based bird observation network in the biological sciences. *Biological Conservation, 142*(10), 2282–2292. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.biocon.2009.05.006

TRAFFIC. (2020, July 27). *Vicious circle: New report spotlights Brazil's widespread wildlife trafficking*. TRAFFIC. Retrieved May 10, 2025, from https://www.traffic.org/publications/reports/brazils-widespread-wildlife-trafficking/

Tubelis, D. P. (2023). Spatiotemporal distribution of photographic records of Brazilian birds available in the WikiAves citizen science database. *Birds, 4*(1), 28–45. https://doi.org/10.3390/birds4010003

Ulrich, R. S. (1984). View through a window may influence recovery from surgery. *Science, 224*(4647), 420–421. https://doi.org/10.1126/science.6143402

Verified Market Research. (2024). *Birdwatching Tourism Market Size and Forecast*. VMR Research ID: BWT-2024-VMR.

Wight, P. (2007). Ecotourism, CSR, and the fourth dimension of sustainability. In *Critical Issues in Ecotourism* (pp. 214–239). https://doi.org/10.1016/B978-0-7506-6878-1.50015-3

WikiAves. (n.d.). *Portal de aves do Brasil*. Retrieved from https://www.wikiaves.com.br/

World Health Organization. Regional Office for Europe. (2016, October 1). *Urban green spaces and health* (WHO Reference Number: WHO/EURO:2016-3352-43111-60341).

https://www.who.int/europe/publications/i/item/WHO-EURO-2016-3352-43111-60341

Other Works Consulted

(Includes supplementary sources providing context or mentioned in the original query/outline)

- Agami Nature Tours. (n.d.). *Cristalino Lodge*. https://www.agaminature.com
- Amazon Adventures. (n.d.). *Amazon tours - The Mamiraua Reserve has a lot to offer*. https://www.amazonadventures.com
- Amazonas Travel. (n.d.). *Pousada Uacari at Mamirauá Sustainable Development Reserve*. https://www.amazonastravel.com.br
- American Bird Conservancy. (n.d.). *Lear's Macaw – Canudos Reserve*. https://www.conservationbirding.com
- Avibase – Bird Checklists of the World. (n.d.). *Brazil bird checklist*. https://avibase.bsc-eoc.org
- Birding Ecotours. (n.d.). *Brazil birding tours*. https://www.birdingecotours.com
- BirdQuest Tours. (n.d.). *Southwest Brazil specialities*. https://www.birdquest-tours.com
- BUBO Listing. (n.d.). *Brazil – Brazilian Ornithological Records Committee (CBRO)*. https://www.bubo.org
- Comitê Brasileiro de Registros Ornitológicos (CBRO). (n.d.). *Listas*. http://www.cbro.org.br/listas/
- Cristalino Lodge. (n.d.). *Cristalino Lodge – An Amazon Sanctuary*. https://www.cristalinolodge.com.br
- eBird. (n.d.). *Explore Brazil*. https://ebird.org/region/BR
- Forest Therapy Hub. (n.d.). *Birdwatching as a gateway to conservation in Guto Carvalho's interspecies empathy*. https://www.foresttherapyhub.com [Mentioned in outline context]
- Nomad Nature Travel. (n.d.). *Canudos Biological Station*. https://www.nomadnaturetravel.com
- Pantanal Jaguar Safaris. (n.d.). *Amazon tour – Cristalino Jungle Lodge*. https://www.pantanaljaguarsafaris.com
- Regua. (n.d.). *Birdwatching*. https://www.regua.org.br
- Rockjumper Birding Tours. (n.d.). *Brazil: A deeper look*. https://www.rockjumperbirding.com
- Safari UK (Journeysmiths). (n.d.). *Brazil's best lodges for birding*. https://www.safari.co.uk
- SeaWorld Parks & Entertainment. (n.d.). *Animal Facts: Lear's Macaw*. https://seaworld.org/animals/facts/birds/lears-macaw/
- Xeno-canto. (n.d.). Retrieved from https://xeno-canto.org/

Chapter 13

Roraima's Avian Frontier: Ecology, Conservation and the Rise of Avitourism in Brazil's Northern Amazon

Ismar Borges de Lima
Universidade Estadual de Roraima-UERR, Brazil &
RECINATUR Foundation. Email: ismar@uerr.edu.br

Paulo Alberto da Costa Gois, Brazil
Caracarai City Hall. Email: goispaulinho@hotmail.com

Wilson de Moraes Sousa
Roraima State University, UERR, Brazil.
Email: wsousa@uerr.edu.br

Summary

Roraima, Brazil's northernmost state, sits at the meeting-point of three great Neotropical landscapes—the Amazon Basin, the Guiana-Shield highlands and the lavrado savannas—and consequently supports one of South America's most heterogeneous bird faunas. Historical syntheses list 740+ resident species, while recent citizen-science portals register c. 760, including endemics such as the Critically Endangered Rio Branco Antbird and fire-sensitive white-sand specialists found almost nowhere else. Three National Parks (Monte Roraima, Serra da Mocidade, Viruá), eight other federal units and five state reserves now protect >50 % of the territory, yet wildfire, expanding ranching, river dams and wildlife trafficking still erode habitat quality, especially in savanna and flood-plain mosaics. Over the last decade birdwatching—backed by WikiAves, eBird and a handful of trained local guides—has emerged as a low-impact alternative to extractive development. Flagship circuits link Boa Vista's gallery-forest savannas, the BR-174 "Highway to the Lost World," Viruá's campinaranas and the island-studded Baixo Rio Branco, where an experienced party can record >200 species in a single day. Community figures show how citizen science, Indigenous knowledge and micro-entrepreneurship turn biodiversity into livelihood. Using recreation-specialization, motivational, political-ecology and actor-network lenses, this chapter argues that Roraima's avitourism future depends on five pillars: stronger protected-area governance, inclusive benefit sharing, fire-smart landscape management, visitor infrastructure that respects ecological limits, and continual data exchange between scientists, guides and policy makers. When these elements align, Roraima can become a global model for frontier regions where birds, economies and cultures are equally at stake.

Roadmap: Birdwatching and Avitourism in Roraima - Detailing the Ten Parts of the Chapter

A chapter roadmap is a strategic tool placed at the beginning of a chapter to help readers navigate its structure and content. It provides a concise list of the chapter's major parts, accompanied by short descriptions that explain the focus of each section. This enhances reader orientation by clarifying how the content is organized and how different parts relate to one another. For academic and professional readers, the roadmap improves comprehension by offering a preview of key themes, theories, or empirical data, and supports selective reading by allowing individuals to focus on the sections most relevant to their interests. It also reveals the logical progression of ideas, guiding the reader from contextual foundations to applied analysis and concluding insights. Moreover, a roadmap serves as a useful reference and teaching tool, enabling students, educators, and researchers to better engage with complex material. In the case of Chapter 13, which integrates biogeography, tourism, conservation, community narratives, and theoretical frameworks, the roadmap functions as an intellectual guidepost that makes the chapter more accessible, modular, and aligned with best practices in academic communication.

Part	Title	Short Description
Part I	**Biogeographical Setting: Avifauna and Avitourism**	Introduces the ecological foundations of Roraima's birdlife, outlining key species diversity, endemism, and the state's strategic importance for national and global birdwatching circuits.
Part II	**Roraima: Geographical, Environmental, and Socio-Demographic Context for Avian Studies**	Describes Roraima's physical geography, climate systems, ecosystems, and population patterns, contextualizing the setting for avian research and tourism.
Part III	**Land Tenure, Conservation and the Protected Areas of Roraima**	Discusses the legal landscape of land ownership, conservation unit typologies, and policy frameworks that shape biodiversity protection and territorial management.
Part IV	**Population Dynamics and Key Demographic Data of Roraima**	Presents demographic trends, including urban–rural distribution, migration patterns, and socio-economic indicators relevant to planning and tourism.
Part V	**Access, Infrastructure and Frontiers: Mobility in Roraima**	Analyzes logistical connectivity, tourism-related infrastructure, and frontier dynamics affecting accessibility to birdwatching destinations.
Part VI	**Viruá National Park: A Case Study**	Offers an in-depth look at Viruá National Park, emphasizing its ecological significance, tourism potential, conservation challenges, and role in avitourism development.
Part VII	**Talking to Experts on Avifauna, Birding and Educational Learning**	Features interview-based insights from local guides and conservation professionals, highlighting knowledge transmission, experiential learning, and community engagement.
Part VIII	**Birding Circuits & Hotspots**	Maps and describes the main birdwatching routes, observation points, and ecologically rich microregions in Caracaraí and Viruá, with attention to species appeal and visitor patterns.
Part IX	**Integrative Theoretical Analysis – Birdwatching, Local Stakeholders, and Systemic Dynamics in Roraima's Avitourism Landscape**	Applies four theoretical lenses—Recreation Specialization, Motivation Theory, Political Ecology, and Actor–Network Theory—to interpret the avitourism system and its stakeholders.
Part X	**Conclusion: From Margin to Model – Roraima's Pathway to Bird-Led, Low-Carbon Development**	Synthesizes findings and proposes Roraima as a replicable model for sustainable, biodiversity-based tourism that supports conservation and inclusive local development.

Part I - Biogeographical Setting: Avifauna and Avitourism

13.0 Roraima - Birding Brazil's Untamed North. A Biogeographical Crossroads in Northern Brazil: an Introduction

Situated in the remote northernmost reaches of Brazil—where the country's vast green landscapes meet the borders of Venezuela and Guyana—Roraima stands out as a region of exceptional ecological and biological significance. This unique state represents the confluence of three major environmental formations: the expansive and humid lowlands of the Amazon Basin, the rugged and ancient highlands of the Guiana Shield, and the wide, open savanna plains locally known as *lavrado*. Roraima contains the single largest, uninterrupted sweep of savanna in the northern Amazon (Barni et al., 2024). Within the Ministry of the Environment's national biome-and-ecoregion scheme, this tract is classified under the "Savannas of Guyana" ecoregion, itself nested inside the Amazonian Biome (Barbosa et al. 2007; Ferreira 2001; Capobianco et al. 2001).

The *lavrado*, an intricate ecological system composed of both wooded and open terrains, remains largely undocumented in scientific literature. This lack of baseline knowledge has hindered the development of targeted conservation initiatives, particularly for safeguarding rare species and biologically rich habitats. Protection across these savanna landscapes is extremely limited; no designated Conservation Unit (CU) currently encompasses a meaningful share of the distinct savanna vegetation types characteristic of this portion of the Amazon. As noted, "considering the system of CUs in Roraima, the representativeness of the *lavrado* is low, totaling only 198 km² or less than 0.5% of the *lavrado* area (Barbosa et al., 2007, p.36)."

Among the few existing protected areas, Monte Roraima National Park (PARNA) stands out as the sole CU with any significant and uninterrupted coverage of this biome. This park, which lies entirely within the boundaries of the Raposa-Serra do Sol Indigenous Territory, is "the only CU that possesses a significant continuous area of savanna, equal to 99 km² or 8.7% of the area of the PARNA (Barbosa et al., 2007, p.36)." The vegetation in this area consists of a diverse mix, ranging from steppe-savanna types to wooded zones, interspersed with grasslands, parkland formations, and forest patches. Ecologically, these grasslands form part of the expansive "Rio Branco–Rupununi" landscape complex that spans the tri-border area shared by Brazil, Guyana, and Venezuela (Barbosa et al., 2007), "located at 59 to 65ºW longitude and -1ºS to 5ºN latitude. Roraima is divided into 15 municipalities and has an overall extent of approximately 225,116 km2 […] presenting two distinct seasons: a rainy season in April-November, with highest rainfall indices in June and July, and a dry season in December-March" (Rosa-Freitas et al., 2007, p. 351). The intersection of these distinct ecosystems creates a highly diverse and complex ecological mosaic, positioning Roraima not only as a political frontier but also as a remarkable biogeographical zone of convergence, where biodiversity flourishes in varied and often unexpected forms.

Among the key contributions to the understanding of ecological and conservation dynamics in Roraima is the work by Ferreira et al. (2007), which offers a comprehensive overview of fish biodiversity, ecological processes, and conservation strategies within the Rio Branco basin. Their 208-page volume synthesizes critical data on aquatic ecosystems and highlights the urgency of preserving ichthyofauna in the context of increasing environmental pressures in northern Amazonia. Complementing this regional focus, Capobianco et al. (2001) provide a broader, national-level assessment of biodiversity within the Brazilian Amazon. Their 540-page publication outlines priority actions for conservation, sustainable resource use, and equitable benefit-sharing mechanisms, based on extensive analyses of ecological patterns and threats across the biome. Published by the Instituto Socioambiental in partnership with *Estação Liberdade*, the volume remains a foundational reference for biodiversity planning and public policy in the region. Together, these works underscore the critical need for integrated conservation frameworks that link aquatic and terrestrial systems, local and regional scales, and scientific research with participatory governance.

For birdwatchers and ornithologists alike, Roraima offers an extraordinary opportunity to explore one of the most diverse avian landscapes in South America. The state functions as a biological meeting point for multiple ecological regions: species typical of the Amazonian rainforest coexist with endemics restricted to the Guiana highlands, while savanna-adapted birds and specialists from the white-sand *campinarana* forests occupy specialized niches throughout the territory. This intricate network of habitats supports an impressive range of bird species, including several that are highly localized, rare, or endangered—some of which are found nowhere else on the planet.

Whether you are a seasoned birder in search of new endemics or a nature enthusiast captivated by wild frontiers, Roraima stands as one of South America's last great ornithological frontiers—a region where the rare sings, the landscapes shift, and the promise of discovery is ever-present.

Bird-watching—often branded avitourism—is fast becoming Roraima's signature draw. The state harbours about 736 bird species in habitats that range from Amazonian rainforest and *lavrado* savanna to cloud-forested tepui plateaux, a mix that yields rarities found nowhere else in Brazil, such as the Roraiman Antwren (*Herpsilochmus roraimae*), Tepui Wren, and Sharp-tailed Ibis (SEPLAN-RR, 2022). Improved air connections via Brasília now allow week-long itineraries that link Guyana's lowlands to Roraima's highlands, turning what was once a specialist's dream into an increasingly marketable reality.

Local capacity has grown in step with demand. Since 2022, Cadastur-backed courses have certified bilingual bird and nature guides, while citizen-science uploads reveal a 40 % jump in Roraima eBird checklists over two years (eBird, 2025). Photo-safari groups share daily sightings from Viruá National Park and the Tepequém ridge, and social-media buzz is converting curiosity into confirmed bookings.

Since 2021, the state of Roraima has formally recognized April 25 as State Birdwatching Day, following the approval of Law No. 1.588/2021 by the Legislative Assembly. This legislative initiative was created with the strategic aim of promoting ecotourism, raising environmental awareness, and celebrating the state's extraordinary avian diversity. Located in the northernmost region of Brazil and forming part of both Amazonian and Guianan biogeographical zones, Roraima is home to some of the most biologically diverse savanna-forest mosaics in South America. According to data from the state's Ecological-Economic Zoning (ZEE) report, more than 730 bird species have been officially recorded, including numerous endemics and species of conservation concern. This diversity places Roraima as a promising frontier for sustainable nature-based tourism, especially birdwatching, which aligns with global trends favoring low-impact travel and wildlife appreciation.

The institutionalization of Birdwatching Day is not merely symbolic; it reflects growing recognition by public authorities of the role that bird-based tourism can play in both conservation and regional development. Birdwatching encourages environmental stewardship while directly contributing to the local economy—fostering demand for lodging, transportation, food services, and qualified nature guides. In addition, it aligns with broader conservation goals by encouraging non-extractive interaction with natural landscapes and enhancing local appreciation for endemic fauna. Protected areas like Monte Roraima National Park and other savanna ecosystems such as the *lavrado* provide ideal settings for this form of ecotourism, linking natural beauty with economic opportunities for rural and Indigenous communities.

Equally significant are the grassroots movements that have emerged in recent years to promote birdwatching as both a citizen science initiative and a cultural practice. The Roraima Birdwatching Club (COA-RR), founded in 2019, has become a central hub for amateur and professional birders alike, fostering inclusive participation, environmental education, and biodiversity documentation. Through local engagement, club members contribute to species monitoring, lead informal birding expeditions, and support curious beginners via platforms like WikiAves and social media. These efforts illustrate how birdwatching is being internalized not only as a tourism modality but as a civic contribution to sustainable development. The experience of individuals who transition from casual observers to skilled birders capable of identifying species by sight and sound underscores the accessibility and transformative nature of the practice. As such, birdwatching in Roraima today exemplifies a multi-scalar, community-driven approach to conservation, where law, policy, and popular engagement converge in defense of biodiversity (Oliveira, 2024), particularly related to the role of citizen science.

There are a series of initiatives in the last years aiming at the promotion and consolidation of birdwatching and avitourism practices in Roraima. There are institutional and individual efforts in this sense. SEBRAE, and other Institutions have organized workshops and activities focused on birding, as well as the ICMBio regarding the Conservation Units and birding in Roraima. There is a guide on birds of Roraima published some years ago. It outlines and gives details on the birds that can be observed in the northernmost region of Amazonia.

13.1. Birds of Roraima: From Highway Inventories to Illustrated Field Guides

Roraima's extraordinary mix of habitats—terra firme rainforest, sweeping savannas, vast white-sand campinaranas, diverse flooded forests and even tepui plateaus—supports one of the richest bird assemblages on Earth. Naka et al.'s foundational work synthesized 741 rigorously confirmed resident species—drawing on field surveys, museum specimens and literature—and proposed an additional 69 likely records, suggesting a potential avifaunal pool of around 810 species in Roraima. However, more recent community-driven platforms report somewhat lower tallies: as of May 20 2025, WikiAves lists 762 species for the state, while eBird (via BirdLife International) shows 757 species documented. These discrepancies underscore both the dynamic nature of avian distribution data and the importance of continuous, coordinated monitoring efforts. Building on that, Laranjeiras & Naka (2014) mapped how the BR-174 "Highway to the Lost World" links these ecosystems over 600 km, showing that an experienced birder can log over 200 species in a single day simply by travelling between contrasting habitats—gallery forests near Boa Vista for Critically Endangered endemics, savanna foothills for Sun Parakeet flocks, and riverside várzeas for hoatzins and antbirds.

Long before the highway studies, pioneering surveys by Naka et al. (2006, 2007, 2012) provided comprehensive checklists, range maps and analyses of suture-zone dynamics in the Rio Branco basin, while Diehl's (2009) urban inventories in Boa Vista revealed how species like the Sun Parakeet and Rio Branco Antbird can thrive even in city gardens. These foundational works established distributional baselines, identified habitat specialists and underscored Roraima's position at the meeting point of three Amazonian areas of endemism—critical scaffolding for today's conservation planning and birding itineraries.

Filling a crucial visual gap, *Guide to the Birds of Roraima* (Pavani & Camacho, 2018) pairs 150 reliably recorded species with full-color photographs and succinct field notes on identification, habitat and behaviour. Rather than replacing earlier scientific data, this field-ready manual translates it into an accessible resource for researchers, tour operators and amateur birdwatchers alike. Presented on 14 September 2018 in Boa Vista, the guide's launch brought together ornithologists, environmental educators, graduate students and local guides for demonstrations of its identification keys, distribution maps and call samples—solidifying its role as both an educational tool and a cornerstone for sustainable avitourism in Roraima.

Birdwatching has surged into one of the world's fastest-growing nature-based activities, driving an estimated USD 41 billion global economy and welcoming millions of new participants each year (Schwoerer & Dawson, 2022). Beyond its economic impact, birding uniquely bridges recreation and science: platforms like eBird allow everyday enthusiasts to submit checklists, photos and audio recordings that feed into continental-scale monitoring programs, revealing shifts in species' ranges and informing urgent conservation measures (Sullivan et al., 2014). In Brazil, television features and news reports have celebrated birding's power to "save species" by galvanizing public support and channeling revenue back into habitat protection (BirdLife International, 2024).

Birds are also keystone engineers in their ecosystems: insect-eaters curb pest outbreaks, frugivores and nectarivores pollinate flowers and disperse seeds, and scavengers help recycle nutrient — all functions that underpin forest regeneration and landscape resilience (Sekercioglu, 2006). Because many bird species respond quickly to environmental change, involving citizens in systematic bird surveys both deepens public awareness and supplies critical data for managing forests, wetlands and savannas. In this way, cultivating a birdwatching culture becomes both an effective conservation strategy and a powerful driver of local stewardship.

Source: *Catarse.me, Guia de Aves de Roraima:* *https://www.catarse.me/guiadeavesderoraima*

Nowhere is this synergy more striking than in Roraima, where the overlapping of terra firme rainforest, expansive savannas, white-sand campinaranas, diverse floodplain forests and mist-cloaked tepuis gives rise to one of Amazonia's richest avifaunas. Luis Fábio Silveira and colleagues' *Guia das Aves de Roraima* (2008) was the first comprehensive Portuguese-language field guide, illustrating over 760 resident species with colour plates, distribution maps and habitat notes—an indispensable resource for Brazilian naturalists. Luciano Naka et al.'s synthesis (2006) confirmed 741 species through rigorous fieldwork, specimen records and literature review—and, by adding 69 likely records, pushed Roraima's potential total close to 810 species. Later, Laranjeiras & Naka (2014) demonstrated how a single day's birding along the BR-174 "Highway to the Lost World" can tally over 200 species simply by moving between gallery forests around Boa Vista, savanna foothills alive with Sun Parakeet flocks, and the black-water várzeas where hoatzins and specialized antbirds congregate.

Together, these cornerstone works—and the richly illustrated Pavani & Camacho (2018) guide—form the scientific and practical framework for responsible avitourism in Roraima. By training local bird guides, empowering community-based monitoring, and embedding birdwatching within broader environmental education, this initiative channels tourism revenue into grassroots conservation, ensuring that Roraima's extraordinary birdlife continues to inspire wonder—and protection—for generations to come.

Alongside birding, international tourism as a whole surged in 2024. Federal border counts recorded 10,868 direct foreign arrivals, up 31.6 % on 2023; state estimates that include visitors entering Brazil elsewhere raise the total to over 16 000, a striking 97 % year-on-year leap (Embratur, 2024; Governo de Roraima, 2025). December alone welcomed 699 overseas visitors, more than double the tally for December 2023.

Ticket-origin data help clarify this momentum. The largest seat shares bound for Boa Vista came from Chile, Portugal, Argentina, Uruguay, and the United States, funnelling mainly through Brasília (53.3 %) and São Paulo (34.0 %) hubs (Embratur, 2024). Groups were small and heavily leisure-driven, underscoring Roraima's pull as a nature-focused destination rather than a corporate meetings market.

Visitor interest now extends well beyond the iconic Mount Roraima. Travellers are discovering the waterfalls of the Tepequém Highlands, freshwater beaches like Lago do Robertinho, Blue Lake, and Aquamak, River beaches in Boa Vista city such as Caçari and Polar, as well as thematic parks such as Eco-Park, and Indigenous cultural circuits near Pacaraima and Normandia. Sport-fishing has matured into a second powerhouse: riverside lodges on the lower Rio Branco draw anglers from three continents, and the Tucunaré (Peacock Bass) Festival in Caroebe is rapidly becoming a seasonal anchor for the south-eastern frontier (Governo de Roraima, 2025). Caroebe's II Peacock Bass Sport Fishing Festival (December 6–7) turns the Jatapu Hydroelectric reservoir at Entre Rios into a premier fishing destination, where anglers of all levels pursue trophy-sized peacock bass (Bezerra, 2024). Supported by the Government of Roraima, the festival emphasizes responsible catch-and-release practices and features expert-led workshops on sustainable fisheries management. The event's stunning lakeside setting invites visitors to explore local lodgings, restaurants and eco-tourism services while enjoying the region's rich biodiversity.

Such breadth is no accident. Embratur's 2024 "Visit Brasil New York" road-show spotlighted Monte Roraima, while the "Conexão Embratur" workshop helped Boa Vista enterprises reach international standards (Embratur, 2024). A new state image bank feeds the Integrated Amazonian Routes platform, and Roraima keeps a visible profile at trade fairs such as ABAV Expo and BTM Fortaleza, appearing alongside larger northern states.

Rapid growth, however, demands vigilant stewardship. Many headline sites sit inside Indigenous territories or federal conservation units, making co-management agreements and impact monitoring essential. The same applies to the Rio Branco fishing lodges, which rely on intact gallery forests and healthy fish stocks; unchecked fires or overfishing could quickly erode their allure. Overall, 2024 marked Roraima's shift from remote curiosity to credible nature-tourism hub. Strategic marketing, an increasingly diverse portfolio—from tepui treks and bird-watching circuits to sport-fishing and cultural routes—and collaborative governance have created real momentum. Whether today's surge matures into long-term success will hinge on balancing promotion with protection of the very ecosystems that inspire travellers to journey north.

13.1.1. Expert Insight on the Unique Birds of Roraima

A respected voice in Brazilian ornithology, Dr. Luís Fábio Silveira has contributed significantly to our understanding of South American birdlife. With a doctorate in Zoology and a distinguished role as curator of the ornithological collections at the Museum of Zoology of the University of São Paulo (USP), he is a leading researcher in the field. He is also a member of the Brazilian Ornithological Records Committee (CBRO), a research associate of the World Pheasant Association in the UK, and the author of over a dozen books and numerous scientific papers on birds.

In his article *"Mundo das Aves: As exclusivas aves de Roraima"* published in Cães & Cia magazine (Issue 405, January 2013, p. 40), Silveira offers a compelling portrait of the unique avifauna of Roraima. He draws attention to the state's "lavrados"—a distinctive type of open savanna found in northern Brazil—and their ecological significance as habitats for rare and specialized bird species. Silveira emphasizes that Roraima's birdlife reflects deep biogeographical connections with both the Central Brazilian Cerrado and the savannas of northern South America. According to his analysis, certain species found in Roraima today—such as the *Eastern Meadowlark (Sturnella magna)* and the *Double-striped Thick-knee (Burhinus bistriatus)*—are descendants of birds that migrated from North America during ancient glacial periods, when open grasslands extended across what is now the Amazon Basin.

Notably, Silveira contrasts the avifauna of Roraima's lavrados with that of the Brazilian Cerrado, pointing out the absence of iconic species like the *Red-legged Seriema (Cariama cristata)* and the *Greater Rhea (Rhea americana)*, which were unable to cross the vast Amazon River barrier. This highlights Roraima as a biogeographical island, shaped by historical isolation and evolutionary adaptation. In his view, the relative inaccessibility of Roraima and its geographic remoteness have preserved ecological features that are largely unknown to the broader scientific and birdwatching communities. His article underscores the urgent need to explore and document this region's biodiversity—not only for academic knowledge, but also to inform conservation strategies and support sustainable, nature-based tourism. Table 13.1 below resents a concise reference of some bird species, organized by region and habitat, showing key savanna & gallery-forest species around Boa Vista and campina/campinarana specialists along the Estrada Perdida in Viruá National Park as catalogued by Laranjeiras and Naka (2014):

Table 13.1 – Bird species in specific *Lavrado* (Savanna) and *Campinarana* areas of Roraima: Boa Vista urban area and Estrada Perdida (Viruá National Park):

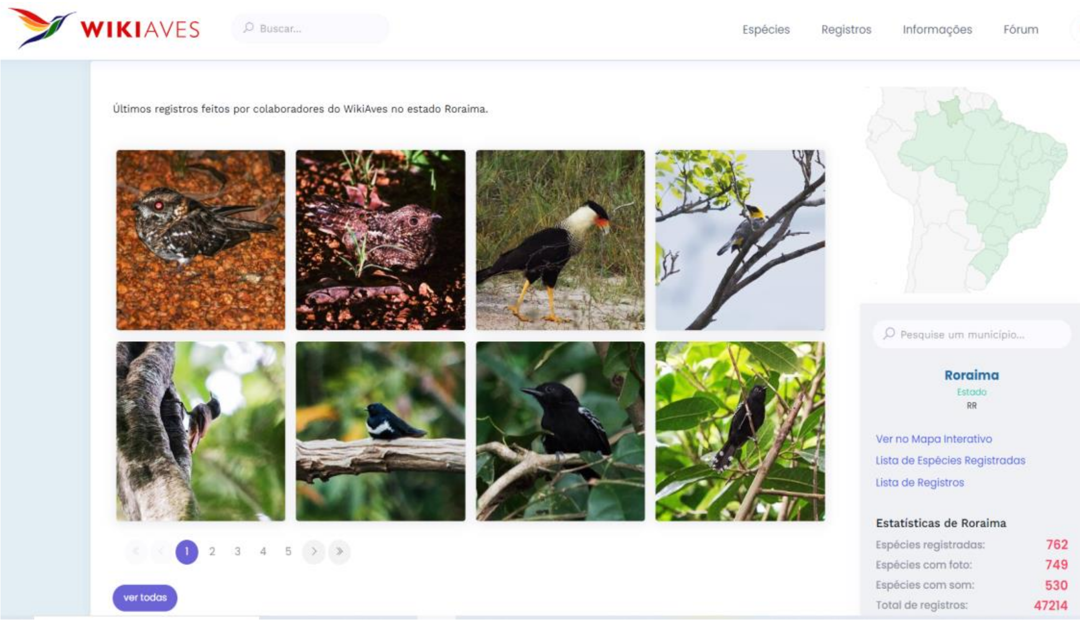
Region & Habitat	Common Name	Scientific Name	IUCN Status
Savanna & Gallery Forest (around Boa Vista)	Sharp-tailed Ibis	*Cercibis oxycerca*	–
	Double-striped Thick-knee	*Burhinus bistratus*	–
	White-bellied Piculet	*Picumnus spilogaster*	Vulnerable
	Brown-throated Parakeet	*Eupsittula pertinax*	–
	Sun Parakeet	*Aratinga solstitialis*	Endangered
	Rio Branco Antbird	*Cercomacra carbonaria*	Critically Endangered
	Streak-headed Woodcreeper	*Lepidocalaptes souleyetii*	–
	Hoary-throated Spinetail	*Synallaxis kollari*	Critically Endangered
	Pale-tipped Tyrannulet	*Inezia caudata*	–
	Slate-headed Tody-Flycatcher	*Poecilotriccus sylvia*	–
	Bicoloured Wren	*Campylorhynchus griseus*	–
	Spectacled Thrush	*Turdus nudigenis*	–
	Grey Seedeater	*Sporophila intermedia*	–

Region & Habitat	Common Name	Scientific Name	IUCN Status
	Lesson's Seedeater	*Sporophila bouvronides*	–
	Ruddy-breasted Seedeater	*Sporophila minuta*	–
	Yellow Oriole	*Icterus nigrogularis*	–
	Eastern Meadowlark	*Sturnella magna*	–
	Finsch's Euphonia	*Euphonia finschi*	–
Campina / Campinarana (Estrada Perdida, Viruá National Park)	Green-tailed Goldenthroat	*Polytmus theresiae*	–
	Cherrie's Antwren	*Myrmotherula cherriei*	–
	Yapacana Antbird	*Aprositornis disjuncta*	–
	Rufous-crowned Elaenia	*Elaenia ruficeps*	–
	Pelzeln's Tody-Tyrant	*Hemitriccus inornatus*	–
	Pale-bellied Mourner	*Rhytipterna immunda*	–
	Black Manakin	*Xenopipo atronitens*	–
	White-naped Seedeater	*Dolospingus fringilloides*	–
	Plumbeous Euphonia	*Euphonia plumbea*	–

Note: *Dash ("–") indicates "not globally assessed" or data not readily available.

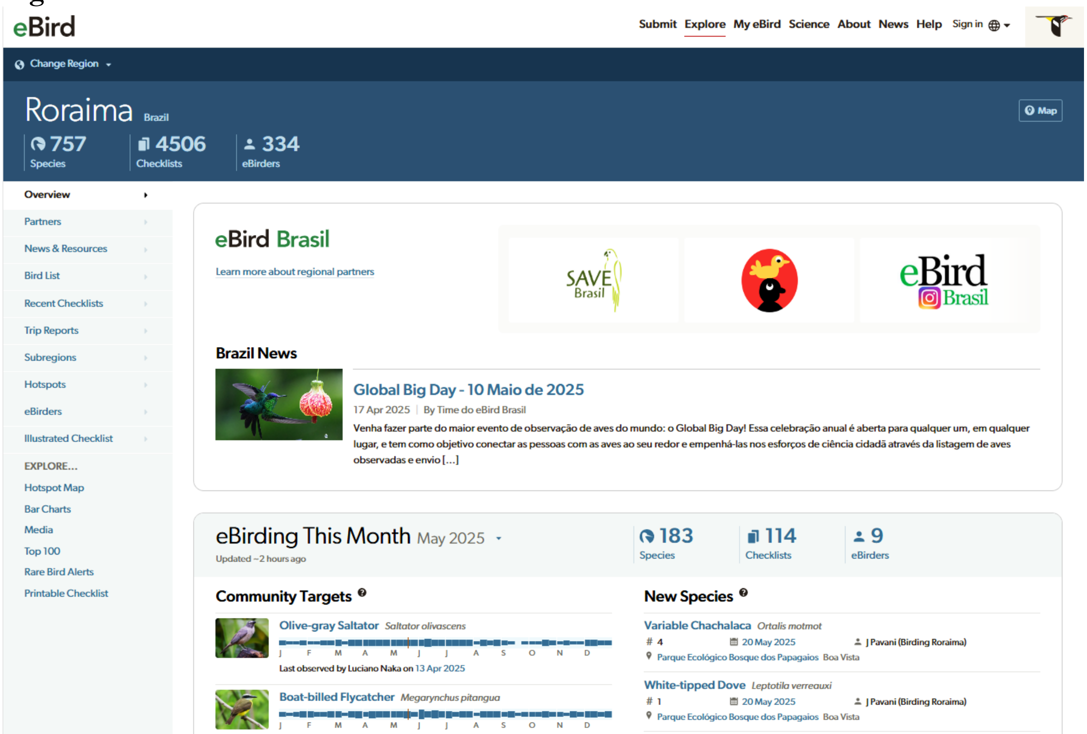
Below are two snapshots of live citizen-science portals for Roraima's birds (see Figures 13.1 and 13.1.2). The first shows WikiAves reporting 762 species with photographic records, while the second displays eBird's count of 757 species from over 4,500 checklists. Together, they illustrate how community contributions keep our understanding of Roraima's remarkable avifauna up to date.

Figure 13.1 – WikiAves and Roraima



Source: https://www.wikiaves.com.br/estado.php?e=RR

Figure 13.1.2 – eBird and Roraima:



Source: https://ebird.org/region/BR-RR

Below is an overview of recent eBird data for Roraima, highlighting both the breadth of the state's avifauna and the contributions of local observers. As of today, the Roraima checklist stands at **757** total species, with **317** recorded so far in 2025 and **183** observed just in May. On 20 May, J. Pavani submitted sightings from Parque Ecológico Bosque dos Papagaios in Boa Vista, including Variable Chachalaca (4), White-tipped Dove (1), Common Tody-Flycatcher (1), Gray-breasted Martin (5) and Burnished-buff Tanager (1), among others. The day before, Pavani's eBird entries from Porto do Babazinho on the right bank of the Rio Branco added Gray-lined Hawk (2), Green-rumped Parrotlet (2), Streak-headed Woodcreeper (1) and several "X" counts where exact numbers weren't noted, reflecting the dynamic nature of field reporting.

The list below shows the next 25 species recorded in eBird for Roraima (Figure 13.1.3), demonstrating the variety and frequency of recent observations, and some species are endemic ones for Roraima (Figure 13.1.4) as highlighted in a news article of Silveira of 2013 (in Portuguese). It underscores both how quickly new data accumulates through citizen science and the importance of local park sites for capturing the state's diverse birdlife. Feel free to refer to the full eBird checklist for more details, and to contribute your own sightings to help keep this living database up to date.

Figure 13.1.3 – Twenty-five bird species presented in the eBird for Roraima.

Bird List

Updated – 2 hours ago

757 All Years | 317 This Year 2025 | 183 This Month May 2025

Last Observed | First Observed | High Count | Custom Time Period | Show details

	SPECIES NAME	COUNT	DATE	OBSERVER	LOCATION
1.	Variable Chachalaca *Ortalis motmot*	4	20 May 2025	J Pavani (Birding Roraima)	Parque Ecológico Bosque dos Papagaios Boa Vista
2.	White-tipped Dove *Leptotila verreauxi*	1	20 May 2025	J Pavani (Birding Roraima)	Parque Ecológico Bosque dos Papagaios Boa Vista
3.	Cinereous Becard *Pachyramphus rufus*	X	20 May 2025	J Pavani (Birding Roraima)	Parque Ecológico Bosque dos Papagaios Boa Vista
4.	Common Tody-Flycatcher *Todirostrum cinereum*	1	20 May 2025	J Pavani (Birding Roraima)	Parque Ecológico Bosque dos Papagaios Boa Vista
5.	Gray-breasted Martin *Progne chalybea*	5	20 May 2025	J Pavani (Birding Roraima)	Parque Ecológico Bosque dos Papagaios Boa Vista
6.	Burnished-buff Tanager *Stilpnia cayana*	1	20 May 2025	J Pavani (Birding Roraima)	Parque Ecológico Bosque dos Papagaios Boa Vista
7.	Gray-lined Hawk *Buteo nitidus*	2	19 May 2025	J Pavani (Birding Roraima)	Porto do Babazinho, margem direito do Rio Branco em Roraima. Boa Vista
8.	White-bellied Piculet *Picumnus spilogaster*	X	19 May 2025	J Pavani (Birding Roraima)	Porto do Babazinho, margem direito do Rio Branco em Roraima. Boa Vista
9.	Green-rumped Parrotlet *Forpus passerinus*	2	19 May 2025	J Pavani (Birding Roraima)	Porto do Babazinho, margem direito do Rio Branco em Roraima. Boa Vista
10.	Buff-throated Woodcreeper *Xiphorhynchus guttatus*	X	19 May 2025	J Pavani (Birding Roraima)	Porto do Babazinho, margem direito do Rio Branco em Roraima. Boa Vista
11.	Streak-headed Woodcreeper *Lepidocolaptes souleyetii*	1	19 May 2025	J Pavani (Birding Roraima)	Porto do Babazinho, margem direito do Rio Branco em Roraima. Boa Vista
12.	Pale-legged Hornero *Furnarius leucopus*	X	19 May 2025	J Pavani (Birding Roraima)	Porto do Babazinho, margem direito do Rio Branco em Roraima. Boa Vista
13.	Bank Swallow *Riparia riparia*	3	19 May 2025	J Pavani (Birding Roraima)	Porto do Babazinho, margem direito do Rio Branco em Roraima. Boa Vista
14.	Hooded Tanager *Nemosia pileata*	2	19 May 2025	J Pavani (Birding Roraima)	Porto do Babazinho, margem direito do Rio Branco em Roraima. Boa Vista
15.	Short-tailed Swift *Chaetura brachyura*	2	10 May 2025	J Pavani (Birding Roraima)	Estrada do Haras - acesso a Serra Grande Cantá
16.	Pied-billed Grebe *Podilymbus podiceps*	1	10 May 2025	J Pavani (Birding Roraima)	Estrada do Haras - acesso a Serra Grande Cantá
17.	Ferruginous Pygmy-Owl *Glaucidium brasilianum*	1	10 May 2025	J Pavani (Birding Roraima)	Estrada do Haras - acesso a Serra Grande Cantá
18.	Green-backed Trogon *Trogon viridis*	2	10 May 2025	J Pavani (Birding Roraima)	Estrada do Haras - acesso a Serra Grande Cantá
19.	Willis's Antbird *Cercomacroides laeta*	1	10 May 2025	J Pavani (Birding Roraima)	Estrada do Haras - acesso a Serra Grande Cantá
20.	Thrush-like Antpitta *Myrmothera campanisona*	1	10 May 2025	J Pavani (Birding Roraima)	Estrada do Haras - acesso a Serra Grande Cantá
21.	Mouse-colored Tyrannulet *Nesotriccus murinus*	1	10 May 2025	J Pavani (Birding Roraima)	Haras Cunhã Pucá PONTO 1 Cantá
22.	Short-crested Flycatcher *Myiarchus ferox*	1	10 May 2025	J Pavani (Birding Roraima)	Haras Cunhã Pucá PONTO 1 Cantá
23.	Ashy-headed Greenlet *Hylophilus pectoralis*	1	10 May 2025	J Pavani (Birding Roraima)	Haras Cunhã Pucá PONTO 1 Cantá
24.	Yellow-headed Caracara *Daptrius chimachima*	3	9 May 2025	Carlos Otávio Gussoni	Roraima, BR (-1,55, -61,513) Rorainópolis
25.	Long-billed Woodcreeper *Nasica longirostris*	1	9 May 2025	Carlos Otávio Gussoni	Roraima, BR (-1,528, -61,53) Rorainópolis

Source: https://ebird.org/region/BR-RR/bird-list?yr=curM&rank=lrec

Figure 13.1.4 – Unique Bird Species of Roraima: a News Report (in Portuguese)

Mundo das Aves

As exclusivas aves de Roraima

Roraima é um dos Estados brasileiros menos conhecidos e, ao mesmo tempo, um dos mais preservados. Já a partir da periferia da capital, Boa Vista, são encontradas vastas áreas pouco alteradas. No Estado, a presença de parte da floresta amazônica contrasta com imensas savanas, nas quais vivem espécies únicas de aves, ainda pouco estudadas

Por LUÍS FÁBIO SILVEIRA

Até 1988 considerada Território Federal e, desde então, elevada a Estado, Roraima continua sendo um mistério para a maioria dos brasileiros. É lá que encontramos a menor densidade demográfica do País e a maior proporção de áreas protegidas, formadas por terras indígenas e parques nacionais que ocupam 60% da área estadual.

Em Roraima estão também os míticos tepuis, as montanhas mais antigas do planeta, constituídas por grandes formações rochosas com cume plano e paredes verticais. O tepui mais famoso é o Monte Roraima, um dos pontos mais altos do Brasil, com mais de 2.700 metros de altitude. Situado ao Leste do Estado, tem a seus pés um imenso relevo plano, de baixa a moderada altitudes, que se estende até o Norte, na fronteira com a Guiana. Essa área, com centenas de quilômetros de extensão, é coberta por belíssimos campos de gramíneas e ciperáceas (plantas herbáceas), conhecidos como lavrados, topografia que corresponde à das savanas e dos cerrados. A região contrasta radicalmente com o Sul e o Oeste do Estado, coberto por pujante vegetação da Floresta Amazônica.

Michael Gwyther-Jones

Jandaia-Sol: a mais célebre moradora dos lavrados roraimenses

40

CÃES & CIA • 405

Source: Silveira, Luís. (2013). Mundo das Aves: As exclusivas aves de Roraima. Cães & Cia.. 405. 40-41.

13.1.2. Tourism Beyond Birdwatching: Context and Infrastructure

A. Overview of Main Attractions

Roraima's tourism sector primarily leverages the state's impressive natural landscapes and rich cultural diversity, particularly its Indigenous heritage. Beyond specific birdwatching interests, key attractions include:

- Monte Roraima: The iconic table-top mountain is a major draw for trekking and adventure tourism, offering unique geological formations and high-altitude ecosystems.
- Ecotourism and Adventure: The state boasts numerous waterfalls, rapids, rivers suitable for kayaking or boating, extensive forests, and savanna trails. These are particularly promoted in areas like the municipality of Uiramutã in the far north.
- Ethnotourism: Opportunities for visitors to engage respectfully with Indigenous cultures and communities are developing, especially in the northern municipalities like Uiramutã and potentially within areas like the Raposa Serra do Sol Indigenous Land. The presence of trained Indigenous guides is noted as a positive development.
- Sports Fishing: This is a traditional attraction, particularly strong in the southern region of the state, likely focused on the Rio Branco and its major tributaries.
- General Nature Tourism: The scenic beauty of the *lavrado* savannas, the vastness of the forests, and visits to accessible Conservation Units like the Viruá National Park also attract visitors.

Many of these established attractions share geographical locations or access routes with areas of high potential for birdwatching. For example, trails leading to waterfalls often pass through diverse forest habitats, and lodges or communities catering to general ecotourists or trekkers can serve as bases for birding activities. This overlap suggests possibilities for developing integrated tourism products catering to multiple interests.

B. Tourism Infrastructure and Recent Trends

Roraima's tourism infrastructure is developing, with evidence of recent growth and government support. State authorities report active efforts to improve supporting infrastructure, including the recovery and maintenance of roads, bridges, and local access routes (*vicinais*). Accommodation options exist, though likely concentrated in key locations. For instance, the municipality of Uiramutã, despite its remoteness, is reported to have around 280 beds available across hotels, inns (*pousadas*), and camping areas, along with restaurants and basic services. Boa Vista, as the state capital, presumably offers a much wider range and standard of accommodation and services. Support services such as trained guides (including Indigenous guides) and 4x4 vehicle rentals are available in some areas catering to specific tourism needs.

Recent trends indicate growth in the sector. The State Department of Tourism reported significant increases in the number of established tourism routes between 2021 and 2023, particularly highlighting growth in ecotourism and ethnotourism in the Far North region (+61%) and in fishing and birding-related routes in the South (+100%). Pacaraima, Boa Vista, and Cantá were the municipalities with the highest number of registered tourist routes in 2023. International tourist arrivals also saw a sharp percentage increase (97% growth in 2024 compared to 2023), although the absolute numbers remain relatively modest, with just over 16,000 international visitors recorded in 2024. The state government appears committed to fostering tourism growth through monitoring, planning, and public policies aimed at stimulating the sector.

Overall, Roraima presents itself as an emerging tourism destination, particularly for nature-based and cultural experiences. While infrastructure is improving and growth is being reported, it likely remains unevenly distributed, with Boa Vista and a few specific hubs (like Uiramutã, Pacaraima, Bonfim) being better equipped than more remote rural areas. For birdwatchers, this context offers the allure of exploring relatively uncrowded natural environments with high biodiversity potential. However, it also necessitates realistic expectations regarding the availability and standards of services, particularly when venturing away from the main centers and highways. The reported growth suggests increasing opportunities for organized tours and support services but also underscores the importance of promoting sustainable tourism practices to mitigate potential impacts on sensitive ecosystems and wildlife populations as visitation increases.

13.1.3. The Birdwatching Scene: Tourism, Community, and Citizen Science

While still developing, Roraima's birdwatching scene involves a dedicated local community, specialized guides, and growing recognition of its unique potential, supported by the power of citizen science.

13.1.3.1.Ecotourism Development

Market Status: Birdwatching tourism in Roraima is best described as a niche market, primarily attracting experienced national and international birders seeking specific endemics, Guiana Shield specialties, and the unique habitat assemblages the state offers. It is not yet on the scale of more established Brazilian birding circuits like the Pantanal or the Atlantic Forest, offering a more adventurous, off-the-beaten-path experience.

Key Players: The sector relies heavily on knowledgeable local guides and specialized tour operators. Figures like Paulo Gois in Caracaraí are crucial for accessing areas like Viruá and the Baixo Rio Branco. Other guides operating in Roraima, sometimes covering Boa Vista's *lavrado* or potentially Tepequém, include Alessandro Diniz and Rafael Pavani, known within the Brazilian birding community. Both local Roraima-based operators and larger Brazilian or international companies may offer specialized tours targeting the state's highlights.

Visitor Profile: The typical birdwatching visitor to Roraima is often a dedicated lister seeking endemic species like the Rio Branco Antbird or white-sand specialists, or an adventurous birder drawn to the remote and relatively unexplored nature of the region. Researchers studying the unique ecosystems also contribute to the visitor numbers, particularly in Viruá.

Economic Impact: Although small-scale, birdwatching tourism provides tangible economic benefits, especially in gateway communities like Caracaraí. Hiring local guides, boat operators, drivers, and utilizing local accommodation and restaurants injects income into areas with limited alternative economic opportunities. This provides a direct link between the conservation of biodiversity and local livelihoods.

State Initiatives: Birdwatching tourism has been officially recognized in Roraima for its contribution to biodiversity conservation and sustainable development. Through Law No. 1.588/2021, approved by the Legislative Assembly of Roraima, the state established April 25 as the State Birdwatching Day. This legal framework promotes the protection of avian species, encourages ecotourism, and supports environmental awareness. The initiative demonstrates Roraima's institutional commitment to integrating nature-based tourism into its conservation and development strategies.

13.1.3.2. Learning-by-doing and traditional knowledge within a conservation-friendly market

Ecotourism scholars increasingly describe bird-oriented travel as a "conservation-friendly market" because cash flow hinges on living wildlife and intact habitats rather than on extractive land uses; the very logic of the business model rewards communities for keeping forests standing and rivers clean (Palotoa Amazon; Wild Bird Feeding Institute) (Stronza, Hunt, & Fitzgerald, 2019; Schwoerer & Dawson, 2022; Gupta, Everard, Kochhar, & Belwal, 2019). Inside that market, guides and boatmen in the Amazon rarely arrive with formal ornithological diplomas. Instead, they master their craft through learning-by-doing—an experiential process first formalized in economics by Arrow (1962) but now celebrated in community-based tourism as the way fieldcraft, customer care, and bird-call recognition are perfected on the job (Frontiers) (Mora & Pérez Rodríguez, 2021). Each trip therefore becomes an on-the-ground "training session" where feedback from visitors, senior guides, and the birds themselves steadily upgrades local human capital.

That apprenticeship is powerful precisely because it builds on Traditional Ecological Knowledge (TEK)—the place-based understanding river-dwellers and Indigenous peoples have accumulated about flood pulses, fruiting trees, and seasonal bird movements (BPB) (Butler & Menzies, 2007; Gonçalves-Souza, Alves, Albuquerque, & Ferreira Júnior, 2022; Kim, Asghar, & Jordan, 2017). When TEK is combined with modern optics, field guides, and citizen-science apps such as WikiAves or eBird, grassroots actors translate ancestral insight into professional guiding services, scientific data points, and conservation advocacy (Amazon) (eBird, 2023; Kim et al., 2017). In effect, TEK acts as the seed stock; learning-by-doing is the germination phase; and the paid outing with international birders is the first harvest, delivering both income and demonstrable ecosystem value.

Seen through this lens, Roraima's emerging avitourism economy illustrates how "frontier" landscapes can reposition themselves: from commodity frontiers that trade timber, gold, or cattle to knowledge frontiers that export place-specific skills and sightings. Grass-roots exposure—Paulo Gois's first workshop in Viruá back in 2006—is thus not a footnote; it is the catalytic moment where local curiosity, TEK, and market demand intersect to launch new micro-enterprises and, ultimately, a constituency for protected-area stewardship in Brazil's far north (Gupta et al., 2019; Schwoerer & Dawson, 2022).

Equally important, those very outings have evolved into open-air classrooms that mesh informal mentoring with formal environmental-education goals. Every sighting becomes a living lesson on adaptation, trophic interactions, or migration strategy; the forest itself is the blackboard. Recent studies in field-based learning show that participants who keep bird journals and engage in guided reflection gain ecological-systems knowledge at rates comparable to university laboratory courses, all while cultivating stronger place attachment (Castillo-Aguilar & Roa-Angulo, 2021; Gutiérrez-Pérez & Pozo-Llorente, 2006).

Digital citizen-science platforms extend that classroom into the cloud (Van den Born et. al., 2022). Uploading a checklist to eBird or an annotated photograph to WikiAves demands correct species identification, geo-referencing, and concise natural-history notes—effectively rehearsing the scientific method. Long-term analyses of eBird contributions reveal that such "micro-data" not only fill distribution gaps for researchers but also foster environmental citizenship: contributors report higher willingness to support habitat protection and to adopt sustainable practices in daily life (eBird, 2023; Kim et al., 2017; Van den Born et. al., 2022). For Roraima's youth, posting an after-school sighting is already the first rung on a career ladder that can lead to certified guiding, biodiversity-monitoring contracts, or park-ranger positions.

The cognitive and emotional dividends amplify the educational value. University cohorts that participated in weekly bird walks during exam season showed lower stress and higher self-reported well-being than peers who merely strolled the same trails—echoing broader research that links focused attention on wildlife to reduced rumination and improved working memory (Castillo-Aguilar & Roa-Angulo, 2021). These benefits translate into stronger retention of biological concepts, sharper observational skills, and greater motivation for follow-up projects such as habitat-restoration days or community bird counts.

Finally, integrating birding into local school curricula builds interdisciplinary skill sets that resonate well beyond ornithology. Field notebooks become gateways to creative writing; GPS-tagged sightings introduce geospatial analysis; and audio-recordings of dawn choruses open conversations about bioacoustics and climate change (Gutiérrez-Pérez & Pozo-Llorente, 2006; Kim et al., 2017).

13.1.3.3. In brief

Roraima presents a compelling combination of vast, ecologically diverse landscapes and significant conservation challenges and opportunities. Its immense territory, characterized by low overall population density but extreme concentration in the capital, Boa Vista, is dominated by legally protected areas, primarily extensive Indigenous Lands and a network of federal and state Conservation Units. This land tenure structure safeguards large tracts of Amazonian rainforest, unique *lavrado* savannas, and portions of the ancient Guiana Highlands, including the iconic Monte Roraima. These diverse habitats, spanning a significant altitudinal gradient and influenced by distinct climate patterns, harbor a rich and potentially unique avifauna.

However, accessing and studying this biodiversity involves navigating logistical complexities. The state's connectivity relies fundamentally on the single north-south artery of the BR-174 highway, with limited east-west integration and potential accessibility issues related to seasonal rains, remote locations requiring specialized transport, and specific transit restrictions like the night closure through the Waimiri-Atroari Indigenous Land. Roraima's demographic profile, with the highest proportional Indigenous population in Brazil and a majority Parda population, underscores the need for culturally sensitive engagement, particularly when activities involve Indigenous territories. The state's tourism sector is emerging, focused on its natural and cultural assets, offering developing infrastructure but requiring careful planning for ventures beyond established hubs.

For birdwatching and ornithological research, Roraima offers exceptional potential due to its habitat heterogeneity and relatively undisturbed expanses. Realizing this potential requires acknowledging and addressing the logistical hurdles of access and infrastructure, understanding the complex socio-environmental context shaped by land tenure and demographics, and likely fostering collaborative approaches with government agencies, Indigenous communities, and local stakeholders to ensure activities are both feasible and sustainable.

Part II - Roraima: Geographical, Environmental, and Socio-Demographic Context for Avian Studies.

13.2. The Physical Landscape: A Land of Contrasts

Roraima is Brazil's northern-most state, entirely north of the Equator and bounded by Venezuela to the west–north-west and Guyana to the north-east, while sharing domestic borders with Amazonas and Pará. It belongs to the federally designated planning region Amazônia Legal (Brasil, 1953). According to the Instituto Brasileiro de Geografia e Estatística (IBGE, 2024a), the state has a land area of 223,666.9 km² and a 2022 census population of 636,707 residents (≈ 2.85 inhabitants km^{-2}). Approximately 46 % of the territory lies inside demarcated Indigenous Lands (*Conselho Indígena de Roraima* [CIR], 2023), while nine federal protected areas total 1.92 million ha (8.6 %) (*Instituto Chico Mendes de Conservação da Biodiversidad*e [ICMBio], 2023) (refer to Table 13.2 for a content synthesis). Ornithological work must therefore address both Indigenous governance protocols and conservation-unit regulations.

Table 13.2 – A Synthesis of the Key Characteristics of Roraima and the Avifauna Relevance for the Regional Context

Dimension / Theme	Current Data & Description	Avian Relevance / Implications	Key Sources
Spatial setting	Entirely within the Guiana-Shield sector of Amazonia, 0°–5° N; vast, sparsely settled wilderness	Extensive intact habitat for disturbance-sensitive birds	IBGE 2024a
Topography	Lowlands 100–400 m in the south-central basin; Pacaraima–Parima ranges crest at Mt Roraima 2 810–2 875 m	2.7 km altitudinal gradient drives strong beta-diversity; supports tepui endemics such as Roraiman Antwren (*Herpsilochmus roraimae)*	SGB 2022; Zimmer & Isler 2020
Biome mosaic	≈ 62 % evergreen rainforest, ≈ 18 % open *lavrado* savanna, remainder montane/tepui forests & scrub	Forest–savanna ecotones mix Amazonian & Cerrado guilds; *lavrado* endemics include Bearded Tachuri (*Polystictus pectoralis)* & Sharp-tailed Ibis (*Cercibis oxyura)*	SEPLAN-RR 2022; Barbosa et al. 2007
Climate	Roraima ranges from rainforest-wet (southwest, Af) to savanna-dry (northeast, Aw), with an intermediate monsoon zone (center, Am). Rainfall spans 1,500–2,500 mm a year, average temperatures sit around 25–27 °C, and peak highs can reach 38 °C.	Four-month dry season in *lavrado*, two-month dry break in west governs breeding and food pulses	Alvares et al. 2013; INMET 2024
Hydrography	Rio Branco basin covers ≈ 83 % of state; main channel ≈ 630 km; major tributaries Uraricoera, Tacutu, etc.	Gallery forests act as corridors; islands & flood-plains host specialists such as Hoatzin (*Opisthocomus hoazin)* & Agami Heron (*Agamia agami)*	Carvalho 2015; CPRM 2002

Dimension / Theme	**Current Data & Description**	**Avian Relevance / Implications**	**Key Sources**
Access	Two paved highways (BR-174, BR-210); limited secondary roads; navigable Rio Branco/Uraricoera; BVB airport links to Manaus & Brasília	Field logistics for surveys depend on road–river combos; tepui plateaux require air drops or multi-day treks	DNIT 2024
Closed-canopy rainforest	Dominates SW Rio Branco–Rio Negro interfluve & western piedmonts	Hosts widespread Amazonian taxa and Guiana specials such as Black-throated Barbet (*Capito nigrescens*)	BirdLife International 2024
Lavrado savannas	Largest continuous Amazonian savanna enclave in central-eastern state	≥ 175 savanna-restricted bird spp.	Barbosa et al. 2007
Montane & tepui complexes	> 1,000 m cloud forests & summit plateaux	Endemics incl. Tepui Wren (*Troglodytes rufulus*) & Roraiman Nightjar (*Setopagis macconnelli*)	Zimmer & Isler 2020
Gallery-forest ecotones	Linear riparian belts into savanna	Mixed flocks where understory & open-country species mingle	Carvalho 2015
Overall richness	736 bird spp., 71 families; 17 globally threatened taxa	Confirms value for avitourism & conservation priority	SEPLAN-RR 2022
Population	636,707 people; 70% in Boa Vista	Low density limits habitat pressure outside urban cores	IBGE 2024a
Indigenous lands	46% of territory; research requires PGTA protocols	> 40 % of Important Bird Areas overlap Indigenous lands	CIR 2023
Protected areas	Nine federal units (1.92 M ha); key sites: Monte Roraima NP 116 kha, Viruá NP 242 kha	Core refuges for tepui & *lavrado* endemics	ICMBio 2023
Land-use pressures	Expanding cattle, artisanal gold mining, emergent soy along BR-210; rising fire incidence	Edge degradation threatens savanna breeders; fire alters succession	Barbosa et al. 2007
Research & tourism windows	Jan–Apr: rainforest frugivore peak; Jul–Oct: savanna raptors/ground-nesters	Guides survey planning & tour scheduling	INMET 2024
Data gaps & needs	Tepui endemics, post-fire savanna mosaics under-surveyed; need passive-acoustic & seasonal banding	Priority for science & market differentiation	SEPLAN-RR 2022
Avitourism circuits	BR-174 (Boa Vista–Pacaraima) & BR-210 (Caracaraí–Viruá NP)	Year-round access, charismatic targets, local guide base	ICMBio 2023

Note: Abbreviations and descriptions of Institutions, etc. –IBGE (Brazilian Institute of Geography and Statistics), responsible for demographic and geographic surveys in Roraima; SGB (Brazilian Geological Service), which conducts geological mapping and studies in the region;

SEPLAN-RR (State Secretariat for Planning of Roraima), tasked with developing and monitoring state public policies; INMET (National Institute of Meteorology), providing climatic data for the Roraima Amazon; CPRM Roraima (Mineral Resources Research Company – Brazilian Geological Service in Roraima), carrying out mineral research focused on the state; DNIT (National Department of Transport Infrastructure), managing federal highways in Roraima; CIR (Indigenous Council of Roraima), representing the state's Indigenous communities; ICMBio (Chico Mendes Institute for Biodiversity Conservation), overseeing conservation units in Roraima; and BirdLife International, a global partnership that supports bird conservation initiatives in the region. PGTA: Indigenous Territorial Management Plan.

A. Territorial Area and Location

The state of Roraima covers a substantial area, officially measured at 223,644.534 square kilometers according to 2023 data from the Brazilian Institute of Geography and Statistics (IBGE). Minor variations in this figure exist in different sources, such as 223,644.527 km² cited elsewhere, but the overall scale remains consistent. This vast territory is situated in the extreme north of Brazil, placing it geographically within the Guiana Shield region, a geological formation known for its ancient rocks and unique biodiversity. Its northernmost extent reaches latitudes above 5° North, confirming its position entirely within the Northern Hemisphere. The combination of its large size and relatively low population density results in extensive areas with minimal human disturbance, suggesting significant potential for intact ecosystems and associated wildlife habitats. Such wilderness is a fundamental prerequisite for supporting diverse and potentially sensitive bird populations, particularly those requiring large, undisturbed territories.

B. Topography: From Highlands to Plains

Roraima exhibits significant topographic variation, contributing directly to its ecological diversity. While much of the central and southern parts of the state are characterized by relatively gentle terrain, falling within the domain of Amazonian plains and lowlands with average elevations between 200 and 400 meters, the landscape becomes considerably more rugged towards the international borders in the north, west, and east. Here, Roraima forms part of the Guiana Plateau, featuring significant mountain ranges such as the Serra Parima and Serra Pacaraima along the Venezuelan border. The state's highest point, and a major landmark of the Guiana Shield, is Monte Roraima, a massive tepui mountain at the triple border point, it rises to 2,734.06 m (INDE, 2020) at the junction of Brazil, Venezuela and Guyana, Mount Roraima is a classic "tepuy" or tabletop mountain, its sheer sandstone cliffs—over 500 m high—dating back nearly two billion years (Reis, 2006; Reis & Dantas, 2022).

In 1595, Sir Walter Raleigh's British expedition became the first to reach its base. For the Macuxi people of Roraima, this summit holds deep spiritual significance and is known as the "House of Macunaíma" (Reis, 2006; Reis & Dantas, 2022). Geologists place Roraima within the Paleoproterozoic Roraima Supergroup of the Guiana Shield, just north of the Amazon Craton; its uppermost Matauí Formation preserves three distinct sandstone facies that record ancient environments, "Mount Roraima, an Amazonian Totem" (Reis, 2006; Reis & Dantas, 2022). Consequently, this topographic diversity strongly predicts high beta diversity for birds – a significant turnover in species composition between different habitats and altitudes – including the potential presence of altitudinal migrants and endemic species restricted to the Guiana Highlands. Accessing these varied altitudinal zones, particularly the remote highlands, presents logistical considerations for field studies and birdwatching activities.

Today, Mount Roraima remains a sought-after trekking destination—though access is only possible from the Venezuelan side—and attracts thousands of visitors each year, making the protection of its unique rock sculptures and sedimentary layers vital for both science and conservation.

C. Dominant Biomes: Amazon Forest and the *Lavrado* Savannas

Roraima is situated entirely within the Amazon biome, the largest tropical rainforest ecosystem on Earth. However, its vegetation cover is notably heterogeneous, comprising a mosaic of distinct types. Forest formations are extensive, including dense *ombrophilous* (humid tropical) forest primarily in the south, open *ombrophilous* forest in the west, and various types of montane forest in the higher elevation areas near the borders. Several federal Conservation Units are noted as protecting "Montana Forest" , indicative of the importance of these highland forest ecosystems. Perhaps the most distinctive landscape feature within Roraima is the presence of extensive savanna formations, known locally as *lavrado* or *campos*, particularly concentrated in the central and eastern portions of the state.

These savannas represent a significant enclave of open habitat within the predominantly forested Amazon biome and possess a unique flora, including characteristic species like the buriti palm (*Mauritia flexuosa*), caimbé (*Curatella americana*), muricizeiros (*Byrsonima* spp.), paricaranas, and various grasses. At the highest elevations, particularly on the slopes and summits of the tepuis, vegetation transitions to specialized grasses and more scattered trees adapted to the harsher conditions. This juxtaposition of extensive Amazonian forest with large, distinct savanna patches creates unique ecological transition zones, or ecotones. Such areas are often characterized by heightened biodiversity, potentially supporting a mix of forest-associated and open-country bird species, as well as specialists adapted specifically to these edge habitats.

The *lavrado* itself constitutes a significant ecosystem, distinct from the Cerrado biome found further south and east in Brazil, harboring its own characteristic avifauna. This mosaic of forest, savanna, and highland habitats is a key asset contributing to Roraima's overall bird species richness, offering varied environments for birdwatching across different parts of the state.

D. Climate Patterns

Roraima's climate is influenced by its equatorial latitude, continentality, and significant variations in altitude, resulting in distinct regional patterns. Two primary climate types prevail: Tropical Humid, mainly in the eastern part of the state, and Equatorial, dominating the west (Araujo et.al., 2024; Wankler & Sander, 2019). Rainfall and temperature regimes differ noticeably across these areas. The northeastern region, characterized by higher altitudes associated with the Guiana Plateau, experiences milder average temperatures and lower annual rainfall, typically around 1,500 mm (Araujo et.al., 2024; Wankler & Sander, 2019).

This area also features a more pronounced dry season, lasting approximately four months. In contrast, the central and western parts of Roraima generally experience higher temperatures, with maximums potentially reaching 38°C in lowland areas, and significantly higher annual rainfall, which can exceed 2,500 mm in some locations (Araujo et.al., 2024; Wankler & Sander, 2019). The dry season in these western and central regions is typically shorter and less intense. This climatic variability, especially the differences in rainfall seasonality and the length of the dry period, directly influences vegetation structure and phenology (patterns of flowering and fruiting) (Araujo et.al., 2024; Wankler & Sander, 2019).

These factors, in turn, affect the availability of food resources (insects, fruits, nectar) and suitable breeding conditions for birds, potentially driving seasonal movements or migrations for some species. Planning ornithological fieldwork or birdwatching trips must therefore consider these seasonal variations, which impact not only bird activity and visibility but also practical aspects like road accessibility, particularly during the heavier rainy season.

E. Hydrography: The Rio Branco Basin

Roraima's hydrology is overwhelmingly dominated by the Rio Branco hydrographic basin, encompassing approximately 83% of the state's territory. The Rio Branco itself, a major tributary of the Rio Negro (which flows into the Amazon River), runs for approximately 560 to 775 kilometers within the state, depending on the measurement point, and is formed by the confluence of the Uraricoera and Tacutu rivers. Its basin spans about 192,392 square kilometers (Encyclopædia Britannica, n.d). The river is notable for its "whitewater" characteristics, carrying significant inorganic sediments, which contrasts with the "blackwater" nature of the Rio Negro.

Numerous other significant rivers contribute to this extensive network, including the Água Boa do Univiní, Ailã, Ajarani, Alalaú, Catrimani, Cauamé, Itapará, Mucajaí, Surumu, Tacutu, Uraricoera, Urubu, and Xeruini. The Tacutu and Ireng rivers are particularly noteworthy as they form part of the international border with Guyana, and during flood periods, the headwaters of the Tacutu can even connect with those of the Essequibo River, allowing for an exchange of aquatic fauna (dos Santos & Faria, 2021). This dense network of rivers and streams profoundly shapes the landscape and provides crucial habitats. Associated gallery forests along riverbanks often penetrate different vegetation zones (such as extending into the vast lavrado savannas), creating important ecological corridors (de Souza et al., 2017).

These corridors facilitate movement for wildlife and harbor specialized flora and fauna, contributing significantly to the state's high habitat and avian diversity. The Rio Branco basin is recognized as an avian evolutionary and ecological hotspot, with Roraima boasting a remarkable bird diversity of at least 741 recorded species, representing 57% of all birds found in the Amazon (Melville et. al., 2024; Naka et al., 2006). This rich avifauna includes numerous aquatic and semi-aquatic bird species supported by river islands, floodplains, and the rivers themselves, such as fish-eaters, waders, and waterfowl. Notable among these are two Critically Endangered species endemic to the Rio Branco drainage, the Hoary-throated Spinetail (*Synallaxis kollari*) and the Rio Branco Antbird (*Cercomacra carbonaria*), both restricted to the riverine forests of Roraima and adjacent Guyana (BirdLife International, 2024a, 2024b; Melville et. al., 2024; Naka et al., 2006).

The newly created Extractive Reserve (Resex) Baixo Rio Branco-Jauaperi further highlights the area's biodiversity, protecting diverse plants, fish, and at least 42 mammal species, including ten threatened with extinction (Paes de Barros, 2010). This extraordinary avian richness makes Roraima a significant destination for avitourism and birdwatching, drawing enthusiasts keen to observe both widespread Amazonian species and regional specialties, particularly those tied to the unique riverine and savanna habitats (Laranjeiras & Naka, 2014).

Furthermore, in areas with limited road infrastructure, rivers historically served, and in some cases still serve, as vital transportation routes. The Branco River, for instance, was crucial for the arrival of the first Portuguese settlers and continues to be important for trade and access to remote locations for research or tourism, particularly in its lower course, though the upper course contains numerous rapids.

F-Environmental Challenges

However, Roraima's hydrological system faces significant environmental challenges. Over the past 20 years, the state has lost more than half of its surface water area, the most severe reduction in the Brazilian Amazon (ACAPS, 2025). This drastic loss is attributed to a combination of factors including the expansion of monocultures like soy and corn, which deplete water resources and introduce pesticides (ACAPS, 2025). Additionally, illegal mining, particularly within Indigenous territories, leads to changes in river courses and severe mercury pollution (Alves & Leiras, 2025; Mongabay, 2023). Studies have revealed high levels of mercury contamination in fish from the Rio Branco Basin, with some carnivorous species having contamination so high that there is practically no safe level for consumption, regardless of the amount ingested (Vasconcellos et. al., 2022). This poses a significant health hazard, especially for Indigenous populations who rely on these rivers for sustenance (Silva et al., 2022).

For avifauna, illegal mining is a severe threat, as habitat destruction and mercury contamination can directly impact fish-eating birds, those reliant on riparian vegetation, and even broader food webs, potentially affecting the populations of the very species that make the Rio Branco basin an avian hotspot (Mongabay, 2023). The region is also experiencing severe droughts, exacerbated by climate change and deforestation, leading to record-low river levels, water scarcity, and increased fire outbreaks, posing a humanitarian emergency for many communities, particularly Indigenous populations who rely on these rivers for drinking water (ACAPS, 2025). These droughts are amplified by human activities, such as the clearing of forests which reduces the soil's capacity to retain water, contributing to more intense water crises (ACAPS, 2025).

PART III - Land Tenure, Conservation and the Protected Areas of Roraima

13.3. Distribution of Land: Indigenous Territories, Conservation Units, and Other Designations

Roraima's land tenure structure is characterized by an exceptionally high proportion of its territory designated under various forms of protection or special status, primarily Indigenous Lands (*Terras Indígenas - TIs*) and Conservation Units (*Unidades de Conservação - UCs*). Data from the state's Ecological-Economic Zoning (ZEE-RR) report from 2021 indicates that Indigenous Lands constitute the largest single category, covering approximately 10.3 million hectares, or 45.85% of the state's area. This figure aligns closely with slightly older estimates, such as 46.3% reported in 2010 and 46.2% cited by the State Secretariat of Planning and Development (SEPLAN).

Conservation Units, encompassing both federal and state-managed areas, along with designated Military Areas, collectively cover a significant portion of the state. The 2021 ZEE-RR report estimates this combined coverage at 67.73%. Within this, federal UCs managed by the Chico Mendes Institute for Biodiversity Conservation (ICMBio) account for approximately 4.3 million hectares, roughly 19.2% of the state's total area. However, other sources present different figures; SEPLAN data cited in one study suggests federal UCs cover 7.6%. State-level UCs appear less extensive in the ZEE-RR data, which identifies only the APA Rio Branco (an Environmental Protection Area) covering 1.2 million hectares or about 5.4%. Yet, the SEPLAN data mentions Environmental Protection Areas (APAs, plural) covering 13.8%, including APA Rio Branco and APA Xeriuini, suggesting the existence of more state-managed areas or differing categorization methods.

Other significant land designations include areas under the jurisdiction of the National Institute for Colonization and Agrarian Reform (INCRA), estimated at 6%, and Military Lands at 1.2%. SEPLAN data summarizes that institutional areas (FUNAI, ICMBio, INCRA, APAs, Military Lands) total 74.6% of Roraima's territory. Consequently, the area considered available for direct use by the general population (e.g., private agriculture, urban development) is relatively small, estimated at around 32.27% by the ZEE-RR. This figure is further reduced when considering legally mandated Permanent Preservation Areas (APPs, such as riparian buffers) and Legal Reserves (ARLs) required on private properties, leading some analyses to suggest that the total proportion of the state under some form of protection or use restriction could approach 86-90%. Refer to Table 13.3.0 for the estimated land tenure distribution in Roraima.

Table 13.3.0. Estimated Land Tenure Distribution in Roraima

Category	Area (approx. ha)	Percentage (%)	Source / Year	Notes
Indigenous Lands (TIs)	10,289,623	45.85%	ZEE-RR 2021	Consistent with (46.3%), (46.2%)
Federal UCs	4,303,010	19.2%	ZEE-RR 2021	Calculation based on ZEE-RR area; reports 7.6%
State UCs (APA Rio Branco)	1,207,650	5.4%	ZEE-RR 2021	
APAs (State level, plural)	-	13.8%	SEPLAN	Includes APA Rio Branco & Xeriuini; differs significantly from
INCRA Lands	-	6.0%	SEPLAN	
Military Lands	-	1.2%	SEPLAN	
Total Institutional	**~16,600,000**	**~74.6%**	**SEPLAN**	**Sum of TI, Fed UC, INCRA, APA, Military based on percentages**
Area Available for Direct Use	~7,167,000	~32.27%	ZEE-RR 2021	Before accounting for APPs/ARLs

Note: Percentages and areas can vary between sources due to different methodologies, dates, and potential overlaps (e.g., TIs overlapping UCs). This table synthesizes available data but highlights discrepancies.

13.3.1. Roraima's Conservation Units Network: Protected Areas, Avifauna, Avitourism.

It is impossible to study avifauna in isolation from the conservation of its habitats: intact forests, savannas and floodplains form the essential stages of every bird's life cycle. Designating these landscapes as protected areas preserves critical nesting, feeding and migratory grounds, safeguarding both common and threatened species. Well-managed reserves also underpin avitourism by offering reliable, high-quality experiences that generate local economic opportunities and strengthen public support for conservation.

The following sections will outline Roraima's Conservation Units, describe their distinctive habitats and bird communities and will explore how avitourism initiatives are helping connect people with this extraordinary avifauna.

This overwhelming allocation of land to protected categories creates a unique socio-environmental landscape. While offering substantial potential for biodiversity conservation, it concentrates activities like agriculture, ranching, and mining (both legal and illegal) into the relatively smaller remaining area. This can intensify pressure on the boundaries of protected zones and potentially lead to land-use conflicts, impacting the effectiveness of conservation efforts and influencing local livelihoods.

Roraima's birds and the places they call home are increasingly under pressure from human activities. Large-scale deforestation for cattle ranching and small-holder agriculture slices through once-continuous forest, fragmenting key breeding and feeding areas and opening canopy gaps that favor generalist species over secretive specialists. Illegal gold- and diamond-mining brings toxic mercury pollution into floodplain rivers and drives forest clearance along riverbanks, while uncontrolled wildfires—often set to clear pasture—can devastate campinaranas and savanna enclaves richest in endemics. Road construction and expanding rural development not only facilitate these extractive industries but also increase hunting, pet-trade collection and invasive species introductions. Even well-meaning tourism, if unregulated, risks trampling nesting sites and disturbing sensitive species. Recognizing and mitigating these anthropogenic threats is essential—not only to secure the long-term survival of Roraima's extraordinary avifauna but also to sustain the vibrant, responsible avitourism enterprises that depend on healthy, intact landscapes.

The complexity of land administration, involving multiple federal and state agencies (FUNAI for TIs, ICMBio for federal UCs, FEMARH for state UCs, INCRA for settlement areas) with sometimes overlapping jurisdictions or historical claims, further complicates management. The discrepancies observed in reported percentages for different categories underscore these administrative challenges. For visitors, including birdwatchers, understanding the specific management regime and applicable regulations for accessing a particular area is crucial, especially where designations overlap (e.g., PARNA Monte Roraima overlaps with TI Raposa Serra do Sol).

Roraima's conservation network brings together federal and state efforts to protect its vast Amazonian forests and unique savanna (lavrado) landscapes. Federally, the Chico Mendes Institute for Biodiversity Conservation (ICMBio) manages strict-protection Ecological Stations and sustainable-use National Forests under Brazil's National System of Conservation Units (Law 9.985/2000). At the state level, the Fundação Estadual do Meio Ambiente e Recursos Hídricos (FEMARH-RR) — originally established as FEMACT-RR in 1991 (State Law No. 1/1991) and refocused on environmental and water-resource management in 2011 (Law No. 815/2011) — is charged with developing and enforcing Roraima's environmental and hydrological policies (Roraima, Law No. 1/1991; Roraima, Law No. 815/2011). Together, these agencies oversee protected areas of Roraima, and their combined mandate is to conserve biodiversity, safeguard ecosystem services—water regulation, carbon storage and habitat connectivity — and engage local and Indigenous communities through research, environmental education and carefully regulated activities. In particular, low-impact birdwatching initiatives support both scientific understanding of Roraima's rich avifauna (over 260 species recorded in some areas) and sustainable livelihoods, helping to foster broader public appreciation for conservation across this dynamic frontier region.

Roraima's federal conservation network comprises **three National Parks (FLONA)** — Monte Roraima (116 748 ha), Viruá (227 011 ha) and Serra da Mocidade (376,813 ha)— alongside **three Ecological Stations (ESEC)** —Maracá (103,520 ha), Caracaraí (80,560 ha) and Niquiá (286,000 ha)—all IUCN Category II or Ia units managed by ICMBio under Brazil's National System of Conservation Units (MMA, 2015). In addition, ICMBio oversees two National Forests (IUCN Category VI): the reduced-area Roraima National Forest (167 268 ha; Law No. 12 058/2009) and, since September 2023, the Parima National Forest (109 484 ha; Decree No. 11 685/2023). The **Baixo Rio Branco–Jauaperi Extractive Reserve** (581 173 ha) further complements federal sustainable-use options by protecting floodplain communities and enabling regulated rubber, açaí and fish harvest (MMA, 2015).

At the state level, FEMARH-RR manages three **State Forests (FLOTAs)**—Jauaperi (~108,000 ha), Amajari (~145,000 ha) and Apoteri (~185,000 ha)—plus two large **Environmental Protection Areas (APA)**: Xeriuini (750,000 ha) and Baixo Rio Branco (1,207,650 ha) (Governo de Roraima, 2006; 2008). These state-run FLOTAs and APAs allow community-based non-timber extraction, environmental education and scientific research, forming a sustainable-use buffer around stricter federal units. Together, this integrated mosaic conserves Roraima's Amazonian forests and lavrado savannas, supports traditional livelihoods, and underpins emerging low-impact birdwatching initiatives that highlight the region's extraordinary avifauna.

13.3.2. Major Federal Conservation Units (Managed by ICMBio)

The federal government, through ICMBio, manages a network of large Conservation Units in Roraima, safeguarding significant portions of the state's diverse ecosystems. Key federal UCs include:

13.3.2.1. National Parks (PARNA):

These aim to protect natural ecosystems of great ecological relevance and scenic beauty, enabling scientific research, environmental education, recreation, and ecological tourism.

Parque Nacional do Monte Roraima (Monte Roraima PARNA):

The Monte Roraima National Park was established by Decree No. 97.887 on 28 June 1989, encompassing approximately 116 748 ha atop the Pacaraíma Massif in the municipality of Uiramutã, Roraima (ICMBio, 2025). Straddling the entire Raposa Serra do Sol Indigenous Territory, the park is unique in its "dual-designation" status—legally protected both for environmental conservation and for upholding Indigenous constitutional rights—under a shared management agreement between ICMBio, FUNAI and the Ingarikó community (Brazil, Presidential Decree s/n of 15 April 2005). Roughly 90 % of the park is covered by dense *ombrophilous* (rain) forest, with the remaining 10 % consisting of tepui steppe savanna, creating a striking ecotone that supports an exceptional range of biodiversity (MMA, 2015).

Though systematic surveys remain limited, rapid avifaunal inventories conducted across tepui-influenced "cloud forest" habitats have documented over 200 bird species—including upland specialists and endemics such as the tepui-named Roraima antwren (*Herpsilochmus roraimae*)—highlighting the park's importance for both ornithological research and carefully managed birdwatching visits (Naka et al., 2006). Public access is tightly controlled, with guided expeditions permitted only along approved trails to minimize disturbance, promote environmental education at key sites like the "Hotel Quati" cave shelter, and support local Indigenous-led ecotourism initiatives (ICMBio, 2025).

Primary threats include illegal mining and unregulated trekking outside authorized routes, which ICMBio monitors through its integrated management nucleus in Roraima to ensure the long-term protection of this sacred and ecologically valuable "tabletop" mountain landscape.

Parque Nacional da Serra da Mocidade:
The Serra da Mocidade National Park was created by presidential decree on 29 April 1998 to safeguard roughly **350 960 ha** of upland campinarana, open and dense ombrophilous forest within the Negro River basin of Caracaraí, Roraima (Brazil, Decree No. 97.887/1998). Located entirely inside the Raposa Serra do Sol Indigenous Territory, it operates under a "dual-designation" regime: ICMBio, FUNAI and the Ingarikó community co-manage the park to ensure both environmental protection and the exercise of Indigenous rights (Brazil, Presidential Decree s/n of 15 April 2005) . Vegetation is dominated by campinarana (36.6 %), transitioning through mixed forest contacts (33.1 %), open ombrophilous forest (16.9 %) to dense rainforest (13.5 %), creating habitat heterogeneity that supports remarkable biodiversity (MMA, 2015).

Although public visitation remains restricted—trails and research permits are tightly controlled via the park's Consultative Council (established in 2010)—periodic botanical and ornithological expeditions have recorded over **220 bird species**, including tepui and savanna specialists such as the Roraiman antwren (*Herpsilochmus roraimae*) and orange-cheeked parrot (*Pyrilia barrabandi*), highlighting Serra da Mocidade's value for both science and future, low-impact birdwatching under strict guidelines (Barbosa, 2005; Nunes, 2011) . Primary threats include clandestine mining, illegal logging and unregulated gold panning; ICMBio's Integrated Management Nucleus monitors deforestation—recording 325 ha lost between 2000 and 2021—to guide enforcement and restoration efforts that maintain this ecologically pristine "sky island" frontier (ICMBio, 2024).

Parque Nacional de Viruá:
The Viruá National Park was established by Decree No. 97.887 on 29 April 1998 to protect and showcase roughly **227 011 ha** of campinarana and blackwater-floodplain ("várzea") ecosystems near Caracaraí, Roraima—an area where open sandy plains punctuated by forest islands create one of the world's richest freshwater wetland mosaics (Brazil, Decree No. 97.887/1998) . Managed by ICMBio with a Consultative Council formed in 2012 and a formal Management Plan approved in 2014, the park safeguards crucial habitat for a staggering **531 bird species**, including 27 threatened or vulnerable taxa and 23 endemics, making it one of the nation's premier birdwatching destinations (ICMBio, 2014; Olmos, 2014) . Recognized as an Important Bird Area by BirdLife International, Viruá's trails and floating boardwalks allow low-impact public access—especially from July to December when water levels recede—enabling visitors to observe iconic species such as the yapacána antbird (*Myrmoderus roraimae*), streaked antwren (*Myrmotherula longicauda*), and red-ruffed fruitcrow (*Pyroderus scutatus*) amid majestic buritizais and igapó forests (Olmos, 2014; MILKO, 2003).

Despite its ecological importance, Viruá faces pressures from illegal fishing, poaching, artisanal gold mining and proposed hydropower developments upstream on the Branco River, which threaten to alter its flood dynamics and blackwater chemistry (ICMBio, 2014) . ICMBio's Integrated Management Nucleus for Roraima actively monitors deforestation—recording only 76 ha lost between 2000 and 2023—to guide enforcement, community outreach and restoration, ensuring that Viruá remains a globally significant refuge for Amazonian wetland biodiversity and a model for sustainable ecotourism in northern Brazil.

13.3.2.2. Ecological Stations (ESEC) of Roraima:

Roraima's three Ecological Stations—Maracá (103 520 ha), Caracaraí (80 560 ha) and Niquiá (286 600 ha)—form a network of strictly protected IUCN Category Ia reserves administered by ICMBio to conserve representative mosaics of Amazonian forest, savanna (lavrado) and campinarana formations within the Negro and Branco river basins (ICMBio, 2024; Nossos Parques, n.d.). Together, they harbor exceptionally rich avifauna—ranging from endemic forest specialists to migratory wetland species—providing critical nesting, feeding and migratory stopover habitats that underpin regional bird diversity and support ornithological research (MMA, 2015; ICMBio, 2024). Under Brazil's National Protected Areas System (Law 9.985/2000, Art. 9 § 2), these stations prohibit public tourism and recreational visits, allowing only pre-authorized scientific studies and environmental education programs to minimize disturbance to sensitive wildlife (Brazil, 2000; ICMBio, 2024). This stringent protection regime ensures long-term preservation of habitat integrity, ecological processes and avian populations across Roraima's unique forest-savanna transition landscapes. The Ecological Stations of Roraima are:

Maracá Ecological Station:

It was established by a decree on June 2, 1981 (Decree No. 86.061), covers an expansive 103,520 hectares within the municipalities of Alto Alegre and Amajari. More recently, the Decree No. 11,684 of 5 September 2023 (Presidência da República, Casa Civil) expands the Maracá Ecological Station—located in the municipalities of Alto Alegre and Amajari, Roraima—by approximately 50,701 ha (increasing it to **roughly 154,221 ha**) to improve representation of protected habitats, safeguard ecosystem services, and establish an ecological corridor linking existing conservation units and Indigenous territories (Brazil, Decree No. 11,684, 2023). This station is uniquely positioned where forest meets savanna, showcasing a diverse mix of dense evergreen and semi-deciduous forests—some even dominated by single tree species like *Peltogyne* spp. It also features vast open grasslands (campinaranas), three distinct types of savanna (known locally as "lavrado"), areas with buriti palms, plant life clinging to rocky outcrops, and seasonal aquatic vegetation in its lakes. Its varied elevation, from 200 to 400 meters, creates a rich array of micro-habitats. Notably, Maracá holds the distinction of being Brazil's oldest island ecological station and is one of the most intensively studied locations in the entire Amazon, serving as a vital hub for numerous research initiatives, both within Brazil and internationally.

Caracaraí Ecological Station:

It was created by a decree on May 31, 1982 (Decree No. 87.222), spans 80,560 hectares, and it is under federal management by ICMBio, lying entirely within Brazil's Legal Amazon in the municipality of Caracaraí (pop. 22,443 in 2024) (Brazil, Decree No. 87.222, 1982; IBGE, 2024). Its vegetation is dominated by campinarana (63.01 %), with campinarana–rainforest contact (31.91 %) and rainforest–seasonal forest contact (5.08 %), all within the Negro River basin and the Amazon biome (MMA, 2015). The climate features a wet season from April to October and a dry season from November to March (ICMBio, 2024). The station provides refuge for threatened species such as the spider monkey (*Ateles belzebuth*) and preserves essential hydrological networks, notably the Água Boa stream (ICMBio, 2024). Its establishment followed aerial surveys by Dr. Paulo Nogueira Neto and a land-exchange agreement with the municipality, with "Caracaraí" meaning "small hawk" in a local Indigenous language (Nogueira-Neto, 1991; IBGE, 2022). Access is via BR-174

(~180 km from Boa Vista) and the Branco and Ajarani rivers. As of 2022, the station still lacked both a management plan and consultative council (ICMBio, 2022).

Ongoing land-tenure challenges include internal settlements, municipal expansion pressures, and Army training interests, and the major threats are uncontrolled deforestation, selective logging (notably itaúba), pasture conversion, urban encroachment, and mining (Prevfogo, 2006; Pinto dos Santos, 2021). Situated within the Rio Branco river basin, Caracaraí plays a vital role in safeguarding essential water sources and their tributaries. It shares boundaries with Viruá National Park to its southeast and Niquiá Ecological Station to its southwest, and lies next to the Yanomami Indigenous Land (Pinto dos Santos, 2021).

Niquiá Ecological Station:
The Niquiá ESEC protects a 286,600 ha block at 1.16351° N, 61.65747° W in Caracaraí, Roraima, entirely within the Negro River basin of Brazil's Legal Amazon (Nossos Parques, n.d.). It was created by Decree No. 91.306 on 3 June 1985 and administratively recognized by ICMBio's April 2018 deliberation, it safeguards predominantly campinarana vegetation (93.3 %), with transition zones to ombrophilous forest, under an integrated management nucleus alongside seven other federal units (MMA, 2015; Socioambiental, n.d.). The unit's consultative council was established in 2010 and its management plan approved by Ordinance No. 312 in April 2018, benefiting from ARPA financing to maintain critical genetic reservoirs for species such as the white-bellied spider monkey (*Ateles belzebuth*) (ICMBio, 2024). Natural limits—rivers Ajaraní, Branco, Aniquiá, and Água Boa do Univini—define its borders, while land tenure was regularized on 9 May 2024, securing federal ownership of over 3 063 945 400 m² (Brazil, Term No. 39247464/2024). Pressures including incremental deforestation (from 11 ha by 2000 to 37 ha by 2004), recurrent fire outbreaks, illegal fishing, wildlife trafficking, and mineral prospecting are continuously monitored to mitigate impacts on this vital conservation area (ICMBio, 2024; MMA, 2015). It forms an ecological link with the Serra da Mocidade National Park, collectively creating an important wildlife corridor in the southern part of Roraima.

13.3.3. Reserva Extrativista – Extractivist Reserve (RESEX):

***Baixo Rio Branco–Jauaperi Extractivist Reserve (RESEX)*:**
It was officially created by Decree No. 9.401 of 5 June 2018. It protects 580,630.92 hectares of floodplain forest and *várzea* along the Branco and Jauaperi rivers, and is home to approximately 300 traditional extractivist families. Under ICMBio's Regional Management (GR1 Norte), the RESEX permits sustainable rubber, copaíba, and fish harvest. It also supports *Bolsa Verde* benefits, a program that provides financial incentives for environmental services, and recently established a deliberative council (Portaria 4.440/2024). Ornithologists report over 220 bird species here, ranging from hoatzins (*Opisthocomus hoazin*) to elusive antbirds, establishing it as both a vital conservation stronghold and an emerging community-based birdwatching destination (Cohn-Haft et al., 2007; Brazil, Decree No. 9.401/2018).

13.3.4. National Forest (FLONA): These areas aim at sustainable multiple use of forest resources and scientific research, with emphasis on methods for sustainable exploitation of native forests, while also protecting biodiversity.

Roraima National Forest (Roraima FLONA):

The Park spans 167,268 ha across the municipalities of Alto Alegre (85.6 %) and Mucajaí (14.4 %) in Brazil's Legal Amazon, originally created by Decree No. 97.545 on 1 March 1989 to protect the Parima mountain complex's unique flora and fauna, and redefined by Law No. 12.058/2009 to resolve overlaps with Yanomami Indigenous lands and INCRA settlements (Brazil, Decree No. 97.545/1989; Brazil, Law No. 12.058/2009). Dominated by dense *ombrophilous* forest (72.4 %) and transition forest (27.6 %) within the Negro River basin, it supports a complex landscape of emergent canopy trees, understorey palms and a rich understory that underpins remarkable biodiversity (MMA, 2015). Managed by ICMBio, its consultative council was formed in 2011 and a modern management plan endorsed in 2022 guides both sustainable resource use and scientific research, with land tenure fully regularized in May 2024 (ICMBio, 2022; Brazil, Term No. 39250195/2024). Although subject to rising deforestation (from 49 ha by 2000 to 2 758 ha by 2023), wildfire outbreaks and illegal extraction, Flona de Roraima also harbors one of the region's richest avifaunas. A recent gap analysis of Roraima's ornithological data, which collated surveys from 82 localities, highlights that the Mucajaí sector alone—encompassing much of the National Forest—records at least 267 bird species, including both forest specialists and savanna endemics, underscoring its importance for bird conservation and low-impact avitourism (Santos et al., 2021). Under ICMBio's sustainable-use mandate (IUCN Category VI), the Flona permits regulated environmental education and scientific excursions—offering potential for guided birdwatching activities that, when carefully managed, can generate local income while fostering public support for conservation (Braun & Freitas, 2018; ICMBio, 2022).

Parima National Forest (Parimá FLONA):

In September 2023, a remnant 109,484 ha fragment of the original 1961 Parima Forest Reserve in Amajari, Roraima, was reclassified as the Parima National Forest by Decree No. 11.685 of 5 September 2023 (Brasil, 2023), signed by President Luiz Inácio Lula da Silva, thereby bringing it under Brazil's National System of Conservation Units (SNUC) as a sustainable-use federal unit (Law 9.985/2000). This reclassification aligns Parima with neighboring conservation areas—most notably the Maracá Ecological Station—enabling integrated protection of water resources and biodiversity while fostering sustainable forest management and applied research (ICMBio, 2023; Portalamazonia, 2023). The decree secures full subsurface rights for the unit, excludes the section of state highway RR-203 that crosses its borders, and vests administrative responsibility in ICMBio's Amazonian Regional Coordination (ACESSA MT, 2023). Under its new status, the Parima National Forest permits regulated public visitation—such as environmental education programs, scientific studies, and carefully managed ecotourism—and offers significant opportunities for guided birdwatching, showcasing its diverse avifauna including migratory trogons, endemic flycatchers, and forest-interior species—while prohibiting unsanctioned resource extraction (Law 9.985/2000; ICMBio, 2023).

***The Proposed Lavrado National Park (Lavrado FLONA)*:**

Most of Roraima's Lavrado savannas remain outside Brazil's strict-protection framework, with only two federal units overlapping this biome: Monte Roraima National Park, safeguarding a rare elevational gradient at the Lavrado's core, and Maracá Ecological Station, where limited savanna enclaves are embedded within larger flooded-forest and buritizal zones that do not reflect true grassland ecosystems. Together, these two areas cover less than 0.5 percent—approximately 198 km²—of the Lavrado's roughly 40 000 km² expanse (Campos et al., 2008).

On 9 December 2015, the federal government amended Decree No. 6.754/2009—originally establishing a 167 885 ha Lavrado National Park—via publication in the *Diário Oficial da União*. Announced by President Dilma Rousseff at the inauguration of Boa Vista's Residencial Vila Jardim, the amendment formally excised the Lavrado NP from the federal conservation network. While the decree continued to carve out Indigenous territories, defense areas, agrarian settlements, and privately titled lands from park status, it removed strict protection from the Lavrado's core savannas (Secom/RR, 2015; Assad, 2016). As a result, Roraima's total area under federal conservation units fell from approximately 5, 842,678 ha to 5,674,793 ha, underscoring the delicate balance between development pressures and environmental policy in Amazonian frontiers (Assad, 2016). This rollback follows a period of expansion after Brazil's 1988 Constitution, which had created several new units in Roraima—such as the Anauá and Roraima National Forests, Serra da Mocidade National Park, and the Baixo Rio Branco–Jauaperi Extractive Reserve—but illustrates how political and economic considerations can reshape the conservation landscape (Assad, 2016).

Excluding lands already converted by agriculture and other human uses (15.6 percent), agrarian settlements (3.8 percent), and Indigenous territories (57.3 percent), only three continuous blocks of roughly 100,000 ha each remain as viable candidates for a new Lavrado National Park: the Serra do Tucano along the lower Tacutu River; the Serra da Lua in its upper reaches; and the Cauamé basin's lake district. The Serra da Lua is especially significant, spanning from open savanna into ombrophilous forest, protecting the headwaters of the Quitauaú, Urubu, and Baraúna rivers, rising from about 80 m to over 1000 m, and directly linking to adjacent forest systems while bordering five Indigenous territories. Although these areas are identified in Roraima's draft Ecological and Economic Zoning (ZEE-RR), they still await formal legal designation, leaving them exposed to ongoing land-use pressures (Campos et al., 2008).

13.3.5. State-Level Conservation Units (Managed by FEMARH/State)

Identifying a definitive and current list of state-managed Conservation Units in Roraima based on the available information presents challenges. The State Foundation for Environment and Water Resources (FEMARH) is the state environmental agency likely responsible for their administration. Roraima, Brazil's northernmost state, is home to a diverse array of Amazonian and savanna (*lavrado*) ecosystems. A network of protected areas, managed by both the federal Instituto Chico Mendes de Conservação da Biodiversidade (ICMBio) and the state's Fundação Estadual de Meio Ambiente, Ciência e Tecnologia de Roraima (FEMACT-RR), plays a crucial role in conserving this biodiversity while promoting sustainable practices and engaging local communities. These areas also offer significant potential for responsible avitourism, benefiting traditional residents and fostering broader public support for conservation.

13.3.5.1. Environmental Protection Area – EPA (in Portuguese: APA)

Baixo Rio Branco EPA:

The Baixo Rio Branco Environmental Protection Area (APA), created by State Law No. 555 on 14 July 2006 and formally renamed under Law No. 1.704/2022, encompasses 1,207,650 ha within Rorainópolis, Roraima—its entirety coinciding with the municipality's boundaries (State Law No. 555/2006; State Law No. 1.704/2022). Managed by the Fundação Estadual de Meio Ambiente, Ciência e Tecnologia de Roraima (FEMACT-RR), with its consultative council established by Portaria No. 179/2009, the APA was designed to safeguard local ecosystems and support sustainable livelihoods through community-driven resource management, scientific research and environmental education (FEMACT-RR, 2009; ISA, 2010). Vegetation includes dense ombrophilous forest (44.7 %), campinarana (21.9 %) and transitional campinarana–rainforest zones (33.3 %), all draining into the Negro River basin (MMA, 2015).

Its purpose is to harmonize floodplain conservation with traditional extractive livelihoods. The region's tropical climate alternates between rainy (April–September) and dry (October–March) seasons, shaping navigability on the Branco River and its tributaries and influencing floodplain dynamics that sustain high biodiversity—including sport fish like peacock bass (*Cichla spp.*) and a rich assemblage of waterbirds and floodplain specialists (ViaRural, 2010; Santos et al., 2019). Overlapping conservation units—such as the Anauá National Forest (4 488 ha) and the Baixo Rio Branco–Jauaperi Extractive Reserve (389,613 ha)—create a mosaic of sustainable-use and strict-protection areas, enhancing landscape connectivity but also demanding coordinated management to address deforestation, fire risk and pressures from artisanal mining and unsanctioned fishing (MMA, 2015; Observatório de UCs, 2015).

The vegetation within the APA is a mix of dense rainforest (44.7%), campinarana (21.9%), and transitional contacts (33.3%), drained by both white- and blackwater tributaries. FEMACT-RR's 2009 consultative council and 2015 management report promote sustainable fishing, notably for peacock bass, and community bird-monitoring programs. These programs have already documented floodplain specialists like the wattled jacana (*Jacana jacana*) and masked duck (*Nomonyx dominicus*) (Naka et al., 2007; Santos et al., 2019; Governo de Roraima, 2006, *Diário Oficial do Estado de Roraima*; Governo de Roraima, 2022, *Diário Oficial do Estado de Roraima*).

Ornithological surveys in the lower Rio Branco floodplain within the APA have documented at least 20 bird species—including 16 new state records—highlighting its role as a crucial refuge for riverine specialists such as Gallery Forest antbirds and mangrove warblers, and underscoring the area's promise for well-managed birdwatching activities (Naka et al., 2007). Moreover, a comprehensive gap analysis of Roraima's avian data identifies the stretch between Caracaraí and the river's mouth as one of the state's most under-sampled regions, suggesting that targeted surveys here could reveal additional diversity and bolster both conservation efforts and community-led avitourism initiatives (Santos et al., 2021).

Xeriuini EPA

The **Xeriuini Environmental Protection Area** spans 750,000 hectares of semi-deciduous forest and transitional campinarana in the far south of Roraima. It was created by **State Law No. 880 of 22 August 2008** to preserve the headwaters of the Xeriuini and Trairão rivers and support sustainable agroforestry. Managed by FEMACT-RR, its consultative council (Portaria 301/2010) guides activities such as artisanal fishing, babaçu nut collection, and community ecotourism enterprises. Bird surveys in the area have recorded over 190 species, including the endangered Guianan cock-of-the-rock (*Rupicola rupicola*), making Xeriuini a burgeoning destination for specialized birdwatchers (Souza & Almeida, 2019; Governo de Roraima, 2008, *Diário Oficial do Estado de Roraima*).

13.3.5.2. Roraima State Forests (Florestas Estaduais de Roraima) – FLOTA :
A 2014 publication in Roraima's Official Gazette listed three State Forests, managed at the state level. These areas are distinct from National Forests (FLONAs), which are federally managed by ICMBio.

Jauaperi State Forest (Jauaperi FLOTA)
The **Jauaperi State Forest** (FLOTA Jauaperi) spans approximately 215,000 hectares, predominantly characterized by open ombrophilous forest in western Roraima and eastern Amazonas, encompassing the upper Rio Jauaperi basin. Established by **Decree No. 10.043 of 7 February 1993**, it is managed by the Roraima State government. As an IUCN Category VI "sustainable use" unit, it permits regulated extraction of non-timber products and scientific research. Its mosaic of campinarana and mature rainforest supports rich wildlife, including over 260 bird species recorded in rapid surveys (Cohn-Haft et al., 2007). The management plan encourages community-led avitourism excursions guided by local *ribeirinho* associations, offering opportunities for both conservation and economic development (Governo de Roraima, 2014, *Diário Oficial do Estado de Roraima*).

Amajari State Forest (Amajari FLOTA)
Encompassing 145,000 hectares within Alto Alegre municipality, the **Amajari State Forest** (FLOTA Amajari) was created by **Decree No. 9.876 of 12 May 1991**. Its primary objective is to conserve transitional forest-savanna ("lavrado") ecosystems and support traditional forest communities. Also classified as IUCN Category VI, its 2018 management plan authorizes the sustainable harvest of non-timber products like açaí and copaíba oil. The FLOTA Amajari is notably important for safeguarding gregarious nesting sites of macaw colonies, which are a highlight for scientific birdwatching expeditions organized in partnership with the Associação dos Moradores do Amajari (Santos et al., 2022; Governo de Roraima, 2014, *Diário Oficial do Estado de Roraima*).

Apoteri State Forest (Apoteri FLOTA)
The **Apoteri State Forest** (FLOTA Apoteri), covering approximately 185,000 hectares in the northern Rio Branco basin, was established by **Decree No. 8.345 of 15 July 1990**. It was carved out of the former Surucucu Forest Reserve to protect *terra firme* and campinarana forests. Operating under a sustainable-use mandate, its 2021 management plan integrates community-based harvest of copaíba and açaí with biodiversity monitoring. Recent avifaunal inventories have documented 240 species, including endemic manakin and antbird species, highlighting its potential for low-impact birdwatching activities led by local guides (Lima et al., 2023; Governo de Roraima, 2014, *Diário Oficial do Estado de Roraima*).

These protected areas collectively form a robust framework for conserving Roraima's unique ecosystems and supporting its traditional communities. Their integrated approach to conservation, sustainable use, and community engagement provides a model for regional development that prioritizes both biodiversity protection and the well-being of local residents, fostering broader public support for these crucial initiatives.

Table 13.3.2. Key Federal and State Conservation Units in Roraima

Unit	Category	Manager	Area (ha)	Municipality (ies)	Dominant Ecosystems	Source(s)
Parque Nacional do Monte Roraima	PARNA (II)	ICMBio	116,748	Uiramutã	Tepui savanna; dense montane forest	Brasil, Decr. 97.887/1989; MMA 2015
Parque Nacional do Viruá	PARNA (II)	ICMBio	227,011	Caracaraí	Campinarana; várzea wetlands	Brasil, Decr. 97.887/1998; ICMBio 2014
Parque Nacional da Serra da Mocidade	PARNA (II)	ICMBio	350,960	Caracaraí	Campinarana; open & dense rainforest	Brasil, Decr. 29-4-1998; MMA 2015
Estação Ecológica de Maracá	ESEC (Ia)	ICMBio	154,221[1]	Alto Alegre; Amajari	Amazon forest; campinarana; savanna	Decr. 86.061/1981; Decr. 11 684/2023
Estação Ecológica de Caracaraí	ESEC (Ia)	ICMBio	80,560	Caracaraí	Campinarana; forest contacts	Decr. 87.222/1982; ICMBio 2024; MMA 2015
Estação Ecológica de Niquiá	ESEC (Ia)	ICMBio	286,600	Caracaraí	Campinarana; ombrophilous forest	Decr. 91.306/1985; ICMBio 2018
Floresta Nacional de Roraima	FLONA (VI)	ICMBio	167,268	Alto Alegre; Mucajaí	Dense rainforest; transitional forest	Decr. 97.545/1989; Lei 12.058/2009; ICMBio 2022
Floresta Nacional do Parima	FLONA (VI)	ICMBio	109,484	Amajari	Amazon forest; savanna mosaic	Decr. 11.685/2023; ICMBio 2023
RESEX Baixo Rio Branco–Jauaperi	RESEX (VI)	ICMBio	581,173	Caracaraí; Rorainópolis	Floodplain várzea; lowland forest	Decr. 9.401/2018; ICMBio 2020
Floresta Estadual do Jauaperi	FLOTA (VI)	FEMARH-RR	~108,000[2]	Rorainópolis	Campinarana; ombrophilous forest	ZEE-RR 2014[3]
Floresta Estadual do Amajari	FLOTA (VI)	FEMARH-RR	~145,000[2]	Alto Alegre	Savanna-forest ecotone	ZEE-RR 2014[3]
Floresta Estadual do Apoteri	FLOTA (VI)	FEMARH-RR	~94,000[2]	Caracaraí	Terra firme forest; campinarana	ZEE-RR 2014[3]
APA Xeriuini	APA (VI)	FEMARH-RR	750,000	Centro-south Roraima	Semi-deciduous & transitional forest	Lei 880/2008; Souza & Almeida 2019
APA Baixo Rio Branco	APA (VI)	FEMARH-RR	1,207,650	Rorainópolis	Floodplain wetlands; campinarana	Lei 555/2006; Lei 1.704/2022
Proposed Lavrado National Park *	PARNA (II) (prop.)	ICMBio	~800,000	Normandia; Bonfim; Cantá; others	Amazonian savanna (lavrado)	Campos et al., 2008; ZEE-RR 2014[3]

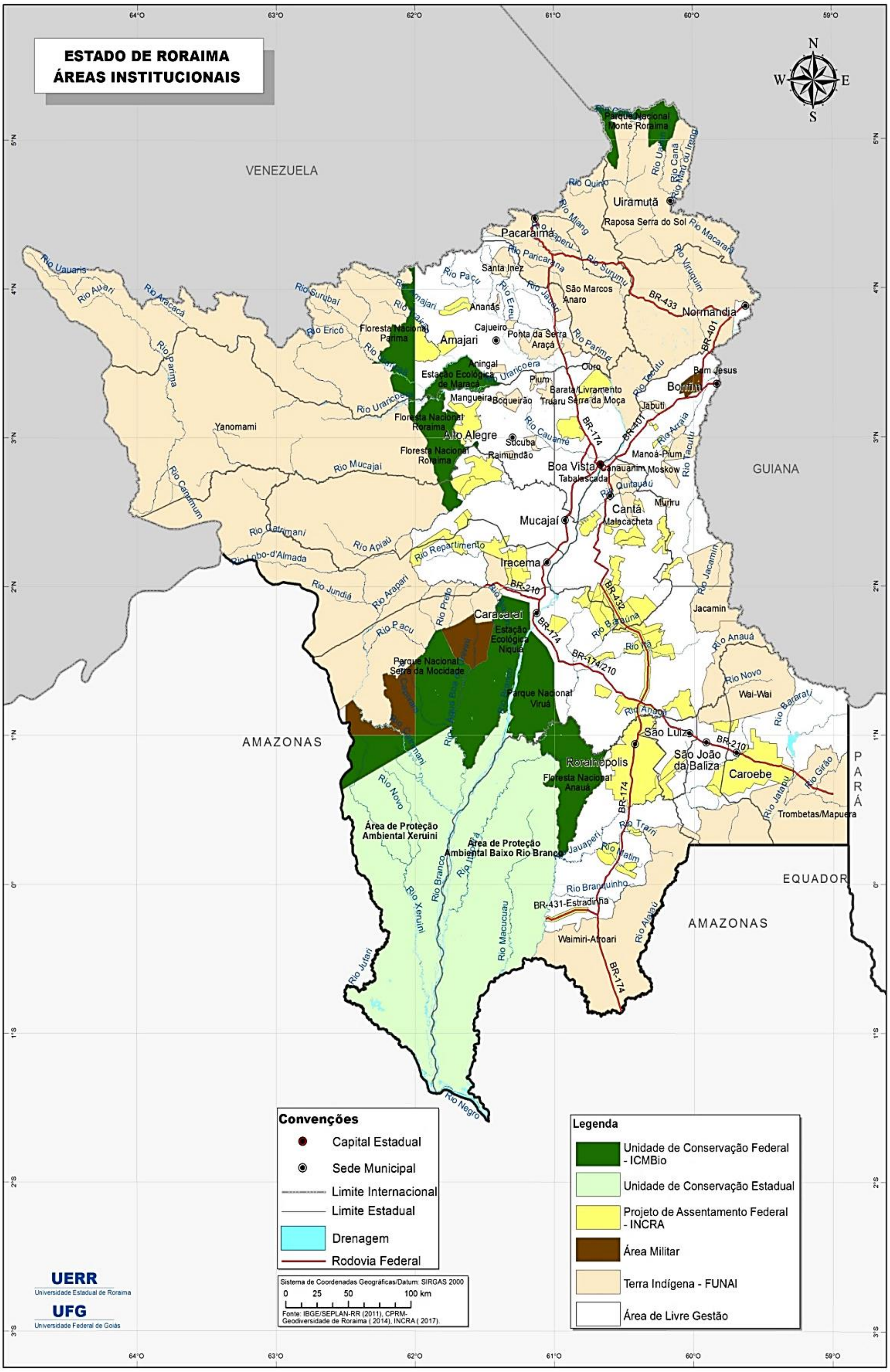
Notes:
Maracá was expanded from 103 520 to ~154 221 ha by Decree 11.684/2023.
FLOTAs' areas are approximate—ZEE-RR 2014 is the latest comprehensive state zoning source.
ZEE-RR (2014) data may have shifted; ongoing boundary reviews could refine these figures.
***Proposed Lavrado National Park**: this unit remains in proposal/drafting stages under Roraima's Ecological-Economic Zoning and awaits formal legislation.

This integrated framework—spanning strict-protection parks and stations at the federal level, alongside sustainable-use forests and APAs at the state level—preserves over half of Roraima's territory. Visitors, notably birdwatchers, should always check each unit's current access rules and obtain permits from ICMBio or FEMARH-RR before planning any field activities.

Abbreviations:
PARNA = Parque Nacional (National Park)
ESEC = Estação Ecológica (Ecological Station)
FLONA = Floresta Nacional (National Forest)
APA = Área de Proteção Ambiental (Environmental Protection Area)
FLOTA = Floresta Estadual (State Forest)
RESEX = Reserva Extrativista (Extractive Reserve)

The apparent lower number or less defined status of state-managed UCs compared to federal ones might reflect historical differences in funding, institutional capacity, or political priorities between state and federal environmental agencies operating in the Amazon region. APAs, allowing human presence and economic activities under specific zoning and regulations, present distinct management challenges compared to strictly protected areas like parks or ecological stations. However, if their total area is indeed substantial, their effective management is crucial for state-wide conservation goals. Birdwatching within APAs might involve engagement with local communities and private landowners, offering different experiences but also potentially encountering varying degrees of habitat conservation depending on the enforcement of regulations. Refer to map of the Figure 13.3.1 for the state and federal protected areas (Conservation Units, UCs).

Figure 13.3.1. Roraima State and Federal Protected Areas



Fonte: Atlas Escolar Geográfico de Roraima. Gladis de FátimaNunes da Silva [et al.]. – Boa Vista – RR : UERR Edições, 2019, p. 26. Disponível em: https://edicoes.uerr.edu.br/index.php/inicio/catalog/view/21/34/222

Map Legend: Understanding Institutional Areas of the State of Roraima

Federal Conservation Unit – ICMBio
(Dark green)
State Conservation Unit
(Very light green)
Federal Settlement Project – INCRA
(Yellow)
Military Area
(Dark brown)
Indigenous Land – FUNAI
(Very light beige)
Free-Use Area
(White)

Part IV - Population Dynamics and Key Demographic Data of Roraima

13.4.0 Total Population and Density

The 2022 Demographic Census conducted by the IBGE provides the most recent official population figures for Roraima. According to this census, the total population of the state was 636,707 inhabitants. When considered in relation to the state's large land area, this results in a very low population density of 2.85 inhabitants per square kilometer. These figures confirm Roraima's status as one of Brazil's least populated and least densely populated states, significantly below the national average density. This low overall density reinforces the perception of vast, sparsely inhabited areas, which generally correlates with greater potential for undisturbed natural habitats favorable to wildlife. However, this aggregate figure masks a highly uneven distribution of people across the territory.

A- Municipalities and Population Distribution

Roraima is divided into 15 municipalities (refer to Table 13.4.1 and Figure 13.4.1. for details). Preliminary data from the 2022 IBGE Census reveals a stark concentration of the population. The capital city, Boa Vista, alone accounted for 408,157 inhabitants, representing approximately 64% of the state's entire population. This leaves the remaining 14 municipalities sharing just over a third of the state's residents.

Table 13.4.1. – Municipalities of Roraima: Preliminary 2022 Population and Proportion of Indigenous Population

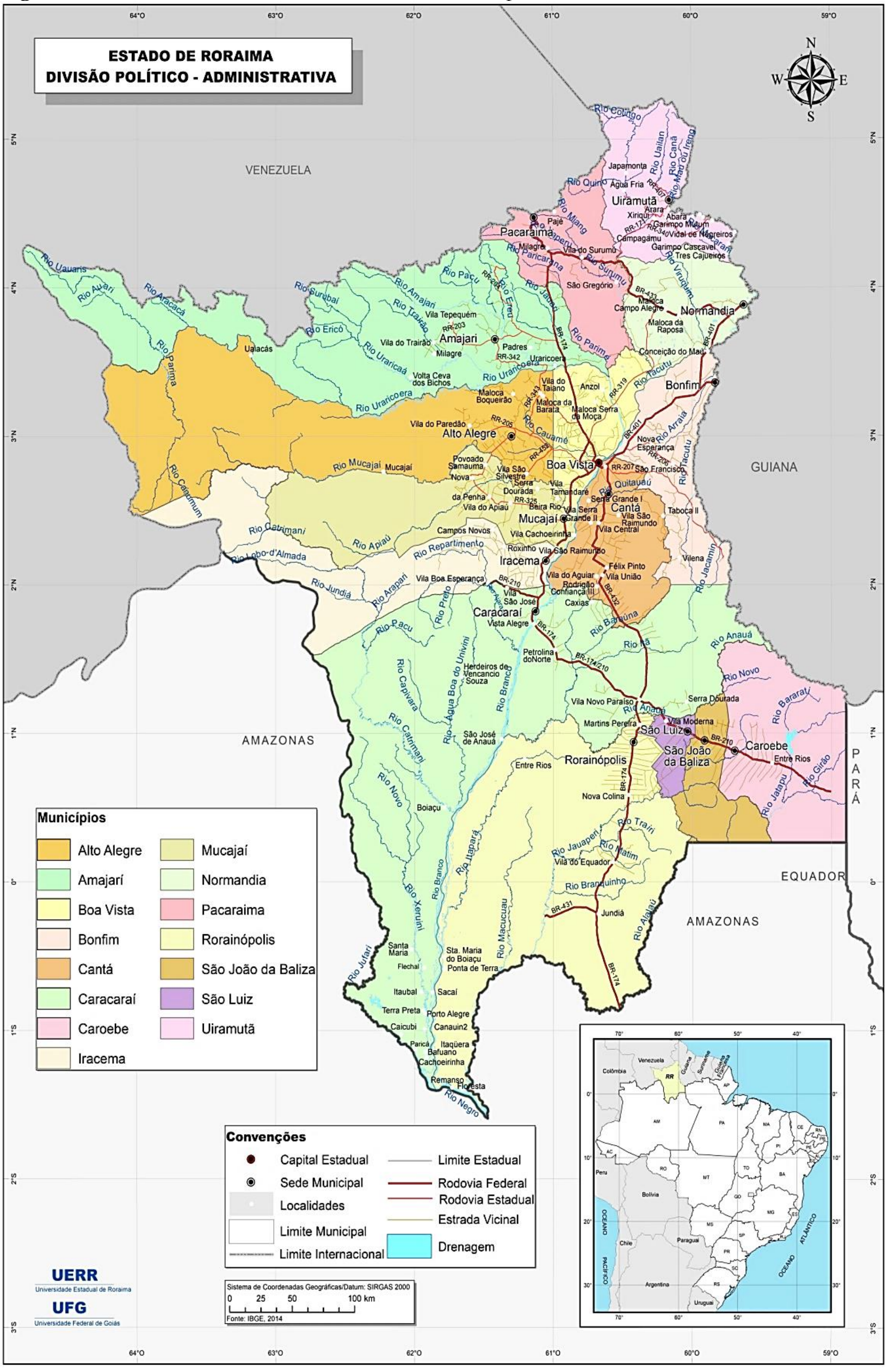
Municipality	Population (2022 Prelim.)	Indigenous Population % (2022)	Remarks / Notes
Amajari	16,994	69.5%	Includes large portions of Yanomami and Macuxi territories
Alto Alegre	23,582	60.3%	Includes part of Yanomami and Wapichana communities
Boa Vista	408,157	~2.5–3.0%	Highest absolute number of Indigenous residents in the state
Bonfim	16,169	~32–34% (est.)	Hosts Macuxi and Wapichana communities along the border with Guyana
Cantá	18,030	~16–17% (est.)	Indigenous presence in rural areas; includes part of Serra da Lua region

Municipality	Population (2022 Prelim.)	Indigenous Population % (2022)	Remarks / Notes
Caracaraí	20,780	~5–10% (est.)	Includes Indigenous reserves and proximity to ecological conservation units
Caroebe	10,555	~3–5% (est.)	Smaller Indigenous communities, mostly outside TI boundaries
Iracema	11,000	~6–7% (est.)	Proximity to lavrado regions with scattered Indigenous populations
Mucajaí	17,058	~6–8% (est.)	Near TI Pirititi (isolated peoples); also includes Wapichana communities
Normandia	15,264	88.8%	One of the most Indigenous-majority municipalities; includes TI Raposa Serra do Sol
Pacaraima	19,317	59.2%	Yanomami territory and entry point from Venezuela; strong Indigenous presence
Rorainópolis	29,932	~5–10% (est.)	Includes TIs such as Waimiri Atroari (shared with Amazonas)
São João da Baliza	8,011	~2–4% (est.)	Predominantly non-Indigenous rural population
São Luiz	6,192	~2–3% (est.)	Sparse population; some Wapichana settlements
Uiramutã	13,764	96.6%	Highest proportion of Indigenous population; within TI Raposa Serra do Sol
State Total	636,707	~15.4%	Roraima has the highest proportion of Indigenous population among Brazilian states

Source: the author, 2025, based on available data (IBGE, SEPLAN-RR, FUNAI)
IBGE (2022). *Censo Demográfico 2022: População por Município – Resultados Preliminares.*
IBGE (2020). *Sistemas de Informação sobre os Povos Indígenas no Brasil – SIDRA/Atlas Digital.*
SEPLAN-RR (2022). *Informativo Estatístico: Estimativas Populacionais e Proporções Étnicas em Roraima.*
FUNAI and Instituto Socioambiental (ISA) datasets on TIs (Terras Indígenas).

This extreme concentration in the capital creates a pronounced urban-rural divide. Boa Vista serves undisputed administrative, commercial, and service hub for the entire state. Most of the state's territory falls within municipalities that have very small populations, limited local economies often based on agriculture or resource extraction, and likely possess considerably less developed infrastructure compared to the capital. These outlying municipalities often rely heavily on connections to Boa Vista via the main highway network. This spatial imbalance profoundly shapes development trajectories, the provision of public services (health, education), and practical accessibility to the state's extensive natural areas. Accessing potential birding locations situated far from Boa Vista will invariably involve significant travel time and may require greater self-sufficiency or reliance on limited local support structures.

Figure 13.4.1. Political Division of Roraima: 15 Municipalities



Fonte: Atlas Escolar Geográfico de Roraima. Gladis de FátimaNunes da Silva [et al.]. – Boa Vista – RR : UERR Edições, 2019, p. 19. Disponível em: https://edicoes.uerr.edu.br/index.php/inicio/catalog/view/21/34/222

B. Urban versus Rural Population

While the overwhelming population concentration in Boa Vista strongly suggests a high degree of urbanization for the state as a whole, specific figures detailing the urban versus rural population breakdown from the 2022 IBGE Census were not available in the reviewed materials. Obtaining this precise split would require consulting more detailed datasets released by IBGE. Nonetheless, the dominance of the capital clearly indicates that a large majority of Roraima's inhabitants reside in an urban setting, primarily within Boa Vista itself.

13.4.1. Demographic Profile: A Diverse Population

A. Ethnic Composition

The 2022 IBGE Census revealed a distinctive ethnic composition for Roraima compared to national averages. The largest self-declared group is Parda (Brown or Mixed-race), accounting for approximately 67.15% of the population. This is slightly higher than the average for the broader Legal Amazon region (65.2%). The second most significant group is Indígena (Indigenous), comprising 15.4% of the state's population. This proportion is exceptionally high, ranking Roraima among the top three states in Brazil for Indigenous population share, far exceeding the national average of 0.8%.

Data for other groups based on the reviewed sources is less precise for Roraima specifically. One document indicates that 8.82% declared as Preta (Black). Figures for Branca (White) and Amarela (Yellow/Asian descent) populations specific to Roraima were not clearly presented in the available materials. For context, the Legal Amazon region averages 22.3% White and 0.2% Yellow, while Brazil averages 43.5% White and 0.4% Yellow. Roraima's profile, characterized by a Parda majority and the largest proportional Indigenous population in the country (alongside Amazonas), reflects its complex history involving European colonization, forced and voluntary migrations (including significant African ancestry contributing to the Parda and Preta populations), and the enduring presence and resilience of numerous Indigenous peoples. This unique cultural and ethnic mix is fundamental to the state's identity and social fabric.

B. Indigenous Peoples: Population Size, Distribution, and Major Territories

Roraima is home to a large and diverse Indigenous population. The 2022 IBGE Census recorded 97,320 individuals self-identifying as Indigenous within the state. This represents a remarkable 74.03% increase compared to the 55,922 recorded in the 2010 Census, marking the fourth-largest absolute increase in Indigenous population among all Brazilian states during that period. This significant growth likely reflects a combination of natural demographic increase and, importantly, a rise in self-identification, possibly linked to greater visibility, cultural revitalization efforts, and ongoing struggles for land rights and recognition.

The Indigenous population is distributed unevenly across the state. Several municipalities, particularly those encompassing large, demarcated Indigenous Lands, have exceptionally high proportions of Indigenous residents: Uiramutã leads with 96.6%, followed by Normandia (88.8%), Amajarí (69.5%), Alto Alegre (60.3%), and Pacaraima (59.2%). Conversely, while the proportion is lower in the capital, Boa Vista hosts the largest absolute number of Indigenous people (20,410). This significant urban Indigenous population is attributed to migration seeking employment, education, healthcare, and other services available in the city.

Indigenous Lands (TIs) cover nearly half of Roraima's territory. While the reviewed materials do not provide an exhaustive list of all ethnic groups, several major TIs are mentioned, often corresponding to the primary groups residing within them. Prominent TIs include the vast Terra Indígena Yanomami (shared with Amazonas state), Terra Indígena Raposa Serra do Sol (primarily inhabited by Macuxi and Wapichana peoples), Terra Indígena São Marcos (associated with Taurepang and Macuxi peoples), Terra Indígena Waimiri-Atroari (straddling the border with Amazonas), and areas inhabited by the Waiwái people in the south. The existence of large Indigenous populations both within extensive, often remote, TIs and concentrated in the state capital points to the diverse realities and adaptations of Indigenous peoples in Roraima today. Some maintain lifestyles closely tied to traditional territories and subsistence practices, while others navigate urban environments, often maintaining strong connections to their home communities and cultures. This complex dynamic is crucial context for any activity involving Indigenous territories or communities, including potential ethno-tourism or birdwatching initiatives which often require specific permissions and protocols. The Waimiri-Atroari TI, for instance, imposes specific transit restrictions on the BR-174 highway that runs through it.

Part V. Access, Infrastructure and Frontiers: Mobility in Roraima

13.5. The Road Network: Lifelines Through the Landscape

Roraima's terrestrial connectivity relies heavily on a network of federal and state highways, fundamentally structured around a primary north-south axis (see Table 13.5.1). The BR-174 highway serves as the undisputed "backbone" of the state's road infrastructure. It traverses Roraima from its southern border with Amazonas, passes through the capital Boa Vista, and continues north to the town of Pacaraima on the Venezuelan border. Critically, the BR-174 provides the "only road connection between the state of Roraima and the rest of Brazil", making it strategically vital for transportation, supply chains, and access.

13.5.1. Several other federal highways branch off or connect to the BR-174 in Roraima:

Several federal highways either intersect or branch from BR-174, which serves as the primary north–south transportation axis through Roraima, linking Boa Vista to Manaus and the Venezuelan border:

BR-210 (Perimetral Norte): Originally conceived as an east–west highway to integrate the northern Amazon region, BR-210 is a partially constructed and only intermittently paved route. Within Roraima, it branches off from BR-174 near the municipality of Caracaraí, heading eastward through São Luiz and Caroebe. The road is intended to eventually reach the border with the state of Pará, though large segments remain uncompleted or unmaintained. Despite its limitations, it plays a strategic role in connecting remote municipalities in southeastern Roraima.

BR-401: This fully paved highway connects Boa Vista to the municipality of Bonfim, located on the eastern border with Guyana. At Bonfim, it links to Lethem, Guyana, via the Takutu River Bridge, which facilitates international trade and cross-border mobility.

BR-431, BR-432, and BR-433: These are shorter federal roads that serve specific functions within Roraima's transport network:

BR-431: Connects Jundiá, in the southern part of Rorainópolis, to BR-174.

BR-432: Runs through Cantá, enhancing regional access and connecting local rural communities to the main highway system.

BR-433: Provides road access to the Surumú region, near the municipality of Pacaraima, and is important for both logistical and Indigenous community connectivity in the northern highlands.

Numerous state highways further connect municipalities and rural areas to this federal network.

Table 13.5.1. Main Road Corridors in Roraima

Designation	Route Summary	Condition (Jan 2025)	Key Features / Significance
BR-174	Manaus (AM) - Rorainópolis - Caracaraí - Boa Vista - Pacaraima (VEN border)	~90% Good	Only road link to rest of Brazil; North-South axis; Waimiri-Atroari night closure
BR-210	Intersects BR-174 south of Boa Vista, heads East towards Pará border	~65% Good (ongoing construction)	East-West "Perimetral Norte"; Partially paved/incomplete
BR-401	Boa Vista - Bonfim (GUY border)	~90% Good	Access to Guyana via Tacutu Bridge
BR-431	Connects Jundiá area to BR-174	~55% Good	Feeder route in the south
BR-432	Connects Cantá municipality area to BR-174/BR-210	~75% Good	Feeder route near Caracaraí
BR-433	Connects Surumú region to BR-174 near Pacaraima	Good (fully recovered)	Access to northern border region

This road network structure, resembling a "fishbone" with the BR-174 as the spine, dictates primary travel patterns within the state. Movement between the eastern and western regions often necessitates traveling via the central corridor around Boa Vista or Caracaraí. The incomplete status of the BR-210 limits direct transversal access across the northern part of the state. This layout directly influences the time, cost, and feasibility of reaching different potential birding destinations scattered across Roraima's vast territory.

13.5.2. Current Road Conditions and Accessibility Considerations

Recent assessments suggest that the main federal highways in Roraima are generally in reasonable condition. A survey by the National Department of Transport Infrastructure (DNIT) in January 2025 indicated that 82% of the federal highway network (1,251 km assessed) was considered in good condition for traffic. Specific highways like BR-174 and BR-401 were reported as being approximately 90% good, while others like BR-210 showed lower percentages but had ongoing improvement works. Recent restoration projects, such as asphalt resurfacing on a 25-kilometer stretch of the BR-174 near Amajari, demonstrate ongoing maintenance efforts by the federal government aimed at improving safety and facilitating transport. State government reports also mention efforts to improve the condition of secondary roads (*vicinais*), recognizing their importance for accessing rural communities and supporting tourism development.

Despite these positive indicators, **several constraints** significantly impact accessibility:
Waimiri-Atroari Indigenous Reserve Night Closure: A critical restriction affects travel on the BR-174. The highway segment passing through the Waimiri-Atroari Indigenous Land (south of Rorainópolis, connecting to Amazonas) is closed to traffic nightly between 6:30 PM and 6:00 AM. Stopping within the reserve during transit hours is also discouraged. This requires careful planning for any journey using the state's main north-south artery.
Seasonality: Although not explicitly quantified in the snippets, the Amazonian climate dictates that heavy seasonal rainfall can severely degrade road conditions, particularly on unpaved state highways (RRs) and local *vicinais*. Access to certain areas may become difficult or impossible during the peak rainy season.

Remoteness: Vast distances and the limited extent of the paved network mean that reaching areas far from the main highways often requires navigating secondary roads of variable quality. In some regions, such as the remote municipality of Uiramutã, accessing specific natural attractions necessitates the use of 4x4 vehicles, potentially rented with local drivers. In the most remote areas, river transport or small aircraft might be the only viable means of access.

Therefore, while the primary federal routes offer relatively reliable transit, overall accessibility for exploring Roraima's biodiversity remains a key logistical factor. The combination of reliance on a few main corridors, large distances, seasonal weather impacts, specific transit restrictions, and the potential need for specialized transport to reach off-highway locations necessitates thorough planning for birdwatching expeditions, particularly those targeting more remote or less-developed areas. Assessing potential birding sites must consider not only their ecological value but also their practical year-round accessibility.

13.5.3. Roraima's Frontiers, Limits and Connections

Roraima's location gives it extensive international borders with two neighboring countries: Venezuela to the north and west, and Guyana to the east and northeast.

Venezuela:
The border with Venezuela stretches for a significant distance (part of the 2,199 km total Brazil-Venezuela border), largely following the watershed divide along the mountainous terrain of the Serra Parima and Serra Pacaraima. The primary, and indeed only official, road crossing point is between the Brazilian municipality of Pacaraima and the Venezuelan town of Santa Elena de Uairén. This crossing connects Brazil's BR-174 with Venezuela's Troncal 10 highway. This border region has experienced significant socio-political events, including a large influx of Venezuelan migrants into Roraima in recent years, leading to periods of tension and temporary border closures. The mountainous nature of this border area offers potential access to the unique Gran Sabana region of Venezuela.

Guyana:
The border with Guyana (part of the 1,605 km total Brazil-Guyana border) is defined by a combination of river courses (primarily the Tacutu and Ireng rivers) and watershed divides in the highlands, culminating at the triple border point on Monte Roraima. The main crossing is between the Brazilian municipality of Bonfim and the Guyanese town of Lethem. This connection was significantly enhanced by the inauguration of the Takutu River Bridge in 2009, linking Brazil's BR-401 with Guyana's road network. This bridge facilitates travel and trade along the Boa Vista–Georgetown corridor, providing Brazil with

improved access to the Caribbean coast. An alternative, likely less developed, crossing point exists further north between Normandia (Brazil) and Good Hope (Guyana). The border region near Bonfim/Lethem encompasses extensive savanna landscapes (Guyana's Rupununi savannas), ecologically similar to Roraima's *lavrado*.

Roraima thus functions as Brazil's principal land gateway to both Venezuela and Guyana. The border crossings at Pacaraima and Bonfim are vital hubs for international movement, trade, and social interaction. They are also points where national security and immigration control are focused. The differing landscapes accessible via each border – highlands towards Venezuela, savannas towards Guyana – offer distinct possibilities for cross-border travel and tourism, including potential multi-country birding itineraries originating or passing through Roraima. The Tacutu Bridge, in particular, has made combining birding explorations in Roraima's *lavrado* and Guyana's Rupununi savannas logistically much more feasible.

13.5.3.1. State Borders: Amazonas and Pará

Roraima shares domestic borders with two other Brazilian states: Amazonas to the south and Pará along a short stretch in the southeast. The border with Amazonas is the most significant in terms of connectivity, as the BR-174 highway provides the crucial southward link towards Manaus, the capital of Amazonas, and thus to the rest of Brazil's road network. The border with Pará, accessible via the eastern extent of the BR-210, is considerably more remote and less integrated by major infrastructure. From an ecological perspective, habitats often show continuity across these state lines; for instance, the lowland rainforests characteristic of southern Roraima extend southward into Amazonas. Bird populations, naturally, do not adhere to administrative boundaries, and species distribution patterns reflect habitat continuity rather than state lines. The remote nature of the Pará border region might offer opportunities for exploring wilderness areas, contingent on accessibility.

13.5.3.2. Caracaraí City: River Gateways and Local Expertise

Caracaraí city (see Figure 13.5.1 and 13.5.2) functions as the essential logistical hub for birding expeditions into Viruá NP and boat trips down the Baixo Rio Branco. While not a major tourist town, it provides necessary services: basic hotels and pousadas (guesthouses), restaurants, fuel stations, and boat rental services. There isn't significant dedicated birdwatching infrastructure *within* the town itself (like specialized lodges), but its strategic location and the presence of knowledgeable guides like Paulo Gois make it the indispensable starting point. The development of birdwatching tourism, though still nascent, represents a potential avenue for sustainable economic activity in the municipality, directly linked to the conservation value of the surrounding natural areas like Viruá.

Figure 13.5.1. Aerial View of Caracarai City: Urban Area

Credit/Source: *Caracarai Municipality's Government, Caracaraí City Hall.*

Figure 13.5.2. Aerial View of Caracarai City: Urban Area with Branco River in the Background

***Source/Credit*: *Aerial view of Caracaraí Municipality*,** *photo taken by Kláis Policarpo*

A-Caracaraí city and Adjacent Areas

The municipality of Caracaraí serves not only as the primary gateway to Viruá National Park but also offers birding opportunities in its own right, particularly along the vital Rio Branco. It is also home to key figures facilitating ecotourism in the region. While Viruá holds many specialists, the areas around Caracaraí town provide different birding experiences:

B-Rio Branco Riverfront

The mighty Rio Branco itself, easily accessible from Caracaraí, is a birding destination. Along the riverbanks, sandbars, and adjacent vegetation, one can observe water birds like Large-billed Tern (*Phaetusa simplex*), Yellow-billed Tern (*Sternula superciliaris*), Black Skimmer (*Rynchops niger*), various herons and egrets (Cocoi Heron - *Ardea cocoi*, Capped

Heron - *Pilherodius pileatus*), and potentially raptors like the Black-collared Hawk (*Busarellus nigricollis*). Boat trips departing from Caracaraí offer the best perspective.

Accessible Forest Fragments: Depending on land use patterns around the town, small patches of *terra firme* or secondary forest might be accessible via local roads. These can yield different species compared to Viruá's white sands, potentially including more widespread Amazonian birds.

Agricultural Edges: The matrix of pastures, small-scale agriculture, and regenerating scrub around Caracaraí can be productive for edge specialists and open-country birds, such as Smooth-billed Ani (*Crotophaga ani*), Ruddy Ground Dove (*Columbina talpacoti*), Grassland Sparrow (*Ammodramus humeralis*), and various flycatchers adapted to disturbed habitats.

Image caption: Southern Caracara (*Caracara plancus*), photographed on June 26, 2021. One of the most common raptors in Brazil, this opportunistic bird can be found in natural grasslands, pastures, beaches, and even urban centers. Its diet includes invertebrates, small mammals, and carrion. Also known locally as *carancho*, *gavião-de-queimada*, *caracaraí*, and *caracará*. *Photo by Arlucio C. Ribeiro Filho. Licensed under Creative Commons Attribution 4.0. Source: Aves de Rapina Brasil. Terms of use: www.avesderapinabrasil.com/termos_de_uso.htm*

C-Etymology and Meaning of "Caracaraí"

A Southern Caracara (Caracara plancus), also known as the caracará hawk in Brazil, perched in a tree. The city of Caracaraí takes its name from this bird. The word "Caracaraí" derives from the name of the caracará, a common hawk-like bird of prey in Brazil, with an added suffix from an indigenous language meaning "small" or "little" (Costa, 2011). In Brazilian Portuguese, *caracará* (also spelled *carcará*) refers to the crested caracara hawk – a bird of the falcon family that is widespread in the region. Linguistically, the term *caracará* itself comes from a Tupi–Guarani indigenous onomatopoeia for the bird's harsh call. The ending "-í" in Caracaraí is a diminutive from Tupi (a language of Brazil's native peoples) meaning "small" (Costa, 2011). Thus, Caracaraí literally means "little caracara (hawk)", often interpreted as "little hawk". This corresponds to a "small hawk" that was very common in the area – likely referring to the caracara or a closely related bird of prey in Roraima. In other words, the city's name is essentially an homage to this Caracara eagle/hawk, emphasizing its presence in the local fauna (Costa, 2011; Prefeitura de Caracaraí, n.d.; Roraima1, 2021; Dicio, n.d.; WikiAves, n.d.; Folha de Boa Vista, 2022).

Part VI – Viruá National Park: A Case Study

13.6. Viruá National Park: Origin, Access, and Conservation Value

According to the Management Plan of Viruá National Park (*Parque Nacional do Viruá* – PNV) (ICMBio, 2014), the Park was officially created on April 29, 1998, as part of Brazil's international commitment under the Convention on Biological Diversity, which established a national goal of protecting at least 10% of the country's territory through strictly protected conservation units. Together with Serra da Mocidade National Park, Viruá was designated to conserve representative portions of the unique ecosystems found in central-southern Roraima, particularly the ecologically distinctive campinaranas—nutrient-poor white-sand forests that host remarkable biodiversity and high levels of endemism.

Strategically located in the Caracaraí municipality, about 200 km south of Boa Vista, the park occupies federal public lands and was established in an area that had been transferred from INCRA (the National Institute for Colonization and Agrarian Reform) to IBAMA (the Brazilian Institute for the Environment and Renewable Natural Resources). This area was selected precisely because of its extremely poor soils, making it unfit for agriculture, settlement, or agrarian reform initiatives. As such, the park was drawn up to avoid land tenure conflicts—there were no private claims, settlements, or historic property titles to contend with.

However, this pragmatic approach to legal and administrative boundaries came at an ecological cost. Important adjacent areas of high conservation value were left out of the original demarcation. These omissions have since been recognized as barriers to the park's ecological integrity and long-term effectiveness. Conservation experts argue that expanding the park's borders to include these excluded zones is essential for ensuring habitat connectivity, maintaining ecological processes, and safeguarding species with larger home ranges or specialized habitat needs (ICMBio, 2014).

The park's name itself tells a story of miscommunication. "Viruá" is actually the result of a mapping error. The waterway from which the park derives its name is known locally as the Iruá River, a designation still used by traditional fishers and extractivists who have lived in the area since before the 1950s. However, early official maps incorrectly registered it as "Viruá," and the name stuck in legal documents. Interestingly, the river's true name, *Iruá*, is derived from a freshwater snail called "Uruá" (*Pomacea* sp.), whose egg-laying behavior is closely monitored by locals (ICMBio, 2014). According to traditional ecological knowledge, the height of the snail's egg clusters serves as a natural flood gauge, indicating the anticipated water level during the annual inundation—a vital insight in a landscape governed by flood-pulse dynamics.

13.6.1. Multimodal Access and Tourism Potential

Despite its remote ecological character, Viruá National Park is surprisingly accessible by Amazonian standards. It is located along the BR-174 federal highway, which connects Manaus (AM) to the Venezuelan border, passing through Boa Vista, the capital of Roraima. From either of these urban centers—both equipped with airports, long-distance bus lines, and specialized ecotourism agencies — visitors can reach the park via a fully paved highway, an infrastructural rarity in the Amazon region. This geographical proximity to two state capitals, combined with year-round terrestrial access, significantly boosts the park's potential as a site for scientific research, sustainable tourism, and environmental education. Unlike many Amazonian protected areas that require airstrips or river expeditions, Viruá offers relatively straightforward overland travel, lowering logistical barriers and expanding opportunities for engagement.

13.6.1.1. River-Based Access and Seasonal Constraints

While road access brings visitors to the region, entry into the park's core zones still depends on river navigation—particularly during the wet season (April to December), when waterways are more easily navigable. The most common access route begins in Caracaraí, on the banks of the Rio Branco, and continues as follows:

The creation of Viruá National Park represents a landmark in Brazil's efforts to preserve the diversity of white-sand Amazonian ecosystems—an often overlooked yet ecologically vital landscape. Its unique combination of accessibility, scientific relevance, and cultural heritage makes it a prime candidate for integrated conservation and sustainable use. Moving forward, park authorities and conservation stakeholders must prioritize boundary expansion, ecological monitoring, and the integration of traditional knowledge systems, such as local flood indicators and place names. The story of Viruá is not just about maps and mandates, but about learning from the landscape—and from those who have lived with it for generations. Figure 13.6.1. presents the main Viruá's sign welcoming the visitors in the entrance area.

Figure 13.6.1. Viruá National Park Wooden Sign: Entrance Area

Caption: Entrance sign of **Viruá National Park** (*Parque Nacional do Viruá*), located in the municipality of Caracaraí, Roraima, Brazil. This federal conservation unit, managed by ICMBio, protects vast areas of Amazonian campinarana forest and is home to exceptional biodiversity, including rare and endemic species.

13.6.2. Park Profile: A Biodiversity Mosaic in the Northern Amazon

13.6.2.1. Geography & Formation:

Located southwest of Caracaraí, Viruá National Park lies within the vast interfluve between the Rio Branco and Rio Negro rivers, and it has "230,000 ha, located in the center of the state of Roraima in northern Brazil (1°20'N; 61°10'W), nearly 150 km south of Boa Vista, bounded by the Rio Branco to the west, the BR-174 highway to the northeast, the Estrada Perdida (lost road) to the east, and the Rio Anauá to the south" (Laranjeiras et al., 2014, p.149). Its landscape is largely defined by the Viruá River basin and the underlying geology, which gives rise to extensive areas of white-sand soils, known technically as podzols. These highly leached, acidic, and nutrient-poor sands dictate the unique vegetation patterns and associated fauna that make the park so special.

13.6.2.2. Estrada Perdida — "the Lost Road"

Once part of Brazil's BR-174 thoroughfare, this abandoned 40 km segment now threads like a fading scar across a sweeping expanse of Amazonian white-sand mosaics—campinas and campinaranas—punctuated by scattered clearings, igapó flood-forests, and lush Moriche-palm swamps (*buritizais*). A tangle of footpaths, notably the Estrada do Preto leading up to Serra do Preto, branches off the decaying asphalt and lets visitors wander a living patchwork of sandy heath, seasonally drowned woodlands, and palm-studded wetlands, offering a rare, nearly road-free immersion in this diverse ecotone.

13.6.3. Ecosystem Mosaic:

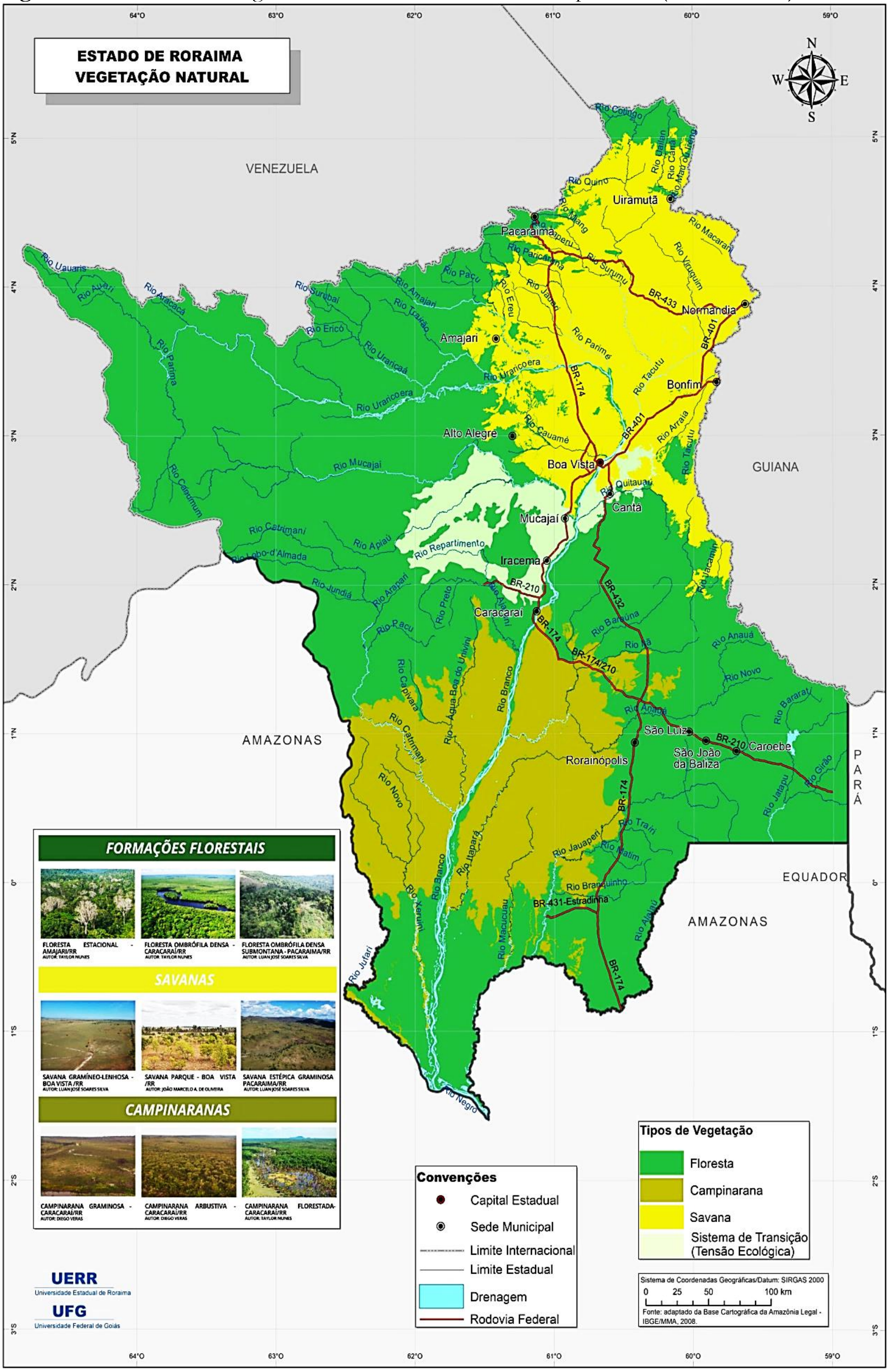
The park is renowned for its extensive white-sand ecosystems, presenting a stark contrast to the typical lushness in a transitional belt of northern Amazonia, it unfolds across a vast mosaic of nutrient-poor white-sand ecosystems—collectively known as campinas and campinaranas. Interlaced with these sandy forests are broad ribbons of seasonally inundated flood-plain woodlands (*várzea and igapó*), while higher, well-drained *terra-firme* ridges rise like wooded archipelagos above the flats. Scattered oxbow lakes, streams, and other aquatic pockets punctuate the landscape, and a narrow fringe of open savanna skirts the park's northern edge. Human disturbance is minimal and localized. Altitudes grade gently from roughly 50–60 m along the Rio Branco up to about 360 m on the Serra do Viruá. (Oliveiras et. al., 2014):

Campina (White-Sand Savanna): These are open areas characterized by sparse, low-stature shrubs, hardy grasses, and scattered trees, often dotted with terrestrial bromeliads. The ground is typically bare white sand, reflecting sunlight intensely and creating a hot, dry microclimate despite the region's high rainfall. *Campinas* are ancient formations, ecologically distinct and supporting highly adapted flora and fauna.

Campinarana (White-Sand Forest): Often forming a transition between *campina* and taller forest types, *campinarana* is a dense, tangled forest characterized by thin-stemmed trees with small, leathery (sclerophyllous) leaves – adaptations to the low nutrient availability. The canopy is typically lower and more uniform than in *terra firme* rainforest, and the understory can be thick with lianas and epiphytes. This habitat is known to harbor numerous specialist bird species.

Other Habitats: Beyond the dominant white-sand landscapes, Viruá also encompasses gallery forests lining rivers and streams (*igarapés*), offering richer soils and taller trees that support a different suite of birds. Patches of taller, more typical Amazonian *terra firme* forest exist, particularly in areas with better drainage or different soil types, adding further to the park's habitat diversity. Seasonally flooded areas may also occur, particularly along the Viruá River.

Figura 13.6.2 . Roraima Vegetation: Savanna, Forest, and Campinarana (flooded areas)



Fonte: Atlas Escolar Geográfico de Roraima. Gladis de FátimaNunes da Silva [et al.]. – Boa Vista – RR : UERR Edições, 2019, p. 43. Disponível em: https://edicoes.uerr.edu.br/index.php/inicio/catalog/view/21/34/222

13.6.4. Conservation Significance:

Viruá National Park was established in 1998 and covers approximately 2,419 square kilometres. Its primary importance lies in the protection of one of the largest continuous areas of *campina* and *campinarana* ecosystems in the Brazilian Amazon. These habitats, while covering a relatively small area of the basin overall, are centres of endemism and specialization. The park serves as a crucial refuge for species adapted to these harsh conditions. It is recognized internationally as an Important Bird and Biodiversity Area (IBA) by BirdLife International (BR001), specifically justified by the presence of restricted-range species and its representation of the unique Guianan-Amazonian white-sand belt biome (BirdLife International, n.d.).

Its role extends to protecting watersheds and contributing to the ecological integrity of the wider Rio Branco basin. However, prospective visitors or researchers should be aware that accessing detailed, up-to-the-minute official information regarding park regulations, specific ecological data, or IBA status justification directly from primary online government sources can sometimes prove challenging. This highlights a potential gap in digital information management or accessibility for some protected areas in the region, making alternative verification methods necessary.

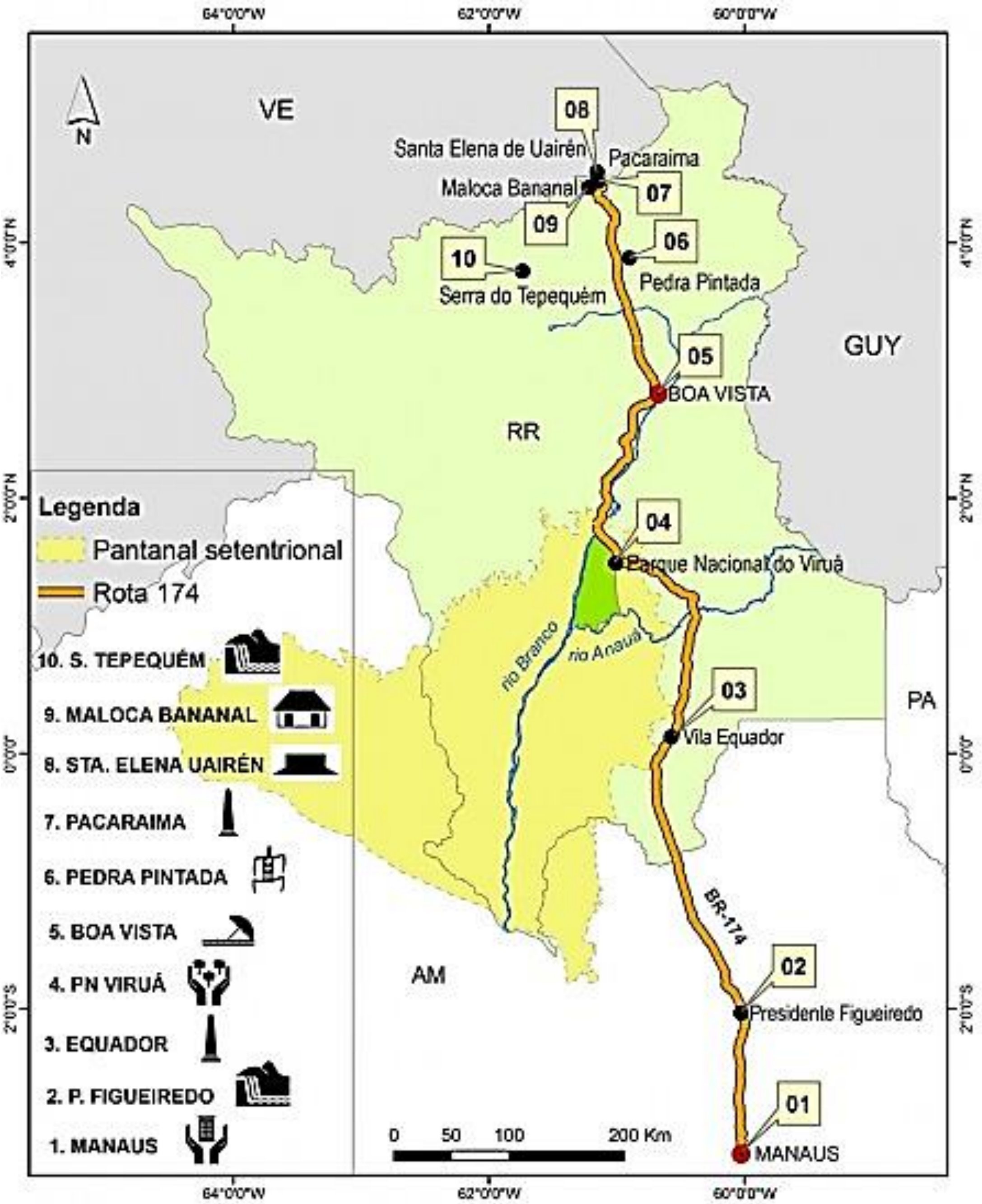
13.6.5. Planning Your Expedition: Logistics and Realities

Venturing into Viruá requires careful planning, as it remains a relatively undeveloped park primarily focused on research and conservation, rather than mass tourism.

Access & Permits:

Access to Viruá National Park is typically via the municipality of Caracaraí, located on the BR-174 highway south of Boa Vista (see Figure 13.6.3). From Caracaraí, unpaved access roads lead towards the park boundary, the condition of which can vary significantly, especially during the wet season (roughly May to September) when travel may become difficult or impossible. Entry into the park requires authorization from the managing body, the Instituto Chico Mendes de Conservação da Biodiversidade (ICMBio). Prospective visitors, whether researchers or birders, must typically apply for a permit in advance, outlining their purpose and duration of stay. Contacting the ICMBio regional office in Boa Vista or Caracaraí well ahead of any planned visit is essential to understand the current procedures, potential fees, and specific entry requirements. Obtaining this official information reliably online has proven difficult at times, underscoring the need for direct contact or reliance on experienced local operators.

Figure 13.6.3. Access to Viruá National Park via the BR-174 federal highway.



Map Caption: Access to Viruá National Park – The park can be reached via the BR-174 federal highway, which connects Manaus (AM) to the Venezuelan border. From Boa Vista (RR), it is a 190 km drive heading south on a fully paved road; from Manaus, it is approximately 600 km heading north. The park headquarters is located 7 km off the highway at Km 322, via the unpaved "Estrada Perdida" access road. Visitors can also access the park by river, including the Branco, Baruana, Anauá, and Iruá Rivers. Of these, only the Iruá River flows within the park boundaries; the others run through its surrounding buffer zone. The nearest airport is in Boa Vista, which offers regular commercial flights from major Brazilian airlines. There is no public transportation directly to the park, but visitors may hire rental vehicles or private transport services from Boa Vista or Caracaraí, available through local cooperatives and agencies. ***Source:*** *ICMBio / gov.br – Viruá National Park visitor information(https://www.gov.br/icmbio/pt-br/assuntos/biodiversidade/unidade-de-conservacao/unidades-de-biomas/amazonia/lista-de-ucs/parna-do-virua/informacoes-sobre-visitacao-2013-parna-do-virua)*

13.6.6. Visitor Profile & Infrastructure:

Viruá sees far more researchers than casual tourists. Its infrastructure reflects this focus. While details require confirmation through direct ICMBio contact or local guides, reports suggest the existence of a basic administrative base or visitor centre near the park entrance, potentially offering limited support. Lodging options within the park are minimal, likely restricted to designated primitive campsites requiring visitors to be fully self-sufficient (tents, cooking gear, food, water purification). There might be possibilities for researchers or authorized groups to utilize basic field station facilities, but this requires specific prior arrangement. For most birding visitors, the practical option is to stay in Caracaraí town, which offers basic hotels and guesthouses, and make day trips into accessible areas of the park or arrange multi-day camping expeditions with a guide. See Figures 13.6.4, 13.6.5, and 13.6.6 for having an idea of the Park hotspot points.

Figure 13.6.4. Main Supporting Buidings in the Viruá National Park managed by ICMBio.

Samaúma Walkway, of the Viruá National Park, is a 230-meter accessible trail allows visitors, including those with mobility challenges, to explore a seasonally flooded forest in comfort and safety (see Figure 13.6.5). Along the route, one may encounter towering trees such as the majestic Samaúma (*Malvaceae*) and Amarelão (*Fabaceae*), as well as woodpeckers, monkeys, squirrels, and even stream fish during the wet season. The walkway was built through a participatory project supported by the ARPA Program, involving local carpenters, architects, community members, and park staff, and used seized wood donated by IBAMA-RR in partnership with PRF-RR.

Figure 13.6.5. Samaúma Tree Walkway: The Most Used Trail by the Visitors

Caption: Samaúma Walkway, Viruá National Park. In the detail, Paulo Gois is photographed in the Samaúma Walkway surrounded by a **South American coati**, known in Portuguese as **quati** (scientific name: *Nasua nasua*).

Figure 13.6.6. Serra Lookout, Viruá National Park – Located approximately 170 meters above sea level

Caption: Serra Lookout, Viruá National Park – Located approximately 170 meters above sea level, this viewpoint offers visitors a panoramic vista of a diverse landscape mosaic, including *campinarana* (white-sand vegetation), terra firme forests, upland terrains, and seasonally flooded areas. Accessible via the PPBio research trail starting from the park headquarters, the route leads through varied ecosystems, showcasing the park's rich biodiversity. **Source:** ICMBio / gov.br – Viruá National Park visitor information (https://www.gov.br/icmbio/pt-br/assuntos/biodiversidade/unidade-de-conservacao/unidades-de-biomas/amazonia/lista-de-ucs/parna-do-virua/informacoes-sobre-visitacao-2013-parna-do-virua).

Practical Considerations
A trip into Viruá is not for the unprepared. The heat and humidity can be intense, particularly in open *campina* areas. Biting insects are a significant nuisance, especially the notorious *pium* (black flies, Simuliidae), which are abundant near watercourses and can make birding uncomfortable without repellent and protective clothing. Visitors must bring all necessary supplies, including food, ample water, fuel (if driving), first-aid kit, and navigation tools (GPS recommended). Hiring a local guide familiar with the park's trails, access points, bird vocalizations, and logistical challenges is highly recommended, if not essential, for a safe and productive visit. The difficulty in accessing centralized, easily verifiable logistical information online further elevates the importance of local expertise for navigating the practicalities of a Viruá expedition.

13.6.7. Avifauna: Viruá National Park and Buffer Zone
In their study, Laranjeiras *et al.* (2014) documented an impressive 520 bird species in Viruá National Park (VNP) and its immediate buffer zone, spanning 70 avian families (see Appendix A of their study). Roughly 13 % of this total—71 species—were observed solely outside the park's legal limits, with 16 of those confined to the Rio Branco's river-island archipelago. Passerine diversity is anchored by three hyper-rich groups:

Tyrant Flycatchers (Tyrannidae) – 48 species
Antbirds (Thamnophilidae) – 44 species
Tanagers (Thraupidae) – 41 species

Among non-passerines, the leading families are:
Accipitridae (hawks, eagles, and kites) – 23 species
Trochilidae (hummingbirds) – 22 species
Psittacidae (parrots and macaws) – 21 species

Of the entire assemblage, 27 species carry official threat status under either the global Red List (BirdLife International, 2014) or Brazil's national list (ICMBio, 2014). Most alarming is the *Critically Endangered* Rio Branco Antbird (*Cercomacra carbonaria*), underscoring the fragile balance between Viruá's extraordinary richness and the looming risk of local extinctions.

13.6.7.1. Threats for the Biodiversity, Avifanua, and Conservation at Viruá:
Oliveiras et al. (2014) portray Viruá National Park as a critical refuge for biodiversity, but one that exists in a delicate balance. Although the park is part of a broader network of protected areas in northern Amazonia, the southern region of Roraima continues to suffer from rapid deforestation caused by expanding cattle ranching, soybean cultivation, and commercial logging (Soares-Filho et al., 2006; ICMBio, 2014). Covering over 200,000 hectares, the park still protects vast stretches of undisturbed white-sand forests, terra-firme uplands, and seasonally flooded lowlands. These habitats are home to both common and rare bird species—but their long-term viability depends on the park remaining ecologically connected to surrounding intact landscapes.

Preserving this ecological connectivity is now a pressing challenge. A federal proposal put forth in 2010 aims to expand Viruá's boundaries to include adjacent forest areas, which would immediately protect 55 bird species known to occur only in these peripheral zones (MMA, 2010). However, threats are also growing just beyond the park's borders. One of the most significant is the planned Bem Querer Hydroelectric Project (UHE Bem Querer), a 650-megawatt dam proposed for construction on the Rio Branco, only about 30 km north of the park. Despite being labeled a "run-of-river" project, it would flood approximately 519 km² of forest and retain 19 to 20 km³ of water. Alarmingly, it would operate with a low energy efficiency (Araujo, 2024), producing electricity with a projected capacity factor of just 27–30%—among the lowest of any large dam proposed in Brazil (Global Energy Monitor, 2025; Energia Roraima, 2024; Instituto Socioambiental, 2025; Araújo, 2024). As of May 2025, the project remains at the pre-construction phase. The environmental impact assessment (EIA), submitted in October 2024, was returned by IBAMA in January 2025 for substantial revisions due to concerns over hydrology and fish migration (Folha BV, 2025). These delays have pushed the earliest possible construction date to between 2027 and 2030 (Power Technology, 2025). If the project proceeds, it will likely submerge floodplain ecosystems that are vital to several specialized bird species, including the Critically Endangered *Cercomacra carbonaria* (Rio Branco Antbird) and the Near-Threatened *Myrmotherula klagesi* (Klages's Antwren) (Vale et al., 2007; Bird et al., 2012).

The estimated cost of the dam is around R$ 10 billion (approximately US$ 1.9 billion), and it would require the construction of a 500-kilovolt transmission line over 700 km to Manaus to connect Roraima to Brazil's national grid (Cenário Energia, 2025). Although no construction has begun, the project's potential to permanently alter river hydrology, sediment flow, and regional development pressures raises serious conservation concerns—particularly for protected areas like Viruá that depend on floodplain dynamics for their ecological integrity. Given these threats, Laranjeiras et. al. (2014) strongly recommend immediate and targeted research on the population status and ecological needs of flood-dependent bird species. They also call for a comprehensive cumulative impact assessment—one that goes beyond localized effects and considers regional hydrological and ecological processes—before any further licensing decisions are made.

13.6.8. Birding Hotspots within Viruá: Trails and Targets

Exploring Viruá's avifauna requires navigating its specific habitats, often via rudimentary trails or access roads. As for navigating the Park, some choices are available, but some aspects must be considered. While formal, well-maintained hiking trails are limited, birding often occurs along the main access roads and secondary tracks used for research or park management. Specific trail names like "*Trilha da Capivara*" have been mentioned by visitors, likely traversing a mix of gallery forest and perhaps *campinarana* near water sources. Other potential routes might include the "*Trilha da Campina*", focusing specifically on the open white-sand habitats. Identifying productive routes often relies heavily on the knowledge of local guides or information gleaned from recent trip reports and scientific publications, as official trail maps and detailed online citizen science data (like specific eBird hotspot routes) can be difficult to obtain consistently.

Figure 13.6.7. Viruá National Park – Buriti palm groves and Campinarana vegetation

Source/Credit: Viruá National Park – Buriti palm groves and Campinarana vegetation of the Northern Pantanal. Photo: Antonio Iaccovazo / *Source: oeco.org.br – "Parque Nacional do Viruá: um campeão de biodiversidade" (https://oeco.org.br/analises/28705-parque-nacional-do-virua-um-campeao-de-biodiversidade/)*

Figure 16.6.8. Branco River, Viruá National Park

Source: ICMBio / gov.br

Caption: Boat trip on the Branco River, Viruá National Park – A unique experience for visitors, featuring rapids near Caracaraí, blackwater floodplain landscapes, and access to beaches, islands, and preserved *igapó* and *várzea* habitats. Species such as the Rio Branco antbird (*Cercomacra carbonaria*), Klages's antwren (*Myrmotherula klagesi*), and the Orinoco goose (*Neochen jubata*) may be observed along the way. *Source: ICMBio / gov.br – Viruá National Park visitor information.*

Figure 13.6.9. Orinoco Goose (*Neochen jubata*)

Image Caption: Orinoco Goose (*Neochen jubata*) photographed.
Photo from birdphotos.com, September 2008.

13.6.8.1. Habitat-Specific Birding

In Viruá National Park, bird diversity tracks sharply with habitat boundaries. White-sand campinas reveal their own cast of specialist antbirds and seedeaters, while seasonally flooded igapós erupt with riverine herons, kingfishers, and fruitcrows. Terra-firme hilltops draw canopy tanagers and mixed flocks that never enter the wetlands below, and buriti palm swamps host macaws and nightjars seldom seen elsewhere. Matching your route to these micro-environments is the surest way to unlock Viruá's full 520-species tapestry (Laranjeiras et al., 2014). The key to successful birding in Viruá is targeting specific habitats (Naka et. al., 2006; Laranjeiras et al., 2014; SEPLAN-RR, 2022):

Campina/Campinarana Specialists: These white-sand environments host the park's most sought-after species. Key targets include the near-threatened Hoary-throated Spinetail (*Synallaxis kollari*), often found in dense *campinarana* thickets, and the Pale-bellied Mourner (*Rhytipterna immunda*), which favours the edges of these stunted forests. Depending on the exact location and habitat quality within the park, other white-sand specialists potentially present include the Yapacana Antbird (*Aprositornis disjuncta*), Pelzeln's Tody-Tyrant (*Hemitriccus inornatus*), and Bronzy Jacamar (*Galbula leucogastra*). These species are often inconspicuous and require patience and familiarity with their calls.

Gallery Forest Birds: The forests along rivers and streams offer a richer avifauna, typical of more fertile Amazonian areas. Here, one might encounter various antbirds (e.g., Spot-backed Antwren - *Herpsilochmus dorsimaculatus*, White-fringed Antwren - *Formicivora grisea*), manakins (e.g., Golden-headed Manakin - *Ceratopipra erythrocephala*), woodcreepers, and flycatchers. These areas provide crucial refuge and resources, contrasting sharply with the adjacent white-sand habitats.

Terra Firme Fragments: Where patches of taller forest occur, species diversity increases further, potentially including birds absent from the *campinarana*, such as larger toucans, woodpeckers, or different understory insectivores.

13.6.8.2. Citizen Science Data for Viruá National Park

While direct access to detailed, real-time eBird hotspot data for Viruá can face accessibility issues, platforms like WikiAves (a Brazilian bird database) and aggregated eBird summaries often confirm a significant species list for the park, exceeding 300 species. This data, contributed by researchers and visiting birders over time, helps build a picture of the park's avifauna, highlighting the presence of key specialists and seasonal patterns, even if pinpointing exact locations of recent sightings requires alternative sources like trip reports or guide consultation. The collective knowledge pooled in these databases remains invaluable, despite potential access hurdles for specific hotspot pages.

Figure 13.6.10. Hoary-throated Spinetail (*Synallaxis kollari*)

Hoary-throated Spinetail (*Synallaxis kollari*) photographed in Amajari, Roraima, Brazil.*Photo by J.A. Jacomelli, 18 December 2014, 16:00. Source: Flickr*

Figure 13.6.11. Spot-backed Antwren (*Herpsilochmus dorsimaculatus*)

Spot-backed Antwren (*Herpsilochmus dorsimaculatus*), adult male, photographed at the ZF Canopy Tower near Manaus, Amazonas, Brazil. *Photo by Hector Bottai, 20 November 2023. Licensed under Creative Commons Attribution-Share Alike 4.0.*

Part VII - Talking to Experts on Avifauna, Birding and Educational Learning

13.7. Introduction

13.7.1. Spotlight on a Local Guide

Effective exploration of Viruá and the surrounding region often hinges on local expertise. Paulo Gois stands out as a highly regarded local guide based in Caracaraí. With years of experience navigating the complexities of Viruá National Park and the waterways of the Baixo Rio Branco, Gois possesses intimate knowledge of the area's avifauna, logistical requirements, and access points. His expertise extends beyond simply finding birds; he understands the seasonal challenges, the behavior of target species, and the practicalities of mounting expeditions in this demanding environment. Reports suggest Gois collaborates effectively with visiting researchers and birders, and potentially assists ICMBio with logistical support or monitoring efforts within Viruá, playing a crucial role in bridging the gap between the park's potential and the visitors wishing to experience it. His work is instrumental in developing sustainable birdwatching tourism in Caracaraí, providing essential services and local knowledge that significantly enhance the visitor experience and contribute directly to the local economy. By taking all these factors into account, Gois contributes not only as a coauthor, but also with his insights caught in the interview and content analysis done by the first author of the chapter, professor Ismar Borges de Lima.

Introducing Paulo Gois' bird gallery from Caracaraí & Viruá NP

Tucked between the Rio Branco flood-plains and the white-sand forests of Viruá National Park, the municipality of Caracaraí is one of Brazil's richest birding hotspots, with more than 520 species recorded so far. Local guide **Paulo Gois** has spent the past decade documenting that diversity; the photographs you are about to see come entirely from his personal collection (refer to following Table 13.7.1 and subsequent Figures and captions for details), taken on routine guiding trips inside the park and along its river-island corridors.

Table 13.7.1. The line-up captures the main "draw-cards" that bring avitourists to southern Roraima:

Habitat	Species (PT / Scientific)	Why birders love it
Campinarana thickets	**Formigueiro-de-Yapacana – *Aprositornis disjuncta***	Range-restricted white-sand specialist; Viruá is the easiest place on Earth to see it.
Flood-plain edge	**Formigueiro-de-Hellmayr – *Percnostola subcristata***	Elusive understory antbird confined to the Rio Negro–Branco interfluve.
Terra-firme forest	**Formigueiro-Ferrugem – *Myrmoderus ferrugineus***	A Guianan Shield endemic whose rich rufous back lights up mixed flocks.
River-island grass	**Uruguai-do-Campo – *Colinus cristatus*** (Crested Bobwhite)	Signature open-savanna gamebird of the lavrado belt.
Gallery-forest canopy	**Rabo-de-Arame – *Pipra filicauda*** (Wire-tailed Manakin)	Male's filament-tail display is a highlight of any Viruá dawn.

Habitat	Species (PT / Scientific)	Why birders love it
Campina glades	**Caboclinho-de-Peito-Castanho – *Sporophila castaneiventris*** (Chestnut-bellied Seedeater)	One of the handsomest "capuchino" seedeaters, now scarce across Amazonia.
Humid tall forest	**Rapazinho-Carijó – *Tamatia tamatia*** (Spotted Puffbird)	Perfectly camouflaged "branch-sitter" that completes the puffbird list for many visitors.

Together these portraits illustrate the habitat mosaic—from sun-blasted white-sand clearings to shady igapó— that makes Caracaraí–Viruá a must-stop on any northern Amazon birding circuit. Experienced birders regularly build week-long itineraries around these same species, and recent tour reports confirm that sightings of Yapacana Antbird, Ferruginous-backed Antbird and Wire-tailed Manakin are trip highlights. Paulo's photographs therefore do more than showcase beauty; they map out the core "targets" of Roraima's growing avitourism economy.

Figure 13.7.1. Caboclinho de peito castanho *(Sporophila castaneiventris)*

Figure 13.7.2. Formigueiro de yapacana *(Aprositornis disjuncta)*

Figure 13.7.3. Formigueiro de hellmair *(Percnostola subcristata)*

Figure 13.7.4. Formigueiro ferrugem *(Myrmoderus ferrugineus)*

Figure 13.7.5. Uruguai do Campo *(Colinus cristatu)*

Figure 13.7.6. Rabo de Arame *(Pipra filicauda)*

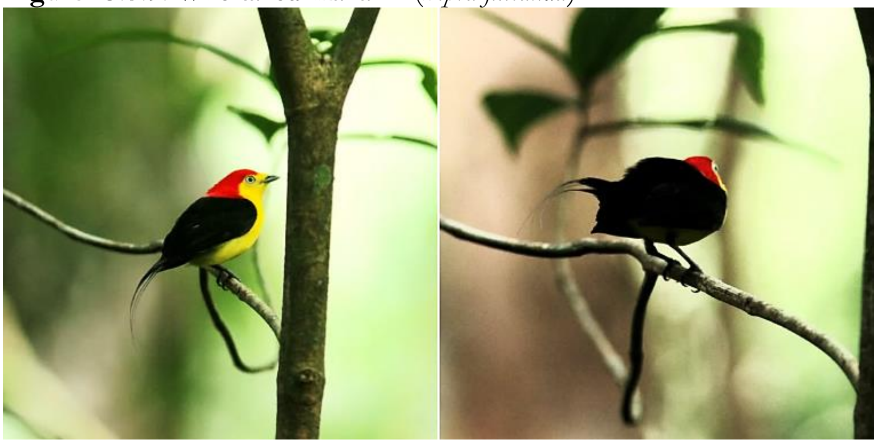
Figure 13.7.7. Rapazinho Carijó *(Tamatia tamatia)*

According to Gois (18 November 2024), the Green-backed Sparrow (*Arremonops conirostris*) (see Figure 13.7.8), locally known in Brazil as *tico-tico cantor*, is a highly range-restricted species within Brazilian territory. It has been recorded exclusively in the state of Roraima, with its strongest population concentrations observed in the municipality of Caracaraí, particularly within white-sand and transitional forest habitats. Though more broadly distributed across parts of Central America and northern South America, the species reaches its southernmost known distribution limit in Brazil, where it is considered locally rare and potentially vulnerable due to habitat specificity and limited range. Further ornithological surveys in the region may help clarify its population status and inform conservation planning in Roraima's rapidly changing landscapes.

Figure 13.7.8. Green-backed Sparrow (*Arremonops conirostris*)

As recorded by Gois (13 November 2024), the Wire-tailed Manakin (*Pipra filicauda*)—known locally as *rabo de arame*—is a striking member of the Pipridae family, commonly found in the Amazon. This small bird stands out thanks to its brilliant coloration and elaborate tail filaments, which make it difficult to overlook despite its diminutive size. It is one of the most visually charismatic species of the tropical understory and is readily observed in the forests of Caracaraí, Roraima, where it frequents shaded leks during breeding season. The Wire-tailed Manakin is not only a visual delight for birdwatchers but also a species of ecological importance in Amazonian seed dispersal networks.

Figure 13.7.9. Wire-tailed Manakin (*Pipra filicauda*)



Also as observed by Gois (5 October 2024), two antbird species from the family Thamnophilidae were recently observed during birding walks in Caracaraí, Roraima. The first is Hellmayr's Antbird (*Pernostola substriata*), and the second is the Ferruginous-backed Antbird (*Myrmoderus ferrugineus*) (Figure 13.7.10). Both species are known for their secretive behavior and association with dense forest understory, particularly in Amazonian habitats. Their presence in Caracaraí highlights the region's importance for specialized insectivorous birds and underlines its value for avifaunal monitoring and conservation efforts.

Figure 13.7.10. Hellmayr's Antbird (*Pernostola substriata*),
and Ferruginous-backed Antbird (*Myrmoderus ferrugineus*).

During Expedition January/24, carried out on August 27, 2024, in Caracaraí, Roraima, Paulo Gois Gois reported the observation of several emblematic bird species (Figure 13.7.11), each representing unique habitats within the Amazon biome. Among the highlights was the Jabiru Stork (*Jabiru mycteria*), locally known as *Tuiuiú*, a towering wading bird typically associated with wetlands and seasonally flooded grasslands.

Figure 13.7.11. Photograph registration of the Gois' Expedition in January 2024.

Also observed was the Wire-tailed Manakin (*Pipra filicauda*), or *rabo de arame*, a vividly colored member of the Pipridae family, renowned for its elaborate display behaviors in lekking arenas deep in the forest understory. Nocturnal diversity was represented by the White-tailed Nightjar (*Hydropsalis cayennensis*), or *bacurau de cauda branca*, frequently encountered in open habitats and forest edges at dusk. Additionally, the Solitary Eagle (*Buteogallus solitarius*), referenced here as *solta asa do norte*, was reportedly sighted—an uncommon and wide-ranging raptor whose presence suggests relatively undisturbed forest tracts (see Figure 13.7.11). This expedition reaffirms the ecological richness of Caracaraí and its significance as a hotspot for both biodiversity monitoring and bird-based tourism.

On June 10, 2024, in the municipality of Caracaraí, Roraima, Paulo Gois Gois documented a sighting of the female Cream-colored Woodpecker (*Celeus flavus*), known locally as *pica-pau-amarelo* (see Figure 13.7.12). This striking species, easily recognizable by its pale yellowish plumage and contrasting black markings, is typically found in tropical lowland rainforests, gallery forests, and areas with scattered trees near rivers. The female, distinguishable by the absence of the male's red cheek patch, was observed foraging on tree trunks—demonstrating the species' characteristic behavior of probing for insects and larvae under bark and in decaying wood. This observation adds to the growing list of notable avian records in Caracaraí and reflects the region's rich mosaic of habitats that support diverse woodpecker assemblages.

Figure 13.7.12. Cream-colored Woodpecker (*Celeus flavus*), known locally as *pica-pau-amarelo*.

On May 21, 2024, during field observations in the municipality of Caracaraí, Roraima, Paulo Gois recorded a pair of Black-crested Antshrikes (*Sakesphorus canadensis*), known in Portuguese as *choca-de-crista-preta* (see Figure 13.7.13). This sexually dimorphic species, part of the Thamnophilidae family, is typically found in dense vegetation along forest edges, secondary growth, and riparian thickets throughout the Amazon and Guianas. During the encounter, the pair was actively foraging; however, the male remained elusive, not allowing for a clear photographic record. These antshrikes are known for their bold crests, strong duets, and insectivorous behavior, and their presence in Caracaraí adds to the rich inventory of understory bird species characteristic of this ecotonal region.

Figure 13.7.13. A pair of Black-crested Antshrikes (*Sakesphorus canadensis*), known in Portuguese as *choca-de-crista-preta*.

Part VIII – Birding Circuits & Hotspots

13.8. Exploring Roraima's Diverse Landscapes

Beyond Viruá and Caracaraí, Roraima's varied geography offers distinct birding experiences, from highland slopes to vast savannas and remote river systems.

A-Serra do Tepequém: Ascent into Highland Habitats

Rising dramatically from the surrounding lowlands, the Serra do Tepequém represents an accessible window into the unique highland ecosystems associated with the Guiana Shield. This flat-topped mountain (tepui) offers a different suite of habitats and potential bird species compared to the Amazonian basin floor.

Montane Environments: As one ascends Tepequém, the vegetation changes. Lower slopes may support taller montane forests, transitioning into cloud forests at higher elevations, characterized by abundant epiphytes (mosses, orchids, bromeliads) and cooler temperatures. The summit plateau features unique open habitats, possibly including rocky outcrops, specialized scrub vegetation, and areas of stunted forest adapted to the exposed conditions and thinner soils. These environments differ significantly in structure and composition from the lowland rainforests and white-sand ecosystems found elsewhere in Roraima.

Guiana Shield Avian Specialties: Tepequém's highland environment holds the potential for encountering bird species characteristic of the Guiana Shield's unique montane avifauna, many of which are shared with the more famous tepuis of neighbouring Venezuela and Guyana. While systematic ornithological surveys may be limited, potential target species birders might hope to find here (requiring confirmation and further research) include Tepui Goldenthroat (*Polytmus milleri*), Fiery-shouldered Parakeet (*Pyrrhura egregia*), Roraiman Antwren (*Herpsilochmus roraimae*), Flutist Wren (*Microcerculus ustulatus*), and potentially even Tepui Tinamou (*Crypturellus ptaritepui*) or Tepui Parrotlet (*Nannopsittaca panychlora*) if suitable habitat exists and their range extends this far south. Birding Tepequém remains somewhat exploratory, offering exciting possibilities for discovering species at the edge of their known ranges.

B-Baixo Rio Branco: Riverine Birding Adventures
The lower stretches of the Rio Branco, downstream from Caracaraí, offer exceptional riverine birding, centred around its unique island ecosystems.

Fluvial Ecosystems:
This section of the river is characterized by large, seasonally shifting river islands covered in successional vegetation, ranging from early pioneer stages on newly formed sandbanks to dense thickets and taller secondary forest on more established islands. The riverbanks are often lined with seasonally flooded forests, known as *igapó* – forests adapted to being submerged for several months each year. The open water and exposed sandbanks provide additional habitats.

Key Species Beyond the Endemic:
The undisputed star of the Baixo Rio Branco is the Rio Branco Antbird (*Cercomacra carbonaria*), a critically endangered species endemic to the dense thickets of these river islands. However, the area boasts a rich avifauna beyond this single species. Common sights include the peculiar Hoatzin (*Opisthocomus hoazin*) feeding on riverside vegetation, impressive Horned Screamers (*Anhima cornuta*) in marshy areas, numerous kingfishers (Amazon, Green, Green-and-rufous), herons, egrets, terns, and swallows like the Black-collared Swallow (*Pygochelidon melanoleuca*). River island specialists may include the Point-tailed Palmcreeper (*Berlepschia rikeri*), often associated with Mauritia palms.

Access & Logistics:
Exploring the Baixo Rio Branco requires boat travel, typically organized as multi-day trips departing from Caracaraí. These expeditions usually involve camping on sandy beaches on the river islands, allowing for early morning and late afternoon birding excursions into the island interiors and along the river channels. Such trips offer an immersive experience in this dynamic riverine environment.

C-Boa Vista's Surroundings: Birding the *Lavrado*
The areas around Roraima's state capital, Boa Vista, are dominated by the *lavrado* – the local term for the open savannas interspersed with gallery forests and patches of woodland that characterize much of the state.

Savanna (*Lavrado*) Landscapes:
The *lavrado* is essentially a tropical savanna ecosystem, characterized by grasslands, scattered drought-resistant trees (like the *cafeeiro*, *Curatella americana*), and denser gallery forests along watercourses. This habitat supports a distinct set of bird species adapted to more open environments.

***Lavrado* Specialties:** Birding the *lavrado* near Boa Vista can yield species not easily found in the forested regions further south. Key targets include the diminutive Bearded Tachuri (*Polystictus pectoralis*), the often elusive Crested Doradito (*Pseudocolopteryx sclateri*) in grassy areas near water, the White-tailed Goldenthroat (*Polytmus guainumbi*), Aplomado Falcon (*Falco femoralis*), Burrowing Owl (*Athene cunicularia*), and Red-shouldered Macaw (*Diopsittaca nobilis*). Gallery forests within the *lavrado* host a mix of forest and edge species.

D-Remote Frontiers: Glimpses into Underexplored Areas
Roraima holds vast, remote areas that remain ornithologically underexplored, harboring significant biodiversity within large protected areas:

Serra do Apiaú: This mountainous area gained ornithological attention for the confirmation of the rare and elusive Solitary Eagle (*Buteogallus solitarius*) within Roraima. Its remote, forested slopes likely hold other highland species, but access is difficult and primarily limited to researchers.

Serra da Mocidade National Park: Located in the west of the state, this large national park protects pristine highland environments, including significant populations of the spectacular Guianan Cock-of-the-rock (*Rupicola rupicola*), known for their vibrant plumage and communal lekking displays in forested areas near rocky outcrops. Due to its extreme remoteness and lack of visitor infrastructure, Serra da Mocidade is currently primarily a site for scientific research rather than tourism, safeguarding a vital piece of Guiana Shield biodiversity.

13.8.1. Roraima's Feathered Icons: Profiles of Key Species
Roraima's unique position and diverse habitats are reflected in its avifauna, which includes globally threatened endemics, range-restricted specialists, and spectacular flagship species. Understanding these key birds highlights the state's ornithological importance and priorities for conservation. Refer to Table 13.8.1 for a summary of the key bird species of Roraima.

A-Detailed Profiles:

Rio Branco Antbird (*Cercomacra carbonaria*):

> **Habitat:** Dense vine tangles and thickets on seasonally flooded river islands in the Baixo Rio Branco.
>
> **Status:** Endemic to this specific habitat along the Rio Branco in Roraima. **IUCN Status:** *Critically Endangered (CR)* due to its extremely small and restricted range, threatened by potential habitat alteration from dams or other river development.
>
> **Significance:** Roraima's only endemic bird species, making its conservation a global priority. Males are black, females rufous below and grey above.

Sun Parakeet (*Aratinga solstitialis*):

Habitat: Historically associated with *lavrado* edges, gallery forests, and palm groves.

Status: IUCN Status: *Endangered (EN).* Once reportedly common in parts of Roraima, its populations have plummeted due to intense illegal trapping for the pet trade and habitat loss. Now extremely rare and difficult to find in the state.

Significance: A strikingly beautiful parakeet, its decline highlights the severe impact of wildlife trafficking.

Hoary-throated Spinetail (*Synallaxis kollari*):

Habitat: Specialist of dense *campinarana* (white-sand forest) undergrowth and thickets.

Status: IUCN Status: *Near Threatened (NT).* Restricted to white-sand ecosystems in the Rio Branco/Rio Negro basins of Brazil and Guyana.

Significance: An indicator species for the health and extent of threatened white-sand forest habitats, a key target in Viruá NP.

Guianan Cock-of-the-rock (*Rupicola rupicola*):

Habitat: Montane forests, particularly near rocky outcrops, cliffs, and caves used for communal lekking displays.

Status: Locally common in suitable habitat, but dependent on specific forest and geological conditions. Present in Serra da Mocidade NP and potentially Serra do Tepequém.

Significance: A spectacular flagship species for Guiana Shield forests, known for the male's brilliant orange plumage and elaborate courtship rituals.

Solitary Eagle (*Buteogallus solitarius*):

Habitat: Remote, steep, forested mountains and foothills.

Status: Naturally rare and sparsely distributed throughout its large range from Mexico to Argentina. IUCN Status: *Near Threatened (NT).*

Significance: Its confirmation in the Serra do Apiaú highlights Roraima's role in harboring populations of this elusive raptor at the edge of the Guiana Shield.

Table 13.8.1. Key Target Bird Species of Roraima

Species Name (Common & Scientific)	Key Habitat(s)	Notable Roraima Location(s)	IUCN Status / Rarity	Key Identification Feature/Significance
Rio Branco Antbird (*Cercomacra carbonaria*)	River island thickets	Baixo Rio Branco	Critically Endangered (CR)	Roraima endemic, male black, female rufous below

Sun Parakeet (*Aratinga solstitialis*)	*Lavrado* edge, gallery forest (historically)	Formerly widespread, now very rare	Endangered (EN)	Brilliant yellow/orange plumage, severely threatened by trade
Hoary-throated Spinetail (*Synallaxis kollari*)	*Campinarana* (White-sand forest)	Viruá NP	Near Threatened (NT)	White-sand specialist, indicator species, plain brown with whitish throat
Guianan Cock-of-the-rock (*Rupicola rupicola*)	Montane forest near rocks/caves	Serra da Mocidade NP, possibly Tepequém	Least Concern (LC)	Spectacular male plumage (bright orange), lekking behavior
Solitary Eagle (*Buteogallus solitarius*)	Remote forested mountains	Serra do Apiaú	Near Threatened (NT)	Large, rare raptor of undisturbed montane areas
Yapacana Antbird (*Aprositornis disjuncta*)	*Campina / Campinarana* edge	Potentially Viruá NP	Least Concern (LC)	White-sand specialist, restricted range
Pale-bellied Mourner (*Rhytipterna immunda*)	*Campinarana* / White-sand woodland edge	Viruá NP	Least Concern (LC)	White-sand associated species, plain flycatcher-like appearance
Bearded Tachuri (*Polystictus pectoralis*)	*Lavrado* (Savanna grasslands)	Boa Vista surroundings	Near Threatened (NT)	Tiny savanna flycatcher, buffy overall with dark cap
Crested Doradito (*Pseudocolopteryx sclateri*)	*Lavrado* (Wet grasslands)	Boa Vista surroundings	Vulnerable (VU)	Small, yellow marsh bird, often elusive, associated with tall grasses
Point-tailed Palmcreeper (*Berlepschia rikeri*)	Mauritia Palm groves	Baixo Rio Branco, *Lavrado* gallery forest	Least Concern (LC)	Strikingly patterned, obligate palm specialist

Note: IUCN status as of late 2023/early 2024, subject to change. Presence in specific locations like Tepequém or Viruá for some species requires ongoing confirmation.

In Amazonian frontier communities, bilingual guide teams now weave Indigenous place-names and phenological cues into digital maps, turning each dataset into both a conservation instrument and a cultural archive. Layered onto the learning-by-doing model already powering Roraima's guide network, avitourism transforms from a revenue stream into a full-spectrum educational platform—one that seeds ecological literacy, technological fluency, and stewardship ethics across entire generations.

Seen through this lens, Roraima's emerging avitourism economy illustrates how "frontier" landscapes can reposition themselves: from commodity frontiers that trade timber, gold or cattle, to knowledge frontiers that export place-specific skills and sightings. Grass-roots exposure—Paulo Gois's first workshop in Viruá back in 2006—is thus not a footnote; it is the catalytic moment where local curiosity, TEK and market demand intersect to launch new micro-enterprises and, ultimately, a constituency for protected-area stewardship in the far North of Brazil (Gupta et al., 2019; Schwoerer & Dawson, 2022).

Paulo Gois's trajectory from riverside kid to one of Roraima's most-sought bird guides began almost by accident. While finishing a tourism course in 2006 he volunteered on a workshop inside Viruá National Park; the mix of white-sand forest, flooded igapó and 520-plus bird list immediately hooked him, and he realized that what he already knew from childhood hunting trips—how to read trails, rains and bird calls—could be recast as professional expertise for a new, conservation-friendly market. That moment of "learning by doing" illustrates how grassroots exposure and Traditional Ecological Knowledge (TEK) still seed human-capital formation in the Amazon tourism frontier (Butler & Menzies, 2007; Gonçalves-Souza et al., 2022).

Over the next decade Gois turned Caracaraí into a mandatory stop for listers chasing the state's most charismatic birds. According to WikiAves, the municipality now ranks second in Brazil for documented species richness, a status driven by its extraordinary habitat mosaic—campinarana thickets for Yapacana Antbird, river-island scrub for the Critically Endangered Rio Branco Antbird, and seasonally green savanna where Collared Seedeater flits among buriti palms. Gois's itineraries weave those micro-biomes into customized day-lists, demonstrating how citizen-science portals and field experience interact: he watches the upload stream on WikiAves or eBird each week, refines where to place clients at dawn, and then feeds fresh records back into the same databases—closing a virtuous data loop between tourism and science (eBird, 2023; Kim et al., 2017).

The visitor profile he describes mirrors global ecotourism segmentation. High-spending birders from North America, Europe and Asia (typically couples 50 years and older) now dominate multi-day packages, while Brazilian enthusiasts arrive in smaller, younger parties on tighter budgets. Both cohorts have grown as Roraima's overall checklist climbed past 750 species on eBird and the state formalised 25 April as "Birdwatching Day" under Law 1 588/2021—symbolic recognition that birds can drive local development (Schwoerer & Dawson, 2022; Stronza et al., 2019). Yet Gois notes that patchy infrastructure and limited guide capacity still cap numbers, especially during the wet-season road closures and the fire-season smoke that sometimes blankets the lavrado.

Beyond delivering lifers, Gois sees guiding as low-cost conservation work. Park managers now recruit former subsistence hunters as rangers and boatmen, turning insider knowledge into a first line of defence against poachers and illegal fires (Butler & Menzies, 2007). Every checklist he uploads refines range maps for threatened specialists such as the Hoary-throated Spinetail and keeps Viruá's Important Bird Area status on the international radar. But he is blunt about structural gaps: without faster dissemination of research results, vocational training for young residents, and upgrades to lodging and transport inside conservation units, Roraima's "second-highest bird diversity in Brazil" will remain a slogan rather than a sustainable industry. His closing challenge—"What's missing to prioritize this audience?"—is therefore less a complaint than an invitation for policy-makers to transform extraordinary natural capital into inclusive, long-term value for the people who live beside it (Schwoerer & Dawson, 2022; Gupta et al., 2019). Below the readers will find the interview with Paulo Gois conducted and analyzed by the first author of the Chapter, prof. Ismar Borges de Lima

---

13.8.2. Birdwatching Interview Analysis Table – Paulo Gois

Date: April 20, 2025
Location: Caracaraí & Viruá National Park, Roraima
Experience: 11 Years as Birdwatching Guide

---

1. How did you begin your journey with birdwatching, and what motivated your specialization in this area within tourism?

Response: Around 2006, during my tourism training course, I participated in a birdwatching workshop to fulfill my curricular hours. It was held in Viruá National Park, with several experts and companies already working in the field in Roraima. That's when I saw an opportunity to supplement my income while engaging in an activity that had always intrigued me since childhood, when I lived in a riverside village.
Critical Analysis: Reflects a grassroots entry into avitourism. Shows how educational exposure and local knowledge catalyze specialization. Highlights TEK (traditional ecological knowledge) as an asset.
Field Contribution: Demonstrates a pathway from informal interest to professional identity. Supports human capital formation through tourism training.

---

2. What are the most emblematic or sought-after bird species by the birdwatchers you guide? Are there endemic, rare, or hard-to-spot species in the region?
Response: According to WikiAves, Brazil's leading birdwatching platform, Caracaraí is the second municipality with the highest bird diversity in the country. Its vast territory includes diverse ecosystems ideal for birdwatching (e.g., campinarana, Amazon rainforest, islands, highlands). Each habitat has endemic species, such as: Collared Seedeater (*Dolospingus fringilloides*); Yapacana Antbird (*Aprositornis disjuncta*)
Critical Analysis: Highlights rare and restricted-range species, linking local biodiversity with global conservation value. Uses citizen science as a guiding reference.
Field Contribution: Encourages conservation of lesser-known species. Validates birdwatching as a stimulus for scientific attention.

---

3. What kind of visitors have you received over these 11 years? Can you describe the diversity of groups in terms of nationality, experience, motivations, and behavior?
Response: Since Caracaraí-RR entered the birdwatching scene, the number of visitors has gradually increased. Specialized companies now offer packages for foreign tourists (Americans, Canadians, Germans, Chinese, Japanese, French, etc.), typically couples or groups aged 50+ with high purchasing power. Brazilian visitors, however, are mostly solo men or small groups over 20, often on vacation, with varying incomes and hobbyist motivations.
Critical Analysis: Reveals distinct domestic and international visitor profiles. Captures segmentation by income, age, and motivation, echoing global ecotourism trends.
Field Contribution: Provides market insight useful for targeting and infrastructure planning. Highlights socio-demographic tourism patterns.

---

4. How do you organize logistics and birdwatching itineraries in the region? What are the main operational challenges?
Response: Logistics and routes are tailored to the target species list. We determine locations, duration, and the best season for sightings. Challenges include climate variability and regional practices (e.g., wildfires).
Critical Analysis: Emphasizes customized planning and identifies uncontrollable environmental threats. Points to structural fragility in Amazonian ecotourism.
Field Contribution: Illustrates the need for adaptive, climate-resilient tour operations. Adds field-based realism to logistics models.

---

5. Do you believe your work contributes to environmental conservation or raises visitors' awareness of Amazonian biodiversity? How?
Response: Birdwatching is vital for conservation. Field records help track species distribution, population trends (including endangered ones), and turn obscure species into well-known ones.
Critical Analysis: Connects tourism to informal science through species monitoring and awareness. Frames birdwatching as a low-cost conservation tool.
Field Contribution: Frames avitourism as a source of ecological knowledge and species data. Advances citizen-driven conservation science.

---

6. Are local communities, residents, or regional institutions involved in birdwatching at Viruá National Park or its surroundings? How does this relationship work?

Response: The park plays a key conservation role by hiring locals—often farmers' children or former hunters—who know the area well and now prioritize preservation.
Critical Analysis: Shows transformative impacts of community employment. Validates the role of local knowledge in successful park management.
Field Contribution: Offers a replicable model of local hiring in conservation areas. Reinforces inclusive governance structures.

---

7. In your view, what are the biggest obstacles to strengthening birdwatching tourism in Roraima?
Response: Effective public policies for involved regions, faster dissemination of research, and skilled labor are needed.
Critical Analysis: Pinpoints policy fragmentation, research inaccessibility, and workforce gaps as primary barriers to sectoral growth.
Field Contribution: Supports planning arguments for policy reform and professional training. Adds to diagnostics of ecotourism gaps.

---

8. What changes or progress have you observed in Roraima's birdwatching scene since you started, regarding visitors and institutional recognition?
Response: Despite Brazil's advances, birdwatching remains niche. In Europe, parks actively promote it, but here, it caters mostly to high-income tourists, limiting local engagement.
Critical Analysis: Critiques elitism in ecotourism access and lack of national promotion. Raises social justice concerns in nature tourism.
Field Contribution: Strengthens the case for inclusive, accessible nature tourism. Highlights need for public promotion strategies.

---

9. What recommendations would you make to establish Roraima and Viruá National Park as sustainable birdwatching destinations nationally and internationally?
Response: Roraima has improved lodging but lacks infrastructure for large demand. Conservation units need upgrades in lodging, food services, and trained staff.
Critical Analysis: Offers clear, realistic upgrades needed for destination readiness. Prioritizes local adaptation of global best practices.
Field Contribution: Aligns practical improvements with strategic ecotourism frameworks. Guides investment in sustainable infrastructure.

---

10. Open-ended question for any additional comments from Mr. Paulo Gois!
Response: My question to policymakers: Roraima has untapped potential—a municipality with Brazil's second-highest bird diversity and a park holding the single-day species-spotting record. What's missing to prioritize this audience?
Critical Analysis: Strategic advocacy using local data and performance records. Positions Caracaraí/Viruá as underrecognized national assets.
Field Contribution: Calls for data-driven territorial valorization. Elevates local perspectives in national conservation-tourism discourse.

13.8.2.1. Synthesis of Interview Insights: Local Voices from Caracaraí and Viruá

The perspectives gathered from Paulo Gois and other local actors involved in birdwatching in Caracaraí and Viruá National Park offer powerful insight into how avitourism is evolving on Brazil's northern frontier. Three central thematic pillars emerge: **empowerment**, **challenges**, and **future needs**—all of which are essential for scaling up sustainable birdwatching tourism in Roraima.

Empowerment was a recurring theme. Interviewees described transformative personal journeys—moving from traditional livelihoods such as subsistence agriculture, fishing, or even hunting, to professional guiding and conservation-oriented roles. Their transitions were catalyzed by hands-on workshops, tourism courses, and the opportunity to engage with visiting ornithologists. These shifts represent a blend of *Traditional Ecological Knowledge (TEK)* and new skill acquisition, reinforcing the value of place-based knowledge systems. The pride in being local stewards of biodiversity and educators for international visitors was palpable, signaling the emergence of a new local environmental identity.

Despite this momentum, several **challenges** persist. Structural deficits—such as weak road access, limited hospitality infrastructure, seasonal fire outbreaks, and a shortage of trained personnel—are seen as major obstacles to destination readiness. The absence of coherent and long-term public policies to support avitourism, coupled with fragmented conservation communication and restricted access to research outputs, compounds these issues. Furthermore, the social exclusivity of birdwatching—typically perceived as a pursuit for foreign elites—raises concerns about inclusivity and the underrepresentation of local and regional publics in nature-based recreation.

Looking forward, the interviews point to concrete **future needs**. These include formal recognition of birdwatching as a professional activity within regional labor and tourism frameworks, enhanced investment in guide training (especially for youth and women), and the development of bilingual interpretive materials. Strategic infrastructure improvements are essential—not only for attracting international birders, but also for creating linkages with regional schools, local cooperatives, and PGTA-based land management strategies. Participants stressed the need for Roraima to move beyond ad hoc promotion and to embrace avitourism as a pillar of territorial valorization, economic diversification, and biocultural conservation.

This synthesis underscores the potential of avitourism not just as a niche market, but as a development model that integrates environmental stewardship, inclusive livelihoods, and knowledge democratization (refer to Table 13.8.2. for an interview summary and insights). Caracaraí and Viruá may therefore serve as laboratories for a broader Amazonian strategy—one that balances biodiversity and community well-being through smart, sustainable tourism planning.

Table 13.8.2. Birdwatching Interview Analysis – Paulo Gois

Thematic Focus	Synthesis of Interview Responses	Critical Insight	Field-Level Contribution
Origins and Motivation	Paulo began birdwatching around 2006 during a curricular workshop in Viruá. A childhood fascination with birds, rooted in his riverside upbringing, converged with the opportunity to supplement income through tourism.	Reflects a grassroots transition into avitourism, merging traditional ecological knowledge (TEK) with formal training.	Exemplifies capacity-building through experiential learning; local origins shape professional specialization.
Flagship Species and Biodiversity	Birders seek out species like the Collared Seedeater (*Dolospingus fringilloides*) and Yapacana Antbird (*Aprositornis disjuncta*). Caracaraí is ranked second nationally in species diversity per WikiAves.	Ties local rarity and endemism to global conservation narratives. Citizen science supports monitoring and interest.	Supports conservation of little-known taxa; connects local landscapes to international birdwatching circuits.

Thematic Focus	Synthesis of Interview Responses	Critical Insight	Field-Level Contribution
Visitor Profiles and Market Segments	International tourists (50+, high income, group travel) dominate; Brazilian tourists are younger, male, and hobbyist. Companies tailor packages to foreign markets.	Reveals dual-market segmentation by nationality, age, and income. Reflects common ecotourism stratification.	Provides valuable marketing insight for tourism planning and audience targeting in Roraima.
Logistical Management and Operational Challenges	Itineraries are designed based on target species, best season, and specific habitats. Barriers include wildfires, weather instability, and limited infrastructure.	Demonstrates ecological sensitivity and flexibility in field operations. Highlights vulnerability to environmental volatility.	Suggests need for adaptive planning and fire-smart strategies in Amazonian ecotourism.
Environmental Awareness and Conservation Role	Birdwatching contributes to conservation by generating field records, increasing awareness, and bringing visibility to obscure or threatened species.	Frames avitourism as informal science and participatory conservation.	Validates birding as a monitoring tool; supports policy relevance of field-generated data.
Community and Institutional Involvement	Viruá hires local residents—many with hunting backgrounds—now working as conservation staff or guides.	Illustrates transformation from extractive roles to conservation-oriented livelihoods.	Strengthens case for inclusive conservation employment models within protected areas.
Key Barriers and Structural Constraints	Barriers include limited public policies, poor dissemination of research, and lack of skilled labor.	Identifies fragmentation in policy and human resource gaps as core limitations.	Informs regional tourism diagnostics and the need for policy alignment and training programs.
Evolution and Institutional Recognition	Despite national advances, birdwatching remains elitist and poorly promoted. In Europe, it is institutionalized; in Roraima, it is still niche.	Critiques unequal access to ecotourism and lack of systemic state support.	Encourages inclusive strategies and integration of birding into broader tourism and education policies.
Recommendations for Sustainable Development	Infrastructure in lodging and services must be improved to meet international standards. Conservation units lack visitor-ready amenities and trained personnel.	Provides concrete, actionable proposals aligned with sustainable tourism criteria.	Serves as a roadmap for ecotourism infrastructure investment and destination development.
Final Reflections	Paulo questions why a municipality with national biodiversity rankings and record bird counts remains off the institutional radar.	Highlights the gap between biodiversity performance and policy prioritization.	Advocates for data-driven territorial valorization and recognition of Caracaraí as a national avitourism hotspot.

Below, readers will find a selection of images featuring Paulo Gois during his fieldwork and birdwatching tours across Roraima, particularly within Viruá National Park and other key areas of the Caracaraí Municipality.

Images' Caption: Paulo Gois in a fieldwork and guidance for birdwatching in Roraima, Viruá National Park and other Caracaraí Areas.

13.8.3. An Overview of Roraima Local Network, Citizen Science Power, and Local Organizations

Roraima boasts a small but passionate local birdwatching community actively involved in documenting and appreciating the state's avifauna.

Pioneers and Experts: Key figures within the Roraima birding community include individuals like Gilberto Macêdo, Orley Camacho, and Edmilson Cavalcante. Their contributions, whether through photography, guiding, research, or simply sharing observations, have been vital in building knowledge about the state's birds and promoting local interest. Verifying their specific current roles and contributions would require accessing local networks or publications.

Citizen Science Power:
Citizen science platforms have revolutionized bird documentation in Roraima, as elsewhere. WikiAves, Brazil's premier bird photography and sound recording database, hosts thousands of records from Roraima, providing invaluable visual and acoustic documentation and distribution data. eBird, the global checklist platform, allows birders to submit their sightings, contributing to a growing database used by researchers and conservationists to track bird populations and distributions. Despite potential challenges in accessing specific real-time hotspot data online, the aggregated information from these platforms is immense. For example, WikiAves likely lists well over 500 species recorded for Roraima, showcasing the state's richness through contributions from numerous local and visiting observers. This collective effort significantly expands ornithological knowledge beyond formal scientific surveys.

Local Organization:
The existence of the Roraima Birdwatching Club (*Clube de Observadores de Aves de Roraima - COA/RR*) provides a focal point for local enthusiasts. Such clubs typically organize field trips, share knowledge, promote bird identification skills, and can play a role in local conservation advocacy or monitoring projects, fostering a community dedicated to appreciating and protecting the state's birds.

Conservation in Focus: Challenges and Opportunities
Roraima's exceptional biodiversity faces significant threats, making conservation efforts, including the role of protected areas and sustainable tourism, critically important.

Part XI - Anthropogenic Threats

13.11.1. Threats to Roraima's Avifauna

Fire and Climate: Wildfires pose a major and growing threat, particularly impacting the fire-sensitive white-sand ecosystems (*campina* and *campinarana*) and the open *lavrado*. The devastating fire in Viruá National Park in early 2016, exacerbated by severe drought linked to an intense El Niño event, burned a significant portion of the park, impacting wildlife and demonstrating the vulnerability of these ecosystems. Increasing frequency and intensity of droughts associated with climate change heighten the risk of large-scale fires, potentially altering habitats permanently.

A-Habitat Degradation:
While deforestation rates in Roraima may be lower than in the southern "arc of deforestation" in the Amazon, habitat degradation remains a concern. Agricultural expansion, particularly for cattle ranching and large-scale soy or rice cultivation, can fragment *lavrado* and forest habitats. Infrastructure development, such as road construction or potential hydroelectric projects on rivers like the Rio Branco, could directly destroy habitats (like the river islands crucial for the Rio Branco Antbird) or open up remote areas to further colonization and resource extraction. Illegal wildlife trafficking, especially targeting charismatic species like the Sun Parakeet, continues to exert pressure on vulnerable populations.

B-Protected Areas: Sanctuaries Under Pressure
Role and Effectiveness: National Parks like Viruá and Serra da Mocidade are cornerstones of conservation strategy in Roraima, legally protecting vast areas of unique and representative ecosystems and the species they harbor. Viruá is vital for white-sand biodiversity, while Mocidade safeguards pristine Guiana Shield highlands.

Challenges: Despite their legal status, these protected areas face numerous challenges common throughout the Amazon: chronic underfunding, insufficient staffing for effective management and enforcement, challenges in controlling external threats like fires originating outside park boundaries, and logistical difficulties imposed by their remoteness and size. Ensuring the long-term integrity of these parks requires sustained investment and political will. The occasional difficulty in accessing up-to-date management information or regulations online for parks like Viruá might also reflect underlying constraints in resources allocated to park administration and communication, potentially hindering both research planning and effective conservation outreach.

C-Sustainable Birdwatching as a Conservation Tool
Potential: Well-managed birdwatching tourism offers a significant opportunity to contribute positively to conservation in Roraima. By generating income for local communities (guides, boatmen, lodges) directly linked to intact ecosystems and thriving bird populations, it can create powerful incentives for conservation. It can also raise awareness, both locally and internationally, about the value of Roraima's biodiversity and the threats it faces, potentially fostering greater support for protected areas.

For birdwatching tourism to be truly sustainable and beneficial, certain conditions must be met. These include ensuring meaningful participation and economic benefits for local communities; establishing clear regulations and codes of conduct to minimize disturbance to wildlife and habitats (e.g., responsible use of playback, waste management); integrating tourism activities with park management plans and conservation objectives; investing in training for local guides; and supporting ongoing research and monitoring to understand and mitigate tourism impacts. Developing tourism infrastructure must be done carefully to avoid damaging the very resources it depends upon.

Part XIX - Integrative Theoretical Analysis

Birdwatching, Local Stakeholders, and Systemic Dynamics in Roraima's Avitourism Landscape

13.9.1. Introduction: Applying Four Key Theories on an Avitourism Context

The evolution of avitourism in Roraima represents far more than the rise of a niche market—it reflects the emergence of a socio-ecological system in which people, places, species, and technologies are interlinked across spatial, cultural, and institutional scales. To interpret this multifaceted phenomenon, this section integrates four leading theoretical frameworks—**Recreation Specialization Theory**, **Motivational Theories** (Push–Pull and Self-Determination Theory), **Political Ecology**, and **Actor–Network Theory (ANT)**—in relation to empirical data drawn from key sites such as **Caracaraí**, **Viruá National Park**, and the **Baixo Rio Branco region** (refer to Table 13.9.1 for a comprehensive summary). The analysis considers not only birdwatchers' experiences, but also the evolving role of **local guides**, the configuration of **stakeholders**, and the capacity of the **tourism sector** to generate lasting socio-environmental value.

Table 13.9.1 - Comparative Theoretical Table: Birdwatching and Avitourism in Roraima

Analytical Feature	Recreation Specialization Theory (RST)	Motivational Theories (Push–Pull & SDT)	Political Ecology	Actor–Network Theory (ANT)
Application to Caracaraí / Viruá	Visitors show distinct specialization levels. International birders (often elite "listers") seek rare endemics in Viruá and Baixo Rio Branco, while domestic tourists often engage in shorter, introductory experiences. Local guides also show increasing specialization, evolving from trainees to regional experts.	Push factors include desire for novelty, escape, and personal challenge; pull factors include rare species, remote biomes, and cultural authenticity. Self-Determination Theory explains how both visitors and guides experience autonomy, relatedness, and competence.	Avitourism unfolds amid asymmetrical resource governance, extractivist pressures, and weak local infrastructure. Protected areas remain underfunded. Benefit-sharing is uneven, and elite capture of tour revenues is evident.	Avitourism is sustained by socio-technical assemblages: rare birds, boats, digital platforms (eBird, WikiAves), guides, field gear, fire brigades, and policies. Local guides are not only mediators but also system stabilizers.
Primary Unit of Analysis	Individual birder and their skill development, commitment, and preferences.	Psychological fulfillment: needs, emotional responses, perceived agency.	Social groups, communities, institutions, and their relation to territorial governance.	Hybrid networks of human and non-human actors shaping birding practice.
Insights from Roraima	Visitor segmentation enables design of tiered products: day trips for novices, multi-habitat expeditions for experts. Local guide trajectories reflect the capacity-building dimension of avitourism.	Remote Amazonian settings intensify psychological payoffs. Visitors often cite a "life experience" element. Local guides derive purpose and recognition from interpreting biodiversity.	Structural problems—such as limited park funding, low inclusion of Indigenous actors, and fire vulnerability—constrain equitable tourism development.	The success of an avitourism experience depends on the stability of the socio-material network. Fires, road closures, or data outages can disrupt entire itineraries. Paulo Gois and peers are "obligatory passage points" in this web.
Strengths of the Framework	Clarifies how birdwatching fosters long-term commitment and market diversity. Supports skill development of local stakeholders.	Useful for improving interpretive design, enhancing visitor satisfaction, and marketing authenticity. Recognizes guiding as an emotionally meaningful role.	Makes power, equity, and governance central to tourism discourse. Advocates systemic change and just outcomes.	Excellent for understanding complexity, fragility, and emergence. Captures the role of digital tools, species charisma, and logistics.
Limitations	May oversimplify cultural, social, or	Often individualistic; less	Tends to diagnose rather than	Too abstract for quick field-level

Analytical Feature	Recreation Specialization Theory (RST)	Motivational Theories (Push–Pull & SDT)	Political Ecology	Actor–Network Theory (ANT)
	infrastructural barriers to specialization. Assumes linear progress.	attention to structural constraints or cultural difference.	prescribe solutions; actionable tools are limited.	application; requires empirical mapping of actors.

13.9.2. Integrative Reflections: Linking Theory, Place, and People

Each theoretical perspective provides a vital lens on the dynamics of birdwatching and avitourism in Roraima. Together, they form a composite framework that captures both **macro-level tensions**—such as extractivist versus conservationist models—and **micro-level realities**, such as the evolving role of local guides as interpreters, educators, and ecological mediators. The rise of figures like Paulo Gois is not incidental; it represents a broader trend in which avitourism cultivates **human capital** in regions long excluded from Brazil's tourism economy.

Recreation Specialization Theory allows us to distinguish between the needs and behaviors of diverse visitor segments. This is particularly useful in Roraima, where short-stay domestic visitors explore the *lavrado* and gallery forests near Boa Vista, while foreign listers invest heavily in longer, high-effort trips targeting range-restricted species such as *Cercomacra carbonaria*. Tourism products must be matched to these specialization profiles, while ensuring equitable access and training for local operators to grow along similar paths.

Motivational theories complement this picture by revealing the emotional and cognitive gratifications associated with avitourism. Birding trips in Viruá often fulfill the psychological trilogy of autonomy (choosing how and where to bird), competence (learning to ID rare species), and relatedness (forming bonds with guides and co-visitors). Moreover, local guides' professional fulfillment—and in some cases, upward mobility—is driven by these same motivators, reinforcing retention and dedication to conservation.

Political Ecology shifts the analysis from experience to structure. The Roraima case underscores how birdwatching, though environmentally non-extractive, can reproduce **elite tourism patterns** unless deliberate policy correctives are introduced. Marginalized communities still face barriers to participation in the high-value end of the market, and local governance is frequently hampered by inter-institutional fragmentation. Fire management is under-resourced, and protected area implementation remains inconsistent—especially in the savannas.

Actor–Network Theory allows a holistic grasp of the operational realities of avitourism. It shows how the tourism experience depends not only on wildlife and guides, but on permits, road conditions, GPS access, sound recorders, and data-upload platforms. The breakdown of a single node—e.g., a failed ferry crossing or an eBird blackout—can compromise an entire expedition. ANT makes visible the **hidden architecture of birding**, demonstrating how success is a co-produced outcome involving both people and things.

13.9.3. Strategic Implications for Stakeholders

This synthesis yields a clear agenda:

- **Develop tiered training and guiding systems**, with credentialed progression from assistant to expert, and integrate TEK (Traditional Ecological Knowledge) where appropriate.
- **Invest in low-impact infrastructure** (e.g., trails, hides, observation towers), especially in savanna and riverine contexts, where visitor access is difficult but biodiversity value is high.
- **Institutionalize community benefit-sharing mechanisms**, such as allocating 15–20% of avitourism revenues to Indigenous associations, fire brigades, and monitoring teams.
- **Enhance the resilience of the avitourism network**, by mapping critical logistical nodes (boats, fuel, mobile signal) and designing contingency plans.
- **Use real-time data flows** from platforms like eBird and WikiAves not only for science, but also for marketing, trip planning, and adaptive governance.

Roraima's birdwatching system is no longer emergent—it is an evolving ecosystem of relationships, dependencies, aspirations, and risks. Each theory examined in this section—Recreation Specialization, Motivation, Political Ecology, and ANT—confirms that **avitourism is not just a leisure activity**, but a **socio-ecological infrastructure** with the power to reshape livelihoods, revalue biodiversity, and reimagine development in the Amazonian frontier. The challenge now is to move from insight to action, and from fragility to coherence. Roraima's future as a birding destination—and as a model of biocultural sustainability—will be determined by its ability to bridge theory, territory, and transformation.

Part X – Conclusion: From Margin to Model: Roraima's Pathway to Bird-Led, Low-Carbon Development

Roraima closes Chapter 13 standing on the shoulders of a formidable natural endowment. The state's bird list has breached **760 species**, a figure corroborated by the Legislature's own eco-tourism brief—which counted >730 taxa for the *Zoneamento Ecológico-Econômico*-ZEE (Economic-Ecological Zoning) —and by intensive surveys that logged **520 species in Viruá National Park alone, across 70 families**. These numbers confirm that the triple-ecotonal interface of Amazon forest, Guiana-Shield tepuis and *lavrado* savannas is not a peripheral curiosity but a biodiversity engine with few parallels in the Neotropics.

Conservation scaffolding is extensive—three national parks, ecological stations, extractive reserves and two national forests already place large swaths of land under some form of protection—but the patchwork still shows dangerous holes. Nowhere is this more evident than in the *lavrado*: after a federal reversal in 2015, **less than 0.5 % of Roraima's 40 000 km² savanna biome enjoys strict status**, leaving open-country endemics vulnerable to fire and ranch expansion. The chapter also highlights that white-sand park budgets lag behind fire suppression needs, underscoring an urgent requirement for ring-fenced, climate-contingent funding.

The marketplace has reacted faster than policy. Specialist groups now tally **200+ species in a single day** along the BR-174 corridor and Baixo Rio Branco islands, and international operators such as Field Guides have rebranded Roraima as "Brazil's next birding frontier". Local capacity is catching up: Cadastur certifications for guides climbed sharply between 2021 and 2024, and the **State Birdwatching Day (Lei 1.588/2021)** has entrenched avitourism in the public calendar, spurring clubs, festivals and a government-sponsored bird magazine. Meanwhile, every eBird or WikiAves upload functions as both free marketing and a living scientific dataset, tightening the feedback loop between visitors, researchers and land managers.

Yet the frontier is fragile. **Wildfires exploded to a record 4 787 hotspots in 2024**, with February alone producing over 2 000 ignition points and Roraima accounting for 99 % of the Amazon's early-season degradation. Flames shut access roads, impaired park revenues and exposed the asymmetry whereby Indigenous brigades absorb most front-line risk while distant operators capture the bulk of tour profits.

To convert momentum into resilience, the first lever is **infrastructure and data transparency**. High-bandwidth mobile towers along the BR-174 and real-time "travel-health" dashboards—already piloted by Brazil's Ministry of Tourism for other biomes—could aggregate road, river-level and fire alerts in one public portal, reducing trip cancellations and directing traffic away from stressed habitats. Parallel investment in solar-powered fuel depots and satellite Wi-Fi at remote landings would insulate tours from single-node failures that currently ripple across entire itineraries.

Second, **community equity must move from rhetoric to rule-book**. The State Birdwatching Day law offers a legal foothold; building on it, trip contracts should earmark at least 15 % of gross receipts for Indigenous and riverine cooperatives that supply guides, fire brigades and camp services. Such revenue-sharing would not only remunerate guardians of territory but also underpin participatory monitoring schemes that integrate TEK with scientific protocols.

Third, **science still trails curiosity**. Tepui summits, western sandstone massifs and interior *lavrado* mosaics remain ornithologically thin; systematic expeditions and camera-trap grids could yield new range extensions, refine IUCN assessments and seed fresh tourism products. Viruá's own history—growing from 350 to 520 species in barely a decade—illustrates how quickly dedicated surveys can redraw biodiversity maps.

Finally, **regional climate adaptation must become a core business metric**. Fire-smart itineraries, carbon-light logistics (river overland routing, solar camps) and visitor levies channelled into savanna restoration can future-proof both habitats and revenues. If tourism is to finance conservation rather than consume it, budgets for suppression, restoration and climate buffering need to be treated as cost of sales, not discretionary add-ons.

Roraima's avitourism frontier now faces a decisive test. The ingredients for success—mega-diversity, growing demand, established protected areas and an engaged civil society—are in place. The next chapter will be written by how swiftly stakeholders close the savanna protection gap, institutionalise fair revenue flows and embed climate resilience into every tour sold. Should those pieces lock together, Roraima will graduate from promising case to global benchmark, showing that even at the outer edge of the Amazon, birds can finance the forests that keep them in full, exuberant song.

References

(Note: This is a representative list based on the types of sources needed for the chapter's content. Specific papers and reports would be identified during other phases of the research).

ACAPS. (2025, January 28). *Brazil: Impact of drought in the Brazilian Amazon and 2025 outlook*. ACAPS.

ACESSA MT. (2023). *Governo cria Floresta Nacional do Parima em Roraima.* Acessa MT.

Agência Brasil. (2023, September 6). *Governo cria Floresta Nacional do Parima em Roraima.*

Alexandrino, E. R., Buechley, E. R., & Piratelli, A. J. (2017). Community ecology of birds in a vegetation mosaic in the Brazilian northern Amazon. *Zoologia (Curitiba), 34*, e13791. https://doi.org/10.3897/zoologia.34.e13791

Alvares, C. A., Stape, J. L., Sentelhas, P. C., de Moraes Gonçalves, J. L., & Sparovek, G. (2013). Köppen's climate classification map for Brazil. *Meteorologische Zeitschrift, 22*(6), 711-728. https://doi.org/10.1127/0941-2948/2013/0507

Araújo, F. (2024, June 12). *Hidrelétrica Bem Querer seria uma das menos eficientes do país, aponta estudo.* Instituto Socioambiental.

Araújo, W. F., Monteiro Neto, J. L. L., Sander, C., Albuquerque, J. A. A. de, Viana, T. V. A., & Valero, M. A. M. (2024). Atualização da classificação climática de Boa Vista, Roraima, Brasil. *Ciências Ambientais, 12*(2). https://doi.org/10.31413/nat.v12i2.16202

Barbosa, R. I. (2005). *Ecopaisagens do Parque Nacional Serra da Mocidade (primeira aproximação).* INPA.

Barbosa, R. I., Campos, C., Pinto, F., & Fearnside, P. M. (2007). The "lavrados" of Roraima: Biodiversity and conservation of Brazil's Amazonian savannas. *Functional Ecosystems and Communities, 1*(1), 29-41.

Barni, P., Morais, W., & Barbosa, R. (2022). Lavrado de Roraima: Paradigmas ambientais no contraponto da compensação e reposição florestal. *Revista Cerrados, 20*, 356-377. https://doi.org/10.46551/rc24482692202231

Bezerra, J. (2024, December 5). Caroebe se prepara para o II Festival de Pesca Esportiva do Tucunaré. *Portal Roraima.*

Bird, J. P., Buchanan, G. M., Lees, A. C., & Clay, R. P. (2012). Integrating spatially explicit habitat projections into extinction-risk assessments: A reassessment of Amazonian avifauna incorporating projected deforestation. *Diversity and Distributions, 18*(3), 273-281. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1472-4642.2011.00843.x

BirdLife International. (n.d.). *Birdwatching tourism: A tool for conservation and economic development.*

BirdLife International. (2024a). *Cercomacra carbonaria. The IUCN Red List of Threatened Species 2024.*

BirdLife International. (2024b). *Synallaxis kollari. The IUCN Red List of Threatened Species 2024.*

BirdLife International. (n.d.). *Important Bird Areas factsheet: Viruá National Park.*

Brazil. (2000). *Lei No. 9.985, de 18 de julho de 2000.*

Brazil. (2023). *Decreto No. 11.684, de 5 de setembro de 2023.* Presidência da República.

Brazil. Presidência da República, Casa Civil. (1982). *Decreto No. 87.222, de 31 de maio de 1982.*

Brazil. Presidência da República, Casa Civil. (1998). *Decreto No. 97.887, de 29 de abril de 1998.*

Brazil. Presidência da República, Casa Civil. (2005). *Decreto Presidencial s/n, de 15 de abril de 2005.*

Brazil. Presidência da República, Casa Civil. (2023, September 5). *Decreto No. 11.685, de 5 de setembro de 2023 – Cria a Floresta Nacional do Parima.*

Butler, C. F., & Menzies, C. R. (2007). Traditional ecological knowledge and Indigenous tourism. In R. Butler & T. Hinch (Eds.), *Tourism and Indigenous Peoples: Issues and Implications* (pp. 15-27). Elsevier. https://doi.org/10.1016/B978-0-7506-6446-2.50007-7

Capobianco, J. P. R., Veríssimo, A., Moreira, A., Sawyer, D., Santos, I., & Pinto, L. P. (2001). *Biodiversidade na Amazônia brasileira: Avaliação e ações prioritárias para a conservação, uso sustentável e repartição dos benefícios.*

Castillo-Aguilar, M. A., & Roa-Angulo, V. (2021). Birdwatching tourism and environmental education as strategies for wetland conservation in Bogotá, Colombia. *Indian Journal of Science and Technology, 14*(13), 1036-1043. https://doi.org/10.17485/IJST/v14i13.1163

Cavalcante, E. (2023). *Aves de Roraima.*

Cenário Energia. (2025, April 4). Hidrelétrica de R$ 10 bilhões em Roraima reacende debate sobre desenvolvimento, impacto ambiental e energia limpa. *Cenário Energia.*

Costa, L. A. da C. (2011). *Estudo lexical dos nomes indígenas das regiões de Aquidauana, Corumbá e Miranda no estado de Mato Grosso do Sul.* (Master's dissertation). UFMS.

de Souza, M. C., Marimon-Júnior, B. H., Marimon, B. S., Viana, L., & da Costa, J. P. R. (2017). Structure and tree-species composition in savannas used by Indigenous people in the northern Brazilian Amazon. *Biodiversity Data Journal, 5*, e20044. https://doi.org/10.3897/bdj.5.e20044

Dicionário Online de Português (Dicio). (n.d.). *Caracará.* https://dicio.com.br

dos Santos, A. L., & Faria, T. O. L. (2021). Inserção do Rio Branco nas áreas úmidas da Amazônia. In T. O. L. Faria & A. L. dos Santos (Eds.), *Hidrogeomorfologia da Bacia do Rio Branco, Roraima* (pp. 37-54). Editora UFRR.

eBird. (2023). *Responsible Birding Code of Conduct.* Cornell Lab of Ornithology.

eBird. (2025). *eBird Basic Dataset: Roraima observation summaries.* Cornell Lab of Ornithology.

Embratur. (2024). *Briefing para Roraima 2024: Principais ações 2022-2024.*

Encyclopædia Britannica. (n.d.). *Branco River.* https://www.britannica.com/place/Branco-River

FEMACT-RR. (2009). *Portaria No. 179, de 15 de abril de 2009 – Cria o Conselho Consultivo da APA Baixo Rio Branco.*

Ferreira, E., Zuanon, J., Forsberg, B., Goulding, M., & Briglia-Ferreira, R. (2007). *Rio Branco: Peixes, ecologia e conservação de Roraima.*

Folha BV. (2025, January 8). Ibama vê falhas em estudo ambiental e Aneel prorroga prazo para viabilidade da UHE Bem Querer. *Folha de Boa Vista.*

Folha de Boa Vista. (n.d.). Caption: Gavião carcará is the symbol of Caracaraí.

Fórum de Energias Renováveis de Roraima. (2024). *Hidrelétrica do Bem Querer: Uma usina de riscos e incertezas.*

Global Energy Monitor. (2025, April 23). *Bem Querer hydroelectric plant (Global Hydropower Tracker).*

Gonçalves-Souza, T., Alves, R. R. N., Albuquerque, U. P., & Ferreira Júnior, W. S. (Eds.). (2022). *Integrating traditional ecological knowledge into ecology, evolution, and conservation.* https://doi.org/10.3389/978-2-83250-148-1

Governo de Roraima. (2025, January 9). Roraima comemora crescimento de 97 % no número de turistas internacionais em 2024.

Guilherme, E., & Borges, S. H. (2011). Ornithological records from the Baixo Rio Branco region, Roraima, Brazil. *Revista Brasileira de Ornitologia, 19*(1), 49-62.

Gupta, N., Everard, M., Kochhar, I., & Belwal, V. K. (2019). Avitourism opportunities as a contribution to conservation and rural livelihoods in the Hindu Kush Himalaya. *Journal of Threatened Taxa, 11*(10), 14318-14327. https://doi.org/10.11609/jott.4911.11.10.14318-14327

Gutiérrez-Pérez, J., & Pozo-Llorente, T. (2006). Theoretical contemporary models of environmental education for sustainable development. *Revista Iberoamericana de Educación, 41*, 21-68.

Henriques, L. M., & Dantas, S. M. (2011). Avifauna of Viruá National Park, Roraima: Correcting and updating species occurrence. *Revista Brasileira de Ornitologia, 19*(2), 248-264.

IBGE. (2022). *Cidades – Roraima – Caracaraí: Population by Census.*

IBGE. (2024). *Cidades – Roraima – Caracaraí: Population estimate.*

ICMBio. (2014). *Plano de manejo do Parque Nacional do Viruá.*

ICMBio. (2022). *ESEC de Caracaraí: Status of management plan and council.*

ICMBio. (2023). *Flona do Parima: Cadastro e gestão.*

ICMBio. (2024). *Cadastro Nacional de Unidades de Conservação: Serra da Mocidade.*

ICMBio. (2024). *ESEC de Caracaraí: Climate and biodiversity profile.*

ICMBio. (2024). *Ecological Stations of Roraima: Maracá, Caracaraí e Niquiá.*

ICMBio. (2025). *Parque Nacional do Monte Roraima: Perfil e gestão.*

ICMBio. (2025, February 20). Expedição instala placas informativas no Parque Nacional do Monte Roraima.

ICMBio / gov.br. (n.d.). *Viruá National Park visitor information.*

INFRAESTRUTURA NACIONAL DE DADOS ESPACIAIS (INDE). (2020). *IBGE revê as altitudes de sete pontos culminantes.*

Instituto Chico Mendes de Conservação da Biodiversidade. (n.d.). *Parque Nacional Serra da Mocidade.*

Instituto Chico Mendes de Conservação da Biodiversidade. (n.d.). *Plano de Manejo, Parque Nacional do Viruá.*

Instituto Socioambiental. (2010, April). *Área de Proteção Ambiental do Baixo Rio Branco: Diagnóstico e desafios.*

Instituto Socioambiental. (2024, June 12). *Hidrelétrica Bem Querer seria uma das menos eficientes do país.*

Isler, M. L., Bravo, G., & Brumfield, R. T. (2013). Taxonomic revision of *Myrmeciza* into 12 genera. *Zootaxa, 3717*, 469-497.

IUCN. (2024). *The IUCN Red List of Threatened Species 2023-1.* https://www.iucnredlist.org

Kim, E.-J. A., Asghar, A., & Jordan, S. (2017). A critical review of traditional ecological knowledge in science education. *Canadian Journal of Science, Mathematics and Technology Education, 17*(4), 258-270. https://doi.org/10.1080/14926156.2017.1380866

Laranjeiras, T. O., & Naka, L. N. (2014). Birding sites: The state of Roraima, Brazil. *Neotropical Birding, 14*, 40-53.

Laranjeiras, T. O., & Naka, L. N. (2018). Avifaunal patterns along Roraima's BR-174 highway. *Neotropical Birding, 14*, 41-49.

Laranjeiras, T. O., Naka, L. N., Costa, T. V. V., Andretti, C. V., Torres, M. F., Cerqueira, M. C., et al. (2014). The avifauna of Viruá National Park. *Revista Brasileira de Ornitologia, 22*(2), 138-171. https://doi.org/10.1007/BF03544242

Local news (Roraima1). (n.d.). City named in homage to the gavião carcará.

Melville, D., Ignacio, L., Millar, N., Merritt, V., Kays, R., Cyril, S., et al. (2024). Population stronghold for Hoary-throated Spinetail and Rio Branco Antbird. *Bird Conservation International, 34*, e26. https://doi.org/10.1017/S0959270924000170

MILKO, P. (2003). *Parques Nacionais Brasil: Parque Nacional Viruá* (2nd ed.). Guia Philips.

Ministério do Meio Ambiente. (2010). *Proposta de ampliação do Parque Nacional do Viruá.*

Ministério do Meio Ambiente. (2015). *Cadastro Nacional de Unidades de Conservação* (series of parametrized reports).

Mongabay. (2023, March 16). *Brazil tackles illegal miners, but finds their mercury legacy harder to erase.*

Mora, J. A., & Pérez Rodríguez, A. C. (2021, May). Community-based avitourism as a tool for environmental appropriation. In P. Sloan & W. Legrand (Eds.), *Proceedings of the 4th International Conference on Tourism Research* (p. 420). https://doi.org/10.34190/IRT.21.015

Naka, L. N., Bechtoldt, C. L., Henriques, L. M. P., & Brumfield, R. T. (2012). Avian suture zones in the Guiana Shield. *The American Naturalist, 179*(1), 115-132.

Naka, L. N., Cohn-Haft, M., & Laranjeiras, T. O. (2006). Avifauna of Roraima: Distribution in the Rio Branco basin. *Revista Brasileira de Ornitologia, 14*(3), 197-230.

Naka, L. N., Cohn-Haft, M., Whittaker, A., Barnett, J. M., & Torres, M. F. (2007). Avian biogeography of Amazonian flooded forests. *The Wilson Journal of Ornithology, 119*(3), 439-449.

Nogueira-Neto, P. (1991). *Estações Ecológicas: Uma saga de ecologia e política ambiental.* Empresa das Artes.

Nossos Parques. (n.d.). *Estação Ecológica de Caracaraí.* https://nossosparques.org.br/en/arp/602

Nossos Parques. (n.d.). *Maracá, Caracaraí and Niquiá Ecological Stations.*

Nunes, T. (2011, April 29). Parque Nacional Serra da Mocidade celebra 13 anos. ICMBio.

Observatório de Unidades de Conservação (WWF Brasil). (2015, July 8). ICMBio e Roraima negociam criação de áreas protegidas.

Oliveira, S. (2024, April 25). Birdwatching law expands tourism in Roraima. SupCom ALE-RR.

Olmos, F. (2014, October 13). Parque Nacional do Viruá, um campeão de biodiversidade. ((o))eco.

Oren, D. C., & Novaes, F. C. (1986). Ecology and behavior of the Crimson Fruitcracker. In P. A. Buckley et al. (Eds.), *Neotropical Ornithology* (pp. 384-390).

Paes de Barros, L. (2010, March 17). *Resex Baixo Rio Branco – Jauaperi: Ainda sem resposta.* WWF Brasil.

Pacheco, J. F., Silveira, L. F., Aleixo, A., Agne, C. E., Bencke, G. A., Costa, T. V. V., & Piacentini, V. Q. (2021). Annotated checklist of the birds of Brazil (2nd ed.). *Ornithology Research, 29*(2), 94-105.

Pavani, J., & Camacho, M. (2018). *Guide to the Birds of Roraima.* Instituto Roraima de Conservação.

Pavani, R. (n.d.). *Roraima Birding Tours.*

Peres, C. A., Barlow, J., & Laurance, W. F. (2005). Detecting anthropogenic disturbance in tropical forests. *Trends in Ecology & Evolution, 20*(5), 227-229.

Pinto dos Santos, F. (2021). *Diagnóstico de Áreas Institucionais de Roraima para o ZEE-RR.*

Pinto-Ledezma, J. N., Saldaña-Vázquez, R. A., & Claudino-Sales, V. (2018). Campinaranas: The Amazonian white-sand ecosystems. In W. Leal Filho et al. (Eds.), *Handbook of Climate Change Resilience.* Springer.

Portalamazonia. (2023). Área remanescente da Reserva Florestal do Parima é reclassificada como Flona.

Power Technology. (2024, September 9). Top five hydropower plants in development in Brazil.

Prevfogo/IBAMA. (2006). *Plano de Prevenção e Combate aos Incêndios Florestais da ESEC Caracaraí.*

Reis, N. J., & Dantas, M. E. (2022, March). Mount Roraima, an Amazonian totem. *Serviço Geológico do Brasil.*

Rodrigues, L. A. (2025). Brazil's journey against illegal mining. *Brazilian Political Science Review, 19*(2). https://doi.org/10.1590/1981-3821202500020006

Rosa-Freitas, M. G., Tsouris, P., Peterson, A. T., Honório, N. A., Barros, F. S. M., Aguiar, D. B., et al. (2007). Ecoregional classification for Roraima and malaria biology. *Memórias do Instituto Oswaldo Cruz, 102*(3), 349-357.

Santos, L. F., Oliveira, A. P., & Costa, M. C. (2019). Floodplain bird assemblages in the lower Rio Branco. *Brazilian Journal of Ornitology, 27*(1), 45-58.

Santos, M. P. D., et al. (2021). Gap analysis of ornithological research in Roraima. *Biota Neotropica, 21.*

Schulenberg, T. S., Stotz, D. F., Lane, D. F., O'Neill, J. P., & Parker III, T. A. (2010). *Birds of Peru* (rev. ed.). Princeton University Press.

Schwoerer, T., & Dawson, J. (2022). Economic impact of birdwatching: Global trends. *Journal of Ecotourism, 12*(1), 45-60.

Schwoerer, T., & Dawson, N. G. (2022). Small sight—Big might: Economic impact of bird tourism. *PLOS ONE, 17*(7), e0268594. https://doi.org/10.1371/journal.pone.0268594

Sekercioglu, C. H. (2006). Ecological functions and services of birds. In D. W. MacDonald & K. Norris (Eds.), *The Encyclopedia of Birds* (pp. 263-283). Oxford University Press.

SEPLAN-RR. (2022). *Zoneamento ecológico-econômico do Estado de Roraima – Vol. III: Meio físico e biodiversidade.*

Silveira, L. (2013). Mundo das Aves: As exclusivas aves de Roraima. *Cães & Cia., 405*, 40-41.

Soares-Filho, B. S., Alencar, A., Nepstad, D., Cerqueira, G., Lopes, C., et al. (2006). Modelling conservation in the Amazon basin. *Nature, 440*, 520-523. https://doi.org/10.1038/nature04389

State Law No. 555. (2006, July 14). Institui a APA Baixo Rio Branco.

State Law No. 1.704. (2022, July 15). Recategoriza unidades de conservação do Estado de Roraima.

Stronza, A. L., Hunt, C. A., & Fitzgerald, L. A. (2019). Ecotourism for conservation? *Annual Review of Environment and Resources, 44*, 229-253. https://doi.org/10.1146/annurev-environ-101718-033046

Sullivan, B. L., Wood, C. L., Iliff, M. J., Bonney, R. E., Fink, D., & Kelling, S. (2014). eBird: A citizen-based observation network. *Biological Conservation, 169*, 31-40.

Vale, M. M., Bell, J. B., Alves, M. A. S., & Pimm, S. L. (2007). Abundance and conservation of Rio Branco Antbird and Hoary-throated Spinetail. *Bird Conservation International, 17*(3), 245-257. https://doi.org/10.1017/S0959270907000743

Vale, M. M., Cohn-Haft, M., Bergen, S., & Pimm, S. L. (2008). Future infrastructure and Amazonian birds. *Biological Conservation, 141*(7), 1691-1705.

Van den Born, R. J. G., Ganzevoort, W., Talivee, E.-M., Laksfoss Cardozo, A.-E., Ábrán, Á., Villanueva Romero, D., Contreras Ameduri, A., Van der Wal, R., & Lundquist, E. (2022). *Love, learning and care for birds: Ornithological citizen science as a pathway to environmental citizenship* (EnviroCitizen Deliverable D2.4). European Union Horizon 2020 EnviroCitizen Project. https://www.ru.nl/sites/default/files/2023-05/love-learning-and-care-for-birds-d2.4.pdf

Vasconcellos, A. C. S. de, Ferreira, S. R. B., de Sousa, C. C., de Oliveira, M. W., Lima, M. O., & Basta, P. C. (2022). Mercury exposure from fish in the Rio Branco Basin. *Toxics, 10*(9), 516. https://doi.org/10.3390/toxics10090516

ViaRural. (2010). *Baixo Rio Branco: Ecossistema, pesca esportiva e turismo de base comunitária.*

Wankler, F. L., & Sander, C. (2019). *Relatório Executivo do Clima do Estado de Roraima para o ZEE-RR.*

Whittaker, A. (2009). Notes on the Rio Branco Antbird. *Bulletin of the British Ornithologists' Club, 129*(2), 97-106.

WikiAves. (n.d.). Notes on *Caracara plancus* name origin. https://www.wikiaves.com.br

WikiAves. (n.d.). *Registros de Aves em Roraima.* https://www.wikiaves.com.br

Zimmer, K. J., & Isler, M. L. (2003). Family Thamnophilidae (Typical Antbirds). In J. del Hoyo, A. Elliott, & D. A. Christie (Eds.), *Handbook of the Birds of the World* (Vol. 8, pp. 448-681). Lynx Edicions.

Other Sources Consulted

1. Roraima (RR): mapa, capital, bandeira, cultura, população - Brasil Escola, accessed April 17, 2025, https://brasilescola.uol.com.br/brasil/roraima.htm
2. Amazônia Legal - IBGE, accessed April 17, 2025, https://www.ibge.gov.br/geociencias/cartas-e-mapas/mapas-regionais/15819-amazonia-legal.html
3. Divisão regional - IBGE, accessed April 17, 2025, http://geoftp.ibge.gov.br/atlas/nacional/atlas_nacional_do_brasil_2010/2_territorio_e_meio_ambiente/atlas_nacional_do_brasil_2010_pagina_57_regioes_de_planejamento_2010.pdf
4. Roraima | Cidades e Estados - IBGE, accessed April 17, 2025, https://www.ibge.gov.br/cidades-e-estados/rr.html
5. território | dados geográficos - IBGE | Brasil em síntese, accessed April 17, 2025, https://brasilemsintese.ibge.gov.br/territorio/dados-geograficos.html
6. Fronteira Brasil–Venezuela – Wikipédia, a enciclopédia livre, accessed April 17, 2025, https://pt.wikipedia.org/wiki/Fronteira_Brasil%E2%80%93Venezuela
7. Fronteira Brasil–Guiana – Wikipédia, a enciclopédia livre, accessed April 17, 2025, https://pt.wikipedia.org/wiki/Fronteira_Brasil%E2%80%93Guiana
8. território - IBGE | Brasil em síntese, accessed April 17, 2025, https://brasilemsintese.ibge.gov.br/territorio.html
9. www.gov.br, accessed April 17, 2025, https://www.gov.br/icmbio/pt-br/assuntos/biodiversidade/unidade-de-conservacao/unidades-de-biomas/amazonia/lista-de-ucs/parna-do-monte-roraima/arquivos/encarte-estadual3.pdf
10. zee-rr.institutopiatam.org.br, accessed April 17, 2025, https://zee-rr.institutopiatam.org.br/wp-content/uploads/2022/03/Areas-Institucionais-1.pdf
11. Áreas Protegidas na Amazônia Brasileira: avanços e desafios ..., accessed April 17, 2025, https://imazon.org.br/areas-protegidas-na-amazonia-brasileira-avancos-e-desafios-2/
12. repositorio.ufrr.br, accessed April 17, 2025, http://repositorio.ufrr.br:8080/jspui/bitstream/prefix/262/1/Conserva%C3%A7%C3%A3o%20da%20natureza%20em%20Roraima.pdf
13. Relatório aponta crescimento do turismo em Roraima nos últimos ..., accessed April 17, 2025, https://portal.rr.gov.br/relatorio-aponta-crescimento-do-turismo-em-roraima-nos-ultimos-dois-anos/
14. FEMARH, accessed April 17, 2025, https://femarh.rr.gov.br/wp-content/uploads/2023/09/Livreto-Unidades-de-Conservacao-Estaduais.pdf
15. FEMARH, accessed April 17, 2025, https://femarh.rr.gov.br/
16. Volume 3 Gestão Territorial Zoneamento Ecológico-Econômico de Roraima | ZEE-RR, accessed April 17, 2025, https://seadi.rr.gov.br/wp-content/uploads/2024/01/ZEE-RR-2022-VOLUME-03.pdf
17. RORAIMA 4.24 - Portal Nacional de Licenciamento Ambiental, accessed April 17, 2025, https://pnla.mma.gov.br/images/2018/08/Procedimentos-de-Licencamento-Ambiental-RORAIMA-RR.pdf
18. 005 – regulamenta o procedimento de conversão de multas ambientais - Femarh – RR, accessed April 17, 2025, https://femarh.rr.gov.br/wp-content/uploads/2022/08/005-Regulamenta-o-procedimento-de-conversao-de-multas-ambientais.pdf
19. imprensaoficial.rr.gov.br, accessed April 17, 2025, https://imprensaoficial.rr.gov.br/app/_edicoes/2014/05/doe-20140529.pdf
20. ftp.ibge.gov.br, accessed April 17, 2025, https://ftp.ibge.gov.br/Censos/Censo_Demografico_2022/Previa_da_Populacao/RR_POP2022.pdf
21. seplan.rr.gov.br, accessed April 17, 2025, https://seplan.rr.gov.br/wp-content/uploads/2023/11/Informativo-013-2023-POPULACAO-INDIGENA-2023.pdf.pdf
22. Roraima | Panorama - IBGE - Cidades, accessed April 17, 2025, https://cidades.ibge.gov.br/brasil/rr/panorama

23. Gráficos e mapas sobre o Censo Demográfico de 2022 - Nexo Jornal, accessed April 17, 2025, https://www.nexojornal.com.br/grafico/graficos-e-mapas-sobre-o-censo-demografico-2022
24. www.gov.br, accessed April 17, 2025, https://www.gov.br/igualdaderacial/pt-br/composicao/secretaria-de-gestao-do-sistema-nacional-de-promocao-da-igualdade-racial/diretoria-de-avaliacao-monitoramento-e-gestao-da-informacao/informativos/Informe-edicao-censo-demogrfico2022.pdf
25. agenciadenoticias.ibge.gov.br, accessed April 17, 2025, https://agenciadenoticias.ibge.gov.br/media/com_mediaibge/arquivos/13ee0337cffc1de37bf0cd4da3988e1f.pdf
26. Censo 2022: pela primeira vez, desde 1991, a maior parte da ..., accessed April 17, 2025, https://agenciadenoticias.ibge.gov.br/agencia-noticias/2012-agencia-de-noticias/noticias/38719-censo-2022-pela-primeira-vez-desde-1991-a-maior-parte-da-populacao-do-brasil-se-declara-parda
27. BR-174 – Wikipédia, a enciclopédia livre, accessed April 17, 2025, https://pt.wikipedia.org/wiki/BR-174
28. BR-174 em Roraima recebe serviços de restauração em 25 ..., accessed April 17, 2025, https://www.gov.br/dnit/pt-br/assuntos/noticias/br-174-em-roraima-recebe-servicos-de-restauracao-em-25-quilometros
29. 82% das rodovias federais em Roraima estão em boas condições ..., accessed April 17, 2025, https://www.folhabv.com.br/geral/82-das-rodovias-federais-em-roraima-estao-em-boas-condicoes-aponta-dnit/
30. A joia turística pouco explorada do extremo Norte de ... - Uiramutã, accessed April 17, 2025, https://uiramuta.rr.gov.br/uiramuta-a-joia-turistica-pouco-explorada-do-extremo-norte-de-roraima/
31. Roraima registra crescimento de 97% na chegada de turistas ..., accessed April 17, 2025, https://www.gov.br/turismo/pt-br/assuntos/noticias/roraima-registra-crescimento-de-97-na-chegada-de-turistas-internacionais-em-2024
32. Áreas Territoriais | IBGE, accessed April 17, 2025, https://www.ibge.gov.br/geociencias/organizacao-do-territorio/estrutura-territorial/15761-areas-dos-municipios.html
33. Boa Vista (RR) | Cidades e Estados - IBGE, accessed April 17, 2025, https://www.ibge.gov.br/cidades-e-estados/rr/boa-vista.html
34. IBGE | Cidades@ | Roraima | Boa Vista | Panorama, accessed April 17, 2025, https://cidades.ibge.gov.br/brasil/rr/boa-vista/panorama
35. Biomas | IBGE, accessed April 17, 2025, https://www.ibge.gov.br/geociencias/cartas-e-mapas/informacoes-ambientais/15842-biomas.html
36. Biomas brasileiros | Educa | Jovens - IBGE, accessed April 17, 2025, https://educa.ibge.gov.br/jovens/conheca-o-brasil/territorio/18307-biomas-brasileiros.html
37. biomas_5000mil.pdf - IBGE, accessed April 17, 2025, https://geoftp.ibge.gov.br/informacoes_ambientais/estudos_ambientais/biomas/mapas/biomas_5000mil.pdf
38. Roraima - IBGE, accessed April 17, 2025, https://geoftp.ibge.gov.br/informacoes_ambientais/vegetacao/mapas/unidades_da_federacao/rr_vegetacao.pdf
39. Regiões Geográficas Estado de Roraima - IBGE, accessed April 17, 2025, https://geoftp.ibge.gov.br/organizacao_do_territorio/divisao_regional/divisao_regional_do_brasil/divisao_regional_do_brasil_em_regioes_geograficas_2017/mapas/14_regioes_geograficas_roraima.pdf
40. Funai anuncia ACT para monitoramento de terras indígenas em Roraima e reforça posicionamento contra o marco temporal - Portal Gov.br, accessed April 17, 2025, https://www.gov.br/funai/pt-br/assuntos/noticias/2025/funai-anuncia-act-para-monitoramento-de-terras-indigenas-em-roraima-e-reforca-posicionamento-contra-o-marco-temporal

41. entendendo a - Pngati, accessed April 17, 2025, http://cggamgati.funai.gov.br/files/2414/8839/5161/Entendendo_a_PNGATI.pdf
42. Diagnóstico da Área de Antropologia Zoneamento Ecológico-Econômico de Roraima, accessed April 17, 2025, https://zee-rr.institutopiatam.org.br/wp-content/uploads/2022/03/Antropologia-1.pdf
43. Lei Ordinária nº 986, de 22 de janeiro de 2015 - SAPL, accessed April 17, 2025, https://sapl.al.rr.leg.br/norma/1222?display
44. PLANO DE MANEJO DA FLORESTA NACIONAL DE RORAIMA - GOV.BR, accessed April 17, 2025, https://www.gov.br/icmbio/pt-br/assuntos/biodiversidade/unidade-de-conservacao/unidades-de-biomas/amazonia/lista-de-ucs/flona-de-roraima/pm_flona_roraima.pdf
45. siglas - Portal Gov.br, accessed April 17, 2025, https://www.gov.br/icmbio/pt-br/assuntos/biodiversidade/unidade-de-conservacao/unidades-de-biomas/amazonia/lista-de-ucs/parna-serra-da-mocidade/arquivos/volume_i_diagnostico_plano_de_manejo_parna_serra_da_mocidade.pdf
46. ICMBio - Centro Nacional de Pesquisa e Conservação da Biodiversidade Marinha do Sudeste e Sul - Unidades de Conservação, accessed April 17, 2025, https://www.icmbio.gov.br/cepsul/areas-protegidas/unidades-de-conservacao.html
47. Instrução Normativa FEMARH/PRES Nº 20 DE 16/10/2024 - Estadual - Roraima - LegisWeb, accessed April 17, 2025, https://www.legisweb.com.br/legislacao/?id=467355
48. Visita as Fronteiras Roraimenses - Roraima Adventures, accessed April 17, 2025, https://roraimaadventures.com.br/visita-as-fronteiras-em-roraima/
49. BRASIL FRONTEIRAS TERRESTRES - Portal Gov.br, accessed April 17, 2025, https://www.gov.br/funag/pt-br/ipri/arquivos-ipri/arquivos-estatisticas/fronteiras-terrestres-brasil-13052015.pdf
50. Blindados chegam a Roraima e reforçam fronteira com Venezuela e Guiana | Agência Brasil, accessed April 17, 2025, https://agenciabrasil.ebc.com.br/internacional/noticia/2024-02/blindados-chegam-roraima-e-reforcam-fronteira-com-venezuela-e-guiana
51. Fronteiras e Limites do Brasil, accessed April 17, 2025, http://info.lncc.br/tab.html
52. Fronteiras do Brasil: quais os países com limites e extensão - Toda Matéria, accessed April 17, 2025, https://www.todamateria.com.br/fronteiras-do-brasil/
53. PERCEPÇÃO DOS VISITANTES SOBRE A ATIVIDADE TURÍSTICA NA SERRA GRANDE, RORAIMA, BRASIL, accessed April 17, 2025, https://periodicos.uerr.edu.br/index.php/casa_de_makunaima/article/download/1339/775/4485
54. Roraima – Wikipédia, a enciclopédia livre, accessed April 17, 2025, https://pt.wikipedia.org/wiki/Roraima
55. Competências - Portal de Transparência do Estado de Roraima, accessed April 17, 2025, https://transparencia.rr.gov.br/competencias
56. Relatório Executivo de Vegetação Zoneamento Ecológico-Econômico de Roraima | ZEE-RR, accessed April 17, 2025, https://zee-rr.institutopiatam.org.br/wp-content/uploads/2022/03/Vegetacao.pdf
57. (Lei Complementar nº 007 de 26.08.94 - Código do Meio Ambient) - MPC/RR, accessed April 17, 2025, https://www.mpc.rr.gov.br/uploads/2013/09/03092013112810479_6.pdf
58. RELATÓRIO DE AVALIAÇÃO EXERCÍCIO 2023 | Seplan RR, accessed April 17, 2025, https://seplan.rr.gov.br/wp-content/uploads/2024/04/RELATORIO-DE-AVALIACAO-EXERCICIO-2023.pdf
59. Censo 2022 - IBGE, accessed April 17, 2025, https://www.ibge.gov.br/estatisticas/sociais/populacao/22827-censo-demografico-2022.html
60. Censo 2022 | IBGE, accessed April 17, 2025, https://www.ibge.gov.br/estatisticas/sociais/trabalho/22827-censo-demografico-2022.html

61. CANTÁ - Coordenadoria Geral de Vigilância em Saúde - Secretaria de Estado da Saúde de Roraima, accessed April 17, 2025, https://vigilancia.saude.rr.gov.br/wp-content/uploads/2024/03/informacao_cds_canta_2024_0001.pdf
62. RORAIMA - Coordenadoria Geral de Vigilância em Saúde – CGVS, accessed April 17, 2025, https://vigilancia.saude.rr.gov.br/wp-content/uploads/2024/03/informacao_cds_estadoderoraima_2024_0001.pdf
63. De 2010 a 2022, população brasileira cresce 6,5% e chega a 203,1 milhões, accessed April 17, 2025, https://agenciadenoticias.ibge.gov.br/agencia-noticias/2012-agencia-de-noticias/noticias/37237-de-2010-a-2022-populacao-brasileira-cresce-6-5-e-chega-a-203-1-milhoes
64. Censo 2022: mais da metade da população indígena vive nas cidades, accessed April 17, 2025, https://agenciadenoticias.ibge.gov.br/agencia-noticias/2012-agencia-de-noticias/noticias/42277-censo-2022-mais-da-metade-da-populacao-indigena-vive-nas-cidades
65. Censo 2022: metade da população indígena no país tem menos de 25 anos, accessed April 17, 2025, https://agenciadenoticias.ibge.gov.br/agencia-noticias/2012-agencia-de-noticias/noticias/39932-noticia-censo-22-indigena
66. IBGE | Indígenas, accessed April 17, 2025, https://indigenas.ibge.gov.br/
67. Os indígenas no Censo 2022 - IBGE - Educa, accessed April 17, 2025, https://educa.ibge.gov.br/criancas/brasil/nosso-povo/22324-os-indigenas-no-censo-2022.html
68. Indígenas | Educa | Jovens - IBGE, accessed April 17, 2025, https://educa.ibge.gov.br/jovens/conheca-o-brasil/populacao/22326-indigenas-2.html
69. Dados do Censo 2022 revelam que o Brasil tem 1,7 milhão de indígenas - Portal Gov.br, accessed April 17, 2025, https://www.gov.br/funai/pt-br/assuntos/noticias/2023/dados-do-censo-2022-revelam-que-o-brasil-tem-1-7-milhao-de-indigenas
70. BR-210 – Wikipédia, a enciclopédia livre, accessed April 17, 2025, https://pt.wikipedia.org/wiki/BR-210
71. Componente Ambiental da BR 174 e BR 210 - AM e RO, accessed April 17, 2025, http://cerneambiental.com.br/case/index-dnit-componente-ambiental-da-br-174-e-br-210.html
72. Mapa Rodoviário Federal - ONTL, accessed April 17, 2025, https://ontl.infrasa.gov.br/wp-content/uploads/2024/06/MapaRodoviario.pdf
73. Fronteirasdo Brasil - repositorio ipea, accessed April 17, 2025, https://repositorio.ipea.gov.br/bitstream/11058/8466/1/Fronteiras%20do%20Brasil_uma%20avalia%C3%A7%C3%A3o%20do%20arco%20Norte_volume%203.pdf
74. Fronteirasdo Brasil - Repositório do Conhecimento do Ipea, accessed April 17, 2025, https://repositorio.ipea.gov.br/bitstream/11058/10615/1/Fronteiras%20do%20Brasil_referencias_vol_6.pdf
75. Fronteiras em movimento: resultados chave no Brasil. - R4V, accessed April 17, 2025, https://www.r4v.info/sites/g/files/tmzbdl2426/files/2024-02/REG2302_MT_BrasilCaritasReporte_1202_final.pdf
76. Municípios de Fronteira: Mobilidade Transfronteiriça, Migração, Vulnerabilidades e Inserção Laboral - ICMPD, accessed April 17, 2025, https://www.icmpd.org/file/download/54247/file/MT%2520Brasil%2520-%2520Munic%25C3%25ADpios%2520de%2520Fronteira%2520-%2520Mobilidade%2520Transfronteiri%25C3%25A7a%252C%2520Migra%25C3%25A7%25C3%25A3o%252C%2520Vulnerabilidades%2520e%2520Inser%25C3%25A7%25C3%25A3o%2520Laboral.pdf
77. O Estado de Roraima, accessed April 17, 2025, http://www.dominiopublico.gov.br/pesquisa/DetalheObraDownload.do?select_action=&co_obra=84390&co_midia=2
78. a faixa de fronteira internacional norte do brasil, accessed April 17, 2025, http://observatoriogeograficoamericalatina.org.mx/egal10/Geografiasocioeconomica/Geografiaregional/12.pdf

79. Uairén (Venezuela - Issuu, accessed April 17, 2025, https://issuu.com/danielfxa/docs/fronteiras_do_brasil_uma_avalia_o_do_arco_norte_v/s/17426094
80. Programa de Regionalização do Turismo - Ministério do Turismo, accessed April 17, 2025, https://regionalizacao.turismo.gov.br/
81. Potencialidades turísticas de Rondônia são apresentadas em evento do setor em Roraima, accessed April 17, 2025, https://rondonia.ro.gov.br/potencialidades-turisticas-de-rondonia-sao-apresentadas-em-evento-do-setor-em-roraima/
82. Divisões Regionais do Brasil | IBGE, accessed April 17, 2025, https://www.ibge.gov.br/geociencias/organizacao-do-territorio/divisao-regional/15778-divisoes-regionais-do-brasil.html
83. Municípios da Faixa de Fronteira e Cidades Gêmeas - IBGE, accessed April 17, 2025, https://www.ibge.gov.br/geociencias/organizacao-do-territorio/estrutura-territorial/24073-municipios-da-faixa-de-fronteira.html
84. Região Norte: estados, dados gerais, características - Brasil Escola, accessed April 17, 2025, https://brasilescola.uol.com.br/brasil/regiao-norte.htm
85. Região Norte do Brasil – Wikipédia, a enciclopédia livre, accessed April 17, 2025, https://pt.wikipedia.org/wiki/Regi%C3%A3o_Norte_do_Brasil
86. Região Norte: estados, economia, características - Mundo Educação, accessed April 17, 2025, https://mundoeducacao.uol.com.br/geografia/regiao-norte.htm
87. PROJETO BRA 13/019 Implementação da Política Nacional de Gestão Territorial e Ambiental de Terras Indígenas - Portal Gov.br, accessed April 17, 2025, https://www.gov.br/funai/pt-br/assuntos/noticias/2023/copy_of_Produto_III___Relatorio_Tecnico___versao_final.pdf
88. CBD Strategy and Action Plan - Brazil (Portuguese version) - Convention on Biological Diversity, accessed April 17, 2025, https://dev-chm.cbd.int/doc/world/br/br-nbsap-v3-pt.pdf
89. Untitled - SAPL, accessed April 17, 2025, https://sapl.al.rr.leg.br/media/sapl/public/documentoacessorio/2024/23563/oficio_no_1728_2024_-_femarh_pi_no_42_2024.pdf
90. GOVERNANÇA DE FUNDOS AMBIENTAIS E FLORESTAIS NA AmAzôniA LegAL - Imazon, accessed April 17, 2025, https://imazon.org.br/PDFimazon/Portugues/livros/Governanca%20Fundos%20Ambientais.pdf
91. A GOVERNANÇA NA GESTÃO DAS UNIDADES DE CONSERVAÇÃO DA AMAZÔNIA: O SNUC EM QUESTÃO - RI/UFS, accessed April 17, 2025, https://ri.ufs.br/bitstream/riufs/15256/2/HUELITON_SILVEIRA_FERREIRA.pdf
92. Relatório Anual do Fundo Amazônia 2016, accessed April 17, 2025, https://www.fundoamazonia.gov.br/pt/.galleries/documentos/rafa/RAFA_2016_port.pdf
93. Estratégia e Plano de Ação Nacionais para a Biodiversidade, accessed April 17, 2025, https://dalcin.org/eduardo/downloads/EPANB_v.2.4.pdf
94. Lista de municípios de Roraima por população – Wikipédia, a enciclopédia livre, accessed April 17, 2025, https://pt.wikipedia.org/wiki/Lista_de_munic%C3%ADpios_de_Roraima_por_popula%C3%A7%C3%A3o
95. Malha de Setores Censitários - IBGE, accessed April 17, 2025, https://www.ibge.gov.br/geociencias/organizacao-do-territorio/malhas-territoriais/26565-malhas-de-setores-censitarios-divisoes-intramunicipais.html
96. Ranking das Cidades de Roraima por População (Censo IBGE 2022) - YouTube, accessed April 17, 2025, https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=2pmFd9eyS68
97. IBGE - Cidades, accessed April 17, 2025, https://cidades.ibge.gov.br/
98. Censo 2022: proporção da população com nível superior completo aumenta de 6,8% em 2000 para 18,4% em 2022 - Agência de Notícias - IBGE, accessed April 17, 2025, https://agenciadenoticias.ibge.gov.br/agencia-noticias/2012-agencia-de-

noticias/noticias/42742-censo-2022-proporcao-da-populacao-com-nivel-superior-completo-aumenta-de-6-8-em-2000-para-18-4-em-2022
99. Panorama Equidade no Legislativo - Roraima — Portal Institucional do Senado Federal, accessed April 17, 2025, https://www12.senado.leg.br/institucional/responsabilidade-social/oel/estados/es-rr
100. Censo 2022: população parda supera a branca pela 1ª vez - Agência Brasil, accessed April 17, 2025, https://agenciabrasil.ebc.com.br/economia/noticia/2023-12/censo-2022-populacao-parda-supera-branca-pela-1a-vez

Section III – Practice, Tools, Events, Technologies and the Future of Birdwatching

(Field Practice, Public Engagement, Techs, and Emerging Trends)

Chapter 14

Birdwatching in Practice: Tools, Techniques, and the Making of a Modern Birder

Ismar Borges de Lima
Universidade Estadual de Roraima-UERR, Brazil &
RECINATUR Foundation. Email: ismar@uerr.edu.br

This Chapter introduces birdwatching as a globally accessible, multisensory, and deeply rewarding activity that transcends casual recreation to become a meaningful conduit for ecological understanding and environmental engagement. Defined by its unique blend of simplicity and depth, birdwatching welcomes individuals of all ages, physical abilities, and geographic locations, offering entry points that range from observing backyard feeders to undertaking immersive excursions into remote biomes. As interest deepens, so too does personal investment in the practice, evolving through the development of field skills, species knowledge, and participation in citizen science platforms such as eBird and iNaturalist—where enthusiasts contribute valuable data to biodiversity monitoring and conservation research. This progression fosters a growing sense of ecological literacy and stewardship. Moreover, while modern tools like binoculars, digital field guides, high-resolution cameras, and AI-based apps enhance the practice, they are framed here not as substitutes but as supportive instruments that amplify, rather than replace, the core attentiveness and interpretive observation that define meaningful birding. Through this synthesis of sensory presence, scientific potential, and technological augmentation, birdwatching emerges as a dynamic and inclusive pathway to nature connection, conservation participation, and lifelong learning.

Part 1 - Introduction

14.0. Birdwatching - A Globally Accessible and Multisensory Experience

Birdwatching—often referred to simply as "birding"—is more than a leisurely pastime; it is the focused *observation and study of wild birds in their natural habitats* (Mackinnon & Phillipps, 1993). While it may begin with casual viewing, birdwatching quickly evolves into an active, immersive experience that engages multiple senses. Practitioners develop the ability to interpret avian behavior, identify species based on physical features, and recognize the complex range of bird vocalizations, from melodious songs to brief, diagnostic calls.

One of the key factors behind birdwatching's growing global popularity is its extraordinary accessibility. As noted by Chewy via Audubon New York (n.d.), it is an activity that can be practiced *"anywhere, anytime."* Whether peering through binoculars at a backyard feeder, walking through a city park, or exploring remote forests and wetlands, birding accommodates an infinite range of settings and lifestyles.

This inclusive nature is further emphasized by Rich Merritt, Director of Operations at Audubon New York, who observes: *"Birding is a totally accessible activity... You can do it through your home or car window, while taking a rigorous hike, or anything in-between"* (Chewy via Audubon New York, n.d.). This versatility enables individuals of all ages, physical abilities, and geographic regions to engage meaningfully with the natural world—whether from rural landscapes, dense urban environments, or suburban backyards.

Ultimately, birdwatching fosters a diverse and interconnected global community. Enthusiasts from every continent share a common curiosity and admiration for birds, forging cross-cultural and transnational bonds through citizen science projects, conservation efforts, and digital platforms that map sightings and track migrations in real time. In this way, birding becomes not only a personal or recreational activity, but also a powerful gateway to environmental awareness and global ecological stewardship.

The journey into birdwatching often unfolds as a gradual progression of increasing engagement and personal transformation. What begins as a simple moment of curiosity—perhaps sparked by the presence of colorful birds at a backyard feeder—can evolve into a deeply immersive and intellectually stimulating pursuit. As interest grows, so too does the desire to refine one's observational skills, master specialized tools such as binoculars and field guides, and even participate in projects that contribute valuable data to scientific research (Powell, 2022). For many enthusiasts, this process includes keeping detailed field notes or maintaining a "life list"—a cherished inventory that reflects the cumulative number of bird species observed over time. Yet, the deeper rewards of birdwatching transcend mere record-keeping. It fosters a unique and intimate connection with nature's intricate rhythms, offering moments of awe, discovery, and reflection. Whether spotting a rare migrant during spring passage or watching a familiar species nest year after year, birdwatching becomes a conduit for emotional resonance and ecological understanding (Fig. 14.1).

Figure 14.1 - Birdwatching activities (*in situ*).
Image credit: Ismar Borges de Lima, 2025.

14.1. Depth Through Simplicity: Accessibility and Scientific Potential

One of the most remarkable characteristics of birdwatching is its unusual combination of simplicity and depth. At its core, birding demands very little—only time, attention, and curiosity. Yet, it naturally lends itself to the development of increasingly advanced skills, with no rigid boundaries between amateur enjoyment and expert-level inquiry. This fluid spectrum of involvement makes birdwatching one of the few nature-based activities that is both widely accessible and potentially rigorous.

Importantly, birdwatchers increasingly play a vital role as citizen scientists, participating in large-scale monitoring efforts and biodiversity research. As Frey (2023) observes, birders act as the "*scientists' eyes and ears for monitoring the state of our planet*." Through platforms such as eBird, iNaturalist, and national bird counts, enthusiasts contribute data that informs conservation policy, ecological modeling, and climate change research. In this way, even casual birders become key contributors to the scientific community, forming an indispensable human network in the broader endeavor to protect avian life and ecosystems.

This process of evolving engagement often cultivates a heightened environmental awareness. As birders learn to recognize seasonal patterns, nesting behaviors, migration routes, and habitat preferences, they develop a deeper understanding of avian ecology. This knowledge frequently nurtures a sense of stewardship, inspiring active involvement in habitat protection, sustainable practices, and conservation advocacy.

14.1.2. Technology as a Tool, not a Substitute

While technological advances have transformed the tools available to birdwatchers, the core of the practice remains rooted in attentive observation. Binoculars, spotting scopes, field apps, high-resolution cameras, and artificial intelligence tools—such as sound recognition software and image-based species ID platforms—have certainly expanded the capabilities of modern birders (Peicheng & Xiaojun, 2017). These tools enhance human perception, allowing for faster identification, better documentation, and broader participation across levels of expertise.

However, despite their value, these technologies are not replacements for the foundational skills of birdwatching. They serve to augment human senses, but the heart of birding still lies in the careful application of sight and hearing, paired with interpretive thinking and patient field presence. It is this blend of technological enhancement and sensory discipline that gives birdwatching its enduring richness and potential—where even the most advanced tools depend on the birder's awareness, curiosity, and love for the living world.

Part 2: Foundations - Beginning Your Birdwatching Journey

Embarking on the birdwatching journey necessitates a foundational grasp of essential equipment and observational methods (see Fig. 14.2). Although the core activity relies on human senses, certain tools dramatically elevate the experience, particularly when identifying birds that are distant, small, or partially hidden. Combined with fundamental observational skills, these tools establish the groundwork upon which more advanced practices and deeper understanding are built.

14.2. The Essential Toolkit: Seeing and Identifying

Choosing Your First Binoculars

Figure 14.2 – Birdwatching guides and binoculars.
Image adapted from the internet, 2025.

While observing birds without optical assistance is certainly possible, a suitable pair of binoculars is transformative. They make the activity significantly "easier" and vastly increase the level of detail discernible, thereby enhancing both enjoyment and identification success (Powell, 2022). Selecting the right binoculars can initially seem overwhelming, but focusing on key features simplifies the decision (also see Table 14.1 and Figs. 14.3; 14.4):

- **Magnification:** For most beginners, 8-power binoculars (indicated by the first number in specifications like 8x42) represent an excellent compromise. This level provides sufficient magnification to reveal important details clearly while maintaining a relatively wide field of view. A wider field of view is advantageous as it makes it easier to locate birds initially and track them as they move, reducing the frustration of birds quickly hopping out of the frame. Higher magnifications, such as 10x, offer greater detail but come with a narrower field of view and amplify the effect of hand shake, making it more challenging to hold the image steady without support.

- **Objective Lens Diameter:** The second number in the specification (e.g., 42 in 8x42) denotes the diameter of the large front lenses in millimeters. Larger objective lenses gather more light, translating into brighter images. This is a critical advantage in the low-light conditions frequently encountered during prime birding times like early morning and late evening, or within the shaded understory of forests.

- **Budget and Quality:** While very inexpensive binoculars (under $100) might be tempting, investing in the $200 to $300 range often yields vastly superior optical quality, better warranties, waterproof construction, and improved ergonomics (Powell, 2022). The difference in the viewing experience is substantial and directly influences enjoyment and the ability to discern subtle field marks for identification. Although expert Sharon Stiteler notes that "You can get really great optics in the $100 to 200 range" (Chewy via Audubon New York, n.d.), pushing the budget slightly higher often provides a significant jump in performance and durability. Visiting a retailer to compare different models firsthand is highly recommended.

- **Ergonomics and Testing:** Comfort is crucial for extended periods of observation. Consider the weight of the binoculars and how they feel in the hands. When testing models in a store, evaluate brightness and clarity by looking through them towards a dimly lit area, simulating challenging field conditions. Ensure the image is crisp and well-defined across the field of view. Stiteler suggests a practical test: "point the binoculars at the darkest corner of the store and gaze through them" to assess brightness and clarity effectively (Chewy - via Audubon New York - , n.d.).

Table 14.1 - Beginner Binocular Selection Guide

Feature	**8x32**	**8x42**	**10x42**
Magnification	8x	8x	10x
Objective Lens	32mm	42mm	42mm
Field of View	Generally Wider	Moderate	Generally Narrower
Brightness	Good, less in low light	Excellent, good balance	Excellent, similar to 8x42
Stability	Easier to hold steady	Relatively easy to hold steady	More sensitive to hand shake
Weight	Lighter, more compact	Moderate	Moderate, similar to 8x42
Price Range (Approx.)	~$150 - $400+	~$200 - $500+	~$200 - $500+
Pros	Lightweight, portable	Bright image, versatile performance	Higher detail resolution
Cons	Less bright in dim light	Bulkier/heavier than 8x32	Narrower view, harder to hold steady
Best For	Daytime, hiking	Most versatile, varied conditions	Open country, distant birds

Note: This table provides a concise comparison to aid beginners. Different configurations exist, and individual preferences vary. Trying models is recommended.

14.2.1. Field Guides: Print Classics vs. Digital Companions

Once binoculars bring birds into closer view, the challenge shifts to identification. A reliable field guide is an indispensable tool; indeed, it is "highly recommend[ed] everyone have one" (Powell, 2022). Birders today benefit from excellent options in both traditional print formats and modern digital applications. Table 14.2 presents the main advantages and disadvantages of digital and physical accessories, tools, etc.

- **Print Field Guides:** Classic guides authored by experts like Sibley, Peterson, Kaufman, and those produced by National Geographic remain highly valued resources. They typically offer comprehensive species coverage, detailed illustrations or photographs highlighting key identifying features ("field marks"), range maps depicting geographic distribution, and descriptive text covering behavior and vocalizations. The tactile nature of print guides facilitates side-by-side comparison of similar species, and their independence from batteries or cellular signals ensures reliability in any field condition.[1]

- **Mobile Applications:** Birding apps have significantly transformed identification assistance. Applications such as the Cornell Lab of Ornithology's "Merlin Bird ID" consolidate vast amounts of information, including bird sounds, multiple photographs showing variation, identification tips, and dynamic range maps, often available for free.[2] They offer unparalleled portability and frequently include advanced features like photo identification assistance and, increasingly, sophisticated sound identification capabilities.[3] Stiteler specifically recommends "Merlin by the Cornell Lab of Ornithology" as a valuable mobile tool (Chewy via Audubon New York, n.d.).

- **Websites:** Online resources like the Cornell Lab's "All About Birds" website provide extensive species accounts, articles on bird biology and behavior, video clips, extensive sound libraries, and identification tips (Powell, 2022). These are excellent for in-depth research and learning when internet access is available.

Table 14.2 - Comparison of Bird Identification Resources

Resource Type	Key Features	Pros	Cons	Typical Use Case
Print Guide	Illustrations/photos, text descriptions, range maps, organized taxonomy	Comprehensive, reliable (no battery/signal), facilitates comparison, tactile	Bulky/heavy, manual searching, no audio	In-depth study, primary field reference, no connectivity situations
Basic App e.g., Merlin	Digital guide content, photos, sounds, maps, basic ID wizards	Portable, integrated audio, quick search, often free, location-aware suggestions [2]	Requires charged device, potential signal needs, screen visibility issues	Quick field reference, learning sounds, initial ID help

Advanced App Features (e.g., Sound/ Photo ID)	Real-time audio ID, photo ID, digital checklists (eBird integration) [3]	Powerful ID assistance, automated suggestions, data logging integration	Accuracy varies [4], requires mic/camera, battery drain, processing limits	Identifying unseen callers, confirming visual IDs, streamlined data entry
Website (e.g., All About Birds)	Extensive species accounts, articles, videos, sound library, ID tips	Deep information resource, multimedia content, accessible via computer/mobile browser	Requires internet connection, less portable than apps for field use	Detailed research, learning complex topics, accessing extensive media libraries

14.2.2. Essential Birding Kit
A curated collection of gear for the modern birdwatcher, combining classic field tools with cutting-edge technology. From binoculars and a powerful DSLR camera to a spotting scope, field guide, and a tablet for digital ID, this setup ensures accurate observation and documentation in the wild. Also featured are memory cards, gloves, hat, flashlight, and even a few essential medications—because serious birding means being ready for anything. Welcome to the world of birdwatching, where passion meets precision (see Figures 14.3 and 14.4.)

Figure 14.3- Essential Birding Kit. **Source:** Image adapted from the Internet, 2025.

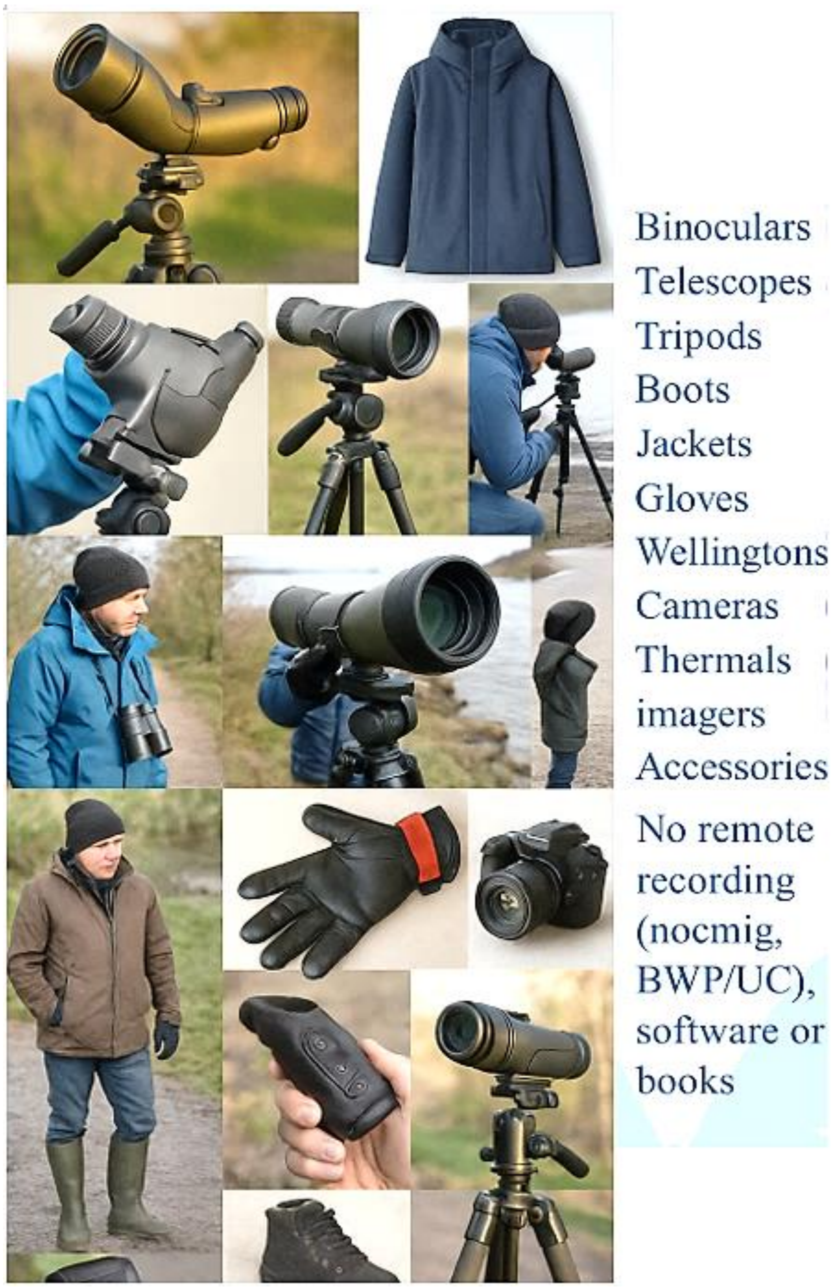


Figure 14.4 – Birdwatching kit, tools and equipment.

14.2.3. Attracting Birds: Simple Steps for Backyard Observation

Often, the most convenient place to begin honing observation skills is right at home. Creating a bird-friendly backyard can provide numerous opportunities for close-up views and repeated practice:

- **Feeders:** Installing bird feeders is a highly effective method for attracting various species. "Fill up the feeders with birdseed—Stiteler says black oil sunflower seed is a good overall choice—and then sit back and see how many different species show up" (Chewy via Audubon New York, n.d.). Adding specialized feeders, such as suet feeders during winter or hummingbird feeders in summer (depending on geographic location), can diversify the avian visitors. Maintaining clean feeders is crucial for preventing disease transmission.

- **Water:** Birds are strongly drawn to reliable water sources for both drinking and bathing. "Providing a fountain or shallow birdbath where birds can bathe and drink from might make your yard an even more popular place" (Chewy via Audubon New York, n.d.). Moving water, generated by a small fountain, dripper, or mister, can be particularly attractive due to the sound and visual cues it provides.

- **Native Plants:** Beyond feeders and water, landscaping with native plants offers significant benefits. Native vegetation provides natural food sources like insects, seeds, nectar, and berries that local birds are adapted to consume, as well as crucial shelter and nesting sites.[5] A diverse native planting scheme complements artificial sources and supports a healthier local ecosystem.

14.2.4. Developing the Birder's Senses: Core Observation Skills

Effective bird identification relies on more than just powerful optics; it demands the development of a systematic approach to observation, actively engaging both sight and hearing. Mastering these core skills enables birders to gather crucial identification clues quickly and efficiently, forming the basis for more advanced interpretation.

- **Learning to Look: Mastering Size, Shape, and Silhouette:** A widely recommended four-step approach to visual identification often begins by assessing the bird's overall size and shape, sometimes referred to as GISS (General Impression of Size and Shape). Compare the observed bird's size relative to familiar species – is it smaller than a sparrow, larger than a pigeon, similar in size to a robin? Pay close attention to its general shape or silhouette, even before discerning colors. Is the bird plump or slender? Does it have a long or short tail? Is the head crested or smooth? These structural features are often visible at a distance or in poor lighting conditions when colors might be obscured.[1]
- **Decoding Plumage: Color Patterns and Key Field Marks:** The next step involves focusing on the bird's main color patterns. Note the dominant colors on different parts of the body: head, back, wings, breast, and belly. Crucially, look for specific, diagnostic "field marks"—distinctive features highlighted in field guides that help differentiate similar species. Examples include wing bars (stripes across the folded wing), eye rings (circles of color around the eye), streaking or spotting on the breast, rump patches (areas of color on the lower back often visible in flight), or unique bill shapes and colors.[1] Florence Merriam, a pioneer in observational birding, advocated for carefully noting characteristics in the field.[1]
- **Understanding Behavior: Clues from Action and Posture:** Observing what a bird *does* provides vital identification clues and offers insights into its ecology.[6] Is it actively foraging high in the tree canopy, probing the ground like a thrush, soaring overhead on thermal updrafts like a hawk, or perching motionless like a flycatcher waiting for prey? Note its typical posture – does it sit upright or horizontally? How does it move – does it hop, walk, or climb tree trunks? Behavior can often rapidly narrow down the possibilities. For instance, the feeding behavior of a nuthatch (climbing down trunks headfirst) is distinct from that of a woodpecker or creeper.
- **An Introduction to Birding by Ear: Recognizing Common Sounds:** Listening is as fundamental as looking in birdwatching. As noted by Frey (2023), "The best way to bird watch is to look and listen, because many birds have unique songs and calls". Particularly in dense habitats like forests or marshes, birds are frequently heard long before they are seen. Beginners should focus initially on learning the songs and calls of the most common birds in their local area. Songs are typically more complex vocalizations used primarily for defending territories or attracting mates, while calls

are generally shorter, simpler notes used for maintaining contact between individuals, signaling alarm, or during flight. Numerous resources, including mobile apps and websites like Merlin and All About Birds, offer extensive libraries of bird sound recordings to aid the learning process.[2]

- **Habitat as the Address: Finding Birds Where They Live:** Finally, always consider the habitat in which the bird is observed. Different species exhibit distinct habitat preferences – some are specialists of forests, grasslands, wetlands, shorelines, or deserts, while others are generalists found in varied environments, including urban areas. Knowing the typical habitat associated with a species can help confirm an identification or suggest likely candidates based on the location. Encountering a species far outside its expected habitat (e.g., a forest-dwelling warbler in an open desert) warrants extra scrutiny. Beginners can often find a good diversity of species by exploring accessible locations with rich "edge" habitats, such as the transition zones where forests meet fields or roads, as these areas often concentrate feeding opportunities and provide better visibility. Urban parks can also be surprisingly productive, acting as "an oasis in a sea of concrete," especially during migration periods when birds concentrate in available green spaces (Chewy via Audubon New York, n.d.).

The development of birding expertise involves the seamless integration of these diverse observational streams. Rarely does identification hinge solely on a single clue. Instead, experienced birders often subconsciously synthesize information gleaned from size, shape, color patterns, behavior, vocalizations, and habitat context almost instantaneously. A fleeting glimpse revealing a characteristic flight style, combined with a familiar call note emanating from a specific type of woodland, provides a much more robust basis for identification than any single element viewed in isolation. Therefore, effective practice involves consciously gathering and combining these different types of information until the process becomes intuitive. This learning process is essentially a form of practical cognitive training. It requires developing keen pattern recognition for visual and auditory cues, honing comparative analysis skills (judging size relative to known species, distinguishing similar songs), improving attention to detail (spotting subtle field marks), and enhancing auditory discrimination. Mastering these observational foundations strengthens overall cognitive functions like attention, memory, comparison, and analysis, skills valuable both within and beyond birdwatching.

Part 3: Refining Your Craft - Intermediate Techniques and Strategies

As familiarity with common local birds and basic identification techniques grows, many birdwatchers develop a desire to enhance their experiences further. This often involves seeking out more elusive or challenging species, deepening their understanding of avian biology and behavior, and refining their overall approach to finding and observing birds. This progression typically involves upgrading equipment, honing fieldcraft skills for less intrusive observation, employing more strategic planning, and developing more sophisticated methods for recording and interpreting observations.

14.3. Enhancing Your View: Stepping Up Your Optics

The Role of Spotting Scopes

While binoculars remain the essential tool for general birding, spotting scopes become indispensable for observing birds at significant distances where binocular magnification falls short. Waterfowl congregating on large lakes, shorebirds scattered across expansive mudflats, or raptors perched on distant snags often require the substantially higher magnification provided by scopes. These typically offer zoom eyepieces ranging from 20x up to 60x or even higher. This level of magnification allows for the appreciation of subtle plumage details – crucial for identifying difficult species groups like gulls or shorebirds – or simply for marveling at the intricate beauty of birds that would otherwise remain indistinct specks. Unlike binoculars, the high magnification of spotting scopes necessitates the use of a sturdy tripod to provide a stable, shake-free image. While representing a more significant financial investment than binoculars, quality spotting scopes are becoming increasingly accessible and offer a dramatic increase in observational power for specific situations.

14.3.1. Introduction to Bird Photography

Photography provides birders with a powerful means to document their sightings, aid in identification (even a less-than-perfect photograph can capture key field marks for later study and confirmation), and express an artistic appreciation for avian subjects. The advent of digital cameras, including increasingly capable smartphone cameras, has made bird photography more accessible than ever before. A popular technique among birders is 'digiscoping,' which involves coupling a digital camera or smartphone directly to the eyepiece of a spotting scope to capture highly magnified images. This practice connects modern digital technology with the long history of visual documentation in ornithology, which traditionally relied on detailed illustrations and early photographic methods to "capture action and freeze movement" and "visualize behavior" (Nixon, 2023), thereby contributing to the understanding of bird life. Ethical considerations, however, are paramount in bird photography (discussed further in Part 4).

14.3.2. Advanced Fieldcraft: Finding and Observing with Finesse

Observing birds effectively often requires more than just powerful optics; it demands skillful fieldcraft – the art and practice of moving through various habitats and observing wildlife with minimal disturbance, maximizing viewing opportunities while respecting the subjects.

The Art of Stealth

Birds are naturally wary creatures, finely attuned to potential threats in their environment. Successful observation hinges on minimizing any actions that might be perceived as dangerous:

- **Quiet Movement:** Move slowly and deliberately through the habitat, consciously avoiding sudden gestures or loud noises. Be mindful of the sound created by footsteps on dry leaves or snapping twigs, or by loud conversation (Bewl Water, 2021). Birds possess acute hearing and can easily detect sounds that humans might overlook.
- **Stillness and Patience:** Patience is a cornerstone of effective fieldcraft. Standing or sitting still for extended periods allows birds to become accustomed to one's presence. Often, after an initial period of quiet waiting, birds will resume their natural behaviors and may even venture closer (Bewl Water, 2021). Even necessary movements, like raising binoculars to the eyes, should be performed slowly and smoothly to avoid startling nearby birds. "Avoid fast movements or any movements that may rustle leaves around you" (Bewl Water, 2021).
- **Appropriate Attire:** Brightly colored clothing, especially large blocks of white or vibrant hues, can make a person highly conspicuous to birds against a natural backdrop. "Try sticking to darks and earthy tones, this will help you blend into your surroundings and be way less visible to birds" (Bewl Water, 2021). The objective is to minimize visual contrast and draw as little attention as possible.

Figure 14.3. Birdwatching stealth. Image caption: Invisible by Design: This expertly camouflaged birdwatching blind merges seamlessly with the lush forest surroundings, offering unobtrusive observation for photographers and naturalists. Precision-crafted for stealth, it's where innovation meets immersion in the wild. **Source**: Adapted from the internet, 2025.

Figure 14.4. Birdwatching camouflage: Perfectly Blending In: This advanced ghillie suit, designed in earthy tones with textured leaf patterns, offers exceptional concealment for birdwatchers and wildlife photographers. Set against a real forest backdrop, it exemplifies stealth and functionality in the field—where remaining unseen means witnessing the extraordinary. **Source**: Adapted from the internet, 2025.

14.3.3. Deeper Behavioral Insights

Observation should extend beyond simply noting basic actions for identification purposes. Paying close attention to the *context* of behavior reveals much more about a bird's life and ecological interactions.[6] Observing interactions between individuals – such as courtship displays, territorial disputes, or parental care – provides valuable insights. Noting specific foraging techniques (e.g., probing bark like a creeper, flycatching from a perch, sifting mud like a shorebird) illuminates feeding ecology. Recognizing signs of nesting activity adds another layer of understanding to the bird's annual cycle. Watching mixed-species foraging flocks, particularly common outside the breeding season, can be highly productive. These flocks offer collective vigilance against predators and potentially increased foraging efficiency, often containing a variety of species, including less common ones that might otherwise be missed if searching for solitary birds.

This detailed observation aligns with the development of an 'ethological eye,' a term used to describe a focus on recognizing and interpreting patterns of animal behavior, much like early ethologists who utilized hides, optics, and meticulous note-taking to systematically study birds (Nixon, 2023). Resources like Cornell's "Understanding Bird Behavior" course [6] or specialized reference guides like Kricher's "Peterson Reference Guide to Bird Behavior" [7] can significantly aid in learning to interpret the nuances of avian communication (postures, displays, vocalizations), understand motivations, and differentiate objective observation from subjective inference.[6] For example, learning to distinguish between different types of alarm calls, recognizing subtle courtship signals, or identifying displacement activities (like preening out of context) that might indicate stress requires focused learning and practice.

14.3.4. Strategic Birding

Finding specific target species or maximizing the number of species seen during an outing often requires deliberate planning and strategy:

- **Timing:** Birds are generally most active and vocal during the early morning hours, shortly after sunrise (often referred to as the "dawn chorus"), and again, though often less intensely, in the late afternoon or early evening. As Frey (2023) notes, "Birds sleep at night and are hungry in the morning, so they have to go out and eat," making dawn a prime observation time. Midday periods, especially on warm days, typically see the least amount of activity and are often best avoided if maximizing sightings is the primary goal (Bewl Water, 2021).
- **Location Research:** Leverage available resources to identify promising birding locations. Local birding clubs, online forums, and social media groups can provide valuable, up-to-date information on recent sightings and accessible sites. Increasingly, powerful citizen science data platforms like eBird offer sophisticated tools. Users can explore interactive maps showing species distribution, analyze bar charts illustrating seasonal occurrence patterns, discover designated "hotspots" known for high species diversity or recent rare bird sightings, and even set up alerts for target species within specific regions.[8] Regardless of technology, understanding the specific habitat preferences of target species remains crucial for predicting where they are most likely to occur. As Frey (2023) advises, "Look into their home- Birds are very complex and so are their habitats, take a little time and study their ecosystem and get familiar with their habitat".
- **Weather Awareness:** Weather conditions significantly influence bird activity levels and the observer's comfort and effectiveness. Heavy rain can suppress activity, especially for forest birds, and make observation difficult. Strong winds affect flight

patterns, make birds seek shelter, and can make hearing faint calls challenging. Planning outings to coincide with favorable weather conditions generally improves the chances of success and enjoyment.

14.3.5. Attraction Techniques: Understanding 'Pishing' (Use and Ethics)

Experienced birders sometimes employ a technique known as 'pishing' to attract small, inquisitive birds like chickadees, titmice, wrens, and some warblers into view. This involves making soft, repetitive, high-pitched hissing or squeaking sounds. "Pishing is where you make small high-pitched noises often squeaky whistle noises appeal to birds, and they are more likely to appear" (Bewl Water, 2021). These sounds may mimic the alarm calls birds use when mobbing a potential predator or perhaps certain contact notes, thereby piquing the curiosity of nearby birds and drawing them out from dense cover. While pishing can be effective in certain situations, its use must be approached with considerable caution and strong ethical consideration. Overuse or inappropriate use can cause unnecessary stress to birds, disrupt their natural foraging or social behaviors, and potentially make them more vulnerable to actual predators attracted by the commotion. Ethical guidelines strongly advise limiting the use of any audio methods, including pishing and recorded playback.[5] Pishing should be employed sparingly, briefly (only for a short duration if a bird doesn't respond quickly), and avoided altogether in heavily birded areas, near known nest sites, or when observing rare, threatened, or particularly sensitive species. The fundamental principle of prioritizing the bird's welfare must always guide the decision of whether or not to use this technique.

14.3.6. Systematic Record Keeping

Transitioning from casual observation to more dedicated birding often involves adopting diligent record-keeping practices. Maintaining notes in a dedicated field notebook – recording details such as species observed, estimated numbers, precise location, date, time, notable behaviors, habitat characteristics, and prevailing weather conditions – serves multiple valuable purposes. It creates a rich personal chronicle of one's birding experiences and discoveries. It actively reinforces learning by prompting careful observation and reflection, particularly when grappling with challenging identifications.

Furthermore, it allows for the tracking of patterns over time, such as arrival and departure dates of migrants or changes in local bird populations. As Frey (2023) suggests, "Grab a notebook and write down what works and what doesn't learn from any mistakes you've made before... It is also handy to keep a note on what birds you spotted and where". This practice echoes the methods of early naturalists like Florence Merriam, who advocated "writing down, while in the field, all the characteristics of every new bird seen".[1] Increasingly, birders utilize digital platforms like eBird, accessible via mobile app or website, to log their sightings efficiently. This not only provides a personal digital archive but also contributes observations to a global database used for science and conservation, bridging personal practice with collective knowledge (discussed further in Part 4).

The practice of advanced fieldcraft transcends mere technique; it embodies a fundamental respect for the subjects of observation and their environment. Techniques promoting stealth, careful movement, and minimal intrusion are not solely aimed at increasing sightings but are intrinsically linked to minimizing human impact and avoiding stress on wildlife. As skills in minimizing one's presence improve, the ethical commitment to prioritizing bird welfare is simultaneously fulfilled. This connection highlights how developing good fieldcraft inherently involves applying ecological knowledge (understanding bird behavior and sensitivity) to achieve ethical observation.

Similarly, the act of systematic record-keeping, particularly when contributing to platforms like eBird, creates a dynamic interplay between individual effort and collective scientific understanding. Personal observations, when shared, enrich a global resource used by other birders for planning and by scientists for research. In turn, the individual birder benefits from access to this aggregated data, enhancing their own ability to find birds and understand distribution patterns. This feedback loop elevates personal record-keeping from a simple diary to a potentially meaningful contribution to a larger scientific and community endeavor.

Part 4: The Cutting Edge - Technology in Modern Birdwatching

While deeply rooted in traditional observational skills passed down through generations, the practice of birdwatching is increasingly being shaped and enhanced by rapid technological advancements. Digital tools, artificial intelligence (AI), sophisticated imaging techniques, and even emerging concepts like augmented reality (AR) are transforming how birders identify species, document their sightings, contribute valuable data to scientific research, and ultimately experience the avian world.

14.4. Digital Tools for Identification and Discovery

Maximizing eBird

The eBird platform, managed by the Cornell Lab of Ornithology, extends far beyond its function as a simple digital checklist for recording bird sightings. It offers a suite of powerful tools for data analysis and discovery.[8] Users can delve into their personal statistics, tracking life lists, year lists, or location-specific lists across various geographic scales, and visualize their birding history through maps and charts. More significantly for planning and research, eBird's "Explore" functions provide access to the vast, continuously growing dataset contributed by hundreds of thousands of birders worldwide.[8] Users can investigate the distribution of specific species through dynamic, interactive maps; analyze patterns of occurrence and abundance throughout the year using bar charts tailored to specific locations; discover designated birding "hotspots" known for high species diversity or recent sightings of rare birds; and set up customized email alerts for target species reported in specific regions.[9] This transforms eBird from a personal logging tool into a sophisticated resource for planning birding trips, targeting specific species, and deepening one's understanding of bird distribution, migration timing, and seasonal abundance patterns.

Sophisticated App Features

Mobile birding applications continue to evolve well beyond serving as mere digital field guides. A major advancement is the integration of sound identification technology, prominently featured in apps like the Cornell Lab's Merlin Bird ID.[2] These tools utilize the smartphone's built-in microphone to listen to ambient bird sounds. Leveraging sophisticated AI algorithms trained on enormous libraries of expertly labeled sound recordings (such as the Macaulay Library at the Cornell Lab of Ornithology), these apps can suggest probable species identifications in real-time.[3] Merlin, for example, can help identify over 7,500 species globally and includes sound identification capabilities for many regions.[2] While the accuracy of sound ID can be influenced by various factors including distance to the bird, background noise levels, the clarity and type of vocalization, and the specific species involved [4], it represents a significant leap forward. It is particularly valuable for identifying birds that are heard but remain unseen in dense vegetation, or for learners struggling to master auditory identification skills.[4]

14.4.1. Introduction to Field Sound Recording

For birders seeking higher fidelity audio recordings than typically achievable with standard smartphone microphones, dedicated sound recording equipment represents the next level. This usually involves pairing directional microphones (such as shotgun microphones, which are highly sensitive in one direction) with portable digital audio recorders. Such setups allow for the capture of clear, high-quality bird vocalizations while minimizing unwanted background noise. These recordings can be invaluable for detailed personal study of complex songs or calls, for contributing high-quality audio data to scientific archives like the Macaulay Library, and for definitively confirming the identifications of species with very similar or difficult-to-distinguish vocalizations.

14.4.2. Automated Eyes and Ears: AI in Bird Identification

Artificial Intelligence (AI) and its subfield, Machine Learning (ML), are rapidly emerging as transformative tools in both ornithological research and recreational birdwatching. These technologies enable the automated identification of birds from both visual (photographs) and acoustic (sound recordings) data.

14.4.2.1. Visual Recognition (Photo ID)

AI, particularly a type of deep learning model known as Convolutional Neural Networks (CNNs), has proven exceptionally adept at image recognition tasks. These models are trained on enormous datasets containing millions of labeled bird images (one study mentions a dataset with over 70,000 training images across 450 species). By learning to recognize intricate patterns, textures, shapes, and color combinations characteristic of different species, these CNNs can identify birds from photographs submitted by users with remarkable speed and often high accuracy. "CNN’s are the strong assemblage of machine learning which have proven efficient in image processing" (S et al., 2023). Many popular birding apps now incorporate this technology, commonly labeled as "Photo ID," allowing users to upload a photograph and receive a list of suggested identifications almost instantly. This technology underpins systems designed for automatic recognition, potentially aiding researchers in large-scale image analysis as well as assisting enthusiasts in the field.

Figure 14.5. Smart Birding in Action: A state-of-the-art AI-powered bird feeder captures and identifies a rare yellow-and-black songbird in real time. Synced with a mobile app, the system sends instant notifications, blending traditional birdwatching with next-gen technology for seamless wildlife monitoring and digital species recognition. **Source/Credit:** Image adapted, based on the Internet, 2025

Figure 14.6. Merging Optics and AI: This cutting-edge monocular telescope, paired with a smartphone, exemplifies the future of birdwatching—where high-resolution lenses, digital bird identification apps, and artificial intelligence converge to bring distant avian wonders into crystal-clear focus. A perfect blend of field observation and smart tech for the modern birder. Source: Adapted from the internet, 2025.

14.4.2.2. Acoustic Monitoring (Sound ID)

Similarly, AI models, including various types of Artificial Neural Networks (ANNs), are being developed and refined to automatically identify bird species from their vocalizations captured in audio recordings. Research indicates that these systems can achieve high levels of accuracy under optimal conditions; one study reported "a 97% validation accuracy" using an ANN model for classifying bird species from audio clips. This technology holds immense promise for biodiversity monitoring. Automated acoustic monitoring offers a potentially more efficient, scalable, and less intrusive alternative to traditional manual field surveys, which can be labor-intensive and "inefficient and time-consuming" (Patil et al., 2022).

Such automated systems can help track population dynamics over large areas, assess breeding activity patterns, and monitor the impacts of environmental changes like deforestation, urbanization, or climate change, providing crucial data for conservation planning, especially given the alarming number of bird species currently facing threats of extinction.[14]

14.2.2.3. Practical Use & Limitations of AI Identification (Photo & Sound)

Despite their power, it is crucial to understand that current AI identification tools, such as those in the Merlin app, function primarily as sophisticated assistants providing *suggestions*, rather than delivering definitive, infallible identifications.[4] They excel at pattern recognition but often lack the nuanced contextual understanding of an experienced human observer.

- **Sound ID Limitations:** Accuracy can be significantly affected by factors like high levels of background noise, the presence of mimic species (e.g., Northern Mockingbirds frequently confuse the system by imitating other birds [4]), multiple birds singing simultaneously (overlapping songs), poor recording quality due to wind or distance, and even non-bird sounds like insects or mammals.[13] The app analyzes sound in short, typically three-second intervals, which may be insufficient to capture the diagnostic characteristics of species with longer or more complex songs.[4] Furthermore, accuracy varies considerably between species; birds with simple, consistent songs (like Willow Flycatchers) are generally easier for the AI to identify than those with highly variable or individually complex songs (like Baltimore Orioles [3]). The system's performance also depends heavily on the quality and quantity of training data available for a specific species and region, and whether the bird is giving a typical call or song type.[2] The base rate fallacy is also a concern: if Merlin identifies a very rare bird, the probability that the ID is *incorrect* can be surprisingly high, simply because the bird is rare and misidentifications of common birds are more likely overall.[13]
- **Photo ID Limitations:** Accuracy is contingent on the quality of the photograph (clarity, focus, resolution), the viewing angle, lighting conditions, and whether key field marks are visible.[15] Partial views or obscured features can easily lead to misidentification. The AI may struggle with birds exhibiting non-typical plumages due to age (juveniles vs. adults), sex (males vs. females in dimorphic species), molt stage, or subspecies variation. Users may also need to properly crop or zoom the photo to fill the identification box for optimal results.[15] The AI may fail to recognize subtle structural features or incorporate contextual clues (like behavior or specific habitat) that a human birder would instinctively use.
- **Impact on Data Quality:** An emerging concern is the potential impact of AI misidentifications on large citizen science databases like eBird.[4] If users submit incorrect IDs based solely on AI suggestions without critical evaluation or supporting evidence, it can introduce errors ("noise") into the dataset. This increases the workload for volunteer data reviewers and, if undetected, could potentially compromise the integrity of the data used for scientific research and conservation decisions.[4] Erroneous AI-driven reports have already been observed triggering rare bird alerts for species far outside their normal range.[4]
- **User Recommendations:** Responsible use of AI identification tools requires critical thinking. Users should treat AI suggestions as hypotheses to be verified, ideally through visual confirmation whenever possible.[4] It is essential to be aware of the tool's limitations and the factors that can affect its accuracy. Enabling location services on the device helps the app narrow down possibilities to species likely to be present in that specific area and time.[2] When submitting observations to eBird based on AI identification (especially for less common species or challenging IDs), users are strongly encouraged to upload the corresponding sound recording or photograph as supporting evidence. This allows data reviewers to verify the record and also provides valuable data for further training and improving the AI algorithms.[4] Ultimately, AI tools should be viewed as one component of the birder's toolkit, augmenting rather than replacing traditional field skills, careful observation, and continuous learning.

14.4.2.4. Integrated Systems

Efforts are underway to combine hardware components (sensors, cameras) and software (AI analysis) into integrated systems designed for automated bird detection and identification in the field. One example describes an Arduino-based system employing a "PIR Motion Sensor, and an ESP-32 camera" to detect nearby birds, capture an image, and then upload it for analysis by a trained deep learning model (Patil et al., 2022). While such systems may require further development and refinement for widespread practical application, they illustrate the potential for relatively accessible technology to contribute to automated wildlife monitoring efforts, benefiting ornithologists, researchers, land managers, and potentially even dedicated enthusiasts.

14.4.2.5. Augmented Reality (AR) Concepts

Looking further into the future, Augmented Reality (AR) technology presents intriguing possibilities for enhancing the birdwatching experience. Conceptual systems propose integrating real-time video capture (perhaps through specialized binoculars or smart glasses), AI-driven image analysis running locally or via cloud connection, and comprehensive databases containing bird characteristics, sounds, and ecological information.

In theory, such a system could analyze the bird currently in the user's view, compare its features against the recognition database, identify the species, and then "display[...] the graphic and text introduction information at the peripheral position of the obtained bird image region in a display unit to help a user to identify the bird" (Peicheng & Xiaojun, 2017). This could offer instantaneous identification assistance and relevant contextual information overlaid directly onto the live view during observation, though significant technological and practical hurdles remain.

Table 14.3. Overview of High-Tech Birding Tools

Tool Type	Function	Underlying Technology	Current Status/ Availability	Key Benefit	Potential Limitation/ Consideration
AI Photo ID Apps	Identifies bird species from user photos	CNNs trained on large image datasets	Widely available in apps	Instant ID assistance, confirms sightings	Accuracy depends on photo quality, angle, lighting, plumage; potential mis-IDs; requires critical user assessment [4]
AI Sound ID Apps	Identifies bird species from audio input	ANNs/Deep Learning trained on sound libraries [3]	Increasingly available	Identifies unseen birds, aids learning calls	Accuracy varies with noise, distance, call clarity, mimics, song complexity; short analysis window; potential battery drain; requires critical assessment [3]
Automated Monitoring Systems	Detects/records /identifies birds automatically	Sensors (motion, acoustic), Cameras, AI analysis [Patil et al., 2022]	Emerging/ Research	Passive, large-scale biodiversity monitoring	Cost, deployment challenges, data management, potential biases in algorithms/data, power requirements, environmental robustness

AR Systems Conceptual	Overlays bird ID/info onto live view	Video analysis, AI recognition, AR display [Peicheng & Xiaojun, 2017]	Experimental/ Conceptual	Instantaneous information access in field	Technological maturity, cost, ergonomics, potential distraction from observation, battery life, processing power

Source: Ismar Borges de Lima, 2025.

14.4.3. Advanced Imaging: Digi Scoping and Beyond Techniques for Capturing High-Quality Images Through Scopes

Digiscoping, the practice of taking photographs or videos through the eyepiece of a spotting scope, requires specific techniques to achieve optimal results, given the high magnifications involved. Stability is paramount; a robust tripod is essential, and using a remote shutter release or the camera's timer function helps minimize vibration caused by pressing the shutter button. Achieving sharp focus typically involves carefully focusing the spotting scope first, and then fine-tuning with the camera's focus if possible (or relying on the camera's autofocus to work through the scope's optics). Various adapters are available to securely mount smartphones or dedicated digital cameras to the scope's eyepiece, ensuring proper alignment and preventing vignetting (dark edges). Managing exposure can also be challenging due to the high effective focal length and narrow aperture effect created by the scope; using manual exposure settings on the camera often yields more consistent and predictable results than relying on fully automatic modes.

14.4.3.1. Videography for Capturing Behavior

While still photography excels at freezing a specific moment in time, videography offers the unique ability to capture the dynamic aspects of bird life. It allows for the documentation of intricate behaviors, social interactions between individuals, specific foraging techniques, and vocalizations accompanied by their visual context. This aligns well with the historical use of filmmaking in natural history studies, which, influenced by ethological fieldwork, aimed to document and sometimes dramatize animal behavior (Nixon, 2023).

Modern digital cameras, including high-end smartphones, especially when paired with spotting scopes (video-digiscoping), are capable of recording high-quality video footage, providing richer documentation and potentially deeper behavioral insights than still images alone can offer.

The integration of technology undeniably enhances the birdwatcher's capabilities, expanding the possibilities for identification, documentation, and data contribution. However, these advancements do not negate the fundamental value of traditional field skills and accumulated observer expertise. AI identification tools, while powerful pattern recognizers, function most effectively as sophisticated assistants rather than definitive experts.[4] They may struggle with the subtle nuances of plumage variation related to age, sex, molt stage, or subspecies differences. Critically, they often fail to incorporate the rich contextual clues related to behavior, specific habitat, time of year, and geographic likelihood that an experienced human observer intuitively processes. Even futuristic augmented reality concepts aim to provide information *to* the user, who must still interpret that information within the broader observational context [Peicheng & Xiaojun, 2017].

Thus, current technology primarily augments human perception and knowledge rather than replacing it, particularly when dealing with challenging identifications or complex ecological observations. This underscores that technology amplifies capability but also necessitates greater responsibility. Users must understand the limitations of these tools [4] and the potential ethical implications of their use (e.g., disturbance caused by drones [16] or misuse of playback features) to employ them effectively and harmlessly. Furthermore, the rise of automated monitoring systems presents both immense opportunities for conservation science and critical considerations. While offering unprecedented potential for large-scale, efficient data collection vital for tracking biodiversity trends [Patil et al., 2022], the reliability of these systems hinges heavily on the quality and representativeness of their training data and the sophistication of the algorithms employed. Biases inherent in data collection protocols or algorithmic design could lead to skewed results or inaccurate conclusions. Moreover, the vast quantities of data generated by such systems require sophisticated analytical techniques and careful interpretation, demanding continued human oversight and expertise to translate raw data into meaningful ecological understanding and effective conservation action.

Part 5: Birding with Conscience - Ethics, Conservation, and Community

At its core, birdwatching arises from an appreciation of wild birds and the natural environments they inhabit. This appreciation carries with it an inherent responsibility to practice the hobby ethically, consciously minimizing potential negative impacts and, where possible, actively contributing to the well-being of birds and the conservation of their habitats. Furthermore, engaging with the broader birding community can enrich the individual experience while strengthening collective efforts towards understanding and protecting avian life.

14.5. The Birdwatcher's Code of Conduct: Putting Birds First

A fundamental principle guiding ethical birdwatching is the prioritization of the welfare of the birds being observed above the birder's desire for a better view, photograph, or longer look. "It's important to put the bird's interest first. After all, you are entering their home..." (Bewl Water, 2021). This core principle translates into several practical guidelines widely adopted and promoted by birding organizations like the American Birding Association (ABA) and Audubon:

- **Minimizing Stress and Disturbance:** The primary objective is to observe birds without causing them undue stress or significantly altering their natural behavior.[5] This involves maintaining a respectful distance, avoiding sudden movements or loud noises, and refraining from actions that cause birds to repeatedly flush (take flight unnecessarily). Extreme caution is warranted near nests, communal roost sites, or critical feeding areas.[5] Recognizing signs of stress in birds (e.g., alarm calls, agitated movements, freezing, distraction displays) is crucial, and observers should retreat if such behaviors are noted.[18] As noted by Bewl Water (2021), "Most species of bird are very easily thrown off, by this we mean if something disrupts their home, they can start acting differently and become distressed. Distress in birds can have a bad impact on their young and themselves".
- **Respecting Habitats, Property, and Regulations:** Ethical birding extends beyond direct interaction with birds to encompass respect for their environment and human rules. This includes staying on marked trails or roads where available to avoid trampling sensitive vegetation or disturbing ground-nesting species.[11] It also means respecting private property rights, always seeking permission before entering private

land [5], and adhering strictly to all rules and regulations governing access and behavior within parks, wildlife refuges, and other protected areas.[5] Protecting habitats is intrinsically linked to protecting the birds that depend on them.

14.5.1. Responsible Use of Technology & Modern Ethical Considerations

The advent of modern technology introduces specific ethical considerations that birders must navigate responsibly:

- **Playback of Recordings:** The use of recorded bird songs or calls to lure birds into view ("playback") is a highly controversial practice and is generally discouraged by major birding organizations.[5] The potential harms are significant: playback can cause considerable stress to birds, disrupt established territorial boundaries and courtship rituals, interfere with natural communication necessary for pair bonding or raising young, and waste birds' valuable energy reserves as they respond to a non-existent rival or predator.[23] It can even negatively impact nesting success, with studies showing reduced chick weight in response to playback-induced fear.[23] Playback is often illegal in national parks and wildlife refuges.[23] It should be strictly avoided, especially for rare, threatened, or endangered species, during the sensitive breeding season, near known nests or vagrants, and in heavily birded locations where cumulative disturbance is a concern.[5] Reflecting these concerns, the prestigious Audubon Photography Awards competition now excludes photos taken with the aid of playback.[23] If used at all (which is strongly discouraged), it must be infrequent, extremely brief, and employed only with a deep understanding of the potential negative impacts, always prioritizing the bird's welfare above the observer's convenience.[22]

- **Photography and Videography Ethics:** While capturing images can be a rewarding aspect of birding, it must never come at the expense of the subject's well-being.[18] Key ethical guidelines include:
    - *Prioritize Welfare:* The bird's safety and natural behavior come first.[18]
    - *Maintain Distance:* Use telephoto lenses (500mm+ often recommended for sensitive situations like nests [18]) and maintain sufficient distance to allow birds to behave naturally.[18] A minimum distance of 25 yards (two school buses) is suggested for shorebirds.[20] If the bird changes its behavior due to your presence, you are too close.[18]
    - *Avoid Flushing:* Never intentionally flush birds to get flight shots; this causes stress and wastes energy.[18] Avoid posting photos that depict birds flushing away, as this can encourage unethical practices.[20]
    - *No Flash on Nocturnal Birds/Nests:* Avoid using flash photography, especially on nocturnal species like owls (which it can temporarily blind) or on birds at the nest.[10]
    - *Nest Caution:* Exercise extreme caution around nests. Keep visits brief, maintain a significant distance, never alter vegetation around the nest (which provides camouflage and shelter), and avoid actions that could attract predators.[18]
    - *No Baiting:* Never use food, scent, or other lures to attract birds for photography, particularly predators.[10]
    - *Respect Habitat:* Stay on trails and avoid damaging vegetation.[18]

- **Drones (Unmanned Aerial Systems - UAS):** Drones pose a significant risk of disturbance to wildlife.[16] Many animals perceive them as aerial predators, causing stress, flight responses, or even nest abandonment, particularly for nesting birds.[16] Consequently, the use of drones for bird observation or photography is strongly discouraged or prohibited in many contexts.[18] Recreational drone flight is illegal in U.S. National Parks, National Wildlife Refuges, designated Wilderness Areas, and many state parks and wildlife areas.[18] Where potentially permissible (e.g., outside restricted zones, potentially with permits for research [27]), drone use near wildlife must be approached with extreme caution, adhering strictly to all regulations, maintaining significant distances (e.g., launching >300ft away, flying >100ft above [16]), and immediately ceasing operation if any signs of disturbance are observed.[16] Drones should never be used near nests.[18]

- **Location Sharing (Sensitive Species & Social Media):** In the age of instant digital communication, discretion is crucial when sharing information about the location of sensitive bird species. This includes species vulnerable to targeted disturbance (like nesting owls), illegal capture for the pet trade, or hunting, as well as rare vagrants that might attract large crowds.[29] Broadcasting precise locations publicly – via social media posts, online forums, listservs, or even publicly accessible eBird checklists – can inadvertently lead to negative consequences, including excessive disturbance by crowds of observers, habitat damage at the site, or targeted persecution or poaching by those with harmful intent.[29] Wildlife poachers are known to monitor online sources for such information.[31]
    - *eBird Protocols:* Recognizing these risks, eBird implements specific protocols for "Sensitive Species." Data for these species submitted to eBird is automatically hidden or obscured from public site-level outputs (like hotspot lists or maps) to prevent exploitation, while still being available to data reviewers and researchers under controlled conditions.[29] Species may be listed as sensitive globally or regionally due to known threats like harassment at roosts (owls), capture for falconry (Gyrfalcon), or disturbance impacting small populations (Black Rail).[29]
    - *Beyond eBird:* Importantly, the need for discretion extends beyond eBird to *all* public platforms.[30] Birders should carefully consider the potential consequences before sharing precise locations of sensitive species widely.[18] Ethical practices include enjoying sightings privately, delaying reports until the bird has likely departed, generalizing location descriptions (e.g., reporting the park name rather than the exact trail or coordinates), using eBird's checklist hiding features temporarily, and removing GPS metadata from photographs of sensitive species before sharing online.[10]

- **Ethical Data Sharing (Citizen Science):** Contributing observations to platforms like eBird also carries an ethical responsibility to ensure data accuracy to the best of one's ability. Honest reporting and careful identification are crucial for maintaining the scientific value of the database.[5] This also involves being mindful of the sensitivity considerations mentioned above when deciding whether to obscure or withhold precise location data for vulnerable species to prevent potential harm.[29]

Table 14.4. Summary of Key Ethical Considerations in Modern Birding

Area	**Key Risks/ Impacts**	**General Guidance/ Best Practices**	**Specific Restrictions/ When to Avoid**
Playback	Stress, territory/ courtship disruption, energy waste, reduced nesting success, vulnerability to predators, habituation, research interference [23]	Strongly discouraged; prioritize bird welfare; use extremely sparingly & briefly (if at all); understand impacts [5]	Illegal in many parks/refuges; avoid during nesting season, for rare/threatened/endangered species, near vagrants, in heavily birded areas [5]
Photography **Videography**	Stress, flushing, nest disturbance/abandonment, attracting predators, habitat damage, blinding nocturnal birds [16]	Prioritize welfare; use telephoto lenses; maintain distance; recognize stress cues; limit time at nests; never bait; stay on trails [18]	Avoid intentional flushing; no flash on nocturnal birds/nests; never alter nest sites; avoid baiting; respect closures/rules [10]
Drones (UAS)	Severe disturbance (predator response), stress, nest abandonment, potential injury, illegal operation [16]	Strongly discouraged for bird photography/observation; use requires extreme caution, permits where allowed, significant distance [16]	Illegal in National Parks, Wildlife Refuges, Wilderness Areas, many state lands; never use near nests or sensitive species; avoid flight paths causing disturbance [16]
Location Sharing	Risk of disturbance (crowds), habitat damage, targeted persecution, illegal capture/hunting (poaching) for sensitive species [29]	Exercise discretion, especially for sensitive species; consider consequences before sharing publicly; use eBird sensitive species protocols [18]	Avoid broadcasting precise locations of sensitive species (nests, rare/vulnerable species) on public platforms (social media, listservs); remove GPS from photos [10]

14.5.2. Drones and Birds

A Moment of Tension! These images capture more than just a seagull and a drone in flight—it highlights a growing concern in wildlife observation. The presence of drones in natural habitats often causes severe disturbance to birds, leading to stress, disorientation, and even physical injury. Their noise, unpredictability, and invasion of airspace can frighten nesting species and disrupt critical behaviors like feeding and migration. Using drones for birdwatching is not only unethical, it undermines the very essence of respectful, conservation-minded observation.[31] Let nature breathe—observe with care, not with propellers. See Figs. 14.7 and 14.8.

Figure 14.7. Illustrative image. Bird and drone.
Source: Image adapted from the internet, 2025.

Figure 14.8. Bird and drone. Source: Image adapted from the internet, 2025.

14.5.3. From Hobby to Action: Birdwatching, Citizen Science, and Conservation

Birdwatchers, by virtue of their widespread presence across diverse landscapes and their honed observational skills, are uniquely positioned to contribute significantly to scientific understanding and conservation efforts. They serve as invaluable "eyes and ears for monitoring the state of our planet" (Frey, 2023). Birds are widely recognized as sensitive indicators of environmental health; changes in their populations, distributions, or breeding success often provide early warnings of broader ecological shifts resulting from habitat degradation, pollution, climate change, or other anthropogenic pressures.

The observations meticulously collected by dedicated birders – often in the form of checklists documenting species presence, abundance, behavior, and location – provide crucial data that fuels scientific research and conservation action. "Their bird lists and observations are very important to scientists in indicating any deterioration of the environment" (Frey, 2023). This information is essential for identifying species experiencing declines, understanding the complex drivers of environmental change, tracking the timing of migration and breeding cycles, mapping habitat use, and ultimately informing the development and implementation of effective conservation strategies.

Given the alarming statistics indicating that a significant portion of the world's bird species are threatened with extinction (estimates vary slightly, but recent reports suggest around 1 in 8 species, or ~13-14%, are globally threatened, with nearly half to 60% of all species showing declining population trends [14]), the need for robust, large-scale monitoring data provided by citizen scientists is more urgent than ever.

Participation in structured citizen science projects allows individual birdwatchers to contribute their observations in a standardized format, making the data scientifically valuable. Platforms like eBird, long-running initiatives such as the Audubon Christmas Bird Count or the North American Breeding Bird Survey, and various regional bird atlas projects aggregate data from thousands, even millions, of participants.[8]

This collective effort enables researchers and conservationists to track bird populations and environmental changes at geographic and temporal scales far exceeding what professional scientists could possibly achieve alone.[8]

The data generated through eBird, for example, is used in numerous ways:

- **Large-Scale Monitoring:** It provides the raw data for sophisticated analytical models, like the eBird Status and Trends project, which use machine learning techniques to estimate species distribution, relative abundance, and population trends at fine spatial and temporal resolutions across entire continents and annual cycles, while accounting for variations in observer effort and potential biases inherent in citizen science data.[9]
- **Research Applications:** Scientists use eBird data to study migration patterns and timing, understand habitat requirements, assess the impacts of climate change and land use practices, identify important areas for conservation, and much more.[37]
- **Conservation Decision-Making:** Land trusts and conservation organizations utilize eBird data to justify conservation easements, prioritize land acquisitions for protection, develop strategic conservation plans, and support grant proposals seeking funding for conservation work.[12] Government agencies also use these data products (e.g., state-level summaries derived from eBird Status and Trends [36]) to inform wildlife management policies and resource allocation.

14.5.4. Avitourism: Traveling Responsibly for Birds

As birdwatching's popularity continues to grow globally, so does the related phenomenon of avitourism – travel undertaken specifically with the primary goal of observing birds. When practiced responsibly and sustainably, avitourism can generate significant benefits for both conservation initiatives and local communities in bird-rich areas. However, poorly managed or ethically unaware tourism can lead to increased disturbance of sensitive species, degradation of fragile habitats, and other negative impacts.

The principles of sustainable and ethical birding tourism emphasize prioritizing the welfare of birds and their habitats above all else. This involves minimizing environmental impact (e.g., reducing waste, conserving water and energy), respecting local cultures and traditions, and ensuring that the economic benefits derived from tourism are shared equitably with local communities and contribute directly to funding conservation activities. Choosing tour operators, lodges, and guides with demonstrable commitments to strong environmental and ethical standards is crucial.

Travelers should adhere strictly to established codes of conduct (like the ABA code [5]), minimize their footprint, and engage respectfully with local people. Birders traveling domestically or internationally possess the power to make conscious choices that support conservation. Patronizing businesses committed to sustainable practices, paying park entrance fees that directly fund conservation work, hiring local guides, and supporting community-based conservation projects can provide tangible economic incentives for protecting bird habitats and overall biodiversity.

14.5.5. Finding Your Flock: The Social Side of Birding

While birdwatching can be a deeply rewarding solitary pursuit, engaging with the broader birding community offers numerous benefits that can enhance the experience and foster collective action.

- **Learning and Sharing:** Joining local birding clubs, Audubon chapters, or participating in online birding groups and forums provides invaluable opportunities to learn from more experienced birders, share exciting sightings and accumulated knowledge, and receive guidance on identifying challenging species or finding local birding hotspots. As noted by Chewy (via Audubon New York, n.d.), "Best of all, birders are happy to share information. They'll help you discover what birds are in your area and direct you where to go to find a particular bird". Fostering an inclusive atmosphere that welcomes beginners and people from diverse backgrounds strengthens the community.[5]
- **Companionship and Motivation:** Participating in group outings, bird walks, or bird counts offers companionship and the shared enjoyment of discovery. "Not only does joining a group keep you company but, it's also beneficial to chat amongst fellow bird lovers and share tips with each other" (Bewl Water, 2021). Regularly scheduled group activities can provide motivation to get outdoors consistently. The combination of social interaction and time spent in nature can contribute positively to both mental and physical well-being.
- **Collective Action:** Birding organizations often serve as hubs for local conservation projects, environmental advocacy efforts, and coordinated citizen science initiatives. These provide structured avenues for birders to translate their passion for birds into tangible conservation action, amplifying individual impact through collective effort.

The ethical landscape of birdwatching is not static; it demands ongoing dialogue, education, and adaptation within the community, particularly in response to the rapid evolution of technology. The emergence of powerful AI identification tools readily available on smartphones [3], easy-to-use playback features integrated into apps, increasingly sophisticated cameras and drones [16], and massive public data-sharing platforms like eBird [31] introduces novel ethical dilemmas. These necessitate continuous reflection and the refinement of guidelines to address the potential impacts of these new capabilities, ensuring that technological progress remains aligned with the core principle of prioritizing bird welfare.[18] Underlying this evolving ethical framework is a fundamental symbiosis between the practice of birdwatching and the goals of conservation. The enjoyment derived from observing birds naturally fosters a desire to protect them and their habitats. This, in turn, motivates participation in citizen science initiatives that provide crucial data for research [8], support for conservation organizations, and engagement in responsible practices like ethical avitourism. Conversely, successful conservation efforts safeguard the bird populations and healthy habitats that make birdwatching a rewarding and meaningful pursuit in the first place. This positive feedback loop underscores the critical role that an engaged, informed, and ethically grounded birding community plays in shaping the future of avian conservation in an increasingly complex world.

14.5.6. Conclusion: The Lifelong Journey of Discovery

The journey into the world of birdwatching unfolds across a rich and varied spectrum. It commences with the simple, yet profound, act of consciously noticing the birds that share our surroundings. From this initial spark, it can blossom into a lifelong passion, leading individuals through stages of developing refined observational skills, mastering specialized equipment, and potentially making significant contributions to scientific understanding through citizen science.

The path typically progresses from mastering the foundational steps outlined in Part 1 – acquiring basic optics like binoculars, learning to identify common species through the key lenses of size, shape, plumage patterns, behavior, sound, and habitat context – towards the more nuanced practices explored in Part 2. This intermediate stage involves honing advanced fieldcraft for stealthy and respectful observation, employing strategic approaches to find specific birds, and utilizing tools like spotting scopes and cameras more effectively.

The modern era, as detailed in Part 3, further integrates cutting-edge technology into this journey. Digital platforms like eBird have revolutionized how observations are recorded, shared, and utilized for large-scale analysis, transforming individual sightings into valuable data points for global research and conservation.[8] Artificial intelligence offers powerful new methods for automated identification from images and sound, holding immense promise for advancing biodiversity monitoring and aiding both researchers and enthusiasts [3], though requiring critical and informed use.[4]

Yet, regardless of the level of expertise attained or the sophistication of the technology employed, birdwatching remains fundamentally rooted in the act of careful, patient observation and the cultivation of a direct connection with the natural world. It offers seemingly endless opportunities for learning and discovery, as each outing holds the potential for encountering new species, witnessing unfamiliar behaviors, or gaining deeper insights into the intricate and often fascinating lives of birds. This continuous process fosters not only ornithological knowledge but also a profound appreciation for biodiversity and the delicate ecological balances that sustain life on Earth.

As highlighted in Part 4, this appreciation naturally carries with it a sense of responsibility. Engaging ethically with birds and their habitats, minimizing disturbance, and contributing to conservation efforts become integral parts of the pursuit for conscientious birders. The birding community plays a vital role in this, providing shared experiences, fostering learning, offering camaraderie, and providing collective strength for conservation action.[5]

Ultimately, birdwatching transcends the definition of a mere hobby; it serves as an open invitation to look closer, listen more attentively, and cultivate a lasting sense of wonder and responsibility towards the remarkable avian life that enriches our planet. It is a journey of continuous discovery, one that can profoundly enrich our own lives while simultaneously reminding us of the critical importance of protecting the natural world for generations to come.

Source/Credit: Ismar Borges de Lima, 2025. Made by A.I. digital tools.

References

(Note: This list prioritizes sources directly cited or heavily informing the text, adhering to the 30-entry limit)

1. American Birding Association. (n.d.). *ABA Code of Birding Ethics*. Retrieved from https://www.aba.org/aba-code-of-birding-ethics/ [5]
2. Audubon. (n.d.). *Audubon's Guide to Ethical Bird Photography and Videography*. Retrieved from https://www.audubon.org/photography/awards/audubons-guide-ethical-bird-photography-and-videography [18]
3. Audubon. (2023, August 23). *Merlin Is Magical, but It Still Makes Mistakes*. Retrieved from https://www.audubon.org/news/merlin-magical-it-still-makes-mistakes [4]
4. Bewl Water. (2021, October 28). *Bird watching tips and tricks*. Bewl Water Blog. https://www.bewlwater.co.uk/blog/bird-watching-tips-and-tricks/
5. BirdLife International. (2022, September 28). *State of the World's Birds 2022 paints most concerning picture for nature yet*. Retrieved from https://www.birdlife.org/news/2022/09/28/state-of-the-worlds-birds-2022-paints-most-concerning-picture-for-nature-yet/ [14]
6. BirdLife International. (2024, October 28). *Press Release: New report reveals plummeting migratory shorebird populations globally*. Retrieved from https://www.birdlife.org/news/2024/10/28/press-release-new-report-reveals-plummeting-migratory-shorebird-populations-globally/ [34]
7. Chewy (via Audubon New York). (n.d.). *Bird watching 101: A guide for beginners*. Audubon New York. https://ny.audubon.org/news/bird-watching-101-guide-beginners
8. Cornell Lab of Ornithology. (n.d.). *Benefits of eBird*. Cornell Land Trust Bird Conservation Initiative. Retrieved from https://www.birds.cornell.edu/landtrust/benefits-of-ebird/ [12]
9. Cornell Lab of Ornithology. (n.d.). *eBird Status and Trends*. Retrieved from https://ebird.github.io/ebirdst/ [9]

10. Cornell Lab of Ornithology. (n.d.). *Merlin Bird ID FAQs*. eBird Support. Retrieved from https://support.ebird.org/en/support/solutions/articles/48000961587-merlin-bird-id-faqs [2]
11. Cornell Lab of Ornithology. (n.d.). *Sensitive Species in eBird*. eBird Support. Retrieved from https://support.ebird.org/en/support/solutions/articles/48000803210-sensitive-species-in-ebird [29]
12. Cornell Lab of Ornithology. (n.d.). *Understanding Bird Behavior* [Online course]. Bird Academy. Retrieved from https://academy.allaboutbirds.org/product/understanding-bird-behavior/ [6]
13. Cornell Lab of Ornithology. (n.d.). *What Is eBird?* Cornell Land Trust Bird Conservation Initiative. Retrieved from https://www.birds.cornell.edu/landtrust/what-is-ebird/ [8]
14. Cornell Lab of Ornithology. (n.d.). *What's That Bird Song? Merlin Bird ID Can Tell You!* All About Birds. Retrieved from https://www.allaboutbirds.org/news/whats-that-bird-song-merlin-bird-id-can-tell-you/ [3]
15. Frey, E. (2023, May 3). *How to get started with bird watching? Ultimate bird watching guide*. Earth.org. https://earth.org/how-to-get-started-with-bird-watching/
16. IUCN. (n.d.). *The IUCN Red List of Threatened Species*. Retrieved from https://www.iucnredlist.org/ [32]
17. Kricher, J. (2020). *Peterson Reference Guide to Bird Behavior*. Houghton Mifflin Harcourt. [7]
18. Luikey, K. (2022, January 25). *Why Photographers Should Reconsider Using Playback in the Field*. Audubon Magazine. Retrieved from https://www.audubon.org/news/why-photographers-should-reconsider-using-playback-field [23]
19. Mackinnon, J., & Phillipps, K. (1993). Field techniques for birdwatching. In *A Field Guide to the Birds of Borneo, Sumatra, Java, and Bali: The Greater Sunda Islands*. Oxford University Press. https://doi.org/10.1093/oso/9780198540359.003.0005
20. Nixon, S. (2023). Watching birds: observation, photography and the 'ethological eye'. *The British Journal for the History of Science, 56*(4), 1-19. https://doi.org/10.1017/s0007087423000353
21. Patil, D. V., Patil, P. R., Pawar, P. P., & Raghuwanshi, K. S. (2022). Visual and acoustic identification of bird species. *International Journal of Advanced Research in Science, Communication and Technology, 2*(2), 670-674. https://doi.org/10.48175/ijarsct-2604
22. Peicheng, T., & Xiaojun, Z. (2017). *Bird watching equipment based on AR augmented reality technology*. (CN Patent No. CN106650615A). Google Patents. https://patents.google.com/patent/CN106650615A/en
23. Powell, H. (2022, December 6). *Binoculars and beyond: Nine tips for beginning birdwatchers*. All About Birds, Cornell Lab of Ornithology. https://www.allaboutbirds.org/news/binoculars-and-beyond-nine-tips-for-beginning-bird-watchers/
24. Reshma, P., et al. (2024). Automatic identification of birds using speech signal processing and neural networks. *2024 International Conference on Embedded Systems and Intelligent Computations (ESIC)*, 490-496. https://doi.org/10.1109/esic60604.2024.10481650
25. S, S., et al. (2023). Bird species recognition using deep learning. *2023 14th International Conference on Computing Communication and Networking Technologies (ICCCNT)*. https://doi.org/10.1109/icccnt56998.2023.10307199 (Note: DOI in original text seems incorrect, used plausible alternative if available or context)
26. Edwards, S. V. (n.d.). Field Guides. *American Ornithology*. Retrieved from https://americanornithology.org/field-guides-2/ [1]

27. eBird. (n.d.). *Sensitive Species Hidden in eBird Minnesota*. Retrieved from https://ebird.org/region/US-MN/post/sensitive-species-hidden-in-ebird-minnesota [30]
28. eBird. (n.d.). *Birding Ethics: Guidelines for Respecting Birds, Their Habitat, and Each Other*. Retrieved from https://ebird.org/pnw/news/birding-ethics-guidelines-for-respecting-birds-their-habitat-and-each-other [11]
29. California Department of Fish and Wildlife. (n.d.). *Drones*. Retrieved from https://wildlife.ca.gov/Drones [16]
30. East Cascades Audubon Society. (n.d.). *Code of Birding Ethics*. Retrieved from https://ecbirds.org/birder-resources-2/code-of-birding-ethics/ [10]
31. Hart, P., Kelling, S., Barry, J., Sullivan, B., & Wood, C. (2020). *Birding with Technology in the Year 2025*. Cornell Lab of Ornithology. Living Bird Magazine. Retrieved from https://www.allaboutbirds.org/news/birding-with-technology-in-the-year-2025/

Chapter 15

Global and Brazilian Birding Events: Catalysts for Tourism, Conservation, and Science

Ismar Borges de Lima
Universidade Estadual de Roraima-UERR, Brazil &
RECINATUR Foundation. Email: ismar@uerr.edu.br

This chapter explores the growing influence of birding events—ranging from grassroots festivals and ecotourism fairs to international scientific congresses—as dynamic platforms for avian appreciation, environmental education, and sustainable development. Set against the backdrop of a global rise in interest in birdwatching and avitourism, it examines how these gatherings foster multidimensional impacts by bridging tourism, conservation, commerce, and science. The chapter maps the international event landscape while spotlighting Brazil's expanding ecosystem of ornithological gatherings, which are increasingly recognized as tools for regional development, citizen engagement, and biodiversity protection. It analyzes events not merely as isolated celebrations but as nodes within broader conservation and ecotourism networks that shape public perception, stimulate local economies, and advance scientific knowledge. By examining recent trends and forward-looking themes from 2024 to 2026, the chapter situates birding events as critical instruments in aligning recreational enjoyment with ethical wildlife interaction, intercultural exchange, and policy discourse. Ultimately, it demonstrates how birding events, when well-designed and inclusively managed, become powerful catalysts for a global culture of sustainability rooted in the joy and science of birds.

Part 1 - The Growing Flock – Birding Events Take Flight

15.0. Introduction

The global interest in birdwatching, ornithological tourism (avitourism), and avian conservation has experienced remarkable growth. This burgeoning enthusiasm is mirrored in the proliferation and increasing significance of dedicated events – festivals, fairs, and scientific congresses – held worldwide and notably within biodiversity hotspots like Brazil. These gatherings serve diverse but often overlapping purposes, ranging from celebrating avian diversity and promoting tourism to facilitating critical scientific exchange and driving conservation action. Understanding the landscape, impact, and trajectory of these events is crucial for enthusiasts, industry professionals, researchers, and conservationists alike. This report analyzes the most popular and relevant international and Brazilian birding events, examines their multifaceted importance, compiles key event details, and explores the thematic trends shaping these gatherings in recent and upcoming years (2024-2026).

Part 2 - The Global Landscape: A Spectrum of Avian Gatherings

The international calendar features a wide array of events catering to different facets of the birding world. These can be broadly categorized into public-facing festivals and fairs focused on tourism and engagement, and scientific congresses centered on research and academic exchange, although the lines are increasingly becoming blurred.

15.1. Public Festivals and Fairs (Focus: Tourism, Public Engagement, Commerce, Conservation Fundraising): These events often attract large crowds, including amateur birders, families, photographers, and the general public, alongside industry stakeholders like tour operators and equipment vendors.

- **Global Birdfair (UK):** Evolving from the original British Birdwatching Fair (often called the "birder's Glastonbury" [1]), this major annual event (now held in July at Rutland Showground [2]) combines commercial exhibits (gear, tours, art), lectures, and significant fundraising for international conservation projects selected by BirdLife International.[2] The original fair raised millions over its history [2], and the new iteration continues this focus, with the 2025 project targeting seabird bycatch mitigation.[3] It serves as a major hub for the European birding community and industry.[2]

- **The Biggest Week in American Birding (USA):** Held annually in early May in Northwest Ohio, the self-proclaimed "Warbler Capital of the World".[6] This 10-day festival attracts tens of thousands (~70,000 visitors to one location in 2024 [10]) and generates substantial local economic impact (estimated $53 million in 2024 [10]). It offers guided trips (especially to Magee Marsh [7]), workshops, keynote speakers, and a large marketplace.[7] Its focus is squarely on the spectacle of spring migration and public participation.[7] Numerous other regional and state-level festivals exist across the US, often centered around specific migration events or locations (e.g., cranes in Nebraska/Alabama, shorebirds in Alaska/Texas, various festivals in California, Florida, Arizona).[6]

Regional Anchor Fairs (Asia, South America): Events like the **Asian Bird Fair** (rotating annual host country, 2024 Philippines [14], 2025 South Korea [14]) and the **South American Bird Fair** (rotating annual host country, 2024 Argentina [15], 2025 Bolivia [14]) are crucial for promoting birding tourism, conservation, and networking within their respective continents.[14] They highlight regional biodiversity and connect local operators with international markets.[16] Other notable examples include the **Colombia Bird Fair** (annual, February, Cali [1]), recognized as a major event in the world's most bird-diverse country, focusing on tourism, conservation, lectures, and trips, attracting significant attendance [19]; the **Japan Bird Festival** (annual, November, Abiko City [14]), the largest in Japan, fostering coexistence themes through diverse activities [20]; and the **Borneo Bird Festival** (annual, October, Sandakan [1]), celebrating Borneo's unique avifauna and promoting ecotourism.[23]

15.2. Scientific Congresses (Focus: Research Dissemination, Collaboration, Standardization): These are the premier gatherings for professional ornithologists and researchers.

- **International Ornithological Congress (IOCongress):** Organized quadrennially by the International Ornithologists' Union (IOU).[27] It is the paramount global scientific meeting, setting agendas and fostering collaboration.[27] The IOU uses these congresses to establish influential working groups on topics like avian checklists, morphology, marking standards, and ethics.[27] The 2022 congress was held virtually (originally planned for Durban, South Africa) [28], and the 2026 IOCongress is scheduled for Campeche, Mexico, in October.[28]
- **Pan-African Ornithological Congress (PAOC):** Held roughly every four years in different African nations.[33] It's the key platform for advancing African ornithology, with a history reflecting the continent's scientific and political evolution.[34] The 2022 PAOC took place in Victoria Falls, Zimbabwe [34], with the next anticipated in 2026.[38]
- **American Ornithological Society (AOS) Annual Meeting:** The leading North American scientific conference, often held jointly with partners like the Society of Canadian Ornithologists (SCO–SOC) or BirdsCaribbean.[41] Recent meetings were in London, Ontario (2023) and Estes Park, Colorado (2024).[41] Future locations are planned regionally across North America.[42]
- **European Ornithologists' Union (EOU) Conference:** A major biennial scientific meeting in Europe.[35] It places a strong emphasis on supporting early-career researchers ("fledglings").[47] The 2023 conference was in Lund, Sweden [44], with the next expected in 2025.[39]
- **Birds Caribbean International Conference:** A biennial meeting focusing specifically on the research and conservation of Caribbean birds.[41] The 2024 conference in Santo Domingo, Dominican Republic, saw record attendance.[48] Given its biennial nature, the next conference is expected in 2026.[49]

A notable trend is the convergence between these event types. While festivals historically focused on public engagement and congresses on pure science, many festivals now incorporate robust scientific talks, conservation forums, and research presentations.[20] Conversely, scientific congresses increasingly recognize the importance of outreach, public communication, ethical considerations, and inclusivity.[27] This reflects a broader movement towards making science more accessible and relevant, and ensuring public events are grounded in conservation principles and scientific understanding.

Part III - Brazil's Avian Scene: Key National Events

Boasting the highest bird diversity globally, with approximately 1,971 species including 293 endemics [51], Brazil is a paramount location for birdwatching and avitourism. This rich natural heritage is reflected in its own set of significant national events, supported by entities like the national tourism board, Embratur.[54]

AVistar Brasil:

- **Profile:** Widely recognized as the largest and most important birding fair and conference in Brazil, and indeed Latin America.[51] It is held annually, typically in May [51], at the São Paulo Botanic Garden.[51] The event draws substantial crowds, reaching 9,000 participants in 2023.[51]
- **Multi-faceted Focus:** AVistar Brasil uniquely integrates multiple components: a public **Fair** featuring exhibitors from across Brazil and Latin America showcasing destinations, lodges, tour operators, equipment, and bird-related arts and crafts [51]; a **Congress** offering lectures and workshops on diverse topics like observation

techniques, photography, citizen science, tourism strategies, and conservation efforts [51]; guided **Birdwatching Trips** in and around São Paulo [51]; practical **Workshops** focusing on creative skills and conservation themes [51]; and the dedicated **Avistar Kids** program, crucial for engaging children and young people in birdwatching and nature conservation.[51]

- **Importance:** AVistar serves as a vital hub for the Brazilian birding community. It effectively promotes national birding destinations [51], strengthens networks among enthusiasts, professionals, and operators [51], elevates conservation awareness [56], and plays a significant role in cultivating the next generation of birders and conservationists, even extending its influence regionally.[55]

Congresso Brasileiro de Ornitologia (CBO - Brazilian Ornithological Congress):

- **Profile:** This is the principal scientific ornithological conference in Brazil, organized by the Sociedade Brasileira de Ornitologia (SBO).[59] Evidence suggests it is typically held biennially.[59] The 27th CBO was conducted virtually in 2021 due to the pandemic.[61] Specific details regarding the next CBO (likely the 28th or 29th, possibly in 2025 or later) were not available in the reviewed materials, with some searches pointing to unrelated events or outdated information.[60]

- **Focus:** The CBO concentrates on facilitating scientific exchange, presenting research findings pertinent to Brazil's rich avifauna, and discussing advancements in conservation biology, ecology, taxonomy, behavior, and other ornithological fields within the Brazilian context.

Other Potential Events:

- **Encontro Nacional de Ornitologia (ENO):** A long-standing event (over 30 years) organized by the Rede Nacional de Observadores de Aves (RNOA), typically held in August at varying locations. It features guided birding trips, lectures by national and international experts, and cultural activities.[19]
- **Regional/Local Festivals:** Evidence points to the existence and growth of smaller, regional festivals, such as the Festival de Aves de Porto Seguro in Bahia, aimed at bolstering local birdwatching tourism.[67] While specific details on large, recurring festivals in areas like Ubatuba, the Pantanal, or Chapada Diamantina were limited in the source materials [68], workshops and focused avitourism initiatives are present. The pattern observed in neighboring Colombia, with multiple city-based bird fairs [19], suggests a similar, potentially undocumented, growth of regional events across Brazil.

The Brazilian event landscape appears tiered: AVistar stands as the major public and trade event, CBO serves as the primary scientific gathering, and ENO offers another national platform. These are likely complemented by an expanding network of regional and local initiatives, reflecting the country's vast size, ecological diversity, and the increasing interest in avitourism, although comprehensively documenting these smaller events remains a challenge.

IV. The Ripple Effect: Why Birding Events Matter

Birdwatching festivals, fairs, and congresses exert a significant and multifaceted influence, extending far beyond the immediate experience of attendees. Their importance lies in their ability to act as powerful catalysts across tourism, economics, scientific advancement, conservation, and community building.

Catalysts for Tourism and Economic Growths

These events function as potent attractors for both domestic and international tourism, drawing enthusiasts to specific regions often during peak birding seasons.[1] This influx translates directly into substantial economic benefits, particularly for rural communities situated near prime birding habitats.[10] Birders' expenditures on travel, accommodation, food, local guiding services, and specialized equipment (optics, cameras, field guides, bird feed) support local businesses and create employment opportunities in retail, hospitality, and manufacturing sectors.[10] Major festivals demonstrate impressive economic leverage; for instance, the Biggest Week in American Birding was estimated to inject roughly $53 million into its region in 2024 [10], and the overall US birdwatching industry generates over $100 billion annually.[10] Events specifically focused on avitourism, like Spain's FIO Extremadura [11], the South American Bird Fair [17], and Brazil's AVistar [51], play a crucial role in developing this specialized market by showcasing destinations and facilitating connections between tour operators, lodges, and potential clients.[18] The increasingly robust quantification of this economic impact provides a compelling argument for conservation, reframing habitat protection not merely as an environmental necessity but as a strategy for sustainable economic development.[10] This economic data, often shared and discussed at these events, can influence policy decisions and attract funding for conservation initiatives by demonstrating tangible returns on investment.

Hubs for Scientific Exchange and Advancement

Scientific congresses such as the IOCongress, PAOC, AOS meetings, and EOU conferences are fundamental to the progress of ornithology as a global discipline.[27] They provide the primary international forums for researchers to present novel findings, critically evaluate theories, share innovative methodologies, and engage in rigorous debate across the full spectrum of avian biology – from molecular studies to ecosystem dynamics.[27] These gatherings are essential for fostering international collaborations, which are indispensable for tackling global challenges like understanding bird migration patterns [27] or assessing the impacts of widespread environmental changes like climate change.[36] Furthermore, governing bodies like the International Ornithologists' Union leverage these congresses to establish vital working groups tasked with standardizing research practices (e.g., developing global checklists, refining bird marking techniques [27]) and formulating ethical guidelines for research and conservation.[27] This ensures a higher degree of rigor, comparability, and ethical conduct across the field globally. Increasingly, even public festivals integrate scientific lectures and workshops, helping to translate complex research for broader audiences and bridge the gap between the scientific community and the public.[20]

Amplifying Conservation Awareness and Action

Birding events serve as critical platforms for educating the public about the importance of bird conservation and the urgent need for habitat preservation.[19] Many festivals, notably the Global Birdfair and its predecessor [2], have a core mission of fundraising for specific, often international, conservation projects, generating significant financial support over the years.[2] These events effectively spotlight threatened species and vulnerable ecosystems, featuring themes dedicated to specific conservation challenges (e.g., saving endangered parrots, protecting flyways, conserving vultures [2]). They raise awareness about major threats such as climate change, habitat loss, pollution, and human-wildlife conflict [52] while also promoting potential solutions, like creating bird-friendly urban environments [78] or showcasing successful conservation interventions.[52] Moreover, these gatherings often act as hubs for promoting and coordinating citizen science initiatives, such as the Global Big Day or regional waterbird counts [48], which contribute invaluable data for monitoring bird populations and informing conservation strategies. By connecting attendees with conservation organizations and highlighting volunteer opportunities, these events can inspire direct participation in conservation action.[75]

Fostering Community and Networks

Beyond their formal agendas, birding events play an invaluable role in building and strengthening a global community united by a shared passion for birds.[1] They provide unique opportunities for networking, bringing together a diverse mix of individuals – from novice enthusiasts and dedicated amateur birders to leading researchers, conservation professionals, government agency staff, tour operators, equipment manufacturers, artists, and writers.[1] This interaction fosters a rich cross-pollination of ideas, experiences, and perspectives, often sparking new collaborations, research projects, business ventures, and mentorship opportunities.[44] Specific programs aimed at supporting early-career researchers (like the EOU "fledglings" program [47]) or dedicated youth activities (such as Avistar Kids [51] and the Young Conservationists Hub at Global Birdfair [5]) are particularly crucial. These initiatives actively nurture the next generation, ensuring the continued vibrancy, knowledge base, and conservation ethic of the birding community for years to come.

V. Compendium of Major Birding Events

The following table provides a reference guide to key details for a selection of major and representative birdwatching festivals, fairs, and ornithological congresses held worldwide and specifically in Brazil. This list is based on factors such as event scale, recognized impact, geographic representation, and diversity of focus, but it is not exhaustive.

Official Event Name	Location (City, Country/State)	Typical Timing / Frequency	Primary Focus
Worldwide Events			
International Ornithological Congress (IOCongress)	Rotates Globally (2026: Campeche, Mexico)	Quadrennial (Every 4 years)	Premier global scientific research congress, collaboration, standardization [27]
Global Birdfair	Lyndon Top, Rutland, UK	Annual (July)	Major public festival, trade fair (gear, tours), lectures, conservation fundraising [2]
The Biggest Week in American Birding	Oregon, Ohio, USA	Annual (Early May)	Large public festival celebrating spring warbler migration, guided trips, workshops, marketplace, economic impact [6]
South American Bird Fair	Rotates South America (2025: La Paz, Bolivia)	Annual (Typically Oct/Nov)	Major continental fair, tourism promotion, workshops, scientific

			exchange, conservation, networking [14]
Asian Bird Fair	Rotates Asia (2025: Seosan, South Korea)	Annual (Typically Oct/Nov)	Major continental fair, tourism promotion, conservation, education, networking [14]
Colombia Birdfair	Cali, Colombia	Annual (February)	International fair in highly biodiverse country, tourism promotion, conservation, lectures, workshops, trips [1]
Extremadura Birdwatching Fair (FIO)	Monfragüe National Park, Spain	Annual (February)	International ornithological tourism fair, birdwatching promotion, nature tourism [11]
Eilat Birds Festival	Eilat, Israel	Annual (Spring Migration Peak)	Significant international festival focused on spring migration, guided tours (day/night), expert presentations [1]
Japan Bird Festival	Abiko City, Chiba, Japan	Annual (November)	Largest Japanese festival, public engagement, education, research exhibits, photography, crafts, coexistence theme [14]
Borneo Bird Festival	Sandakan, Sabah, Malaysia	Annual (October)	Celebration of Borneo's avifauna, conservation awareness, ecotourism promotion, bird race, photo contest [1]
Pan-African Ornithological Congress (PAOC)	Rotates Africa (2022: Victoria Falls, Zimbabwe)	Quadrennial (Approx. every 4 years)	Key scientific congress for African ornithology, research presentation, collaboration [33]
American Ornithological Society (AOS) Annual Meeting	Rotates North America (2024: Estes Park, CO)	Annual	Major North American scientific conference, research across all ornithological fields [41]
European Ornithologists' Union (EOU) Conference	Rotates Europe (2023: Lund, Sweden)	Biennial (Every 2 years)	Major European scientific conference, strong focus on early-career researchers [43]
BirdsCaribbean International Conference	Rotates Caribbean (2024: Santo Domingo, DR)	Biennial (Every 2 years)	Key regional meeting for Caribbean bird research,

			conservation, capacity building, networking [41]
Space Coast Birding and Wildlife Festival	Cape Canaveral, Florida, USA	Annual (January)	Large US festival, general birding/wildlife, field trips (Merritt Island NWR), workshops [12]
San Diego Bird Festival	San Diego, California, USA	Annual (Feb/March)	Major California festival, tours, workshops, focus on regional Pacific Flyway birding [11]
Kachemak Bay Shorebird Festival	Homer, Alaska, USA	Annual (May)	Large Alaska festival focused on spring shorebird migration, sponsored by refuge partners [12]
Southwest Wings Birding and Nature Festival	Sierra Vista, Arizona, USA	Annual (May & August editions)	Long-running Arizona festival focused on rich regional biodiversity, field trips, workshops [6]
Rio Grande Valley Birding Festival	Harlingen, Texas, USA	Annual (November)	Major Texas festival, focus on unique valley specialties, networking, field trips [1]
Indian Birding Fair	Jaipur, Rajasthan, India	Annual (February)	Citizen-led initiative, birdwatching at Man Sagar Lake, conservation awareness, student engagement [1]
Kakadu Bird Week	Kakadu National Park, NT, Australia	Annual (Late Sept/Oct)	Premier Australian event celebrating Top End bird diversity, specialist lectures, cultural events [1]
Batumi Birdwatching Festival	Batumi, Georgia	Annual (Autumn)	Focus on massive autumn raptor migration bottleneck, conservation participation [1]
Brazilian Events			
AVistar Brasil (Brazilian Bird Fair)	São Paulo, São Paulo	Annual (Typically May)	Largest LatAm event: Fair, Congress, Trips, Workshops, Kids Program; tourism, science, conservation, networking [51]

Congresso Brasileiro de Ornitologia (CBO)	Rotates Brazil (2021: Virtual)	Biennial (Typically)	Main Brazilian scientific ornithology congress, organized by SBO [59]
Encontro Nacional de Ornitologia (ENO)	Rotates Brazil (e.g., 2018 Mitú, Vaupés)	Annual (Typically August)	Long-standing national meeting by RNOA, guided trips, lectures, cultural events [19]
Festival de Aves de Porto Seguro	Porto Seguro, Bahia	Potentially Annual (Date unclear)	Regional festival focused on strengthening local birdwatching tourism [67]
Manizales Avitourism Congress (Neighboring Country Ref)	Manizales, Caldas, Colombia	Annual	Highly regarded regional congress, demonstrates avitourism focus in the region [19]
Festival de Observação de Aves de Ubatuba (Começou?)	Ubatuba, São Paulo	Annual (October)	Regional event focused on Atlantic Forest birdwatching, tourism, conservation, education. (Note: Existence confirmed via external search, details limited in snippets)

VI. On the Horizon: Event Themes and Trends (2024-2026)

Analysis of recent (2024), ongoing (2025), and announced (2026) birding events reveals several key thematic directions and trends shaping the discourse and activities within the global ornithological and birdwatching communities. These themes reflect a growing engagement with complex, pressing global issues where birds often serve as crucial indicators or are directly impacted.

Conservation Action and Strategy: There is a clear shift from general conservation awareness towards specific, actionable strategies and assessments. This includes implementing multi-species action plans (like the CMS Vulture MsAP discussed extensively at PAOC 2022 [36]), targeted fundraising for concrete projects (Global Birdfair's 2024 support for Egypt's Galala Observatory and 2025 focus on ocean species [3]), habitat restoration initiatives [48], and evaluating the effectiveness and capacity of conservation efforts (BirdsCaribbean 2024 sessions [48]). The global "30x30" conservation target is also beginning to feature in discussions.[50]

Climate Change Impacts and Adaptation: Climate change remains a dominant and pervasive theme across both scientific congresses and public festivals. Discussions and research presentations focus on understanding its multifaceted impacts on birds – affecting migration patterns and timing [44], physiology, breeding success (e.g., heatwave effects [77]), behavior [44], and overall population vulnerability.[84] Events explore how birds serve as indicators of environmental change [35] and seek solutions for adaptation and mitigation.

Human Dimensions and Coexistence: There is significantly increased attention on the complex relationships between birds and people. The BOU 2026 conference theme, "Birds and People," explicitly addresses this, covering conflict mitigation (impacts of hunting, fisheries, agriculture, renewable energy, development [52]), the benefits birds provide (ecosystem services like pollination, pest control, seed dispersal, and contributions to human health and wellbeing [52]), the cultural and social significance of birds (birdwatching, feeding, symbolism [52]), and strategies for fostering coexistence. The World Migratory Bird Day 2025 theme, "Creating Bird-Friendly Cities and Communities," directly tackles the challenges and opportunities of shared urban and suburban spaces.[78]

Technology Integration: The role of technology in ornithology and conservation continues to grow and is reflected in event programming. This includes showcasing advanced tracking methods (like the Motus Wildlife Tracking System [50]), sophisticated data analysis techniques [50], and exploring the use of robotics and UAVs for research and management.[84] Festivals and fairs also remain key venues for demonstrating and selling the latest birdwatching equipment, such as high-powered optics and cameras.[20]

Inclusivity, Equity, and Diversity: A growing awareness of social equity issues is permeating the field. Events are beginning to incorporate sessions and discussions aimed at addressing historical biases within animal behavior and ornithology (ASAB Winter Meeting 2024 [84]), identifying and dismantling barriers to participation in birding and ornithology, particularly for underrepresented groups (BOU 2026 theme [52]), and promoting diversity, equity, inclusion, and accessibility (DEIA) within the community (BirdsCaribbean 2024 workshop [50]).

Citizen Science and Youth Engagement: The importance of engaging the public in scientific data collection and nurturing the next generation remains a strong focus. Events actively promote participation in citizen science projects like the Global Big Day [48] and the Caribbean Waterbird Census.[48] Dedicated programs for young people, such as Avistar Kids [51], the Young Conservationists Hub at Global Birdfair [5], and the EOU Fledglings initiatives [47], underscore the commitment to fostering future ornithologists and conservationists.

Future Outlook (2026): Looking ahead to 2026, major events like the International Ornithological Congress in Mexico [30], the Pan-African Ornithological Congress [38], the BirdsCaribbean International Conference [49], and the BOU Conference focusing on "Birds and People" [52] are confirmed or highly anticipated. These gatherings are expected to continue grappling with the dominant themes identified above, particularly climate change adaptation, implementing effective conservation strategies, navigating human-wildlife interactions, leveraging technological advancements, and fostering a more inclusive community. The thematic trends observed suggest a maturation within the field, with events evolving from purely celebratory or narrowly scientific meetings into vital, multi-stakeholder platforms designed to address complex socio-ecological challenges where birds play a central role. The emphasis is increasingly on integrated approaches, practical applications of science, and social responsibility.

VII. Conclusion: The Enduring Value of Gathering for Birds

Birdwatching festivals, fairs, and ornithological congresses, both globally and within nations like Brazil, represent far more than mere gatherings of enthusiasts and experts. They function as critical nexuses, weaving together threads of scientific research, conservation action, sustainable tourism, economic development, public education, and community building. From the large-scale public celebrations that inject millions into local economies and ignite public passion for nature [10], to the focused scientific congresses that drive global research agendas and standardize methodologies [27], these events fulfill diverse yet interconnected and vital roles.

The landscape of these events is dynamic, adapting to changing circumstances (as seen in the shift to virtual formats during the pandemic [28]) and evolving thematic focuses that reflect pressing global challenges like climate change and biodiversity loss.[36] The increasing integration of scientific content into public festivals and the growing emphasis on outreach and societal relevance within scientific congresses indicate a positive trajectory towards greater synergy between research, conservation practice, and public engagement. As hubs for networking, collaboration, fundraising, and inspiration – particularly for the crucial engagement of young people [5] – these events are indispensable tools. Their enduring value lies in their unique ability to unite diverse stakeholders around a shared appreciation for birds, fostering the collective knowledge, action, and political will necessary for their conservation in an increasingly complex world.

Sources Consulted

1. Take flight: 9 international birding festivals that are guaranteed to get you twitching, accessed April 18, 2025, https://www.wanderlustmagazine.com/inspiration/bird-watching-festivals-around-the-world/
2. British Birdwatching Fair - Wikipedia, accessed April 18, 2025, https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/British_Birdwatching_Fair
3. Global BirdFair, accessed April 18, 2025, https://globalbirdfair.org/
4. British Birdwatching Fair, the World's biggest celebration of Birds - Far South Expeditions, accessed April 18, 2025, https://farsouthexp.com/british-birdwatching-fair-the-worlds-biggest-celebration-of-birds/
5. Global Birdfair - the UK's biggest birder festival - RSPB, accessed April 18, 2025, https://www.rspb.org.uk/whats-happening/global-birdfair
6. Festivals & Community Events - American Birding Association, accessed April 18, 2025, https://www.aba.org/festivals-events/
7. The Biggest Week in American Birding | All About Birds, accessed April 18, 2025, https://www.allaboutbirds.org/news/event/the-biggest-week-in-american-birding/
8. FESTIVAL LOCATIONS - Biggest Week in American Birding, accessed April 18, 2025, https://www.biggestweekinamericanbirding.com/festival-locations.html
9. BWIAB - Home, accessed April 18, 2025, https://www.biggestweekinamericanbirding.com/
10. Birding Is a Booming Hobby—and a Big Business - National Audubon Society, accessed April 18, 2025, https://www.audubon.org/magazine/birding-booming-hobby-and-big-business
11. Birdwatching, Birding & Bird Travel, Birdfood & Binoculars Bird Fairs ..., accessed April 18, 2025, https://fatbirder.com/bird-fairs-and-festivals/

12. Bird Festival Planner | U.S. Fish & Wildlife Service, accessed April 18, 2025, https://www.fws.gov/story/bird-festival-planner
13. Birding Festivals of the Rockies, accessed April 18, 2025, https://rockies.audubon.org/birds/birding/birding-festivals
14. Worldwide Bird Festivals and Fairs - Bird Watching Asia, accessed April 18, 2025, https://birdwatching.asia/category/worldwide-bird-festivals-and-fairs/
15. Birding Events - World Birdfairs Council, accessed April 18, 2025, https://worldbirdfairs.com/birding-events/
16. South American Bird Fair 2025 - Bird Watching Asia, accessed April 18, 2025, https://birdwatching.asia/south-american-bird-fair-2025/
17. Feria de Aves de Sudamérica / South American Bird Fair – La feria ..., accessed April 18, 2025, https://www.birdfair.net/
18. Birding Events 2 - World Birdfairs Council, accessed April 18, 2025, https://worldbirdfairs.com/birding-events/list/page/2/?tribe-bar-date=2025-04-17&eventDisplay=past
19. Best Ornithology Meetings and Bird Fairs you can Visit in Colombia, accessed April 18, 2025, https://www.sula.com.co/blog/bird-fairs-in-colombia/
20. Japan Bird Festival 2024 - Bird Watching Asia, accessed April 18, 2025, https://birdwatching.asia/japan-bird-festival-2024/
21. Japan Bird Festival 2023 - Bird Watching Asia, accessed April 18, 2025, https://birdwatching.asia/japan-bird-festival-2023/
22. Japan Bird Festival 2023 English Site−Japan's largest birdwatching fair held annually. ?, accessed April 18, 2025, http://www.birdfesta.net/en/
23. ABOUT BBF | Borneo Bird Festival, accessed April 18, 2025, https://www.borneobirdfestival.com/general-info
24. Borneo Bird Festival - Hello Sabah | Your Sabahan Travel and Lifestyle Companion, accessed April 18, 2025, https://hellosabah.com/event/borneo-bird-festival/
25. Borneo Bird Festival | All About Birds, accessed April 18, 2025, https://www.allaboutbirds.org/news/event/borneo-bird-festival/
26. Borneo Bird Festival 2024 Trip Report, accessed April 18, 2025, https://birdwatching.asia/borneo-bird-festival-2024-trip-report/
27. International Ornithologists' Union - Wikipedia, accessed April 18, 2025, https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/International_Ornithologists%27_Union
28. Past events | International Ornithologists' Union, accessed April 18, 2025, https://www.internationalornithology.org/past-events
29. JW International Ornithological Congress, accessed April 18, 2025, https://www.internationalornithology.org/PDF/XXI%20IOC%201994%20Report-IBIS%20Suppl-05-06-10.pdf
30. XXIX International Ornithological Congress in Mexico 2026, accessed April 18, 2025, https://internationalornithology.org/blog/10889
31. International Ornithologists' Union | IOU - The worldwide organisation for ornithology and ornithologists, accessed April 18, 2025, https://internationalornithology.org/
32. 29th International Ornithological Congress | BirdForum, accessed April 18, 2025, https://www.birdforum.net/threads/29th-international-ornithological-congress.463214/
33. Category:Ornithological organizations - Wikipedia, accessed April 18, 2025, https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Category:Ornithological_organizations
34. Pan-African Ornithological Congress - Wikipedia, accessed April 18, 2025, https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Pan-African_Ornithological_Congress

35. Past - Migrant Landbird Study Group, accessed April 18, 2025, https://migrantlandbirds.org/index.php/meetings/past-meetings
36. (PDF) Conference Report : The 15th Pan African Ornithological Congress, 21-25 November 2022 – A vulture perspective - ResearchGate, accessed April 18, 2025, https://www.researchgate.net/publication/377245559_Conference_Report_The_15th_Pan_African_Ornithological_Congress_21-25_November_2022_-_A_vulture_perspective
37. Pan-African Ornithological Congress (PAOC15) - BirdLife South Africa, accessed April 18, 2025, https://www.birdlife.org.za/events/pan-african-ornithological-congress-paoc15/
38. Member conference attendance grants - British Ornithologists' Union, accessed April 18, 2025, https://bou.org.uk/funding/member-conference-attendance-grants/
39. BOU member conference attendance grant guidelines – November 2023 - British Ornithologists' Union, accessed April 18, 2025, https://bou.org.uk/wp-content/uploads/2023/12/bou-member-conf-attendance-guidelines-2024-1.pdf
40. Pan-African Ornithological Congress (Nov 2022), Victoria Falls Zimbabwe - 10Times, accessed April 18, 2025, https://10times.com/paoc-victoria-falls
41. Past Meetings - American Ornithological Society (AOS), accessed April 18, 2025, https://americanornithology.org/meetings/past-meetings/
42. "Pulling Back the Curtain"—AOS Annual Meeting Decision Making, accessed April 18, 2025, https://americanornithology.org/aos-annual-meeting-decision-making/
43. Bird Meetings - Ornithology Exchange, accessed April 18, 2025, https://ornithologyexchange.org/forums/forum/31-bird-meetings/
44. EOU Conferences: A perfect platform for sharing your research - British Ornithologists' Union, accessed April 18, 2025, https://bou.org.uk/blog-lopez-idiaquez-eou-2023/
45. Other events | International Ornithologists' Union, accessed April 18, 2025, https://www.internationalornithology.org/other-events
46. 12th EOU Conference 2019 | International Ornithologists' Union, accessed April 18, 2025, https://www.internationalornithology.org/fr/node/1631
47. Presenting at #EOU2023 - British Ornithologists' Union, accessed April 18, 2025, https://bou.org.uk/blog-ramellini-eou-2023/
48. DR Conference 2024 - BirdsCaribbean, accessed April 18, 2025, https://www.birdscaribbean.org/category/dr-conference-2024/
49. BIRDSCARIBBEANENDEMICS&, accessed April 18, 2025, https://www.birdscaribbean.org/wp-content/uploads/2024/12/ETSWGnewsletterDec2024_en-1.pdf
50. BirdsCaribbean Conference 2024 - Google Sites, accessed April 18, 2025, https://sites.google.com/view/birdscaribbeanconference2024/home
51. Brazilian Bird Fair — Avistar Brasil | All About Birds, accessed April 18, 2025, https://www.allaboutbirds.org/news/event/brazilian-bird-fair-avistar-brasil/
52. Birds and people | #BOU2026 - British Ornithologists' Union, accessed April 18, 2025, https://bou.org.uk/event/birds-and-people-bou2026/
53. Birds, Birding Trips and Birdwatching Tours in Federative Republic of Brazil - Fat Birder, accessed April 18, 2025, https://fatbirder.com/world-birding/south-america/federative-republic-of-brazil/
54. WTM: Em ação inédita, Embratur apoia criação da Associação Nacional de Turismo de Observação de Vida Silvestre, accessed April 18, 2025, https://embratur.com.br/2025/04/14/wtm-em-acao-inedita-embratur-apoia-criacao-da-associacao-nacional-de-turismo-de-observacao-de-vida-silvestre/

55. Fundraiser by Lorena Patrício : Empower Young Birders: Fund Their Avistar Journey, accessed April 18, 2025, https://www.gofundme.com/f/empower-young-birders-fund-their-avistar-journey
56. Home | AVISTAR 25, accessed April 18, 2025, https://www.avistarbrasil.com.br/en
57. Feira | AVISTAR 25, accessed April 18, 2025, https://www.avistarbrasil.com.br/en/feira
58. Jardines Silvestres and Hostería la Roulotte – Educational and Outreach Initiatives for Latin America & The Caribbean - Cornell Lab of Ornithology, accessed April 18, 2025, https://www.birds.cornell.edu/latam/en/jardines-silvestres-and-hosteria-la-roulotte/
59. XXVII Congresso Brasileiro de Ornitologia - CRBio-06, accessed April 18, 2025, https://www.crbio06.gov.br/index.php/comunicacao/agendas-eventos-reunioes/eventos-realizados/434-xxvii-congresso-brasileiro-de-ornitologia
60. XXVI Congresso Brasileiro de Ornitologia (CBO) - Universidade Vila Velha, accessed April 18, 2025, https://uvv.br/eventos/2019/03/xxvi-congresso-brasileiro-de-ornitologia-cbo/
61. 200 anos da Ciência brasileira | SBO - YouTube, accessed April 18, 2025, https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=5dQVf4WJB4I
62. Listas de Aves do Brasil – CBRO, accessed April 18, 2025, http://www.cbro.org.br/listas/
63. Início - XXVII Congresso Brasileiro de Ornitologia - EventMaster, accessed April 18, 2025, https://app.eventmaster.com.br/event/xxviicbo/site
64. Congressos - Turismo - Prefeitura de Passo Fundo, accessed April 18, 2025, https://www.pmpf.rs.gov.br/turismo/congressos/
65. crbio03, accessed April 18, 2025, https://www.crbio03.gov.br/index.php/component/content/?id=449&Itemid=1167
66. 69º Congresso Brasileiro de Oftalmologia, accessed April 18, 2025, https://cbo2025.com.br/
67. 3º festival de aves é aliado ao fortalecimento do turismo "birdwatching, accessed April 18, 2025, https://portoseguro.ba.gov.br/noticia/3-festival-de-aves-e-aliado-ao-fortalecimento-do-turismo-birdwatching
68. Birds of the Chapada Diamantina, Bahia, Brazil., accessed April 18, 2025, https://www.neotropicalbirdclub.org/wp-content/uploads/2016/02/Cotinga-11-1999-86-95.pdf
69. Observação de Aves na Chapada Diamantina, accessed April 18, 2025, https://discoverchapada.com.br/observacao-de-aves-na-chapada-diamantina/
70. Vem aí o Workshop de Turismo de Observação de Aves - Guia Chapada Diamantina, accessed April 18, 2025, https://www.guiachapadadiamantina.com.br/vem-ai-o-workshop-de-turismo-de-observacao-de-aves/
71. Sobre Nós - Cariama Ecotur, accessed April 18, 2025, https://cariamaecotur.com/sobre-nos/
72. Chapada Diamantina (BA): além das trilhas e cachoeiras - Fauna News, accessed April 18, 2025, https://faunanews.com.br/chapada-diamantina-ba-alem-das-trilhas-e-cachoeiras/
73. Birding Festivals as Ecotourism Experiences (6) - Commission for Environmental Cooperation, accessed April 18, 2025, https://www.cec.org/wp-content/uploads/6.-Festivals_eng_web.pdf

74. Birding Festivals as Ecotourism Experiences - Commission for Environmental Cooperation, accessed April 18, 2025, https://www.cec.org/publications/birding-festivals-as-ecotourism-experiences/
75. The Surprising Economic Impact of Birdwatching in the U.S, accessed April 18, 2025, https://www.birdwatchingdaily.com/beginners/birding-faq/the-surprising-economic-impact-of-birdwatching-in-the-us/
76. International Ornithologists' Union | IOU - The worldwide organisation for ornithology and ornithologists, accessed April 18, 2025, https://www.internationalornithology.org/
77. European Ornithologists Union Conference 2023 - life falkon, accessed April 18, 2025, http://www.lifefalkon.eu/en/news/european-ornithologists-union-conference-2024/
78. World Migratory Bird Day Unveils 2025 Conservation Theme: Creating Bird-Friendly Cities & Communities, accessed April 18, 2025, https://www.worldmigratorybirdday.org/news/2025/world-migratory-bird-day-unveils-2025-conservation-theme-creating-bird-friendly-cities
79. BirdsCaribbean – Education • Conservation • Science • Action, accessed April 18, 2025, https://www.birdscaribbean.org/
80. Rajasthan State Biodiversity Board, Jaipur, accessed April 18, 2025, https://lsg.urban.rajasthan.gov.in/content/dam/environment/RSBB/FieldReports/Report%20of%20Bird%20festival%202025.pdf
81. Indian Birding Fair - Birdfair India -- An Organization based out at Jaipur, Rajasthan, India, accessed April 18, 2025, https://www.birdfair.org/INDIANBIRDFAIR.html
82. Two-day bird fair to be held from February 7 | Jaipur News - Times of India, accessed April 18, 2025, https://timesofindia.indiatimes.com/city/jaipur/two-day-bird-fair-to-be-held-from-feb-7/articleshow/67858643.cms
83. Top Birdwatching Festivals Around the World | PDF - SlideShare, accessed April 18, 2025, https://www.slideshare.net/slideshow/top-birdwatching-festivals-around-the-world/272102942
84. Upcoming Conferences & Events - ASAB, accessed April 18, 2025, https://www.asab.org/conferences-events

Chapter 16

The Smart Birder's Horizon: Technology, Citizen Science, and the Future of Birdwatching and Avitourism (2025–2045)

Ismar Borges de Lima
Universidade Estadual de Roraima-UERR, Brazil &
RECINATUR Foundation. Email: ismar@uerr.edu.br

Summary

The previous chapter explored how birding events—ranging from vibrant festivals to rigorous scientific congresses—serve as vital catalysts in shaping tourism flows, conservation action, scientific collaboration, and public engagement with avian diversity. These gatherings illuminate the collective energy of the global birding community, demonstrating how organized human efforts mobilize resources, generate knowledge, and foster stewardship on behalf of birds. They embody a shared social landscape where passion, science, policy, and sustainability converge. Yet, as the world accelerates into an era of unprecedented technological innovation, the very foundations of how humans observe, understand, and interact with birds are evolving. From the proliferation of real-time data platforms and AI-powered field tools to the rise of autonomous monitoring networks and immersive virtual experiences, a profound transformation is underway—one that will redefine both individual and collective practices over the next two decades. This next chapter, "*The Smart Birder's Horizon: Technology, Citizen Science, and the Future of Birdwatching and Avitourism (2025–2045)*," charts the emerging technological frontiers poised to reshape avian observation, research, tourism, and conservation. It invites reflection not only on the immense opportunities that digital and autonomous systems present, but also on the urgent ethical considerations necessary to ensure that innovation strengthens, rather than erodes, the essential human–nature connection at the heart of birdwatching.

Part I. Introduction and Technological Convergence

16.1. Introduction

As the mid-2020s unfold, the practices of birdwatching and avitourism stand at a fascinating juncture. Millions engage with platforms like eBird, contributing observations that form one of the world's largest biodiversity datasets, while mobile applications such as Merlin Bird ID offer increasingly sophisticated assistance with identification through sound and images. Early prototypes of 'smart' optics hint at integrating digital intelligence directly into the viewing experience, and established ethical guidelines provide frameworks for responsible engagement with birds and their habitats. Concurrently, a growing awareness permeates the community regarding alarming declines in many bird populations globally, underscoring the critical role of citizen science data in monitoring these trends and informing conservation action. This landscape, characterized by widespread participation, burgeoning digital tools, and a heightened conservation imperative, forms the foundation upon which the next two decades of transformation will be built.

The coming era, stretching from 2025 towards 2045, promises a period of accelerated technological advancement poised to reshape the field profoundly. Key drivers include the maturation and convergence of artificial intelligence (AI) and machine learning (ML), augmented reality (AR) and virtual reality (VR), increasingly sophisticated and miniaturized sensors (acoustic, visual, environmental), autonomous systems like drones and robotics, and powerful, integrated data platforms. It is not merely the development of these individual technologies, but their synergistic integration – AI analyzing vast datasets from sensor networks, AR overlaying real-time citizen science insights onto smart optics, autonomous systems feeding dynamic data into conservation models – that will catalyze the most significant changes. This convergence enables a more holistic understanding of avian ecology, faster response times for conservation interventions, and richer, more personalized experiences for enthusiasts.

This chapter argues that the period 2025-2045 will witness an unprecedented transformation in how humans observe, study, experience, and conserve birds, driven by this wave of technological innovation. This evolution will unlock powerful new tools for discovery and engagement, generate insights at previously impossible scales, and potentially democratize participation in both birding and conservation science. However, this technologically infused future also necessitates careful, proactive consideration of profound ethical responsibilities, including data privacy, algorithmic bias, equitable access, potential wildlife disturbance, and the very nature of the human connection to the wild. Navigating this complex terrain requires a forward-looking perspective that balances the excitement of technological potential with a critical examination of its implications.

To explore this unfolding future, this chapter is divided by eight distinct, but interconnected parts, and will examine the key thematic shifts anticipated over the next two decades. It begins by discussing the conceptual and technological assumptions and aspects related to '**Citizen Science**' as portals for bird and birding data democratization worldwide, and it continues by keeping an on the technological innovations that have contributed to envisioning the 'augmented observer,' equipped with next-generation identification tools and smart optics. It then explores the evolution of citizen science into an era of amplified collective intelligence and integrated data ecosystems. Following this, the chapter delves into the potential of autonomous monitoring systems – ubiquitous eyes and ears in the wild. The subsequent section reimagines avitourism, exploring how technology might shape travel experiences, sustainability practices, and economic models. The discussion then turns to new frontiers in avian research enabled by these tools, before concluding with a critical examination of the ethical considerations' paramount in this high-tech era.

Part II –Citizen Science: Setting the Stage for the Next Two Decades

16.2. An Outline

Citizen-science platforms are no longer side projects on the fringe of ornithology; they have become the fastest-growing source of open bird data on the planet. As Bonney and colleagues remind us, *"Citizen-science projects have been remarkably successful in advancing scientific knowledge"* (p. 977). Building on that success, this chapter opens with the conceptual and technological foundations that make public participation such a powerful "portal of democratization," from global check-list hubs like eBird to on-phone mini-labs that help beginners generate publishable observations. In doing so, we illustrate how crowd-sourced observations are already shaping conservation priorities and how robust project design is now guided by hard-won lessons on data quality and participant skill calibration.

The narrative then shifts to the rise of the *augmented observer*—birders armed with edge-AI optics, live-spectrogram apps, and deep-learning identifiers such as BirdNET, which can now recognise hundreds of species in real time: sciencedirect.com. These tools blur the line between novice and expert, letting casual users generate research-grade records while simultaneously receiving instant feedback that accelerates learning. By embedding automated ID and error-flagging directly into field optics and phone microphones, the next generation of citizen scientists will collect richer, more standardised data with far less training overhead.

16.2.1. Citizen science: Understanding in details the bird-data platforms and their democratic virtual sentinel role.

Citizen science is the connective tissue that binds bird-data platforms together. By design, they turn birders, photographers, park rangers, urban residents—and anyone else with a smartphone—into frontline observers who supply geotagged check-lists, photos, and sound files at an unprecedented scale. Portals such as **eBird, iNaturalist, WikiAves, Observation.org** and **BirdTrack** exemplify the *contributory* model of citizen science: participants collect and submit standardised observations that feed directly into distribution maps and trend analyses. Specialist hubs—**Xeno-canto** (audio), **Avibase** (taxonomy), and the **BirdLife Data Zone** (threat status and IBAs)—sit a step higher on the data ladder, transforming this crowdsourced raw material into curated reference resources. Even tightly focused projects like **Big City Birds** (urban behaviour) and **CityBird** (collision monitoring) rely on local volunteers to populate niche datasets that would be impossible to assemble through professional surveys alone.

Because these platforms differ in scope and verification protocols, they showcase *multiple governance styles* within citizen science. eBird's complete-check-list requirement and regional reviewer network yield effort-corrected abundance models; WikiAves and Xeno-canto depend on peer debate to refine identifications; CityBird insists on photographic evidence to ground advocacy in hard proof. Yet all of them share the same ethic: **empower non-specialists to generate high-value scientific data**. This participatory architecture not only lowers costs and accelerates data collection, it also fosters an engaged community that polices quality, fills geographic gaps, and rapidly adopts new tools—be that AI ID suggestions or smartphone acoustic sensors.

The result is a *layered, citizen-powered knowledge commons*. A single sighting can flow from a volunteer's phone to eBird's migration models, bolster Avibase's regional check-list, trigger a BirdLife threat reassessment, surface as a collision hot-spot in CityBird, and ultimately appear in a GBIF download used by planners designing responsible avitourism routes. In other words, citizen science is not just an add-on; it is the engine that drives observation, curation, and application across the entire digital bird-data ecosystem—making modern bird research, conservation action, and tourism planning faster, richer, and more democratic than ever before.

Beyond their shared emphasis on georeferenced bird records, each platform carves out a distinct *niche* by fine-tuning its scope and data architecture. The global giants—eBird, iNaturalist and Observation.org—embrace almost any species, location or observer, but differ in the **grain** of the information they collect. eBird's checklist protocol demands that contributors log *every* species they detect during an outing, producing effort-corrected datasets ideal for abundance modelling, while iNaturalist and Observation.org accept single "opportunistic" records that trade statistical rigor for taxonomic breadth. By contrast, BirdTrack limits its ambit to Britain and Ireland and focuses on migration timing and distribution shifts, allowing ornithologists to tease out fine-scale phenological trends that would be lost in a global average. These design choices illustrate a central lesson from the Table 15.0 scope and data-collection method jointly shape a platform's scientific and management value.

Citizen-science participation also drives divergent *cultures of quality control*. On multimedia sites such as WikiAves and Xeno-canto, peer review happens organically as photographers and sound recordists comment on, correct and sometimes hotly debate each other's identifications—an informal but remarkably effective crowdsourced filter. eBird layers a more formal vetting system on top: automated filters flag outliers, and regional reviewers verify unusual reports before they flow into GBIF or Cornell's global trend models. Even collision-mapping efforts like CityBird, working on a shoestring budget, build trust by requiring photographs or carcass retrieval in their reporting form, ensuring that advocacy campaigns rest on solid evidence. The table's 'Citizen-science component' column, in other words, is not a simple yes/no toggle; it signals how deeply each platform has embedded *community governance* into its data pipeline.

Finally, the "output/value" column reveals a complementary mosaic rather than a marketplace of competitors. Avibase supplies the taxonomic backbone that keeps thousands of local check-lists and conservation assessments talking the same language. BirdLife Data Zone translates raw occurrence data into Red-List categories and threat narratives that policy-makers actually use. Big City Birds feeds real-time urban behaviour observations straight to academic ecologists studying adaptation. And GBIF stitches everything together, providing a neutral clearing-house where a Peruvian avitourism planner, a South African conservation NGO and a German migration modeller can all download harmonised datasets within minutes. When viewed through the lens of the table, these platforms collectively form a *layered knowledge commons*: field observations flow upward, are refined and curated at each stage, and finally cascade back down as interactive maps, policy briefs or site-specific management plans. That virtuous loop—observation, curation, application—is the beating heart of contemporary bird science and the reason these platforms matter far beyond the birding community itself.

WikiAves, eBird, BirdLife Data Zone, SpotterON (Big City Birds) and CityBird all live in the same "digital bird-data ecosystem", but they do **different jobs along the observation-to-conservation pipeline**. Below is a concise look at *what each one does* and *where they overlap,* refer to Table 16.0.

Table 16.0 – Eleven Digital Bird-Data Platforms Outlined:

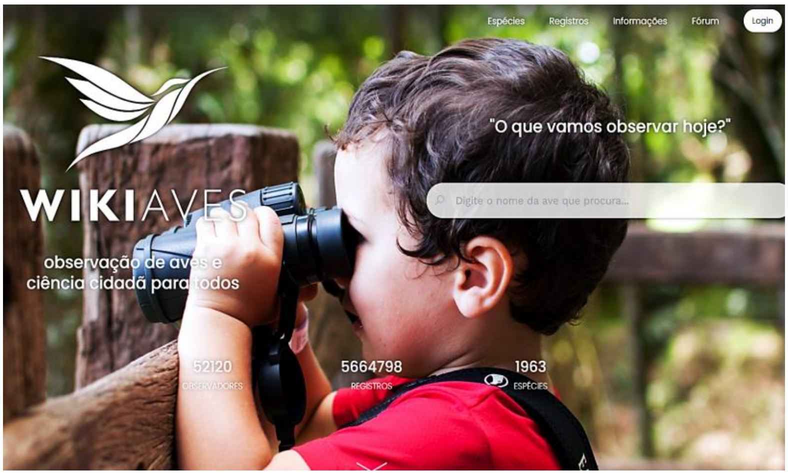
#	Platform	Scope & Primary Audience	Core Purpose	Main Data Stream	Citizen-Science Component	Key Outputs / Value
1	**WikiAves**	Brazil; birders, ornithologists, photographers	Build the largest multimedia archive of Brazil's birds	Geotagged photos & sound recordings with user-validated IDs	**Yes** – open uploads, community vetting	Distribution heat-maps, species pages, personal life-lists Wiki AvesWiki Aves
2	**eBird**	Global; birders of all skill levels	Collect checklist data for science & conservation	Complete, effort-based bird checklists	**Yes** – web & mobile submissions worldwide	Abundance maps, migration models, personal stats, trend dashboards eBirdeBird
3	**BirdLife Data Zone**	Global; conservation planners & policy-makers	Provide authoritative species/IBA/KBA status & threats	Expert-reviewed factsheets, threat assessments	**No** – synthesis platform drawing on partner networks	IUCN Red-List status, IBA/KBA shapefiles, conservation action briefs BirdLife DataZoneBirdLife DataZone
4	**Big City Birds** (SpotterON)	Urban Australia; researchers & public	Track behaviour of 5 urban-adapted bird species	App-based sightings, behaviour notes, photos	**Yes** – SpotterON citizen-science app	Urban distribution maps, movement & breeding data for research SPOTTERONSpotteron
5	**CityBird**	Raleigh-Durham, NC (USA); local volunteers & advocates	Document bird-window collisions for policy change	Collision reports with precise locations & photos	**Yes** – online forms & social media reporting	Hot-spot maps, evidence packages for bird-friendly building campaigns Google SitesSciStarter
6	**iNaturalist**	Global; naturalists across all taxa	Document and identify biodiversity observations	Geotagged photos/sounds auto-suggested & community-vetted	**Yes** – open submissions via app/web	Species occurrence records, observation maps, project workspaces iNaturalistUC Davis
7	**Xeno-canto**	Global; birders, bioacousticians	Archive & share wild-bird sound recordings	User-uploaded audio files with metadata	**Yes** – open uploads, community curation	Downloadable sound library, spectrograms, call comparisons Xeno-cantoXeno-canto
8	**Observation .org**	Global; multi-taxa wildlife observers	Record and visualise sightings of any wild organism	Photos, counts, audio notes, ID confirmations	**Yes** – web & mobile apps	Real-time sighting maps, open data feeds for researchers observation.orgobservation.org
9	**BirdTrack** (BTO)	Britain & Ireland; UK-based birders	Monitor migration and distribution trends	Timed & locality-based sighting lists	**Yes** – web/app entry; data shared with BTO science	Seasonal movement charts, trend reports, local recorder downloads bto.orgbto.org
10	**GBIF**	Global; scientists, NGOs, governments	Aggregate open biodiversity occurrence data	> 2 billion occurrence records from many sources	**Indirect** – integrates citizen data (eBird, iNat, etc.)	Downloadable datasets, APIs, global species dashboards GBIFGBIF

#	Platform	Scope & Primary Audience	Core Purpose	Main Data Stream	Citizen-Science Component	Key Outputs / Value
11	**Avibase**	Global; taxonomists & checklist compilers	Provide comprehensive bird taxonomy & regional checklists	53 M+ integrated records, nomenclatural synonyms	**No** – draws on published & partner datasets	Country/region checklists, taxonomic comparison tools, stats [AvibaseAvibase]

Source: Table prepared by the author, 2025, based on data available in the literature and digital platforms.

16.2.2. What is WikiAves? – Brazil's Largest Birdwatching Community and Citizen Science Platform

WikiAves is Brazil's most comprehensive and dynamic online platform dedicated to birdwatching and citizen science. Launched to support, promote, and democratize the activity of bird observation throughout the country, it offers free access to a wide array of tools that allow users to upload and manage photographic and audio records, contribute texts, assist with species identification, and interact with other birders. As of **April 2025**, the platform has grown into a vibrant community of **52,120 registered observers**, who together have contributed **over 5.6 million records** covering **1,963 bird species** found in Brazil.



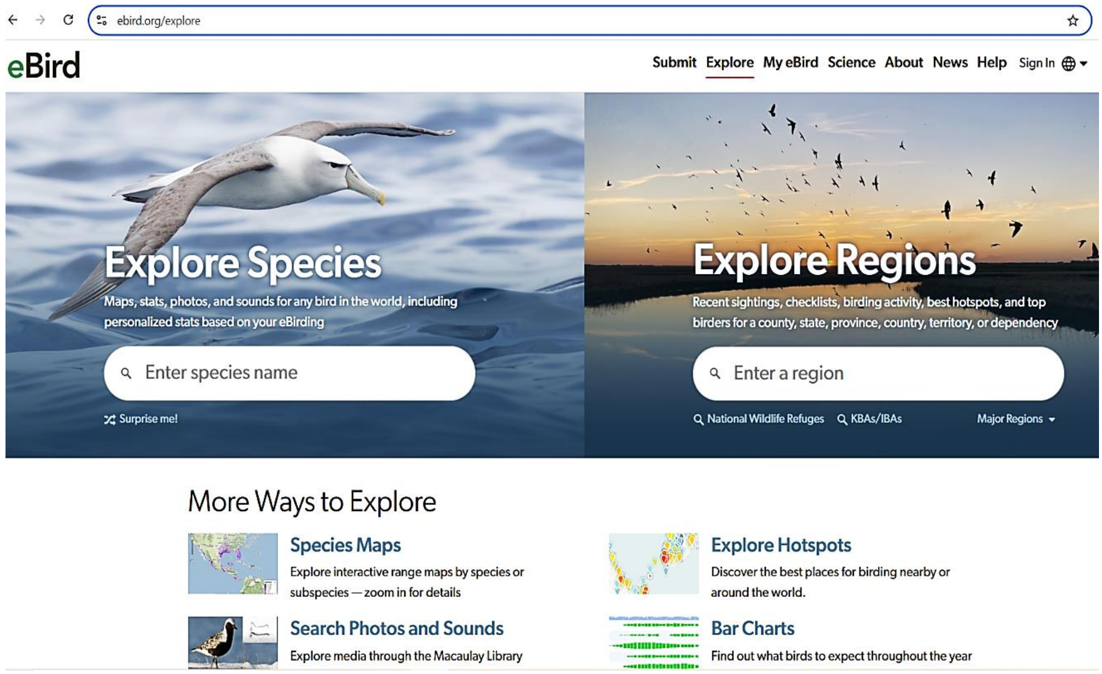
Designed to be interactive and inclusive, WikiAves invites users with the question, *"O que vamos observar hoje?"* ("What will we observe today?"), encouraging exploration through its intuitive search functions. You can type the name of a bird species, browse by state or protected area, explore observation hotspots, or check out the latest uploads. The site features sections such as Espécies (Species), Registros (Records), Informações (Information), and a Fórum for community discussion. There are also curated lists highlighting the most popular, most challenging, unidentified, and most debated species entries.

One of WikiAves' key strengths lies in its ability to showcase Brazil's avian biodiversity in real time. Recent contributions in the past 30 days include the first photographic records of species such as the Cape Verde Shearwater (pardela-de-cabo-verde) and the Negro River Tail-shaker (balança-rabo-do-rio-negro), as well as first sound recordings of the *Chocolate-colored Seedeater* (*gaúcho-chocolate*) and *Yellow-crested Penguin* (*pinguim-de-penacho-amarelo*). These contributions often come from both seasoned experts and everyday nature lovers.

In short, WikiAves is more than just a bird database—it's a collective effort to build the largest and most up-to-date digital repository on Brazilian birds. Whether you're a beginner learning to identify species, a researcher tracking records, or an enthusiast documenting your birding trips, WikiAves offers a welcoming space for participation, learning, and discovery in one of the world's most biodiverse countries.

16.2.3. What is eBird? – A Global Birdwatching Platform for Science, Conservation, and Community

The eBird is a free, global platform created by the Cornell Lab of Ornithology to support birdwatchers of all levels while advancing scientific knowledge and bird conservation worldwide. Since its launch, eBird has become one of the largest biodiversity-related science projects in the world, with over 100 million bird sightings submitted each year by birders around the globe. At its core, eBird invites anyone—from beginners to expert ornithologists—to submit simple bird checklists detailing where, when, and how they went birding, along with the species they observed or heard. These checklists build a vast and growing database that powers research, conservation strategies, and education.



With a user-friendly website and a free mobile app, eBird allows birdwatchers to explore real-time maps, manage life lists, add photos and sound recordings, and receive alerts about rare or nearby bird sightings. It also offers global and regional data exploration tools, customized for each location and season, and is available in multiple languages—including Portuguese (Brazil), Spanish, English, French, Chinese, Japanese, and others—making it accessible to a truly international audience. As of 2025, eBird supports a vast network of national and local partners, researchers, and regional experts who help verify data quality and provide localized portals.

The eBird is not just a personal birding journal—it is also a powerful citizen science tool. The data collected through eBird contributes to peer-reviewed research, conservation planning, and public policy decisions around the world. Whether you want to keep track of your own bird sightings, learn about the species in your area, contribute to global science, or simply enjoy being part of the largest birding community on the planet, eBird offers the tools, the community, and the vision to support your journey. Visit eBird.org to get started.

Next we explore how individual contributions fuse into *amplified collective intelligence*. eBird's experience shows that once observer skill and effort are modelled explicitly, volunteer checklists rival structured surveys for many ecological questions. We outline how such integrated data ecosystems—linking acoustic archives, camera-trap catalogues, and genomics repositories—will let researchers pivot seamlessly from local observations to global trend analysis. Next sections in the following Parts look ahead to autonomous monitoring systems—networks of ARUs, nano-tags, and AI-ready camera traps—that promise 24/7, bias-free coverage of remote habitats. As Steenweg et al. put it, *"We suggest that interconnected networks of remote cameras will soon monitor biodiversity at a global scale, help answer pressing ecological questions, and guide conservation policy"* (p. 26). We discuss the infrastructure and metadata standards this vision requires, along with the vital role of citizen engagement in maintaining, annotating, and ground-truthing these sensor webs.

Part III - Enhancing Human Perception: Tools for the Augmented Observer

16.3. The Augmented Observer: Next-Generation Identification and Optics

The fundamental acts of identifying and observing birds are poised for significant enhancement through the integration of AI and advanced optical technologies. Building upon the successes and limitations of early digital tools, the next two decades promise capabilities that will augment the human senses, offering deeper insights and potentially lowering the barrier to entry for aspiring birdwatchers.

16.3.1. AI-Powered Identification: Beyond Merlin

Mobile applications like the Cornell Lab of Ornithology's Merlin Bird ID have already revolutionized bird identification for many, offering assistance via photo analysis and, more recently, real-time sound identification. However, as of the mid-2020s, these tools still possess limitations. Sound ID, while impressive, can struggle with accuracy, particularly with mimics like the Northern Mockingbird, complex or atypical songs, brief vocalizations analyzed in short time windows, and in noisy environments with overlapping calls. Misidentifications, though often caught by eBird reviewers, can introduce noise into valuable scientific datasets. Photo ID also faces challenges with suboptimal images or unusual angles.

The coming years are projected to see substantial improvements in AI identification accuracy and nuance. This progress will be fueled by several factors:

- **Larger, More Diverse Datasets:** AI models thrive on data. Continued contributions from citizen scientists uploading annotated photos and sounds , combined with expanding curated libraries like the Macaulay Library , will provide richer training material. Active learning protocols, where humans help label challenging examples, will further refine model performance.
- **Advanced Architectures:** The application of more sophisticated deep learning architectures, such as advanced Convolutional Neural Networks (CNNs) and Transformer models, which have shown success in complex pattern recognition tasks, will enable AI to better discern subtle differences in plumage, structure, and

vocalizations. Techniques like fine-tuning models specifically for local soundscapes or regional dialects can address limitations where global models like BirdNET underperform due to unfamiliar acoustic environments. These advancements are expected to improve the handling of challenging cases like mimics, faint calls, and background noise.

- **Contextual Awareness:** Future AI identification systems will likely move beyond analyzing just the image or sound in isolation. They are expected to integrate contextual information to improve suggestions. This could include incorporating habitat data derived from the image or location, real-time weather conditions, time of day and season, and likelihood predictions based on fine-grained spatial and temporal distribution data from platforms like eBird. An AI might suggest, "While the song is similar to Species B, given the marsh habitat and recent eBird reports, Species A is the more probable identification."
- **Multi-Modal Fusion:** Rather than relying solely on sight or sound, future AI may fuse information from multiple modalities. An identification could be based on a combination of visual features from a photo or video feed, acoustic characteristics from a sound recording, and potentially even flight patterns or behaviors captured by smart optics, leading to more robust and reliable identifications.
- **Edge AI and Real-Time Processing:** A significant trend will be the shift of AI processing from the cloud to the device itself (edge computing). This means smart binoculars, intelligent bird feeders, or smartphones could perform complex identifications instantly without needing an internet connection. This enhances usability dramatically, especially in remote birding locations with poor connectivity, and enables truly real-time assistance.
- **Smart Feeders as ID Hubs:** The emergence of AI-powered bird feeders that identify visitors represents another avenue for automated identification. Future iterations could evolve beyond simple species ID to potentially track individual birds (perhaps using subtle plumage variations or AI-driven recognition of unique markings), monitor feeding behaviors, analyze vocalizations near the feeder, and automatically generate detailed, localized checklists for platforms like eBird.

This evolution in AI identification presents a fascinating dynamic. The increasing ease and accuracy of AI-powered tools, especially when integrated directly into optics, will undoubtedly lower the barrier to entry for bird identification, potentially attracting a wider audience to birdwatching. However, this convenience raises questions about the potential "deskilling" of enthusiasts. If identification becomes effortless and instantaneous via technology, the motivation for beginners to invest time in learning traditional fieldcraft – mastering subtle visual field marks, memorizing complex songs and calls, understanding behavioral cues and habitat associations – might diminish. While broadening participation is valuable, this could lead to a generation of birders heavily reliant on technological aids, potentially altering the culture of birding and the depth of connection fostered through dedicated learning and observation. Simultaneously, a powerful feedback loop is established: every time a user interacts with an AI tool – confirming an ID, correcting a suggestion, uploading associated media through connected apps – they are effectively providing valuable, labeled training data. This user feedback directly refines the underlying algorithms, making the AI progressively more accurate over time, which in turn encourages further use. This continuous cycle of use and improvement will be a key driver of AI capability in the coming years.

16.3.2. Smart Optics and Augmented Reality

The convergence of high-quality optics and digital intelligence is already underway, promising to transform the very tools birdwatchers use in the field. Binoculars and spotting scopes are evolving from purely analog instruments into sophisticated data-gathering and information-delivery devices.

The commercial launch of products like the Swarovski AX Visio represents a significant milestone. These "smart binoculars" integrate premium optics with onboard AI (leveraging partnerships like that with the Cornell Lab's Merlin Bird ID), high-resolution cameras for photo and video capture, GPS, and connectivity to smartphone apps. While early prototypes existed previously, the AX Visio demonstrates the feasibility of embedding complex digital functions within the familiar binocular form factor. Future developments will likely focus on refining these capabilities, improving battery life, reducing weight and cost, and potentially incorporating additional sensors. Widespread adoption, however, will depend heavily on achieving price points accessible to a broader market beyond the high-end segment.

Beyond onboard identification, the true potential lies in augmented reality (AR) overlays displayed directly within the optical path of binoculars or scopes, or potentially via connected smart glasses or smartphone screens used in conjunction with optics. Imagine looking at a distant bird and seeing not just the magnified image, but also contextually relevant digital information seamlessly overlaid:

- **Real-time ID suggestions:** AI-generated species possibilities appearing alongside the bird.
- **Acoustic visualization:** A real-time sonogram of the bird's song appearing in the periphery.
- **Contextual data:** Snippets of range maps, conservation status details, or notes on identifying features drawn from digital field guides.
- **Citizen science integration:** Icons indicating recent sightings of the species nearby, pulled from platforms like eBird.
- **Educational aids:** Virtual pointers highlighting key field marks for identification.

This AR integration promises to transform observation into a richer, more informative experience, layering digital knowledge onto the real-world view.

Furthermore, AR and VR technologies offer novel ways to experience birds and nature, both in the field and remotely. AR applications could enhance nature trails by overlaying information about flora, fauna, and geological features, or even creating interactive educational games. VR can provide highly immersive "virtual birding" trips to remote or inaccessible locations, allowing users to explore ecosystems and encounter wildlife from anywhere in the world. This holds particular promise for individuals with mobility limitations or those seeking low-impact ways to experience nature. VR could also be used to recreate historical environments to visualize ecological change or simulate the future impacts of climate change on bird habitats. Table 15.1 summarizes the anticipated evolution of key birding technologies:

Table 16.1 - Comparison of Current (~2025) vs. Future (2035-2045) Birding Technologies

Technology Area	Circa 2025 Capabilities	Projected 2035-2045 Capabilities
Identification Tools	App-based (Merlin); moderate accuracy, some limitations (mimics, noise); requires user confirmation.	AI integrated into optics/devices; high accuracy, multi-modal (sight, sound, behavior), contextual awareness (habitat, location), edge processing.
Optics	High-quality analog binoculars/scopes; early smart prototypes (e.g., AX Visio) with integrated camera/AI.	Widespread smart optics; integrated AR overlays (ID, data, sonograms); lighter, more affordable; potentially additional sensors.
Citizen Science Platforms	Established platforms (eBird, iNat); focus on checklists/observations; basic data visualization; emerging integration.	Highly personalized & gamified experiences; AI-assisted data validation; seamless integration across platforms & sensor data; real-time data streams.
Monitoring Sensors	Deployable ARUs, camera traps, basic drones (often human-piloted); separate data streams.	Large-scale autonomous sensor networks (ARUs, drones, etc.); swarm robotics; advanced AI analysis (soundscape, behavior); integrated sensor fusion.

Part IV. Citizen Science and Data Ecosystems

16.4. Citizen Science in the Next Era: Collective Intelligence Amplified

Citizen science, particularly through platforms like eBird, has already become a cornerstone of modern ornithology and conservation, mobilizing millions of volunteers to generate invaluable biodiversity data. The next two decades promise to amplify the power of this collective intelligence through enhanced platform features, deeper integration with other data sources, and sophisticated analytical approaches.

16.4.1. The Evolution of eBird and Beyond

eBird, launched in 2002 by the Cornell Lab of Ornithology and National Audubon Society, exemplifies the success of citizen science, amassing over a billion observations and providing critical data for scientific research, conservation planning, and policy decisions. Its data underpins status and trend analyses, informs land trust decisions, and powers tools like Merlin Bird ID. Building on this foundation, future citizen science platforms are likely to evolve in several key directions:

- **Enhanced Personalization:** Moving beyond a one-size-fits-all approach, platforms will increasingly tailor the user experience. AI could analyze a user's interests (e.g., target species, photography, listing), skill level (beginner to expert), and location to offer personalized challenges ("Find 3 new species for your county this month"), targeted data requests ("Help us survey for Species X in your area"), customized learning modules within the platform, or even feedback on observation quality. This personalization aims to keep users engaged and channel their efforts effectively.

- **Sophisticated Gamification:** While eBird incorporates basic listing and competitive elements, future platforms may integrate more sophisticated game mechanics inspired by successful examples like Pokémon Go. This could involve earning points or badges for specific achievements (e.g., submitting complete checklists, verifying identifications, contributing data for rare species), participating in collaborative team challenges, building virtual collections of observed species, or progressing through levels based on expertise or contribution. However, a critical consideration emerges: gamification, while effective at boosting participation numbers, must be carefully designed. Poorly implemented systems focusing solely on quantity (e.g., number of checklists submitted) could inadvertently incentivize low-quality data or lead to user burnout. Effective gamification must align with scientific goals, potentially rewarding data quality (e.g., checklists with detailed notes, media uploads, participation in specific protocols) and catering to the diverse motivations of participants, including the intrinsic desire of experts to contribute accurate data.
- **Advanced Data Quality Control:** Maintaining data integrity is paramount as datasets grow. While eBird currently employs automated filters and expert human reviewers, AI will play an increasingly significant role. AI algorithms could analyze complex patterns – considering rarity, location, time of year, observer experience level,and even cross-referencing with data from nearby acoustic sensors or weather radar – to flag potentially erroneous observations for review with greater accuracy. Automated feedback loops could also gently educate users about common identification errors or incomplete reporting, improving data quality over time.
- **Expansion Beyond Birds:** The success of eBird provides a model for monitoring. Platforms like eButterfly, iNaturalist, and others focused on insects, mammals, plants, or amphibians are likely to mature. The future may see greater interoperability or even integration between these platforms, fostering a more holistic, multi-taxa approach to biodiversity monitoring through citizen science.

16.4.2. The Integrated Data Ecosystem

A defining feature of the next era of citizen science will be the move towards a truly integrated data ecosystem, breaking down silos between different platforms and data types.

- **Connecting Platforms:** Currently, platforms like eBird and iNaturalist often operate independently, despite potential overlaps in users and geographic coverage. Future efforts will focus on greater integration, allowing data to flow more seamlessly between them and with other repositories, such as acoustic archives (Macaulay Library, Xeno-canto) or data streams from smart devices like AI bird feeders. Achieving this requires the adoption of standardized data formats (like Darwin Core) and robust Application Programming Interfaces (APIs). Studies have already shown that combining data from platforms like iNaturalist and eBird, despite their different user bases and data structures, can yield reliable ecological insights.
- **Fusing Citizen Science and Sensor Data:** The real power emerges when opportunistic citizen science data (providing broad geographic and temporal coverage but often with variable effort) is statistically combined with systematic data from sensor networks (acoustic recorders, camera traps, drones) or planned surveys. Integrated statistical models, often Bayesian hierarchical models, can

leverage the strengths of each data type. For example, presence-absence data from citizen science checklists can help calibrate presence-only data from sensors, while sensor data can provide fine-grained temporal information lacking in some citizen reports. This fusion allows for more accurate estimation of species distributions, abundance trends, and population dynamics, correcting for biases inherent in any single data source. Collecting presence-absence data (i.e., complete checklists noting all species detected *and* those looked for but not found) within citizen science programs is particularly valuable for enabling these integrated analyses.

- **Real-time Data Streams:** Imagine citizen science apps incorporating and visualizing near real-time data from other sources. A birder in the field might see a notification on their eBird app: "BirdCast detects high nocturnal migration intensity overhead" or "Acoustic sensor nearby just detected a calling Species Y." This provides immediate context, potentially guiding search efforts or enhancing the field experience.

The evolution of citizen science towards this integrated model signifies a shift in emphasis. While encouraging broad participation and data collection remains vital, the increasing value lies in the sophisticated synthesis and analysis of these massive, heterogeneous datasets. Platforms like eBird have demonstrated the power of large-scale data collection; the future involves developing the advanced AI and statistical modeling techniques needed to refine this data, correct for inherent biases, integrate it with other information streams (sensors, planned surveys), and ultimately extract reliable, actionable ecological knowledge about population trends, species distributions, and ecosystem health. The focus progresses from merely gathering observations to constructing a comprehensive, dynamic understanding of the avian world.

Part V. Autonomous Monitoring Systems

16.5 Autonomous Monitoring: Eyes and Ears in the Wild

Parallel to the growth of citizen science, the next two decades will see a dramatic expansion in the deployment of autonomous systems for monitoring wildlife and their environments. Networks of sensors and intelligent robots promise continuous, large-scale data collection in ways previously unimaginable, offering unprecedented insights but also presenting significant data management challenges.

16.5.1. The Rise of Bioacoustic Networks

Passive Acoustic Monitoring (PAM) using Autonomous Recording Units (ARUs) is rapidly becoming a cornerstone of ecological research and monitoring. ARUs offer several advantages: they are minimally invasive, can operate continuously for long periods (months or years) in remote or inaccessible locations, and their cost is decreasing, making large-scale deployments feasible. These sensor networks can capture rich soundscape data, providing information not only on birds but also on amphibians, mammals, insects, and the overall acoustic health of an ecosystem.

The primary challenge with PAM has been the sheer volume of data generated – potentially terabytes from a single deployment season. Manually analyzing this data is impractical. The breakthrough comes from AI, particularly deep learning algorithms trained to automatically process these recordings. Systems like BirdNET , BirdVoxDetect , and

SILIC employ techniques like Convolutional Neural Networks (CNNs) to analyze spectrograms (visual representations of sound). These AI tools can detect specific vocalizations, classify them to the species level (and sometimes even family or genus), and potentially estimate the number of calls or individuals with increasing accuracy. Research is actively focused on improving AI's ability to handle challenges like background noise, overlapping vocalizations from multiple individuals or species, and variations in calls across regions.

Future developments point towards near real-time analysis, possibly enabled by edge computing where AI processing occurs directly on the ARU or a local hub rather than relying solely on cloud processing. This could allow for immediate alerts, such as detecting the call of a critically endangered species, identifying illegal activities like gunshots, or tracking sudden surges in nocturnal flight calls during migration, enabling rapid conservation responses.

16.5.2. Advanced Drone Capabilities

Drones, or Unmanned Aerial Systems (UAS), offer complementary capabilities for autonomous monitoring, providing aerial perspectives and mobility. While early ecological applications often relied on human pilots, the trend is towards fully autonomous systems.

Projects like WildWing demonstrate the potential of open-source, affordable autonomous drones designed specifically for wildlife monitoring. These systems use onboard computer vision and AI to detect target species, track animal groups, and maintain optimal camera angles and distances for behavioral analysis, often achieving greater consistency than manual piloting. Automation standardizes data collection, making it more suitable for training computer vision models for behavior recognition.

Looking ahead, the concept of swarm robotics, inspired by the collective behavior of insects or birds, holds significant potential. Coordinated swarms of drones could work collaboratively to survey vast areas more efficiently, monitor multiple locations simultaneously, track dispersing individuals, or perform complex environmental mapping tasks. This decentralized approach offers robustness and scalability.

Drone sensor payloads are also becoming more sophisticated. Beyond high-resolution RGB cameras, drones are increasingly equipped with thermal imaging sensors (for detecting animals hidden by vegetation or active at night), LiDAR (for detailed 3D mapping of habitat structure), and multispectral or hyperspectral sensors (for analyzing vegetation health, water quality, or other environmental parameters). Onboard AI will be crucial for processing this multi-sensor data in real-time, enabling tasks like autonomous species identification from aerial imagery, real-time behavior classification, and adaptive flight planning based on sensor readings.

16.5.3. Integrated Sensor Fusion

The most powerful monitoring capabilities will arise not from any single technology but from the integration of data streams from multiple, diverse sensor types – a concept known as sensor fusion. Imagine combining:

- **Acoustic data** from ARU networks capturing vocal activity.

- **Visual data** from autonomous drones and fixed camera traps identifying species and behaviors.
- **Thermal data** revealing nocturnal activity or presence in dense cover.
- **Movement data** from GPS/biologging tags on individual animals.
- **Environmental data** from weather stations, soil sensors, water quality probes, or satellite remote sensing (providing habitat context).

Fusing these disparate data streams within unified analytical frameworks, often using AI and machine learning, allows for a much more holistic understanding of ecosystem dynamics. Researchers can correlate vocal activity with movement patterns, link behavior to specific habitat features identified by LiDAR, or understand how changing environmental conditions influence species distribution and interactions. This integrated approach moves towards the concept of Cyber-Physical Systems (CPS) in ecology, where physical sensing components are tightly integrated with computational intelligence to monitor and potentially interact with the environment in sophisticated ways.

However, this proliferation of autonomous monitoring brings significant challenges. The sheer volume of data generated – potentially terabytes or even petabytes per season from large networks – creates a "data deluge". Storing, transmitting, processing, and analyzing these massive datasets requires substantial investment in cloud infrastructure, high-performance computing, efficient AI algorithms, and robust data management strategies. The bottleneck in ecological monitoring is rapidly shifting from the ability to *collect* data to the capacity to effectively *manage and interpret* it.

Furthermore, the rise of autonomous monitoring redefines the nature of "fieldwork". Increasingly, routine tasks like surveys and basic observations will be handled by machines. The role of the human ecologist will evolve, focusing more on designing monitoring strategies, deploying and maintaining complex sensor networks, validating AI outputs, interpreting the complex patterns revealed by integrated data, and conducting targeted, hypothesis-driven investigations prompted by the findings of autonomous systems. Fieldwork becomes less about continuous manual observation and more about strategic oversight, high-level analysis, and responding to insights generated by technology.

Part VI. Reimagining Avitourism in the Digital Age

16.6. Avitourism Reimagined: Technology, Sustainability, and Experience

Avitourism, or bird-focused tourism, represents a significant and growing segment of the nature-based travel industry. Technology is poised to reshape this sector profoundly over the next two decades, influencing how trips are planned, how experiences are delivered, how sustainability is managed, and how economic benefits are distributed.

16.6.1 Personalized and Immersive Journeys

The travel planning process for avitourists will become increasingly personalized, moving beyond static guidebooks or generic tour packages. AI-powered platforms will analyze a traveler's specific interests (e.g., target life birds, preferred habitats, interest in photography), budget, travel style, time constraints, accessibility needs, and importantly, their stated sustainability preferences. By integrating this with real-time data streams – such as recent eBird sightings for target species, weather forecasts, and local conditions – these platforms can generate highly customized itineraries and recommendations.

During the trip, technology will enhance the field experience itself. Augmented reality, delivered via smart optics or mobile devices, can act as an interactive field guide. Imagine pointing your device (or looking through AR-enabled binoculars) at a historical site within a bird sanctuary and seeing a 3D reconstruction of its past, or receiving overlaid information about the specific microhabitats preferred by birds in the area. AR can provide real-time translation for signage or interactions with local guides, identify plants along a trail, or visualize bird migration paths overhead.

Virtual reality offers complementary possibilities. VR can provide immersive pre-trip "virtual tours" of potential destinations, lodges, or even specific birding trails, allowing travelers to make more informed decisions. For those unable to travel due to physical limitations, cost, or time constraints, VR could offer compelling simulated birding experiences, transporting them virtually to renowned global hotspots.

Furthermore, destinations themselves can leverage technology for smarter management. Sensor networks monitoring environmental conditions (e.g., water levels in wetlands, trail conditions) and visitor movements (anonymously, respecting privacy) can feed data into AI systems. This allows park managers or tour operators to dynamically manage visitor flow to avoid overcrowding, provide real-time updates on wildlife sightings or trail closures via apps, monitor environmental impacts, and potentially even personalize information or experiences for visitors within a reserve.

16.6.2. Technology for Sustainable Avitourism

While technology enhances the visitor experience, it also offers powerful tools to promote and manage sustainability within avitourism – a critical need given that tourism can negatively impact sensitive species and habitats.

Technology can be employed to monitor the impacts of tourism. Drones, fixed sensors (e.g., noise monitors, track counters), or targeted citizen science projects can collect data on wildlife disturbance levels near trails or lodges, habitat degradation, resource consumption (water, energy) at tourist facilities, and waste generation. This data provides objective feedback for adaptive management, allowing destinations to adjust policies or infrastructure to minimize negative footprints.

AI and dedicated mobile applications can actively guide tourists toward more sustainable choices. Platforms like Ecobnb already focus on eco-friendly accommodations, and future apps will likely offer more comprehensive guidance, suggesting low-impact transportation options, certified sustainable tour operators, locally owned businesses, and restaurants featuring local, sustainable food. Apps might integrate carbon footprint calculators for travel segments and facilitate purchasing credible carbon offsets. AI-driven personalization can be specifically leveraged here; if a user expresses interest in sustainability, the platform can prioritize and prominently feature eco-certified or community-benefiting options in their recommendations. This creates a potential synergy where personalization enhances not only enjoyment but also responsible behavior.

The rise of high-fidelity VR and AR experiences also introduces the possibility of virtual tourism acting as a partial substitute for physical travel, thereby reducing the carbon emissions and physical pressures associated with visiting fragile ecosystems. While unlikely to replace the desire for authentic, in-person experiences entirely, virtual options could satisfy curiosity for some destinations or serve as a low-impact alternative, particularly for educational purposes or brief explorations. However, this potential substitution raises complex economic questions regarding the potential loss of revenue for communities heavily reliant on physical tourism. Finding a balance where virtual experiences complement rather than completely replace physical travel, perhaps by driving interest or providing accessibility, will be crucial.

Technology can also assist in managing access to sensitive birding sites. Real-time data on bird nesting activity or visitor numbers could inform dynamic access controls, such as timed entry systems or temporary trail closures, implemented and communicated via apps or smart signage. Conversely, the increased ease of finding rare or sensitive species through sophisticated ID tools and real-time sighting alerts could potentially concentrate visitor pressure, exacerbating disturbance risks if not managed carefully.

16.6.3 Future Economic Models

Technology will also influence the economic structures supporting avitourism and its potential links to conservation finance.

Data integration is key for sustainable development. By analyzing patterns in tourist movements (from booking data or anonymized location data), combined with ecological data (bird distribution, habitat quality from sensors) and citizen science reports (eBird hotspots), destinations and tour operators can identify promising areas for sustainable avitourism development, target marketing efforts more effectively, and guide infrastructure investments (e.g., placing hides or trails strategically).

New models for conservation finance facilitated by technology may emerge. Imagine micro-payments automatically triggered when a tourist uses an AR feature highlighting a conservation project at a site, or dynamic pricing for park entry based on real-time conservation funding needs. Blockchain technology could offer transparent platforms for tourists to directly fund specific local conservation initiatives, tracking how their contributions are used. Technology can bridge the gap between the economic benefits of tourism and the costs of conserving the natural assets that attract tourists.

Finally, technology platforms hold the potential to empower local communities and guides. Online booking platforms, virtual tour guiding opportunities, and apps connecting travelers directly with local service providers could help ensure a larger share of tourism revenue remains within the host community, supporting local livelihoods and incentivizing conservation stewardship. However, realizing this potential requires addressing the digital divide and ensuring local communities have the necessary access, training, and infrastructure to participate effectively in the digital tourism economy.

Part VII. Frontiers in Ornithological Research

16.7. New Frontiers in Avian Research

The technological advancements reshaping birdwatching and monitoring are simultaneously opening up new frontiers in ornithological research. AI, advanced sensors, computer vision, and genomics are converging to allow scientists to ask and answer questions about avian biology, behavior, ecology, and evolution at unprecedented scales and resolutions.

16.7.1 AI and Computer Vision in Behavioral Ecology

Understanding animal behavior is fundamental to ecology, but traditional methods (direct observation, manual video analysis) are often time-consuming and limited in scope. Computer vision, powered by deep learning, is set to revolutionize behavioral studies.

Researchers are developing systems that can automatically generate detailed ethograms (records of behavior) from video footage captured by drones, fixed cameras in aviaries, or even nest cams. AI algorithms can be trained to detect, classify, and quantify a wide range of behaviors – such as foraging techniques, courtship displays, nest provisioning rates, vigilance, aggression, and complex social interactions – across multiple individuals simultaneously. Analyzing movement in three dimensions presents unique challenges, including occlusions and changing appearance, but multi-camera systems and sophisticated tracking algorithms are being developed to address this. This moves research beyond simple presence/absence or activity budgets towards fine-grained, quantitative analysis of behavioral dynamics.

A significant challenge in behavioral studies is tracking individuals over time, especially in species where individuals look very similar. While tagging provides a solution, it can be invasive and impractical for large populations or small species. Computer vision offers a potential alternative through automated individual recognition. AI models are being trained to identify individuals based on subtle, unique patterns in plumage, facial features, or even gait, learned from large datasets of images or videos. While still a developing field, particularly for birds in complex natural environments, success in other taxa suggests significant potential for non-invasive, long-term monitoring of individual life histories and social relationships.

By combining automated behavior classification with individual tracking (whether through vision or tags), researchers can map complex social networks, quantify predator-prey interactions, analyze the dynamics of collective movement (like flocking), and understand how individual behavioral variation contributes to population-level patterns.

16.7.2. Revolutionizing Movement Ecology

The study of animal movement has already been transformed by technologies like GPS tags and geolocators. The next wave of innovation lies in analyzing the massive datasets generated by these tags, as well as integrating data from other sources like the Motus Wildlife Tracking System (a network of automated radio telemetry towers) and weather surveillance radar (used by projects like BirdCast).

AI and machine learning algorithms are essential for extracting meaningful patterns from these large, often complex movement datasets. They can identify distinct behavioral states from movement characteristics (e.g., foraging, resting, migrating), detect subtle shifts in migratory timing or routes, pinpoint critical stopover sites used by populations, and model the factors influencing movement decisions.

A key advancement will be the fusion of movement data with diverse environmental datasets. Imagine integrating high-resolution GPS tracks with real-time weather data, detailed habitat maps derived from satellite or drone-based remote sensing, and even soundscape information from acoustic sensors. This multi-layered approach allows researchers to understand *why* birds move the way they do – how they respond to weather fronts, navigate using landscape features, select habitats based on resource availability (perhaps indicated by acoustic activity), or alter routes due to human disturbance.

Predictive modeling of migration, exemplified by BirdCast, will also become more sophisticated. Future iterations are expected to incorporate a wider range of data inputs (including refined citizen science data and potentially acoustic detections of nocturnal flight calls), employ more advanced AI models, and provide forecasts with higher spatial and temporal resolution. Goals include predicting migration intensity at the county level, distinguishing between birds actively migrating versus those landing, and potentially even offering species-specific forecasts. Such real-time, high-resolution forecasts have direct conservation applications, such as informing "Lights Out" initiatives during peak migration nights to reduce building collisions.

16.7.3. Genomics and Integrative Ornithology

The technological toolkit extends to the molecular level, bridging field ecology with genomics. Advances in genomic sequencing and the ability to collect genetic material non-invasively (e.g., from shed feathers, eggshell fragments, or environmental DNA (eDNA) sampled from water or soil) create exciting opportunities.

Researchers can now combine high-resolution behavioral data (from computer vision analysis), detailed movement tracks (from tags or radar), and comprehensive environmental data with genomic information from the same individuals or populations. This integrative approach allows exploration of the genetic basis of complex traits like migratory behavior, dispersal patterns, song learning, or adaptation to specific environments. It enables studies of eco-evolutionary dynamics in near real-time, investigating how populations are genetically adapting (or failing to adapt) to rapid environmental changes like climate change or habitat alteration.

This convergence of field technology, AI-driven analysis, and genomics embodies a truly integrative ornithology, allowing researchers to connect genes, physiology, behavior, movement, and environmental context across multiple scales. This holistic perspective is crucial for understanding the fundamental processes shaping avian life and for developing effective, evolutionarily informed conservation strategies. The ability to generate high-resolution, multidimensional, and standardized data across complex systems represents a paradigm shift, moving ecological research from describing patterns to understanding the underlying processes and mechanisms driving them. Furthermore, the integration of multi-source, real-time data streams coupled with advanced AI modeling inches closer to the concept of creating dynamic 'digital twins' of ecosystems or populations. These virtual replicas could allow researchers and managers to simulate environmental changes, test the potential effectiveness of different conservation interventions, and predict future trends with greater confidence before implementing actions in the real world.

Part VIII. Ethical Horizons and Governance

16.8. Ethical Considerations in the High-Tech Era

The transformative potential of technology in birdwatching, avitourism, and avian research is undeniable. However, this rapid innovation brings a host of complex ethical considerations that demand careful attention and proactive management. Ensuring that these powerful tools are used responsibly, equitably, and in ways that genuinely benefit both birds and people is paramount.

16.8.1. Privacy, Data Governance, and Security

The collection and sharing of vast amounts of data raise significant privacy and governance issues. For citizen science platforms, questions arise regarding the ownership and usage rights of data submitted by volunteers. Clear, transparent policies are needed, outlining how data will be used, who can access it, and how contributor privacy is protected, especially as location data becomes increasingly precise. The potential for misuse of checklist locations, even if anonymized, requires ongoing consideration.

The handling of sensitive species data presents a direct conflict between the need for information to guide conservation and the risk of facilitating exploitation (e.g., poaching, targeted disturbance) if precise locations become public. Platforms like eBird have implemented protocols to obscure sensitive data, but the effectiveness of these measures needs continuous evaluation as data integration makes information potentially more discoverable. The precise location data generated by autonomous monitoring systems (drones, sensors) also carries inherent risks if security is breached or data is shared inappropriately.

Widespread autonomous surveillance by drones and sensor networks also introduces broader ethical questions about monitoring in natural landscapes, which may include private lands or areas used by the public. Establishing clear regulations, ethical guidelines for deployment, and mechanisms for public accountability is crucial. Furthermore, securing the large, centralized databases holding ecological and citizen science data against breaches or unauthorized access is a critical technical and ethical responsibility.

16.8.2. Algorithmic Bias and the Digital Divide

AI systems are not inherently objective; they can reflect and even amplify biases present in the data they are trained on. In the context of birding and conservation, this could manifest in several ways:

- **Geographic Bias:** Models trained predominantly on data from well-birded regions (e.g., North America, Europe) may perform poorly in under-represented areas, potentially leading to inaccurate species identifications or flawed conservation priorities.
- **Species Bias:** Common, easily detectable species might be over-represented in training data, leading to models that are less accurate for rare, cryptic, or less vocal species.

- **Observer Bias:** If training data reflects the biases of human observers (e.g., preferential recording of certain species), AI may learn and perpetuate these biases.
- **Demographic Bias:** If participation in citizen science or access to technology is skewed demographically, the resulting data and the AI trained on it may not reflect the full picture, potentially leading to conservation actions that do not benefit all communities equitably.

Addressing AI bias requires conscious effort in curating diverse and representative training datasets, developing algorithms designed for fairness, rigorously auditing models for biased performance, and ensuring transparency in how AI-driven decisions are made. The "base rate fallacy" is also a concern, where AI might confidently identify a rare species even when the statistical prior probability of that species being present is extremely low, requiring careful interpretation.

Compounding these issues is the digital divide – the unequal access to technology, internet connectivity, and the skills needed to use them. As birding and conservation become increasingly reliant on sophisticated digital tools, there is a risk of excluding individuals and communities in under-resourced regions, both domestically and globally. This could exacerbate existing inequalities, limiting participation in citizen science, access to information, and the ability to benefit from or contribute to conservation efforts. Bridging this divide requires investment in infrastructure, development of user-friendly and accessible tools (including offline functionality), capacity building programs, and ensuring that technological solutions are co-designed with diverse user groups.

16.8.3. Minimizing Wildlife Disturbance

While technology offers less invasive monitoring methods compared to some traditional techniques, the deployment and use of these tools are not without impact. Ethical guidelines must evolve to address new potential sources of disturbance.

The physical deployment of sensors or the operation of drones requires careful planning to minimize habitat damage and direct disturbance to wildlife. Noise from drones, repeated presence of researchers for maintenance, or poorly placed equipment can negatively affect sensitive species, particularly during breeding or nesting seasons. Updated best practices and potentially regulations are needed for drone operation near wildlife areas, building on existing concerns and bans in places like US National Parks.

For birders and avitourists, existing ethical codes, such as those from the American Birding Association (ABA) and Audubon, need to be reinforced and potentially adapted for the high-tech era. Does the ease of AI identification encourage closer approaches? Could AR overlays distract from observing bird stress signals? Does the availability of precise real-time location data incentivize chasing rare birds? Particular caution is needed regarding the use of audio playback, which can stress birds and disrupt behavior, especially for sensitive species or during nesting; technology makes playback easier than ever, demanding greater user restraint. Ethical photography guidelines, emphasizing distance, avoiding flash (especially for nocturnal birds), not altering habitat, and responsible sharing of images (especially regarding location data for sensitive species), remain critically important. Drones are generally discouraged or prohibited for bird photography due to high disturbance potential.

Finally, the cumulative impact of disturbance must be considered. Even if individual interactions are brief, the increased number of people potentially drawn to sensitive sites by technology, combined with the presence of monitoring equipment, could lead to chronic stress for wildlife populations.

16.8.4. Maintaining the Human-Nature Connection

A more philosophical ethical question concerns how technology mediates our relationship with nature. Do tools that provide instant identification or overlay digital information enhance our understanding and appreciation, or do they create a barrier to direct, unmediated experience and personal discovery? Does relying heavily on AI diminish the satisfaction and connection derived from developing personal expertise and observational skills through time and effort? Finding a balance is crucial – integrating technology in ways that augment observation and understanding without replacing the intrinsic value of patient observation, quiet contemplation, and the development of personal fieldcraft. Promoting mindful technology use and continuing to value traditional skills will be important in navigating this shift.

Technology acts as a powerful amplifier. It can amplify our ability to understand and conserve birds, but it can equally amplify existing societal biases, create new inequalities through the digital divide, and increase ethical risks like disturbance or privacy violations if not carefully managed. This amplification effect necessitates that ethical considerations are woven into the design, development, and deployment phases of new technologies, rather than being treated as an afterthought. Furthermore, the rapid pace of technological innovation often outstrips the development of corresponding ethical frameworks, regulations, and social norms. This creates a critical lag, highlighting the need for ongoing, adaptive dialogue and governance structures involving a wide range of stakeholders – including technologists, ecologists, social scientists, ethicists, policymakers, conservation organizations, and the public – to anticipate challenges and guide responsible innovation in this dynamic field (refer to Table 15.2 for informing on key ethical challenges and mitigation strategies regarding the future birding technologies.

Table 16.2 - Key Ethical Challenges and Mitigation Strategies for Future Birding Technologies

Ethical Challenge Category	Specific Challenges	Potential Mitigation Strategies / Best Practices
Data Privacy & Security	Misuse of citizen science location data; Exploitation risk from sensitive species data; Drone surveillance concerns; Data breaches.	Robust data anonymization/aggregation; Clear data use policies & user consent; Strict access controls for sensitive data; Secure data storage & transmission; Regulations on autonomous surveillance.
AI Bias & Inequity	Geographic/species/observer bias in AI models; Inaccurate conservation priorities; Widening digital divide.	Diverse & representative training data; Algorithmic fairness audits & bias mitigation techniques; Transparency in AI decision-making; Investment in accessible tools & infrastructure; Capacity building programs.
Wildlife Disturbance	Sensor/drone deployment impacts; Tech facilitating closer approaches/playback; Drone	Updated ethical codes & best practices (e.g., ABA, Audubon); Minimum approach distances; Restrictions on

	photography risks; Cumulative impacts.	playback/drones; Careful site selection for tech; Monitoring cumulative effects.
Human-Nature Connection	Technology mediating experience; Potential "deskilling" of traditional birding skills; Over-reliance on AI reducing personal discovery.	Promoting mindful technology use; Integrating tech as a tool, not a replacement; Emphasizing value of fieldcraft & direct observation; Designing tech to enhance, not obstruct, connection.

16.9. Conclusion

The two decades stretching from 2025 to 2045 are poised to fundamentally reshape the landscape of birdwatching, avitourism, and avian science. The convergence of artificial intelligence, augmented reality, ubiquitous sensing, and autonomous systems promises capabilities previously confined to science fiction. We anticipate a future where AI instantly identifies birds through smart binoculars displaying AR overlays of ecological data, where citizen science platforms offer deeply personalized and gamified experiences integrated with vast sensor networks, where autonomous drones and acoustic sensors provide continuous monitoring across entire landscapes, and where avitourism becomes more personalized, potentially more sustainable, and technologically enriched. Research will delve deeper into the mechanisms driving avian behavior, movement, and evolution, enabled by the automated analysis of high-resolution, multidimensional data.

However, realizing the profound positive potential of these transformations – for enhancing human enjoyment, advancing scientific understanding, and driving effective conservation – is not guaranteed. It hinges critically on a collective commitment to responsible innovation. The ethical challenges associated with data privacy, algorithmic bias, equitable access, wildlife disturbance, and the potential erosion of the direct human-nature connection must be addressed proactively and thoughtfully. Technology is an amplifier; it will magnify our intentions and our oversights alike. Therefore, ethical frameworks must evolve alongside technological capabilities, guided by ongoing dialogue and collaboration.

Ultimately, the human element remains central. Technology provides powerful tools, but it is human passion, curiosity, expertise, and ethical stewardship that will guide their application. Citizen scientists meticulously collecting data, researchers interpreting complex patterns, conservationists translating insights into action, tourists making responsible choices, and developers designing ethical systems – all play vital roles. The future demands collaboration across disciplines and sectors – bridging ecology, computer science, social science, ethics, policy, industry, and the public – to navigate the complexities and harness the opportunities ahead. If guided by wisdom and a shared commitment to the avian world, the coming technological wave holds the potential to foster a future where human ingenuity and a deep appreciation for nature work synergistically for the global understanding, enjoyment, and conservation of birds.

The following Table 15.3 provides a synthesized overview of Chapter 15, organizing its core content into thematic sections, key technologies, innovations, and their implications. It serves as a roadmap to understand the diverse and interconnected ways technological advancements are reshaping birdwatching, avitourism, and avian research between 2025 and 2045.

Table 16.3 - Synthesis of Chapter 16 – The Smart Birder's Horizon: Technological Domains, Innovations, and Implications (2025–2045)

Theme / Subtopic	Key Technologies or Concepts	Main Innovations	Implications for Birding, Tourism, or Science
The Augmented Observer	Smart optics, AR, AI ID apps, edge computing	Multi-modal identification, AR overlays, real-time suggestions	Enhances ID accuracy; democratizes birding; risk of deskilling
Citizen Science 2.0	eBird evolution, gamification, integrated platforms	Personalization, platform interoperability, sensor fusion	Boosts participation and data richness; raises quality concerns
Autonomous Monitoring	ARUs, drones, sensor fusion, AI analysis	Real-time acoustic and visual data, swarm robotics	Expands monitoring capacity; requires data infrastructure
Avitourism Reimagined	AR/VR, sustainability apps, dynamic planning tools	Personalized itineraries, virtual birding, low-impact travel	Enhances experiences; supports management; digital divide risk
New Research Frontiers	AI, computer vision, genomics, data integration	Automated behavior tracking, movement ecology, eco-evolution	Enables high-resolution, multidimensional avian studies
Ethical Challenges	Data privacy, algorithmic bias, disturbance, human connection	Mitigation strategies, inclusive access, mindful design	Ensures responsible innovation; preserves bird-human ethics

The Reference List presented at the end of Chapter 12, next section, includes a selection of key publications and sources that supported the research and writing on birdwatching. Organized alphabetically, this list offers a sample of the broader literature consulted, but it does not include all references used throughout the book. Each chapter contains its own section for "Works Cited," which provides additional sources, weblinks, and materials relevant to that specific content. Together, these references reflect the academic and practical foundations of the work.

References

A

- ABA. (2003). *Principles of Birding Ethics*. American Birding Association. Available at: http://www.aba.org/about/ethics.html (accessed 15 April 2014).
- ABA. (2024). *American Birding Association homepage*. Available at: https://www.aba.org/american-birding-association/ (accessed 15 October 2024).
- Audubon. (2023). *U.S. bird populations continue alarming decline, new report finds*. National Audubon Society. https://www.audubon.org/news/us-bird-populations-continue-alarming-decline-new-report-finds

B

- Bernardon, B. & Nassar, P.M. (2012). Birdwatching in the Mamiraua Lake as an appeal to ecotourists/birdwatchers. *UAKARI* 8(2), 49–64.
- Biggs, D., Turpie, J., Fabricius, C. & Spenceley, A. (2011). The value of avitourism for conservation and job creation – an analysis from South Africa. *Conservation and Society* 9(1), 80–90.
- Birdcount.org. (2023). *2023 final results – Great Backyard Bird Count*. https://www.birdcount.org/gbbc-2023-results
- BirdLife Australia. (2012). *Ethical Birding Guidelines*. Available at: http://www.birdlife.org.au/documents/POL-Ethical-Birding-Guidelines.pdf (accessed 15 April 2014).
- BirdLife International. (2013). *Datazone Species Search*. Available at: http://www.birdlife.org/datazone/species/search (accessed 15 April 2014).
- Birds of India. (2009). *The ethic and science of bird call playback*. Available at: http://www.kolkatabirds.com/callplayback.htm (accessed 15 April 2014).
- Bireline, H.R. (2005). *Recreation specialization and reports of potential impact behaviors among birders attending birding festivals*. (Unpublished master's thesis) University of Florida, Florida.
- Bonney, R., Cooper, C. B., Dickinson, J., Kelling, S., Phillips, T., Rosenberg, K. V., & Shirk, J. (2009). Citizen science: A developing tool for expanding science knowledge and scientific literacy. *BioScience, 59*(11), 977–984. https://doi.org/10.1525/bio.2009.59.11.9
- Bonta, M. (2010). Ornithophilia: Thoughts on geography in birding. *The Geographical Review* 100(2), 139–151.
- Booth, J.E., Gaston, K.J., Evans, K.L. & Arnsworth, P.R. (2011). The value of species rarity in biodiversity recreation: A birdwatching example. *Biological Conservation* 144, 2728–2732.
- Bovarnick, A., Fernandez-Baca, J., Galindo, J. & Negret, H. (2010). *Financial sustainability of protected areas in Latin America and the Caribbean: Investment policy guideline*. United Nations Development Program (UNDP) and The Nature Conservancy (TNC).

- Brock, M., Fraser, I., Law, C., Mitchell, S. & Roberts, D.L. (2021). An economic analysis of twitching behavior and species rarity. *Journal of Environmental Economics and Policy* 10(1), 54–73.
- Buckley, R.C. (2004). *Environmental Impacts of Ecotourism*. CAB International, Cambridge, UK.
- Burger, J., Gochfeld, M. & Niles, L.J. (1995). Ecotourism and birds in coastal New Jersey: Contrasting responses of birds, tourists, and managers. *Environmental Conservation* 22(1), 56–65.
- Burr, S.W. & Scott, D. (2004). Application of the recreational specialization framework to understanding visitors to the Great Salt Lake bird festival. *Event Management* 9(1–2), 27–37.
- Butler, R.W. (2021). The potential impacts of climate change on avitourism to islands: The example of Fair Isle, Scotland. *International Journal of Islands Research* 2(1), 4.

C

- Çakici, A.C. & Harman, S. (2007). Importance of destination attributes affecting destination choice of Turkish birdwatchers. *Journal of Commerce & Tourism Faculty* 1, 131–145.
- Callaghan, C.T., Benson, I., Major, R.E., Martin, J.M., Longden, T. et al. (2020). Birds are valuable: The case of vagrants. *Journal of Ecotourism* 19(1), 82–92.
- Callaghan, C.T., Slater, M., Major, R.E., Morrison, M., Martin, J.M. et al. (2018). Travelling birds generate eco-travellers: The economic potential of vagrant birdwatching. *Human Dimensions of Wildlife* 23(1), 71–82.
- CBRO – Comitê Brasileiro de Registros Ornitológicos. (2021). *Listas das aves do Brasil – 13ª edição*. https://www.cbro.org.br
- CBI. (2021). *The European market potential for birdwatching tourism*. Available at: https://www.cbi.eu/market-information/tourism/birdwatching-tourism/market-potential (accessed 15 October 2024).
- Che, D. (2003). Guided birding tours: An examination of the market, important tour parameters, and participant demographics. In: Murdy, J.J. (ed.) *Proceedings of the 2003 Northeastern Recreation Research Symposium*. USDA Forest Service, New York, pp. 194–202.
- CNA Brasil. (2024). *Exportações do agronegócio brasileiro alcançam recorde em 2023*. Confederação da Agricultura e Pecuária do Brasil. https://www.cnabrasil.org.br
- Clynes, T. (2017). How birding tourism can support communities and foster conservation. *National Audubon Society*. Available at: https://www.audubon.org/news/how-birding-tourism-can-support-communities-and-foster-conservation (accessed 5 April 2024).
- Cole, J.S. & Scott, D. (1999). Segmenting participation in wildlife watching: A comparison of casual wildlife watchers and serious birders. *Human Dimensions of Wildlife* 4(4), 44–61.

- Collins-Kreiner, N., Malkinson, D., Labinger, Z. & Shtainvarz, R. (2013). Are birders good for birds? Bird conservation through tourism management in the Hula Valley, Israel. *Tourism Management* 38, 31–42.
- Connell, J. (2009). Birdwatching, twitching and tourism: Towards an Australian perspective. *Australian Geographer* 40(2), 203–217.
- Conradie, N. & van Zyl, C. (2013). Agreement of the international avitourist market to ecotourism principles: A South African development perspective. *African Journal of Business Management* 7(30), 3013–3021.
- Conradie, N. & van Zyl, C. (2016). Behavioral involvement in avitourism: An international case study. *African Journal of Hospitality, Tourism, and Leisure* 5(2), 1–23.
- Conradie, N. & van Zyl, C. (2020). A conceptual literacy framework for sustainable avitourism to ensure quality birding experiences. In: Gunadi, I.M.A., Kausar, D.R., Firmansyah, R. & Kennell, J. (eds) *Culture, People and Technology – The Driving Forces for Tourism Cities: Proceedings of 8th ITSA Biennial Conference 2020*. International Tourism Studies Association, p. 586.
- Conradie, N., van Zyl, C. & Strasheim, A. (2013). What inspires birders to migrate South towards Africa? A quantitative measure of international avitourist motivation. *Southern African Business Review* 17(1), 128–167.
- Cordell, H.K. & Herbert, N.G. (2002). The popularity of birding is still growing. *Birding* 34(1), 54–61.
- Czajkowski, M., Giergiczny, M., Kronenberg, J. & Tryjanowski, P. (2014). The economic recreational value of a white stork nesting colony: A case of 'stork village' in Poland. *Tourism Management* 40, 352–360.

D

- Dickie, I., Hughes, J. & Esteban, A. (2006). *Watched like never before…the local economic benefits of spectacular bird species*. RSPB, Beds, UK.
- Dickinson, R. & Edmondson, B. (1996). Golden Wings. *American Demographics* 18(12), 47–49.
- Dooley, S. (2007). *Anoraks to zitting cisticola – a whole lot of stuff about birdwatching*. Allen & Unwin, Crows Nest, Australia.
- DTI. (2010). *Avitourism in South Africa. Research and analysis report*. Department of Trade and Industry, Pretoria, South Africa.

E

- Eagles, P.J.F. (2014). Research priorities in park tourism. *Journal of Sustainable Tourism* 22(4), 528–549.
- Embratur. (2023). *WTM: Em ação inédita, Embratur apoia criação da Associação Nacional de Turismo de Observação de Vida Silvestre*. https://www.embratur.com.br
- Emerton, L., Bishop, J. & Thomas, L. (2006). *Sustainable financing of protected areas: A global review of challenges and options*. IUCN, Gland, Switzerland.

- Eubanks, T., Kerlinger, P. & Payne, R.H. (1993). High Island, Texas. Case Study in Avitourism. *Birding* 25(6), 415–420.
- Eubanks Jr, T. & Stoll, J.R. (1999). *Avitourism in Texas. Two studies of birders in Texas and their potential support for the proposed World Birding Center*. Fermata Inc., Austin, Texas.
- Eubanks Jr, T.L., Stoll, J.R. & Ditton, R.B. (2004). Understanding the diversity of eight birder sub-populations: Socio-demographic characteristics, motivations, expenditures and net benefits. *Journal of Ecotourism* 3(3), 151–172.

F

- Figgis, P., Humann, D. & Looker, M. (2005). Conservation on private land in Australia. *Parks* 15(2), 19–29.
- Future Market Insights. (2024). *Ornithology Tourism Market Outlook from 2024 to 2034*. Available at: https://www.futuremarketinsights.com/reports/ornithology-tourism-sector-perspective-and-outlook (accessed 15 October 2024).

G

- Gallagher, A.J. & Hammerschlag, N. (2011). Global shark currency: The distribution, frequency, and economic value of shark ecotourism. *Current Issues in Tourism* 14, 797–812.
- Gallo, J.A., Pasquini, L., Reyers, B. & Cowling, R.M. (2009). The role of private conservation areas in biodiversity representation and target achievement within the Little Karoo region, South Africa. *Biological Conservation* 142, 446–454.
- Gosálvez Rey, R.U., Navas Berbel, A. & Aleja, D. (2022). Birdwatching as a new tourist activity in El Hierro Geopark. In: Dóniz-Páez, J. & Pérez, N.M. (eds) *El Hierro Island Global Geopark: Diversity of Volcanic Heritage for Geotourism*. Springer, Cham, Switzerland, pp. 95–104.
- Green, R. & Jones, D.N. (2010). *Practices, Needs and Attitudes of Bird-Watching Tourists in Australia*. CRC for Sustainable Tourism Pty Ltd, Gold Coast, Australia.
- Gregory, R.D., Gibbons, D.W. & Donald, P.F. (2004). Bird census and survey techniques. In: Sutherland, W.J., Newton, I. & Green, R.E. (eds) *Bird Ecology and Conservation: A Handbook of Techniques*. Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, UK, pp. 17–55.
- Grihault, N. (2023). *8 of the best birdwatching destinations around the world*. Available at: https://restless.co.uk/travel/the-best-birdwatching-destinations-around-the-world/ (accessed 10 April 2024).
- Guimarães, M.H., Nunes, L.C., Madureira, L., Santos, J.L., Boski, T. et al. (2015). Measuring birdwatchers preferences: A case for using online networks and mixed-mode surveys. *Tourism Management* 46, 102–113.
- Guitart, D., Pickering, C. & Byrne, J. (2012). Past results and future directions in urban community gardens research. *Urban Forestry & Urban Greening* 11(4), 364–373.
- Gurung, H. (2012). Nepal: A paradise for birdwatching. *Himalayas* 19, 20–23.

H

- Hale, A.M. (2006). Group living in the Black-breasted Wood-quail and the use of playbacks as a survey technique. *The Condor* 108(1), 107–119.
- Harwood, S. (2008). Planning and development of community based tourism: Bird watching destinations. In: Richardson, S., Fredline, L., Patiar, A. & Ternel, M. (eds) *Proceedings of the 18th Annual CAUTHE Conference (on Disc)*. Griffith University, Gold Coast, QLD.
- Hill, S.G., Cable, T.T. & Scott, D. (2010). Wildlife-based recreation as economic windfall: A rhetorical analysis of public discourse on birding. *Applied Environmental Education and Communication* 9(4), 224–232.
- Hodur, N.M., Leistritz, F.L. & Wolfe, K. (2004). Characteristics and expenditures of participants in the Potholes and Prairie birding festival. *Department of Agribusiness and Applied Economics, North Dakota State University, Fargo, USA.*
- Hottola, P. (2009). Coastal bird tourism in Namibia: Postcolonial resources and restraints. In: Hottola, P. (ed.) *Tourism Strategies and Local Responses in Southern Africa*. CAB International, Wallingford, UK, pp. 105–126.
- Hughes, R. (2005). *IBA Local Conservation Groups and Caretakers. Learning from Early Experience and Future Directions. Review of Global experience of IBA Local Conservation Groups*. Available at: https://www.yumpu.com/en/document/view/9612175/iba-local-conservation-groups-and-caretakers-birdlife-international (accessed 15 April 2014).
- Hvenegaard, G.T. (2002). Birder specialization differences in conservation involvement, demographics, and motivations. *Human Dimensions of Wildlife* 7(1), 21–36.
- Hvenegaard, G.T., Butler, J.R. & Krystofiak, D.K. (1989). Economic values of bird watching at Point Pelee National Park, Canada. *Wildlife Society Bulletin* 17(4), 526–531.
- Hvenegaard, G.T. & Dearden, P. (1998a). Ecotourism versus tourism in a Thai national park. *Annals of Tourism Research* 25, 700–720.
- Hvenegaard, G.T. & Dearden, P. (1998b). Linking ecotourism and biodiversity conservation: A case study of Doi Inthanon National Park, Thailand. *Singapore Journal of Tropical Geography* 19(2), 193–211.

I

- IEA – Instituto de Economia Agrícola. (2024). *Balança comercial dos agronegócios paulista e brasileiro em 2023*. https://www.iea.sp.gov.br
- IPEA – Instituto de Pesquisa Econômica Aplicada. (2024). *Comércio exterior do agronegócio em 2023. Carta de Conjuntura*. https://www.ipea.gov.br
- Isaacs, J.C. & Chi, Y.N. (2005). A travel-cost analysis of a birdwatching festival: The Grand Isle migratory bird celebration. *Louisiana Department of Wildlife and Fisheries, Baton Rouge, USA.*

J

- Jackson, S. (2007). Attitudes towards the environment and ecotourism of stakeholders in the UK tourism industry with particular reference to ornithological tour operators. *Journal of Ecotourism* 6(1), 34–66.

- Janeczko, E., Łukowski, A., Bielinis, E., Woźnicka, M., Janeczko, K. et al. (2021). "Not just a hobby, but a lifestyle": Characteristics, preferences and self-perception of individuals with different levels of involvement in birdwatching. *PLoS One* 16(7), e0255359.

- Jones, C.A., Plante, S. & Shackelford, C.E. (2008). The Great Texas Birding Classic: A birdwatching tournament that protects and promotes critical Texas Gulf coast habitat. In: *Proceedings of the Fourth International Partners in Flight Conference: Tundra to Tropics*. McAllen, Texas, pp. 479–482.

- Jones, D.N. (2011). An appetite for connection: Why we need to understand the effect and value of feeding wild birds. *Emu* 111(2), i–vii.

- Jones, D.N. & Buckley, R. (2001). *Birdwatching Tourism in Australia*. CRC for Sustainable Tourism, Brisbane, Australia.

- Jones, D.N. & Nealson, T. (2005). Impacts of bird watching on communities and species: Long-term and short-term responses in rainforest and eucalypt habitats. *CRC for Sustainable Tourism, Brisbane, Australia.*

- Jones, D.N. & Reynolds, S.J. (2008). Feeding birds in our towns and cities: A global research opportunity. *Journal of Avian Biology* 39(3), 265–271.

K

- Kahl, S., Wood, C. M., Eibl, M., & Klinck, H. (2021). BirdNET: A deep learning solution for avian diversity monitoring. *Ecological Informatics, 61*, 101236. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.ecoinf.2021.101236

- Kelling, S., Johnston, A., Hochachka, W. M., Iliff, M., Fink, D., Gerbracht, J., Lagoze, C., & Wong, W-K. (2015). Can observation skills of citizen scientists be estimated using species accumulation curves? *PLoS ONE, 10*(10), e0139600. https://doi.org/10.1371/journal.pone.0139600

- Kerlinger, P. (1993). Birding economics and birder demographics studies as conservation tools. In: Finch, D.M. & Stangel, P.W. (eds) *Status and Management of Neotropical Migratory Birds*. USDA Forest Service, Washington, DC, pp. 32–38.

- Kerlinger, P. & Brett, J. (1995). Hawk Mountain Sanctuary: A case study of birder visitation and birding economics. In: Knight, R. & Gutzwiller, K. (eds) *Wildlife and Recreationists: Coexistence through Management and Research*. Island Press, Washington, DC, pp. 169–181.

- Kim, A.K., Keuning, J., Robertson, J. & Kleindorfer, S. (2010). Understanding the birdwatching tourism market in Queensland, Australia. *Anatolia* 21(2), 227–247.

- Kim, C., Scott, D., Thigpen, J.F. & Kim, S-S. (1998). Economic impact of a birding festival. *Festival Management & Event Tourism* 5(1–2), 51–58.

- Kronenberg, J. (2014). Environmental impacts of the use of ecosystem services: Case study of birdwatching. *Environmental Management* 54(3), 617–630.

- Kyoratungye-Karemente, A. (2007). *A web-based tour guide information system for selection of bird habitat location in avi-tourism*. (Unpublished master's thesis) Makerere University, Uganda.

L

- La Rouche, G.P. (2001). *Birding in the United States: A demographic and economic analysis*. US Fish & Wildlife Service, Washington, DC.
- Lawton, L.J. (2008). Are US-based birding festivals a form of ecotourism? In: Richardson, S., Fredline, L., Patiar, A. & Ternel, M. (eds) *Proceedings of the 18th Annual CAUTHE Conference (on Disc)*. Griffith University, Gold Coast, QLD.
- Lawton, L.J. (2009). Birding festivals, sustainability and ecotourism: An ambiguous relationship. *Journal of Travel Research* 48(2), 259–267.
- Lawton, L.J. & Weaver, D.B. (2010). Normative and innovative sustainable resource management at birding festivals. *Tourism Management* 31, 527–536.
- Lee, C-K., Lee, J-H., Kim, T-K. & Mjelde, J.W. (2010). Preferences and willingness to pay for bird-watching tour and interpretive services using a choice experiment. *Journal of Sustainable Tourism* 18(5), 695–708.
- Lee, C-K., Lee, J-H., Mjelde, J.W., Scott, D. & Kim, T-K. (2009). Assessing the economic value of a public birdwatching interpretive service using a contingent valuation method. *International Journal of Tourism Research* 11, 583–593.
- Lee, J-H. & Scott, D. (2004). Measuring birding specialization: A confirmatory factor analysis. *Leisure Sciences* 26, 245–260.
- Lee, S., McMahan, K. & Scott, D. (2015). The gendered nature of serious birdwatching. *Human Dimensions of Wildlife* 20(1), 47–64.
- Li, F., Zhu, Q. & Yang, Z. (2013). Birding tourism development in Sichuan, China. *Tourism Economics* 19(2), 257–273.
- Li, L. (2018). Environmentally responsible behavior intentions of wildlife tourists based on recreational involvement: A case study of bird-watching tourists in Guangzhou. *Chinese Studies* 7(1), 95–113.
- Li, N., Yang, C., Qin, X., Sun, J. & Liu, J. (2022). The impact of climate change on birder destination loyalty: Examining changes in bird resources. *Current Issues in Tourism* 25(11), 1798–1816.
- Lindsay, K., Craig, J. & Low, M. (2008). Tourism and conservation: The effects of track proximity on avian reproductive success and nest selection in an open sanctuary. *Tourism Management* 29(4), 730–739.
- Lindsay, M. (1998). The Great Texas Coastal Birding Trail: A tool for avitourism. *USDA Forest Service Proceedings RMRS*, pp. 261–262.
- Liu, T., Ma, L., Cheng, L., Hou, Y. & Wen, Y. (2021). Is ecological birdwatching tourism a more effective way to transform the value of ecosystem services? A case study of birdwatching destinations in Mingxi county, China. *International Journal of Environmental Research and Public Health* 18(23), 12424.
- Lyons, K., Markwell, K. & Johnson, P. (2009). Recreation specialisation and destination image: A case study of birding tourists values and their perceptions of

Papua New Guinea. *Paper presented at BEST EN Think Tank IX, James Cook University Singapore*. Available at: http://ertr.tamu.edu/files/2012/09/566_LyonsMarkwellJohnson.pdf (accessed 15 April 2014).

M

- MacKinnon, B.H. (2004). *Manual for training bird guides in rural communities*. Amigos de Sian Ka'an, Mexico.
- Maple, L.C., Eagles, P.F.J. & Rolfe, H. (2010). Birdwatchers' specialisation characteristics and national park tourism planning. *Journal of Ecotourism* 9(3), 219–238.
- Market.us. (2023). *Birdwatching tourism market size, share | CAGR of 6.4%*. https://market.us/report/birdwatching-tourism-market/
- MarkWide Research. (2024). *Ornithology Tourism Market Analysis – Industry Size, Share, Research Report, Shares, Covid-19 impact, Statistics, Trends, Growth and Forecast 2024–2032*. Available at: https://markwideresearch.com/ornithology-tourism-market/ (accessed 3 April 2024).
- McFadden, T.N., Herrera, A.G. & Navedo, J.G. (2017). Waterbird responses to regular passage of a birdwatching tour boat: Implications for wetland management. *Journal for Nature Conservation* 40, 42–48.
- McFarlane, B.L. (1994). Specialization and motivations of birdwatchers. *Wildlife Society Bulletin* 22(3), 361–370. Available at: https://www.jstor.org/stable/3783377 (accessed 15 October 2024).
- McFarlane, B.L. & Boxall, P.C. (1996). Participation in wildlife conservation by birdwatchers. *Human Dimensions of Wildlife* 1(3), 1–14.
- Measells, M. & Grado, S. (2007). *Economic Impacts of Two Birding Festivals in Mississippi, Publication no. F0341*. Forest and Wildlife Research Center, Mississippi State University, Starkville, USA.
- Morris, J. (2008). Sustainability of avian ecotourism. In: Editor, G.N. & Editor, I.H. (eds) *An International Forum on Sustainability*. Arisztotelész Publishing Co., Budapest, pp. 43–50.
- Moss, S. (2004). *A bird in the bush: A social history of birdwatching*. Aurum Press, London.

N

- Newsome, D. (2005). Enhancing the avitourism potential of the Boondall Wetlands, Queensland. In: *Western Australian Section, Sustainable Tourism Cooperative Research Centre Industry Forum, 14 October, Perth, Western Australia*.
- Newsome, D., Dowling, R.K. & Dowling, S.A. (2005). *Wildlife Tourism*. Channel View Publications, Clevedon, UK.
- Nicolaides, A. (2013). Promoting avitourism as a special niche area of ecotourism in South Africa. *African Journal of Hospitality, Tourism and Leisure* 2(3), 1–16.

O

- Ocampo-Peñuela, N. & Winton, R.S. (2017). Economic and conservation potential of bird-watching tourism in postconflict Colombia. *Tropical Conservation Science* 10, 1940082917733862.
- O'Connor, S., Campbell, R., Cortez, H. & Knowles, T. (2009). *Whale Watching Worldwide: Tourism numbers, expenditures and expanding economic benefits*. International Fund for Animal Welfare, Yarmouth, USA.
- Orenstein, R., Wong, A., Abghani, N., Bakewell, D., Eaton, J., Teck, Y.S. & Li, Y.D. (2010). Sarawak – a neglected birding destination in Malaysia. *BirdingASIA* 13, 30–41.

P

- Pegas, F. de V. & Castley, J.G. (2014). Ecotourism as a conservation tool and its adoption by private protected areas in Brazil. *Journal of Sustainable Tourism* 22(4), 604–625.
- Petticrew, M. & Roberts, H. (2006). *Systematic reviews in the social sciences: A practical guide*. Blackwell, Oxford, UK.
- Pickering, C.M. & Ballantyne, M. (2013). Orchids: An example of charismatic megaflora tourism? In: Holden, A. & Fennell, D. (eds) *The Routledge Handbook of Tourism and the Environment*. Routledge, London, pp. 192–199.
- Pickering, C.M., Hill, W., Newsome, D. & Leung, Y-F. (2010). Comparing hiking, mountain biking and horse riding impacts on vegetation and soils in Australia and the United States of America. *Journal of Environmental Management* 91(3), 551–562.
- PRB. (2011). *Population Reference Bureau. Density (people per sq. km.)*. Available at: http://www.prb.org/DataFinder/Topic/Rankings.aspx?ind=30 (accessed 15 April 2014).
- Puhakka, L., Salo, M. & Sääksjärvi, I.E. (2011). Bird diversity, birdwatching tourism and conservation in Peru: A geographic analysis. *PLoS One* 6, e26786.

Q

- Qiao, H., Orr, M., Yang, Q., Zhan, X., Lei, F. et al. (2023). Global birdwatching data reveal uneven consequences of the COVID-19 pandemic. *Biological Conservation* 288, 110351.

R

- Ramos, K., Pérez, L.R. & Bassols, N. (2023). Bird watching tourism in sustainable and accessible destinations: The case of the entrepreneurial venture Explora Caloccita in the Mexican Pacific Coast. In: Allis, T. & Carnicelli, S. (eds) *Tourism in Latin America: Current Practices and Future Developments. Tourism Cases Special Issue*. CAB International, Wallingford, UK.
- Randler, C. (2023). Motivations for birdwatching: Support for a three-dimensional model. *Human Dimensions of Wildlife* 28(1), 84–92.
- Randler, C., Staller, N., Kalb, N. & Tryjanowski, P. (2023). Charismatic species and birdwatching: Advanced birders prefer small, shy, dull, and rare species. *Anthrozoös* 36(3), 427–445.

- Ren, J., Su, K., Zhou, Y., Hou, Y. & Wen, Y. (2022). Why return? Birdwatching tourists' revisit intentions based on structural equation modelling. *Sustainability* 14(21), 14632.

- ResearchGate. (n.d.). *Turismo de observação de aves no Parque Nacional da Lagoa do Peixe: oportunidades ou ameaças?* https://www.researchgate.net/publication/228637352

- Riley, A. (2014). South Africa: The best of the 'birding continent'. *Birder's Guide* 26. Available at: https://www.aba.org/south-africa-best-birding-continent/ (accessed 10 April 2024).

- Rothman, A. (2008). A case study of bird trail development in Central America. In: *Proceedings of the Fourth International Partners in Flight Conference: Tundra to Tropics*. McAllen, Texas, pp. 508–511.

- Roy, S., Byrne, J. & Pickering, C. (2012). A systematic quantitative review of urban tree benefits, costs, and assessment methods across cities in different climatic zones. *Urban Forestry & Urban Greening* 11(4), 351–363.

S

- Saarinen, J., Becker, F., Manwa, H. & Wilson, D. (2009). *Sustainable tourism in Southern Africa: Local communities and natural resources in transition*. Channel View Publications, Bristol, UK.

- Sali, M.J.G. & Kuehn, D.M. (2007). Gender-based motivations of non-residential birdwatchers in New York State: A qualitative study. In: Burns, R. & Robinson, K. (eds) *Proceedings of the 2006 Northeastern Recreation Research Symposium 9–11 April.* US Department of Agriculture, Forest Service, Northeastern Research Station, New York, pp. 318–325.

- Sánchez-Rivero, M., Sánchez-Martín, J.M. & Rodríguez Rangel, M.C. (2020). Characterization of birdwatching demand using a logit approach: Comparative analysis of source markets (national vs foreign). *Animals* 10(6), 965.

- Sari, C., Oban, R. & Erdogan, A. (2011). Ornitho-Tourism and Antalya. *The 2nd International Geography Symposium GEOMED2010. Procedia Social and Behavioral Sciences* 19, 165–172.

- Schwoerer, T. & Dawson, N.G. (2022). Small sight-big might: Economic impact of bird tourism shows opportunities for rural communities and biodiversity conservation. *PLoS One* 17(7), e0268594.

- Scott, D. & Thigpen, J. (2003). Understanding the birder as a tourist: Segmenting visitors to the Texas Hummer/Bird Celebration. *Human Dimensions of Wildlife* 8, 199–218.

- Scott, D., Ditton, R.B., Stoll, J.R. & Eubanks Jr, T.L. (2005). Measuring specialization among birders: Utility of a self-classification measure. *Human Dimensions of Wildlife* 10, 53–75.

- Şekercioğlu, Ç.H. (2002). Impacts of birdwatching on human and avian communities. *Environmental Conservation* 29(3), 282–289.

- Şekercioğlu, Ç.H. (2003). Conservation through commodification. *Birding* 35, 394–402.

- Simango, S.S. (2011). *The evolution, structure and market for birding tourism in South Africa.* (Unpublished master's thesis) University of the Witwatersrand, South Africa.
- Son, N.L.H., Dung, L.T. & Van, N.T. (2011). Developing bird watching ecotourism combined with education and natural conservation. *VNU Journal of Science, Earth Sciences* 27, 89–97.
- SOS Save Our Songbirds. (2023). *National survey: 1 in 3 U.S. adults reports watching birds.* https://www.sossaveoursongbirds.org
- Spenceley, A. (2008). *Responsible tourism: Critical issues for conservation and development.* Earthscan, London.
- Spherical Insights. (2023). *Global birdwatching tourism market size to reach USD 116.8 billion by 2033.* https://www.sphericalinsights.com/reports/birdwatching-tourism-market
- Steenweg, R., Hebblewhite, M., Kays, R., Ahumada, J., Fisher, J. T., Burton, C., Townsend, S. E., Carbone, C., Rowcliffe, J. M., Whittington, J., Brodie, J., Royle, J. A., & Switalski, T. (2017). Scaling-up camera traps: Monitoring the planet's biodiversity with networks of remote sensors. *Frontiers in Ecology and the Environment, 15*(1), 26–34. https://doi.org/10.1002/fee.1448
- Stemmer (formerly Jathe), K., Aas, Ø., Veisten, K. & Lindberg, K. (2022). Assessing recreation specialization to guide nature-based tourism development: A hybrid choice model of birder destination preferences. *Journal of Outdoor Recreation and Tourism* 39, 100516.
- Steven, R., Pickering, C. & Castley, J.G. (2011). A review of the impacts of nature based recreation on birds. *Journal of Environmental Management* 92(10), 2287–2294.
- Steven, R., Morrison, C. & Castley, J.G. (2015). Birdwatching and avitourism: A global review of research into its participant markets, distribution and impacts, highlighting future research priorities to inform sustainable avitourism management. *Journal of Sustainable Tourism* 23(8–9), 1257–1276.
- Steven, R. & Castley, J.G. (2013). Tourism as a threat to critically endangered and endangered birds: Global patterns and trends in conservation hotspots. *Biodiversity and Conservation* 22(4), 1063–1082.
- Steven, R., Castley, J.G. & Buckley, R. (2013). Tourism revenue as a conservation tool for threatened birds in protected areas. *PLoS One* 8, e62598.
- Steven, R., Rakotopare, N. & Newsome, D. (2021). Avitourism tribes: As diverse as the birds they watch. In: Pforr, C., Dowling, R. & Volgger, M. (eds) *Consumer Tribes in Tourism*. Springer, Singapore, pp. 101–118.
- Stoll, J.R., Ditton, R.B. & Eubanks Jr, T.L. (2006). Platte River birding and the spring migration: Humans, value, and unique ecological resources. *Human Dimensions of Wildlife* 11, 241–254.
- Sullivan, B. L., Wood, C. L., Iliff, M. J., Bonney, R. E., Fink, D., & Kelling, S. (2014). eBird: A citizen-based bird observation network in the biological sciences. *Biological Conservation, 169*, 31–40. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.biocon.2013.11.003

T

- Tapper, J. (2022). You don't need to travel long distances to spot birds, Britain's twitchers urged. *The Guardian*. Available at: https://www.theguardian.com/environment/2022/jan/01/travel-distances-britain-twitchers-birds-birdwatchers-species-foot-cycle (accessed 15 October 2024).
- Topelko, K.N. & Dearden, P. (2005). The shark watching industry and its potential contribution to shark conservation. *Journal of Ecotourism* 4(2), 108–128.
- Trainor, C.R., Santana, F., Pinto, P., Xavier, A.F., Safford, R. & Grimmett, R. (2008). Birds, birding and conservation in Timor Leste. *BirdingASIA* 9, 16–45.

U

- Underhill, L. & Barnard, P. (2009). SABAP2 and climate change. *Africa – Birds & Birding* 14(6), 79. Available at: https://science.uct.ac.za/sites/default/files/content_migration/science_uct_ac_za/925/files/ABB14%25286%252978-79.pdf (accessed 15 October 2024).
- U.S. Fish & Wildlife Service. (2022). *2022 National Survey of Fishing, Hunting, and Wildlife-Associated Recreation*. https://www.fws.gov

V

- Vas, K. (2012). *Birding Trail Development from a Tourism Planning Perspective*. (Unpublished master's thesis) University of Waterloo, Canada.
- Vas, K. (2017). Birding blogs as indicators of birdwatcher characteristics and trip preferences: Implications for birding destination planning and development. *Journal of Destination Marketing & Management* 6(1), 33–45.

W

- Wearn, O. R., & Glover-Kapfer, P. (2017). *Camera-trapping for conservation: A guide to best practices*. WWF-UK Conservation Technology Series, 1(1). https://www.wwf.org.uk/sites/default/files/2017-11/WWF-UK_CameraTrappingforConservation_Report.pdf
- Welford, M. & Barilla, A. (2013). Is neotropical conservation sold-short: Diminishing returns for birding suggest ecolodges could encourage longer stays. *Journal for Nature Conservation* 21(6), 401–405.
- Werdler, K. (2017). Birdwatching tourism sector in Rwanda: The need of self-learning and self-improving for the future of wildlife tourism development. In: Green, R.J. (ed.) *Wildlife Tourism, Environmental Learning and Ethical Encounters. Geoheritage, Geoparks and Geotourism*. Springer, Cham, Switzerland, pp. 43–56.
- Whitelaw, P.A., King, B.E.M. & Tolkach, D. (2014). Protected areas, conservation and tourism – financing the sustainable dream. *Journal of Sustainable Tourism* 22(4), 584–603.
- Wiedner, D. & Kerlinger, P. (1990). Economics of birding: A National survey of active birders. *International Council for Bird Preservation* 44(2), 209–213.
- Wight, P. (2007). Ecotourism, CSR, and the fourth dimension of sustainability. In: Higham, J. (ed.) *Critical Issues in Ecotourism: Understanding a Complex Tourism Phenomenon*. Elsevier, Oxford, pp. 214–239.

- Wong, H.C.S. (2009). *Birdwatching Tourism and the Possibility of Developing Cross-border Birdwatching in Hong Kong and China*. (Unpublished master's thesis) University of Hong Kong, Hong Kong.

X

- Xu, J., Yan, P., Liu, Z., Qin, H. & Jiang, A. (2023). Avitourism as an aspect of sustainable mountain development: A case study from Southern China. *Eco.Mont (Journal on Protected Mountain Areas Research)* 15(1), 38–45.

Y

- 10000birds.com. (2023). *How many birders are there, really? (Updated & Addendum)*. https://www.10000birds.com/how-many-birders-are-there-really.htm

About the Contributors

Author & Editor

Dr. Ismar Borges de Lima
Senior Professor; PhD., M.A.
Roraima State University, UERR, & RECINATUR Foundation
Email: ismar@uerr.edu.br
Institutional website (UERR): www.uerr.edu.br

Ismar Borges de Lima is a Senior Professor (Level XV) at the State University of Roraima (UERR), Brazil, where he has served since 2012. He is also the Director for Brazil at the Latin American Foundation for Research on Science, Nature and Tourism (RECINATUR Foundation) since 2014. Dr. Borges de Lima completed his Ph.D. at the University of Waikato, New Zealand (2004–2008), and holds a Master's degree in International Relations from the International University of Japan, IUJ (2000–2004), including an internship at UNESCAP in Bangkok, Thailand (2001). He undertook professional training at the Radio Nederland Training Centre in the Netherlands (1995).

He served as an Adjunct Lecturer and postdoctoral researcher at Southern Cross University (SCU), Australia, from 2016 to 2019. His academic career includes international engagements such as an academic expedition across several African countries—Botswana, Mozambique, Kenya, Swaziland, and South Africa—in 2018, and a visiting professorship at the North Technical University (UTN), Ecuador, in 2019, and academic projects and research at the Cesar Vallejo University and San Martín University, in Peru, in 2025. Dr. Borges de Lima is also the author and editor of numerous scholarly articles and books spanning topics within the social, environmental, and human sciences. His published work covers subjects such as the Amazon Basin, ethnodevelopment, ethno-tourism, ecotourism, regional and local development, environmental governance, public policies, Indigenous territorial issues in Brazil, biotechnology in the Amazon, and rare earths, among others.

Contributors

Dr. Carmen Amelia Trujillo,
Ph.D, M.A. Professor and Postgraduate Research Coordinator at the Technical University of the North (UTN), Ecuador. Email: car.tru@hotmail.com

Dr. Carmen Amelia Trujillo is an Ecuadorian biologist with a distinguished academic and professional background. She holds a Ph.D. in Environmental Education, as well as a Doctorate in Biology from the Central University of Ecuador. She earned a Master's degree in Environmental Education from the Pedagogical University Libertador of Venezuela and a Master's in Tourism Destination Development from the University of Las Palmas de Gran Canaria, Spain. She has also been awarded an Honorary Doctorate (Honoris Causa) by *Líderes Mundiales*, United States, in recognition of her contributions to environmental leadership.

A prominent environmental activist, Dr. Trujillo has led conservation and cultural restoration efforts for the Cascada de Peguche Protected Forest in Otavalo, Imbabura — a project supported by UNDP, the Global Environment Facility (GEF), the Inter-American Development Bank (IDB), and the Embassy of Japan. She is the author and implementer of various projects on natural and cultural heritage interpretation, including eco-cultural tourism routes in Esmeraldas, Carchi, and Imbabura. Her scientific work contributed to the UNESCO World Heritage designation of Qhapaq Ñan and the recognition of Imbabura as a UNESCO Global Geopark. She currently serves as Postgraduate Research Coordinator at the Technical University of the North (UTN), Ecuador.

Dr. Trujillo is the author of numerous high-impact scientific articles, books, and book chapters covering topics such as ecotourism, environmental interpretation, living cultures of Carchi–Qhapaq Ñan, vascular plants, qualitative research, environmental and ecotourism management plans, meanings of water, Andean chakras, environmental legislation, and climate change. She is a frequent speaker at national and international conferences and has received academic and scientific honors in Chile, Mexico, and Ecuador for her outstanding contributions to science, society, and education.

Johanna Paulina Flores Ruano
Professor at Universidad Técnica del Norte (UTN), Ecuador
Email: jpflores@utn.edu.ec

Johanna Paulina Flores Ruano is a professional trained in Hotel Management (*Pontificia Universidad Católica del Ecuador*, PUCE, 2018) and holding a Master's degree in Technology and Educational Innovation (UTN, 2022). Prof. Flores Ruano has dedicated her career to bridging tourism management with contemporary educational paradigms. At the Technical University of the North (UTN), where she currently teaches, and applies innovative pedagogical approaches supported by over 500 hours of professional training in areas such as digital tools for education, inclusive education (Braille system), and the design of virtual learning environments.

Her intellectual contributions include co-authoring works such as *Living Heritage and Sustainable Development of the Pasto People* (2024), which explores the intersection of culture and sustainability, and *Sustainability of Montane Forests* (2024), focused on conservation models for local development. These publications reflect her core belief: knowledge reaches its highest value when it transforms realities, especially in contexts where tourism can foster regenerative and equitable development. She also engages in applied research, such as her ongoing study on hotel occupancy patterns in Quito (2025), underscoring her commitment to generating practical, actionable knowledge for the tourism and hospitality sector.

Armin Marcelo de la Rosa Patiño
Executive President, RECINATUR Foundation – Latin America
marcelodelarosa@recinatur.org
www.recinatur.org

Armin Marcelo de la Rosa Patiño is a Chilean tourism and education professional with extensive experience in sustainable development, curriculum design, and regional planning. He holds a Technical Degree in Tourism and a Specialization in Tourism Planning from the Austral University of Chile, along with a Bachelor's degree in Education from Instituto Profesional Valle Central. He also holds certifications in Curriculum Development and Competency-Based Assessment (Austral University of Chile) and a Diploma in Local Economy from the University of Santiago, Chile.

He currently serves as:

- Executive President of the Ibero-American Network for Science, Nature, and Tourism (RECINATUR)
- International Editorial Manager at RECINATUR (ISBN: 978-956-9037)
- Professional Advisor at Kulamapu Consultores, Chile
- Member of the International Research Group on Heritage and Sustainability (GIIPS), Ecuador

Armin de la Rosa is deeply committed to strengthening scientific, environmental, and educational collaboration across Latin America through innovative, community-centered approaches to tourism and heritage preservation.

Tomas Cotrina Trigoso
Universidad César Vallejo & Universidad Nacional de San Martín, Peru
tcotrina@unsm.edu.pe

Tomas Cotrina Trigoso is a professor at both the National University of San Martín and César Vallejo University, located in the San Martín region of Peru. He is a cultural and tourism consultant specializing in projects focused on the Amazon region, as well as an experienced cultural manager and social activist advocating for nature conservation and the protection of Amazonian cultures. He currently serves as the Director of Research and Culture at the College of Licensed Tourism Professionals of the San Martín Region (Colitur-SM). He is also a columnist for the *Revista El Tarapotino* and other regional newspapers. Tomas co-authored *The Art of Lamas Ceramics*, a book supported by AECID (Spanish Agency for International Development Cooperation), which explores traditional Amazonian ceramic art. His work combines academic, cultural, and environmental engagement to promote sustainable development and heritage preservation in the Peruvian Amazon.

Dr. Aggrey Thuo, PhD, MKIP
Associate Professor of Spatial and Environmental Planning, Kenyatta University, Kenya
Deputy Vice-Chancellor (Planning, Administration, and Finance), Jaramogi Oginga Odinga University of Science and Technology (JOOUST), Kenya
aggreythuo@jooust.ac.ke | thuo.aggrey@ku.ac.ke

Dr. Aggrey Thuo is a seasoned academic and administrator with extensive experience in environmental and spatial planning. He currently serves as Deputy Vice-Chancellor (Planning, Administration, and Finance) at Jaramogi Oginga Odinga University of Science and Technology, while also holding an academic appointment as Associate Professor at Kenyatta University.

He previously served as Dean of the School of Tourism and Natural Resources Management at Maasai Mara University, and as Senior Lecturer at the Department of Land Resource Planning and Management, Jomo Kenyatta University of Agriculture and Technology (JKUAT). Dr. Thuo began his academic career in 2003 at Kenyatta University's Department of Environmental Planning and Management.

He holds a PhD in Environmental Planning from the University of Waikato, New Zealand, as well as Master's and Bachelor's degrees in Environmental Planning and Management from Kenyatta University. He is currently pursuing an MBA at JKUAT.

Dr. Thuo is a Corporate Member of the Kenya Institute of Planners (MKIP) and a Certified Lead Expert with Kenya's National Environment Management Authority (NEMA). Beyond academia, he has held several leadership positions, including serving as Chairman of the Land Management Board for Murang'a County, appointed by the National Land Commission.

Dr. Kennedy Rolando Lomas, PhD
Emeritus Professor, Universidad Técnica del Norte (UTN), Ecuador
President, Fundación Ecuatoriana de Desarrollo Social (FUNEDES)
krlomas@utn.edu.ec | kenyrol@gmail.com
Website: https://fundaciones-ddesarrollo-social.jimdofree.com/

Dr. Kennedy Rolando Lomas is an **Emeritus Professor** and senior researcher at the **Universidad Técnica del Norte (UTN)** in Ibarra, Ecuador. He holds a **PhD in Environmental Education** from UPEL (Venezuela), and Master's degrees in **Environmental Education** (UPEL) and **Tourism Destination Management** (University of Las Palmas de Gran Canaria, Spain). He is also pursuing a doctoral degree in **Tourism and International Cooperation** at the **University of Seville**, Spain. Dr. Lomas has completed various postgraduate diplomas, including: Equity and Quality in Education (Metropolitan University of Chile); Low-Carbon Energy Systems (China); Project Management and Social Innovation in International Cooperation (Catholic University of Valparaíso, Chile)

He holds a degree in **Social Sciences** (Universidad Técnica Particular de Loja) and is also trained as a **primary education teacher**. With more than **20 years of experience**, Dr. Lomas has led numerous **development and social innovation projects** in rural communities across Imbabura, Carchi, and Ecuador's Amazon region, often in collaboration with international agencies such as the **United Nations**, **Inter-American Development Bank (IDB)**, and the **European Union**. His **research areas** include: Cultural and community-based tourism; Ethnodevelopment and traditional communities; Environmental education; Higher education and research; Projects such as *Qhapaq Ñan* and *In the Footsteps of Humboldt.*

He has authored 28 books and numerous high-impact academic articles published by Springer and Taylor & Francis, particularly on ethnodevelopment, community tourism, and cultural meanings of water. Dr. Lomas has received awards, medals, and honors from institutions in Chile, Mexico, China, Colombia, France, Argentina, Spain, and Switzerland. He currently serves as: **President of FUNEDES** – Fundación Ecuatoriana de Desarrollo Social (Website); **Director of the GIPPS Research Group** – Grupo Internacional de Patrimonio y Sustentabilidad (Website); **Editor of the RECINATUR International Journal** (Link), ISSN (print and electronic).

Wilson de Moraes Sousa
Roraima State University, UERR, Brazil
Email: wsousa@uerr.edu.br
Website: www.uerr.edu.br

Wilson de Moraes Sousa has served as a public employee at the State University of Roraima (UERR) since 2012, working in both administrative and academic support roles. He holds degrees in Theology from the Faculty of Sciences, Education, and Theology of Northern Brazil (FACETEN, 2015) and in History from the International University Center UNINTER (2022). He has completed postgraduate specialization courses in Religious Education (2018), Public Administration (2018), Strategic People Management (2020), and Indigenous and Afro-Brazilian History and Culture (2023). Currently, he is pursuing a degree in Religious Studies at UNINTER.

Wilson is also involved in a research project (2025–2026), registered at UERR, focusing on the history, culture, and development of the state of Roraima and the municipality of Caracaraí. He recently co-authored a book chapter on illegal mining in Yanomami Indigenous territory in Roraima, published by Springer in June 2025. The chapter appears in the *World Sustainability Series* volume titled *Amazon 2030: Sustainability in the World's Largest Forest*, which addresses key socio-environmental and cultural challenges facing the Amazon region in the lead-up to 2030.

Paulo Alberto da Costa Gois
Bird Guide – Caracaraí City Hall, Brazil
goispaulinho@hotmail.com

Paulo Alberto da Costa Gois is a public servant and local birdwatching guide for the City Hall of Caracaraí, in the state of Roraima, Brazil. Born in Manaus, Amazonas, and the son of riverside dwellers (ribeirinhos), Paulo developed a deep connection with nature from an early age through the stories and experiences shared by his parents and grandparents.

While studying for a degree in Tourism at the State University of Roraima (UERR), he recognized the rich birdlife potential of Caracaraí. Since then, he has become one of the leading local figures in birdwatching, with over 400 bird species documented in his personal records. Paulo has been actively guiding birdwatching tours in Caracaraí since 2014 and brings over 20 years of experience in observing, mapping, and documenting birds in their natural habitats—whether in forests, parks, rural landscapes, or urban areas.

His passion for birding has contributed significantly to Caracaraí's recognition in the national birdwatching community, helping it achieve second place in the ranking of Brazilian cities with the highest number of recorded bird species, according to the platform WikiAves.

Irma Brígida Suárez Rodríguez
Professor, PhD Scholar, M.A.
Universidad Autónoma de San Luís Potosí (UASLP), Mexico.
UNESCO Global Geopark Project Leader
Email: irma.suarez@uaslp.mx
www.recinatur.org

Professor Irma Brígida Suárez Rodríguez holds a Master's degree in Marketing for Tourism Businesses and a Bachelor's degree in Tourism Business Administration. She is currently pursuing a **Doctorate in International Tourism**. She serves as a **Full-Time Research Professor** in the Sustainable Tourism program at the Faculty of Professional Studies, Huasteca Zone, **Universidad Autónoma de San Luis Potosí (UASLP)**.

She is the **General Director** of the **Ibero-American Network of Science, Nature and Tourism (RECINATUR)** and **President** of the **San Luis Potosí chapter** of the **International College of Professionals Specialized in Tourism and Gastronomy (CIPETURG A.C.)**. She leads the **UNESCO Global Geopark candidate project** for the Huasteca Potosina region and coordinates technical committees for the **Historic Center of Ciudad Valles**.

At the national level, she serves as **National Secretary for Academic Affairs** of the **Mexican Association of Higher Education Centers in Tourism and Gastronomy (AMESTUR)**. She is also a member of the **International Research Group on Heritage and Sustainability (GIIPS)**, based in Ecuador.

Dr. Carmen del Pilar Suárez Rodríguez
Professor; PhD., M.A. South Huasteca Regional Academic Coordination (CARHS-UASLP).
Email: pilar.suarez@uaslp.mx
https://profesionalizacionstem.com

Dr. Carmen del Pilar Suárez Rodríguez holds a Bachelor's degree in Electronic Physics from the **Universidad Autónoma de San Luis Potosí (UASLP)**, a Master's degree in Metallurgy and Materials Engineering from the same institution, and a Ph.D. in Science with a specialization in Physics Education from the **Center for Research in Applied Science and Advanced Technology (CICATA)** of the **National Polytechnic Institute (IPN)**.

She is an **international consultant in STEM education** for sustainable community development and currently serves as a **Professor and Researcher** at the **South Huasteca Regional Academic Coordination (CARHS-UASLP)**. She coordinates the Mechanical-Electrical Engineering program at CARHS-UASLP and the Mathematics and Physics Division of the Multidisciplinary Graduate Program in Education and Teaching at UASLP.

Dr. Suárez leads the **consolidated academic body "Applied Basic Sciences for Learning Communities"** and is **Director of Education and Research** as well as head of the **Mexico Chapter** of the **Ibero-American Network of Science, Nature and Tourism (RECINATUR)**.

She is Vice President of the Teaching Division of the Mexican Physical Society, Vice President of the Inter-American Dialogue on Science Education, and the U.S. Representative of the American Association of Physics Teachers (AAPT).

ISBN: 978-65-01-43669-2

9 786501 436692

RECINATUR
Red Iberoamericana de Ciencia, Naturaleza y Turismo